

# **English Longitudinal Study of Ageing**

**Wave Two Interview Questionnaire – 2004-2005**

**Version 2.0 - August 2006**

## **IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT THE PAPER VERSION OF THE QUESTIONNAIRE**

Please be aware that this is a draft version of the questionnaire, so caution should be taken when using this document. Some parts of the questionnaire still need to be improved (e.g. making the routing clearer) and checked for any inaccuracies. The Household demographics, Work and Pensions and Income and Assets modules are particularly problematic. You may find it helpful to refer to the Wave 1 questionnaire as many of the variables and the routing is the same in both waves. An improved version of the Wave 2 questionnaire will be archived later in 2006.

### **Questions asked of proxy respondents**

\* - If a variable has ONE asterisk next to it, this means that the question was asked of both proxy and non-proxy respondents

\*\* - If a variable has TWO asterisks next to it, this means that the question was ONLY asked of proxy respondents

If a variable has NO asterisks next to it, this means that the question was NOT asked of proxy respondents

### **Variables omitted from the archived dataset**

@ - This means that the variable has been omitted from the archived dataset (see User Guide for more information), or omitted from the mortgages dataset (archived November 2006).

### **Textfills**

^ - This annotation is shown before any textfills that were used in questions. The different options of the textfill are provided in square brackets e.g. [^him/her].

### **Checks**

The CAPI instrument contains a number of checks to help ensure that the information entered by the interviewer is accurate and consistent. The variables for which checks were used are indicated in this documentation. The checks are numbered within each module, so for example, the first check in the Health module (HE) is indicated thus:

**[CHECK HE1]**

The actual checks are not in this version of the questionnaire, but will be added in an appendix to a later version.

## HOUSEHOLD DEMOGRAPHICS MODULE (HD)

Please be aware that this module still needs to be improved (e.g. making the routing clearer) and checked for any inaccuracies.

*IF Household Number > 1 [HHNo >1]*

|  
ELSE

| **DHSAMEH \***

| INTERVIEWER: Are you interviewing at the same address that the respondent was interviewed at last time?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

|  
END OF FILTER

**DHINT \*@**

(As you know) this is a study about the health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over. [^BLANK/During the interview, some of the questions you are asked will be new to you and others will check or update information that we asked about last time. This is because we are interested in understanding what has stayed the same and what has changed.]

I would like to begin by checking our details about who lives in this household.

INTERVIEWER: Enter 1 to continue.

Range: 1..1

*IF Number of people who have moved out in previous waves > 0 [NOFMov > 0]*

|  
| **DHBACK \*@**

| Before beginning the interview, I just need to check whether there have been changes in who lives in this household.

| Our records show that the following people have previously lived in this household.

| Have any of them returned to the household? Do any of them live here now?

| CODE ALL THAY APPLY.

| 01 [^<Name of Mover1>]

| 02 [^<Name of Mover2>]

| 03 [^<Name of Mover3>]

| 04 [^<Name of Mover4>]

| 05 [^<Name of Mover5>]

| 06 [^<Name of Mover6>]

| 07 [^<Name of Mover7>]

| 08 [^<Name of Mover8>]

| 09 [^<Name of Mover9>]

| 10 [^<Nameof Mover10>]

| 11 [^<Nameof Mover11>]

| 12 [^<Nameof Mover12>]

| 96 None of these

|  
| **[code maximum 12 out of 13 possible responses]**

|  
END OF FILTER

LOOP FOR EACH PERSON IN HOUSEHOLD

|  
| *IF (P1 <= HHPrev) OR ((P1 > HHPrev) AND (P[P1 - 1].DhElse = Yes)) [P1 <= HHPrev OR P1 HHPrev AND PP1 - 1.DhElse = Yes]*

IF ((HW1.P.DHName = Yes) OR (P1 = DhBack)) OR ((P1 > 1) AND (P[P1 - 1].DhElse = Yes)) [HW1.P[P1].DHName = Yes OR P1 = DhBack OR P1 1 AND PP1 - 1.DhElse = Yes]

IF QHD.QAHD.P.PElseOnly = No [PElseOnly = 2]

IF Person number in Household Grid <= size of household at previous wave [Person <= HHPrev]

IF whether died = Yes [Dead = 1]

ELSE

**DHNAME \*@**

Does [<HSE first name>][BLANK/still] live here?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

IF whether still lives here = Yes [DhName = 1]

ELSE

IF (whether still lives here = No) AND (Dead <> Yes) [DhName = 2 AND Dead <> 1]

**DHWHAT \*@**

May I ask what has happened to [<HSE first name>]?

1 Deceased

2 Living elsewhere - relationship ended

3 Living elsewhere - moved into a nursing/residential home

4 Living elsewhere - other reason

IF reason for not living here = Deceased [DhWhat = 1]

**DHEINT \*@**

I am sorry to hear that [<HSE first name>] has passed away. I just need to ask a few questions to check that we have the correct information about him/her.

INTERVIEWER: Press 1 and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF QHD.QAHD.P.PConfirm = No [PConfirm = 2]

**DHNN \*@**

INTERVIEWER: Enter correct first name.

String: 20

```

ELSE
  IF QHD.QAHD.P.PConfirm = Yes [PConfirm = 1]
    IF (whether still lives here= Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [Living
elsewhere- moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1 OR
DhWhat = 3, 1]
      DHNC *@
      INTERVIEWER: ASK OR CODE: Is the first name (^<HSE first name>) correct?
      1 Yes
      2 No
    END OF FILTER
  END OF FILTER

  IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [living
elsewhere – moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1OR DhWhat
= 3, 1]
    IF HSE sex = RESPONSE [Sex = RESPONSE]
      DHSEXC *@
      ASK OR CODE: Can I just check, [^is/was] [^<correct first
name>] [^HSE sex]?
      1 Yes
      2 No
    END OF FILTER

    IF (correct sex check = No) OR (Sex <> RESPONSE) [DhSexC = 2 OR Sex <>
RESPONSE]
      DHSEX *
      INTERVIEWER: Ask or code [^<correct first name>]'s sex.
      1 Male
      2 Female
    END OF FILTER

    IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [Living
elsewhere- moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1
OR DhWhat = 3, 1]
      IF HSE date of birth = RESPONSE [DoB = RESPONSE]
        DHDOBC *
        Can I just check, [^is/was] [^<correct first name>]'s date of birth [^<date of birth>]?
        1 Yes
        2 No
      END OF FILTER

      IF (Date of birth check = No) OR (DoB <> RESPONSE) [DhDoBC = 2 OR DoB <>
RESPONSE]

```

```

| | | | | DHDOB *@
| | | | | What [^is/was] [^<correct first name>]'s date of birth?
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [Living elsewhere-
| | | | | moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1 OR DhWhat = 3, 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF date of birth = RESPONSE [DhDob = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF age at last birthday = DONTKNOW [DhAge = DONTKNOW]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHEAG *@
| | | | | Is [^<correct first name>] ... READ OUT ...
| | | | | 1 ... Under 16
| | | | | 2 16 to 29
| | | | | 3 30 to 49
| | | | | 4 50 to 69
| | | | | 5 70 to 89
| | | | | 6 or, 90 or over?
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) AND (age at last birthday >= 16) [DhName = 1
| | | | | AND DhAge >= 16]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHWORK *
| | | | | Last week was [^<correct first name>] in paid employment including
| | | | | being away temporarily from a job [^he/she] would normally be
| | | | | doing?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [Living elsewhere-
| | | | | moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1 OR DhWhat = 3, 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | LOOP FOR R1:= 1 TO 16
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (RPers <Ppers AND Rpres =Yes OR DMWhat[RPers]=Deceased [(RPers<Ppers)
| | | | | AND 99Rpres = Yes) OR (DMWhat[RPers]= Deceased)))]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF Feed forward Relationship to other HH member = RESPONSE [R =
| | | | | RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHRC *@
| | | | | And, [^is/was] 's [^husband/wife/partner/etc.]?
| | | | | 1 Yes

```

```

| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether husband/wife/partner = No) OR (Feed forward Relationship to other
| | | | | HH member <>RESPONSE) [DhRC = 2 OR R <> RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHR *
| | | | | SHOW CARD A
| | | | | What is 's relationship to . Please choose a number from this
| | | | | card.
| | | | | 01 Husband/Wife
| | | | | 02 Partner/cohabitee
| | | | | 03 Natural son/daughter
| | | | | 04 Adopted son/daughter
| | | | | 05 Foster son/daughter
| | | | | 06 Step son/daughter/child of partner
| | | | | 07 Son/daughter-in-law
| | | | | 08 Natural parent
| | | | | 09 Adoptive parent
| | | | | 10 Foster parent
| | | | | 11 Stepparent/parent's partner
| | | | | 12 Parent-in-law
| | | | | 13 Natural brother/sister
| | | | | 14 Half-brother/sister
| | | | | 15 Step-brother/sister
| | | | | 16 Adopted brother/sister
| | | | | 17 Foster brother/sister
| | | | | 18 Brother/sister-in-law
| | | | | 19 Grandchild
| | | | | 20 Grandparent
| | | | | 21 Other relative
| | | | | 22 Other non-relative
| | | | | 96 (THIS CODE NOT USED)
| | | | | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (Dead = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = Deceased) [Dead = 1 OR DhWhat = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHDEAD *@
| | | | | [^When did die/We understand that has died. May I ask when he/she died?]?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.
| | | | | Range: 1900..2050
| | | | | IF year of death = RESPONSE [DhDead = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHMON *@
| | | | | (When did [^<correct first name>] die?)
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter the month at this question.
| | | | | 01 January
| | | | | 02 February
| | | | | 03 March
| | | | | 04 April

```

- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

*IF derived month of death = RESPONSE [DhMonD = RESPONSE]*

**DHDAY \*@**

(When did [^<correct first name>] die?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the Day at this question.

Range: 1..31

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (reason for not living here = [living elsewhere- relationship ended, living elsewhere- moved to a nursing/residential home, living elsewhere- other reason]) OR reason for not living here = NONRESPONSE [DhWhat = 2 , 3, 4 OR DhWhat = NONRESPONSE]*

**DHLEFTY \*@**

When did [^<correct first name>] move out of this household?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**DHLEFTM \*@**

(When did [^<correct first name>] move out of this household?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the month at this question.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

IF (Sample status is core member at Wave 1 = Yes) OR (Sample status is partner at Wave 1 = Yes) [ELSA (Wave 1) = 1 OR Partner (Wave 1) = 1]

IF reason for not living here = [Living elsewhere- relationship ended, Living elsewhere- other reason] [DhWhat = 2, 4]

**DHARFB \*@**

INTERVIEWER: This is a split household. Start ARF B and attempt to find follow-up address for them.

Press 1 and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

IF (reason for not living here = [living elsewhere - relationship ended, living elsewhere - moved to a nursing/residential home, living elsewhere - other reason]) [DhWhat = 2, 3, 4]

**DHMOV \*@**

We may need to collect some more details about [^<correct first name>] but we will come back to this later.

INTERVIEWER: Press 1 and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (Person > HHPrev) OR (mover returned to household DhBack) [Person > HHPrev OR DhBack = Person]

**DHJOINY \*@**

When did [^<correct first name>] move[^BLANK/back] into this household?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**DHJOINM \*@**

(When did [^<correct first name>] move into this household?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the month at this question.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn

```

| | | | 17 Winter (end of year)
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF Person number in Household Grid >= size of household at previous wave
| | | | [Person >= HHPrev]
| | | |
| | | | DHELSE *@
| | | | Does anyone else live here [^BLANK/now]?[^INTERVIEWER: If the
| | | | new entrant is a returner who was listed at the beginning of the interview,
| | | | don't answer this question but scroll back to DhBack and code the relevant
| | | | person number]
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]
| | | |
| | | | IF (anyone else live here = Yes) AND ((ChTot - ChCov) > 0) [DhElse = 1 AND ChTot -
| | | | ChCov > 0]
| | | |
| | | | DHELSEC *@
| | | | Is this person a child of someone who lives here[^BLANK/or who used
| | | | to live here]?
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | |
| | | | IF whether is child of someone living here = Yes [DhElseC = 1]
| | | |
| | | | DHELSCY *@
| | | | INTERVIEWER: Check if it is any of these children recorded at the previous
| | | | interview.
| | | | CODE ONE ONLY.
| | | | 01 [^<Name of child1>]
| | | | 02 [^<Name of child2>]
| | | | 03 [^<Name of child3>]
| | | | 04 [^<Name of child4>]
| | | | 05 [^<Name of child5>]
| | | | 06 [^<Name of child6>]
| | | | 07 [^<Name of child7>]
| | | | 08 [^<Name of child8>]
| | | | 09 [^<Name of child9>]
| | | | 10 [^<Name of child10>]
| | | | 11 [^<Name of child11>]
| | | | 12 [^<Name of child12>]
| | | | 13 [^<Name of child13>]
| | | | 14 [^<Name of child14>]
| | | | 15 [^<Name of child15>]
| | | | 16 [^<Name of child16>]
| | | | 17 [^<Name of child17>]
| | | | 18 [^<Name of child18>]
| | | | 19 [^<Name of child19>]
| | | | 20 [^<Name of child20>]
| | | | 96 No, it is someone else
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER

```

```

| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF ((reason for not living here at Wave 1 = [LivElsr .. LivElsO]) AND ((DhBack =
| | | | | RESPONSE) AND NOT (P1 = DhBack))) OR (HW1.P.DHWhat = Deceased) [DHWhat
| | | | | (Wave 1) = LivElsr .. LivElsO AND DhBack = RESPONSE AND NOT P1 = DhBack OR
| | | | | HW1.P[P1].DHWhat = Deceased]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF QHD.QAHD.P.PElseOnly = No [PElseOnly = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF Person number in Household Grid <= size of household at previous
| | | | | wave [Person <= HHPrev]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether died = Yes [Dead = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | DHNAME *@
| | | | | Does [^<HSE first name>][^BLANK/still] live here?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether still lives here = Yes [DhName = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still live here = No) AND (Dead <> Yes) [DhName = 2 AND Dead <>
| | | | | 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHWHAT *@
| | | | | May I ask what has happened to [^<HSE first name>]?
| | | | | 1 Deceased
| | | | | 2 Living elsewhere - relationship ended
| | | | | 3 Living elsewhere - moved into a nursing/residential home
| | | | | 4 Living elsewhere - other reason
| | | | | 5 ^Core
| | | | |
| | | | | IF reason for not living here = Deceased [DhWhat = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHEIINT *@
| | | | | I am sorry to hear that [^<HSE first name>] has passed away. I
| | | | | just need to ask a few questions to check that we have the correct
| | | | | information about him/her.
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Press 1 and <Enter> to continue.
| | | | | Range: 1..1
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | |

```

```

| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF QHD.QAHD.P.PConfirm = No [PConfirm = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHNN *@
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter correct first name.
| | | | | String: 20
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF QHD.QAHD.P.PConfirm = Yes [PConfirm = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [living
| | | | | elsewhere- moved into a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1 OR
| | | | | DhWhat = 3, 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHNC *@
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: ASK OR CODE: Is the first name ([^<HSE first name>])
| | | | | correct?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [living
| | | | | elsewhere- moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1
| | | | | OR DhWhat = 3, 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF HSE sex = RESPONSE [Sex = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHSEX *@
| | | | | ASK OR CODE: Can I just check, [^is/was] [^<correct first name>] [^HSE sex]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (sex check = No) OR (Sex <> RESPONSE) [DhSexC = 2 OR Sex <>
| | | | | RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHSEX *
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Ask or code [^<correct first name>]'s sex.
| | | | | 1 Male
| | | | | 2 Female
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [living
| | | | | elsewhere- move to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1
| | | | | OR DhWhat = 3, 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF HSE date of birth = RESPONSE [DoB = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHDOBC *

```

```

| | | | | Can I just check, [^is/was] [^<correct first name>]'s date of
| | | | | birth [^<date of birth>]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (Date of Birth check = No) OR (DoB <> RESPONSE) [DhDoBC = 2 OR DoB
| | | | | <> RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHDOB *@
| | | | | What [^is/was] [^<correct first name>]'s date of birth?
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [living
| | | | | elsewhere- moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1
| | | | | OR DhWhat = 3, 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF date of birth = RESPONSE [DhDob = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF age at last birthday = DONTKNOW [DhAge = DONTKNOW]
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | | DHEAG *@
| | | | | Is [^<correct first name>] ... READ OUT ...
| | | | | 1 ... Under 16
| | | | | 2 16 to 29
| | | | | 3 30 to 49
| | | | | 4 50 to 69
| | | | | 5 70 to 89
| | | | | 6 or, 90 or over?
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) AND (age at last birthday >= 16) [DhName = 1
| | | | | AND DhAge >= 16]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHWORK *
| | | | | Last week was [^<correct first name>] in paid employment including
| | | | | being away temporarily from a job [^he/she] would normally be
| | | | | doing?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether still lives here = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = [living
| | | | | elsewhere- moved to a nursing/residential home, Deceased]) [DhName = 1
| | | | | OR DhWhat = 3, 1]

```

LOOP FOR R1:= 1 TO 16

*IF (Rpers < Ppers AND Rpres = Yes OR DMWhat[Rpers]=Deceased  
[(Rpers<Ppers) AND ((Rpres = Yes) OR (DMWhat[Rpers]= Deceased))])*

*IF Feed forward Relationship to othe HH member = RESPONSE [R =  
RESPONSE]*

**DHRC \*@**

And, [is/was] 's [^husband/wife/partner/etc.]?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether husband/wife/partner = No) OR (Feed forward Relationship to other  
HH member <> RESPONSE) [DhRC = 2 OR R <> RESPONSE]*

**DHR \*@**

SHOW CARD A

What is 's relationship to . Please choose a number from this card.

01 Husband/Wife

02 Partner/cohabitee

03 Natural son/daughter

04 Adopted son/daughter

05 Foster son/daughter

06 Step son/daughter/child of partner

07 Son/daughter-in-law

08 Natural parent

09 Adoptive parent

10 Foster parent

11 Stepparent/parent's partner

12 Parent-in-law

13 Natural brother/sister

14 Half-brother/sister

15 Step-brother/sister

16 Adopted brother/sister

17 Foster brother/sister

18 Brother/sister-in-law

19 Grandchild

20 Grandparent

21 Other relative

22 Other non-relative

96 (THIS CODE NOT USED)

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Dead = Yes) OR (reason for not living here = Deceased) [Dead = 1 OR DhWhat= 1]*

**DHDEAD \*@**

[^When did die/We understand that has died.

May I ask when he/she died?]?  
INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.  
Range: 1900..2050

*IF year of death = RESPONSE [DhDead = RESPONSE]*

**DHMON \*@**

(When did [^<correct first name>] die?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the month at this question.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

*IF derived month of death = RESPONSE [DhMonD = RESPONSE]*

**DHDAY \*@**

(When did [^<correct first name>] die?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the Day at this question.

Range: 1..31

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (DhWhatReason for not living here = [living elsewhere- relationship ended,  
living esewher- moved to a nursing/residential home, living elsewhere- other reason])  
OR reason for not living here = NONRESPONSE [DhWhat = 2 , 3, 4 OR DhWhat =  
NONRESPONSE]*

**DHLEFTY \*@**

When did [^<correct first name>] move out of this household?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**DHLEFTM \*@**

(When did [^<correct first name>] move out of this household?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the month at this question.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March

- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

*IF (Sample status is core member at Wave 1 = Yes) OR (Sample status is partner at Wave 1 = Yes) [ELSA (Wave 1) = 1 OR Partner (Wave 1) = 1]*

*IF reason for not living here = [living elsewhere- relationship ended, living elsewhere- other reason] [DhWhat = 2, 4]*

**DHARFB \*@**

INTERVIEWER: This is a split household. Start ARF B and attempt to find follow-up address for them.

Press 1 and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*IF (reason for not living here = [ living elsewhere- relationship ended, living elsewhere- moved to a nursing/residential home, living elsewhere- other reason]) [DhWhat = 2 , 3, 4]*

**DHMOV \*@**

We may need to collect some more details about [^<correct first name>] but we will come back to this later.

INTERVIEWER: Press 1 and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Person > HHPprev) OR (Person = DhBack) [Person > HHPprev OR Person = DhBack]*

**DHJOINY \*@**

When did [^<correct first name>] move[^BLANK/back] into this household?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**DHJOINM \*@**

(When did [^<correct first name>] move into this household?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the month at this question.

- 01 January
- 02 February

```

| | | | | 03 March
| | | | | 04 April
| | | | | 05 May
| | | | | 06 June
| | | | | 07 July
| | | | | 08 August
| | | | | 09 September
| | | | | 10 October
| | | | | 11 November
| | | | | 12 December
| | | | | 13 Winter (start of year)
| | | | | 14 Spring
| | | | | 15 Summer
| | | | | 16 Autumn
| | | | | 17 Winter (end of year)
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF Person number in Household Grid >= size of household at previous wave
| | | | | [Person >= HHPPrev]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHELSE *@
| | | | | Does anyone else live here [^BLANK/now]?[INTERVIEWER: If the new entrant is a
| | | | | returner who was listed at the beginning of the interview, don't answer this question
| | | | | but scroll back to DhBack and code the relevant person number]
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (anyone else lives here = Yes) AND ((ChTot - ChCov) > 0) [DhElse = 1 AND ChTot
| | | | | ChCov > 0]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHELSEC *@
| | | | | Is this person a child of someone who lives here[^BLANK/or who
| | | | | used to live here]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether is child of someone living here = Yes [DhElseC = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHELSCY *@
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Check if it is any of these children recorded at the previous
| | | | | interview. CODE ONE ONLY.
| | | | | 01 [^<Name of child1>]
| | | | | 02 [^<Name of child2>]
| | | | | 03 [^<Name of child3>]
| | | | | 04 [^<Name of child4>]
| | | | | 05 [^<Name of child5>]
| | | | | 06 [^<Name of child6>]
| | | | | 07 [^<Name of child7>]
| | | | | 08 [^<Name of child8>]
| | | | | 09 [^<Name of child9>]
| | | | | 10 [^<Name of child10>]
| | | | | 11 [^<Name of child11>]

```



```

| | | | | IF whether participant could have institution interview in person = No [DhMiPrx = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHMIPWP *@
| | | | | Is there someone who could answer on behalf in the future?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether someone could do proxy institution interview = Yes [DhMiPWP =1]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHMIPWH *@
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Who could answer on behalf of ?
| | | | | Priority order is spouse/partner, next-of-kin, stable address, care home manager.
| | | | | 97 : Someone else
| | | | | INTERVIEWER:
| | | | | Please record details on ARF at section C.
| | | | | Range: 1..97
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER

DHRESP *
INTERVIEWER: Code who answered the Household Grid.
CODE ONE ONLY.
97 : Not a Household Member
Range: 1..97
[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

IF INTERVIEWER: Code who answer = 97 [DhResp = 97]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHWARN *@
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: The Household Questionnaire should only be answered by a non-household
| | | | | member if all household members eligible for interview are incapacitated.
| | | | | 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER

IF (Total Eligible for interview A> = 1) AND (INTERVIEWER: Code who answer the household
grid = RESPONSE) [EligBT >= 1 AND DhResp = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | LOOP FOR PP:= 1 TO 20
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (QAHD.QAuxChild.Covered <> Yes) AND (ChCovered <> Yes)
| | | | | [QAHD.QAuxChild.Covered <> Yes AND ChCovered <> Yes]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (ParNr> 0) AND (LEN (Parent) 1) [ParNr> 0 AND LEN Parent 1]
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | | IF child's first name = RESPONSE [Name = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | DHCGN *@
| | | | | Our records show that when we last interviewed , [^you/he/she] had a child called
| | | | | [^<child's first name>], [^whose date of birth is of birth/who was aged ]. Are these

```

```

| | | | details correct?
| | | | 1 Yes - Details correct
| | | | 2 No - Some details need changing
| | | | 3 Yes - Child has since died
| | | | 4 No - Respondent never had this child
| | | | ELSE
| | | | IF First line of new parents = Yes [Dh1st = 1]
| | | | DHCH *@
| | | | Do you have any[^BLANK/other] children who do not live here
| | | | [^BLANK/ and who have not been mentioned already]?
| | | | IF ASKED: Step, foster and adoptive children can be included.
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | | IF whether has children not living here = Yes [DhCh = 1]
| | | | DHNCH *@
| | | | In total, how many[^BLANK/other] living children do you have?
| | | | IF ASKED: Step, foster and adoptive children can be included.
| | | | Range: 0..20
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | IF ((child's details check= [Correct, Change some]) OR (Child number <= total number of
| | | | living children)) AND (whether have children who do not live here <> No)
| | | | [DhCgN = 1, 2 OR DhC <= DhNCh AND DhCh <> 2]
| | | | IF (Name = RESPONSE) AND (child's details check<> Corr) [Name = RESPONSE
| | | | AND DhCgN <> 1]
| | | | DHNC *@
| | | | INTERVIEWER: ASK OR CODE: Is the first name ([^<child's first name>]) correct?
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | IF (child's name check = No) OR (Name <> RESPONSE) [DhNC = 2 OR Name <>
| | | | RESPONSE]
| | | | DHCNA *@
| | | | What is the first name of [^this/the oldest/the next] child?
| | | | String: 20
| | | | IF (Sex = RESPONSE) AND (child's details check <> Correct) [Sex = RESPONSE
| | | | AND DhCgN <> 1]
| | | | DHSEXC *@
| | | | ASK OR CODE: Can I just check, is [^<first name of child>]'s
| | | | [^child's sex]?
| | | | 1 Yes

```

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (child's sex check = No) OR (Sex <> RESPONSE) [DHSexC = 2 OR Sex <> RESPONSE]*

**DHCS \***

INTERVIEWER: Code or ask [^<first name of child>]'s sex.

1 Male

2 Female

*IF (DoB = RESPONSE) AND (child's details check <> Corr) [DoB = RESPONSE AND DhCgN <> 1]*

**DHDOBC \***

Can I just check, [^is/was] [^<first name of child>]'s date of birth [^<date of birth>]?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (child's date of birth check = No) OR (DoB <> RESPONSE) [DHDoBC = 2 OR DoB <> RESPONSE]*

**DHCDB \*@**

What is [^<first name of child>]'s date of birth?

*IF child's date of birth = NONRESPONSE [DhCDB = NONRESPONSE]*

**DHCAG \***

What was [^<first name of child>]'s age last birthday?

Range: 0..120

LOOP FOR chloop:= 1 TO 16

*IF Is person k (still) present inHH = Yes [DMPres = 1]*

*IF child's relationship to household members = RESPONSE [CRel = RESPONSE]*

**DHRC \***

And, is [^<first name of child>] [^your/names] [^husband/wife/partner etc.]?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether husband/wife/partner = No) OR (CRel <> RESPONSE) [DHRC = 2 OR CRel <> RESPONSE]*

**DHCR \*@**

SHOW CARD A...What is [^<first name of child>]'s relationship to ? Please choose a number from this card.

01 Husband/Wife

02 Partner/cohabitee



```

| | 06 [^Person number 6]
| | 07 [^Person number 7]
| | 08 [^Person number 8]
| | 09 [^Person number 9]
| | 10 [^Person number 10]
| | 11 [^Person number 11]
| | 12 [^Person number 12]
| | 13 [^Person number 13]
| | 14 [^Person number 14]
| | 15 [^Person number 15]
| | 16 [^Person number 16]
| | [code maximum 16 out of 16 possible responses]
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | LOOP FOR myloop:= 1 TO 16
| |
| |   IF Will be computed / sorted out <> 1 [IndStat <> 1]
| |
| |   ELSE
| |
| |     IF Will be computed / sorted out = 1 [IndStat = 1]
| |
| |       IF (CoupleN[myloop] = [1 .. 16]) AND (IndStat = 1) [CoupleN = 1 - 16 AND
| |       IndStat[CoupleN[myloop]] = 1]
| |
| |         IF myloop < CoupleN]
| |
| |           DHIASEP *@
| |           Later in the interview, I would like to ask some questions about finances
| |           generally, for example income and savings.
| |           Can I just check, [^do/does] keep [^your/Name's] finances totally
| |           separate?
| |           1 Yes
| |           2 No
| |
| |         END OF FILTER
| |
| |       ELSE
| |
| |         IF (CoupleN[myloop] = [1 .. 16]) AND (QAHD.P[CoupleN
| |         [myloop]].DhWhat = LivEIsM) [CoupleN = 1 - 16 AND QAHD.P.DhWhat =
| |         3]
| |
| |           DHIASEP *@
| |           Later in the interview, I would like to ask some questions about finances
| |           generally, for example income and savings.
| |           Can I just check, [^do/does] keep [^your/Name's] finances totally
| |           separate?
| |           1 Yes
| |           2 No
| |
| |         END OF FILTER
| |
| |
| |

```

| | END OF FILTER  
| |  
| | END OF FILTER  
| |  
| END OF FILTER

*IF Total Eligible for interview A = 2 [EligCT = 2]*

| | **DHNOW \*@**

| | INTERVIEWER: Are you about to begin a concurrent interview with [^ and ]?

| | The order in which respondents will appear in the session would be:

| | [^BLANK/INTERVIEWER: if respondents have separate finances - be sure they are willing to answer questions about their finances in front of each other before interviewing them together]

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

| | *IF INTERVIEWER: Are you about to begin concurrent interview = Yes [DhNow = 1]*

| | **DHSURY \***

| | INTERVIEWER: Code 1 here to confirm that Individual Session one will be a concurrent interview with [^ and ] The order in which respondents will appear in the session will be :

| | Note : This cannot then be changed.

| | 1 Correct

| | 2 Not correct

| | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

| | END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

LOOP FOR myloop:= 1 TO 16

| | *IF INTERVIEWER: Are you about to begin concurrent interview <> Yes [DhNow <> 1]*

| | *IF whether keep finances seperate = No [DhlaSep = 2]*

| | *IF QAHD.P.DhName = Yes [QAHD.P.DhName = 1]*

| | **DHIAWHO \***

| | INTERVIEWER: Check ARF label for the number of the respondent who answered the finances questions last time. Suggest to the respondent that the same person answers IA this time.

| | READ OUT: 'I will only need to ask one of you the questions about your finances. Which of you would be most able to answer these questions?'

| | CODE ONE ONLY.

| | 1 [^<Name>]

| | 2 [^<Name of partner>]

| | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

```

IF Set to Yes if EligCt=2 and DHH = Yes [DH2C = 1]
|
ELSE
|
| IF Total Eligible for interview A = 1 [EligCT = 1]
|
| ELSE
|
| IF Total Eligible for interview A > 1 [EligCT 1]
|
| | DHHOU *
| | INTERVIEWER: Check ARF label for the number of the respondent who answered the
| | housing questions last time. Suggest to the respondent that the same person answers HO
| | this time.
| | READ OUT: 'Some questions in the interview are about your household's housing and
| | housing finances. I will only need to ask these to one person.[^BLANK/Last time we
| | interviewed you, answered these questions] Which of you would be the most able
| | to answer questions about housing [^BLANK/this time]?'
| | CODE ONE ONLY.
| | Range: 1..97
|
| END OF FILTER
END OF FILTER

```

## INDIVIDUAL DEMOGRAPHICS MODULE (ID)

### DIINTA \* @

I'd like to ask a few (more) questions about [^you / Name] and [^your / his / her] family.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

### DIDOB

Can I just check that your date of birth is [^<date of birth>]?

1 Correct

2 Incorrect

*IF whether date of birth correct = Incorrect [DiDob = 2]*

|

### DIDBN @

| What is your date of birth?

|

END OF FILTER

*IF date of birth = don't know [DiDBN = DONTKNOW]*

|

### DIAG @

| What was your age last birthday?

| Range: 0..120

|

END OF FILTER

*IF (Name of proxy respondent <> [1 .. 16]) [DiInt <> (1 - 16)]*

|

### DIPRE \*\*

| SHOW CARD A

| (Can I just check,) what is your relationship to [^him / her]?

| 01 Husband / Wife

| 02 Partner / cohabitee

| 03 Natural son / daughter

| 04 Adopted son / daughter

| 05 Foster son / daughter

| 06 Step son / daughter / child of partner

| 07 Son / daughter-in-law

| 08 Natural parent

| 09 Adoptive parent

| 10 Foster parent

| 11 Stepparent / parent's partner

| 12 Parent-in-law

| 13 Natural brother / sister

| 14 Half-brother / sister

| 15 Step-brother / sister

| 16 Adopted brother / sister

| 17 Foster brother / sister

| 18 Brother / sister-in-law

| 19 Grandchild

| 20 Grandparent

| 21 Other relative

| 22 Other non-relative

| 96 (THIS CODE NOT USED)

| [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

|

| **[CHECK ID1]**  
|  
| END OF FILTER

**DISEXC \***

ASK OR CODE: Can I just check that [^you are / he is / she is] [^male / female]?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether sex correct = No [DiSexC = 2]*

|  
| **DISEX \***  
| INTERVIEWER: Code [^Name's] sex.  
| 1 Male  
| 2 Female  
|  
| END OF FILTER

**DIMAR \***

SHOW CARD B

What is [^your / Name's] current legal marital status?

- 1 Single, that is never married
- 2 Married, first and only marriage
- 3 Remarried, second or later marriage
- 4 Legally separated
- 5 Divorced
- 6 Widowed

**[CHECK ID2]**

*IF (grandchild or great-grandchild in household grid <> Yes) AND (any living grandchildren or great-grandchildren in Wave 1 <> Yes) [GCINHH <> Yes AND DiGrand (Wave 1) <> Yes]*

|  
| **DIGRAN \***  
| [^Do you / Does ^Name] have any living grandchildren or great-grandchildren?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
|  
| END OF FILTER

*IF any living grandchildren or great-grandchildren in Wave 1 = Yes) [DiGrand (Wave 1) = Yes]*

|  
| **DIGNMYC \***  
| Last time we interviewed [^you / Name] on [^<date of last interview>], [^you / he / she] told us  
| that [^you / he / she] had [^<number of grandchildren or great-grandchildren reported at last  
| interview>] living grandchildren or great-grandchildren. Is this still the case?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
|  
| END OF FILTER

*IF (grandchild or great-grandchild in household grid = Yes AND any living grandchildren or great-grandchildren in Wave 1 <> Yes) OR whether has any grandchildren or great-grandchildren = Yes OR whether same number of living grandchildren or great-grandchildren as last interview = No) [(GCINHH = Yes AND DiGrand (Wave 1) <> Yes) OR DiGran = 1 OR DiGnMyC = 2]*

|

| **DIGNMY** \*  
| How many living grandchildren or great-grandchildren [^do you / does [^Name]] have?  
| Range: 0..97

| **[CHECK ID3-ID4]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF number of living brothers or sisters > 0 [DiSib (Wave 1) > 0]*

| **DISIBC** \*

| Last time we interviewed [^you / ^Name] in [^<date of last interview>], [^you / he / she] told  
| us that [^you / he / she] had [^<number of brothers or sisters reported at last interview>] living  
| brothers or sisters. [^Do you / Does he / Does she] still have [^<number of brothers or sisters  
| reported at last interview>] living brothers or sisters?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| END OF FILTER

| *IF (whether same number of living brothers or sisters as last interview = No) OR (number of  
| living brothers or sisters at Wave 1 = NON RESPONSE OR EMPTY) [DiSibC = 2 OR DiSib  
| (Wave 1) = NON RESPONSE OR EMPTY]*

| **DISIB** \*

| How many living brothers or sisters [^do you / does ^Name] have?  
| IF ASKED: Foster / adoptive / step-brothers / sisters can be included.  
| Range: 0..97

| **[CHECK ID5-ID6]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF (natural mother still alive at Wave 1 <> No) AND (natural mother in household grid <> Yes)  
| [DinMaD (Wave 1) <> No AND MaINH H <> Yes]*

| **DINMA** \*

| Is [^your / ^Name's] natural mother still alive?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| *IF whether natural mother alive = Yes [DiNMA = 1]*

| **DIANM** \*

| How old is [^your / ^Name's] natural mother?

| Range: 16..120

| **[CHECK ID7-ID9]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| *IF ((natural mother still alive at Wave 1 = No) AND (age of mother when died at Wave 1 <>  
| RESPONSE)) OR (natural mother still alive = No) [(DinMaD (Wave 1) = No AND DiMADD  
| (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) OR DiNMA = 2]*

| **DIMAD \***

| [^Last time we interviewed [you / ^Name] [you / he / she] told us that [your / his / her] natural  
| mother had died, can I just check, how old was she when she died? /How old was [your /  
| ^Name's] natural mother / when she died/?

| INTERVIEWER: If the respondent doesn't know the exact age, ask for an estimate.

| Range: 0..120

| **[CHECK ID10]**

| END OF FILTER

*IF (natural mother still alive at Wave 1 = No OR whether natural mother still alive = No) AND  
(cause of death of natural mother at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) [DinMaD (Wave 1) = No OR  
DiNMA = 2 AND DiCDNM (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| **DICDNM \***

| SHOW CARD C

| [^Last time we interviewed [you / ^Name] [you / he / she] told us that [^your / his / her]  
| natural mother had died, can I just check, did she die from any of the conditions on this card /  
| Did [^your / ^Name's] natural mother] die from any of the conditions on this card]?

| CODE ONE ONLY.

| 1 Cancer

| 2 Heart Attack

| 3 Stroke

| 4 Other cardiovascular related illness

| 5 Respiratory disease

| 96 None of these

| END OF FILTER

*IF (natural father still alive at Wave 1 <> No) AND (natural father in household grid <> Yes)  
[DinFaD (Wave 1) <> No AND PaINHH <> Yes]*

| **DINFA \***

| Is [^your / ^Name's] natural father still alive?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| *IF whether natural father alive = Yes [DiNFA = 1]*

| **DIANF \***

| How old is [^your / ^Name's] natural father?

| Range: 16..120

| **[CHECK ID11-ID13]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

*IF ((natural father still alive at Wave 1 = No) AND (age of father when died <> RESPONSE))  
OR (natural father still alive = No) [(DinFaD (Wave 1) = No AND DiFADD (Wave 1) <>  
RESPONSE) OR DiNFA = 2]*

| **DIFAD \***  
| [^Last time we interviewed [^you / ^Name] [^you / he / she] told us that [^your / his / her]  
| natural father had died, can I just check, how old was he when he died /  
| How old was [^your / ^Name's] natural father when he died?  
| INTERVIEWER: If the respondent doesn't know the exact age, ask for an estimate.  
| Range: 0..120

| **[CHECK ID14]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF ((natural father still alive at Wave 1 = No) OR (whether natural father still alive = No)) AND  
| cause of death of natural father at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) [(DinFaD (Wave 1) = No OR DiNFA  
| = 2) AND DiCDNF (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| **DICDNF \***  
| SHOW CARD C  
| [Last time we interviewed [you / ^Name] [^you / he / she] told us that [^your / his / her] natural |  
| father had died, can I just check, did he die from any of the conditions on this card /  
| Did [^your / ^Name's] natural father] die from any of the conditions on this card]?  
| CODE ONE ONLY.  
| 1 Cancer  
| 2 Heart Attack  
| 3 Stroke  
| 4 Other cardiovascular related illness  
| 5 Respiratory disease  
| 96 None of these

| END OF FILTER

| *IF who lived with for most of childhood <> RESPONSE [DiKLiv (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| **DIKLIV \***  
| Who did [^you / he / she] live with for most of childhood?  
| 01 Both natural parents  
| 02 Natural mother and step-father  
| 03 Natural father and step-mother  
| 04 Natural mother  
| 05 Natural father  
| 06 Step-parents  
| 07 Foster Parents  
| 08 Adoptive parents  
| 09 Children's Home  
| 95 Other (specify)

| END OF FILTER

| *IF who lived with for most of childhood = Other [DiKLiv = 95]*

| **DIKLO \* @**  
| INTERVIEWER: write in who respondent lived with.  
| String 20

| **[Open responses to Diklo were coded and then incorporated into Dikliv. Diklivc  
| identifies that an open response was given at Diklo and incorporated into Dikliv]**

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (who lived with for most of childhood <> Children's Home AND who lived with for most of childhood reported at Wave 1 <> Children's Home AND occupation of parent / carer when respondent was 14 at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) [DiKLiv <> 9 AND DiKLiv (Wave 1) <> 9 AND DiFJob (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

|  
**DIFJOB \***

| What was [^your / Name's] [^main carer's / father's / step-father's / foster father's / adoptive father's / mother's] main occupation when [^you were / he was / she was] 14?

- | 01 Armed Forces
- | 02 Manager or senior official in someone else's business
- | 03 Running his own business
- | 04 Professional or technical
- | 05 Administrative, clerical or secretarial
- | 06 Skilled trade
- | 07 Caring, leisure, travel or personal services
- | 08 Sales or customer service
- | 09 Plant, process or machine drivers or operators
- | 10 Other jobs
- | 11 Something else
- | 12 Casual jobs
- | 13 Retired
- | 14 Unemployed
- | 15 Sick / disabled

|  
END OF FILTER

**DITSET \* @**

INTERVIEWER: The Individual Demographics section is finished.  
Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.  
Range: 1..1  
[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

## HEALTH MODULE (HE)

### HEHELF

Now I would like to ask you some questions about your health. Would you say your health is...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 excellent,
- 2 very good,
- 3 good,
- 4 fair,
- 5 or, poor?

### HELL\*

[^Do you / Does [^name]] have any long-standing illness, disability or infirmity? By long-standing I mean anything that has troubled [^you / [^name]] over a period of time, or that is likely to affect [^you / [^name]] over a period of time.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether has long-standing illness = yes [Heill = 1]*

|

### | HELIM\*

| (Does this / Do these) illness(es) or disability(ies) limit [^your / [^name's]] activities in any way?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

|

END OF FILTER

### HELWK

Do you have any health problem or disability that limits the kind or amount of paid work you could do, should you want to?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether health limits paid work = yes [HeLWk = 1]*

|

### | HETEMP

| Is this a health problem or disability that you expect to last less than three months?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

|

END OF FILTER

### HEFINT @

The next questions ask about difficulties you may have walking a quarter of a mile because of a health problem. By health problem we mean any long-term physical, mental or emotional problem or illness.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

### HEFUNC\*

By [^yourself / himself / herself] and without using any special equipment, how much difficulty [^do you / does [^name]] have walking for a quarter of a mile? [^Do you / Does he / Does she] have...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 some difficulty,

3 much difficulty,  
4 or, [^are you / is he / is she] unable to do this?

*IF difficulty with walking a quarter of a mile = [some, much, unable] [HeFunc = [2, 3, 4]]*

**HEATT**

SHOW CARD D

What are the symptoms that [^prevent you from / cause you to have difficulty] walking a quarter of a mile?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'What others?'

Code all that apply.

01 Chest pain

02 Fatigue / too tired

03 Shortness of breath

04 Tremor(s)

05 Pain in leg or foot

06 Swelling in leg or foot

07 Incontinence or fear of incontinence

08 Seeing difficulty

09 Hearing difficulty

10 Confusion

11 Difficulty concentrating

12 Memory problems

13 Unsteady on feet or balance problems

14 Lightheaded or dizziness

15 Fear of falling

16 Anxiety or fear

17 Amputation

95 Some other problem or symptom

***[Multiple responses to HEATT are recorded in variables HEATT01 to HEATT14]  
[code maximum 18 out of 18 possible responses]***

*IF more than one symptom [HeAtt.CARDINAL > 1]*

**HEATA**

SHOW CARD D

And which of these is the main symptom that [^prevents you from walking / makes it difficult for you to walk] a quarter of a mile?

01 Chest pain

02 Fatigue / too tired

03 Shortness of breath

04 Tremor(s)

05 Pain in leg or foot

06 Swelling in leg or foot

07 Incontinence or fear of incontinence

08 Seeing difficulty

09 Hearing difficulty

10 Confusion

11 Difficulty concentrating

12 Memory problems

13 Unsteady on feet or balance problems

14 Lightheaded or dizziness

15 Fear of falling

16 Anxiety or fear

17 Amputation

| 95 Some other problem or symptom

| **[CHECK HE1]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF symptoms affecting walking = [unsteady, dizziness, fear of falling] [HeAtt = [13, 14, 15]]*

| **HEBALB**

| Did you join an exercise programme or get physiotherapy to improve your walking or balance?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| *IF whether does exercise / physiotherapy to improve walking / balance = yes*

| *[Hebalb = 1]*

| **HEBALA**

| Did you join the exercise programme or get physiotherapy after a doctor or nurse recommended you did?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| END OF FILTER

| **HEBALC**

| Did any doctor or nurse suggest a 'stick' or 'zimmer frame' to improve your walking or balance?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| *IF symptoms affecting walking = [unsteady, dizziness, fear of falling] [HeATT = [13, 14, 15]]*

| **HEAID**

| Do you use any of the following?

| INTERVIEWER: Read out and code all that apply.

| Only include personal alarms used to call for assistance after falls etc.

| 1 A cane or walking stick

| 2 A zimmer frame or walker

| 3 A manual wheelchair

| 4 An electric wheelchair

| 5 A buggy or scooter

| 6 Special eating utensils

| 7 A personal alarm

| 8 Elbow crutches

| 96 None of these

| **[Multiple responses to HEAID are recorded in variables HEAID1 to HEAID5]**

| **[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE2]**

*IF ((walking aids used = none) AND (walking aids used at Wave 1 = RESPONSE)) AND NOT (walking aids used at Wave 1 = none) [((HeAid = 96) AND (HeAid (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)) AND NOT (HeAid (Wave 1) = 96)]*

**HEAIDC**

Our records from your last interview show that you were using [^list of aids at Wave 1].

INTERVIEWER: Code 1 below unless respondent spontaneously disputes this record.

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether confirms previous walking aid = no [HeAidC = 2]*

**HEAIDW**

INTERVIEWER: Code which aid respondent disputes.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

1 [^A cane or walking stick]

2 [^A zimmer frame or walker]

3 [^A manual wheelchair]

4 [^An electric wheelchair]

5 [^A buggy or scooter]

6 [^Special eating utensils]

7 [^A personal alarm]

8 [^Elbow crutches]

**[Multiple responses to HEAIDW are recorded in variables HEAIW01]**

**[code maximum 8 out of 8 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE3]**

*IF type of walking aid disputed = RESPONSE [HeAidW = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR EACH WALKING AID DISPUTED

**HEAIDN**

1 Never used [^[idx] type of walking aid]

2 No longer use [^[idx] type of walking aid]

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of walking aid disputed. Responses are recorded in heain01, heain05-heain07.]**

END OF FILTER

**HEEYE\***

Is [^your / [^name's]] eyesight (using glasses or corrective lens if [^you use / he uses / she uses] them)...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...excellent,
- 2 very good,
- 3 good,
- 4 fair,
- 5 or, poor?
- 6 SPONTANEOUS: Registered or legally blind

*IF eyesight condition <> blind [Heeye <> 6]*

**HEFRND**

How good is your eyesight for seeing things at a distance, like recognising a friend across the street (using glasses or corrective lens if use them)? Would you say it is...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...excellent,
- 2 very good,
- 3 good,
- 4 fair,
- 5 or, poor?

**HEPAP**

How good is your eyesight for seeing things up close, like reading ordinary newspaper print (using glasses or corrective lens if use them)? Would you say it is...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...excellent,
- 2 very good,
- 3 good,
- 4 fair,
- 5 or, poor?

END OF FILTER

*IF (types of eye conditions at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (types of eye conditions at Wave 1 = none) [(HeOpt (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeOpt (Wave 1) = 96)]*

**HEOPC\***

Our records show that when we last interviewed [^you / ^name]] [^on date of last interview], [^you / he / she] said that [^you / he / she] had had (or had been told by a doctor [^you / he / she] had had) [^glaucoma or suspected glaucoma / diabetic eye disease / macular degeneration / cataracts].

INTERVIEWER: Code 1 below unless respondent spontaneously disputes this record.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether confirms previous eye condition = no [HeOpC = 2]*

**HEOPW\***

INTERVIEWER: Code which condition(s) respondent disputes. Code all that apply.

- 1 [^Glaucoma or suspected glaucoma]
- 2 [^Diabetic eye disease]
- 3 [^Macular degeneration]
- 4 [^Cataracts]

**[Multiple responses to HEOPW are recorded in variables HEOPW1 to HEOPW2]**

**[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE4]**

```

|| LOOP FOR EACH EYE CONDITION DISPUTED
||
|| HEOPN*
|| INTERVIEWER: Code reason why respondent disputes the [^glaucoma or suspected
|| glaucoma / diabetic eye disease / macular degeneration / cataracts] report.
|| Respondent says...
|| 1 Never had
|| 2 No longer has
|| 3 Did not have previously, but has now
||
|| [There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of illness
|| respondent disputes. Responses are recorded in heopn1 to heopn4]
||
|| END OF FILTER
| ELSE
|
| IF whether confirms previous eye condition = yes [HeOpC = 1]
|
| HEOPS*
| [^Do you / Does [^name]] still have [^glaucoma or suspected glaucoma / diabetic eye
| disease / macular degeneration / cataracts]?
| 1 Yes
| 2 No
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
END OF FILTER

```

**HEOPT\***

[^Has / Apart from what you have already told us and thinking about what has happened since we last saw [^you / ^name] on [^date of last interview] has] a doctor or optician [^BLANK / ever] told [^you / ^name] that [^you have / he has / she has] (or [^you / he / she] had) [^BLANK / any of these other conditions]...

INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply.

Include Diabetic Retinopathy in code 2.

Include age related Maculopathy in code 3.

1 [^Glaucoma or suspected glaucoma]

2 [^Diabetic eye disease]

3 [^Macular degeneration]

4 [^Cataracts]

96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HEOPT are recorded in variables HEOPT1 to HEOPT2]**

**[code maximum 4 out of 5 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE5-HE9]**

*IF ((types of eye conditions = cataract OR (types of eye conditions at Wave 1 = cataract AND whether confirms previous eye condition = yes)) AND (eyesight condition = [fair, poor, blind] OR eyesight at a distance = [fair, poor] OR eyesight up close = [fair, poor]))*  
*(((Heopt = 4 OR (Heopt (Wave 1) = 4 AND HeOpC = 1)) AND (Heeye = [4, 5, 6] OR Hefrnd = [4, 5] OR Hepap = [4, 5])))*

|

| **HEDREYE**

| Did any doctor or optician recommend that you have your cataracts removed?

- | 1 Yes  
| 2 No

|  
| END OF FILTER

*IF ((types of eye conditions at Wave 1 = cataracts) OR (types of eye conditions = cataracts))  
AND ((whether confirms previous eye condition = yes) OR whether ever had cataract surgery at  
Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) [((HeOpt (Wave 1) = 4) OR (HeOpt = 4)) AND ((HeOpC = 1) OR Hecat  
(Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)]*

| **HECAT\***

| [[^Have you / Has he / Has she] / Since we last talked to [^you / [^name]] on [^date of last  
| interview] [^have you / has he / has she]] [^BLANK / ever] had cataract surgery?

- | 1 Yes  
| 2 No

|  
| END OF FILTER

**HEHEAR\***

Is [^your / [^name's]] hearing (using a hearing aid if [^you use / he uses / she uses] one)...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...excellent,  
2 very good,  
3 good,  
4 fair,  
5 or, poor?

**HEHRA**

Do you find it difficult to follow a conversation if there is background noise, such as TV, radio or  
children playing (using a hearing aid as usual)?

- 1 Yes  
2 No

*IF (hearing = [fair, poor]) OR (whether has difficulty following conversation = yes)  
[(Hehear = [4, 5]) OR (HeHra = 1)]*

| **HEHRB**

| Have you told a doctor or nurse about your hearing problems?

- | 1 Yes  
| 2 No

|  
| *IF whether told doctor / nurse about hearing problems = yes [HeHrb = 1]*

|| **HEHRC**

|| When you told the doctor or nurse about your hearing problems, did he or she refer you to an  
|| ear specialist to check your hearing?

|| INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'By ear specialist we mean an ENT doctor, an ear nose and throat  
|| doctor, an otolaryngologist, or an audiologist. An audiologist may perform an extensive  
|| hearing test.'

- || 1 Yes  
|| 2 No

|| **HEHRD**

|| Has any doctor or nurse or ear specialist recommended a hearing aid?

1 Yes  
2 No

*IF whether been recommended a hearing aid = yes [HeHrd = 1]*

**HEHRE**

Did you get a hearing aid?

1 Yes  
2 No

*IF whether got a hearing aid = yes [HeHre = 1]*

**HEHRF**

Did an ear specialist or doctor or nurse teach you how to use your hearing aid?

1 Yes  
2 No

**HEHRG**

Do you use your hearing aid?

1 Yes  
2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (age >= 65) [AgeOf >= 65]*

**HEBPCHK**

In the past year, has any doctor or nurse checked your blood pressure?

1 Yes  
2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = none) [(HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 96)]*

LOOP FOR EACH CVD CONDITION AT WAVE 1

**HEDIAC\***

INTERVIEWER: Please check the following sentence before reading out loud.

[^BLANK / Our records show that when we last interviewed [^you / [^name]] on [^date of last interview] [^you / he / she] said that [^you / he / she] had had (or had been told by a doctor [^you / he / she] had had) / Our records also show that when we last interviewed [^you / [^name]] on [^date of last interview] [^you / he / she] said that [^you / he / she] had had (or had been told by a doctor [^you / he / she] had had)) [^high blood pressure or hypertension / angina / a heart attack (including myocardial infarction / or coronary thrombosis) / congestive heart failure / a heart murmur / an abnormal heart rhythm / diabetes or high blood sugar / a stroke (cerebral vascular disease)].

INTERVIEWER: Code 1 below unless respondent spontaneously disputes this record.

1 Yes

|| 2 No  
 || 3 Not read out as didn't make sense  
 ||  
 || **[There is a separate variable for responses about each CVD condition. Responses are recorded in hediac1-hediac9.]**  
 ||  
 || *IF whether confirms previous CVD condition = no [HeDiaC = 2]*  
 ||  
 || **HEDIAN\***  
 || INTERVIEWER: Code reason why respondent disputes having had [^high blood pressure or hypertension / angina / a heart attack (including myocardial infarction / or coronary thrombosis) / congestive heart failure / a heart murmur / an abnormal heart rhythm / diabetes or high blood sugar / a stroke (cerebral vascular disease)]. Respondent says...  
 || 1 Never had  
 || 2 No longer has  
 || 3 Did not have previously, but has now  
 ||  
 || **[[[ There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of illness] Responses are recorded in hedian1 to hedian9]**  
 ||  
 || ELSE  
 ||  
 || *IF (whether confirms previous CVD condition = yes) AND NOT (Wave 1 condition = [Heart attack or stroke]) [(HeDiaC = 1) AND NOT (PSeq = [3, 8])]*  
 ||  
 || **HEDIAS\* @**  
 || [^Do you / Does [^name]] still have [^high blood pressure or hypertension / angina / a heart attack etc.]?  
 || 1 Yes  
 || 2 No  
 ||  
 || **[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of illness] Responses to Hedias are recorded in variables Hedias1 and Hedias2 @]**  
 ||  
 || END OF FILTER  
 ||  
 || END OF FILTER

**HEDIAA\***  
 SHOW CARD E  
 [^Has / Apart from what you have already told us, and thinking about what has happened since we last saw [^you / ^name]] on [^date of last interview] has] a doctor [^BLANK / ever] told [^you / ^name]] that [^you have / he has / she has] (or have had) any of the [^BLANK / other] conditions on this card?  
 INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'What others?' Code all that apply.  
 01 [^High blood pressure or hypertension]  
 02 [^Angina]  
 03 [^A heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis)]  
 04 [^Congestive heart failure]  
 05 [^A heart murmur]

- 06 [^An abnormal heart rhythm]
- 07 [^Diabetes or high blood sugar]
- 08 [^A stroke (cerebral vascular disease)]
- 09 [^High cholesterol]
- 95 [^Any other heart trouble (SPECIFY)]
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HEDIAA are recorded in variables HEDIA01 to HEDIA09]  
[code maximum 10 out of 11 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE10-HE11]**

*IF (type of CVD condition = other) [(HeDiaa = 95]*

| **HEDIX\* @**  
| INTERVIEWER: Enter name of other heart condition.  
| String 30

| **[Open responses to Hedix are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Hedaa  
| (recorded in HEDIA01 to HEDIA09). These merged responses are recorded in variables  
| Hedim01 to Hedim07]**

| END OF FILTER

**[CHECK HE12]**

*IF (type of CVD condition = high blood pressure) OR (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = high  
blood pressure AND whether confirms previous high blood pressure condition = yes)  
[(HeDiaa = 1) OR (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 1 AND HeDiaC = 1)]*

| **HEHIBP**  
| Has a doctor or nurse explained high blood pressure in a way you could understand at any  
| time since you were first told you had high blood pressure?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| **HEHIBPA**  
| In general, have doctors or nurses given you any choice about how to treat your high blood  
| pressure?  
| INTERVIEWER: Choices may include whether to treat the high blood pressure at all, use  
| medication or use an alternative approach.  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
| 3 SPONTANEOUS: Respondent reports having no preferences for treatment

| **HEHIBPB**  
| Some doctors suggest that some patients take medication to lower their blood pressure. Did  
| a doctor or nurse ever suggest that you take any medication to lower your blood pressure?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| **HEMDA\***  
| [^Are you / Is [^name]] currently taking any medication, tablets or pills for high blood  
| pressure?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE AND type of heart condition = angina) OR (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = angina AND whether confirms previous angina condition = yes AND age first told had angina <> RESPONSE) [(HeDiaa (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE AND HeDiaa = 2) OR (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 2 AND HeDiaC = 1 AND HeAgA (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)]*

| **HEAGA\***

| Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had angina?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

| Range: 0..110

| **[CHECK HE13-HE14]**

| ELSE

| *IF ((type of CVD condition = angina) AND (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = angina))[(HeDiaa = 2) AND (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 2)]*

| | **HEAGAR**

| | When in the last two years were you first told by a doctor that you had angina?

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.

| | 01 January

| | 02 February

| | 03 March

| | 04 April

| | 05 May

| | 06 June

| | 07 July

| | 08 August

| | 09 September

| | 10 October

| | 11 November

| | 12 December

| | **HEAGARY**

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

| | Range: 2002..2004

| | **[CHECK HE15-HE16]**

| END OF FILTER

*IF type of CVD condition = angina [HeDiaa = 2]*

| **HEYRA**

| In the last two years, have you had any angina or chest pains due to your heart?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| END OF FILTER

IF ((type of CVD condition <> RESPONSE) AND (type of CVD condition = heart attack)) OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = heart attack) AND (whether confirms previous heart attack condition = yes) AND (age first told had heart attack <> RESPONSE)) [((HeDiaa (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiaa = 3)) OR ((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 3) AND (HeDiaC = 1) AND (HeAgB (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))]

**HEAGB\***

Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had a heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis)?

INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

Range: 0..110

**[CHECK HE17-HE18]**

END OF FILTER

IF (type of CVD condition = heart attack) AND (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) [((HeDiaa = 3) AND (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)]

**HEAGBR\***

When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had a heart attack?

INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

**HEAGBRY\***

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 2002..2004

**[CHECK HE19 - HE20]**

END OF FILTER

IF (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND (type of CVD condition = heart attack) [((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND (HeDiaa = 3)]

**HENMMI\***

How many heart attacks (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis) [^have you / has [^name]] had since we last talked to [^you / him / her] [^on date of last interview] according to a doctor?

1 1

2 2

3 3 or more

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of CVD condition = heart attack)) OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = heart attack) AND NOT (type of CVD condition = heart attack)) [((HeDiaa (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiaa = 3)) OR ((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 3) AND NOT (HeDiaa = 3))]*

| **HEYRB\***

| In the past two years, [^have you / has [^name]] had a heart attack or myocardial infarction?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of CVD condition = heart attack) AND (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE)) OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (whether had heart attack in past two years = yes)) [((HeDiaa = 3) AND (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)) OR ((HeDiaa <> RESPONSE) AND (HeYRb = 1))]*

| **HEBETA**

| Did any doctor ever tell [^you / ^name] that [^you / he / she] should take a medication called a betablocker?

| INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'The following drugs are common betas blockers: Atenolol, metoprolol, acebutolol, metoprolol, propranolol, and timolol.'

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| **HEBETB\***

| SHOW CARD F

| I would like to check whether any of the medications [^you are / ^name] is] taking are on this list of beta-blockers. Could you show me the medications, or the repeat prescription list for any medications, that [^you have / he has / she has] been taking over the past week?

| INTERVIEWER: Please check the names of all medications against CARD F to see if they are included in the list of beta-blockers. Press <1> if you identify one of the respondent's medications as being on the list, otherwise press <2>.

| PROBE: Can I just check that these are / this is a medication that [^you have / he has / she has] been taking over the past week?

| 1 Taking beta-blocker

| 2 Not taking beta-blocker

| 3 Taking other beta blocker not on the showcard

| *IF whether taking beta-blocker in past week = taking other beta-blocker [HeBetb = 3]*

| | **HEDIXA\* @**

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the name of the other beta blocker.

| | String 30

| |  
END OF FILTER

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of CVD condition = congestive heart failure)) OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = congestive heart failure) AND (whether confirms previous congestive heart failure condition = yes) AND (age first told had congestive heart failure at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)) [((HeDiaa (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiaa =*

4)) OR ((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 4) AND (HeDiaC = 1) AND (HeAgC (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))

**HEAGC\***

Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had congestive heart failure?

INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

Range: 0..110

**[CHECK HE21 - HE22]**

ELSE

*IF ((type of CVD condition = congestive heart failure) AND (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = congestive heart failure))*  
*[((HeDiaa = 4) AND (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 4))]*

**HEAGCR\***

When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had congestive heart failure?

INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

**HEAGCRY\***

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK HE23-HE24]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of heart condition = diabetes))*  
*OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = diabetes) AND (whether confirms previous diabetes condition = yes) AND (age first told had diabetes at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))*  
*[((HeDiaa (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiaa = 7)) OR ((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 7) AND (HeDiaC = 1) AND (HeAgD (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))]*

**HEAGD\***

Approximately, how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had diabetes or high blood sugar?

INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

Range: 0..110

| **[CHECK HE25]**

| ELSE

| IF ((type of CVD condition = diabetes) AND (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE)  
| AND NOT (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = diabetes))  
| [((HeDiaa = 7) AND (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 7))]

| **HEAGDR\***

| When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he /  
| she] had diabetes or high blood sugar?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.

- | 01 January
- | 02 February
- | 03 March
- | 04 April
- | 05 May
- | 06 June
- | 07 July
- | 08 August
- | 09 September
- | 10 October
- | 11 November
- | 12 December

| **HEAGDRY\***

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

| Range: 1900..2050

| **[CHECK HE26 - HE27]**

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (type of CVD condition = diabetes) OR (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = diabetes)  
[(HeDiaa = 7) OR (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 7)]

| **HEACD\***

| INTERVIEWER: ASK OR CODE: Has a doctor ever told [^you / [^name]] that [^you have / he  
| has / she has] diabetes?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| IF whether ever told had diabetes = yes [HeACd = 1]

| **HEINS\***

| [^Do you / Does [^name]] currently inject insulin for diabetes?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| **HEMDB\***

| [^Are you / Is [^name]] currently taking any tablets, pills or other medication that [^you  
| swallow / he swallows / she swallows] for diabetes?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

**HEACE**

Has a doctor discussed with [^you / [^name]] whether [^you / he / she] should take a medication called an ACE inhibitor or A2 receptor blocker?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'These drugs are also called angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin-II receptor blockers. Examples are captopril, enalapril, lisinopril, losartan, and valsartan.'

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HEACEA\***

**SHOW CARD G**

I would like to check whether any of the medications [^you are / [^name] is] taking are on this list of ACE inhibitors or A2 receptor blockers. Could you show me the medications, or the repeat prescription list for any medications, that [^you have / he has / she has] been taking over the past week?

INTERVIEWER: Please check the names of all medications to see if they are included in the list of ACE inhibitors or A2 receptor blockers. Press <1> if you identify one respondent's medications as being on the list of ACE inhibitors or A2 receptor blockers, otherwise press <2>.PROBE: Can I just check that these are / this is a medication that been taking over the past week?

- 1 Taking ACE inhibitor or A2 receptor blocker
- 2 Not taking ACE inhibitor or A2 receptor blocker
- 3 Taking other ACE inhibitor not on the showcard

*IF whether taking ACE inhibitor / A2 receptor blocker in past week = no [HeAcea = 2]*

**HEWEE**

Some doctors check to see if patients with diabetes have protein in their urine. [^Have you / Has [^name]] had a urine test for protein in the past 12 months?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'This test may also be called a microalbumin test, and involves a first morning urine sample or 24-hour urine collection.'

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether had urine test in past 12 months = yes [Hewee = 1]*

**HEWEEA**

Has a doctor ever told you that you have protein in your urine?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF whether taking ACE inhibitor / A2 receptor blocker in past week = taking other ACE inhibitor [HeAcea = 3]*

**HEDIXB@**

INTERVIEWER: Enter name of other ACE inhibitor.

String 30

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HEKIDN**

Has a doctor ever told you that you that your diabetes has caused trouble with your kidneys?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HESUG**

Have you ever had a special blood test to see how well your blood sugar was controlled?  
This test is called a glycosylated haemoglobin, or haemoglobin A1c, or fructosamine. This is a blood test taken at a doctor's surgery or health centre or laboratory.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether ever had blood sugar test = yes [Hesug = 1]*

**HESUGA**

Have you had this test (glycosylated haemoglobin or fructosamine) performed in the past 12 months?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

**HEFTCHK**

Some doctors suggest that some patients with diabetes have a regular foot examination. In the past year, has any doctor or nurse examined your bare feet?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HESLFCR**

Some people with diabetes receive training to help manage their diabetes themselves. Have you ever participated in a course or class about diabetes, or received special training on how you can live with your diabetes from day-to-day?

INTERVIEWER: Press <F9> for examples of training.

Include:

- 1. A course at a clinic or hospital.
- 2. A session with the nurse at your local health centre or doctors surgery.
- 3. A session with a dietician including advice on coping with diabetes, rather than purely dietary advice.
- 4. Classes taught by or training led by any type of health professional or diabetes educator.

Do not include if respondent only read books or pamphlets without attending a course.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether ever had diabetes management training = yes [Heslfcrcr = 1]*

**HESLFCM**

When was the most recent time that you participated in a diabetes self-management course or class or received special training on how you can manage your diabetes?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the month here.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May

06 June  
07 July  
08 August  
09 September  
10 October  
11 November  
12 December

*IF month had diabetes management training = RESPONSE [HeslfcM = RESPONSE]*

**HESLFCY**

(When was the most recent time that you participated in a diabetes self-management can manage your diabetes?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year here.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HE28]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HESLFCB**

SHOW CARD H

How much do you think you know about managing your diabetes? Do you know...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...just about everything you need to know,
- 2 most of what you need to know,
- 3 some of what you need to know,
- 4 a little of what you need to know,
- 5 or almost none of what you need to know?

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND (type of CVD condition = stroke)) OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = stroke) AND (whether confirms previous stroke condition = yes) AND (age first told had a stroke = RESPONSE)) [((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND (HeDiaa = 8)) OR ((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 8) AND (HeDiaC = 1) AND (HeAgE (Wave 1) = RESPONSE))]*

**HEAGE\***

Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had a stroke?

INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

Range: 0..110

**[CHECK HE29 - HE30]**

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of CVD condition = stroke) AND (type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE)) [((HeDiaa = 8) AND (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE))]*

**HEAGER\***

When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had a stroke?

INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December

**HEAGERY\***

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK HE31 - HE32]**

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND (type of CVD condition = stroke))  
[[ (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND (HeDiaa = 8) ]]*

**HENMST\***

How many strokes [^have you / has [^name]] had since we last talked to [^you / him / her] [^on date of last interview], according to a doctor?

- 1 1
- 2 2
- 3 3 or more

END OF FILTER

*IF (type of CVD condition = stroke) OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = stroke) AND (whether confirms previous stroke condition = yes)) [(HeDiaa = 8) OR ((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = 8) AND (HeDiaC = 1))]*

*IF whether recommended medication to lower BP <> RESPONSE [Hehibpb <> RESPONSE]*

**HEHIBPB1**

Some doctors suggest that some patients take medication to lower their blood pressure. Did a doctor or nurse ever suggest that you take any medication to lower your blood pressure?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[coded hehibpb1 in data]**

END OF FILTER

**HEPBS\***

[[^Do you / Does [^name]] have any remaining problems because of [^your / his / her] stroke(s)?

- 1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether any remaining problems because of stroke = yes [HePbs = 1]*

**HEWKS\***

[^Do you / Does [^name]] have weakness in [^your / his / her] arms and legs, or decreased ability to move or use them?

1 Yes

2 No

**HESPK\***

([^Do you / Does [^name]] have) any difficulty speaking or swallowing?

1 Yes

2 No

**HEVSI\***

([^Do you / Does [^name]] have) any difficulty with vision?

1 Yes

2 No

**HETHK\***

([^Do you / Does [^name]] have) any difficulty in thinking or finding the right words to say?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (type of CVD condition = [angina, heart attack]) OR ((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = [angina, heart attack]) AND ((whether confirms previous angina condition = yes) OR (whether confirms previous heart attack condition = yes))) [(HeDiaa = [2, 3]) OR (HeDiaa (Wave 1) = [2, 3]) AND ((HeDiaC = 1) OR (HeDiaC = 1))]*

**HEHRTA**

Some doctors suggest that some patients take anticoagulant or blood thinning medication. Did any doctor suggest that [^you / [^name]] take medication to thin [^your / his / her] blood such as warfarin or aspirin, Plavix, Ticlid, or other blood thinning medication?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF (whether advised to take blood thinning medication = Yes) OR (Whether is a proxy respondent = Yes) [Hehrta = 1 OR IAskPx = 1]*

**HEHRTB\***

[^Are you / Is [^name]] currently taking medication to thin [^your / his / her] blood like Warfarin, Aspirin, Plavix, Ticlid, or other medication to thin the blood?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether taking blood thinning medication = Yes) [Hehrtb = 1]*

**HEHRTC**

[^Are you / Is [^name]] taking Warfarin?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether taking warfarin = yes [Hehrtc = 1]*

**HEHRTD**

Many doctors ask patients on Warfarin to get their blood tested regularly. The test checks how thin their blood is, and is sometimes called an INR test. [^Do you / Does [^name]] get [^your / his / her] blood checked for this?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether has INR test = yes [Hehrtd = 1]*

**HEHRTE**

[^Have you / Has [^name]] had this blood test in the past 12 weeks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether had INR test in past 12 weeks = yes [Hehrte = 1]*

**HEHRTF**

[^Have you / Has [^name]] had this blood test in the past 4 weeks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (((type of CVD condition = [angina, heart attack, diabetes])) OR (((type of CVD condition at Wave 1 = [angina, heart attack, diabetes])) AND ((whether confirms previous angina condition = yes) OR (whether confirms previous heart attack condition = yes) OR (whether confirms previous diabetes condition = yes)))) AND (type of CVD condition = high cholesterol) [(((HeDiaa = [2, 3, 7])) OR (((HeDiaa (Wave 1) = [2, 3, 7])) AND ((HeDiaC = 1) OR (HeDiaC = 1) OR (HeDiaC = 1)))) AND (HeDiaa = 9)]*

**HECHOL**

Has any doctor talked to you about how to lower your cholesterol? This would include changing your diet, losing weight, getting more exercise, or taking medication.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether advised how to lower cholesterol = yes [Hechol = 1]*

**HECHOLA**

Have you done any of these things to lower your cholesterol?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

||  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF type of CVD condition = cholesterol [HeDiaa = 9]*

**HECHOLB**

Has a doctor or nurse explained high cholesterol in a way you could understand?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HECHOLC**

Have doctors or nurses taken your preferences into account when making treatment decisions about your high cholesterol?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of chronic condition = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = none)) [((HeDiab (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiab (Wave 1) = 96))]*

LOOP FOR Idx:= 1 TO 9

*IF type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = Idx [HeDiab (Wave 1) = Idx]*

**HEDIAD\***

INTERVIEWER: Please check the following sentence before reading out loud.

[^BLANK / Our records show that when we last interviewed [^you / ^name]] on [^date of last interview] [^you / he / she] said that [^you / he / she] had had (or had been told by a doctor [^you / he / she] had had) / Our records also show that when we last interviewed [^you / ^name]] on [^date of interview] [^you / he / she] said that [^you / he / she] had had (or had been told by a doctor [^you / he / she] had had)] ^chronic lung disease such as chronic bronchitis or emphysema / asthma / arthritis / osteoporosis, sometimes called thin or brittle bones / cancer or a malignant tumour / Parkinson's disease / an emotional, nervous or psychiatric problem / Alzheimer's disease / dementia, senility or another serious memory impairment].

INTERVIEWER: Code 1 below unless respondent spontaneously disputes this record.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Not read out as didn't make sense

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of illness]***

***[Responses are recorded in hediad1 to hediad9]***

*IF whether confirms previous chronic condition = no [HeDiaD = 2]*

**HEDIAM\***

INTERVIEWER: Code reason why respondent disputes having had [^chronic lung disease such as chronic bronchitis or emphysema / asthma / arthritis / osteoporosis, sometimes called thin or brittle bones / cancer or a malignant tumour / Parkinson's disease / an emotional, nervous or psychiatric problem / Alzheimer's disease / dementia, senility or another serious memory impairment]. Respondent says...

- 1 Never had

```

||| 2 No longer has
||| 3 Did not have previously, but has now
|||
||| [There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of illness]
||| [Responses are recorded in hediam1 to hediam9]
|||
||| ELSE
|||
||| IF whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes [HeDiaD = 1]
|||
||| HEDIDS*
||| [^Do you / Does [^name]] still have [^chronic lung disease such as chronic bronchitis or
||| emphysema / asthma / arthritis / osteoporosis, sometimes called thin or brittle bones /
||| cancer or a malignant tumour / Parkinson's disease / an emotional, nervous or
||| psychiatric problem / Alzheimer's disease / dementia, senility or another serious memory
||| impairment]?
||| 1 Yes
||| 2 No
|||
||| [There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of illness]
||| [Responses are recorded in hedids1 to hedids9]
|||
||| END OF FILTER

```

**HEDIAB\***

SHOW CARD

[^Has / Apart from what you have already told us, and thinking about what has happened since we last saw [^you / ^name] on [^date of last interview] has / Thinking about what has happened since we last saw [^you / ^name] on [^date of last interview] has] a doctor [^BLANK / ever] told [^you / ^name] that [^you have / he has / she has] (or had) any of the [^BLANK / other] conditions on this card?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'What others?'...Code all that apply.

- 01 [^Chronic lung disease such as chronic bronchitis or emphysema]
- 02 [^Asthma]
- 03 [^Arthritis (including osteoarthritis , or rheumatism)]
- 04 [^Osteoporosis, sometimes called thin or brittle bones]
- 05 [^Cancer or a malignant tumour (excluding minor skin cancers)]
- 06 [^Parkinson's disease]
- 07 [^Any emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems]
- 08 [^Alzheimer's disease]
- 09 [^Dementia, senility or another serious memory impairment]
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HEDIAB are recorded in variables HEDIB01 to HEDIB04]**  
**[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE33 - HE34]**

IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = chronic lung disease) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes)) OR (type of chronic condition = chronic lung disease) [((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 1) AND (HeDiaD = 1)) OR (HeDiab = 1)]

**HELNG\***

[^Are you / Is [^name]] taking medication or other treatment for [^your / his / her] lung condition?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = asthma) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes)) OR (type of chronic condition = asthma) [((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 2) AND (HeDiaD = 1)) OR (HeDiab = 2)]

**HEAMA\***

[^Are you / Is [^name]] taking medication or other treatment for [^your / his / her] asthma?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

IF type of chronic condition = arthritis = [HeDiab = 3]

**HEART\***

Which type or types of arthritis [^do you / does [^name]] have...

INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply....

- 1 Osteoarthritis?
- 2 Rheumatoid arthritis?
- 3 Some other kind of arthritis?

**[Multiple responses to HEART are recorded in variables HEART1 and HEART2]  
[code maximum 3 out of 3 possible responses]**

IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of chronic condition = arthritis)) OR ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = arthritis) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes) AND (age first told had arthritis at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)) [((HeDiab (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiab = 3)) OR ((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 3) AND (HeDiaD = 1) AND (HeAgf (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))]

**HEAGF\***

Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had arthritis?

INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

Range: 0..110

**[CHECK HE35]**

ELSE

IF ((type of chronic condition = arthritis) AND (type of chronic condition = RESPONSE)) AND NOT (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = arthritis) [((HeDiab = 3) AND (HeDiab (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)) AND NOT (HeDiab (Wave 1) = 3)]

||| **HEAGFR\***  
||| When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he /  
||| she] had arthritis?  
||| INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.  
||| 01 January  
||| 02 February  
||| 03 March  
||| 04 April  
||| 05 May  
||| 06 June  
||| 07 July  
||| 08 August  
||| 09 September  
||| 10 October  
||| 11 November  
||| 12 December

||| **HEAGFRY\***  
||| INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.  
||| Range: 1900..2050

||| **[CHECK HE36 - HE37]**

||| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

*IF (type of arthritis = osteoarthritis) OR ((type of arthritis at Wave 1 = osteoarthritis) AND (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = arthritis) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes)) [(HeArt = 1) OR ((HeArt (Wave 1) = 1) AND (HeDiab (Wave 1) = 3) AND (HeDiaD = 1))]*

| **HEARTA**  
| Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about...  
| What your arthritis or joint pain will be like as time goes on?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| **HEARTB**  
| (Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about...)  
| How to keep your arthritis or joint pain from getting worse?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| **HEARTC**  
| (Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about...)  
| How your arthritis or joint pain will be treated?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| *IF whether told how arthritis pain will be treated = yes [HeArtc = 1]*

| **HEARTD**  
| (Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about...)

| | what the specific purpose of the treatment for your arthritis or joint pain is?

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | END OF FILTER

| | **HEARTE**

| | Some doctors suggest trying paracetamol as the first medication for arthritis or joint pain.

| | Did any doctor or nurse recommend you try paracetamol before other medicines for your joint pain?

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | END OF FILTER

| | *IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = osteoporosis) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes)) OR (type of chronic condition = osteoporosis) [((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 4) AND (HeDiaD = 1)) OR (HeDiab = 4)]*

| | **HEOSTE**

| | Has any doctor or nurse recommended taking calcium pills or Vitamin D?

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | *IF (whether advised to take calcium/vit D pills = Yes) OR (Whether is a proxy respondent = Yes) [(HeOste = 1) OR (IAskPx = 1)]*

| | **HEOSTEA\***

| | [^Do you / Does [^name]] take calcium pills or Vitamin D for [^your / his / her] osteoporosis or 'thin bones'?

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | END OF FILTER

| | **HEOSTEB**

| | Did a doctor or nurse recommend treatment with medication for [^your / his / her] osteoporosis or 'thin bones'?

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | *IF whether recommended osteoporosis medication = yes [HeOsteb = 1]*

| | **HEOSTEC**

| | Did [^you / [^name]] take any of them?

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | **HEOSTED**

| | Were these medicines recommended within 3 months of a doctor telling you that you had osteoporosis?

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of chronic condition = cancer)) OR ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = cancer) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes) AND (age first told had cancer at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)) [((HeDiab (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiab = 5)) OR ((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 5) AND (HeDiaD = 1) AND (HeAgg (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))]*

**HEAGG\***

Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had cancer or a malignant tumour?

INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

Range: 0..110

**[CHECK HE38 - HE39]**

ELSE

*IF ((type of chronic condition = cancer) AND (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = cancer)) [((HeDiab = 5) AND (HeDiab (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiab (Wave 1) = 5))]*

**HEAGGR\***

When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had cancer or a malignant tumor?

INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year. Enter month here.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

**HEAGGRY\***

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK HE40 - HE41]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF type of chronic condition = cancer [HeDiab = 5]*

**HECANA\***

SHOW CARD J

In which organ or part of [^your / [^name's]] body did [^your / his / her] (cancer / cancers / malignant tumour) start?

INTERVIEWER: Code one only.

- | 1 Lung
- | 2 Breast
- | 3 Colon, bowel or rectum
- | 4 Lymphoma
- | 5 Leukaemia
- | 6 Melanoma or other skin cancer
- | 95 Somewhere else

| **HECANB\***

| During the last two years [^have you / has [^name]] received any treatment for [^your / his / her] cancer?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of chronic condition <> RESPONSE) AND (type of chronic condition = Parkinson's disease)) OR ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = Parkinson's disease) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes) AND (age first told had Parkinson's disease <> RESPONSE)) [((HeDiab (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiab = 6)) OR ((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 6) AND (HeDiaD = 1) AND (HePrk <> RESPONSE))]*

| **HEPRK\***

| Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had Parkinson's disease?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

| Range: 0..110

| **[CHECK HE42 - HE43]**

ELSE

| *IF ((type of chronic condition = Parkinson's disease) AND (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = Parkinson's disease)) [((HeDiab = 6) AND (HeDiab (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiab (Wave 1) = 6))]*

| **HEPRKR\***

| When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had Parkinson's disease?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.

- | 01 January
- | 02 February
- | 03 March
- | 04 April
- | 05 May
- | 06 June
- | 07 July
- | 08 August
- | 09 September
- | 10 October
- | 11 November
- | 12 December

| **HEPRKRY\***

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

| Range: 1900..2050

| **[CHECK HE44 - HE45]**

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of chronic condition = psychiatric problems)) OR ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = psychiatric problems) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes) AND (age first told had psychiatric problems at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))(((HeDiab (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiab = 7)) OR ((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 7) AND (HeDiaD = 1) AND (HeAgh (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)))*

| **HEAGH\***

| Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.

| Range: 0..110

| **[CHECK HE46]**

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of chronic condition = psychiatric problems) AND (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE)) (((HeDiab = 7) AND (HeDiab (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)))*

| **HEAGHR\***

| When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.

| 01 January

| 02 February

| 03 March

| 04 April

| 05 May

| 06 June

| 07 July

| 08 August

| 09 September

| 10 October

| 11 November

| 12 December

| **HEAGHRY\***

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

| Range: 1900..2050

| **[CHECK HE47 - HE48]**

END OF FILTER

*IF type of chronic condition = psychiatric problems [HeDiab = 7]*

| **HEPSY\***

| SHOW CARD K  
 | What type of emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems [^do (did) you / does (did) [^name]]  
 | have?  
 | INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'What others?'  
 | Code all that apply.  
 | 1 Hallucinations  
 | 2 Anxiety  
 | 3 Depression  
 | 4 Emotional problems  
 | 5 Schizophrenia  
 | 6 Psychosis  
 | 7 Mood swings  
 | 8 Manic depression  
 | 95 Something else

**[Multiple responses to HEPSY are recorded in variables HEPSY1 to HEPSY6]  
 [code maximum 9 out of 9 possible responses]**

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of chronic condition =  
 psychiatric problems)) OR ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = psychiatric problem) AND  
 (whether confirms previous psychiatric condition = yes) AND NOT (type of chronic condition =  
 psychiatric problems))(((HeDiab (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiab = 7)) OR ((HeDiab  
 (Wave 1) = 7) AND (HeDiaD = 1) AND NOT (HeDiab = 7)))*

| **HEYRC\***  
 | During the last two years [^have you / has [^name]] had emotional, nervous or psychiatric  
 | problems?  
 | 1 Yes  
 | 2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF type of chronic condition = psychiatric problems [HeDiab = 7]*

| *IF types of psychiatric problems = depression [HePsy = 3]*

| **HEPSYA**  
 | I have some questions about any treatment you may have had for your depression. Did a  
 | doctor or nurse suggest that you take medication, or see a mental health professional for  
 | counselling?  
 | INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'This may include seeing a psychiatrist, psychologist, or social  
 | worker for counselling or psychotherapy.'  
 | 1 Medication  
 | 2 Counseling  
 | 3 Both medication and counseling  
 | 4 None

| *IF type of depression treatment recommended <> None [HePsya <> 4]*

| **HEPSYB**  
 | Did you start [^taking medication / seeing a mental health professional / taking medication  
 | and seeing a mental health professional] within 2 weeks of being offered this treatment?  
 | 1 Yes  
 | 2 No

```

| | |
| | | IF whether started depression treatment within 2 weeks = yes [HePsyb =1]
| | |
| | | HEPSYC
| | | Did you feel better within 6 weeks after starting to [^take medication / see a mental health
| | | professional / take medication and seeing a mental health professional]?
| | | 1 Yes
| | | 2 No
| | |
| | | IF whether felt better within 6 weeks = No [HePsync = 2]
| | |
| | | HEPSYD
| | | Did any doctor or nurse start you on medication, change the dose of the medication that
| | | you were taking or, change the medications to help you feel better?
| | | 1 Yes
| | | 2 No
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | HEPSYE
| | | When you talked about these feelings with a doctor or nurse, did they ask you on that day if
| | | you had thoughts about suicide?
| | | 1 Yes
| | | 2 No
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of chronic condition =
| | | Alzheimer's)) OR ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = Alzheimer's) AND (whether confirms
| | | previous psychiatric problem = yes) AND (age first told had Alzheimer's at Wave 1 =
| | | RESPONSE))(((HeDiab (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiab = 8)) OR ((HeDiab (Wave 1) =
| | | 8) AND (HeDiaD = 1) AND (HeAgi (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)))
| | |
| | | HEAGI*
| | | Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first
| | | told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had Alzheimer's Disease?
| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.
| | | Range: 0..110
| | |
| | | [CHECK HE49 - HE50]
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF ((type of chronic condition = Alzheimer's) AND (type of chronic condition = RESPONSE)
| | | AND NOT (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = Alzheimer's))(((HeDiab = 8) AND (HeDiab |
| | | (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiab (Wave 1) = 8)))
| | |
| | |
| | | HEAGIR*
| | | When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he /

```

| | she] had Alzheimer's Disease?  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter response in month and year.  
| | 01 January  
| | 02 February  
| | 03 March  
| | 04 April  
| | 05 May  
| | 06 June  
| | 07 July  
| | 08 August  
| | 09 September  
| | 10 October  
| | 11 November  
| | 12 December

| | **HEAGIRY\***

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.  
| | Range: 1900..2050

| | **[CHECK HE51 - HE52]**

| | END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) AND (type of chronic condition = memory impairment)) OR ((type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = memory impairment) AND (whether confirms previous chronic condition = yes) AND (age first told had memory impairment at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))(((HeDiab (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) AND (HeDiab = 9)) OR ((HeDiab (Wave 1) = 9 AND (HeDiaD = 1) AND (HeAgj (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)))*

| | **HEAGJ\***

| | Approximately how old [^were you / was [^name]] when [^you were / he was / she was] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had dementia, senility or any other serious memory impairment?

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter age in years.  
| | Range: 0..110

| | **[CHECK HE53 - HE54]**

ELSE

| | *IF ((type of chronic condition = memory impairment) AND (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of chronic condition at Wave 1 = memory impairment)) | | [((HeDiab = 9) AND (HeDiab (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeDiab (Wave 1) = 9))*

| | **HEAGJR\***

| | When in the last two years [^were you / was [^name]] first told by a doctor that [^you / he / she] had dementia, senility or any other serious memory impairment?

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the response as month and year.  
| | Enter the month at this question.

- | | 01 January
- | | 02 February
- | | 03 March
- | | 04 April
- | | 05 May

06 June  
07 July  
08 August  
09 September  
10 October  
11 November  
12 December

**HEAGJRY\***

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK HE55 - HE56]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Age of respondent >= 60) [!AgeOf >= 60]*

**HEFLA**

[^Have / Since we last talked to you on [^date of last interview] have] you fallen down  
[^BLANK / in the last two years] (for any reason)?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether fallen down = yes [HeFla = 1]*

**HEFLB**

How many times have you fallen down [^since we last talked to you on [^date of last  
interview]/ in the last two years]?

Range: 0..400

**[CHECK HE57]**

**HEFLC**

In [^any of these falls / that fall], did you injure yourself seriously enough to need medical  
treatment?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF (number of times fallen down > 2) AND (whether required medical treatment for fall =  
yes) [(HeFlb > 2) AND (HeFlc = 1)]*

**HEFLD**

With any of your past falls, did a doctor or nurse talk with you to try to understand why you  
fell?

1 Yes

2 No

**HEFLE**

Did a doctor or nurse or physiotherapist test your balance or strength or watch how you  
walk to understand why you fell?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'This might include standing with one foot in front of the other,  
standing with your eyes closed, walking heel to toe, getting up from a chair without using

|| | your hands.'  
|| | 1 Yes  
|| | 2 No

|| | **HEFLF**

|| | Did a doctor or nurse or physiotherapist recommend any additional tests, such as heart  
|| | tests or brain scans to understand why you fell?  
|| | 1 Yes  
|| | 2 No

|| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

**HEFRAC**

Have you [^BLANK / ever] fractured your hip since we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]?

1 Yes  
2 No

*IF person's age >= 60 [IAgeOf >= 60]*

| | **HEJI\***

| | [^Have you / Has [^name]] [^BLANK / ever] had any joint replacements since we last talked  
| | to [^you / him / her] on [^date of last interview]?  
| | 1 Yes  
| | 2 No

| | *IF whether had joint replacements = yes [HeJi = 1]*

|| | **HEJIA\***

|| | Which joints did [^you / [^name]] have replaced?  
|| | INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'What others?'  
|| | Code all that apply.  
|| | 1 Hip  
|| | 2 Both hips  
|| | 3 Knee  
|| | 4 Both knees  
|| | 5 Hips(s) and knee(s)  
|| | 6 Other joint

|| | **[Multiple responses to HEJIA are recorded in variables HEJIA1 and HEJIA2]**  
|| | **[code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]**

|| | *IF joints replaced = [hip, both hips, hip and knee] [HeJia = [1, 2, 5]*

|| | **HEJIB\***

|| | Was / Were the hip replacement(s) because of arthritis, a fracture or for some other  
|| | reason?  
|| | 1 Arthritis  
|| | 2 Fracture  
|| | 3 Both arthritis and a fracture  
|| | 95 Other reason

```

| | |
| | | IF whether had joint replacements at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE [HeJi (Wave 1) <>
| | | RESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HEJIC*
| | | [^Have you / Has [^name]] had a hip replacement in the last two years?
| | | 1 Yes
| | | 2 No
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER

```

**HEIQA\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Now we want you to remember what [*^*name] was like [*^*two years ago / when we last talked to you on [*^*date of last interview]] and to compare it with what [*^*he / she] is like now. [*^*BLANK / Two years ago was in 2002]. I will read out situations where [*^*name] has to use [*^*his / her] memory or intelligence and we want you to indicate whether this has improved, stayed the same or got worse in that situation [*^*over the past two years / since [*^*date of last interview]]. Note the importance of comparing [*^*name's] present performance with [*^*two years ago / when we last talked to you on [*^*date of last interview]]. So if [*^*two years ago / when we last talked to you on [*^*date of last interview]] [*^*name] always forgot where [*^*he / she] had left things, and [*^*he / she] still does, then this would be considered 'Hasn't changed much'. Please indicate the changes you have observed giving the appropriate answer from the card.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue  
2 Unable to answer - does not know what the person was like two years ago  
[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF whether can answer questions about participant's memory = continue [Heiqa = 1]*

**HEIQB\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [*^*two years ago / when we last talked to you on [*^*date of last interview]], how is [*^*name] at remembering things about family and friends, like occupations, birthdays or addresses?

1 Much improved  
2 A bit improved  
3 Not much change  
4 A bit worse  
5 Much worse

**HEIQC\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [*^*two years ago / when we last talked to you on [*^*date of last interview]], how is [*^*name] at remembering things that have happened recently?

1 Much improved  
2 A bit improved  
3 Not much change  
4 A bit worse  
5 Much worse

**HEIQD\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at recalling conversations a few days later?

- 1 Much improved
- 2 A bit improved
- 3 Not much change
- 4 A bit worse
- 5 Much worse

**HEIQE\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at remembering [^his / her] address and telephone number?

- 1 Much improved
- 2 A bit improved
- 3 Not much change
- 4 A bit worse
- 5 Much worse

**HEIQF\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at remembering what day and month it is?

- 1 Much improved
- 2 A bit improved
- 3 Not much change
- 4 A bit worse
- 5 Much worse

**HEIQG\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at remembering where things are usually kept?

- 1 Much improved
- 2 A bit improved
- 3 Not much change
- 4 A bit worse
- 5 Much worse

**HEIQH\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at remembering where to find things which have been put in a different place from usual?

- 1 Much improved
- 2 A bit improved
- 3 Not much change
- 4 A bit worse
- 5 Much worse

**HEIQI\*\***

SHOW CARD L

Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at knowing how to work familiar machines around the house?

- 1 Much improved

- | 2 A bit improved
- | 3 Not much change
- | 4 A bit worse
- | 5 Much worse

| **HEIQJ\*\***

| SHOW CARD L

| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at learning to use a new gadget or machine around the house?

- | 1 Much improved
- | 2 A bit improved
- | 3 Not much change
- | 4 A bit worse
- | 5 Much worse

| **HEIQK\*\***

| SHOW CARD L

| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at learning new things in general?

- | 1 Much improved
- | 2 A bit improved
- | 3 Not much change
- | 4 A bit worse
- | 5 Much worse

| **HEIQL\*\***

| SHOW CARD L

| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at following a story in a book or on TV?

- | 1 Much improved
- | 2 A bit improved
- | 3 Not much change
- | 4 A bit worse
- | 5 Much worse

| **HEIQM\*\***

| SHOW CARD L

| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at making decisions on everyday matters?

- | 1 Much improved
- | 2 A bit improved
- | 3 Not much change
- | 4 A bit worse
- | 5 Much worse

| **HEIQN\*\***

| SHOW CARD L

| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how is [^name] at handling money for shopping?

- | 1 Much improved
- | 2 A bit improved
- | 3 Not much change
- | 4 A bit worse
- | 5 Much worse

| **HEIQO\*\***

| SHOW CARD L  
| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how  
| is [^name] at handling financial matters, like the pension or dealing with the bank?  
| 1 Much improved  
| 2 A bit improved  
| 3 Not much change  
| 4 A bit worse  
| 5 Much worse

| **HEIQP\*\***

| SHOW CARD L  
| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how  
| is [^name] at handling other everyday arithmetic problems, like knowing how much food to  
| buy, or knowing how long between visits from family or friends?  
| 1 Much improved  
| 2 A bit improved  
| 3 Not much change  
| 4 A bit worse  
| 5 Much worse

| **HEIQQ\*\***

| SHOW CARD L  
| Compared with [^two years ago / when we last talked to you on [^date of last interview]], how  
| is [^name] at using intelligence to understand what's going on and to reason things through?  
| 1 Much improved  
| 2 A bit improved  
| 3 Not much change  
| 4 A bit worse  
| 5 Much worse

| END OF FILTER

**HEPAIN**

Are you often troubled with pain?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether often troubled with pain = yes [HePain = 1]*

| **HEPAA**

| How bad is the pain most of the time? Is it...

| INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- | 1 mild,
- | 2 moderate,
- | 3 or, severe

| **HEPAB@**

| How would you rate your pain if you were walking on a flat surface?

| Please rate your pain from 0-10 for each of the following where 0 is no pain and 10 is severe  
| or excruciating pain, as bad as you can imagine.

- | 1 Press <1> and enter to continue
- | 2 Can't walk or never walks

| *IF rating pain when walking = continue [HePab = 1]*

| | **HEBCK**

|| (How would you rate the pain) in your back?  
|| PROMPT IF NECESSARY: 'Where 0 is no pain and 10 is severe or excruciating pain, as  
|| bad as you can imagine'.  
|| Range: 0..10

|| **HEHIP**

|| (How would you rate the pain) in your hips?  
|| PROMPT IF NECESSARY: 'Where 0 is no pain and 10 is severe or excruciating pain, as  
|| bad as you can imagine'.  
|| Range: 0..10

|| **HEKNE**

|| (How would you rate the pain) in your knees?  
|| PROMPT IF NECESSARY: 'Where 0 is no pain and 10 is severe or excruciating pain, as  
|| bad as you can imagine'.  
|| Range: 0..10

|| **HEFET**

|| (How would you rate the pain) in your feet?  
|| PROMPT IF NECESSARY: 'Where 0 is no pain and 10 is severe or excruciating pain, as  
|| bad as you can imagine'.  
|| Range: 0..10

|| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (knee pain rating = [6 .. 10] OR hip pain rating = [6 .. 10]) AND ((type of arthritis =  
osteoarthritis) OR (type of arthritis at Wave 1 = osteoarthritis))[(HeKne = [6...10] OR HeHip =  
[6...10]) AND ((HeArt = 1) OR (HeArt (Wave 1) = 1))]*

|| **HEPAC**

|| Has your knee or hip pain been bothering you for more than six months?

|| 1 Yes

|| 2 No

|| *IF whether had knee / hip pain for over six months = yes [HePac = 1]*

|| **HEPAD**

|| Are you taking or have you taken any medication or exercises to control the pain in your  
|| knee or hip?

|| 1 Yes

|| 2 No

|| *IF whether taken pain medication = yes [HePad = 1]*

|| **HEPAE**

|| Do exercises and medicines control the pain in your knee or hip?

|| 1 Yes

|| 2 No

|| *IF whether pain controlled = no [HePae = 2]*

|| **HEPAF**

|| Did any doctor recommend that you should have surgery or joint replacement?

|| 1 Yes

2 No  
*IF whether advised to have surgery = yes [HePaf = 1]*

**HEPAF1**

Did you see an orthopaedic specialist?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (knee pain rating = [1 .. 5] AND ((type of arthritis = osteoarthritis) OR (type of arthritis at Wave 1 = osteoarthritis)) AND (NOT (HeHip = [6 .. 10])))[(HeKne = [1...5] AND ((HeArt = 1) OR (HeArt (Wave 1) = 1)) AND (NOT (HeHip = [6...10])))]*

**HEKNEA**

Has your knee pain been bothering you for more than 3 months?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether had knee pain for over 3 months = yes [HeKnea = 1]*

**HEKNEB**

Has a doctor or nurse suggested that you receive physiotherapy or attend a supervised exercise program for your knee pain?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether exercise / physiotherapy has been recommended for knee pain = yes [HeKneb = 1]*

**HEKNEC**

Did you see a physiotherapist or attend a supervised exercise program for your knee pain?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether attended physiotherapist / exercise program = yes [HeKnec = 1]*

**HEPAK1**

How well does the treatment control your pain?

1 Very well

2 Fairly well

3 Not very well

4 Not at all

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

||  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (level of pain = [moderate, severe]) AND ((whether had knee / hip pain for over 6 months <> RESPONSE) AND (whether had knee pain for over 3 months <> RESPONSE))[HePaa = [2, 3] AND HePac <> RESPONSE AND HeKnea <> RESPONSE]*

| **HEPAG**  
| Has this pain started within the past 12 months?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| *IF whether pain started within past year = yes [HePag = 1]*

|| **HEPAH**  
|| Have you told your doctor or nurse about this pain?  
|| 1 Yes  
|| 2 No

|| *IF whether told doctor / nurse about pain = yes [HePah = 1]*

||| **HEPAI**  
||| Did your doctor or nurse recommend any treatments for your pain?  
||| 1 Yes  
||| 2 No

||| *IF whether pain treatments recommended = yes [HePai = 1]*

|||| **HEPAJ**  
|||| Are you currently receiving any treatment for your pain?  
|||| 1 Yes  
|||| 2 No

|||| *IF whether receiving treatment for pain = yes [HePaj = 1]*

||||| **HEPAK2**  
||||| How well does the treatment control your pain?  
||||| INTERVIEWER: Read out...  
||||| 1 Very well  
||||| 2 Fairly well  
||||| 3 Not very well  
||||| 4 Not at all

||||| END OF FILTER

*IF rating pain when walking = can't walk [HePab = 2]*

**HEBAL**

SHOW CARD M

How often do you have problems with keeping your balance when you are walking on a level surface?

- 1 Always
- 2 Very often
- 3 Often
- 4 Sometimes
- 5 Never
- 6 SPONTANEOUS: Never walks
- 7 SPONTANEOUS: Can't walk

*IF (frequency of balance problems = [always, very often, often]) AND (Have already answered HeBal earlier in interview <> yes) [(HeBal = [1, 2, 3]) AND (NoHebal <> 1)]*

**HEBALA**

Did a doctor or nurse recommend that you join an exercise program or get physiotherapy to improve your walking or balance?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of walking aid]  
[Responses are recorded in hebala1 and hebala2]***

*IF whether exercise / physiotherapy recommended to improve walking / balance = yes  
[Hebala = 1]*

**HEBALB**

Did you join an exercise program or get physiotherapy?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of illness]  
[Responses are recorded in hebalb1 to hebalb2]***

END OF FILTER

**HEBALC**

Did any doctor or nurse suggest a 'stick' or 'zimmer frame' to improve your walking or balance?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of aid]  
[Responses are recorded in Hebalc1 and Hbalc2]***

*IF whether uses walking aids has been asked <> yes [NoHeAid1 <> 1]*

**HEAD**

Do you use any of the following?

INTERVIEWER: Read out and code all that apply.

Only include personal alarms used to call for assistance after falls etc.

- 1 A cane or walking stick
- 2 A zimmer frame or walker
- 3 A manual wheelchair

- 4 An electric wheelchair
- 5 A buggy or scooter
- 6 Special eating utensils
- 7 A personal alarm
- 8 Elbow crutches
- 96 None of these

***[Multiple responses to HEAID are recorded in variables HEAID9 to HEAID12]  
[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]***

***[CHECK HE58]***

*IF (walking aids used = none) AND (walking aids used = RESPONSE) AND NOT  
(walking aids used at Wave 1 = none)[(HeAid = 96) AND (HeAid (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)  
AND NOT (HeAid (Wave 1) = 96)]*

**HEAIDC**

Our records from your last interview show that you were using [^list of aids at HeAid].

INTERVIEWER: Code 1 below unless respondent spontaneously disputes this record.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

***[Responses to HEAIDC are recorded in variable HEAIDC2]***

*IF whether confirms previous walking aid = no [HeAidC = 2]*

**HEAIDW**

INTERVIEWER: Code which aid respondent disputes. Code all that apply

- 1 [^High blood pressure or hypertension]
- 2 [^Angina]
- 3 [^A heart attack]
- 4 [^Congestive heart failure]
- 5 [^A heart murmur]
- 6 [^An abnormal heart rhythm]
- 7 [^Diabetes or high blood sugar ]
- 8 [^A stroke (cerebral vascular disease)]

***[Multiple responses to HEAIDW are recorded in variables HEAIDW9 to HEAIDW16 -  
@ All empty]  
[code maximum 8 out of 8 possible responses]***

***[CHECK HE59]***

*IF walking aids used = RESPONSE [HeAidW = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR EACH WALKING AID DISPUTED

**HEAIDN**

- 1 Never used [^idx] type of walking aid]
- 2 No longer use [^idx] type of walking aid]
- 3 Did not use [^idx] type of walking aid] previously but does now

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of walking  
aid. Responses are recorded in heaidn9-heaidn16@ - All empty]***

END OF FILTER

|||  
||| *IF NOT (frequency of balance problems = [never walks, can't walk]) [NOT (HeBal = [6, 7])]*

|||  
||| **HEDIZ\***

||| SHOW CARD M

||| How often do you have problems with dizziness when you are walking on a level surface?

||| 1 Always

||| 2 Very often

||| 3 Often

||| 4 Sometimes

||| 5 Never

||| 6 SPONTANEOUS: Never walks

||| 7 SPONTANEOUS: Can't walk

|||  
||| END OF FILTER

|||  
||| END OF FILTER

**HEANINT@**

I am now going to ask you some questions mainly about symptoms of the chest.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

**HEANA**

Have you ever had any pain or discomfort in your chest?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether ever had pain or discomfort in chest = yes [HeAna = 1]*

|||  
||| **HEANB**

||| Do you get it when you walk uphill or hurry?

||| 1 Yes

||| 2 No

||| 3 Sometimes / Occasionally

||| 4 Never walks uphill or hurries

||| 5 Cannot walk

|||  
||| *IF whether has pain when walking uphill or hurrying = sometimes [HeAnb = 3]*

|||  
||| **HEANC**

||| Does this happen on most occasions?

||| 1 Yes

||| 2 No

|||  
||| END OF FILTER

*IF whether has pain when walking uphill or hurrying = [yes, sometimes, never]  
[HeAnb = [1, 3, 4]]*

**HEAND**

Do you get it when you walk at an ordinary pace on the level?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Sometimes / Occasionally
- 4 Never walks at an ordinary pace on the level

END OF FILTER

*IF pain when walking at ordinary pace on the level = sometimes [HeAnd = 3]*

**HEANE**

Does this happen on most occasions?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether has pain when walking uphill or hurrying = yes OR whether this happens on most occasions = yes OR pain when walking at ordinary pace = yes OR whether this happens on most occasions = yes)[(HeAnb = 1 OR HeAnc = 1 OR HeAnd = 1 OR HeAne = 1)]*

**HEANF**

What do you do if you get it while you are walking? Do you...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...stop,
- 2 slow down,
- 3 or, do you carry on?

*IF action taken when pain occurs while walking = [stop, slow down] [HeAnf = [1, 2]]*

**HEANG**

If you stand still does the pain go away or not?

INTERVIEWER: If respondent unsure, PROBE - 'What happens to the pain on most occasions?'

- 1 Pain goes away
- 2 Pain doesn't go away

*IF whether pain goes away or remains = pain goes away [HeAng = 1]*

**HEANH**

How soon does the pain go away? Does it go in...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...10 minutes or less,
- 2 or, more than 10 minutes?

*IF duration of pain = 10 minutes or less [HeAnh = 1]*

**HEANI**

SHOW CARD N

Will you show me where you get this pain or discomfort?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'Where else?'

Code all that apply.  
1 Sternum (upper or middle)  
2 Sternum lower  
3 Left anterior chest  
4 Left arm  
5 Right anterior chest  
6 Right arm  
95 Somewhere else

**[Multiple responses to HEANI are recorded in variables HEANI1 to HEANI6]  
[code maximum 7 out of 7 possible responses]**

*IF location of pain = somewhere else [HeAni = 95]*

**HEANJ@**

Please could you tell me where you get this pain or discomfort?

INTERVIEWER: WRITE IN

String 40

**[Open responses to Heanj are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Heani (recorded in Heani11 to Heani5). These merged responses are recorded in variables Heanim1 to Heanim6]**

END OF FILTER

*IF ((location of pain = RESPONSE) AND NOT (location of pain = somewhere else))  
AND (NOT ((type of CVD condition = angina) OR (type of CVD condition = heart  
attack) OR (type of CVD condition = diabetes) OR (type of CVD condition =stroke)))  
[((HeAni = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeAni = 95)) AND (NOT ((HeDiaa = 2) OR  
(HeDiaa = 3) OR (HeDiaa = 7) OR (HeDiaa = 8)))]*

**HEANL**

Have you spoken to a doctor or nurse about this pain or discomfort?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether told doctor about pain = yes AND Have already answered HeHrta earlier in  
interview <> yes) [(HEAnI = 1 AND NoHeHrt <> 1)]*

**HEHRTA**

Did a doctor suggest that you take medication to thin your blood such as warfarin or aspirin,  
Plavix, Ticlid, or other blood thinning medication?

1 Yes

2 No

**[Responses are recorded in hehrta2]**

*IF whether blood-thinning medication recommended = yes [Hehrta = 1]*

**HEHRTB**

Are you currently taking medication to thin your blood like Warfarin, Aspirin, Plavix, Ticlid, or other medication to thin the blood?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses are recorded in hehrtb2]**

*IF whether blood-thinning medication taken = yes [Hehrtb = 1]*

**HEHRTC**

Are you taking Warfarin?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses are recorded in hehrtc2]**

*IF whether Warfarin taken = yes [Hehrtc = 1]*

**HEHRTD**

Many doctors ask patients on Warfarin to get their blood tested regularly. The test checks how thin their blood is, and is sometimes called an INR test.

Do you get your blood checked for this?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses are recorded in hehrtd2]**

*IF whether has INR test = yes [Hehrtd = 1]*

**HEHRTE**

Have you had this blood test in the past 12 weeks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses are recorded in hehrte2]**

*IF whether had INR test in past 12 weeks = yes [Hehrte = 1]*

**HEHRTF**

Have you had this blood test in the past 4 weeks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses are recorded in hehrtf2]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

|||  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
| END OF FILTER

*IF (whether told doctor about pain = yes AND Have already answered HeChol earlier in interview <> yes) [(HEAnl = 1 AND NoHechol <> 1)]*

| **HECHOL**

| Has any doctor talked to you about how to lower your cholesterol? This would include changing your diet, losing weight, getting more exercise, or taking medication.

- | 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| **[Responses are recorded in hechol2]**

| *IF whether advised how to lower cholesterol = yes [Hechol = 1]*

||| **HECHOLA**

||| Have you done any of these things to lower your cholesterol?

- ||| 1 Yes  
||| 2 No

||| **[Responses are recorded in hechoa2]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

**HEANK**

Have you ever had a severe pain across the front of your chest lasting for half an hour or more?

- 1 Yes  
2 No

**HERPA**

Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest, first thing in the morning in winter?

- 1 Yes  
2 No  
3 Don't know

*IF (whether brings up phlegm in the morning in winter = [no, don't know]) [(HeRpa = [2, 3])]*

| **HERPB**

| Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest, during the day or at night in the winter?

- | 1 Yes  
| 2 No

| END OF FILTER

*IF (whether brings up phlegm in the morning in winter = yes) OR (whether brings up phlegm during the day or at night in winter = yes) [(HeRpa = 1) OR (HeRpb = 1)]*

| **HERPC**

| Do you bring up phlegm like this on most days for as much as three months each year?

| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
|  
END OF FILTER

**HERPD**

Are you troubled by shortness of breath when hurrying on level ground or walking up a slight hill?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Never walks up hill or hurries
- 4 Cannot walk

*IF (whether gets short of breath when hurrying or walking uphill = [yes, never walks uphill])  
[(HeRpd = [1, 3])]*

| **HERPE**

| Do you get short of breath walking with other people of your own age on level ground?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No
- | 3 Never walks with people of own age on level ground
- | 4 Cannot walk

| *IF (whether gets short of breath when walking on level ground = [yes, no]) [(HeRpe = [1, 2])]*

|| **HERPF**

|| Do you have to stop for breath when walking at your own pace on level ground?

- || 1 Yes
- || 2 No

|| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

**HERPG**

Have you had attacks of wheezing or whistling in your chest at any time in the last 12 months?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HERPH**

Have you at any time in the past 12 months been woken at night by an attack of shortness of breath?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HERPI**

Have you ever had attacks of shortness of breath with wheezing?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether ever had attacks of shortness of breath with wheezing = yes [HeRpi = 1]*

| **HERPJ**

| Is / Was your breathing absolutely normal between attacks?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

|  
END OF FILTER

**HECDA**

Do you get pain or discomfort in either of your legs which comes on when you walk?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Cannot walk

*IF whether has pain or discomfort in legs when walking = yes [HeCda = 1]*

| **HECDB**

| Does this pain ever begin when you are standing still or sitting?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| **HECDC**

| Do you get it if you walk uphill or hurry?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No
- | 3 Never walks uphill or hurries

| **HECDD**

| Do you get it when you walk at an ordinary pace on the level?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No
- | 3 Never walks at an ordinary pace on the level

| **HECDE**

| If you stand still does the pain usually...

| INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- | 1 ...continue for more than 10 minutes,
- | 2 or, disappear in 10 minutes or less?

| **HECDF**

| Where do you get this pain or discomfort? Is it in the...

| INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply.

- | 1 ... Calf muscle?
- | 2 ... Thigh or buttocks?
- | 3 ... Somewhere else?

| **[Multiple responses to HECDF are recorded in variables HECDF1 to HECDF3]**

| **[code maximum 3 out of 3 possible responses]**

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF whether institutional respondent <> yes (IAskInst <> 1)*

| **HEAVOID**

| When you go on a trip away from your home like a trip to the shop, restaurant, or visits to friends, how often do you purposely limit the amount of walking you have to do? Is it...

| INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- | 1 never,
- | 2 rarely,
- | 3 sometimes,
- | 4 often,

| 5 or, always?  
| 6 SPONTANEOUS: Never takes trip away from home  
| 7 Cannot walk  
|  
END OF FILTER

**HEADLA\***

SHOW CARD O

We need to understand difficulties people may have with various activities because of a health or physical problem. Please tell me whether [^you have / [^name] has] any difficulty doing each of the everyday activities on this card. Exclude any difficulties that you expect to last less than three months.

Because of a health problem, [^do you / does he / does she] have difficulty doing any of the activities on this card?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'What others?'....Code all that apply.

- 01 Walking 100 yards
- 02 Sitting for about two hours
- 03 Getting up from a chair after sitting for long periods
- 04 Climbing several flights of stairs without resting
- 05 Climbing one flight of stairs without resting
- 06 Stooping, kneeling, or crouching
- 07 Reaching or extending [^your / his / her] arms above shoulder level (either arm)
- 08 Pulling or pushing large objects like a living room chair
- 09 Lifting or carrying weights over 10 pounds, like a heavy bag of groceries
- 10 Picking up a 5p coin from a table
- 96 None of these

***[Multiple responses to HEADLA are recorded in variables HEADA01 to HEADA10]  
[code maximum 10 out of 11 possible responses]***

***[CHECK HE60]***

**HEADLB\***

SHOW CARD P

Here are a few more everyday activities. Please tell me if [^you have / [^name] has] any difficulty with these because of a physical, mental, emotional or memory problem. Again exclude any difficulties you expect to last less than three months.

Because of a health or memory problem, [^do you / does he / does she] have difficulty doing any of the activities on this card?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'What others?'...Code all that apply.

- 01 Dressing, including putting on shoes and socks
- 02 Walking across a room
- 03 Bathing or showering
- 04 Eating, such as cutting up your food
- 05 Getting in or out of bed
- 06 Using the toilet, including getting up or down
- 07 Using a map to figure out how to get around in a strange place
- 08 Preparing a hot meal
- 09 Shopping for groceries
- 10 Making telephone calls
- 11 Taking medications
- 12 Doing work around the house or garden
- 13 Managing money, such as paying bills and keeping track of expenses
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HEADLB are recorded in variables HEADB01 to HEADB13]  
[code maximum 13 out of 14 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE61]**

*IF ((activities has difficulty doing - set A = RESPONSE) AND NOT (activities has difficulty doing - set A = none)) OR ((activities has difficulty doing - set B = RESPONSE) AND NOT (activities has difficulty doing - set B = none)) [((HeADLa = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeADLa = 96)) OR ((HeADLb = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeADLb = 96))]*

**HEHPA\***

Thinking about the activities that [^you have / ^name] has] problems with, does anyone ever help [^you / him / her] with these activities (including [^your / his / her] partner or other people in [^your / his / her] household)?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF (whether gets help with activities at Wave 1 = yes AND whether gets help with activities = no) [(HeHpa (Wave 1) = 1 AND HeHpa = 2)]*

**HEHPD\***

Our records from [^your / his / her] last interview show that someone was helping [^you / ^name]] with the activities that [^you have / he has / she has] problems with.

INTERVIEWER: Code 1 below unless respondent spontaneously disputes this record.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether confirms help received with activities = no [HeHpd = 2]*

**HEHPE**

INTERVIEWER: Code reason why respondent disputes the record.

Respondent says...

- 1 Helper from wave 1 never helped
- 2 Helper from wave 1 no longer helps

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether gets help with activities = yes [HeHpa = 1]*

**HEHPB\***

SHOW CARD Q

Who helps [^you / ^name]] with these activities?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'Does anyone else help [^you / him / her] with these activities?'

Code all that apply.

- 01 Husband or wife or partner
- 02 Mother or father
- 03 Son
- 04 Son-in-law
- 05 Daughter
- 06 Daughter-in-law
- 07 Sister
- 08 Brother

- 09 Grandson
- 10 Granddaughter
- 11 Other relative
- 12 Unpaid volunteer
- 13 Privately paid employee
- 14 Social or health service worker
- 15 Friend or neighbour
- 95 Other person

**[Multiple responses to HEHPB are recorded in variables HEHPB01 to HEHPB09]  
[code maximum 16 out of 16 possible responses]**

**HEHPC**

Would you say that the help [^you / he / she] receive...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...Meets [^your / his / her] needs all the time,
- 2 usually meets [^your / his / her] needs,
- 3 sometimes meets [^your / his / her] needs,
- 4 or, hardly ever meets [^your / his / her] needs?

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ((activities has difficulty doing - set A = RESPONSE AND NOT (activities has difficulty doing - set A = none)) OR (activities has difficulty doing - set B = RESPONSE AND NOT (activities has difficulty doing - set B = none)) AND (whether uses walking aids has been asked <> yes)) AND (whether uses walking aids has been asked <> yes) [((HeADLa = RESPONSE AND NOT (HeADLa = 96)) OR (HeADLb = RESPONSE AND NOT (HeADLb = 96)) AND (NoHeAid1 <> 1) AND (NoHeAid5 <> 1)]*

**HEAID\***

[^Do you / Does [^name]] use any of the following?

INTERVIEWER: Read out and code all that apply.

Only include personal alarms used to call for assistance after falls etc.

- 1 A cane or walking stick
- 2 A zimmer frame or walker
- 3 A manual wheelchair
- 4 An electric wheelchair
- 5 A buggy or scooter
- 6 Special eating utensils
- 7 A personal alarm
- 8 Elbow crutches
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HEAID are recorded in variables HEAID17 to HEAID22]  
[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE62]**

*IF (walking aids used = none) AND (walking aids used at Wave 1 = RESPONSE) AND NOT (walking aids used at Wave 1 = none)[(HeAid = 96) AND (HeAid (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HeAid (Wave 1) = 96)]*

**HEAIDC**

Our records from [^your / his / her] last interview show that [^you / [^name]] were using [^list

of aids at HeAid].  
INTERVIEWER: Code 1 below unless respondent spontaneously disputes this record.  
1 Yes  
2 No

**[Responses to HEAIDC are recorded in variable HEAIDC3]**

*IF (whether confirms previous walking aid = no) AND (IW1[PNum].HeAid.CARDINAL > 1)  
[(HeAidC = 2) AND (IW1[PNum].HeAid.CARDINAL > 1)]*

**HEAIDW**

INTERVIEWER: Code which aid respondent disputes.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 [^A cane or walking stick]
- 2 [^A zimmer frame or walker]
- 3 [^A manual wheelchair]
- 4 [^An electric wheelchair]
- 5 [^A buggy or scooter]
- 6 [^Special eating utensils]
- 7 [^A personal alarm]
- 8 [^Elbow crutches]
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HEAIDW are recorded in variable HEAIW17]**

**[code maximum 8 out of 8 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HE63]**

*IF type of walking aid disputed = RESPONSE [HeAidW = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR EACH WALKING AID DISPUTED

**HEAIDN**

- 1 Never used [^[idx] type of walking aid]
- 2 No longer use [^[idx] type of walking aid]
- 3 Did not use [^[idx] type of walking aid] previously but does now

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of walking aid disputed. Responses are recorded in Heain17 to Heain21 - all empty except for Heain19]***

END OF FILTER

**HEINCT**

We would like to ask you about incontinence.

During the last 12 months, have you lost any amount of urine beyond your control?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether lost urine beyond control = yes [HeInct = 1]*

**HEINCTA**

When you had this problem, did it last for more than 1 month?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether incontinence lasted for more than 1 month = yes [HeIncta = 1]*

**HEINCTB**

Have you ever mentioned this problem to a doctor or nurse?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether mentioned incontinence to doctor / nurse = yes [HeInctb = 1]*

**HEINCTC**

Did a doctor or nurse ask you when you lose urine, for example when you sneeze or laugh?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HEINCTD**

Did a doctor or nurse ask you if you had trouble getting to the toilet?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HEINCTE**

Did a doctor or nurse ask you if you had been treated for this problem before?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HEINCTF**

Did a doctor or nurse ask you how important this problem was to you?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HEINCTG**

Did a doctor or nurse ask you to provide a sample of urine for testing?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**HEINCTH**

Did a doctor or nurse talk with you about how to treat urinary incontinence?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF person's sex = female [ISex = 2]*

**HEINCTI**

Did a doctor or specialist such as a urologist or gynecologist perform an internal exam?  
INTERVIEWER PROBE: This is called a pelvic examination, where a doctor examines your vagina and / or rectum.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No



1 Never smoked cigarettes  
 2 No longer smoking cigarettes by last interview (wave 1)  
 3 Stopped smoking cigarettes between waves 1 and 2  
 ELSE  
 IF *whether smoking at previous wave disputed = yes* [HeSkd = 1]  
**HESKF**  
 INTERVIEWER: Code response given by respondent  
 1 Does smoke cigarettes nowadays  
 2 Stopped smoking cigarettes between waves 1 and 2  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
 IF (*reason smoking disputed = stopped smoking*) OR (*whether smokes now = stopped smoking*) [HeSke = 3 OR HeSkf = 2]  
**HESTOP**  
 SHOW CARD R  
 What was the main reason that you stopped smoking cigarettes?  
 01 Doctor or nurse said I should stop  
 02 It is unhealthy  
 03 It is expensive / to save money  
 04 Pressure from family or friends  
 05 Worried about effect of passive smoke on people around me  
 06 Stopped enjoying it  
 07 Cosmetic reasons (e.g. smell, stained teeth, fingers, hair)  
 08 It's becoming harder to smoke in public or at work  
 09 Advertising  
 95 Other (SPECIFY)  
 IF *reason for quitting smoking = other* [Hestop = 95]  
**HESTOPA @**  
 INTERVIEWER: Enter other reason given for stopping smoking.  
 String 30  
 END OF FILTER  
**HENICO**  
 Did you use any nicotine products, such as nicotine patches, chewing gum, lozenges or other similar products at all to help you give up?  
 INTERVIEWER: If respondent has given up more than once, ask about most recent occasion.  
 1 Yes  
 2 No  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
 IF *whether smokes cigarettes nowadays = yes* [HESka = 1]

**HECIG**

Do you smoke cigarettes or roll ups?

1 Cigarettes

2 Roll ups

3 Both cigarettes and roll-ups

*IF whether smokes cigarettes or roll ups = [cigarettes, both] [HECig = [1, 3]]*

**HESKB**

About how many cigarettes a day do you usually smoke on weekdays?

INTERVIEWER: If range given and can't estimate, enter mid-point.

If less than one a day, enter 0.

Range: 0..997

**HESKC**

About how many cigarettes a day do you usually smoke at weekends?

INTERVIEWER: If range given and can't estimate, enter mid-point.

If less than one a day, enter 0.

Range: 0..997

**[CHECK HE64 - HE67]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether smokes cigarettes or roll ups = [roll ups, both] [HECig = [2, 3]]*

**HETBA**

How much tobacco do you normally smoke on a weekday?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

1 Grams

2 Ounces

**HETBB**

(How much tobacco do you normally smoke on a weekday?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..997

**[CHECK HE68 - HE70]**

**HETBC**

How much tobacco do you normally smoke a day at weekends?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

1 Grams

2 Ounces

**HETBD**

(How much tobacco do you normally smoke a day at weekends?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..997

**[CHECK HE71 - HE73]**

END OF FILTER

**HECGSTP**

Has a doctor or nurse ever advised you to stop smoking?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| *IF whether doctor / nurse advised to stop smoking = yes [Hecgstp = 1]*

| | **HECGSTA**

| | Did you stop for more than 6 months as a result of this advice?

- | | 1 Yes
- | | 2 No

| END OF FILTER

| | **HECGNIC**

| | Has any doctor or nurse ever told you about any nicotine products, such as nicotine patches, chewing gum, lozenges or other similar products at all to help you give up smoking?

- | | 1 Yes
- | | 2 No

| | **HENICTK**

| | [^Are you / Is [^name]] taking any medication to help [^you / him / her] stop smoking, such as nicotine replacement medication or gum or patches?

- | | 1 Yes
- | | 2 No

| END OF FILTER

**HEACTA**

SHOW CARD S

We would like to know the type and amount of physical activity involved in your daily life. Do you take part in sports or activities that are vigorous...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ...more than once a week,
- 2 once a week,
- 3 one to three times a month,
- 4 hardly ever, or never?

**HEACTB**

SHOW CARD S

And do you take part in sports or activities that are moderately energetic...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ..more than once a week,
- 2 once a week,
- 3 one to three times a month,
- 4 hardly ever, or never?

**HEACTC**

SHOW CARD S

And do you take part in sports or activities that are mildly energetic...

INTERVIEWER: Read out...

- 1 ..more than once a week,
- 2 once a week,
- 3 one to three times a month,
- 4 hardly ever, or never?

**HETSET\* @**

INTERVIEWER: The Health section is finished.  
Please enter <1> here to make the program store the current time and date.  
Range: 1..1  
[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

## SOCIAL PARTICIPATION MODULE (SP)

### SPCAR

Do you have use of a car or van when you need one (either as a passenger or driver)?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF has use of car or van = Yes [SPCar = 1]*

### SPCARA

Do you ever drive this car or van yourself?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No, passenger only

END OF FILTER

### SPTRAA

Do you use public transport ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... a lot,
- 2 quite often,
- 3 sometimes,
- 4 rarely,
- 5 or, never?

*IF uses public transport = [rarely, never] [SPTraA = 4, 5]*

### SPTRAB

Why don't you use public transport more often?

PROBE: What else?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Too expensive
- 2 Unreliable
- 3 Infrequent
- 4 My health prevents me
- 5 Do not need to
- 6 No public transport available
- 7 Not convenient
- 95 Other (specify)

***[Multiple responses to SPTRAB are recorded in variables SPTRAB1 to SPTRAB7]***

***[Code maximum 7 out of 8 possible responses]***

*IF (Reasons for not using public transport = other) [SPTraB = 95]*

### SPPUBX @

INTERVIEWER: Enter details of other reasons.

String 60

***[Open responses to Sppubx are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Sptrab (recorded in Sptrab1 to Sptrab7). These merged responses are recorded in variables sptrm01 to sptrm07.]***

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**SPTSET\* @**

INTERVIEWER: The Social Participation section is finished.

Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.

Range: 1..1

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

## WORK AND PENSIONS MODULE (WP)

Please be aware that this module still needs to be improved (e.g. making the routing clearer) and checked for any inaccuracies.

### P2158 Health and Lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

#### WP1

##### WPINT\* @

Now I have some questions about work, retirement and pensions.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

##### WPACT\*

SHOW CARD T

Did [^you / ^name] do any of these activities during the last month, that is since [^date a month ago]?

IF YES, PROBE: Which ones?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

1 Paid work

2 Self-employment

3 Voluntary work

4 Cared for someone

5 Looked after home or family

6 Attended a formal educational or training course

96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to WPACT are recorded in variables WPACT1 to WPACT6]**

**[code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]**

#### [CHECK WP1]

*IF NOT (activities done in past month = paid work) AND NOT (activities done in past month = self-employment) [(NOT WpAct = 1) AND NOT (WpAct = 2)]*

|

##### WPAWAY\* @

| Can I just check, at any point during the last month [^were you / was [^name]] ...READ OUT...

| 1 ... temporarily away from paid work,

| 2 looking for paid work,

| 3 or, waiting to take up paid work already accepted?

| 96 None of these

|

END OF FILTER

*IF derived - activity = temporarily away from paid work [WPActW = 2]*

|

##### WPTAW\*

| What was the main reason [^you were / he was / she was] away from work last month?

| CODE ONE ONLY

| 1 Leave / holiday

| 2 Sick / injured

| 3 Attending a training course

| 4 Laid off / on short time

| 5 On strike

| 6 Maternity / Paternity leave

| 7 Other personal / family reasons

| 95 Other reasons (SPECIFY)

|

| *IF main reason for being away from work in past month = other [WpTaw = 95]*  
|  
| **WPTAWO\*@**  
| INTERVIEWER WRITE IN OTHER REASON  
| String 60  
| **[Open responses to WpTawo were coded and then incorporated into WpTaw. WpTawc**  
| **identifies that an open response was given at WpTawo and incorporated into WpTaw.]**  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

**WPDES\***  
SHOW CARD U  
Which one of these, would you say best describes [*^your / ^name's*] current situation?  
CODE ONE ONLY.  
1 Retired  
2 Employed  
3 Self-employed  
4 Unemployed  
5 Permanently sick or disabled  
6 Looking after home or family  
95 Other (SPECIFY)  
96 SPONTANEOUS : Semi-retired

| *IF current situation =other [Wpdes = 95]*  
|  
| **WPDESA\*@**  
| INTERVIEWER WRITE IN OTHER SITUATION  
| String 60  
| **[Open responses to Wpdesa were coded and then incorporated into Wpdes. Wpdesc**  
| **identifies that an open response was given at Wpdesa and incorporated into Wpdes.]**  
|  
END OF FILTER

| *IF NOT (activities done in past month = attended a formal educational or training course)*  
| *[NOT (WpAct = 6)]*  
|  
| **WPEDC\***  
| [*^Have you / Has ^name*] taken a formal educational or training course in the last 12  
| months?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
|  
END OF FILTER

**WPVW\***  
How often [*^BLANK / if at all*] [*^do you / does ^name*] do [*^BLANK / any*] voluntary work? Is it  
...  
READ OUT ...  
1 ... twice a month or more,  
2 about once a month,  
3 every few months,  
4 about once or twice a year,  
5 less than once a year,  
6 or, never?

IF NOT (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work or waiting to take up paid work]) AND (person's age < 70) [NOT (WPActW = [1,2,3]) AND (Age < 70)]

IF (derived - activity at Wave 1 = not working) AND (person's age < 70)  
[(WPActW (Wave 1) = 4) AND (Age < 70)]

**WPJOB\***

Can I just check, [^have you / has [^name]] had a paid job since last time we interviewed [^you / name] [^on date of last interview]?

INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous self-employment.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

ELSE

IF derived - activity at Wave 1 = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work, waiting to take up paid work] [WpActw (Wave 1) = [1,2,3]]

**WPJOBL\***

Last time we interviewed [^you / [^name]] [^on date of last interview], [^you were / he was / she was] [^working / about to start work] [^BLANK / as a [^job title]]. Is this [^your / [^name's]] most recent job?

INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous self-employment.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work]) AND (derived - activity at Wave 1 = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work, waiting to take up paid work])  
[(WPActW = [1,2]) AND (WpActw (Wave 1) = [1,2,3])]

**WPSTJ\***

Last time we interviewed [^you / [name]], [^you were / [^name] was], [^working / about to start work] [^BLANK / as a [^job title]], is this still [^your / [^name's] main job?

INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous self-employment.

If more than one job, main = the job with most hours.

If equal hours: main = the highest paid job.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

IF working status= employee [WpESd (Wave 1) = 1]

**WPEMP\***

[^Are you / Is [^name]] still working for the same employer?

INTERVIEWER: If self-employed, code 'no'

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (derived - activity = not working) AND (derived - activity at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)  
[(WPActW = 4) AND (WpActw (Wave 1)<> RESPONSE)]*

| **WPEVER\***  
| [^Have you / Has [^name]] ever done any paid work?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (whether job mentioned at last interview is current main job = no) OR (whether still works for  
same employer = no) [(Wpstj = 2) OR (WpEmp = 2)]*

| **WPLJOB\***  
| SHOW CARD Y  
| What were [^your / [^name's]] reasons for leaving [^your / [^name's]] previous [^employer /  
| job]?  
| CODE ALL THAT APPLY  
| 01 Own ill health or disability  
| 02 Job was too tiring / stressful  
| 03 Ill health or disability of a relative / friend  
| 04 Company went out of business / site closed down  
| 05 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice  
| 06 Took voluntary redundancy  
| 07 To spend more time with partner / family  
| 08 Career progression  
| 09 Fed up with job and wanted a change  
| 10 Moved to a different area  
| 95 Other reason  
| **[Multiple responses to WPLJOB are recorded in variables WPLJOB1 to WPLJOB5]  
| [code maximum 11 out of 11 possible responses]**

| *IF reasons for leaving previous job = other [WpLJob= 95]*

| | **WPLJOBX@**  
| | What was this reason?  
| | String 60

| |  
| **[Open responses to Wpljobx are coded and merged with the multiple responses to  
| Wpljob  
| (recorded in Wpljob1 to Wpljob5). These merged responses are recorded in variables  
| wpljob12 to wpljob16]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF reasons for leaving previous job = RESPONSE [WpLJob = RESPONSE]*

| | *IF more than one reasons for leaving previous job [WpLJob.CARDINAL > 1]*

| | | **WPLJOBM\***  
| | | SHOW CARD Y  
| | | What was [^your / [^name's]] main reason for leaving [^your / [^name's]] previous

| | | [^employer / job]?  
 | | | CODE ONE ONLY  
 | | | 01 Own ill health or disability  
 | | | 02 Job was too tiring /stressful  
 | | | 03 Ill health or disability of a relative / friend  
 | | | 04 Company went out of business / site closed down  
 | | | 05 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice  
 | | | 06 Took voluntary redundancy  
 | | | 07 To spend more time with partner / family  
 | | | 08 Career progression  
 | | | 09 Fed up with job and wanted a change  
 | | | 10 Moved to a different area  
 | | | 95 Other reason  
 | | | **[CHECK WP2]**  
 | | |  
 | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | |  
 | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | |  
 | | | *IF (working status at Wave 1 = employee) AND (reasons for leaving previous job = [own ill  
 | | | health or disability, job was too tiring / stressful]) [(WpESd (Wave 1) = 1) AND (WpLJob =  
 | | | [1, 2])]*  
 | | |  
 | | | **WPCHG\***  
 | | | SHOW CARD Z  
 | | | If [^your / [^name's]] work had been changed in any of these ways, would [^you / [^name]]  
 | | | have been able to continue working [^for that employer / in that job]?  
 | | | IF YES: Which of these changes would have enabled [^you / [^name]] to continue working  
 | | | [^for that employer / in that job]?  
 | | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY  
 | | | 1 Less physically demanding  
 | | | 2 Less mentally demanding / stressful  
 | | | 3 Fewer hours / job sharing  
 | | | 4 More flexible hours  
 | | | 5 Working from home sometimes  
 | | | 6 Special equipment / workplace adaptation  
 | | | 96 None of these  
 | | | **[Multiple responses to WPCHG are recorded in variables WPCHG1 to WPCHG4  
 | | | [code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]**  
 | | |  
 | | | **[CHECK WP3]**  
 | | |  
 | | | *IF changes that would have made it possible to continue working at this job = none  
 | | | [WpChg = 96]*  
 | | |  
 | | | **WPCHGNON\***  
 | | | Would anything else have enabled [^you / [^name]] to stay [^with that employer / in that  
 | | | job]?  
 | | | 1 Yes  
 | | | 2 No  
 | | |  
 | | | *IF whether other change would have made it possible to continue working at this job = yes  
 | | | [WpChgnon = 1]*  
 | | |  
 | | | **WPCHGX@**

| | | | What was this change?  
 | | | | String 60  
 | | | | **[Open responses to WchgX are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Wpchg (recorded in Wpchg1 to Wpchg4). These merged responses are recorded in variables | | | | wpchgm1 to wpchgm4]**  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | *IF (changes that would have made it possible to continue working at this job = RESPONSE) AND NOT ((number of changes that would have made it possible to continue working at this job = 1) AND (changes that would have made it possible to continue working at this job = none)) [(WpChg = RESPONSE) AND NOT ((WpChg.CARDINAL = 1) AND (WpChg = 96))]*  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **WPCHGO\***  
 | | | | SHOW CARD Z  
 | | | | Did [^your / ^name's] employer offer to change [^your / ^name's] job in any of these ways?  
 | | | | 1 Yes  
 | | | | 2 No  
 | | | |  
 | | | | *IF whether employer offered to make changes to job = no [WpChgO = 2]*  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **WPCHGA\***  
 | | | | SHOW CARD Z  
 | | | | Did [^you / ^name] ask [^your / ^name's] employer to change [^your / ^name's] job in any of these ways?  
 | | | | 1 Yes  
 | | | | 2 No  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | *IF (whether employer offered to make changes to job = yes) OR (whether asked employer to change job = yes) [(WpChgO = 1) OR (WpChgA = 1)]*  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **WPCHGB\***  
 | | | | In what ways did [^your employer offer / ^name's] employer offer / you ask your employer / [^name] ask [^name's] employer to change [your / ^name's] job?  
 | | | | 1 Less physically demanding  
 | | | | 2 Less mentally demanding / stressful  
 | | | | 3 Fewer hours / job sharing  
 | | | | 4 More flexible hours  
 | | | | 5 Working from home sometimes  
 | | | | 6 Special equipment / workplace adaptation  
 | | | | 95 Other  
 | | | | **[Multiple responses to WPCHGB are recorded in variables WPCHGB1 to WPCHGB3]**  
 | | | | **[code maximum 7 out of 7 possible responses]**  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work or waiting to take up paid work] [Wpactw = [1, 2, 3]*

|  
| *IF (NOT (whether job mentioned at last interview is current main job = yes AND (whether still works for same employer = yes OR working status at Wave 1 = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, self-employed]))) [(NOT (Wpstj = 1 AND (WpEmp = 1 OR WpESd (Wave 1) = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 2])))]*

|  
| **WPESP\*\***  
| | [^Is [^name] / will [^name] be] ... READ OUT ...  
| | 1 ... an employee,  
| | 2 or, self-employed in [^his / her] main job?

|  
| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF computed: ask job title or not = yes [WPAaskF = 1]*

|  
| **WPDET@**  
| I'd like to ask some details about [^your last main job / the main job you were doing last month / the main job you were temporarily away from last month / the main job you are waiting to take up]. What is the name or title of this job?  
| INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous self-employment. If more than one job, main = the job with the most hours. If equal hours: main = the highest paid job.

| Write in.  
| String 60

|  
| END OF FILTER

*IF computed: ask type of work done most of the time or not = yes [WPAaskD = 1]*

|  
| **WPJDO@**  
| [^BLANK / I'd like to ask some details about [^your last main job / the main job you were doing last month / the main job you were temporarily away from last month / the main job you are waiting to take up].] What kind of work [^did you / do you / will you] do most of the time?  
| IF RELEVANT: What materials / machinery [^did you / do you / will you] use?

| String 80

|  
| **WPQUAL@**  
| What skills or qualifications are needed to do this job?

| WRITE IN  
| String 120

|  
| **WPSUP**  
| [^Did you / Do you / Will you] directly supervise or [^were you / are you / will you be] directly responsible for the work of any other people?

| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

|  
| END OF FILTER

*IF computed: ask employee or self employed or not = yes [WPAaskE = 1]*

**WPEST**

[^Were you / Are you / Will you be] ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... an employee,
- 2 or, self-employed in your main job?

*IF employee or self employed = employee [Wpest = 1]*

**WPSAL**

Can I just check, [^were you / are you / will you be] paid either a salary or wage by an employer in your main job?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (employee or self employed= self-employed) OR (whether paid salary by employer in main job = no) [(Wpest = 2) OR (Wpsal = 2)]*

**WPCJB**

(Can I just check) [^were you / are you / will you be] ...

INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply (up to 4) ...

- 1 ... paid a salary or wage by an agency?
- 2 ... a sole Director of your own limited company?
- 3 ... running a business or professional practice?
- 4 ... a partner in a business or professional practice?
- 5 ... working for yourself?
- 6 ... a sub-contractor?
- 7 ... doing freelance work?
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to WPCJB are recorded in variables WPCJB1 to WPCJB4]  
[code maximum 4 out of 8 possible responses]**

**[CHECK WP4]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF computed: ask type of work done most of the time or not = yes [WPAskD = 1]*

*IF derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee [WpEs = 1]*

**WPMAKE\*@**

What [^did / does] your employer make or do at the place where you [^usually work / usually worked / will work]?

String 100

**WPNEMP\***

Including yourself, about how many people are employed at the place where you [^usually work / usually worked / will work]?

- 1 1 or 2
- 2 3 to 24
- 3 25 to 499
- 4 500+

END OF FILTER

*IF derived working status: employee or self-employed = self-employed [WpEs = 2]*

**WPKAKS\*@**

What [^did you / do you / will you] make or do in your business?

String 100

**WPEMPL\***

[^Did you / Do you / Will you] have any employees?

1 None

2 1 or 2

3 3 to 24

4 25 to 499

5 500+

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work]) AND (derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee) [(WPAcTW = [1, 2]) AND (WpEs = 1)]*

**WPNOE\***

Including yourself, about how many people, in total, work for your employer at all locations in the UK?

1 2-4

2 5-19

3 20-99

4 100-499

5 500-999

6 1000+

END OF FILTER

*IF derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work] [WPAcTW = [1,2]]*

**WPJACT**

SHOW CARD X/CC

Which of these best describes the work that you do in your main job?

CODE ONE ONLY

1 Sedentary occupation: You spend most of your time sitting (such as in an office)

2 Standing occupation: You spend most of your time standing or walking. However the way you spend your time does not require intense physical effort (e.g. shop assistant, hairdresser, security guard etc.)

3 Physical work: This involves some physical effort including handling of heavy objects and use of tools (e.g. plumber, cleaner, nurse, sports instructor, electrician, carpenter etc.)

4 Heavy manual work: This involves very vigorous physical activity including handling of very heavy objects (e.g. docker, miner, bricklayer, construction worker etc.)

*IF NOT (whether still works for same employer = yes OR working status = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, self-employed])[(NOT WpEmp = 1 OR WpESd (Wave 1) = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 2])]*

**WPSJOB**

When did you start your current job?

JOB = PERIOD OF PAID WORK WITH ONE EMPLOYER OR PERIOD OF  
CONTINUOUS SELF-EMPLOYMENT  
ENTER YEAR AT THIS QUESTION  
Range: 1900..2050

*IF year of start of current job = RESPONSE [WpsjobY = RESPONSE]*

**WPSJOBM**

(When did you start your current job?)

CODE MONTH AT THIS QUESTION IF DOESN'T KNOW MONTH, CODE SEASON

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP5 - WP7]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF derived - activity = not working [WpActw = 4]*

**WPWHYWK**

What were your reasons for starting working?

- 1 I needed the money
- 2 My own health improved
- 3 Health of relative / friend improved
- 4 For enjoyment / company at work
- 5 I was able to find a suitable job
- 95 Other reason

**[Multiple responses to WPWHYWK are recorded in variables WPWYWK1 to WPWYWK5]**

**[code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]**

*IF reasons for starting work = other [WpWhyWk = 95]*

**WPWHYWKX@**

What was this other reason?

String 60

**[Open responses to Wpwhykx are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Wpwhywk (recorded in Wpwywk1 to Wpwywk5). These merged responses are**

**recorded** | | | **in variables wpwyw16 to wpwyw20]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| *IF NOT (whether still works for same employer = yes OR working status = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, self-employed]) [NOT (WpEmp = 1 OR WpESd (Wave 1) = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 2])]*

| | **WPWHYJB**

| | What were your reasons for taking this job?

| | CODE ALL THAT APPLY

| | 01 The pay was enough

| | 02 The hours suited me

| | 03 Could come to and / or leave work at times that suited me

| | 04 To progress my career

| | 05 The content of the job suited me

| | 06 Started own business / become self-employed

| | 07 Started work in family business

| | 08 Was the only job I could get

| | 09 Was the first job I found

| | 95 Other

| | **[Multiple responses to WPWHYJB are recorded in variables WPWHYJ1 to WPWHYJ5 and wpwyj14 to wpwyj18]**

| | **[code maximum 10 out of 10 possible responses]**

| | *IF reasons for taking present job = other[WpWhyJb = 95]*

| | **WPWYJBX @**

| | What was this reason?

| | String 60

| | **[Open responses to Wpwyjbx are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Wpwhyjb (recorded in Wpwhyj1 to Wpwhyj5). These merged responses are**

**recorded** | | | **in variables wpwyj14 to wpwyj18]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | *IF reasons for taking present job = RESPONSE [WpWhyJb = RESPONSE]*

| | *IF more than one reasons for taking present job [WpWhyJb.CARDINAL > 1]*

| | **WPWHYJBM**

| | What was your main reason for taking this job?

| | CODE ONE ONLY

| | 01 The pay was enough

| | 02 The hours suited me

| | 03 Could come to and/or leave work at times that suited me

| | 04 To progress my career

| | 05 The content of the job suited me

| | 06 Started own business/become self-employed

| | 07 Started work in family business

| | 08 Was the only job I could get

| | 09 Was the first job I found

| | 95 Other

| | **[CHECK WP8]**

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | *IF derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee [WpEs = 1]*

| | | **WPCJOB**

| | | (Can I just check,) Is your current job ... READ OUT ...

- | | | 1 ... a temporary job (lasting less than 12 months),
- | | | 2 a fixed term job lasting between 1 and 3 years,
- | | | 3 a fixed term job lasting more than 3 years,
- | | | 4 or, a permanent job?

| | | **WPHJOB**

| | | How many hours a week do you usually work in this job, excluding meal breaks but including any paid overtime?

| | | Range: 1..168

| | | **[CHECK WP9]**

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | *IF derived working status: employee or self-employed = self-employed [WpEs = 2]*

| | | **WPHWRK**

| | | How many hours a week do you usually work, including doing the books, VAT and so on?

| | | Range: 1..168

| | | **[CHECK WP10]**

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | *IF NOT (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work]) AND (whether has had paid job since last interview = [yes, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR whether has had paid job since last interview <> EMPTY OR whether has ever done paid work = [yes, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])[NOT (WPAcW = [1,2]) AND (Wpjob = [1, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR Wpjobl <> EMPTY OR Wpever = [1, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| | | **WPWLY**

| | | Have you done any regular paid work in last 12 months, that is since [^date a year ago]?

- | | | 1 Yes
- | | | 2 No

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | *IF (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work]) OR (whether has done regular paid work in past year = yes)[(WPAcW = [1,2]) OR (WpWly = 1)]*

| | | **WPWLYM**

| | | How many weeks were you [^in employment / actively self-employed] during the last 12 months, that is since [^date a year ago] [^BLANK / including any periods of paid leave]?

| | | INTERVIEWER: Count each week respondent was in employment - even if only worked for

| part of the week.  
| Range: 1..52

| **WPHLY**

| How many weeks [^BLANK / paid] leave did you take in the last 12 months, that is since  
| [^date a year ago]?  
| Range: 0..52

| END OF FILTER

| *IF whether has done regular paid work in past year = yes [WpWly = 1]*

| **WPWLYY**

| About how much did your income from work amount to in the last year, including any  
| overtime, bonuses, commissions, tips or tax refund, but before any deductions for tax, national  
| insurance or pension contributions, union dues and so on?  
| Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK WP11]**

| *IF (gross amount of income in past year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]  
| [(WpWlyy = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])])*

| **WPWLYB@**

| Did it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 20000, 50000)

| **[Bracket results are recorded in wpwlyyl, wpwlyyu, wpwlyye, wpwlyyr]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| *IF (whether has had paid job since last interview = yes OR whether job mentioned at last  
| interview is most recent job = [yes, no] OR whether has ever done paid work = yes)  
| [(Wpjob = 1 OR Wpjobl = [1, 2] OR Wpever = 1)]*

| **WPLLSY**

| When did your last job start?  
| INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous  
| self-employment.  
| Enter the year at this question.  
| Range: 1900..2050

| **[CHECK WP12]**

| *IF year of start of last job = RESPONSE [WpllsY = RESPONSE]*

| **WPLLSM**

| (When did your last job start?)  
| INTERVIEWER: Code the month at this question. If doesn't know month, code season.  
| 01 January  
| 02 February  
| 03 March  
| 04 April  
| 05 May  
| 06 June

07 July  
08 August  
09 September  
10 October  
11 November  
12 December  
13 Winter (start of year)  
14 Spring  
15 Summer  
16 Autumn  
17 Winter (end of year)

END OF FILTER

**WPLLJY**

When did your last job end?

INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous self-employment.

Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP13 - WP14]**

*IF (year when last job ended = RESPONSE) AND (year when last job ended > 1990)*

*[(WplljY = RESPONSE) AND (WplljY > 1990)]*

**WPLLJM**

(When did your last job end?)

INTERVIEWER: Code the month at this question. If doesn't know month, code season.

01 January  
02 February  
03 March  
04 April  
05 May  
06 June  
07 July  
08 August  
09 September  
10 October  
11 November  
12 December  
13 Winter (start of year)  
14 Spring  
15 Summer  
16 Autumn  
17 Winter (end of year)

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP15]**

*IF NOT (current situation = [retired, self-employed]) [NOT (Wpdes = [1, 3])]*

**WPYSTP\***

SHOW CARD DD

What were [^your / ^name's] reasons for stopping working?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- 01 Own ill health or disability
- 02 Working was too tiring / stressful
- 03 Ill health or disability of a relative / friend
- 04 Company went out of business / site closed down
- 05 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice
- 06 Took voluntary redundancy
- 07 Could not find another job
- 08 Could afford to stop working
- 09 To spend more time with partner / family
- 10 To enjoy life while still fit and young enough
- 11 Fed up with working and wanted a change
- 12 To stop working at same time as husband / wife / partner
- 13 To give young generation a chance
- 14 Moved to a different area
- 95 Other reason

**[Multiple responses to WPYSTP are recorded in variables WPYSTP1 to WPYSTP5]  
[code maximum 15 out of 15 possible responses]**

*IF reasons for stopping working = other [WpYStp = 95]*

**WPYSTPX@**

What was this reason?

String 60

**[Open responses to Wpystpx are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Wpstpx (recorded in Wpystp1 to Wpystp5). These merged responses are recorded in variables wpystm1 to wpystm5]**

END OF FILTER

*IF reasons for stopping working = RESPONSE [WpYStp = RESPONSE]*

*IF more than one reasons for stopping working [WpYStp.CARDINAL > 1]*

**WPYSTPM**

SHOW CARD DD

What was your main reason for stopping working?

- 01 Own ill health or disability
- 02 Working was too tiring / stressful
- 03 Ill health or disability of a relative / friend
- 04 Company went out of business / site closed down
- 05 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice
- 06 Took voluntary redundancy
- 07 Could not find another job
- 08 Could afford to stop working
- 09 To spend more time with partner / family
- 10 To enjoy life while still fit and young enough
- 11 Fed up with working and wanted a change
- 12 To stop working at same time as husband / wife / partner
- 13 To give young generation a chance
- 14 Moved to a different area
- 95 Other reason

**[CHECK WP16]**

END OF FILTER

```

| | |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF (reasons for stopping working = [own ill health or disability, working was too tiring /
| | stressful) AND year when last job ended = RESPONSE AND year when last job ended >
| | 2000 [(WpYStp = [1, 2]) AND WplljY = RESPONSE AND WplljY > 2000]
| |
| | IF derived working status: employee or self-employed = [employee, EMPTY] AND working
| | status at Wave 1= employee) [WpEs = [1, EMPTY] AND WpESd (Wave 1) = 1])
| |
| | WPNCHG*
| | SHOW CARD Z
| | If [^you / [^name's]] work had been changed in any of these ways, would [^you /
| | [^name]] have been able to continue working for that employer?
| | IF YES: Which of these changes would have enabled [^you / [^name]] to continue
| | working for that employer?
| | CODE ALL THAT APPLY
| | 1 Less physically demanding
| | 2 Less mentally demanding / stressful
| | 3 Fewer hours / job sharing
| | 4 More flexible hours
| | 5 Working from home sometimes
| | 6 Special equipment / workplace adaptation
| | 96 None of these
| | [Multiple responses to WPNCHG are recorded in variables WPNCHG1 to
| | WPNCHG3]
| | [code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]
| |
| | [CHECK WP17]
| |
| | IF changes that would have made it possible to continue working for employer = none
| | [WpNChg= 96]
| |
| | WPNCHGN*
| | Would anything else have enabled [^you / [^name]] to stay with this employer?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF whether other change would have made it possible to continue working for employer
= | | yes [WpNChgN = 1]
| |
| | WPNCHGX@
| | What was this change?
| | String 60
| | [Open responses to WpnchgX are coded and merged with the multiple
| | responses to
| | Wpnchg (recorded in WPNCHG1 to WPNCHG3). These merged responses are
| | recorded in variables wpnchgm1 to wpnchgm3]
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF changes that would have made it possible to continue working for employer =
| | RESPONSE AND NOT (number of changes that would have made it possible to
| | continue
| | working for employer = 1 AND (changes that would have made it possible to continue

```

| | | | working for employer = none)) [WpNChg = RESPONSE AND NOT  
(WpNChg.CARDINAL = 1 AND (WpNChg= 96))]

| | | | **WPNCHGO\***

| | | | Did [^your / [^name's]] employer offer to change [^your / [^name's]] job in any of  
| | | | these ways?

| | | | 1 Yes

| | | | 2 No

| | | | *IF whether employer offered to make changes to job = no [WpNChgO = 2]*

| | | | **WPNCHGA\***

| | | | Did [^you / [^name]] ask [^your / [^name's]] employer to change [^your / [^name's]]  
| | | | job in any of these ways?

| | | | 1 Yes

| | | | 2 No

| | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | *IF (whether employer offered to make changes to job = yes) OR (whether asked  
| | | | employer to change job = yes) [(WpNChgO = 1) OR (WpNChgA = 1)]*

| | | | **WPNCHGB\***

| | | | In what ways did [^your employer offer / [^name's] employer offer / you ask your  
| | | | employer / [^name] ask [^name's] employer] to change [^your / [name's]] job?

| | | | 1 Less physically demanding

| | | | 2 Less mentally demanding / stressful

| | | | 3 Fewer hours / job sharing

| | | | 4 More flexible hours

| | | | 5 Working from home sometimes

| | | | 6 Special equipment / workplace adaptation

| | | | 95 Other

| | | | ***[Multiple responses to WPNCHGB are recorded in variables WPNCHB1 and  
| | | | WPNCHB2]***

| | | | ***[code maximum 7 out of 7 possible responses]***

| | | | *IF changes employer offered to make = other [WpNChgB = 95]*

| | | | **WPNCHGBX@**

| | | | What is this other change?

| | | | String 50

| | | | ***[Open responses to Wpnchgbx are coded and merged with the multiple  
| | | | responses to***

| | | | ***Wpnchgb (recorded in variables WPNCHB1 and WPNCHB2). These merged  
| | | | responses are recorded in variables Wpnch17 to Wpnch17]***

| | | | END OF FILTER

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF PrevDate = RESPONSE AND whether job mentioned at last interview is most recent job <> yes AND ((year of start of last job = RESPONSE AND month of start of last job = [January .. December] AND PrevDate < (TODATE (WpllsY, WpllsM.ORD, 1)+(0, 1, 0)) OR (whether still works for same employer = no) AND year of start of current job = RESPONSE AND month of start of current job = [January .. December] AND PrevDate < TODATE (WpsjobY, Wpsjobm.ORD, 1) + (0, 1, 0))) [PrevDate = RESPONSE AND Wpjobl <> 1 AND ((WpllsY = RESPONSE AND WpllsM = [1 - 12] AND PrevDate < (TODATE (WpllsY, WpllsM.ORD, 1)+(0, 1, 0)) OR (WpEmp = 2 AND WpsjobY = RESPONSE AND WpsjobM = [1 - 12] AND PrevDate < TODATE (WpsjobY, Wpsjobm.ORD, 1) + (0, 1, 0)))*

| LOOP FOR kk:= 1 TO 5

| *IF kk = 1 OR (kk > 1 AND (whether was working in this job at last interview = [no, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])) [kk = 1 OR (kk > 1 AND (WpOWb = [2, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]))]*

| **WPOJ\***

| Did [^you / [^name]] have another job before this one?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| **[There is a separate variable for responses about each job]**

| **[Responses are recorded in wpoj, wpoj2 to wpoj5]**

| *IF whether had other previous job = yes [WpOJ = 1]*

| **WPOWB\***

| [^Were you / Was [^name]] working in this job at the time of the last interview?

| IF ONLY WORKED IN THIS JOB BEFORE DATE OF LAST INTERVIEW

| ENTER 'NO'.

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| **[There is a separate variable for responses about each job]**

| **[Responses are recorded in wpowb, wpowb2 to wpowb5]**

| *IF whether was working in this job at last interview = no [WpOWb = 2]*

| **WPLPSY**

| When did this job start?

| INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous self-employment.

| Enter the year at this question.

| Range: 1900..2050

| **[There is a separate variable for responses about each job]**

| **[Responses are recorded in wplpsy, wplpsy2 to wplpsy5]**

| **[CHECK WP18]**

| *IF year of start of job = RESPONSE [WpLpsy = RESPONSE]*

| **WPLPSM**

| (When did this job start?)

| INTERVIEWER: Code the month at this question. If doesn't know month, code season.

| 01 January

- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each job]  
 [Responses are recorded in wplpsm, wplpsm2 to wplpsm5]  
 [CHECK WP19]***

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPLPEY**

When did this job end?

INTERVIEWER: Job = A period of paid work with an employer or a period of continuous self-employment.

Enter the year at this question.

Range: 1900..2050

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each job]]  
 [Responses are recorded in wplpey, wplpey2 to wplpey5]  
 [CHECK WP20]***

*IF year of end of job = RESPONSE [WpLpey = RESPONSE]*

**WPLPEM**

(When did this job end?)

INTERVIEWER: Code the month at this question. If doesn't know month, code season.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn

| | | | 17 Winter (end of year)  
 | | | | **[There is a separate variable for responses about each job]**  
 | | | | **[Responses are recorded in wlpem, wlpem to wlpem5]**  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | **[CHECK WP21]**  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | END OF FILTER

IF (sex = male AND age < 65) OR (sex = female AND age < 60)  
 [(ISex = 1 AND AgeP < 65) OR (ISex = 2 AND AgeP < 60)]

**WPNIC**  
 Do you currently pay National Insurance contributions, including any that are paid on your behalf?  
 1 Yes  
 2 No  
 IF (whether pays National Insurance contributions = no) AND (whether paid National Insurance contributions at Wave 1 <> yes) AND (whether ever paid National Insurance contributions at Wave 1 <> yes) [(WpNIC = 2) AND (WpNIC (Wave 1) <> 1) AND (WpNICe (Wave 1) <> 1)]

**WPNICE**  
 Have you ever paid National Insurance contributions including any that have been paid on your behalf?  
 1 Yes  
 2 No  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER

IF sex = female AND marital status <> single AND (whether has ever paid NI contributions at married woman rate <> RESPONSE) [ISex = 2 AND DiMar <> 1 AND (WpNImw (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)]

**WPNIMW**  
 Have you ever paid NI contributions at the reduced rate for married women. This is sometimes known as the 'half stamp'?  
 1 Yes  
 2 No  
 END OF FILTER

IF derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work] [WPActW = 1, 2]

IF whether health limits paid work = yes [HeLWk = 1]  
**WPLIMWK**

| | You mentioned earlier that you have a health problem or disability that limits the kind or  
 | | amount of paid work you can do, does this health problem or disability limit the kind or  
 | | amount of work you can do in your current job?  
 | | 1 Yes  
 | | 2 No  
  
 | | *IF derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee [WpEs = 1]*  
  
 | | *IF whether has health condition that limits kind or amount of paid work can do = no | | |*  
 | | [*WpLimWk = 2*]  
  
 | | | **WPCHGD**  
 | | | SHOW CARD Z  
 | | | Has your employer changed your work in any of these ways to make it easier for you to  
 | | | continue working with your health problem or disability?  
 | | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY  
 | | | 1 Less physically demanding  
 | | | 2 Less mentally demanding / stressful  
 | | | 3 Fewer hours / job sharing  
 | | | 4 More flexible hours  
 | | | 5 Working from home sometimes  
 | | | 6 Special equipment / workplace adaptation  
 | | | 96 None of these  
 | | | **[Multiple responses to WPCHGD are recorded in variables WPCHGD1 to**  
 | | | **WPCHGD3]**  
 | | | **[code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]**  
  
 | | | **[CHECK WP22]**  
  
 | | | *IF changes made by employer to help with health problem or disability = none*  
 | | | [*WpChgD=96*]  
  
 | | | **WPCHGDN\***  
 | | | Would anything else enable [^you / [name]] to stay with this employer?  
 | | | 1 Yes  
 | | | 2 No  
  
 | | | *IF whether other changes would make it possible to stay with employer = yes*  
 | | | [*WpChgDn = 1*]  
  
 | | | **WPCHGDX@**  
 | | | What was this change?  
 | | | String 60  
 | | | **[Open responses to WpchgdX are coded and merged with the multiple**  
 | | | **responses to**  
 | | | **Wpchgd (recorded in variables Wchgd1 to Wpchgd3). These merged**  
 | | | **responses are | | | | recorded in variables Wpchgdm1 to Wpchgdm3]**  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
  
 | | | ELSE  
  
 | | | *IF whether has health condition that limits kind or amount of paid work can do = yes*

```

| | | | | [WpLimWk = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPCHGL
| | | | | SHOW CARD Z
| | | | | Would you like the work that you do for your employer to change in any of these ways
| | | | | because of your health problem or disability?
| | | | | 1 Less physically demanding
| | | | | 2 Less mentally demanding / stressful
| | | | | 3 Fewer hours / job sharing
| | | | | 4 More flexible hours
| | | | | 5 Working from home sometimes
| | | | | 6 Special equipment / workplace adaptation
| | | | | 95 SPONTANEOUS: Other change
| | | | | 96 None of these
| | | | | [Multiple responses to WPCHGL are recorded in variables WPCHGL1 to
| | | | | WPCHGL5]
| | | | | [code maximum 7 out of 8 possible responses]
| | | | |
| | | | | [CHECK WP23]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF condition of work would like to be changed= other [WpChgL=95]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPCHGLX@
| | | | | What other changes?
| | | | | String 60
| | | | | [Open responses to Wpchglx are coded and merged with the multiple
| | | | | responses to
| | | | | Wpchgl (recorded in variables Wchghl1 to Wpchgl5). These merged responses
| | | | | are recorded in variables Wpchl11 to Wpchl15]
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF condition of work would like to be changed = RESPONSE [WpChgL = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPOCHG
| | | | | SHOW CARD Z
| | | | | Has your employer offered to change your job in any of these ways?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether employer offered to make changes to job = no [WpOChg = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPACHG
| | | | | SHOW CARD Z
| | | | | Have you asked your employer to change your job in any of these ways?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether employer offered to make changes to job = yes) OR (whether asked
| | | | | employer to make changes to job= yes) [(WpOChg = 1) OR (WpAChg = 1)]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPBCHG*
| | | | | SHOW CARD Z
| | | | | In what ways did [^your employer offer / [^name's] employer offer / you ask your

```



**[Open responses to WPWYNJX are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Wpwhynj (recorded in variables Wpwhyn1 to Wpwhyn6). These merged responses are recorded in variables wpwyn16 to wpwyn21]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (reasons for trying to leave current job = RESPONSE) AND (more than one reasons for trying to leave current job) [(WpWhyNJ = RESPONSE) AND (WpWhyNJ.CARDINAL > 1)]*

**WPMYNJ**

SHOW CARD AA

What is the main reason for trying to leave your current job?

- 01 Own ill health or disability
- 02 Job too tiring / stressful
- 03 Ill health or disability of a relative / friend
- 04 Company going out of business / site closing down
- 05 Being made redundant / dismissed/have no choice
- 06 Taking voluntary redundancy
- 07 To spend more time with partner / family
- 08 Fed up with job and want a change
- 09 Fed up with employer / colleagues and want a change
- 10 To progress my career
- 11 To earn more money
- 12 Moving to a different area
- 95 Other reason

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF (whether currently looking for paid work <> yes) AND (whether has health condition that limits kind or amount of paid work can do <> yes) [(Wplnj <> 1) AND (WpLimWk <> 1)]*

**WPLKCH**

SHOW CARD BB

Would you like your current job to change in any way of these ways?

IF YES: How would you like your job to change?

- 1 Less physically demanding
- 2 Less mentally demanding / stressful
- 3 Fewer hours / job sharing
- 4 More flexible hours
- 5 Working from home sometimes
- 6 Special equipment / workplace adaptation
- 95 Other
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to WPLKCH are recorded in variables WPLKCH1 to WPLKCH6]  
[code maximum 7 out of 8 possible responses]**

**[CHECK WP24]**

*IF changes would like to be made to current job =other [WpLkCh=95]*

**WPLKCHX@**

What other changes?

String 60

| | | | *[Open responses to Wplkchx are coded and merged with the multiple responses to*

| | | | *Wplkch (recorded in variables Wplkch1 to Wplkch6). These merged responses are | | | | recorded in variables wplkcm1 to wplkcm6]*

| | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | *IF changes would like to be made to current job = RESPONSE [WpLkCh = RESPONSE]*

| | | | **WPNOLK**

| | | | What are your reasons for staying in your current job?

| | | | 1 Don't think could get another job that would suit me better

| | | | 2 Too difficult / time-consuming to look for another job

| | | | 3 Pay in current job

| | | | 4 Will be retiring soon so not worth looking for another job

| | | | 5 Pension scheme in current job

| | | | 6 No other suitable jobs available in local area

| | | | 95 Other reason

| | | | *[Multiple responses to WPNOLK are recorded in variables WPNOLK1 to WPNOLK5]*

| | | | *[code maximum 7 out of 7 possible responses]*

| | | | *IF reasons for staying in current job= other [WpNoLk=95]*

| | | | **WPNOLKX@**

| | | | What is this reason?

| | | | String 60

| | | | *[Open responses to Wpnokx are coded and merged with the multiple responses to*

| | | | *Wpnolk (recorded in variables Wpnolk1 to Wpnolk5). These merged responses are | | | | recorded in variables wpnol12 to wpnol16]*

| | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | *IF (main reason for being away from work in past month = sick) AND (derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee) [(WpTaw = 2) AND (WpEs = 1)]*

| | | | **WPSPAY\***

| | | | Can I just check [^are you / is [^name]] currently receiving sick pay from an employer?

| | | | 1 Yes

| | | | 2 No

| | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | *IF (derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee) AND (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work]) [(WpEs = 1) AND (WPActW = [1,2])]*

| | | | **WPOTP\***

| | | | How much [^are you / is [^name]] paid including any overtime, bonuses, commissions, tips or tax refund, but before any deductions for tax, national insurance or pension contributions,

```

| union dues and so on?
| INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
| 01 One week
| 02 Two weeks
| 03 Three weeks
| 04 Four weeks
| 05 Calendar month
| 07 Two Calendar months
| 08 Eight times a year
| 09 Nine times a year
| 10 Ten times a year
| 13 Three months / 13 weeks
| 26 Six months / 26 weeks
| 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
| 90 Less than one week
| 95 One off / lump sum
| 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

| IF period covered = RESPONSE [Wpotp = RESPONSE]
|
| WPAOTP*
| INTERVIEWER: Enter amount. Round to nearest £.
| Range: 0..9999997
|
| [CHECK WP25]
|
| END OF FILTER

| IF (period covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (gross amount paid = [DON'T
| KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(Wpotp = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpAotp = [DON'T KNOW,
| REFUSAL])]
|
| IF period covered = one week [Wpotp = 1]
|
| WPAOWB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (200, 300, 500, 1500)
| [Bracket results are recorded in wpaotwl, wpaotwu, wpaotwe, wpaotwr]
|
| ELSE
|
| IF period covered = two weeks [Wpotp = 2]
|
| WPAOFB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (400, 600, 1000, 3000)
| [Bracket results are recorded in wpaotfl, wpaotfu, wpaotfe, wpaotfr]
|
| ELSE
|
| IF period covered = [four weeks, one month] [Wpotp = [4, 5]]
|
| WPAOMB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (800, 1200, 2000, 6000)

```

| | | | **[Bracket results are recorded in wpaotml, wpaotmu, wpaotme, wpaotmr]**

| | | | ELSE

| | | | IF period covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum]  
| | | | [Wpotp = [52, 95]]

| | | | **WPAOYB\*@**

| | | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | | BRACKETS (10000, 15000, 25000, 75000)

| | | | **[Bracket results are recorded in wpaotyI, wpaotyU, wpaotye, wpaotyr]**

| | | | ELSE

| | | | **WPAOOB\***

| | | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | | BRACKETS (800, 1200, 2000, 6000)

| | | | / **[Bracket results are recorded in wpaotol, wpaotou, wpaotoe, wpaotor]**

| | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | **WPPERI\***

| | | | Thinking about the last time [^you were / he was / she was] paid, what period did this cover?

| | | | 01 One week

| | | | 02 Two weeks

| | | | 03 Three weeks

| | | | 04 Four weeks

| | | | 05 Calendar month

| | | | 07 Two Calendar months

| | | | 08 Eight times a year

| | | | 09 Nine times a year

| | | | 10 Ten times a year

| | | | 13 Three months / 13 weeks

| | | | 26 Six months / 26 weeks

| | | | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks

| | | | 90 Less than one week

| | | | 95 One off / lump sum

| | | | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

| | | | **WPSLIP\***

| | | | We're interested in how much tax and National Insurance gets deducted from [^your /

| | | | [^name's]] pay. Do you have [^your / his / her] last payslip to hand which you could consult?

| | | | INTERVIEWER: Ask or code.

| | | | 1 Latest payslip consulted

| | | | 2 Old payslip consulted

| | | | 3 Payslip not consulted

| | | | 4 No payslip provided by employer

| IF period covered by sick pay last time = RESPONSE [WpPeri = RESPONSE]

| **WPTHP\***

| What was [^your / [^name's]] take-home pay last time, that is after any deductions were made for tax, National Insurance, pensions, union dues etc?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter amount. Round to the nearest £.

| Range: 0..9999997

| **[CHECK WP26]**

| END OF FILTER

| IF amount of last take-home pay = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR period covered by sick pay last time = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] [Wpthp = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR WpPeri = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]

| IF period covered by sick pay last time = one week [WpPeri = 1]

| **WPTHPWB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (125, 200, 350, 1000)

| **[Bracket results are recorded in wpthpwl, wpthpwu, wpthpwe, wpthpwr]**

| ELSE

| IF period covered by sick pay last time = two weeks [WpPeri = 2]

| **WPTHPFB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (250, 400, 700, 2000)

| **[Bracket results are recorded in wpthpfl, wpthpfu, wpthpfe, wpthpfr]**

| ELSE

| IF period covered by sick pay last time = [four weeks, one month] [WpPeri = [4, 5]]

| **WPTHPMB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (500, 800, 1400, 4000)

| **[Bracket results are recorded in wpthpml, wpthpmu, wpthpme, wpthpmr]**

| ELSE

| IF period covered by sick pay last time = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum] [WpPeri = [52, 95]]

| **WPTHPYB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (6000, 10000, 17500, 50000)

| **[Bracket results are recorded in wpthpyl, wpthpyu, wpthpye, wpthpyr]**

| ELSE

| **WPTHPOB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

| BRACKETS (500, 800, 1400, 4000)

```

| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in wpthpol, wpthpou, wpthpoe, wpthpor]
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF amount of last take-home pay = RESPONSE [Wpthp = RESPONSE]
| | | |
| | | | WPTH*
| | | | Is this [^your / [^name's]] usual take home pay?
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | |
| | | | IF whether this was usual take-home pay = no [Wpthl = 2]
| | | |
| | | | WPUP*
| | | | How much [^are you / is he / is she] usually paid?
| | | | INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
| | | | 01 One week
| | | | 02 Two weeks
| | | | 03 Three weeks
| | | | 04 Four weeks
| | | | 05 Calendar month
| | | | 07 Two Calendar months
| | | | 08 Eight times a year
| | | | 09 Nine times a year
| | | | 10 Ten times a year
| | | | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
| | | | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
| | | | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
| | | | 90 Less than one week
| | | | 95 One off / lump sum
| | | | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
| | | |
| | | | IF period covered by last payment = RESPONSE [WpUP = RESPONSE]
| | | |
| | | | WPUPA*
| | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter amount. Round to nearest £.
| | | | Range: 0..9999997
| | | |
| | | | [CHECK WP27]
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF period covered by last payment = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR amount usually paid
| | | | = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] [WpUP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR WpUPa = | | |
| | | | [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]]
| | | |
| | | | IF period covered by last payment = one week [WpUP = 1]
| | | |

```



questions about pay were?

- 1 Very accurate
- 2 Fairly accurate
- 3 Not very accurate
- 4 Not at all accurate

*IF derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee [WpEs = 1]*

**WPCRET\***

Is there a compulsory retirement age at [^your / ^name's] current job? That is do you have to stop working when you reach a certain age?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether there is a compulsory retirement age at current job = yes [WPCRet = 1]*

**WPCRAGE**

What is the compulsory retirement age?

Range: 40..80

**WPCRETL\***

Would [^you / ^name] like to work longer if [^your / his / her] employer would let [^you / him / her]?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work]) AND (derived working status: employee or self-employed = self-employed) [(WPActW = [1, 2]) AND (WpEs =2)]*

**WPIR**

[^Do you prepare annual business accounts / In your business are annual business accounts prepared] for the Inland Revenue for tax purposes?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Not yet but will be

*IF whether prepares annual accounts for tax purposes = yes [WpIR = 1]*

**WPAP**

Are you working on your own account or are you in partnership with someone else?

- 1 Own account (sole owner)
- 2 In partnership

*IF whether works on own account or is in partnership = partnership [Wpap = 2]*

**WPYSH**

The questions that follow are just about your own share of the business - that is not including your partner's share.

- 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

END OF FILTER

**WPRAIR**

What is the most recent period for which accounts have been prepared for the Inland Revenue?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year at start of the period

Range: 1900..2050

*IF year at start of most recent period accounts have been prepared = RESPONSE*

*[WpraIR = RESPONSE]*

**WPRAIM**

(What is the most recent period for which accounts have been prepared for the Inland Revenue?)

INTERVIEWER: Code month at start of the period. If doesn't know month, code season.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

13 Winter (start of year)

14 Spring

15 Summer

16 Autumn

17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP28 - WP30]**

END OF FILTER

**WPRAEY**

(What is the most recent period for which accounts have been prepared for the Inland Revenue?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter year at end of the period.

Range: 1900..2050

*IF year at end of most recent period accounts have been prepared for Inland Revenue =*

*RESPONSE [WpraEY = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK WP31 - WP32]**

**WPRAEM**

(What is the most recent period for which accounts have been prepared for the Inland Revenue?)

INTERVIEWER: Code month at end of the period. If doesn't know month, code season.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May  
06 June  
07 July  
08 August  
09 September  
10 October  
11 November  
12 December  
13 Winter (start of year)  
14 Spring  
15 Summer  
16 Autumn  
17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP33 - WP34]**

END OF FILTER

**WPPROF**

What was the amount of your share of the profit or loss figure shown on these accounts for this period?

Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP35]**

*IF (amount of share of profit or loss on accounts = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

*[(WpProf = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPROFB@**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 20000, 60000)

**/ [Bracket results are recorded in wpprofl, wpprofu, wpprofe, wpprofr]**

END OF FILTER

**WPPL**

Does this amount refer to a profit or loss?

1 Profit / earnings

2 Loss

*IF whether amount shared was profit or loss = profit [WpPL = 1]*

**WPBDT**

Can I just check, is that figure before deduction of income tax?

1 Yes (before tax)

2 No (after tax)

3 (SPONTANEOUS: Not liable for tax)

**WPBDNI**

And is that figure before deduction of National Insurance?

1 Yes (before NI)

2 No (after NI)

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether prepares annual accounts for tax purposes = [no, not yet] [WpIR = [2, 3]]*

**WPBI**

Now I'd like to ask some questions about your income from your [^work / business], that is after paying for any materials, equipment or goods that you use in your work.  
On average what was your weekly or monthly income from [^your work / the business] over the last 12 months, before deductions for any tax, national insurance or pension contributions?

INTERVIEWER: Code whether the amount will be given weekly or monthly.

- 1 Weekly
- 2 Monthly

*IF period of payment for income from business = weekly [WpBI = 1]*

**WPBIWA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter average weekly income over last 12 months.  
Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP36]**

*IF (average weekly income from business = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpBIwa = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPBIAWB@**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (200, 400, 1000, 4000)

**[Bracket results are recorded in wpbiwal, wpbiwau, wpbiwae, wpbiwar]**

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF period of payment for income from business = monthly [WpBI = 2]*

**WPBIMA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter average monthly income over last 12 months.  
Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP37]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (average monthly income from business = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpBIma = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPBIMAB@**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
BRACKETS (800, 1500, 4000, 15000)

**[Bracket results are recorded in wpbimal, wpbimau, wpbimae, wpbimar]**

ELSE

*IF (period of payment for income from business = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| | | [(WpBI = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| | | **WPBIMAB@**

| | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | BRACKETS (800, 1500, 4000, 15000)

| | | **[Bracket results are recorded in wpbimal, wpbimau, wpbimae, wpbimar]**

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | *IF (condition of employment = [a sole Director of your own limited company, running a business or professional practice, a partner in a business or professional practice])*

| | [(WpCJb = [2, 3, 4])]

| | | **WPBUSV**

| | | About how much is [^BLANK / your share of] the business worth?

| | | Range: 0..99999997

| | | **[CHECK WP38]**

| | | *IF (amount business is worth = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| | | [(WpbusV = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| | | **WPBUSVB@**

| | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | BRACKETS (25000, 100000, 250000, 1000000)

| | | **[Bracket results are recorded in wpbusvl, wpbusvu, wpbusve, wpbusvr]**

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

**WPMOJ**

[^Do / Can I just check, do] you currently earn any money from [^other work that you might do apart from your main job / work that you might do from time to time]?

INTERVIEWER: Include paid babysitting, mail order agent, pools agent etc.

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether currently earns money from work other than main job = yes [WpMoJ =1]*

| | | **WPHMSJ**

| | | How many hours do you usually work a month in these jobs, excluding any meal breaks but including any overtime you might do?

| | | Range: 1..700

| | | **[CHECK WP39]**

| | | **WPESJ**

| | | After tax and any other deductions, what was your total income from these jobs in the last month?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount. Round to the nearest £.  
Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP40]**

IF (total income from other jobs = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpEsj = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPESJB@**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (250, 500, 1000, 2500)

**[Bracket results are recorded in wpesjl, wpesju, wpesje, wpesjr]**

END OF FILTER

IF (total income from other jobs = RESPONSE) AND (total income from other jobs = 0)  
[(WpEsj = RESPONSE) AND (WpEsj = 0)]

**WPESJM**

After tax and other deductions, what is your average monthly income from these jobs?

ENTER AMOUNT.

ROUND TO THE NEAREST £.

Range: 0..9999997

IF (average monthly income from other jobs = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpEsjm = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPESJMB@**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (250, 500, 1000, 2500)

**[Bracket results are recorded in wpesjml, wpesjmu, wpesjme, wpesjmr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPBUS**

Can I just check, apart from anything you've already told me about, do you own all or part of a business (as an active or sleeping partner)?

1 Yes

2 No

IF whether owns all or part of additional business = yes [WpBus = 1]

**WPVBUS**

About how much is your share of the business worth?

Range: 0..99999997

IF (whether owns all or part of additional business = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpVBus = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPVBUSB@**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (25000, 100000, 250000, 1000000)

| | **[Bracket results are recorded in wpvbusl, wpvbusu, wpvbuse, wpvbusr]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

## SECTION WP2

| | *IF whether still member of pension scheme = yes [WpSPS = 1]*

| | *IF whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = [yes, prompt]*  
| | *[WpSRul = [1, 3]]*

| | ELSE

| | *IF type of pension = [Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire, Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary]*  
| | *[WpDpSNb = [1, 2]]*

| | *IF (loop number = 1) AND (type of pension at Wave 1 = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire)*  
| | *[(WPNum = 1) AND (WpDPS (Wave 1) = 1)]*

| | **[CHECK WP1]**

| | ELSE

| | *IF (loop number = 1) AND (type of pension at Wave 1 = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary)*  
| | *[(WPNum = 1) AND (WpDPS (Wave 1) = 2)]*

| | **[CHECK WP2]**

| | ELSE

| | *IF (loop number = 2) AND (type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire) [(WPNum = 2) AND (WpPdes (Wave 1) = 1)]*

| | **[CHECK WP3]**

| | ELSE

| | *IF (loop number = 2) AND (type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary)*  
| | *[(WPNum = 2) AND (WpPdes (Wave 1) = 2)]*

| | **[CHECK WP4]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

|||  
||| END OF FILTER  
||| END OF FILTER  
||| END OF FILTER  
||| END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether currently receives pension from employment pension = yes [AskPst = 1]*

*IF whether currently receives pension from employment pension = yes [WpPstR = 1]*

*IF (period last payment covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPay = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL] OR WpPyR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

*IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPay = 1]*

**WPWB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWbl, WpWbu, WpWbe, WpWbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPay = 2]*

**WPFB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpfbl, Wpfbu, Wpfbe, Wpfbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPay = [4, 5]]*

**WPMB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpmbbl, Wpmbu, Wpmbbe, Wpmbbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, lump sum] [WpPay = [52, 95]]*

**WPYB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpybl, Wpybu, Wpybe, Wpybr]

ELSE

**WPOB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

```

| | | | | BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in Wpobl, Wpobu, Wpobe, Wpobr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether has received lump sum from employment pension = yes [WPLumpS = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (amount of lump sum received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | | | | [(WPLumpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | | | |
| | | | | WPLMPAB
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in WPLml, WPLmu, WPLme, WPLmr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF method of taking employment pension = income drawdown [WPTakeP = 3]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (how much have you withdrawn annually from your pension = [DON'T KNOW,
| | | | | REFUSAL]) [(WplncD = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | | | |
| | | | | WPINCDUN
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in WPInl, WPInu, WPIne, WPInr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER

```

**[CHECK WP5 - WP11]**

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes*  
*[AskRules = 1]*

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - normal retirement  
age, yes - both / either] [WpNRA = [3, 1]]*

*IF normal retirement age = RESPONSE [WpBthA = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK WP12]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - normal retirement age, yes - period of service] [WpNRA = [3, 2]]*

*IF period of service = RESPONSE [WpBthP = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK WP13]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether pension scheme has earlier retirement age = [yes, occasionally]) OR (whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - period of service, no, don't know]) [(WpEra = [1, 3]) OR (WpNRA = [2, 4, 5])]*

*IF age of earliest retirement = RESPONSE [WpYaer = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK WP14]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (age of earliest retirement = RESPONSE) AND (normal retirement age = RESPONSE) [(WpYaer = RESPONSE) AND (WpBthA = RESPONSE)]*

**[CHECK WP15]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes) AND (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary) [(AskRules = 1) AND (AskDcDb = 2)]*

**[CHECK WP16]**

*IF (lump sum expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLump = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLUMPB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 200000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpLul, WpLuu, WpLue, WpLur]

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP17]**

*IF (amount expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpAsal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPASALB**  
 Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpASi, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]  
 ELSE  
 IF (what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPTP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
**WPASALB**  
 Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpASi, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER

IF Ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary [AskDcDb = 2]

IF whether makes Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions = yes [WpFSav = 1]

**[CHECK WP18]**

IF (current value of accumulated contributions = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPFVal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])

**WPPFVALB**

Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpPFI, WpPFu, WpPFe, WpPFR]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF Ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and the pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire [AskDcDb = 1]

**[CHECK WP19]**

IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpAPF = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])

**WPAPFB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpAPI, WpAPu, WpAPe, WpAPr]

END OF FILTER

IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPtoP = 1, 2]

**[CHECK WP20]**

IF (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension [WpPtoP = 1]

**WPPENTB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what? BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 150000) [Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPtoP = 2 ) AND (WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what? BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000) [Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

ELSE

IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, don't know]) [(WpPtoP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 3])]

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what? BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000) [Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (whether still contributes to pension scheme = yes) AND ( type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = S226 plan (self-employed personal pension)) [(WpKpS = 1) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) = 5)]

**[CHECK WP21]**

IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpCB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPCBB**  
 Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpCBl, WpCBu, WpCBe, WpCBr]

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP22 - WP27]**

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 1) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPTB**  
 Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 2) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPAB**  
 Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPAB**  
 Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = [private personal pension, group personal pension, stakeholder pension, retirement annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)]) AND (whether still contributes to pension scheme = yes) [(WpKP (Wave 1) = [2, 3, 4, 6]) AND (WpKpS = 1)]*

**[CHECK WP28]**

*IF frequency of contribution to pension = irregular [WpPCont = 3]*

**[CHECK WP29 - WP32]**

END OF FILTER

*IF frequency of contribution to pension = stopped contributing to scheme [WpPCont = 4]*

**[CHECK WP33 - WP35]**

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP36 - WP38]**

*IF (current value of pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(Wpcuv = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPCUVB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpcul, Wpcuu, Wpcue, Wpcur]

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP39]**

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 1) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2TB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 2) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2AB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2AB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

| |  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP40 - WP43]**

*IF (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary) AND (whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes) [(AskDcDb = 2) AND (WpErc = 1)]*

| |  
| **[CHECK WP44 - WP45]**  
|

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP46 - WP48]**

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes*  
*[AskRules=1]*

| |  
| **[CHECK WP49 - WP50]**  
|

| *IF (whether pension scheme has earlier retirement age = [yes, occasionally]) OR (whether*  
| *normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - normal retirement age, no, don't know])*  
| *[(WpEra = [1, 3]) OR (WpNRA = [2, 4, 5])]*

| |  
| **[CHECK WP51 - WP52]**  
|

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes) AND (ask*  
*for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of*  
*service and salary) [(AskRules = 1) AND (AskDcDb = 2)]*

| |  
| **[CHECK WP53]**  
|

| *IF (lump sum expects to receive on retirement= [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
| *[(WpLump = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| |  
| **WPLUMPB**

| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| | BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 200000)  
| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpLul, WpLuu, WpLue, WpLur]

| |  
| END OF FILTER

| |  
| **[CHECK WP54]**  
|

| *IF (amount expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
| *[(WpAsal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| |  
| **WPASALB**

| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpASi, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

| ELSE

| | *IF (what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPTP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| | **WPASALB**

| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpASi, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

| | END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary [AskDcDb = 2]*

| | *IF whether makes Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions = yes [WpFSav = 1]*

| | **[CHECK WP55]**

| | *IF (current value of accumulated contributions = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPFVal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| | **WPPFVALB**

| | Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpPFI, WpPFu, WpPFe, WpPFR]

| | END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire [AskDcDb = 1]*

| | **[CHECK WP56]**

| | *IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpAPF = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| | **WPAPFB**

| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpAPI, WpAPu, WpAPe, WpAPr]

| | END OF FILTER

| | *IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPtoP = [1, 2]]*

**[CHECK WP57]**

*IF (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

*IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported =  
total amount of pension [WpPtoP = 1]*

**WPPENTB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 150000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = annual  
amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW,  
REFUSAL]) [(WpPtoP = 2) AND (WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

ELSE

*IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported =  
[DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, don't know]) [(WpPtoP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 3])]*

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP58]**

LOOP FOR xx:= 5 TO 6

*IF Computed: ask whether contributes to pension scheme other than state pension on this  
loop = yes [WpAsk = 1]*

*IF (contributes to pension scheme other than state pension = yes) OR (whether there is*

| | other pension scheme could contribute to = yes) [(WpCPS = 1) OR (WpCPSC = 1)]

| | IF type of pension scheme = employer provided (occupational) pension scheme  
| | [WpKP = 1]

| | **[CHECK W59 - W60]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| | **[CHECK WP61 - WP62]**

| | IF (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age,  
| | years of service and salary) AND (WpErc = yes) [(AskDcDb = 2) AND (WpErc = 1)]

| | **[CHECK WP63 - WP64]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | **[CHECK WP65 - WP67]**

| | IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview [AskRules = 1]

| | **[CHECK WP68 - WP69]**

| | IF (whether pension scheme has earlier retirement age = [yes, occasionally]) OR (whether  
| | normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - normal retirement age, no, don't know])  
| | [(WpEra = [1, 3]) OR (WpNRA = [2, 4, 5])]

| | **[CHECK WP70 - WP71]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| | IF (Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes) AND (ask  
| | for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of  
| | service and salary) [(AskRules = 1) AND (AskDcDb = 2)]

| | **[CHECK WP72]**

| | IF (lump sum expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| | [(WpLump = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| | **WPLUMPB**

| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 200000)

| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpLul, WpLuu, WpLue, WpLur]

| | END OF FILTER

| | **[CHECK WP73]**

IF (amount expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 [(WpAsal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPASALB**  
 Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

ELSE

IF (what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported =  
 [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPTP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPASALB**  
 Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age,  
 years of service and salary [AskDcDb = 2]

IF whether makes Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions = yes [WpFSav = 1]

**[CHECK WP74]**

IF (current value of accumulated contributions = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 [(WpPFVal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPPFVALB**  
 Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpPFI, WpPFu, WpPFe, WpPFr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows  
 over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire [AskDcDb = 1]

**[CHECK WP75]**

IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 [(WpAPF = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPAPFB**  
 Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

```

| | BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)
| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpAPI, WpAPu, WpAPe, WpAPr]
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [total
| amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPtoP = [1, 2]]
|
| [CHECK WP76]
|
| IF (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| [(WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|
| IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = total
| amount of pension [WpPtoP = 1]
|
| WPPENTB
| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 150000)
| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = annual
| amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW,
| REFUSAL]) [(WpPtoP = 2) AND (WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|
| WPPENAB
| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)
| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]
|
| ELSE
|
| IF (total amount of pension = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, don't know])
| [(WpPtoP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 3])]
|
| WPPENAB
| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)
| | [Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| IF Will be computed /@/Is th <> Yes [AskPx <> 1]
|
| IF type of pension scheme = S226 plan (self-employed personal pension) [WpKP = 5]

```

**[CHECK WP77]**

*IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpCB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPCBB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpCBI, WpCBu, WpCBe, WpCBr]

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP78]**

*IF whether makes regular contribution to pension = no [WpSRC = 2]*

**[CHECK WP79 - WP82]**

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK WP83]**

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 1) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPTB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 2) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPAB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

ELSE

*IF ((what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL)) [(WpLpe = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPAB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

```

| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF (type of pension scheme = RESPONSE) AND (type of pension scheme = [private personal
| | | pension, group personal pension, stakeholder pension, retirement annuity pensions (pre 86
| | | PPPs)]) [(WpKP = RESPONSE) AND (WpKP = [2, 3, 4, 6])]
| | |
| | | [CHECK WP84]
| | |
| | | IF frequency of contribution to pension = irregularly [WpPCont = 3]
| | |
| | | [CHECK WP85 - WP88]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF frequency of contribution to pension = stopped contributing to scheme [WpPCont = 4]
| | |
| | | [CHECK WP89 - WP91]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | [CHECK WP92 - WP94]
| | |
| | | IF (current value of pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | | [(Wpcuv = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | |
| | | WPCUVB
| | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in Wpcul, Wpcuu, Wpcue, Wpcur]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | [CHECK WP95]
| | |
| | | IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported =
| | | total amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T
| | | KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 1) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | |
| | |
| | | WPPT2TB
| | | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]
| | |
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported =
| | | annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T
| | | KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 2) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | |
| | |
| | | WPPT2AB
| | | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

```

```

| | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF ((what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported =
| | | [don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])])
| | |
| | | WPPT2AB
| | | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | [CHECK WP96]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER

```

*IF ((loop number = 1) AND (whether member of pension scheme at Wave 1 = yes)) OR ((loop number = 2) AND (type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = employer provided (occupational pension scheme))*

*[(WPNum = 1) AND (WpPS (Wave 1) = 1)) OR ((WPNum = 2) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) = 1))]*

*IF (employee or self-employed = employee) AND (whether still works for same employer = yes) [(WpEs = 1) AND (WpEmp = 1)]*

**WSPSPS**

Last time we interviewed you [^on date of last interview], you told us that you were a member of the pension scheme that your employer offered [^called scheme reported at last interview]. Are you still a member of this pension scheme?

1 Yes

2 No

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of pension scheme. Responses are recorded in Wpsps1 to Wpsp3]**

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF loop number = 2 [WPNum = 2]*

*IF type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = [private personal pension, group personal pension, stakeholder pension, S226 plan (self-employed personal pension), retirement annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs), other retirement saving scheme] [WpKP (Wave 1) = [2...6, 95]]*

**WPKPS**

Last time we interviewed you , you told us that you were contributing to or could contribute to [^a / an / another] [^private personal pension / group personal pension / stakeholder pension / S226 plan (self-employed personal pension) / retirement annuity pensions (pre

PPP) / other retirement saving scheme] [^called scheme reported at last interview]. Are you still contributing or could you still contribute to this pension scheme?  
1 Yes  
2 No

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of pension scheme.**

**Responses are recorded in Wpkps2 and Wpkps3]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether still member of pension scheme = no) OR (whether still contributes to pension scheme = no) [(WpSPS = 2) OR (WpKpS = 2)]*

**WPLFTPS**

Why are you no longer a member of this pension scheme?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Employer no longer offers pension scheme
- 2 No longer eligible to be a member of pension scheme
- 3 Left as could not afford payments
- 95 Other reason

**[Multiple responses to WPLFTPS are recorded in variables WPLFTP1, Wplftp5 to Wplftp7, and Wplftp9]**

**[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]**

**[There are separate variables for responses from each person.**

**Responses are recorded in variables WPLFTP1, Wplftp5 to Wplftp7, and Wplftp9]**

*IF reason for leaving pension scheme = other reason [WpLftPS = 95]*

**WPYLFT**

What was this other reason?

String 60

**[Open responses to Wpylft are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Wplftp (recorded in, Wplftp5 to Wplftp7, and Wplftp9). These merged responses are recorded in variables WPLFTPm1, Wplftpm2, Wplftp7 to Wplftp9]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether still member of pension scheme = yes [WpSPS = 1]*

**WPSRUL**

Have any of the pension scheme rules changed since we last interviewed you?

INTERVIEWER: Scheme rules are age / period of service after which scheme members can retire, method by which pension will be calculated, etc.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 AFTER CAPI PROMPT: (3)Yes, scheme rules have changed

**[There is a separate variable for responses from each person. Responses are recorded in Wprul1 to Wpsrul3]**

*IF whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = no [WpSRul =2]*

**WDPINTA@**

Even though your scheme rules have not changed, we would still like to collect some

```

| | information about the contributions you have made.
| | 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = [yes, yes after CAPI
| | prompt] [WpSRul = [1, 3]]
| |
| | WPDINTB@
| | We would like to collect details of the new arrangements for your employer pension, even if
| | some aspects have remained the same.
| | 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| |
| | WPDPSN
| | SHOW CARD FF/II
| | Is your pension more like Type A or Type B?
| | INTERVIEWER: Type A is sometimes called defined contribution or money purchase,
| | type B is sometimes called defined benefit.
| | 1 Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and the
| | pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire
| | 2 Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary
| | 3 Don't know
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF type of pension = [Type A, Type B] [WpDpSNb = [1, 2]]
| |
| | IF (loop number = 1) AND (type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put
| | into a fund which grows over time and the pension will depend on the size of this fund
| | when I retire) [(WPNum = 1) AND (WpDPS (Wave 1) = 1)]
| |
| | [CHECK WP97]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF (loop number = 1) AND (type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a
| | formula involving age, years of service and salary)
| | [(WPNum = 1) AND (WpDPS (Wave 1) = 2)]
| |
| | [CHECK WP98]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF (loop number >= 2) AND (type of pension scheme = Type A: My pension
| | contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will
| | depend on the size of this fund when I retire)
| | [(WPNum >= 2) AND (WpPdes (Wave 1) = 1)]
| |
| | [CHECK WP99]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF (loop number >= 2) AND (type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on
| | a formula involving age, years of service and salary)
| | [(WPNum >= 2) AND (WpPdes (Wave 1) = 2)]
| |
| |
| |
| |

```



07 Two Calendar months  
08 Eight times a year  
09 Nine times a year  
10 Ten times a year  
13 Three months / 13 weeks  
26 Six months / 26 weeks  
52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks  
90 Less than one week  
95 One off / lump sum  
96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPay = RESPONSE]*

**WPPYR\***

How much did [^you / he / she] receive?  
Range: 0..999997

END OF FILTER

*IF (period last payment covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPay = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPyR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

*IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPay = 1]*

**WPWB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpWbl, WpWbu, WpWbe, WpWbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPay = 2]*

**WPFB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)  
[Bracket results are recorded in Wpfbl, Wpfbu, Wpfbe, Wpfbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one calendar month] [WpPay = [4, 5]]*

**WPMB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)  
[Bracket results are recorded in Wpmbbl, Wpmbu, Wpmbe, Wpmbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum] [WpPay = [52, 95]]*

**WPYB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)

| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in Wpybl, Wpybu, Wpybe, Wpybr]

| | | | | ELSE

| | | | | **WPOB**

| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | | | BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in Wpobl, Wpobu, Wpobe, Wpobr]

| | | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | | **WPTAX**

| | | | | Is this before or after tax?

| | | | | 1 Before tax

| | | | | 2 After tax

| | | | | 3 (SPONTANEOUS: Not liable for tax)

| | | | | **WPLUMPS\***

| | | | | Many pensions allow [^you / [^name]] to take a lump sum in addition to your pension income. [^Have you / Has [^name]] received a lump sum from [^your / [^name's]] [^employment pension / private personal pension / group personal pension / stakeholder pension / S226 plan (self-employed personal pension) / retirement annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs) / other retirement saving scheme]?

| | | | | 1 Yes

| | | | | 2 No

| | | | | *IF whether has received lump sum from employment pension = yes [WPLumpS =1]*

| | | | | **WPLUMPA**

| | | | | How much was the lump sum?

| | | | | ENTER POUNDS.

| | | | | Range: 1..999997

| | | | | *IF (amount of lump sum received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| | | | | *[(WPLumpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| | | | | **WPLMPAB**

| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)

| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in WPLml, WPLmu, WPLme, WPLmr]

| | | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | | END OF FILTER

| | | | | **WPTAKEP**

| | | | | Have you taken your [^employment pension / private personal pension / group personal pension / stakeholder pension / S226 plan (self-employed personal pension) / retirement

annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs) / other retirement saving scheme] as ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... Annuity with pension company who originally provided the scheme,
- 2 ... Annuity with a different pension provider,
- 3 or, Income drawdown?

*IF method of taking employment pension = income drawdown [WPTakeP = 3]*

**WPINCD**

How much have you withdrawn annually from your pension?  
 ENTER POUNDS.  
 Range: 0..99997

*IF (annual amount withdrawn from pension = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 [(WpIncD = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPINCDUN**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WPIInl, WPIInu, WPIIne, WPIInr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF whether currently receives pension from employment pension = no [WpPstR = 2]*

**WPRGHB**

Have you ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... retained pension rights in this scheme,
- 2 ... transferred rights from this scheme into another scheme,
- 3 or, received a lump sum refund of contributions?
- 4 [SPONTANEOUS: Has stopped receiving pension from this scheme]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Computed: ask this block for loop WPNuM = yes) [AskQs = 1]*

*IF (loop number <= 2 AND name of pension scheme at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) OR (loop number = 3 AND name of pension scheme at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) OR (loop number >= 4)  
 [(WPNuM <= 2 AND WpNps (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) OR (WPNuM = 3 AND WpNps (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) OR (WPNuM >= 4)]*

**WPNPS@**

What is the name of the pension scheme?  
 INTERVIEWER: Probe for details. If police, local authority etc, probe for name of force / local authority etc.  
 Write in.  
 String 80

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes*  
*[AskRules=1]*

**WPCOS**

Is it a contracted out scheme (this means that you pay a lower rate of National Insurance contribution and give up your entitlement to the State Earnings-Related Pension scheme)?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

**WPYBS**

How many years have you belonged to this scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Include years in same scheme with other employers.

Range: 0..60

END OF FILTER

**WPERC**

Does your employer require you to make a contribution to your pension scheme?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

*IF whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes [WpErc =1]*

**WPMC**

What is the minimum contribution you need to make?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Don't know

*IF minimum contribution need to make to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpMc = 1]*

**WPMCA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK WP101]**

**WPPERC**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks

- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF minimum contribution need to make to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpMc = 2]*

**WPMFRAC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.  
Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme <> yes [WpErc <>1]*

**WPYCAMT**

How much do you currently contribute to your pension scheme?  
INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Not currently contributing
- 4 Don't know

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpYcAmt = 1]*

**WPYCA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP102]**

**WPMCAF**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpYcAmt = 2]*

**WPYFRAC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary) AND (whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes) [(AskDcDb = 2) AND (WpErc = 1)]*

**WPACON**

Do you make any additional contributions to your pension scheme through ...

READ OUT ...

- 1 ... Additional Voluntary Contributions - AVCs,
- 2 buying Added Years,
- 3 or Irregular contributions?
- 4 No
- 5 Don't know

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = AVC [WpAcon = 1]*

**WPACOA**

How much do you usually contribute through additional voluntary contributions (AVC's)?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Don't know

*IF contribution through AVC - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpAcoA = 1]*

**WPACOB**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP103]**

**WPACOC**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks

52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks  
90 Less than one week  
95 One off / lump sum  
96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF contribution through AVC - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpAcoA = 2]*

**WPFRAS**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = irregular contributions [WpAcon = 3]*

**WPCONY**

How much did you contribute in the last 12 months through additional irregular contributions?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP104]**

END OF FILTER

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = buying Added Years [WpAcon = 2]*

**WPADY**

How many added years did you get in the last 12 months?

Range: 0..10

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire) AND (whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes) [(AskDcDb = 1) AND (WpErc = 1)]*

**WPMMIN**

Do you usually contribute more than the minimum contribution?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether usually contributes more than the minimum = yes [WpMMin = 1]*

**WPMUC**

How much are your usual additional contributions?

1 Amount

2 Percentage of salary

3 Don't know

*IF usual additional contributions - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount*  
*[WpMUC = 1]*

**WPAUC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP105]**

**WPPER**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF usual additional contributions - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage*  
*salary [WpMUC = 2]*

**WPFRUC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = not*  
*currently contributing [WpYcAmt = 3]*

**WPANYC**

Did you contribute at all in the last 12 months?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether contributed in past year = yes [WpAnyc = 1]*

**WPACAMT**

How much did you contribute in the last 12 months?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP106]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPECON**

How much does your employer currently contribute to your pension scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Percentage of contribution
- 4 Does not currently contribute
- 5 Don't know

*IF current contribution from employer to pension scheme - amount or percentage reported = amount [WpEcon = 1]*

**WPECONA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP107]**

**WPEPERI**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution from employer to pension scheme - amount or percentage reported = [percentage of salary, percentage of contribution] [WpEcon = [2, 3]]*

**WPEFS**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary or contribution.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes*  
*[AskRules=1]*

**WPNRA**

Is there a Normal Retirement Age in your pension scheme or period of service after which scheme members can retire?

- 1 Yes - normal retirement age
- 2 Yes - period of service
- 3 Yes - both / either
- 4 No - neither
- 5 Don't know

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - normal retirement age] [WpNRA = [3, 1]]*

**WPBTHA**

What is the normal retirement age?

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP108]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - period of service] [WpNRA = [3, 2]]*

**WPBTHP**

What is the period of service?

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP109]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - normal retirement age] [WpNRA = [3, 1]]*

**WPERA**

Does your pension scheme have an earlier age at which you can retire and draw pension benefits?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Occasionally

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether pension scheme has earlier retirement age = [yes, occasionally]) OR (whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - period of service, no, don't know])*  
*[(WpEra = [1, 3]) OR (WpNRA = [2, 4, 5])]*

**WPYAER**

What currently is the youngest age at which you could take early retirement?

WRITE IN

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP110 - WP111]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes) AND (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary) [(AskRules = 1) AND (AskDcDb =2)]*

**WPDESP**

SHOW CARD HH

Which of these best describes how your pension will be calculated?

CODE ONE ONLY

- 1 Some fraction of my final year's salary
- 2 Some fraction of my salary from all years when I have been in the scheme
- 3 Some fraction of my last five years salary
- 4 In some other way
- 5 Don't know

*IF method by which pension is calculated = other [WpDesP = 4]*

**WPODP**

INTERVIEWER: Write in other way.

String 70

***[Open responses to Wpodp were coded and then incorporated into Wpdesp.***

***Wpdespc***

***| identifies that an open response was given at Wpodp and incorporated into Wpdesp.]***

END OF FILTER

*IF method by which pension is calculated <> don't know [WpDesP <> 5]*

**WPFSAP**

What fraction will be added to your final pension for each years service?

- 1 1/60
- 2 1/80
- 3 Other
- 4 Don't know

*IF fraction added to final pension for each year of service = other [WpFsap = 3]*

**WPFSAL**

INTERVIEWER: Enter other fraction.

String 10

***[Open responses to Wpfsal were coded and then incorporated into Wpsap.***

***Wpsapc5***

***| identifies that an open response was given at Wpfsal and incorporated into Wpfsap.]***

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPPLP**

All pensions go up with prices after retirement (sometimes known as index-linked), but some

may go up more than prices. Will your pension go up more than prices after retirement?  
1 Yes  
2 No  
3 Don't know

*IF whether pension is index-linked = yes [WpPlp = 1]*

**WPPLPH**

Will this be ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... automatic,
- 2 or, at your employer's (scheme's) discretion?
- 3 Other
- 4 Don't know

END OF FILTER

**WPLUMP**

What size lump sum do you expect to receive when you retire?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP112]**

*IF (lump sum expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpLump = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLUMPB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 200000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpLul, WpLuu, WpLue, WpLur]

END OF FILTER

**WPPTP**

How much do you expect to get from this pension when you retire?

INTERVIEWER: If asked: in today's prices.

Code how answer is given.

- 1 Income as a percentage of salary
- 2 Income as an annual amount of money

*IF what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = income  
as  
a percentage of salary [WpPTP = 1]*

**WPPSAL**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 1..100

END OF FILTER

*IF what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = income  
as  
an annual amount of money [WpPTP = 2]*

**WPASAL**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP113]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (amount expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpAsal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPASALB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported =  
[DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPTP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPASALB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age,  
years of service and salary [AskDcDb = 2]*

**WPFSAV**

Do you make any Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions (FSAVC'S)?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether makes Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions = yes [WpFSav = 1]*

**WPPFVAL**

[^What is the value of your accumulated contributions at this point? / How much did you  
contribute in the last 12 months through free standing additional voluntary contributions?]

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP114]**

*IF (current value of accumulated contributions = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPFVal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPFVALB**

Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPFI, WpPFu, WpPFe, WpPFR]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire [AskDcDb = 1]*

**WPAPF**

What is the value of the accumulated pension fund at this point?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP115]**

*IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpAPF = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPAPFB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpAPI, WpAPu, WpAPe, WpAPr]

END OF FILTER

**WPPTOP**

How much do you expect the pension to be worth when you retire?

INTERVIEWER: If asked: in today's prices.

Code how answer is given.

1 Total amount of pension

2 Annual Amount

3 Don't know

*IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPtoP = [1, 2]]*

**WPPENB**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP116]**

*IF (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

*IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension [WpPtoP = 1]*

**WPPENTB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 150000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPtoP = 2) AND (WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

ELSE

IF ((what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, don't know]) [(WpPtoP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 3])]

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (((loop number = [1, 2, 3] AND NOT ((whether job mentioned at last interview is current main job = yes) AND (whether still works for same employer = yes))) AND (((loop number = 1) AND (whether was a member of this pension scheme at Wave 1 = yes)) AND willing to give

name and address of employer at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))) OR (((loop number = [2, 3]) AND (kind of pension scheme at Wave 1 = employer provided (occupational) pension scheme)) AND

(willing to give name and address of employer at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))) OR (loop number >= 4)

[(((WPNum = [1, 2, 3] AND NOT ((Wpstj = 1) AND (WpEmp = 1))) AND (((WPNum = 1) AND (WpPS (Wave 1) = 1)) AND WpCons (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))) OR (((WPNum = [2, 3]) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) = 1)) AND (WpCons (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))) OR (WPNum = 4)]

**WPCONS**

We may wish to contact your employer to find out more about the rules of their pension scheme. Would you be willing to give us their name and address for this purpose?

1 Employer's name and address given

2 Employer's name and address not given

IF willing to give name and address of employer = given [WpCons = 1]

**WPEADD**

INTERVIEWER: Enter employer's name and address.

String 80

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether still contributes to pension scheme = yes) AND (type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = S226 plan (self-employed personal pension)) [(WpKpS = 1) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) =5)]*

*IF ((loop number = [2, 3]) AND (years that has had pension at Wave 1 = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])) OR (loop number = [5, 6])  
[[(WPNum = [2, 3]) AND (WpYpen (Wave 1) = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])] OR (WPNum = [5, 6])]*

**WPYPEN**

How many years have you had this pension?

ENTER NUMBER OF YEARS

Range: 0..80

END OF FILTER

**WPCB**

What is the value of the accumulated pension fund at this point?

Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP117]**

*IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpCB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPCBB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpCBI, WpCBu, WpCBe, WpCBr]

END OF FILTER

**WPSRC**

Do you make a regular contribution to your pension?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether makes regular contribution to pension = yes [WpSRC = 1]*

**WPMRC**

How much do you usually contribute to your pension?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP118]**

**WPMRCP**

What period does this cover?

01 One week

02 Two weeks

03 Three weeks

04 Four weeks

05 Calendar month

07 Two Calendar months

08 Eight times a year

09 Nine times a year

- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF whether makes regular contribution to pension = no [WpSRC = 2]*

**WPLRCY**

When was the last time that you contributed to your pension?

ENTER YEAR AT THIS QUESTION

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP119]**

*IF (year last contributed to pension = RESPONSE) AND (year last contributed to pension >= 1999) [(WpLrcY = RESPONSE) AND (WpLrcY >= 1999)]*

**WPLRCM**

(When was the last time that you contributed to your pension?)

CODE MONTH AT THIS QUESTION

IF DOESN'T KNOW MONTH, CODE SEASON

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP120]**

END OF FILTER

**WPLAC**

How much was the last contribution that you made to your pension?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP121]**

*IF year last contributed to pension = 2001 [WpLrcY = 2001]*

**WPNCONT**

About how many contributions have you made to your pension in the last year?

Range: 0..60

**[CHECK WP122]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPLPE**

How much do you expect the pension to be worth when you retire?

IF ASKED: IN TODAY'S PRICES

CODE TYPE OF ANSWER GIVEN

- 1 Total amount of pension
- 2 Annual amount
- 3 Don't know

*IF what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpLpe = [1, 2]]*

**WPLPA**

INTERVIEWER: ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP123]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 1) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPTB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 2) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPAB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPAB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 | | | [Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]  
 | | |  
 | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | |  
 | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | |  
 | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | |  
 | | | END OF FILTER

*IF (type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = [private personal pension, group personal pension, stakeholder pension, retirement annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)]) AND (whether still contributes to pension scheme = yes) [(WpKP (Wave 1) = [2, 3, 4, 6]) AND (WpKpS = 1)]*

| | | *IF ((loop number = [2, 3]) AND (years has had personal pension at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))*  
 | | | *OR (loop number = [5, 6])*  
 | | | *[(WPNum = [2, 3]) AND (WpPlon (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)) OR (WPNum = 5, 6)]*

| | | **WPPLON**  
 | | | How long have you had this Personal Pension?  
 | | | ENTER NUMBER OF YEARS  
 | | | Range: 0..80  
 | | |  
 | | | END OF FILTER

| | | **WPPCONT**  
 | | | Not including any National Insurance Contributions paid into the pension, do you contribute to your pension ... READ OUT ...  
 | | | 1 ... never,  
 | | | 2 regularly,  
 | | | 3 irregularly,  
 | | | 4 or, have you stopped contributing to your scheme?

| | | *IF frequency of contribution to pension = regularly [WpPCont = 2]*

| | | **WPHCON**  
 | | | How much do you usually contribute?  
 | | | CODE HOW ANSWER IS GIVEN  
 | | | 1 Amount  
 | | | 2 Percentage of salary  
 | | | 3 Don't know

| | | *IF usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpHCon = 1]*

| | | **WPCAMT**  
 | | | INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT  
 | | | Range: 0..99997

| | | **[CHECK WP124]**

| | | **WPCPER**  
 | | | What period does this cover?  
 | | | 01 One week  
 | | | 02 Two weeks  
 | | | 03 Three weeks

- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary*  
*[WpHCon = 2]*

**WPNIFP**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF frequency of contribution to pension = irregularly [WpPCont = 3]*

**WPLCOY**

When did you last make a contribution?

ENTER YEAR AT THIS QUESTION

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP125]**

*IF (year of last contribution = RESPONSE) AND (year of last contribution >= 1999)*  
*[(WpLcoY = RESPONSE) AND (WpLcoY >= 1999)]*

**WPLCOM**

(When did you last make a contribution?)

CODE MONTH AT THIS QUESTION

IF DOESN'T KNOW MONTH, CODE SEASON

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring

15 Summer  
16 Autumn  
17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP126]**

END OF FILTER

**WPMCON**

About how much did you contribute on that occasion?

CODE HOW ANSWER IS GIVEN

1 Amount  
2 Percentage of salary  
3 Don't know

*IF last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpMcon = 1]*

**WPAC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP127]**

END OF FILTER

*IF last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary  
[WpMcon = 2]*

**WPFSC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY?

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF year of last contribution >= 2004 [WpLcoY >= 2004]*

**WPNIRR**

About how many times in the last year did you contribute to your pension?

Range: 0..60

**[CHECK WP128]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF frequency of contribution to pension = has stopped contributing to scheme [WpPCont = 4]*

**WPLASTY**

When was the last contribution you made?

ENTER YEAR AT THIS QUESTION

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP129]**

*IF (year of last contribution = RESPONSE) AND (year of last contribution >= 1999)*

[(WpLastY =RESPONSE ) AND (WpLastY >= 1999)]

**WPLASTM**

(When was the last contribution you made?)

CODE MONTH AT THIS QUESTION

IF DOESN'T KNOW MONTH, CODE SEASON

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP130]**

END OF FILTER

**WPMLAS**

How much was your last contribution?

ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP131]**

**WPLASP**

What period did that cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

**WPRCON**

Did you previously contribute regularly to this pension?

- 1 Yes

2 No

**WPRSC**

Why did you stop contributing to this Personal Pension?

- 1 Moved job and joined employer's pension scheme
- 2 Rejoined employer's pension scheme in existing job
- 3 Rejoined State Earnings Related Pension Scheme
- 4 Worried about risks
- 5 Worried about publicity concerning personal pensions
- 95 Other (specify)

**[Multiple responses to WPRSC are recorded in variables WPRSC1 to WPRSC6]  
[code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]**

*IF (reason for stopping Personal Pension contribution = other) [WpRsc = 95]*

**WPRSCO**

ENTER OTHER REASON

String 20

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether employer regularly contributes to pension = yes - regularly*

*[AskCEmp = 1]*

**WPCEMP**

Does your employer contribute to this pension?

- 1 Yes - regularly
- 2 Yes - irregularly
- 3 No

*IF whether employer regularly contributes to pension = yes - irregularly [WpCemp = 2]*

**WPECPP**

How much was the last contribution that your employer made to your Personal Pension?

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary

*IF employer's last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount*

*[WpECPP = 1]*

**WPAECP**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP132]**

END OF FILTER

*IF employer's last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpECPP = 2]*

**WPFSEC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether employer regularly contributes to pension = yes - regularly [WpCemp = 1]*

**WPMEC**

How much does your employer usually contribute?

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary

*IF employer's usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpMEC = 1]*

**WPAMEC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP133]**

**WPFSCP**

What period does that cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF employer's usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpMEC = 2]*

**WPFSCO**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPCUV**

What is the current value of the accumulated pension fund at this point?  
Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP134]**

*IF (current value of pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(Wpcuv = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPCUVB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpcul, Wpcuu, Wpcue, Wpcur]

END OF FILTER

**WPPEXP**

How much do you expect the pension to be worth when you retire?

IF ASKED: IN TODAY'S PRICES

CODE TYPE OF ANSWER GIVEN

- 1 Total amount of pension
- 2 Annual amount
- 3 Don't know

*IF what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPExp = [1, 2]]*

**WPAMOU**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT:

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP135]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 1) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2TB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 2) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2AB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

ELSE

IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPPT2AB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF ((xx = 1) AND (whether still member of pension scheme = yes)) OR ((xx = [2 .. 3]) AND (whether still member of pension scheme = yes) OR (whether still contributes to pension scheme = yes))) [(xx = 1) AND (WpSPS = 1)) OR ((xx = [2 , 3]) AND ((WpSPS = 1) OR (WpKpS = 1)))]

**WPINFS**

From whom do you normally get information on how your pension scheme operates, for example, the benefits that you can expect to receive?

PROBE: Who else?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

1 No information

2 Employer

3 Pension scheme reports

4 Work-mates

5 Financial press

6 Accountant

7 Independent financial adviser

8 Insurance or Pension representative

95 Other

**[Multiple responses to WPINFS are recorded in variables WPINFS1 to WPINFS9]**

**[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]**

**[CHECK WP136]**

IF NOT (normal source of information about pension scheme = no information about pension scheme) [NOT WpInfS = 1]

**WPFINFO**

Do you feel that you have received enough information about your expected pension at retirement?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from work]) AND (derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee) [(WPActW = [1, 2]) AND (WpEs = 1)]

*IF age of respondent >= 50 [IAgeOf >= 50]*

**WPERET**

Have you been offered any form of early retirement incentives since you were 50 which you chose not to take?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether has declined opportunity for early retirement = yes [WpEret = 1]*

**WPERAG**

How old were you?

Range: 50..120

**[CHECK WP137]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether still member of pension scheme <> yes) AND (whether still member of pension scheme <> yes) AND (whether still member of pension scheme <> yes)  
[(WpSPS <> 1) AND (WpSPS <> 1) AND (WpSPS <> 1)]*

**WPBPS**

Thinking again about your main job, does your current employer offer a pension scheme which you are entitled to join?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether eligible for pension scheme from current employer <> yes [WpBPS <> 1]*

**WPANYP**

Does your employer offer a pension scheme to any employees?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

ELSE

*IF whether eligible for pension scheme from current employer = yes [WpBPS = 1]*

**WPPS**

Are you a member of this pension scheme?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether member of pension scheme = yes [WpPS = 1]*

**WPDPS**

SHOW CARD FF/II

Is your pension more like Type A or Type B?

INTERVIEWER: Type A is sometimes called defined contribution or money purchase, type B is sometimes called defined benefit.

- 1 Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my

```

| | | | | pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire
| | | | | 2 Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and
| | | | | salary
| | | | | 3 Don't know
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | | IF whether member of pension scheme = no [WpPS = 2]
| | | | | WPPSM
| | | | | Why aren't you a member of the scheme?
| | | | | PROBE: What else?
| | | | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.
| | | | | 1 Preferred, or already had, other arrangement
| | | | | 2 Expected to move job
| | | | | 3 Could not afford payments
| | | | | 4 Not eligible to join
| | | | | 95 Other reason (SPECIFY)
| | | | | [Multiple responses to WPPSM are recorded in variables WPPSM1 to WPPSM5]
| | | | | [code maximum 5 out of 5 possible responses]
| | | | | IF (reason for not being member of pension scheme = other [WpPSM = 95]
| | | | | WPPSMO
| | | | | INTERVIEWER : Write in other answer.
| | | | | String 40
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | | IF NOT (reason for not being member of pension scheme = not eligible to join)
| | | | | [NOT (WpPSM = 4)]
| | | | | WPEC
| | | | | If you joined the scheme and made contributions, would your employer add to your
| | | | | contributions to the pension scheme to give you a higher pension?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | | 3 Don't know
| | | | | IF whether employer would contribute to pension scheme if was member = yes
| | | | | [WpEC = 1]
| | | | | WPECA
| | | | | Would this be ... READ OUT ...
| | | | | 1 ... automatic,
| | | | | 2 or, at employer's discretion?
| | | | | 3 Don't know
| | | | | END OF FILTER

```

|| | END OF FILTER  
|| |  
|| | END OF FILTER  
|| |  
|| | END OF FILTER  
|| |  
END OF FILTER

*IF (Computed: ask this block for loop WPNum = yes) [AskQs = 1]*

*IF (((loop number <= 2) AND name of pension scheme at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)) OR ((loop number = 3) AND name of pension scheme at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))) OR (loop number >=4)*  
*[(((WPNum <=2) AND WpNps (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)) OR ((WPNum = 3) AND WpNps (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))] OR (WPNum >= 4)]*

**WPNPS@**

What is the name of the pension scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Probe for details.

If police, local authority etc, probe for name of force / local authority etc.

Write in.

String 80

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes*  
*[AskRules=1]*

**WPCOS**

Is it a contracted out scheme (this means that you pay a lower rate of National Insurance contribution and give up your entitlement to the State Earnings-Related Pension scheme)?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

**WPYBS**

How many years have you belonged to this scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Include years in same scheme with other employers.

Range: 0..60

END OF FILTER

**WPERC**

Does your employer require you to make a contribution to your pension scheme?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes [WpErc = 1]*

**WPMC**

What is the minimum contribution you need to make?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

1 Amount

2 Percentage of salary

3 Don't know

*IF minimum contribution need to make to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpMc = 1]*

**WPMCA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK WP138]**

**WPPERC**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF minimum contribution need to make to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpMc = 2]*

**WPMFRAC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme <> yes [WpErc <>1]*

**WPYCAMT**

How much do you currently contribute to your pension scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Not currently contributing
- 4 Don't know

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpYcAmt = 1]*

**WPYCA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP139]**

**WPMCAF**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months/ 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpYcAmt = 2]*

**WPYFRAC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary) AND (whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes) [(AskDcDb = 2) AND (WpErc = 1)]*

**WPACON**

Do you make any additional contributions to your pension scheme through ...

READ OUT ...

- 1 ... Additional Voluntary Contributions - AVCs,
- 2 buying Added Years,
- 3 or Irregular contributions?
- 4 No
- 5 Don't know

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = AVC [WpAcon = 1]*

**WPACOA**

How much do you usually contribute through additional voluntary contributions (AVC's)?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Don't know

*IF contribution through AVC - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount*  
*[WpAcoA = 1]*

**WPACOB**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP140]**

**WPACOC**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF contribution through AVC - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary*  
*[WpAcoA = 2]*

**WPFRAS**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = irregular contributions*  
*[WpAcon = 3]*

**WPCONY**

How much did you contribute in the last 12 months through additional irregular contributions?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP141]**

END OF FILTER

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = buying Added Years*  
*[WpAcon = 2]*

**WPADY**

How many added years did you get in the last 12 months?

Range: 0..10

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire) AND (whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes)*

*[(AskDcDb = 1) AND (WpErc = 1)]*

**WPMMIN**

Do you usually contribute more than the minimum contribution?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether usually contributes more than the minimum = yes [WpMMin = 1]*

**WPMUC**

How much are your usual additional contributions?

1 Amount

2 Percentage of salary

3 Don't know

*IF usual additional contributions - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount*

*[WpMUC = 1]*

**WPAUC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP142]**

**WPPER**

What period does this cover?

01 One week

02 Two weeks

03 Three weeks

04 Four weeks

05 Calendar month

07 Two Calendar months

08 Eight times a year

09 Nine times a year

10 Ten times a year

13 Three months / 13 weeks

26 Six months / 26 weeks

52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks

90 Less than one week

95 One off / lump sum

96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF usual additional contributions - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage*

| | | of salary [WpMUC = 2]

| | | **WPFRUC**

| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

| | | Range: 0..100

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | *IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = don't know [WpYcAmt = 3]*

| | | **WPANYC**

| | | Did you contribute at all in the last 12 months?

| | | 1 Yes

| | | 2 No

| | | *IF whether contributed in past year = yes [WpAnyc = 1]*

| | | **WPACAMT**

| | | How much did you contribute in the last 12 months?

| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

| | | Range: 0..99997

| | | **[CHECK WP143]**

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | **WPECON**

| | | How much does your employer currently contribute to your pension scheme?

| | | INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

| | | 1 Amount

| | | 2 Percentage of salary

| | | 3 Percentage of contribution

| | | 4 Does not currently contribute

| | | 5 Don't know

| | | *IF current contribution from employer to pension scheme - amount or percentage reported = amount [WpEcon = 1]*

| | | **WPECONA**

| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

| | | Range: 0..99997

| | | **[CHECK WP144]**

| | | **WPEPERI**

| | | What period does this cover?

| | | 01 One week

| | | 02 Two weeks

| | | 03 Three weeks

04 Four weeks  
05 Calendar month  
07 Two Calendar months  
08 Eight times a year  
09 Nine times a year  
10 Ten times a year  
13 Three months / 13 weeks  
26 Six months / 26 weeks  
52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks  
90 Less than one week  
95 One off / lump sum  
96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution from employer to pension scheme - amount or percentage reported =  
[percentage of salary, percentage of contribution] [WpEcon = [2, 3]]*

**WPEFS**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary or contribution.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes  
[AskRules=1]*

**WPNRA**

Is there a Normal Retirement Age in your pension scheme or period of service after which  
scheme members can retire?

- 1 Yes - normal retirement age
- 2 Yes - period of service
- 3 Yes - both / either
- 4 No - neither
- 5 Don't know

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - normal  
retirement age] [WpNRA = [3, 1]]*

**WPBTHA**

What is the normal retirement age?

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP145]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - period of  
service] [WpNRA = [3, 2]]*

**WPBTHP**

What is the period of service?

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP146]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - normal retirement age] [WpNRA = [3, 1]]*

**WPERA**

Does your pension scheme have an earlier age at which you can retire and draw pension benefits?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Occasionally

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether pension scheme has earlier retirement age = [yes, occasionally]) OR (whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - period of service, no, don't know]) [(WpEra = [1, 3]) OR (WpNRA = [2, 4, 5])]*

**WPYAER**

What currently is the youngest age at which you could take early retirement?

WRITE IN

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP147 - WP148]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes) AND (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary) [(AskRules = 1) AND (AskDcDb =2)]*

**WPDESP**

SHOW CARD HH

Which of these best describes how your pension will be calculated?

CODE ONE ONLY

- 1 Some fraction of my final year's salary
- 2 Some fraction of my salary from all years when I have been in the scheme
- 3 Some fraction of my last five years salary
- 4 In some other way
- 5 Don't know

*IF method by which pension is calculated = other [WpDesP = 4]*

**WPODP**

INTERVIEWER: Write in other way.

String 70

END OF FILTER

*IF method by which pension is calculated <> don't know [WpDesP <> 5]*

**WPFSAP**

What fraction will be added to your final pension for each years service?

- 1 1/60
- 2 1/80
- 3 Other
- 4 Don't know

*IF fraction added to final pension for each year of service = other [WpFsap = 3]*

**WPFSAL**

INTERVIEWER: Enter other fraction.

String 10

*/ [Open responses to Wpfsal were coded and then incorporated into Wpsap.*

**Wpsapc**

*/ identifies that an open response was given at Wpfsal and incorporated into Wpsap.]*

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPPLP**

All pensions go up with prices after retirement (sometimes known as index-linked), but some may go up more than prices. Will your pension go up more than prices after retirement?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

*IF whether pension is index-linked = yes [WpPlp = 1]*

**WPPLPH**

Will this be ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... automatic,
- 2 or, at your employer's (scheme's) discretion?
- 3 Other
- 4 Don't know

END OF FILTER

**WPLUMP**

What size lump sum do you expect to receive when you retire?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP149]**

*IF (lump sum expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpLump = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLUMPB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 200000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpLul, WpLuu, WpLue, WpLur]

END OF FILTER

**WPPTP**

How much do you expect to get from this pension when you retire?

INTERVIEWER: If asked: in today's prices.

Code how answer is given.

1 Income as a percentage of salary  
 2 Income as an annual amount of money

*IF what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = income*  
 as  
*a percentage of salary [WpPTP = 1]*

**WPPSAL**  
 INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.  
 Range: 1..100

END OF FILTER

*IF what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = income*  
 as  
*an annual amount of money [WpPTP = 2]*

**WPASAL**  
 INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.  
 Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP150]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (amount expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
*[(WpAsal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPASALB**  
 Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported =*  
*[DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPTP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPASALB**  
 Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age,*  
*years of service and salary [AskDcDb = 2]*

**WPFSAV**  
 Do you make any Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions (FSAVC'S)?  
 1 Yes  
 2 No

*IF whether makes Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions = yes [WpFSav = 1]*

**WPPFVAL**

[^What is the value of your accumulated contributions at this point? / How much did you contribute in the last 12 months through free standing additional voluntary contributions?]

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP151]**

*IF (current value of accumulated contributions = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

*[(WpPFVal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPFVALB**

Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPFI, WpPFu, WpPFe, WpPFR]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire [AskDcDb = 1]*

**WPAPF**

What is the value of the accumulated pension fund at this point?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP152]**

*IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

*[(WpAPF = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPAPFB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpAPI, WpAPu, WpAPe, WpAPr]

END OF FILTER

**WPPTOP**

How much do you expect the pension to be worth when you retire?

INTERVIEWER: If asked: in today's prices.

Code how answer is given.

1 Total amount of pension

2 Annual Amount

3 Don't know

*IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPtoP = [1, 2]]*

**WPPENB**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP153]**

*IF (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

*IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = total  
amount of pension [WpPtoP = 1]*

**WPPENTB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 150000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = annual  
amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW,  
REFUSAL]) [(WpPtoP = 2) AND (WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

ELSE

*IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported =  
[DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, don't know]) [(WpPtoP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 3])]*

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (((loop number = [1, 2, 3] AND NOT ((whether job mentioned at last interview is current  
main job = yes) AND (whether still works for same employer = yes))) AND (((loop number =  
1) AND (whether was a member of this pension scheme at Wave 1 = yes)) AND willing to  
give  
name and address of employer at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))) OR (((loop number = [2, 3]) AND  
(kind of pension scheme at Wave 1 = employer provided (occupational) pension scheme))  
AND (willing to give name and address of employer at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))) OR (loop  
number >= 4)  
[(((WPNum = [1, 2, 3] AND NOT ((Wpstj = 1) AND (WpEmp = 1))) AND (((WPNum = 1)  
AND (WpPS (Wave 1) = 1)) AND WpCons (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))) OR (((WPNum = [2,*

3]) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) = 1)) AND (WpCons (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))) OR (WPNum = 4)]

**WPCONS**

We may wish to contact your employer to find out more about the rules of their pension scheme. Would you be willing to give us their name and address for this purpose?

- 1 Employer's name and address given
- 2 Employer's name and address not given

*IF willing to give name and address of employer = employer's name and address given*  
*[WpCons = 1]*

**WPEADD**

INTERVIEWER: Enter employer's name and address.  
String 80

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether member of pension scheme = yes [WpPS = 1]*

**WPINFS**

From whom do you normally get information on how your pension scheme operates, for example, the benefits that you can expect to receive?

PROBE: Who else?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- 1 No information
- 2 Employer
- 3 Pension scheme reports
- 4 Work-mates
- 5 Financial press
- 6 Accountant
- 7 Independent financial adviser
- 8 Insurance or Pension representative
- 95 Other

***[Multiple responses to WPINFS are recorded in variables WPINFS1 to WPINFS9]  
[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]***

***[CHECK WP154]***

*IF NOT (normal source of information about pension scheme = no information)*  
*[NOT (WpInfS = 1)]*

**WPFINFO**

Do you feel that you have received enough information about your expected pension at retirement?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

LOOP FOR xx:= 5 TO 6

| IF Computed: ask whether contributes to pension scheme other than state pension on this  
loop | = yes [WpAsk = 1]

| IF Loop number = 5 [WPNum = 5]

| IF (((((whether still member of pension scheme = EMPTY AND whether still member of  
pension scheme = EMPTY) AND whether still member of pension scheme = EMPTY) AND  
whether still contributes to pension scheme = EMPTY) AND whether still contributes to  
pension scheme = EMPTY) AND whether still contributes to pension scheme = EMPTY)  
AND whether eligible for pension scheme from current employer = EMPTY  
[(((WpSPS = EMPTY AND WpSPS = EMPTY) AND WpSPS = EMPTY) AND WpKpS =  
EMPTY) AND WpKpS = EMPTY) AND WpKpS = EMPTY) AND WpBPS = EMPTY]

| **WPINTB\***

| Now I want to ask you some questions about any pension arrangements [^you / [^name]]  
may have [^BLANK / for [^your / his / her] retirement]. The next questions are about  
pension arrangements [^you / he / she] might have other than state pensions.  
1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| **WPCPS\***

| [^Apart / Can I just check, apart] from state pensions, [^do you / does [^name]] currently  
contribute to [^any other / a] pension scheme (please include schemes in which  
contributions  
are made on [^your / his / her] behalf)?

| INTERVIEWER: INCLUDE CIVIL PENSIONS

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| IF contributes to pension scheme other than state pension = no [WpCPS = 2]

| **WPCPSC\***

| [^Do you / Does [^name] / Can I just check, [^do you / does [^name]]] have [^any other / a]  
pension scheme to which [^you / he / she] could contribute?

| INTERVIEWER: Don't count past pensions or pensions respondent is currently receiving.

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| END OF FILTER

| IF (contributes to pension scheme other than state pension = yes) OR (whether there is  
other

pension scheme could contribute to = yes) [(WpCPS = 1) OR (WpCPSC = 1)]

| **WPKP\***

| SHOW CARD EE/KK

| What kind of pension scheme is it?

- | 1 Employer provided (occupational) pension scheme
- | 2 Private Personal Pension
- | 3 Group Personal Pension
- | 4 Stakeholder pension

```

| | | 5 S226 plan (self-employed personal pension)
| | | 6 Retirement Annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)
| | | 95 Other retirement saving scheme
|
| | | IF type of pension scheme = employer provided (occupational) pension scheme
| | | [WpKP = 1]
|
| | | [CHECK WP155 - WP156]
|
| | | END OF FILTER
|
| | | IF type of pension scheme = other [WpKP = 95]
|
| | | WPKIND*
| | | What kind of scheme is it?
| | | WRITE IN
| | | String 60
| | | [Open responses to Wpkind were coded and then incorporated into Wpkip. Wpkipc
| | | / identifies that an open response was given at Wpkind and incorporated into
| | | Wpkip.]
| | | END OF FILTER
|
| | | IF (type of pension scheme = employer provided (occupational) pension scheme)
| | | [WpKP = 1]
|
| | | WPPDES
| | | SHOW CARD FF/II
| | | Is [^your / ^name's] pension more like Type A or Type B?
| | | TYPE A IS SOMETIMES CALLED DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OR MONEY
| | | PURCHASE, TYPE B IS SOMETIMES CALLED DEFINED BENEFIT
| | | 1 Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my
| | | pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire
| | | 2 Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and
| | | salary
| | | 3 Don't know
|
| | | END OF FILTER
|
| | | END OF FILTER
|
| | | END OF FILTER
|
| | | IF ((type of pension scheme = don't know OR (loop number = 5 AND type of pension = don't
| | | know) OR type of pension scheme = other)) OR (contributes to pension scheme other than
| | | state
| | | pension = yes OR whether there is other pension scheme could contribute to = yes)))
| | | IF ((WpPdes = 3 OR (WpNum = 5 AND WpDPS = 3) OR WpKP = 95)) OR (WpCPS = 1 OR
| | | WpCPSC = 1)))
|
| | | WPOARS
| | | How many years [^have you / has ^name] [^been in this retirement savings scheme / had
| | | this pension arrangement]?
| | | Range: 0..60

```

END OF FILTER

*IF (Computed: ask this block for loop WPNum = yes) [AskQs = 1]*

*IF (((loop number <= 2) AND name of pension scheme at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)) OR  
((loop number = 3) AND name of pension scheme at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))) OR (loop  
number >=4) [(((WPNum <=2) AND WpNps (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) OR ((WPNum =  
3) AND WpNps (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))] OR (WPNum >= 4)]*

**WPNPS@**

What is the name of the pension scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Probe for details.

If police, local authority etc, probe for name of force / local authority etc.

Write in.

String 80

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes  
[AskRules = 1]*

**WPCOS**

Is it a contracted out scheme (this means that you pay a lower rate of National Insurance contribution and give up your entitlement to the State Earnings-Related Pension scheme)?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

**WPYBS**

How many years have you belonged to this scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Include years in same scheme with other employers.

Range: 0..60

END OF FILTER

**WPERC**

Does your employer require you to make a contribution to your pension scheme?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes [WpErc = 1]*

**WPMC**

What is the minimum contribution you need to make?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

1 Amount

2 Percentage of salary

3 Don't know

*IF minimum contribution need to make to pension scheme - amount or percentage of  
salary*

*reported = amount [WpMc = 1]*

**WPMCA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK WP157]**

**WPPERC**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF minimum contribution need to make to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary*

*reported = percentage of salary [WpMc = 2]*

**WPMFRAC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme <> yes [WpErc <> 1]*

**WPYCAMT**

How much do you currently contribute to your pension scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Not currently contributing
- 4 Don't know

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpYcAmt = 1]*

**WPYCA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP158]**

**WPMCAF**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpYcAmt = 2]*

**WPYFRAC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary) AND (whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes) [(AskDcDb = 2) AND (WpErc = 1)]*

**WPACON**

Do you make any additional contributions to your pension scheme through ...

READ OUT ...

- 1 ... Additional Voluntary Contributions - AVCs,
- 2 buying Added Years,
- 3 or Irregular contributions?
- 4 No
- 5 Don't know

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = AVC [WpAcon = 1]*

**WPACOA**

How much do you usually contribute through additional voluntary contributions (AVC's)?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Don't know

*IF contribution through AVC - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpAcoA = 1]*

**WPACOB**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP159]**

**WPACOC**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF contribution through AVC - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpAcoA = 2]*

**WPFRAS**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.  
Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = irregular contributions [WpAcon = 3]*

**WPCONY**

How much did you contribute in the last 12 months through additional irregular contributions?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP160]**

END OF FILTER

*IF additional contributions to pension scheme = buying Added Years [WpAcon = 2]*

**WPADY**

How many added years did you get in the last 12 months?

Range: 0..10

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire) AND (whether required to make a contribution to pension scheme = yes)  
[(AskDcDb = 1) AND (WpErc = 1)]*

**WPMMIN**

Do you usually contribute more than the minimum contribution?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether usually contributes more than the minimum = yes [WpMMin = 1]*

**WPMUC**

How much are your usual additional contributions?

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Don't know

*IF usual additional contributions - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount  
[WpMUC = 1]*

**WPAUC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP161]**

**WPPER**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF usual additional contributions - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpMUC = 2]*

**WFRUC**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.  
Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution to pension scheme - amount or percentage of salary reported = don't know [WpYcAmt = 3]*

**WPANYC**

Did you contribute at all in the last 12 months?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether contributed in past year = yes [WpAnyc = 1]*

**WPACAMT**

How much did you contribute in the last 12 months?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP162]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPECON**

How much does your employer currently contribute to your pension scheme?

INTERVIEWER: Code how answer is given.

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Percentage of contribution
- 4 Does not currently contribute
- 5 Don't know

*IF current contribution from employer to pension scheme - amount or percentage reported = amount [WpEcon = 1]*

**WPECONA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP163]**

**WPEPERI**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year

13 Three months / 13 weeks  
26 Six months / 26 weeks  
52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks  
90 Less than one week  
95 One off / lump sum  
96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF current contribution from employer to pension scheme - amount or percentage reported = [percentage of salary, percentage of contribution] [WpEcon = [2, 3]*

**WPEFS**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary or contribution.

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes [AskRules = 1]*

**WPNRA**

Is there a Normal Retirement Age in your pension scheme or period of service after which scheme members can retire?

- 1 Yes - normal retirement age
- 2 Yes - period of service
- 3 Yes - both / either
- 4 No - neither
- 5 Don't know

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - normal retirement age] [WpNRA = [3, 1]]*

**WPBTHA**

What is the normal retirement age?

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP164]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - period of service] [WpNRA = [3, 2]]*

**WPBTHP**

What is the period of service?

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP165]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - both / either, yes - normal retirement age] [WpNRA = [3, 1]]*

**WPERA**

| | | | Does your pension scheme have an earlier age at which you can retire and draw  
 pension  
 | | | | benefits?  
 | | | | 1 Yes  
 | | | | 2 No  
 | | | | 3 Occasionally  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | *IF (whether pension scheme has earlier retirement age = [yes, occassionally]) OR*  
 | | | | *(whether normal retirement age in pension scheme = [yes - period of service, no, don't*  
 | | | | *know])*  
 | | | | *[(WpEra = [1, 3]) OR (WpNRA = [2, 4, 5])]*  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **WPYAER**  
 | | | | What currently is the youngest age at which you could take early retirement?  
 | | | | WRITE IN  
 | | | | Range: 0..120  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **[CHECK WP166 - WP167]**  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | *IF (Computed: whether rules of pension scheme changed since last interview = yes) AND*  
 | | | | *(ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age,*  
 | | | | *years of service and salary) [(AskRules = 1) AND (AskDcDb = 2)]*  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **WPDESP**  
 | | | | SHOW CARD HH  
 | | | | Which of these best describes how your pension will be calculated?  
 | | | | CODE ONE ONLY  
 | | | | 1 Some fraction of my final year's salary  
 | | | | 2 Some fraction of my salary from all years when I have been in the scheme  
 | | | | 3 Some fraction of my last five years salary  
 | | | | 4 In some other way  
 | | | | 5 Don't know  
 | | | |  
 | | | | *IF method by which pension is calculated = other [WpDesP = 4]*  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **WPODP**  
 | | | | INTERVIEWER: Write in other way.  
 | | | | String 70  
 | | | |  
 | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | |  
 | | | | *IF method by which pension is calculated <> don't know [WpDesP <> 5]*  
 | | | |  
 | | | | **WPFSAP**  
 | | | | What fraction will be added to your final pension for each years service?  
 | | | | 1 1/60  
 | | | | 2 1/80  
 | | | | 3 Other  
 | | | | 4 Don't know

| | | *IF fraction added to final pension for each year of service = other [WpFsap =3]*

| | | **WPFSAL**

| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter other fraction.

| | | String 10

| | | **[Open responses to Wpfsal were coded and then incorporated into Wpsap.**

| | | **Wpsapc4 identifies that an open response was given at Wpfsal and incorporated into**

| | | **Wpfsap.]**

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | **WPPLP**

| | | All pensions go up with prices after retirement (sometimes known as index-linked), but some may go up more than prices. Will your pension go up more than prices after retirement?

| | | 1 Yes

| | | 2 No

| | | 3 Don't know

| | | *IF whether pension is index-linked = yes [WpPlp = 1]*

| | | **WPPLPH**

| | | Will this be ... READ OUT ...

| | | 1 ... automatic,

| | | 2 or, at your employer's (scheme's) discretion?

| | | 3 Other

| | | 4 Don't know

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | **WPLUMP**

| | | What size lump sum do you expect to receive when you retire?

| | | Range: 0..9999997

| | | **[CHECK WP168]**

| | | *IF (lump sum expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| | | *[(WpLump = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| | | **WPLUMPB**

| | | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| | | BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 200000)

| | | [Bracket results are recorded in WpLul, WpLuu, WpLue, WpLur]

| | | END OF FILTER

| | | **WPPTP**

| | | How much do you expect to get from this pension when you retire?

| | | INTERVIEWER: If asked: in today's prices.

| | | Code how answer is given.

| | | 1 Income as a percentage of salary

| | | 2 Income as an annual amount of money

| | | *IF what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = income*

as a percentage of salary [WpPTP = 1]

**WPPSAL**

INTERVIEWER: Enter percentage of salary.

Range: 1..100

END OF FILTER

*IF what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = income as an annual amount of money [WpPTP = 2]*

**WPASAL**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP169]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (amount expects to receive on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpAsal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPASALB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect to get from pension when retire - amount or percentage reported = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPTP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPASALB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpASl, WpASu, WpASe, WpASr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ask for type of pension = Type B: My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary [AskDcDb = 2]*

**WPFSAV**

Do you make any Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions (FSAVC'S)?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether makes Free Standing Additional Voluntary Contributions = yes [WpFSav = 1]*

**WPPFVAL**

[^What is the value of your accumulated contributions at this point? / How much did you

||| contribute in the last 12 months through free standing additional voluntary contributions?]

||| Range: 0..9999997

||| **[CHECK WP170]**

||| *IF (current value of accumulated contributions = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
||| *[(WpPFVal = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

||| **WPPFVALB**

||| Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

||| BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

||| [Bracket results are recorded in WpPFI, WpPFu, WpPFe, WpPFR]

||| END OF FILTER

||| END OF FILTER

||| END OF FILTER

||| *IF ask for type of pension = Type A: My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire*  
||| *[AskDcDb = 1]*

||| **WPAPF**

||| What is the value of the accumulated pension fund at this point?

||| Range: 0..9999997

||| **[CHECK WP171]**

||| *IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
||| *[(WpAPF = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

||| **WPAPFB**

||| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

||| BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

||| [Bracket results are recorded in WpAPI, WpAPu, WpAPe, WpAPr]

||| END OF FILTER

||| **WPPTOP**

||| How much do you expect the pension to be worth when you retire?

||| INTERVIEWER: If asked: in today's prices.

||| Code how answer is given.

||| 1 Total amount of pension

||| 2 Annual Amount

||| 3 Don't know

||| *IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPtoP = [1, 2]]*

||| **WPPENB**

||| INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

||| Range: 0..9999997

||| **[CHECK WP172]**

IF (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

IF what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported =  
total amount of pension [WpPtoP = 1]

**WPPENTB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 150000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported =  
annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T  
KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPtoP = 2) AND (WpPenB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

ELSE

IF (what expects pension to be worth when retire - total or annual amount reported =  
[DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, don't know]) [(WpPtoP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL, 3])]

**WPPENAB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpPel, WpPeu, WpPee, WpPer]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (((loop number = [1, 2, 3] AND NOT ((whether job mentioned at last interview is current  
main job = yes) AND (whether still works for same employer = yes))) AND (((loop number =  
1) AND (whether was a member of this pension scheme at Wave 1 = yes)) AND willing to  
give name and address of employer at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE))) OR (((loop number = [2,  
3]) AND (kind of pension scheme at Wave 1 = employer provided (occupational) pension  
scheme)) AND (willing to give name and address of employer at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)))  
OR (loop number >= 4)  
[(((WPNum = [1, 2, 3] AND NOT ((Wpstj = 1) AND (WpEmp = 1))) AND (((WPNum = 1)  
AND (WpPS (Wave 1) = 1)) AND WpCons (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))) OR (((WPNum = [2,  
3]) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) = 1)) AND (WpCons (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE))) OR (WPNum =  
4)]

**WPCONS**

We may wish to contact your employer to find out more about the rules of their pension scheme. Would you be willing to give us their name and address for this purpose?

1 Employer's name and address given  
2 Employer's name and address not given

*IF willing to give name and address of employer = employer's name and address given*  
*[WpCons = 1]*

**WPEADD**  
INTERVIEWER: Enter employer's name and address.  
String 80

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF Will be computed @/@/Is th <> Yes [AskPx <> 1]*

*IF type of pension scheme = S226 plan (self-employed personal pension) [WpKP = 5]*

*IF ((loop number = [2, 3]) AND (years that has had pension at Wave 1 = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])) OR (loop number = [5, 6])*  
*(((WPNum = [2, 3]) AND (WpYpen (Wave 1) = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])) OR*  
*(WPNum = [5, 6]))]*

**WPYPEN**  
How many years have you had this pension?  
ENTER NUMBER OF YEARS  
Range: 0..80

END OF FILTER

**WPCB**  
What is the value of the accumulated pension fund at this point?  
Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP173]**

*IF (current value of accumulated pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
*[(WpCB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPCBB**  
Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpCBI, WpCBu, WpCBe, WpCBr]

END OF FILTER

**WPSRC**  
Do you make a regular contribution to your pension?  
1 Yes  
2 No

*IF whether makes regular contribution to pension = yes [WpSRC = 1]*

**WPMRC**

How much do you usually contribute to your pension?  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP174]**

**WPMRCP**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF whether makes regular contribution to pension = no [WpSRC = 2]*

**WPLRCY**

When was the last time that you contributed to your pension?  
ENTER YEAR AT THIS QUESTION  
Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP175]**

*IF (year last contributed to pension = RESPONSE) AND (year last contributed to pension*

*>= 1999) [(WpLrcY = RESPONSE) AND (WpLrcY >= 1999)]*

**WPLRCM**

(When was the last time that you contributed to your pension?)

CODE MONTH AT THIS QUESTION  
IF DOESN'T KNOW MONTH, CODE SEASON

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December

13 Winter (start of year)  
14 Spring  
15 Summer  
16 Autumn  
17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP176]**

END OF FILTER

**WPLAC**

How much was the last contribution that you made to your pension?  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP177]**

*IF year last contributed to pension = 2001 [WpLrcY = 2001]*

**WPNCONT**

About how many contributions have you made to your pension in the last year?  
Range: 0..60

**[CHECK WP178]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPLPE**

How much do you expect the pension to be worth when you retire?

IF ASKED: IN TODAY'S PRICES  
CODE TYPE OF ANSWER GIVEN

- 1 Total amount of pension
- 2 Annual amount
- 3 Don't know

*IF what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported =  
[total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpLpe = [1, 2]]*

**WPLPA**

INTERVIEWER: ENTER AMOUNT  
Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP179]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = total  
amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T  
KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 1) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLPTB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]

```

| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported =
| | | annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T
| | | KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = 2) AND (WpLpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | |
| | | WPLPAB
| | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported =
| | | [don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpLpe = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | |
| | | WPLPAB
| | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in WpLpl, WpLpu, WpLpe, WpLpr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF (type of pension scheme = RESPONSE) AND (type of pension scheme = [private personal
| | | pension, group personal pension, stakeholder pension, retirement annuity pensions (pre 86
| | | PPPs)]) [(WpKP = RESPONSE) AND (WpKP = [2, 3, 4, 6])]
| | |
| | | IF ((loop number = [2, 3]) AND (years has had personal pension at Wave 1 <>
| | | RESPONSE)) OR (loop number = [5, 6])
| | | [((WpNum = [2, 3]) AND (WpPlon (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)) OR (WpNum = 5, 6)]
| | |
| | | WPPLON
| | | How long have you had this Personal Pension?
| | | ENTER NUMBER OF YEARS
| | | Range: 0..80
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | WPPCONT
| | | Not including any National Insurance Contributions paid into the pension, do you contribute
| | | to your pension ... READ OUT ...
| | | 1 ... never,
| | | 2 regularly,
| | | 3 irregularly,
| | | 4 or, have you stopped contributing to your scheme?
| | |
| | | IF frequency of contribution to pension = regularly [WpPCont = 2]
| | |

```

**WPHCON**

How much do you usually contribute?

CODE HOW ANSWER IS GIVEN

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Don't know

*IF usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpHCon = 1]*

**WPCAMT**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP180]**

**WPCPER**

What period does this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary  
[WpHCon = 2]*

**WPNIFP**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF frequency of contribution to pension = irregularly [WpPCont = 3]*

**WPLCOY**

When did you last make a contribution?

ENTER YEAR AT THIS QUESTION

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP181]**

*IF (year of last contribution = RESPONSE) AND (year of last contribution >= 1999)*

*[(WpLcoY = RESPONSE) AND (WpLcoY >= 1999)]*

**WPLCOM**

(When did you last make a contribution?)

CODE MONTH AT THIS QUESTION

IF DOESN'T KNOW MONTH, CODE SEASON

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December
- 13 Winter (start of year)
- 14 Spring
- 15 Summer
- 16 Autumn
- 17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP182]**

END OF FILTER

**WPMCON**

About how much did you contribute on that occasion?

CODE HOW ANSWER IS GIVEN

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary
- 3 Don't know

*IF last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount [WpMcon = 1]*

**WPAC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP183]**

END OF FILTER

*IF last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary  
[WpMcon = 2]*

**WPFSC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY?

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF year of last contribution >= 2004 [WpLcoY >= 2004]*

**WPNIRR**

About how many times in the last year did you contribute to your pension?

Range: 0..60

**[CHECK WP184]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF frequency of contribution to pension = has stopped contributing to scheme [WpPCont = 4]*

**WPLASTY**

When was the last contribution you made?

ENTER YEAR AT THIS QUESTION

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP185]**

*IF (year of last contribution = RESPONSE) AND (year of last contribution >= 1999) [(WpLastY = RESPONSE) AND (WpLastY >= 1999)]*

**WPLASTM**

(When was the last contribution you made?)

CODE MONTH AT THIS QUESTION

IF DOESN'T KNOW MONTH, CODE SEASON

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

13 Winter (start of year)

14 Spring

15 Summer

16 Autumn

17 Winter (end of year)

**[CHECK WP186]**

END OF FILTER

**WPMLAS**

How much was your last contribution?

ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP187]**

**WPLASP**

What period did that cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

**WPRCON**

Did you previously contribute regularly to this pension?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**WPRSC**

Why did you stop contributing to this Personal Pension?

- 1 Moved job and joined employer's pension scheme
- 2 Rejoined employer's pension scheme in existing job
- 3 Rejoined State Earnings Related Pension Scheme
- 4 Worried about risks
- 5 Worried about publicity concerning personal pensions
- 95 Other (specify)

**[Multiple responses to WPRSC are recorded in variables WPRSC1 to WPRSC6]  
[code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]**

*IF (reason for stopping Personal Pension contribution = other) [WpRsc= 95]*

**WPRSCO**

ENTER OTHER REASON

String 20

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF Computed: whether employer regularly contributes to pension = yes - regularly  
[AskCEmp = 1]*

**WPCEMP**

Does your employer contribute to this pension?

- 1 Yes - regularly
- 2 Yes - irregularly
- 3 No

*IF whether employer regularly contributes to pension = yes - irregularly*

[WpCemp = 2]

**WPECPP**

How much was the last contribution that your employer made to your Personal Pension?

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary

*IF employer's last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount*  
[WpECPP = 1]

**WPAECP**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP188]**

END OF FILTER

*IF employer's last contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary* [WpECPP = 2]

**WPFSEC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether employer regularly contributes to pension = yes - regularly* [WpCemp = 1]

**WPMEC**

How much does your employer usually contribute?

- 1 Amount
- 2 Percentage of salary

*IF employer's usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = amount*  
[WpMEC = 1]

**WPAMEC**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK WP189]**

**WPFSCP**

What period does that cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month

- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF employer's usual contribution - amount or percentage of salary reported = percentage of salary [WpMEC = 2]*

**WPFSCO**

INTERVIEWER ENTER PERCENTAGE OF SALARY

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPCUV**

What is the current value of the accumulated pension fund at this point?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP190]**

*IF (current value of pension fund = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(Wpcuv = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPCUVB**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 7500, 25000, 100000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpcul, Wpcuu, Wpcue, Wpcur]

END OF FILTER

**WPPEXP**

How much do you expect the pension to be worth when you retire?

IF ASKED: IN TODAY'S PRICES

CODE TYPE OF ANSWER GIVEN

- 1 Total amount of pension
- 2 Annual amount
- 3 Don't know

*IF what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [total amount of pension, annual amount] [WpPEXP = 1, 2]*

**WPAMOU**

INTERVIEWER ENTER AMOUNT:

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK WP191]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = total amount of pension) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 1) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2TB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (5000, 15000, 50000, 100000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = annual amount) AND (amount expects pension to be worth on retirement = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = 2) AND (WpAmou = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2AB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

ELSE

*IF (what expect pension to be worth on retirement - total or annual amount reported = [don't know, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPExp = [3, DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPPT2AB**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 12500, 50000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in Wpptl, Wpptu, Wppte, Wpptr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (contributes to pension scheme other than state pension = yes) OR (whether there is other pension scheme could contribute to = yes) [(WpCPS = 1) OR (WpCPSC = 1)]*

**WPINFS**

From whom do you normally get information on how your pension scheme operates, for example, the benefits that you can expect to receive?

PROBE: Who else?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- 1 No information
- 2 Employer
- 3 Pension scheme reports
- 4 Work-mates
- 5 Financial press
- 6 Accountant
- 7 Independent financial adviser

8 Insurance or Pension representative  
95 Other  
**[Multiple responses to WPINFS are recorded in variables WPINFS1 to WPINFS9]  
[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]**

**[CHECK WP192]**

*IF NOT (normal source of information about pension scheme = no information)  
[NOT (WpInfS = 1)]*

**WPFINFO**

Do you feel that you have received enough information about your expected pension at retirement?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**SECTION WP3**

*IF whether received pension from scheme at Wave 1 = yes [WpRec (Wave 1) = 1]*

**WPRECS**

Last time we interviewed you [^on date of last interview], you were receiving a pension from a scheme called [^name of pension scheme received at Wave 1]. Are you still receiving a pension from this scheme?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the type of pension scheme. Responses are recorded in Wprecs1, Wprecs2, and Wprecs3]**

*IF whether still receives pension from scheme = yes [WpRecS = 1]*

**WPPWP\***

Thinking about the last payment [^you / he / she] received from [^this pension / the most important pension / next most important of these pensions] what period did this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

```

| | | | | IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPWP = RESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPPWR*
| | | | | How much did [^you / he / she] receive?
| | | | | Range: 0..99997
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (period last payment covered =
| | | | | [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPWR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPWP = |
| | | | | [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPWP = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPWWB
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in wpwwwl, wpwwwu, wpwwwe, wpwwwr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPWP = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPWFB
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in wpwwfl, wpwwfu, wpwwfe, wpwwfr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPWP = [4, 5]]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPWMB
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in wpwwml, wpwwmu, wpwwmr, wpwwme]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump
| | | | | sum] [WpPWP = [52, 95]]
| | | | |
| | | | | WPWYB
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in wpwwyl, wpwwyu, wpwwye, wpwwyr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | WPWOB
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in wpwwol, wpwwou, wpwwoe, wpwwor]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER

```

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPWTX**

Is this before or after tax?

- 1 Before tax
- 2 After tax
- 3 (SPONTANEOUS: Not liable for tax)

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether received pension from scheme at Wave 1 = no) AND (status of pension scheme = retained pension rights in this scheme) [(WpRec (Wave 1) = 2) AND (WpRgh (Wave 1) = 1)]*

**WPRECN**

Last time we interviewed you [^on date of last interview], you told us about a pension scheme called [^name of pension scheme] that you had retained rights in but weren't yet receiving. Are you currently receiving a pension from this scheme?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each type of pension scheme.***

***Responses are recorded in Wprecn1 to Wprecn3.]***

*IF type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = employer provided (occupational) pension scheme [WpMSc (Wave 1) = 1]*

**WPDPSND**

SHOW CARD GG

Is your pension more like a Type A or Type B?

TYPE A IS SOMETIMES CALLED DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OR MONEY

PURCHASE, TYPE B IS SOMETIMES CALLED DEFINED BENEFIT

- 1 Type A : My pension contributions were put into a fund which grew over time and the pension depended on the size of this fund when I retired
- 2 Type B : My pension is based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary
- 3 Don't know

***[There is a separate variable for responses about each type of pension scheme.***

***Responses are recorded in Wpdsnd1 to Wpdsnd3]***

*IF type of pension = [Type A : My pension contributions were put into a fund which grew over time and the pension depended on the size of this fund when I retired, Type B : My pension is based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary]*

*[WPDPSNd = [1, 2]]*

**WPERCD**

Did your employer require you to make a contribution to your pension scheme?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

| | 3 Don't know  
 | | **[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the pension scheme.**  
 | | **Responses are recorded in Wpercd1 to Wpercd3]**  
 | | END OF FILTER  
 | |  
 | | END OF FILTER  
 | |  
 | | *IF whether currently receives pension from scheme = yes [WpRecN = 1]*  
 | |  
 | | **WPINF\***  
 | | Is the amount [^you receive / he receives / she receives] from this pension continually  
 | | adjusted to take account of inflation (sometimes called index-linked)?  
 | | 1 Yes  
 | | 2 No  
 | |  
 | | **WPPAY\***  
 | | Thinking about the last payment [^you / he / she] received, what period did this cover?  
 | | 01 One week  
 | | 02 Two weeks  
 | | 03 Three weeks  
 | | 04 Four weeks  
 | | 05 Calendar month  
 | | 07 Two Calendar months  
 | | 08 Eight times a year  
 | | 09 Nine times a year  
 | | 10 Ten times a year  
 | | 13 Three months / 13 weeks  
 | | 26 Six months / 26 weeks  
 | | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks  
 | | 90 Less than one week  
 | | 95 One off / lump sum  
 | | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)  
 | |  
 | | *IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPay = RESPONSE]*  
 | |  
 | | **WPPYR\***  
 | | How much did [^you / he / she] receive?  
 | | Range: 0..999997  
 | |  
 | | END OF FILTER  
 | |  
 | | *IF (period last payment covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =*  
 | | *[DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
 | | *[(WpPay = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPyR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*  
 | |  
 | | *IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPay = 1]*  
 | |  
 | | **WPWB**  
 | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 | | BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)  
 | | [Bracket results are recorded in WpWbl, WpWbu, WpWbe, WpWbr]  
 | |  
 | | ELSE  
 | |  
 | | *IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPay = 2]*  
 | |  
 | | |

**WPFB**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in Wpfbl, Wpfbu, Wpfbe, Wpfbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPay = [4, 5]]*

**WPMB**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in Wpmb1, Wpmbu, Wpmbc, Wpmbd]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum] [WpPay = [52, 95]]*

**WPYB**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in Wpybl, Wpybu, Wpybc, Wpybd]

ELSE

**WPOB**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in Wpobl, Wpobu, Wpobe, Wpobr]

END OF FILTER

**WPTAX**  
 Is this before or after tax?  
 1 Before tax  
 2 After tax  
 3 (SPONTANEOUS: Not liable for tax)

**WPLMPS\***  
 Many pensions allow you to take a lump sum in addition to your pension income. [^Have you / has [^name]] received a lump sum from [^your / [^name's]] [^pension / most important pension / next most important of these pensions]?  
 1 Yes  
 2 No

*IF whether has received lump sum from pension = yes [WPLmpS = 1]*

**WPLMPA**  
 How much was the lump sum?  
 ENTER POUNDS.  
 Range: 1..999997  
  
*IF (amount of lump sum received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
*[(WPLmpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*  
  
**WPLMPAUN**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WPLml, WPLmu, WPLme, WPLmr]  
  
 END OF FILTER  
  
 END OF FILTER  
  
**WPTKEP\***  
 [^Have you / Has [^name]] taken [^your / [^name's]] [^pension / most important pension /  
 next most important of these pensions] as ... READ OUT ...  
 1 ... Annuity with pension company who originally provided the scheme,  
 2 ... Annuity with a different pension provider,  
 3 or, Income drawdown?  
  
*IF how taken pension = income drawdown [WPTkeP = 3]*  
  
**WPINCDR\***  
 How much [^have you / has [^name]] withdrawn annually from [^your / [^name's]]  
 pension?  
 ENTER POUNDS.  
 Range: 0..99997  
  
*IF (amount withdrawn annually from pension = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
*[(WPIncDr = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*  
  
**WPINCDRUN**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)  
 [Bracket results are recorded in WPInl, WPInu, WPIne, WPInr]  
  
 END OF FILTER  
  
 END OF FILTER  
  
 END OF FILTER  
  
 END OF FILTER  
  
*IF (whether still receives pension from scheme = no) OR (whether currently receives pension*  
*from scheme = no) [(WpRecS = 2) OR (WpRecN = 2)]*  
  
**WPRGHX**  
 Have you ... READ OUT ...  
 1 ... retained pension rights in this scheme,  
 2 ... transferred rights from this scheme into another scheme,  
 3 or, received a lump sum refund of contributions?

| 4 [SPONTANEOUS: Has stopped receiving pension from this scheme]

| END OF FILTER

| *IF whether currently receives pension from scheme spouse contributed to in past = yes*  
| *[WpPW = 1]*

| **WPWPS**

| Last time we interviewed you [^on date of last interview], you were receiving [^number of  
| pensions received at Wave 1 from scheme spouse contributed to] pension(s) that your  
| husband

| or wife contributed to in the past. Are you still receiving this / these pension(s)?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| *IF whether still receives pension = yes [WpWpS = 1]*

| *IF number of pensions currently receives from scheme spouse contributed to in past =*  
| *RESPONSE [WpReN = RESPONSE]*

| LOOP FOR kk:= 1 TO 10

| *IF QInd.QWP3.QWPf.Qre.kk <= IW1.WpReN [kk <= IW1.WpReN]*

| **WPPWP\***

| Thinking about the last payment [^you / he / she] received from [^this pension / the  
| most important pension / next most important of these pensions] what period did this  
| cover?

| 01 One week

| 02 Two weeks

| 03 Three weeks

| 04 Four weeks

| 05 Calendar month

| 07 Two Calendar months

| 08 Eight times a year

| 09 Nine times a year

| 10 Ten times a year

| 13 Three months / 13 weeks

| 26 Six months / 26 weeks

| 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks

| 90 Less than one week

| 95 One off / lump sum

| 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

| *IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPWP = RESPONSE]*

| **WPPWR\***

| How much did [^you / he / she] receive?

| Range: 0..99997

| END OF FILTER

| *IF (amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (period last payment covered*  
| *= [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
| *[(WpPWR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPWR = [DON'T KNOW,*  
| *REFUSAL])]*

*IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPWP = 1]*

**WPWWB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWWl, WpWWu, WpWWe, WpWWr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPWP = 2]*

**WPWFB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWfl, WpWfu, WpWfe, WpWfr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPWP = [4, 5]]*

**WPWMB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWml, WpWmu, WpWme, WpWmr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum] [WpPWP = [52, 95]]*

**WPWYB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWyl, WpWyu, WpWye, WpWyr]

ELSE

**WPWOB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWol, WpWou, WpWoe, WpWor]

END OF FILTER

**WPWTX**

Is this before or after tax?

1 Before tax

```

| | | | 2 After tax
| | | | 3 (SPONTANEOUS: Not liable for tax)
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF whether still receives pension = no [WpWpS = 2]
| | | |
| | | | WPRGHX
| | | | Have you ... READ OUT ...
| | | | 1 ... retained pension rights in this scheme,
| | | | 2 ... transferred rights from this scheme into another scheme,
| | | | 3 or, received a lump sum refund of contributions?
| | | | 4 [SPONTANEOUS: Has stopped receiving pension from this scheme]
| | | |
| | | | WPAWP
| | | | Are you still receiving any pensions that your husband or wife contributed to in the past?
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | |
| | | | IF whether still receives pension spouse contributed to in past = yes [WpAWp = 1]
| | | |
| | | | WPWPN
| | | | How many of these pensions are you currently receiving?
| | | | Range: 1..10
| | | |
| | | | IF number of pensions currently receives = RESPONSE [WpWpN = RESPONSE]
| | | |
| | | | LOOP FOR kk:= 1 TO 10
| | | |
| | | | IF QInd.QWP3.QWPf.Qre.kk <= number of pensions currently receives [kk | | | | <=
| | | | WpWpN]
| | | |
| | | | WPPWP*
| | | | Thinking about the last payment [^you / he / she] received from [^this pension / the
| | | | most important pension / next most important of these pensions] what period did this
| | | | cover?
| | | | 01 One week
| | | | 02 Two weeks
| | | | 03 Three weeks
| | | | 04 Four weeks
| | | | 05 Calendar month
| | | | 07 Two Calendar months
| | | | 08 Eight times a year
| | | | 09 Nine times a year
| | | | 10 Ten times a year
| | | | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
| | | | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
| | | | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
| | | | 90 Less than one week
| | | | 95 One off / lump sum

```

96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPWP = RESPONSE]*

**WPPWR\***

How much did [^you / he / she] receive?

Range: 0..99997

END OF FILTER

*IF (amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (period last payment covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(WpPWR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPWP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

*IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPWP = 1]*

**WPWWB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWWI, WpWWu, WpWWe, WpWWr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPWP = 2]*

**WPWFB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWfI, WpWfu, WpWfe, WpWfr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPWP = [4, 5]]*

**WPWMB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWmI, WpWmu, WpWme, WpWmr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off lump sum] [WpPWP = [52, 95]]*

**WPWYB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWyl, WpWyu, WpWye, WpWyr]

ELSE

**WPWOB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWol, WpWou, WpWoe, WpWor]



Range: 1..10

*IF number of pensions currently receives = RESPONSE [WpExN = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR kk:= 1 TO 10

*IF QInd.QWP3.QWPf.Qre.kk <= number of pensions currently receives  
[kk <= WpExN]*

**WPINF\***

Is the amount [^you receive / he receives / she receives] from this pension continually adjusted to take account of inflation (sometimes called index-linked)?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**WPPAY\***

Thinking about the last payment [^you / he / she] received, what period did this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPay = RESPONSE]*

**WPPYR\***

How much did [^you / he / she] receive?  
Range: 0..999997

END OF FILTER

*IF (period last payment covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPay = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPyR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

*IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPay = 1]*

**WPWB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWbl, WpWbu, WpWbe, WpWbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPay = 2]*

**WPFB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpfbl, Wpfbu, Wpfbe, Wpfbr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPay = [4, 5]]*

**WPMB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpmb1, Wpmbu, Wpmb2, Wpmb3]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum] [WpPay = [52, 95]]*

**WPYB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpyb1, Wpybu, Wpyb2, Wpyb3]

ELSE

**WPOB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpob1, Wpobu, Wpobe, Wpobr]

END OF FILTER

**WPTAX**

Is this before or after tax?

1 Before tax

2 After tax

3 (SPONTANEOUS: Not liable for tax)

**WPLMPS\***

Many pensions allow you to take a lump sum in addition to your pension income.

[^Have you / has [^name]] received a lump sum from [^your / [^name's]] [^pension / most important pension / next most important of these pensions]?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether has received lump sum from pension = yes [WPLmpS = 1]*



*whether currently receives pension from scheme spouse contributed to in past = EMPTY*  
[[*(DiMar <> 1) AND (DiMar <> 2) AND WpPW = EMPTY*]

**WPPW\***

Some people who have been divorced or widowed receive pensions from schemes which their husband or wife contributed to. [^Are you / Is he / Is she] currently receiving a pension from a scheme like this?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether currently receives pension from scheme spouse contributed to in past = yes*  
[*WpPW = 1*]

**WPREN\***

How many of these pensions [^are you / is he / is she] currently receiving?

Range: 0..10

**[CHECK WP1]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether currently receives pension from scheme spouse contributed to in past = no*  
[*WpPW = 2*]

**WPEXW\***

[^Do you / Does he / Does she] expect to receive a pension from any schemes like this in the future?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF number of pensions currently receives from scheme spouse contributed to in past = RESPONSE*  
[*WpReN = RESPONSE*]

*IF QInd.QWP3.QWPf.Qre.kk <= number of pensions currently receives from scheme spouse contributed to in past*  
[*kk <= WpReN*]

**WPPWP\***

Thinking about the last payment [^you / he / she] received from [^this pension / the most important pension / next most important of these pensions] what period did this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week

95 One off / lump sum  
96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPWP = RESPONSE]*

**WPPWR\***

How much did [^you / he / she] receive?  
Range: 0..99997

END OF FILTER

*IF (amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (period last payment covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WpPWR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPWP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

*IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPWP = 1]*

**WPWWB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpWWI, WpWWu, WpWWe, WpWWr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPWP = 2]*

**WPWFB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpWfl, WpWfu, WpWfe, WpWfr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPWP = [4, 5]]*

**WPWMB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpWml, WpWmu, WpWme, WpWmr]

ELSE

*IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum] [WpPWP = [52, 95]]*

**WPWYB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpWyl, WpWyu, WpWye, WpWyr]

ELSE

**WPWOB**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)  
[Bracket results are recorded in WpWol, WpWou, WpWoe, WpWor]



|  
| ELSE

| **WPPEPR\***

| Apart from any state pensions, [^have you / has he / has she] ever belonged to, or contributed to a pension scheme?

| INTERVIEWER: Include any currently being received.

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| END OF FILTER

| *IF (whether ever contributed to other pension scheme = yes) OR (whether ever contributed to other pension scheme= yes) [(WpPrPe = 1) OR (WpPePr = 1)]*

| **WPNOSC\***

| How many pension schemes [^have you / has he / has she] belonged to?

| [^BLANK / DO NOT INCLUDE CURRENT SCHEME]

| Range: 1..10

| **[CHECK WP2]**

| *IF (number of pension schemes belonged to = RESPONSE) AND (number of pension schemes | belonged to >= kk) [(WpNoSc = RESPONSE) AND (WpNoSc >= kk)]*

| | **WPREC\***

| | [[^Are you / Is he / Is she ] / Thinking about [^your / his / her] [^BLANK / next] most important scheme, [^are you / is he / is she ]] currently receiving a pension from this scheme?

| | MOST IMPORTANT = MOST YEARS IN SCHEME OR MOST INCOME IN

| | RETIREMENT

| | 1 Yes

| | 2 No

| | **WPMSC\***

| | SHOW CARD EE/KK

| | What kind of pension scheme is it?

| | 1 Employer provided (occupational) pension scheme

| | 2 Private Personal Pension

| | 3 Group Personal Pension

| | 4 Stakeholder pension

| | 5 S226 plan (self-employed personal pension)

| | 6 Retirement Annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)

| | 95 Other retirement saving scheme

| | **WPNP\***

| | What is the name of this pension scheme?

| | PROBE FOR DETAILS IF POLICE, LOCAL AUTHORITY ETC, PROBE FOR NAME OF FORCE / LOCAL AUTHORITY ETC

| | String 80

| | *IF whether currently receives pension from scheme = no [WpRec = 2]*

| | **WPDS\***

| | Between what dates (approximately) did [^you / he / she] belong to this scheme?

| | ENTER YEAR STARTED

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP3]**

**WPDE\***

(Between what dates (approximately) did [^you / he / she] belong to this scheme?)

ENTER YEAR STOPPED

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK WP4 - WP5]**

**WPRGH**

Have you ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... retained pension rights in this scheme,
- 2 ... transferred rights from this scheme into another scheme,
- 3 or, received a lump sum refund of contributions?
- 4 [SPONTANEOUS: Has stopped receiving pension from this scheme]

END OF FILTER

*IF whether currently receiving a pension from this scheme = yes [WpRec = 1]*

**WPINF\***

Is the amount [^you receive / he receives / she receives] from this pension continually adjusted to take account of inflation (sometimes called index-linked)?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**WPPAY\***

Thinking about the last payment [^you / he / she] received, what period did this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period last payment covered = RESPONSE [WpPay = RESPONSE]*

**WPPYR\***

How much did [^you / he / she] receive?

Range: 0..999997

END OF FILTER

*IF (period last payment covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

[(WpPay = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (WpPyR = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

IF period last payment covered = one week [WpPay = 1]

**WPWB\***

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (25, 75, 150, 600)

[Bracket results are recorded in WpWbl, WpWbu, WpWbe, WpWbr]

ELSE

IF period last payment covered = two weeks [WpPay = 2]

**WPFB\***

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (50, 150, 300, 1200)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpfbf, Wpfbu, Wpfbe, Wpfbr]

ELSE

IF period last payment covered = [four weeks, one month] [WpPay = [4, 5]]

**WPMB\***

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpmbf, Wpmbu, Wpmbe, Wpmbr]

ELSE

IF period last payment covered = [one year / 12 months / 52 weeks, one off / lump sum] [WpPay = [52, 95]]

**WPYB\***

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpybf, Wpybu, Wpybe, Wpybr]

ELSE

**WPOB\***

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (100, 300, 600, 2500)

[Bracket results are recorded in Wpobf, Wpobu, Wpobe, Wpobr]

END OF FILTER

**WPTAX\***

Is this before or after tax?

- 1 Before tax
- 2 After tax
- 3 (SPONTANEOUS: Not liable for tax)

**WPLMPS\***

Many pensions allow you to take a lump sum in addition to your pension income. [^Have you / has [^name]] received a lump sum from [^your / [^name's]] [^pension / most important pension / next most important of these pensions]?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether has received lump sum from pension = yes [WPLmpS = 1]*

**WPLMPA\***

How much was the lump sum?

ENTER POUNDS.

Range: 1..999997

*IF (amount of lump sum received = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WPLmpA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPLMPAUN\***

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WPLml, WPLmu, WPLme, WPLmr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**WPTKEP\***

[^Have you / Has [^name]] taken [^your / [^name's]] [^pension / most important pension / next most important of these pensions] as ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ... Annuity with pension company who originally provided the scheme,
- 2 ... Annuity with a different pension provider,
- 3 or, Income drawdown?

*IF how taken pension = income drawdown [WPTkeP = 3]*

**WPINCDR\***

How much [^have you / has [^name]] withdrawn annually from [^your / [^name's]] pension?

ENTER POUNDS.

Range: 0..99997

*IF (amount withdrawn annually from pension = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(WPIncDr = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPINCDRUN\***

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in WPInl, WPInu, WPIne, WPInr]

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER



INTERVIEWER: Code period at this question, amount at the next.

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period covered = RESPONSE [WpPrivP = RESPONSE]*

**WPPRIVA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount at this question.  
Range: 0..999997

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF certainty about future private pension income = I have a good idea [WpMCrtPP = 2]*

**WPMANPP**

In total what is the maximum income that you expect to receive from all these private pensions (occupational or personal but not state)?

INTERVIEWER: Code period at this question, amount at the next.

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period covered = RESPONSE [WpManPP = RESPONSE]*

**WPMPAH**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount at this question.  
Range: 0..999997

*IF maximum income expect to receive from all private pensions = RESPONSE*

[WpMPAH = RESPONSE]

**WPMPAL**  
 What is the minimum income that you expect to receive from all these private pensions (occupational or personal but not state)?  
 Range: 0..999997

*IF minimum income expect to receive from all private pensions = RESPONSE*  
 [WpMPAL = RESPONSE]

**[CHECK WP6]**

*IF maximum income expect to receive from all private pensions number of ranges to split into = 2 [Wpqn = 2]*

**WPMFQ**  
 SHOW CARD LL  
 What are the chances that you will receive more than £[^amount] every [^week / two weeks / three weeks / four weeks / calendar month / two calendar months / eight times a year / nine times a year / ten times a year / three months/ 3 weeks / six months/26 weeks / year / time]?  
 Please choose a number between 0 and 100, where 0 means that you think there is absolutely no chance this will happen, and 100 means that you think this is absolutely certain to happen.  
 Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF maximum income expect to receive from all private pensions number of ranges to split into = 3 [Wpqn = 3]*

**WPMSQ**  
 SHOW CARD LL  
 What are the chances that you will receive more than £[^amount] every [^week / two weeks / three weeks / four weeks / calendar month / two calendar months / eight times a year / nine times a year / ten times a year / three months/ 3 weeks / six months/26 weeks / year / time]?  
 Please choose a number between 0 and 100, where 0 means that you think there is absolutely no chance this will happen, and 100 means that you think this is absolutely certain to happen.  
 Range: 0..100

**[CHECK WP7]**

END OF FILTER

*IF maximum income expect to receive from all private pensions number of ranges to split into = 4 [Wpqn = 4]*

**WPMTQ**  
 SHOW CARD LL  
 What are the chances that you will receive more than £[^amount] every [^week / two

weeks / three weeks / four weeks / calendar month / two calendar months / eight times a year / nine times a year / ten times a year / three months/ 3 weeks / six months/26 weeks / year / time]?

Please choose a number between 0 and 100, where 0 means that you think there is absolutely no chance this will happen, and 100 means that you think this is absolutely certain to happen.

Range: 0..100

**[CHECK WP8]**

END OF FILTER

**WPMCRTSP**

Thinking about all the state pensions that you expect to receive, including any income that you expect from SERPS in total, how certain are you about how much future pension income you will get at state pension age? READ OUT ...

- 1 Very certain, I know the exact amount
- 2 I have a good idea, could give an approximation
- 3 I have no idea

*IF certainty about future state pension income = very certain [WpMCrtSP = 1]*

**WPSTATP**

How much income do you expect to receive?

INTERVIEWER: Code period at this question, amount at the next.

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period covered = RESPONSE [WpStatP = RESPONSE]*

**WPSTATA**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount at this question.

Range: 0..999997

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF certainty about future state pension income = I have a good idea [WpMCrtSP = 2]*

**WPMANSP**

In total what is the maximum amount that you expect to receive from all these state pensions?

INTERVIEWER: Enter period at this question, amount at the next.

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF maximum amount expects to receive in total = RESPONSE [WpManSP = RESPONSE]*

**WPMSAH**

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..999997

*IF maximum amount of state pension income expects to receive = RESPONSE [WpMSAH = RESPONSE]*

**WPMSAL**

What is the minimum income that you expect to receive from all these state pensions ?

Range: 0..999997

*IF minimum amount of state pension income expects to receive = RESPONSE [WpMSAL = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK WP9]**

*IF maximum amount of state pension income expects to receive number of ranges to split into = 2 [Wpsn = 2]*

**WPMSFQ**

SHOW CARD LL

What are the chances that you will receive more than £[^amount] every [^week / two weeks / three weeks / four weeks / calendar month / two calendar months / eight times a year / nine times a year / ten times a year / three months/ 3 weeks / six months/26 weeks / year / time]?

| | | | | Please choose a number between 0 and 100, where 0 means that you think there is  
 | | | | | absolutely no chance this will happen, and 100 means that you think this is  
 absolutely  
 | | | | | certain to happen.  
 | | | | | Range: 0..100  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | *IF maximum amount of state pension income expects to receive number of ranges to*  
 | | | | | *split into = 3 [Wpsn = 3]*  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | **WPMSSQ**  
 | | | | | SHOW CARD LL  
 | | | | | What are the chances that you will receive more than £[^amount] every [^week / two  
 | | | | | weeks / three weeks / four weeks / calendar month / two calendar months / eight  
 times  
 | | | | | a year / nine times a year / ten times a year / three months/ 3 weeks / six months/26  
 | | | | | weeks / year / time]?  
 | | | | | Please choose a number between 0 and 100, where 0 means that you think there is  
 | | | | | absolutely no chance this will happen, and 100 means that you think this is  
 absolutely  
 | | | | | certain to happen.  
 | | | | | Range: 0..100  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | **[CHECK WP10]**  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | *IF maximum amount of state pension income expects to receive number of ranges to*  
 | | | | | *split into = 4 [Wpsn = 4]*  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | **WPMSTQ**  
 | | | | | SHOW CARD LL  
 | | | | | What are the chances that you will receive more than £[^amount] every [^week / two  
 | | | | | weeks / three weeks / four weeks / calendar month / two calendar months / eight  
 times  
 | | | | | a year / nine times a year / ten times a year / three months/ 3 weeks / six months/26  
 | | | | | weeks / year / time]?  
 | | | | | Please choose a number between 0 and 100, where 0 means that you think there is  
 | | | | | absolutely no chance this will happen, and 100 means that you think this is  
 absolutely  
 | | | | | certain to happen.  
 | | | | | Range: 0..100  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | **[CHECK WP11]**  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | END OF FILTER  
 | | | | |  
 | | | | | END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (((((((((kind of pension scheme = [Private Personal Pension, Group Personal Pension, Stakeholder pension, S226 plan (self-employed personal pension), Retirement Annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)] OR (kind of pension scheme = [employer provided (occupational) pension scheme, Private Personal Pension, Group Personal Pension, Stakeholder pension, S226 plan (self-employed personal pension), Retirement Annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)])) OR ((whether still contributes to pension scheme = yes) AND (kind of pension scheme at Wave 1 = [employer provided (occupational) pension scheme, Private Personal Pension, Group Personal Pension, Stakeholder pension, S226 plan (self-employed personal pension), Retirement Annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)])) OR ((whether still contributes to pension scheme = yes) AND (kind of pension scheme (Wave 1) = [employer provided (occupational) pension scheme, Private Personal Pension, Group Personal Pension, Stakeholder pension, S226 plan (self-employed personal pension), Retirement Annuity pensions (pre 86 PPPs)])) OR (type of pension scheme = [Type A, Type B])) OR (type of pension scheme = [Type A, Type B])) OR (type of pension = [Type A, Type B])) OR ((whether still member of pension scheme = yes) AND (type of pension = [Type A, Type B])) OR (type of pension at Wave 1 = [Type A, Type B])) OR (type of pension scheme at Wave 1 = [Type A, Type B])*  
*[[((((((((WpKP = [2...6]) OR (WpKP = [2...6])) OR ((WpKpS = 1) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) = [1...6])) OR ((WpKpS = 1) AND (WpKP (Wave 1) = [1...6])) OR (WpPdes = [1, 2])) OR ((WpPdes = [1, 2]) OR (WpDPS = [1, 2])) OR (WpSPS = 1)) AND (WpDpSN = [1, 2])) OR (WpDPS (Wave 1) = [1, 2])) OR (WpPdes (Wave 1) = [1, 2])) OR (WpPdes (Wave 1) = [1, 2])*

**WPPDOC\***

INTERVIEWER: CODE WHETHER RESPONDENT CONSULTED DOCUMENTS WHEN ANSWERING THE CURRENT PENSIONS QUESTIONS

- 1 Respondent consulted documents
- 2 Respondent did not consult documents

**WPINTA\***

INTERVIEWER: HOW ACCURATE DO YOU THINK THE ANSWERS GIVEN BY THE RESPONDENT WERE?

- 1 Very accurate
- 2 Fairly accurate
- 3 Not very accurate
- 4 Not at all accurate

END OF FILTER

*IF current employment situation = [retired, semi-retired] [Wpdes = [1, 96]*

*IF age of retirement at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE [WpRAge (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

**WPRAGE\***

You said earlier that [^you were / ^name] was [^retired / semi-retired], at what age did [^you / name] retire?

ENTER AGE HERE

Range: 0..120

**[CHECK WP12 - WP13]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (((((((whether ever contributed to other pension scheme = yes) OR (whether ever contributed to other pension scheme = yes)) OR (whether ever contributed to other pension*

| scheme at Wave 1 = yes)) OR (whether ever contributed to other pension scheme at Wave 1  
 =  
 | yes)) OR (whether currently receives pension from employment pension = RESPONSE)) OR  
 | (whether currently receives pension from employment pension = RESPONSE)) OR (whether  
 | currently receives pension from employment pension = RESPONSE)) AND whether took early  
 | retirement at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)  
 | [(((((((WpPrPe = 1) OR (WpPePr = 1)) OR (WpPrPe (Wave 1) = 1)) OR ((WpPePr (Wave 1) =  
 | yes)) OR (WpPstR = RESPONSE)) OR (WpPstR = RESPONSE)) OR (WpPstR = RESPONSE))  
 | AND WpEret (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)]

| **WPERET\***

| Did [^you / he / she] take early retirement, that is did [^you / ^name]] retire before the  
 | normal retirement age in [^your / his / her] pension scheme?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| IF whether took early retirement = yes [WpERet = 1]

| **WPERP\***

| When [^you / ^name]] first retired, did [^you / he / she] retire on a ...READ OUT...

- | 1 ... full pension,
- | 2 reduced pension,
- | 3 or, no pension?

| **WPREAS\***

| SHOW CARD MM

| What were [^your / ^name's]] reasons for taking early retirement?

| CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- | 01 Own ill health
- | 02 Ill health of a relative / friend
- | 03 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice
- | 04 Offered reasonable financial terms to retire early or take voluntary redundancy
- | 05 Could not find another job
- | 06 To spend more time with partner / family
- | 07 To enjoy life while still young and fit enough
- | 08 Fed up with job and wanted a change
- | 09 To retire at the same time as husband / wife / partner
- | 10 To retire at a different time to husband / wife / partner
- | 11 To give the young generation a chance
- | 95 Other (specify)
- | 96 None of these
- | 97 SPONTANEOUS: Does not consider has retired early

| **[Multiple responses to WPREAS are recorded in variables WPREA01 to WPREA06]  
 [code maximum 13 out of 14 possible responses]**

| IF (reasons for taking early retirement = other) [WpReas= 95]

| **WPOREA\*@**

| INTERVIEWER WRITE IN OTHER REASON

| String 60

| **[Open responses to Wporea are coded and merged with the multiple responses to  
 Wpreas (recorded in Wprea01 to Wprea06). These merged responses are  
 recorded in variables Wpream1 to Wpream6]**

| END OF FILTER

| **[CHECK WP14 - WP15]**

*IF more than one reasons for taking early retirement [WpReas.CARDINAL > 1]*

**WPMREA\***

SHOW CARD MM

What was [^your / [^name's]] main reason for taking early retirement?

CODE ONE ONLY

- 01 Own ill health
- 02 Ill health of a relative / friend
- 03 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice
- 04 Offered reasonable financial terms to retire early or take voluntary redundancy
- 05 Could not find another job
- 06 To spend more time with partner / family
- 07 To enjoy life while still young and fit enough
- 08 Fed up with job and wanted a change
- 09 To retire at the same time as husband / wife / partner
- 10 To retire at a different time to husband / wife / partner
- 11 To give the young generation a chance
- 95 Other (specify)
- 96 None of these

**[CHECK WP16]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF ((whether took early retirement = no) OR (reasons for taking early retirement = SPONTANEOUS: does not consider has retired early)) OR ((whether took early retirement <> RESPONSE) AND (whether took early retirement at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE)) AND (reasons for retiring at Wave 1 <> RESPONSE) [((WpERet = 2) OR (WpReas = 97)) OR ((WpERet <> RESPONSE) AND (WpEret (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)) AND (WpRRe (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)]*

**WPRRE\***

SHOW CARD NN

What were [^your / [^name's]] reasons for retiring?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- 01 Reached retirement age
- 02 Own ill health
- 03 Ill health of a relative / friend
- 04 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice
- 05 Could not find another job
- 06 To spend more time with partner / family
- 07 To enjoy life while still young and fit enough
- 08 Fed up with job and wanted a change
- 09 To retire at the same time as husband / wife / partner
- 10 To retire at a different time to husband / wife / partner
- 11 To give the young generation a chance
- 95 Other (specify)
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to WPRRE are recorded in variables WPRRE01 to WPRRE05]  
[code maximum 12 out of 13 possible responses]**

| | IF (reasons for retiring = other) [WpRRe = 95]  
| |  
| | **WPORRE\*@**  
| | INTERVIEWER WRITE IN OTHER REASON  
| | String 60  
| | **[Open responses to Wporre are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Wprre (recorded in Wprre01 to Wprre05). These merged responses are recorded in variables Wprrem1 to Wprrem5]**  
| | END OF FILTER

| | **[CHECK WP17 - WP18]**

| | IF more than one reasons for retiring [WpRRe.CARDINAL > 1]

| | **WPMRRE\***  
| | SHOW CARD NN  
| | What was [^your / ^name's]] main reason for retiring?  
| | CODE ONE ONLY  
| | 01 Reached retirement age  
| | 02 Own ill health  
| | 03 Ill health of a relative / friend  
| | 04 Made redundant / dismissed / had no choice  
| | 05 Could not find another job  
| | 06 To spend more time with partner / family  
| | 07 To enjoy life while still young and fit enough  
| | 08 Fed up with job and wanted a change  
| | 09 To retire at the same time as husband / wife / partner  
| | 10 To retire at a different time to husband / wife / partner  
| | 11 To give the young generation a chance  
| | 95 Other (specify)  
| | 96 None of these

| | **[CHECK WP19]**

| | END OF FILTER

| | IF (reasons for retiring = reached retirement age) AND NOT (reasons for retiring = made  
| | redundant / dismissed / had no choice ) [(WpRRe = 1) AND NOT (WpRRe = 4)]

| | **WPWKR\***  
| | Did [^you / ^name]] have the opportunity to work past retirement age?  
| | 1 Yes  
| | 2 No

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

| | END OF FILTER

**WPPHI\***

[^Are you / Is [^name]] covered by private health insurance, whether in [^your / his / her] own name or through another family member?

INTERVIEWER: Don't include dental or friendly plans. Include cover through ex-family members in code 2.

1 Yes, in own name

- 2 Yes, through another family member
- 3 No, not insured

*IF whether covered by private Health Insurance = yes, in own name [WpPHI = 1]*

*IF ((derived working status: employee or self-employed = self employed) AND (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work])) OR NOT (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work])*  
*[[ (WpEs = 2) AND (WPActW = [1, 2])] OR NOT (WPActW = [1, 2])]*

**WPHOWU\***

How is this Health Insurance paid for?

- 1 Paid for by self
- 2 Paid for by someone else

*IF how Health Insurance is paid = paid for by someone else [WpHowU = 2]*

**WPHLWHO\* @**

INTERVIEWER: Write in who pays for the insurance.  
 String 40

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (derived working status: employee or self-employed = employee) AND (derived - activity = [in paid work, temporarily away from paid work])*  
*[(WpEs = 1) AND WPActW = [1, 2]]*

**WPHOWE\***

How is this Health Insurance paid for?

- 1 Pays for all or part of it directly
- 2 Employer deducts it from wages
- 3 Employer pays it fully as a benefit

END OF FILTER

*IF (method of payment for Health Insurance = pays for all or part of it directly) OR (how Health Insurance is paid = paid for by self) [(WpHowE = 1) OR (WpHowU = 1)]*

**WPMHI\***

How much [^do you / does [^name]] pay per month for this insurance? Please include the contribution for all family members covered by insurance in [^your / his / her] name.  
 INTERVIEWER: Write in amount.  
 Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK WP20]**

*IF (monthly amount paid for insurance = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
*[(WpMHI = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

**WPMHIB\* @**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount], or what?  
 BRACKETS (500, 1000, 2000, 5000)

**[Bracket results are recorded in wpmhil, wpmhiu, wpmhie, wpmhir]**

| | END OF FILTER  
| |  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

**WPX\*@**

INTERVIEWER: The Work and Pensions section is finished.  
Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.  
1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

## INCOME AND ASSETS MODULE (IA)

Please be aware that this module still needs to be improved (e.g. making the routing clearer) and checked for any inaccuracies.

### IAINTRO\*

We are interested in how people are managing financially these days. Some people's income varies over time and so in order to clearly understand how people are managing financially, we need to consider their situation in the last year rather than just over the last month.

[^BLANK / Therefore, in [^your / his / her] situation it is important that we understand the contribution that [^partner's name] made to [^your / his / her] household finances during the time that he / she was alive. We realise that this may be upsetting for [^you / him / her] but we would very much appreciate any help that you can provide. / Even though [^partner's name] is not living here at the moment, we are still interested in any income that [^he / she] may receive or income that is paid to [^you / [^name]] on their behalf. Please include any income that is paid directly to social services or to the home they are staying in.]

The next questions are about types of income [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] may [^receive / have received]. We may have asked [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] some of the details earlier but it is important for us to check that we understand [^your / [^name's]] situation correctly.

INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter> [^to continue / unless respondent spontaneously refuses to answer questions about their deceased partner in which case press <2> and <enter>].

- 1 Continue
- 2 Refuse

### IAWORK\*

Did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] do any work for pay in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

ASK OR CODE.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether did paid work in last year = yes [IAWork = 1]*

### IASINC\*

About how much wage and salary income did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner] receive in the last year before taxes and other deductions?  
Range: 0..999997

### [CHECK IA1]

*IF (wage and salary income = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*

*[IaSinc = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]]*

### IASINCB\*@

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (10000, 20000, 35000, 100000)

*// [Bracket results are recorded in iasincl, iasincu, iasince, iasincr]*

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

### IASPEN\*

Did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive any

money from a state pension in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

INTERVIEWER: Include basic state pension and SERPS.

1 Yes

2 No

*IF ((whether received state pension in last year = yes) AND (whether partner in household too = yes)) AND NOT (continued with module IA = refused)*

*[((IaSPen = 1) AND (IAask = 1)) AND NOT (IAIntro = 2)]*

**IASPW\***

Which of [^you / them] received the state pension in the last year?

1 Respondent only

2 Spouse / partner only

3 Both

**[CHECK IA2 - IA3]**

END OF FILTER

*IF ((whether received state pension in last year = yes) AND (whether partner in household too <> yes)) OR (who received state pension = [respondent, both])*

*[((IaSPen = 1) AND (IAask <> 1)) OR (IaSPW = [1, 3])]*

**IASPA\***

How much [^do you / does [^name]] receive from the state pension?

INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.

01 One week

02 Two weeks

03 Three weeks

04 Four weeks

05 Calendar month

07 Two Calendar months

08 Eight times a year

09 Nine times a year

10 Ten times a year

13 Three months / 13 weeks

26 Six months / 26 weeks

52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks

90 Less than one week

95 One off / lump sum

96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period covered by state pension = RESPONSE [IaSPa = RESPONSE]*

**IAPAM\***

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

IF the amount is not known because it is paid with benefits, enter the total amount received here.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK IA4]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (period covered by state pension = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (state pension amount = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

```

| [(lasPa = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (laPAM = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|
| IF period covered by state pension = one week [lasPa = 1]
|
| IASPWB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
|
| /// [Bracket results are recorded in iapamwl, iapamwu, iapamwe, iapamwr]
|
| ELSE
|
| IF period covered by state pension = two weeks [lasPa = 2]
|
| IASPFB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
|
| //// [Bracket results are recorded in iapamfl, iapamfu, iapamfe, iapamfr]
|
| ELSE
|
| IF period covered by state pension = [four weeks, one month] [lasPa = [4, 5]]
|
| IASPMB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|
| ///// [Bracket results are recorded in iapamml, iapammu, iapamme, iapammr]
|
| ELSE
|
| IF period covered by state pension = [one year, lump sum] [lasPa = [52, 95]]
|
| IASPYB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (2500, 4000, 5000, 7500)
|
| ///// [Bracket results are recorded in iapamyl, iapamyu, iapamye, iapamyr]
|
| ELSE
|
| IASPOB*@
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|
| ///// [Bracket results are recorded in iapamol, iapamou, iapamoe, iapamor]
|
| END OF FILTER
|

```

| END OF FILTER

| IF *whether received state pension at wave 1 <> yes* [IAW1SP <> 1]

| **IAPLY\***

| Did [^you / ^name] start receiving this pension in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| IF *whether started receiving pension in last year = yes* [IaPly = 1]

| **IAPLYW\***

| Which month did [^you / ^name] start receiving it?

- | 01 January
- | 02 February
- | 03 March
- | 04 April
- | 05 May
- | 06 June
- | 07 July
- | 08 August
- | 09 September
- | 10 October
- | 11 November
- | 12 December

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| IF *who received state pension = [spouse / partner, both]* [IaSPW = [2, 3]]

| **IASPP\***

| How much [^does / did] [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner] receive from the state pension?

| INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.

- | 01 One week
- | 02 Two weeks
- | 03 Three weeks
- | 04 Four weeks
- | 05 Calendar month
- | 07 Two Calendar months
- | 08 Eight times a year
- | 09 Nine times a year
- | 10 Ten times a year
- | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- | 90 Less than one week
- | 95 One off / lump sum
- | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

| IF *period covered by partner's state pension = RESPONSE* [IaSPp = RESPONSE]

```

| |
| | IAPPAM*
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.
| | IF the amount is not known because it is paid with benefits, enter the total amount received
| | here.
| | Range: 0..99997
| |
| | [CHECK IA5]
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF (period covered by partner's state pension = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (state
| | pension amount = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | [(IaSPp = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (IaPPAm = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| |
| | IF period covered by partner's state pension = one week [IaSPp = 1]
| |
| | IAPPWB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
| |
| | ||| [Bracket results are recorded in iappawl, iappawu, iappawe, iappawr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF period covered by partner's state pension = two weeks [IaSPp = 2]
| |
| | IAPPFB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
| |
| | |||| [Bracket results are recorded in iappafl, iappafu, iappafe, iappafr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF period covered by partner's state pension = [four weeks, one month] [IaSPp = [4, 5]]
| |
| | IAPPMB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| |
| | ||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iappaml, iappamu, iappame, iappamr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF period covered by partner's state pension = [one year, lump sum] [IaSPp = [52, 95]]
| |
| | IAPPYB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (2500, 4000, 5000, 7500)
| |
| | |||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iappayl, iappayu, iappaye, iappayr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IAPPOB*@

```

```

||||| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|||||
||||| ////// [Bracket results are recorded in iappaol, iappaou, iappaoe, iappaor]
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
| IF whether partner received state pension at wave 1 <> yes [IAW1SPP <> 1]
|
| IAPLYP*
| Did [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner] start receiving this pension in the last year
| (that is since [^date a year ago])?
| 1 Yes
| 2 No
|
| IF whether partner started receiving in last year = yes [IaPlyp = 1]
|
| IAPLW*
| Which month did [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner] start receiving it?
| 01 January
| 02 February
| 03 March
| 04 April
| 05 May
| 06 June
| 07 July
| 08 August
| 09 September
| 10 October
| 11 November
| 12 December
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| IAPPEN*
| Did [^you / ^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive any
| money from a personal or employer pension in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?
| 1 Yes
| 2 No
|
| IF whether received personal or employer pension in last year = yes [IaPPen = 1]
|
| IAPPEI*
| About how much income did [^you / ^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband /

```

| wife / partner]] receive in the last year from personal or employer pensions before taxes and  
| other deductions?  
| INTERVIEWER: Do not include any lump sums received.  
| Range: 0..999997

|  
| END OF FILTER

| **[CHECK IA6]**

| IF (amount received personal or employer pension = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(IaPPEI = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IAPPEIB\* @**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 8000, 30000)

| / **[Bracket results are recorded in iappeil, iappeiu, iappeie, iappeir]**

|  
| END OF FILTER

| **IAANIN\***

Apart from any pension annuity income and anything else you have already told me about, did  
[^you / ^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive any annuity  
income in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

Annuity income is when you make a lump sum payment to a financial institution and in return  
they give you a regular income for the rest of your life.

1 Yes

2 No

| IF ((whether any other annuity income in last year = yes) AND (whether partner in household  
too = yes)) AND NOT (continued with module IA = refused)  
| [(IaAnIn = 1) AND (IAask = 1)) AND NOT (IAIntro = 2)]

| **IAAILY\***

| Which of [^you / them] received annuity income in the last year?

| 1 Respondent only

| 2 Spouse / partner only

| 3 Both

|  
| END OF FILTER

| IF (who received annuity income in last year = [respondent, both]) OR (whether any other  
annuity income in last year = yes) AND (whether partner in household too <> yes)  
| [(IaAlly = [1, 3]) OR ((IaAnIn = 1) AND (IAask <> 1))]

| **IAAIM\***

| How much annuity income did [^you / ^name]] receive in the last year after tax?

| Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA7]**

| IF (annuity income amount in last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(IaAIM = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IAAIMB\* @**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

|| BRACKETS (400, 1000, 2000, 15000)

|| **[Bracket results are recorded in iaaiml, iaaimu, iaaime, iaaimr]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

*IF who received annuity income in last year = [spouse / partner, both] [laAlly = [2, 3]]*

| **IAAIP\***

| How much annuity income did [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner] receive in the last year after tax?

| Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA8]**

| *IF (annuity income partner received in last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| *[(laAlp = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| **IAAIPB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (400, 1000, 2000, 15000)

|| **[Bracket results are recorded in iaaipl, iaaipu, iaaipe, iaaipr]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| **IAHDB\***

| SHOW CARD OO

| Did [^you / ^name] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive any of these health or disability benefits in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

| INTERVIEWER: Include any currently receiving.

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

*IF whether received health or disability benefits in last year = yes [lahdb = 1]*

| **IAHDR\***

| SHOW CARD OO

| Which of these health or disability benefits [^have you / has [^name]] received in the last year?

| INTERVIEWER: Include any currently receiving.

| PROBE: What others?

| CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

| IF respondent asks about Disabled Persons Tax Credit or Disability Working Allowance, explain that this benefit was abolished in April 2003 and became part of the Working Tax Credit.

| 01 Incapacity Benefit previously Invalidity Benefit

| 02 Severe Disablement Allowance SDA

| 03 Statutory sick pay SSP

| 04 Attendance Allowance

| 05 Disability Living Allowance

| 06 Industrial Injuries Disablement Benefit

| 07 War Disablement Pension or War Widow's Pension

08 Carer's Allowance  
95 Some other benefit for people with disabilities (SPECIFY)  
96 None of these

***[Multiple responses to IAHDR are recorded in variables IAHDR1 to IAHDR5]  
[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]***

***[CHECK IA9]***

IF (type of health or disability benefit = other) [lahdR = 95]

**IAHDRO\*@**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the name of the other benefit.  
String 40

***[Open responses to lahdro are coded and merged with the multiple responses to lahdr  
(recorded in lahdr1 to lahdr5). These merged responses are recorded in variables  
lahdrm1 to lahdrm5]***

END OF FILTER

***[CHECK IA10]***

IF (type of health or disability benefit = RESPONSE) AND NOT (type of health or disability  
benefit = none) [(lahdR = RESPONSE) AND NOT (lahdR = 96)]

**IAHDN\***

SHOW CARD OO

Which of these health or disability benefits [^are you / is [^name]] receiving at the moment?

PROBE: What others?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

IF respondent asks about Disabled Persons Tax Credit or Disability Working Allowance,  
explain that this benefit was abolished in April 2003 and became part of the Working Tax  
Credit.

01 Incapacity Benefit previously Invalidity Benefit

02 Severe Disablement Allowance SDA

03 Statutory sick pay SSP

04 Attendance Allowance

05 Disability Living Allowance

06 Industrial Injuries Disablement Benefit

07 War Disablement Pension or War Widow's Pension

08 Carer's Allowance

95 Some other benefit for people with disabilities (SPECIFY)

96 None of these

***[Multiple responses to IAHDN are recorded in variables IAHDN1 to IAHDN5]  
[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]***

***[CHECK IA11]***

LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING

***[CHECK IA12]***

END OF FILTER

```

| END OF FILTER
|
| IF (health or disability benefits receiving at the moment = RESPONSE) AND NOT (health or
| disability benefits receiving at the moment = none) [(lahdN = RESPONSE) AND NOT (lahdN
| =96)]
|
| LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING
|
|   IF health or disability benefits receiving at the moment = b95loop [lahdN = b95loop]
|
|     IAP*
|     How much did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]
|     [^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) /
|     Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [^BLANK / last
|     time]?
|     INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
|     01 One week
|     02 Two weeks
|     03 Three weeks
|     04 Four weeks
|     05 Calendar month
|     07 Two Calendar months
|     08 Eight times a year
|     09 Nine times a year
|     10 Ten times a year
|     13 Three months / 13 weeks
|     26 Six months / 26 weeks
|     52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
|     90 Less than one week
|     95 One off / lump sum
|     96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
|
|     IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [laP = RESPONSE]
|
|       IAA*
|       INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.
|       [^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
|       amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
|       Range: 0..9997
|
|     END OF FILTER
|
|     IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
|     [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
|     [(laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|
|     IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]
|
|       IAWB*
|       Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|       BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
|
|     [Bracket results are recorded in lawBI, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]
|
|     ELSE
|

```

```

||||| IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]
|||||
||||| IAFB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
|||||
||||| /////// [Bracket results are recorded in lafBI, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]
|||||
||||| IAMB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|||||
||||| /////// [Bracket results are recorded in lamBI, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
|||||
||||| IAYB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
|||||
||||| /////// [Bracket results are recorded in layBI, layBu, layBe, layBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IAOB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|||||
||||| /////// [Bracket results are recorded in laoBI, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [laT = [3, 5, 7]]
|||||
||||| IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October
||||| 2004)) [(laN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section
||||| of the interview >= 1 October 2004))

```

```

| | | | | [(IaN <> 12) OR ((IaN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALY*
| | | | | Did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving this
| | | | | benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALM*
| | | | | Which month did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start
| | | | | receiving it?
| | | | | 01 January
| | | | | 02 February
| | | | | 03 March
| | | | | 04 April
| | | | | 05 May
| | | | | 06 June
| | | | | 07 July
| | | | | 08 August
| | | | | 09 September
| | | | | 10 October
| | | | | 11 November
| | | | | 12 December
| | | | |
| | | | | IF IaLM = Month of interview date [IaLM.ORD = IntDat.MONTH]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAWHMTH*
| | | | | Is that [^month started receiving benefit] this year or last year?
| | | | | 1 This year
| | | | | 2 Last year
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF NOT (benefit block type = [1, 3, 5, 7]) [NOT (IaT = [1, 3, 5, 7])]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAB*
| | | | | For how many weeks or months in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago], did
| | | | | [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive [^Incapacity
| | | | | Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) / Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory
| | | | | sick pay (SSP) etc.]?
| | | | | 1 Answer given in weeks
| | | | | 2 Answer given in months
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = weeks [IaB = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABW*

```

```

| | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of weeks.
| | | | Range: 0..52
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF answer in weeks or months = months [laB = 2]
| | | |
| | | | IABM*
| | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months.
| | | | Range: 1..12
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF ((type of health or disability benefit = RESPONSE) AND (health or disability benefit
| | | | received at the moment = RESPONSE)) AND NOT (type of health or disability benefit = none)
| | | | [((lahdR = RESPONSE) AND (lahdN = RESPONSE)) AND NOT (lahdR = 96)]
| | | |
| | | | LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING
| | | |
| | | | IF (type of health or disability benefit = b95loop) AND NOT (health or disability benefit
| | | | received at the moment = b95loop) [(lahdR = b95loop) AND NOT (lahdN = b95loop)]
| | | |
| | | | IAP*
| | | | How much did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's] [^husband / wife / partner]
| | | | [^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) /
| | | | Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [BLANK / ^last
| | | | time] ?
| | | | INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
| | | | 01 One week
| | | | 02 Two weeks
| | | | 03 Three weeks
| | | | 04 Four weeks
| | | | 05 Calendar month
| | | | 07 Two Calendar months
| | | | 08 Eight times a year
| | | | 09 Nine times a year
| | | | 10 Ten times a year
| | | | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
| | | | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
| | | | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
| | | | 90 Less than one week
| | | | 95 One off / lump sum
| | | | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
| | | |
| | | | IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [laP = RESPONSE]
| | | |
| | | | IAA*
| | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.

```

```

||||| [^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
||||| amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
||||| Range: 0..9997
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
||||| [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
||||| [(laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]
|||||
||||| IAWB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
|||||
||||| /////// [Bracket results are recorded in lawBI, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]
|||||
||||| IAFB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
|||||
||||| /////// [Bracket results are recorded in lafBI, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]
|||||
||||| IAMB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|||||
||||| /////// [Bracket results are recorded in lamBI, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
|||||
||||| IAYB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
|||||
||||| //////// [Bracket results are recorded in layBI, layBu, layBe, layBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IAOB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
||||| //////// [Bracket results are recorded in laoBI, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER

```

```

| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [IaT = [3, 5, 7]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October
| | | | | 2004) [(IaN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section
| | | | | of the interview >= 1 October 2004))
| | | | | [(IaN <> 12) OR ((IaN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALY*
| | | | | Did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's] [^husband / wife / partner] start receiving this
| | | | | benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALM*
| | | | | Which month did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's] [^husband / wife / partner] start
| | | | | receiving it?
| | | | | 01 January
| | | | | 02 February
| | | | | 03 March
| | | | | 04 April
| | | | | 05 May
| | | | | 06 June
| | | | | 07 July
| | | | | 08 August
| | | | | 09 September
| | | | | 10 October
| | | | | 11 November
| | | | | 12 December
| | | | |
| | | | | IaLM =Month of interview date [IaLM.ORD = IntDat.MONTH]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAWHMTH*
| | | | | Is that [^month started receiving benefit] this year or last year?
| | | | | 1 This year
| | | | | 2 Last year
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER

```

```

| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF NOT (benefit block type = [1, 3, 5, 7]) [NOT (laT = [1, 3, 5, 7])]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAB*
| | | | | For how many weeks or months in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago], did
| | | | | [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive [^Incapacity
| | | | | Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) / Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory
| | | | | sick pay (SSP) etc.]?
| | | | | 1 Answer given in weeks
| | | | | 2 Answer given in months
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = weeks [laB = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABW*
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of weeks.
| | | | | Range: 0..52
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = months [laB = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABM*
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months.
| | | | | Range: 1..12
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (whether partner in household too= yes) AND (continued with module IA = continued)
| | | | | [(IAask = 1) AND (IAIntro = 1)]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAHDP*
| | | | | SHOW CARD OO
| | | | | Which, if any, of these health or disability benefits [^has / did] [^your / his / her] [^husband /
| | | | | wife / partner] [^received / receive] in the last year?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Include any currently receiving.
| | | | | PROBE: What others?
| | | | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY
| | | | | IF respondent asks about Disabled Persons Tax Credit or Disability Working Allowance,
| | | | | explain that this benefit was abolished in April 2003 and became part of the Working Tax
| | | | | Credit.
| | | | | 01 Incapacity Benefit previously Invalidation Benefit
| | | | | 02 Severe Disablement Allowance SDA
| | | | | 03 Statutory sick pay SSP
| | | | | 04 Attendance Allowance

```

05 Disability Living Allowance  
06 Industrial Injuries Disablement Benefit  
07 War Disablement Pension or War Widow's Pension  
08 Carer's Allowance  
95 Some other benefit for people with disabilities (SPECIFY)  
96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to IAHDP are recorded in variables IAHDP1 to IAHDP9]  
[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]**

**[CHECK IA13]**

IF (partner's health or disability benefits = other) [lahdp =]

**IAHDPO\***

INTERVIEWER: ENTER THE NAME OF OTHER BENEFIT

String 40

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK IA14]**

IF (partner's health or disability benefits = RESPONSE) AND NOT (partner's health or disability benefits = none) [(lahdp = RESPONSE) AND NOT (lahdp = 96)]

IF (whether partner died less than 11 months ago = yes) AND (continued with module IA = continued) [(IDeadP12M = 1) AND (IAIntro = 1)]

ELSE

**[CHECK IA15]**

LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING

**[CHECK IA16]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF ((partner's health or disability benefits = RESPONSE) AND (benefits partner is receiving at the moment = RESPONSE)) AND NOT (partner's health or disability benefits = none) [(lahdp = RESPONSE) AND (lahdPn = RESPONSE) AND NOT (lahdp= 96)]

LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING

IF (benefits partner is receiving at the moment = b95loop) [(lahdPn = b95loop)]

**IAP\***

How much did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's] [^husband / wife / partner]

[^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidity Benefit) /

Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [^BLANK / last time]?

INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.

```

||||| 01 One week
||||| 02 Two weeks
||||| 03 Three weeks
||||| 04 Four weeks
||||| 05 Calendar month
||||| 07 Two Calendar months
||||| 08 Eight times a year
||||| 09 Nine times a year
||||| 10 Ten times a year
||||| 13 Three months / 13 weeks
||||| 26 Six months / 26 weeks
||||| 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
||||| 90 Less than one week
||||| 95 One off / lump sum
||||| 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
||||| IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [laP = RESPONSE]
|||||
||||| IAA*
||||| INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.
||||| [^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
||||| amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
||||| Range: 0..9997
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
||||| [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
||||| [(laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]
|||||
||||| IAWB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
||||| |||||| [Bracket results are recorded in lawBI, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]
|||||
||||| IAFB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
||||| |||||| [Bracket results are recorded in lafBI, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]
|||||
||||| IAMB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|||||
||||| |||||| [Bracket results are recorded in lamBI, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
|||||
|||||

```

```

||||| ELSE
||||| IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
|||||   IAYB*
|||||   Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||||   BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
|||||   /////// [Bracket results are recorded in layBI, layBu, layBe, layBr]
|||||   ELSE
|||||   IAOB*
|||||   Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||||   BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
|||||   /////// [Bracket results are recorded in laoBI, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
|||||   END OF FILTER
|||||   END OF FILTER
|||||   END OF FILTER
|||||   END OF FILTER
||||| IF benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [laT = [3, 5, 7]]
||||| IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October 2004) [(laN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
||||| ELSE
||||| IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview >= 1 October 2004)) [(laN <> 12) OR ((laN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
|||||   IALY*
|||||   Did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving this benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
|||||   1 Yes
|||||   2 No
|||||   END OF FILTER
|||||   END OF FILTER
||||| IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
|||||   IALM*
|||||   Which month did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving it?
|||||   01 January
|||||   02 February
|||||   03 March
|||||   04 April

```

```

| | | | | 05 May
| | | | | 06 June
| | | | | 07 July
| | | | | 08 August
| | | | | 09 September
| | | | | 10 October
| | | | | 11 November
| | | | | 12 December
| | | | |
| | | | | IF laLM = Month of interview date [laLM.ORD = IntDat.MONTH]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAWHMTH*
| | | | | Is that [^month started receiving benefit] this year or last year?
| | | | | 1 This year
| | | | | 2 Last year
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF NOT (benefit block type = [1, 3, 5, 7]) [NOT (laT = [1, 3, 5, 7])]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAB*
| | | | | For how many weeks or months in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago], did
| | | | | [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive [^Incapacity
| | | | | Benefit (previously Invalidity Benefit) / Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) /
| | | | | Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.]?
| | | | | 1 Answer given in weeks
| | | | | 2 Answer given in months
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = weeks [laB = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABW*
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of weeks.
| | | | | Range: 0..52
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = months [laB = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABM*
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months.
| | | | | Range: 1..12
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER

```

```

| | IF (benefits partner is receiving at the moment = RESPONSE) AND (period amount covers
| | = RESPONSE) [(lahdPn = RESPONSE) AND (lahdp = RESPONSE)]
| |
| | LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING
| |
| | IF NOT (benefits partner is receiving at the moment = b95loop) AND (partner's health or
| | disability benefits= b95loop) [NOT (lahdPn = b95loop) AND (lahdp = b95loop)]
| |
| | IAP*
| | How much did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]
| | [^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidity Benefit) /
| | Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [^BLANK / last
| | time]?
| | INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
| | 01 One week
| | 02 Two weeks
| | 03 Three weeks
| | 04 Four weeks
| | 05 Calendar month
| | 07 Two Calendar months
| | 08 Eight times a year
| | 09 Nine times a year
| | 10 Ten times a year
| | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
| | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
| | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
| | 90 Less than one week
| | 95 One off / lump sum
| | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
| |
| | IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [laP = RESPONSE]
| |
| | IAA*
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.
| | [^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
| | amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
| | Range: 0..9997
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
| | [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | [(laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| |
| | IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]
| |
| | IAWB*
| | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
| | [Bracket results are recorded in lawBl, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]
| |
| |

```

```

| | | | | IAFB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lafBl, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAMB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lamBl, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAYB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in layBl, layBu, layBe, layBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IAOB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in laoBl, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF Benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [laT = 3, 5, 7]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October 2004) [(laN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview >= 1 October 2004)) [(laN <> 12) OR ((laN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALY*
| | | | | Did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving
| | | | | this benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No

```

```

||| |
||| | END OF FILTER
||| |
||| | END OF FILTER
||| |
||| | IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
||| |
||| | IALM*
||| | Which month did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]
||| | start receiving it?
||| | 01 January
||| | 02 February
||| | 03 March
||| | 04 April
||| | 05 May
||| | 06 June
||| | 07 July
||| | 08 August
||| | 09 September
||| | 10 October
||| | 11 November
||| | 12 December
||| |
||| | IF laLM = Month of interview date [laLM.ORD = IntDat.MONTH]
||| |
||| | IAWHMTH*
||| | Is that [^month started receiving benefit] this year or last year?
||| | 1 This year
||| | 2 Last year
||| |
||| | END OF FILTER
||| |
||| | END OF FILTER
||| |
||| | END OF FILTER
||| |
||| | IF NOT (benefit block type = [1, 3, 5, 7]) [NOT (laT = [1, 3, 5, 7])]
||| |
||| | IAB*
||| | For how many weeks or months in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago], did
||| | [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive [^Incapacity
||| | Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) / Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) /
||| | Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.]?
||| | 1 Answer given in weeks
||| | 2 Answer given in months
||| |
||| | IF answer in weeks or months = weeks [laB = 1]
||| |
||| | IABW*
||| | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of weeks.
||| | Range: 0..52
||| |
||| | END OF FILTER
||| |
||| | IF answer in weeks or months = months [laB = 2]
||| |

```



```

|| year = pension credit) [(laBeR = 1) AND NOT (laBeR = 2)]
||
|| XIABER*
|| On 1st October 2003 the Minimum Income Guarantee (Income Support for the over 60's)
|| was replaced by a new, but similar benefit called the Pension Credit. Can I just check,
|| [^have you ever received / has [^name] ever received / did [^your / his / her] [^husband /
|| wife / partner] ever receive] the Pension Credit?
|| INTERVIEWER: If the respondent answers yes, please go back and press <Ins> to add
|| code 2 (for Pension Credit) at the previous question.
|| 1 Yes
|| 2 No
||
|| [CHECK IA18]
||
|| ELSE
||
|| IF NOT (benefits received in last year = income support) AND (benefits received in last year
|| = pension credit) [NOT (laBeR = 1) AND (laBeR = 2)]
||
|| YIABER*
|| On 1st October 2003 the Pension Credit replaced the Minimum Income Guarantee
|| (Income Support for the over 60's). Can I just check, [^were you / was [^name] / was
|| [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receiving the Minimum Income Guarantee at
|| any time in the last year?
|| INTERVIEWER: If the respondent answers yes, please go back and press <Ins> to add
|| code 1 (for MIG) at the previous question.
|| 1 Yes
|| 2 No
||
|| [CHECK IA19]
||
|| ELSE
||
|| IF (benefits received in last year = income support) AND (benefits received in last year =
|| pension credit) [(laBeR = 1) AND (laBeR = 2)]
||
|| ZIABER*
|| On 1st October 2003, Minimum Income Guarantee (or Income Support for the over 60's)
|| was replaced by a new, but similar benefit called the Pension Credit. The Pension Credit
|| is more generous than the Minimum Income Guarantee for some people so we are
|| interested in the amount that [^you / [^name]] received under the new system and the old
|| system so we will ask you questions about both benefits.
|| INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter>to continue.
|| Range: 1..1
||
|| END OF FILTER
||
|| [CHECK IA20]
||
|| IF (benefits received in last year = other) [laBeR = 95]

```

**IABERO\***

INTERVIEWER: Enter the name of other benefit.

String 40

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK IA21]**

IF (benefits received in last year = RESPONSE) AND NOT (benefits received in last year = none) [(IaBeR = RESPONSE) AND NOT (IaBeR = 96)]

**IABEN\***

SHOW CARD PP

Which of these benefits [^are you / is [^name]] receiving at the moment?

PROBE: What others? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

[^BLANK / If respondent is aged 60 or over and says they are currently receiving Income Support or Minimum Income guarantee (MIG) explain that this benefit was replaced in October 2003 with Pension Credit.]

01 Income Support

02 Pension Credit (income support for the over 60's, replaced Minimum Income Guarantee in October 2003)

03 Working Tax Credit (formerly part of Working Families Tax Credit)

04 Job-seeker's Allowance formerly Unemployment Benefit

05 Guardian's Allowance

06 Widow's pension / Widowed mother's allowance / Widowed Parent's allowance / Bereavement allowance

07 Child Benefit

08 Child Tax Credit

95 Some other State Benefit (SPECIFY)

96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to IABEN are recorded in variables IABEN1 to IABEN9]**

**[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]**

**[CHECK IA22 - IA23]**

LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING

**[CHECK IA24]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF (benefits received at the moment = RESPONSE) AND NOT (benefits received at the moment = none) [(IaBeN = RESPONSE) AND NOT (IaBeN = 96)]

LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING

IF (benefits received at the moment = b95loop) [IaBeN = b95loop]

**IAP\***

How much did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]

[^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidity Benefit) /

Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [^BLANK / last

```

time]?
INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
01 One week
02 Two weeks
03 Three weeks
04 Four weeks
05 Calendar month
07 Two Calendar months
08 Eight times a year
09 Nine times a year
10 Ten times a year
13 Three months / 13 weeks
26 Six months / 26 weeks
52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
90 Less than one week
95 One off / lump sum
96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [laP = RESPONSE]

IAA*
INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.
[^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
Range: 0..9997

END OF FILTER

IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
[DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
[[laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]] OR [laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]]]

IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]

IAWB*
Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
[Bracket results are recorded in lawBl, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]

ELSE

IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]

IAFB*
Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
[Bracket results are recorded in lafBl, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]

ELSE

IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]

IAMB*
Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)

```

```

| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lamBl, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAYB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in layBl, layBu, layBe, layBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IAOB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in laoBl, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [laT = [3, 5, 7]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October 2004) [(laN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview >= 1 October 2004)) [(laN <> 12) OR ((laN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALY*
| | | | | Did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving this benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALM*
| | | | | Which month did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving it?
| | | | | 01 January
| | | | | 02 February

```

```

||||| 03 March
||||| 04 April
||||| 05 May
||||| 06 June
||||| 07 July
||||| 08 August
||||| 09 September
||||| 10 October
||||| 11 November
||||| 12 December
|||||
||||| IF laLM = Month of interview date [laLM.ORD = IntDat.MONTH]
|||||
||||| IAWHMTH*
||||| Is that [^month started receiving benefit] this year or last year?
||||| 1 This year
||||| 2 Last year
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF NOT (benefit block type = [1, 3, 5, 7]) [NOT (laT = [1, 3, 5, 7])]
|||||
||||| IAB*
||||| For how many weeks or months in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago], did
||||| [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive [^Incapacity
||||| Benefit (previously Invalidity Benefit) / Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory
||||| sick pay (SSP) etc.]?
||||| 1 Answer given in weeks
||||| 2 Answer given in months
|||||
||||| IF answer in weeks or months = weeks [laB = 1]
|||||
||||| IABW*
||||| INTERVIEWER: Enter number of weeks.
||||| Range: 0..52
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF answer in weeks or months = months [laB = 2]
|||||
||||| IABM*
||||| INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months.
||||| Range: 1..12
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| [CHECK IA25]
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||

```

```

| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF (benefits received at the moment = RESPONSE) AND (benefits received in last year =
| | RESPONSE) [(laBeN = RESPONSE) AND (laBeR = RESPONSE)]
| |
| | LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING
| |
| | IF (benefits received in last year = b95loop) AND NOT (benefits received at the moment =
| | b95loop) [(laBeR = b95loop) AND NOT (laBeN = b95loop)]
| |
| | IAP*
| | How much did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]
| | [^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) /
| | Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [BLANK / ^last
| | time]?
| | INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
| | 01 One week
| | 02 Two weeks
| | 03 Three weeks
| | 04 Four weeks
| | 05 Calendar month
| | 07 Two Calendar months
| | 08 Eight times a year
| | 09 Nine times a year
| | 10 Ten times a year
| | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
| | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
| | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
| | 90 Less than one week
| | 95 One off / lump sum
| | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
| |
| | IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [laP = RESPONSE]
| |
| | IAA*
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.
| | [^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
| | amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
| | Range: 0..9997
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
| | [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | [(laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| |
| | IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]
| |
| | IAWB*
| | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
| | [Bracket results are recorded in lawBl, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]
| |
| |

```

```

| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]
| | | |
| | | | IAFB*
| | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lafBl, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]
| | | |
| | | | IAMB*
| | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lamBl, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
| | | |
| | | | IAYB*
| | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in layBl, layBu, layBe, layBr]
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IAOB*
| | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in laoBl, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [laT = [3, 5, 7]]
| | | |
| | | | IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October
| | | | 2004) [(laN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section
| | | | of the interview >= 1 October 2004))
| | | | [(laN <> 12) OR ((laN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
| | | |
| | | |

```

```

| | | | | IALY*
| | | | | Did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving this
| | | | | benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALM*
| | | | | Which month did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start
| | | | | receiving it?
| | | | | 01 January
| | | | | 02 February
| | | | | 03 March
| | | | | 04 April
| | | | | 05 May
| | | | | 06 June
| | | | | 07 July
| | | | | 08 August
| | | | | 09 September
| | | | | 10 October
| | | | | 11 November
| | | | | 12 December
| | | | |
| | | | | IF laLM = Month of interview date [laLM.ORD = IntDat.MONTH]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAWHMTH*
| | | | | Is that [^month started receiving benefit] this year or last year?
| | | | | 1 This year
| | | | | 2 Last year
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF NOT (benefit block type = [1, 3, 5, 7]) [NOT (laT = [1, 3, 5, 7])]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAB*
| | | | | For how many weeks or months in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago], did
| | | | | [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive [^Incapacity
| | | | | Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) / Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory
| | | | | sick pay (SSP) etc.]?
| | | | | 1 Answer given in weeks
| | | | | 2 Answer given in months
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = weeks [laB = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABW*
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of weeks.
| | | | | Range: 0..52

```

||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| IF *answer in weeks or months = months* [*laB = 2*]  
 ||| **IABM\***  
 ||| INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months.  
 ||| Range: 1..12  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| **[CHECK IA26]**  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| IF (*whether partner in household too= yes*) AND (*continued with module IA = continued*)  
 ||| [*(IAask = 1) AND (IAIntro = 1)*]  
 ||| **IABEP\***  
 ||| SHOW CARD PP  
 ||| Which, if any, of these benefits [*has / did*] [*your / his / her*] [*husband / wife / partner*]  
 ||| [*received / receive*] in the last year?  
 ||| INTERVIEWER: Include any currently receiving.  
 ||| PROBE: What others? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.  
 ||| 01 Income Support  
 ||| 02 Pension Credit (income support for the over 60's, replaced Minimum Income Guarantee  
 ||| in October 2003)  
 ||| 03 Working Tax Credit (formerly part of Working Families Tax Credit)  
 ||| 04 Job-seeker's Allowance formerly Unemployment Benefit  
 ||| 05 Guardian's Allowance  
 ||| 06 Widow's pension / Widowed mother's allowance / Widowed Parent's allowance /  
 ||| Bereavement allowance  
 ||| 07 Child Benefit  
 ||| 08 Child Tax Credit  
 ||| 95 Some other State Benefit (SPECIFY)  
 ||| 96 None of these  
 ||| **[Multiple responses to IABEP are recorded in variables IABEP1 to IABEP9]**  
 ||| **[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]**  
 ||| **[CHECK IA27 - IA28]**  
 ||| IF (*(partner's age >= 60 AND whether partner died less than 11 months ago <> yes)* OR  
 ||| (*age at death >= 60 AND date of death of spouse / partner > October 2003*)) AND (*date of*  
 ||| *this section of the interview < 1 October 2004*)  
 ||| [*((IAgePart >= 60 AND IDeadP12M <> 1) OR (IAgeAtDeath >= 60 AND IDeadPDat >*  
 ||| *Oct2003)) AND (IADat < MIGEnd)*]  
 ||| IF (*benefits received in the last year = income support*) AND NOT (*benefits received in the*  
 ||| *last year = pension credit*) [*(laBeP = 1) AND NOT (laBeP = 2)*]  
 |||

```

| | | | XIABER*
| | | | On 1st October 2003 the Minimum Income Guarantee (Income Support for the over 60's)
| | | | was replaced by a new, but similar benefit called the Pension Credit. Can I just check,
| | | | [^have you ever received / has [^name] ever received / did [^your / his / her] [^husband /
| | | | wife / partner] ever receive] the Pension Credit?
| | | | INTERVIEWER: If the respondent answers yes, please go back and press <Ins> to add
| | | | code 2 (for Pension Credit) at the previous question.
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | |
| | | | [CHECK IA29]
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF NOT (benefits received in the last year = income support) AND (benefits received in
| | | | the last year = pension credit) [NOT (laBeP = 1) AND (laBeP = 2)]
| | | |
| | | | YIABER*
| | | | On 1st October 2003 the Pension Credit replaced the Minimum Income Guarantee
| | | | (Income Support for the over 60's). Can I just check, [^were you / was [^name] / was
| | | | [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receiving the Minimum Income Guarantee
| | | | at any time in the last year?
| | | | INTERVIEWER: If the respondent answers yes, please go back and press <Ins> to add
| | | | code 1 (for MIG) at the previous question.
| | | | 1 Yes
| | | | 2 No
| | | |
| | | | [CHECK IA30]
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF (benefits received in the last year = income support) AND (benefits received in the last
| | | | year = pension credit) [(laBeP = 1) AND (laBeP = 2)]
| | | |
| | | | ZIABER*
| | | | On 1st October 2003, Minimum Income Guarantee (or Income Support for the over
| | | | 60's)
| | | | was replaced by a new, but similar benefit called the Pension Credit. The Pension
| | | | Credit
| | | | is more generous than the Minimum Income Guarantee for some people so we are
| | | | interested in the amount that [^you / [^name]] received under the new system and the
| | | | old
| | | | system so we will ask you questions about both benefits.
| | | | INTERVIEWER: Press 1 and <Enter>to continue.
| | | | Range: 1..1
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF (benefits received in the last year = other) [laBeP = 95]
| | | |
| | | |

```

```

| | | IABEPO*
| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter the name of the other benefit.
| | | String 40
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF (benefits received in the last year = RESPONSE) AND NOT (benefits received in the last
| | | / / year = none) [(IaBeP = RESPONSE) AND NOT (IaBeP = 96)]
| | |
| | |
| | | [CHECK IA32]
| | |
| | | LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING
| | |
| | | [CHECK IA33]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF (benefits received in the last year = RESPONSE) AND NOT (benefits received in the last
| | | year = none) [(IaBeP = RESPONSE) AND NOT (IaBeP = 96)]
| | |
| | | LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING
| | |
| | | IF benefits partner is receiving at the moment = b95loop [IaBePn = b95loop]
| | |
| | | IAP*
| | | How much did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]
| | | [^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) /
| | | Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [^BLANK / last
| | | time]?
| | | INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
| | | 01 One week
| | | 02 Two weeks
| | | 03 Three weeks
| | | 04 Four weeks
| | | 05 Calendar month
| | | 07 Two Calendar months
| | | 08 Eight times a year
| | | 09 Nine times a year
| | | 10 Ten times a year
| | | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
| | | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
| | | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
| | | 90 Less than one week
| | | 95 One off / lump sum
| | | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
| | |
| | | IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [IaP = RESPONSE]
| | |
| | | IAA*
| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.
| | | [^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
| | | amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
| | | Range: 0..9997

```

```

| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
| | | | | [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | | | | [(laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAWB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lawBl, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAFB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lafBl, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAMB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in lamBl, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAYB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in layBl, layBu, layBe, layBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IAOB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in laoBl, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |

```

```

||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [IaT = [3, 5, 7]]
|||||
||||| IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October
||||| 2004) [(IaN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section
||||| of the interview >= 1 October 2004))
||||| [(IaN <> 12) OR ((IaN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
|||||
||||| IALY*
||||| Did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's] [^husband / wife / partner] start receiving
||||| this benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
||||| 1 Yes
||||| 2 No
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
|||||
||||| IALM*
||||| Which month did [^you / ^name] / [^your / ^name's] [^husband / wife / partner]
||||| start receiving it?
||||| 01 January
||||| 02 February
||||| 03 March
||||| 04 April
||||| 05 May
||||| 06 June
||||| 07 July
||||| 08 August
||||| 09 September
||||| 10 October
||||| 11 November
||||| 12 December
|||||
||||| IF IaLM =Month of interview date [IaLM.ORD = IntDat.MONTH]
|||||
||||| IAWHMTH*
||||| Is that [^month started receiving benefit] this year or last year?
||||| 1 This year
||||| 2 Last year
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF NOT (benefit block type = [1, 3, 5, 7]) [NOT (IaT = [1, 3, 5, 7])]
|||||

```

```

| | | | | IAB*
| | | | | For how many weeks or months in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago], did
| | | | | [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive [^Incapacity
| | | | | Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) / Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) /
| | | | | Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.]?
| | | | | 1 Answer given in weeks
| | | | | 2 Answer given in months
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = weeks [laB = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABW*
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of weeks.
| | | | | Range: 0..52
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF answer in weeks or months = months [laB = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | IABM*
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months.
| | | | | Range: 1..12
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | [CHECK IA34]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefits received in the last year = RESPONSE) AND (benefits partner is receiving at
| | | | | the moment = RESPONSE) [(laBeP = RESPONSE) AND (laBePn = RESPONSE)]
| | | | |
| | | | | LOOP FOR EACH HEALTH OR DISABILITY BENEFIT CURRENTLY RECEIVING
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefits received in the last year = b95loop) AND NOT (benefits partner is receiving
| | | | | at the moment = b95loop) [(laBeP = b95loop) AND NOT (laBePn = b95loop)]
| | | | |
| | | | | IAP*
| | | | | How much did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]
| | | | | [^BLANK / usually] receive from [^Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidation Benefit) /
| | | | | Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA) / Statutory sick pay (SSP) etc.] [^BLANK / last
| | | | | time]?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Code period covered.
| | | | | 01 One week
| | | | | 02 Two weeks
| | | | | 03 Three weeks
| | | | | 04 Four weeks
| | | | | 05 Calendar month
| | | | | 07 Two Calendar months
| | | | | 08 Eight times a year
| | | | | 09 Nine times a year

```

```

||||| 10 Ten times a year
||||| 13 Three months / 13 weeks
||||| 26 Six months / 26 weeks
||||| 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
||||| 90 Less than one week
||||| 95 One off / lump sum
||||| 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
||||| IF period amount covers = RESPONSE [laP = RESPONSE]
|||||
||||| IAA*
||||| INTERVIEWER: Enter the amount.
||||| [^BLANK / If Don't Know amount because received with other benefits, enter total
||||| amount received here. Enter 9997 if amount already counted elsewhere.]
||||| Range: 0..9997
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF (period amount covers = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount received =
||||| [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
||||| [laP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]] OR [laA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]])
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = one week [laP = 1]
|||||
||||| IAWB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (50, 75, 100, 150)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in lawBl, lawBu, lawBe, lawBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = two weeks [laP = 2]
|||||
||||| IAFB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (100, 150, 200, 300)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in lafBl, lafBu, lafBe, lafBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = [four weeks, one month] [laP = [4, 5]]
|||||
||||| IAMB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in lamBl, lamBu, lamBe, lamBr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IF period amount covers = [one year, lump sum] [laP = [52, 95]]
|||||
||||| IAYB*
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (2500, 3750, 5000, 7500)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in layBl, layBu, layBe, layBr]
|||||
|||||

```

```

| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IAOB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | | | BRACKETS (200, 300, 400, 600)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in laoBl, laoBu, laoBe, laoBr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF benefit block type = [3, 5, 7] [IaT = [3, 5, 7]]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section of the interview < 1 October
| | | | | 2004) [(IaN = 12) AND (IIADat < MIGEnd)]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (benefit ID number <> 12) OR ((benefit ID number = 12) AND (date of this section
| | | | | of the interview >= 1 October 2004))
| | | | | [(IaN <> 12) OR ((IaN = 12) AND (IIADat >= MIGEnd))]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALY*
| | | | | Did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]] start receiving
| | | | | this benefit in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether started to receive benefit in last year = yes [IALY = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | IALM*
| | | | | Which month did [^you / [^name] / [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]]
| | | | | start receiving it?
| | | | | 01 January
| | | | | 02 February
| | | | | 03 March
| | | | | 04 April
| | | | | 05 May
| | | | | 06 June
| | | | | 07 July
| | | | | 08 August
| | | | | 09 September
| | | | | 10 October
| | | | | 11 November
| | | | | 12 December
| | | | |

```



| **IAFUEL\***

| Did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive a  
| Winter Fuel Payment in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

|  
| END OF FILTER

| **IAFAINT\*@**

Savings and Investments are an important part of some household's finances. The next  
questions ask about a number of different kinds of savings or investments [^you / [^name]]  
[^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] may have. [^BLANK / Please include  
only savings and investments held in [^your / [^name's]] sole name.]

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| **IASI\***

SHOW CARD QQ

Which, if any, of these savings and investments [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your /  
his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] have?

PROBE: What others?

INTERVIEWER: Code TESSA-only ISA (TOISA) as ISA.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

01 Current Account at a bank, building society or elsewhere

02 Savings Account at a bank, building society or elsewhere

03 TESSA

04 ISA

05 Premium Bonds

06 National Savings Accounts or Certificates

07 PEP

08 Stocks and / or Shares

09 Share Options / Employee share ownership

10 Share clubs

11 Unit or Investment Trusts

12 Bonds and Gilts (government or corporate)

95 Other Savings or Investments

96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to IASI are recorded in variables IASI01 to IASI13]**

**[code maximum 13 out of 14 possible responses]**

| **[CHECK IA36]**

| *IF (savings and investments held = [savings account, current account]) [(laSI = [2, 1])]*

| **IASAVA\***

| In total, how much [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband /  
| wife / partner]] have in [^your / his / her] [^current account(s) / savings account(s) / current  
| and savings account(s)] (at the bank, building society or elsewhere)?

| [^BLANK / INTERVIEWER: If current account is overdrawn, enter amount in savings  
| account only. / INTERVIEWER: Enter '0' if overdrawn.]

| Range: 0..9999997

| **[CHECK IA37]**

| *IF (amount of savings = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| *[(laSava = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| |

**IASAVAB\*@**  
 Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (1000, 5000, 20000, 150000)  
**// [Bracket results are recorded in iasaval, iasavau, iasavae, iasavar]**  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
**IASINT\***  
 About how much interest did [^you / ^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive from (this / these) account(s) in the last year after tax?  
 Range: 0..99997  
**[CHECK IA38]**  
 |  
 | IF (interest received from accounts = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 | [(laSint = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]  
 |  
**IASINTB\*@**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (25, 100, 500, 7500)  
**// [Bracket results are recorded in iasintl, iasintu, iasinte, iasintr]**  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | IF savings and investments held = TESSA [laSI = 3]  
 |  
**IATI\***  
 How much [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] have in TESSA's?  
 Range: 0..99997  
**[CHECK IA39]**  
 |  
 | IF (amount in Tesses = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(laTI = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]  
 |  
**IATIB\*@**  
 Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 20000, 50000)  
**// [Bracket results are recorded in iatil , iatiu , iatie , iatir ]**  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
**IATII\***  
 About how much interest did [^you / ^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive from these accounts in the last year?  
 Range: 0..9997  
**[CHECK IA40]**  
 |  
 | IF (amount received from these accounts last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 | [(laTII = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]  
 |  
**IATIIB\*@**  
 Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

|| BRACKETS (250, 500, 1000, 4000)  
 // **[Bracket results are recorded in iatiil, iatiu, iatie, iatiir]**  
 ||  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER

IF savings and investments held = ISA [laSI = 4]

| **IAISA\***  
 | Which of the following [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband  
 | / wife / partner]] have in ISA(s)...  
 | INTERVIEWER: Read out.  
 | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.  
 | 1 ... cash?  
 | 2 ... life insurance?  
 | 3 ... stocks and shares?  
 | **[Multiple responses to IAISA are recorded in variables IAISA1 to IAISA3]**  
 | **[code maximum 3 out of 3 possible responses]**

IF type of ISA = cash [lalsa = 1]

| **IACISA\***  
 | How much [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife /  
 | partner]] currently have in the cash components of ISA(s)?  
 | Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA41]**

| IF (amount in cash component of ISA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 | [(laCIsa = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IACISAB\*@**  
 | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 | BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 15000, 20000)

||| **[Bracket results are recorded in iacisal, iacisau, iacisae, iacisar]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

IF type of ISA = life insurance [lalsa = 2]

| **IALISA\***  
 | How much is the life-insurance component of [^your / [^name's]] [^BLANK / and [^your /  
 | his / her] [^husband's / wife's / partner's]] ISA(s) currently worth?  
 | Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA42]**

| IF (how much life-insurance component of ISA worth = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
 | [(laLIsa = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IALISAB\*@**  
 | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 | BRACKETS (2000, 4000, 7500, 10000)

```

| | | [Bracket results are recorded in ialisal, ialisau, ialisae, ialisar]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF type of ISA = stocks and shares [ialsa = 3]
| | |
| | | IASISA*
| | | How much is the stocks and shares component of [^your / ^name's] [^BLANK / and]
| | | [^your / his / her] [^husband's / wife's / partner's] ISA(s) currently worth?
| | | Range: 0..999997
| | |
| | | [CHECK IA43]
| | |
| | | IF (how much stocks and shares component of ISA worth = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | | [(laSIsa = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | |
| | | IASISAB* @
| | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 25000, 50000)
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in iasisal, iasisau, iasisae, iasisar]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IAISAD*
| | | Not including any income that was re-invested, about how much income did [^you / ^name]
| | | [^BLANK / and ^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner] receive from (this / these)
| | | ISA(s) in the last year?
| | | Range: 0..99997
| | |
| | | [CHECK IA44]
| | |
| | | IF (amount of income received from ISA last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | | [(ialsaD = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| | |
| | | IAISADB* @
| | | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | | BRACKETS (100, 150, 300, 2000)
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in iaisadl, iaisadu, iaisade, iaisadr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF savings and investments held = premium bonds [laSI = 5]
| | |
| | | IANPB* @
| | | How much [^do you / does ^name] [^BLANK / and ^your / his / her] [^husband / wife /]
| | | [partner] have in Premium Bonds?
| | | Range: 0..9999997
| | |
| | | [CHECK IA45]

```

| IF (*amount in Premium Bonds = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)  
| [*(IaNPB = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*]  
|  
| **IANPBB\*@**  
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| BRACKETS (100, 200, 500, 5000)  
| **// [Bracket results are recorded in ianpbl, ianpbu, ianpbe, ianpbr]**  
|  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
| **IANBPB\***  
| How much prize income did [^you / ^name] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband /  
| wife / partner]] receive from these bonds in the last year?  
| Range: 0..999997  
|  
| **[CHECK IA46]**  
|  
| IF (*prize income received from these bonds = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)  
| [*(IaNPBP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*]  
|  
| **IaPBPB\*@**  
| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| BRACKETS (50, 100, 1000, 10000)  
| **// [Bracket results are recorded in ianpbpl, ianpbpu, ianpbpe, ianpbpr]**  
|  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
| *IF savings and investments held = national savings accounts [IaSI = 6]*  
|  
| **IANS\***  
| How much [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife /  
| partner]] have in National Savings Accounts or Certificates?  
| Range: 0..9999997  
|  
| **[CHECK IA47]**  
|  
| IF (*amount in National Savings Accounts or Certificates = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)  
| [*(IaNS = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*]  
|  
| **IaNSB\*@**  
| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| BRACKETS (500, 2500, 10000, 100000)  
| **// [Bracket results are recorded in iansi, IaNSu, IaNSe, IaNSr]**  
|  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
| **IANSI\***  
| About how much interest did [^you / ^name] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband /  
| wife / partner]] receive from these accounts or certificates in the last year after tax?  
| Range: 0..99997  
|  
| **[CHECK IA48]**

| IF (*interest received after tax = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)  
| [(*laNSi = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)]  
| |  
| | **laNSIB\*@**  
| | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| | BRACKETS (10, 50, 150, 5000)  
| | **// [Bracket results are recorded in iansil, iansiu , iansie, iansir]**  
| |  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF savings and investments held = PEP [laSI = 7]*

| **IAIP\***  
| IF [^you / [^name]] chose to sell [^your / his / her] Personal Equity Plan(s) today, about how  
| much would [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]]  
| have after paying any fees?  
| Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA49]**

| IF (*amount from Personal Equity plan if chose to sell = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)  
| [(*laIP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)]  
| |  
| | **IAIPB\*@**  
| | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| | BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 25000, 100000)  
| | **// [Bracket results are recorded in iaipi, iaipu , iaipe, iaipr]**  
| |  
| END OF FILTER

| **IAIPI\***  
| Not including any income that was reinvested, about how much income did [^you / [^name]]  
| [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive from these Personal  
| Equity Plan(s) in the last year?  
| Range: 0..99997

| **[CHECK IA50]**

| IF (*income received from personal equity plan in last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)  
| [(*laIPi = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]*)]  
| |  
| | **IAIPIB\*@**  
| | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| | BRACKETS (200, 500, 1000, 7500)  
| | **// [Bracket results are recorded in laIPI, laIPu, laIPe, laIPr]**  
| |  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (laSI = [stocks and shares, share options, share clubs]) [(laSI = [8, 9, 10])]*  
|

| **IASSS\***  
| IF [^you / [^name]] chose to sell [^your / his / her] [^stocks and shares / share options / share  
| club shares / stocks and shares and share options / stocks and shares and share club shares  
| /  
| share options and share club shares / stocks and shares, share options and share club  
| shares] today, about how much would [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her]  
| [^husband / wife / partner]] have?  
| Range: 0..9999997

| **[CHECK IA51]**

| IF (amount received if chose to sell = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(IaSSS = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IASSSB\*@**

| Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| BRACKETS (1000, 2500, 10000, 100000)

|| **[Bracket results are recorded in IaSSI, IaSSu, IaSSe, IaSSr]**

| END OF FILTER

| **IASSSI\***

| About how much dividend income did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her]  
| [^husband / wife / partner]] receive from [^stocks and shares / share options / share club  
| shares  
| / stocks and shares and share options / stocks and shares and share club shares / share  
| options  
| and share club shares / stocks and shares, share options and share club shares]  
| in the last year after tax?  
| Range: 0..9999997

| **[CHECK IA52]**

| IF (dividend income received in last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(IaSSSi = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IASSSIB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
| BRACKETS (50, 150, 600, 15000)

|| **[Bracket results are recorded in iasssil, iasssiu, iasssie, iasssir]**

| END OF FILTER

| **IASHTYP\***

| Which of the following types of shares [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his /  
| her] [^husband / wife / partner]] have  
| INTERVIEWER: Read out. CODE ALL THAT APPLY.  
| 1 ...shares in privatised industries (for example, British Telecom, British Gas or RailTrack)?  
| 2 ...shares in demutualised building societies or other mutual societies?  
| 3 ...shares in other UK listed companies?  
| 4 ...shares in foreign listed companies?

| **[Multiple responses to IASHTYP are recorded in variables IASHTY1 to IASHTY4]**

| **[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]**

| END OF FILTER

*IF savings and investments held = unit or investment trusts [laSl = 11]*

**IAUIT\***

IF [^you / [^name]] chose to sell [^your / [^name's]] Unit trusts or Investment trusts today, about how much would [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] have?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK IA53]**

IF (amount received if chose to sell = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(iauit = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**IAUITB\*@**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 50000, 200000)

// **[Bracket results are recorded in iautil, iauitu, iauite, iauitr]**

END OF FILTER

**IAUITI\***

Not including any income that was re-invested, about how much income did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive from these Unit trusts or Investment trusts in the last year after tax?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK IA54]**

IF (income received from unit trusts or investments = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(iauiti = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**IAUITIB\*@**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (150, 500, 1250, 10000)

// **[Bracket results are recorded in iautil, iauitiu, iautie, iauitir]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF savings and investments held = bonds and gilts [laSl = 12]*

**IABG\***

IF [^you / [^name]] chose to sell [^your / [^name's]] bonds and gilts today, about how much would [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] have?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK IA55]**

IF (amount received if chose to sell = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(labg = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**IABGB\*@**

Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (10000, 20000, 40000, 100000)

// **[Bracket results are recorded in labgl, labgu, labge, labgr]**

||  
| END OF FILTER

| **IABGI\***

| About how much income did [^you / ^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband /  
| wife / partner]] receive from these Bonds and Gilts in the last year after tax?

| Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA56]**

| IF (income received from bonds and gilts = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(labgi = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IABGIB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (100, 300, 1000, 50000)

|| **[Bracket results are recorded in iabgil, iabgiu, iabgie, iabgir]**

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF savings and investments held = other [laSI = 95]

| **IASIO\***

| How much in total [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband /  
| wife / partner]] have in other savings or investments?

| Range: 0..9999997

| **[CHECK IA57]**

| IF (amount in other savings or investments = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(laSIo = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IASIOB\*@**

| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (1000, 5000, 20000, 100000)

|| **[Bracket results are recorded in iasiol, iasiou, iasioe iasior]**

| END OF FILTER

| **IASIOI\***

| About how much interest did [^you / ^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband /  
| wife / partner]] receive from these other savings or investments in the last year after tax?

| Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA58]**

| IF (amount received from other savings or investments = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(laSiOi = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

| **IASIOIB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (50, 150, 500, 10000)

// **[Bracket results are recorded in iasioil, iasioiu, iasioie, iasioir]**

||

| END OF FILTER

|

END OF FILTER

*IF (savings and investments held = RESPONSE) AND NOT (savings and investments held = none) [(IaSI = RESPONSE) AND NOT (IaSI = 96)]*

|

| **IASICK\*@**

| INTERVIEWER: Please check financial assets summary below:

| [^CURRENT AND SAVINGS ACCOUNTS : £.....]

| [^TESSA`S : £'.....]

| [^ISA`S : £.....IN CASH, £.....IN LIFE INSURANCE, £.....IN STOCKS AND SHARE'S]

| [^PREMIUM BONDS : £.....]

| [^NATIONAL SAVINGS ACCOUNTS OR CERTIFICATES : £.....]

| [^PEPS : £.....]

| [^STOCKS AND SHARES, SHARE OPTIONS, SHARE CLUB SHARES : £.....]

| [^UNIT TRUSTS : £.....]

| [^BONDS AND GILTS : £.....]

| [^OTHER SAVINGS OR INVESTMENTS : £.....]

| Go back and change any that are incorrect.

| 1 Press <1> and <Enter>to continue.

|

END OF FILTER

**IALI\***

[^Do you / Does [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] have any life insurance policies?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether has life insurance policies = yes [IaLi = 1]*

|

*IF (whether partner in household too = yes) AND (whether partner died less than 11 months ago <> yes) [(IAask = 1) AND (IDeadP12M <> 1)]*

||

|| **IALIW\***

|| Which of [^you / them] has life insurance policies?

|| 1 Respondent only

|| 2 Spouse / partner only

|| 3 Both

||

END OF FILTER

|

*IF (type of life insurance policies = [respondent, both, EMPTY]) [(IaLiW = [1, 3, EMPTY])]*

||

|| **IALIYA\***

|| How much would [^your / [^name's]] dependants get from [^your / his / her] life insurance policy or policies if [^you / [^name]]died?

|| Range: 0..9999997

||

|| **[CHECK IA59]**

||

|| *IF (amount dependants would get from life-insurance policy = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| | [(laLiYA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]  
 | |  
 | | **IALIYAB\*@**  
 | | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 | | BRACKETS (20000, 50000, 100000, 400000)  
 | | **/// [Bracket results are recorded in ialiyal, ialiyau, ialiyae, ialiyar]**  
 | |  
 | | END OF FILTER  
 | |  
 | | END OF FILTER  
 | |  
 | | IF *type of life insurance policies = [spouse / partner, both] [laLiW = [2, 3]]*  
 | |  
 | | **IALIPA\***  
 | | How much would [^your / his / her] [^husband's / wife's / partner's] dependants get from  
 | | (his / her) life insurance policy or policies if (he / she) died?  
 | | Range: 0..9999997  
 | |  
 | | **[CHECK IA60]**  
 | |  
 | | IF *(amount partner would get from life-insurance policy = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
 | | [(laLipA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]  
 | |  
 | | **IALIPAB@**  
 | | Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 | | BRACKETS (20000, 50000, 100000, 400000)  
 | | **/// [Bracket results are recorded in ialipal, ialipau, ialipae, ialipar]**  
 | |  
 | | END OF FILTER  
 | |  
 | | END OF FILTER  
 | |  
 | | **IASC\***  
 | | Do any of [^your / ^name's] / [^your / ^name's]] and [^your / his / her] [^husband's /  
 | | wife's / partner's] / [^your / his / her] [^husband's / wife's / partner's]] life insurance policy or  
 | | policies have a savings component?  
 | | INTERVIEWER: That is the value of the fund will be paid at some point in the future.  
 | | 1 Yes  
 | | 2 No  
 | |  
 | | IF *whether life insurance policies with savings component = yes [laSC = 1]*  
 | |  
 | | **IASCA\***  
 | | About how much in total will (this / these) savings component(s) yield when (it / they)  
 | | mature(s)?  
 | | Range: 0..9999997  
 | |  
 | | **[CHECK IA61]**  
 | |  
 | | IF *(amount savings component(s) would yield = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*  
 | | [(laSCA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]  
 | |  
 | | **IASCAB\*@**  
 | | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
 | | BRACKETS (10000, 25000, 50000, 250000)

||| [**Bracket results are recorded in iascal, iascau, iascae, iascar**]

|||  
|| END OF FILTER

||  
| END OF FILTER

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (savings and investments held = RESPONSE) AND NOT (savings and investments held = none) [(IaSI = RESPONSE) AND NOT (IaSI = 96)]*

|  
| **IADOC\***

| INTERVIEWER: Code whether respondent consulted documents when answering the financial assets questions.

- | 1 Respondent consulted documents frequently
- | 2 Respondent consulted documents occasionally
- | 3 Respondent did not consult documents

|  
| **IAINTA \***

| INTERVIEWER: How accurate do you think the answers given by the respondent were?

- | 1 Very accurate
- | 2 Fairly accurate
- | 3 Not very accurate
- | 4 Not at all accurate

|  
END OF FILTER

**IAPROP\***

SHOW CARD RR

Which, if any, of these assets [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] have, not including [^your / his / her / their] own home?

PROBE: What others? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Houses, flats or holiday homes, including timeshares (not including this home)
- 2 Farm or Business Property (such as a shop, warehouse or garage)
- 3 Other land
- 4 Money owed to you by others
- 5 A trust
- 6 A covenant or inheritance
- 95 Other assets (including works of art or collectibles such as antiques or jewellery)
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to IAPROP are recorded in variables IAPROP1 to IAPROP6]  
[code maximum 7 out of 8 possible responses]**

**[CHECK IA62]**

*IF assets owned = houses, flats or holiday homes [Iaprop = 1]*

|  
| **IAHOME\***

| IF [^you / [^name]] chose to sell [^your / his / her] [^BLANK / other] house or holiday home and then paid off any debts on it, about how much would [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] get?

| Range: 0..9999997

|  
| **[CHECK IA63]**

| IF (amount received if chose to sell = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])

```

| [(IaHome = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|
| IAHOMEB*@
| Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (10000, 50000, 100000, 250000)
| // [Bracket results are recorded in iahomel, iahomeu, iahomee, iahomer]
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| IAIR*
| Did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive
| any income or rent from that property in the last year?
| 1 Yes
| 2 No
|
| IF whether received any income or rent last year = yes [Iair = 1]
|
| IAIRA*
| How much income or rent did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband
| / wife / partner]] receive from that property in the last year, after any expenses and taxes?
| Range: 0..999997
|
| [CHECK IA64]
|
| IF (income or rent received from property last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| [(Iaira = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|
| IAIRB*@
| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 7500, 50000)
| /// [Bracket results are recorded in ialral, iairau, iairae, iairar]
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| IF assets owned = farm or business property [Iaprop = 2]
|
| IAFBPS*
| IF [^you / [^name]] sold [^your / his / her] Farm or Business property and then paid off any
| debts on it, about how much would [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her]
| [^husband / wife / partner]] get?
| Range: 0..9999997
|
| [CHECK IA65]
|
| IF (amount received if sold Farm or Business property = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| [(Iafbps = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
|
| IAFBPSB*@
| Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| BRACKETS (10000, 50000, 100000, 500000)
| // [Bracket results are recorded in iafbpsi, iafbpsu, iafbpse, iafbpsi]
|
|

```

| END OF FILTER

| **IAFBPR\***

| Did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive  
| any income or rent from that property in the last year?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| IF *whether income or rent received in last year = yes* [*iafbpr = 1*]

| **IAFBA\***

| How much income or rent did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband  
| / wife / partner]] receive from that property in the last year, after any expenses and taxes?

| Range: 0..999997

| **[CHECK IA66]**

| IF *(income received from property in last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| *[(iafBA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| **IAFBAB\*@**

| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (1500, 4000, 7500, 50000)

||| **[Bracket results are recorded in iafbals, iafbaut, iafbait, iafbair]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (assets owned = [other land, money owed by others, a trust, a covenant or inheritance, other  
assets]) [(laprop = [3, 4, 5, 6, 95])]*

| **IAOASA\***

| How much is [^the other land / the money owed to you by others / the trust / the covenant or  
| inheritance / the other land and the money owed to you by others / the other land and the trust

| the other land and the covenant or inheritance etc.] worth?

| Range: 0..9999997

| **[CHECK IA67]**

| IF *(amount it is worth = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])*

| *[(iaOasA = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]*

| **IAOASAB\*@**

| Would it be less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

| BRACKETS (5000, 7500, 20000, 100000)

||| **[Bracket results are recorded in iaoasal, iaoasaut, iaoasait, iaoasair]**

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**IAREGP\***

Apart from anything you have already told me about, did [^you / ^name] receive any regular payments from people not living here in the past year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether regular payments from people outside household in past year = yes [laregp = 1]*

```
|
| LOOP FOR k:= 1 TO 4
| |
| | IF (k = 1) OR (whether received other regular payments = yes)
| | [(k = 1) OR (laOthP = 1)]
| |
| | IAPAY*
| | Thinking about [^your / ^name's] [^first / second / third / next] payment who was it from?
| | 01 Husband / Wife
| | 02 Ex-husband / wife / partner
| | 03 Son / Daughter
| | 04 Son / Daughter-in-law
| | 05 Parent
| | 06 Parent-in-law
| | 07 Brother / Sister
| | 08 Brother / Sister-in-law
| | 09 Grandchild
| | 10 Other relative
| | 11 Other non-relative
| | 12 Local Authority
| | 13 Publisher
| |
| | IAPAYR*
| | What was the reason for this payment?
| | CODE ONE ONLY.
| | 1 Financial support for children
| | 2 Household bills / expenses
| | 3 Spending money / allowance
| | 4 Loan repayment
| | 5 Maintenance or alimony
| | 6 Royalties
| | 95 Other (specify)
| |
| | IF reason for payment = other [lapayr = 95]
| | |
| | | IAPAYO*@
| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter other reason.
| | | String 60
| | | [Open responses to lapayo were coded and then incorporated into lapayr. lapyr2c
| | | identifies that an open response was given at lpayo and incorporated into lapayr]
| | |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IAREGO*
| | What period did [^your / ^name's] usual payments cover?
| | 01 One week
| | 02 Two weeks
| | 03 Three weeks
| | 04 Four weeks
| | 05 Calendar month
```

```

||| 07 Two Calendar months
||| 08 Eight times a year
||| 09 Nine times a year
||| 10 Ten times a year
||| 13 Three months / 13 weeks
||| 26 Six months / 26 weeks
||| 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
||| 90 Less than one week
||| 95 One off / lump sum
||| 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
|||
||| IF periods payments covered = RESPONSE [larego = RESPONSE]
|||
||| IAREGM*
||| And about how much did [^you / ^name] usually receive?
||| Range: 0..9999997
|||
||| [CHECK IA68]
|||
||| END OF FILTER
|||
||| IF (periods payments covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount usually received
||| = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
||| [larego = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]] OR [laregm = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]]]
|||
||| IF periods payments covered = one week [larego = 1]
|||
||| IAREGMWB*@
||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||| BRACKETS (25, 50, 100, 2000)
||| ///// [Bracket results are recorded in iargwl, iargwu, iargwe, iargwr]
|||
||| ELSE
|||
||| IF periods payments covered = two weeks [larego = 2]
|||
||| IAREGMFB*@
||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||| BRACKETS (50, 100, 200, 4000)
||| ///// [Bracket results are recorded in iargfl, iargfu, iargfe, iargfr]
|||
||| ELSE
|||
||| IF periods payments covered = [four weeks, one month] [larego = [4, 5]]
|||
||| IAREGMMB*@
||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||| BRACKETS (100, 200, 400, 8000)
||| ///// [Bracket results are recorded in iargml, iargmu, iargme, iargmr]
|||
||| ELSE
|||
||| IF periods payments covered = [one year, lump sum] [larego = [52, 95]]
|||
||| IAREGMYB*@
||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

```

```

||||| BRACKETS (1250, 2500, 5000, 100000)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iargyl, iargyu, iargye, iargyr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IAREGMOB*@
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (100, 200, 400, 8000)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iargol, iargou, iargoe, iargor]
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IAREGYR* [variable renamed in dataset as IAREGYR]
||||| Did [^you / [^name]] receive this for the whole year, that is since [^date a year ago]?
||||| 1 Yes
||||| 2 No
|||||
||||| IF whether received for whole year = no [IaRegyr = 2]
|||||
||||| IAREGMW*[variable renamed in dataset as IAREGMW]
||||| How many months / weeks did [^you / [^name]] receive this payment for?
||||| INTERVIEWER: Code whether the answer is given in months or weeks.
||||| 1 months
||||| 2 weeks
|||||
||||| IAREGMWA*[variable renamed in dataset as IAREMWA]
||||| INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months or weeks.
||||| Range: 0..97
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IAOTHP*
||||| Did [^you / [^name]] receive any other regular payments from people not living here in the
||||| past year?
||||| 1 Yes
||||| 2 No
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER

IF (whether partner in household too = yes) AND (continued with module IA = continued) [(IAask
= 1) AND (IAIntro = 1)]
|
| IAPAR*
| Apart from anything you have already told me about, did [^you/ [^ name] (or) / [^your / his /

```

```

| her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive any regular payments from people not living here in
| the past year (that is since [^date a year ago])?
| 1 Yes
| 2 No
|
| IF whether received other regular payments = yes [lapar = 1]
|
| LOOP FOR k:= 1 TO 4
|
| IF (k = 1) OR (whether received other regular payments from outside household in last year
| = yes) [(k = 1) OR (laMrP = 1)]
|
| IAPS*
| Thinking about [^your/ [^ name]'s (or) / [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]'s]
| payment who was it from?
| 01 Husband / Wife
| 02 Ex-husband / wife / partner
| 03 Son / Daughter
| 04 Son / Daughter-in-law
| 05 Parent
| 06 Parent-in-law
| 07 Brother / Sister
| 08 Brother / Sister-in-law
| 09 Grandchild
| 10 Other relative
| 11 Other non-relative
| 12 Local authority
| 13 Publisher
|
| IAPR*
| What was the reason for this payment?
| CODE ONE ONLY.
| 1 Financial support for children
| 2 Household bills / expenses
| 3 Spending money / allowance
| 4 Loan repayment
| 5 Maintenance or Alimony
| 6 Royalties
| 95 Other (specify)
|
| IF reason for payment = other [laPR = 95]
|
| IAPARO*@
| INTERVIEWER: Enter other reason.
| String 60
| [Open responses to laparo were coded and then incorporated into lapr. laprc
| identifies that an open response was given at lparo and incorporated into lapr]
| END OF FILTER
|
| IAPF*
| What period did [^your/ [^ name]'s (or) / [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]'s]
| usual payments cover?
| 01 One week
| 02 Two weeks
| 03 Three weeks
| 04 Four weeks

```

```

|||| 05 Calendar month
|||| 07 Two Calendar months
|||| 08 Eight times a year
|||| 09 Nine times a year
|||| 10 Ten times a year
|||| 13 Three months / 13 weeks
|||| 26 Six months / 26 weeks
|||| 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
|||| 90 Less than one week
|||| 95 One off / lump sum
|||| 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
||||
|||| IF period usual payments covered = RESPONSE [lapf = RESPONSE]
||||
|||| IAPAM* [variable in dataset renamed IAPAM2]
|||| And about how much did [^your/ ^ name]'s (or) / [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife /
|||| partner]'s] usually receive?
|||| Range: 0..999997
||||
|||| END OF FILTER
||||
|||| IF (period usual payments covered = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (state pension
|||| amount = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
|||| [(lapf = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (lapam = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
||||
|||| IF period usual payments covered = one week [lapf = 1]
||||
|||| IAPWB*@
|||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (25, 50, 100, 2000)
|||| ||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iapa2wl, iapa2wu, iapa2we, iapa2wr]
||||
|||| ELSE
||||
|||| IF period usual payments covered = two weeks [lapf = 2]
||||
|||| IAPFB*@
|||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (50, 100, 200, 4000)
|||| ||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iapa2fl, iapa2fu, iapa2fe, iapa2fr]
||||
|||| ELSE
||||
|||| IF period usual payments covered = [four weeks, one month] [lapf = [4, 5]]
||||
|||| IAPMB*@
|||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (100, 200, 400, 8000)
|||| ||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iapa2ml, iapa2mu, iapa2me, iapa2mr]
||||
|||| ELSE
||||
|||| IF period usual payments covered = [one year, lump sum] [lapf = [52, 95]]
||||
|||| IAPYB*@
|||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

```

```

||||| BRACKETS (1250, 2500, 5000, 10000)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iapa2yl, iapa2yu, iapa2ye, iapa2yr]
|||||
||||| ELSE
|||||
||||| IAPOB*@
||||| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
||||| BRACKETS (100, 200, 400, 8000)
||||| [Bracket results are recorded in iapa2ol, iapa2ou, iapa2oe, iapa2or]
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF P2Dead <> yes [P2Dead <> 1]
|||||
||||| IAREGYRP*
||||| Did [^you/ [^ name] (or) / [^you / his / her] [^husband / wife /
||||| partner]] receive this for the whole year, that is since [^date a year
||||| ago]?
||||| 1 Yes
||||| 2 No
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IF (whether received for whole year = no) OR (P2Dead = yes)
||||| [(IaRegyrp = 2) OR (P2Dead = 1)]
|||||
||||| IAREGMWP*
||||| How many months / weeks did [^your/ [^ name]'s (or) / [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife
||||| /partner]'s receive this payment for?
||||| INTERVIEWER: Code whether the answer is given in months or weeks.
||||| 1 months
||||| 2 weeks
|||||
||||| IAREGMWAP*
||||| INTERVIEWER: Enter number of months or weeks.
||||| Range: 0..97
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| IAMRP*
||||| Did [^you/ [^ name] (or) / [^you / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] receive any
||||| other regular payments from people not living here in the past year?
||||| 1 Yes
||||| 2 No
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
||||| END OF FILTER

```

||  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

**IAPK\***

SHOW CARD SS

Which, if any, of these payments and payments in kind [^did / have / has] [^[^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner] / [^partner's name] / [^you / [^name]] or [^partner's name] / [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]]] [^receive / received] in the last year (that is since [^date a year ago])?

PROBE: What others?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Life insurance policy
- 2 Lump sum pension payout
- 3 Personal Accident plan
- 4 Other insurance payment
- 5 Redundancy payment
- 6 Inheritance or bequest (inc. inherited property)
- 7 Win(s) on the football pools, national lottery or other form of gambling
- 95 Other payment (SPECIFY)
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to IAPK are recorded in variables IAPK1 to IAPK4]  
[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]**

**[CHECK IA69]**

*IF (payments received in last year = other) [lapk = 95]*

| **IAPKO\*@**

| INTERVIEWER: Write in source of other payment.

| String 20

| **[Open responses to lapko are coded and merged with the multiple responses to lapk (recorded in lapk1 to lapk4). These merged responses are recorded in variables lapkzm1 to lapkzm4]**

|  
END OF FILTER

**[CHECK IA70]**

*IF (payments received in last year = RESPONSE) AND NOT (payments received in last year = none) [(lapk = RESPONSE) AND NOT (lapk = 96)]*

| LOOP FOR n:= 1 TO 8

|| IF *payments received in last year = n95loop* [lapk = n95loop]

||| **IAPKM\***

||| How much in total did [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] [^receive from the [^Life insurance policy / lump sum pension payout / Personal Accident Plan / Other Insurance Payment / Redundancy payment / inheritance or bequest / other payment] / win on the football pools, national lottery or other form of gambling]?

||| Range: 0..999997

||  
|| IF (payment received in total = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
|| [(lapkm = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

||  
|| **IAPKMB\***

|| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
|| BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)  
|| [Bracket results are recorded in laPkl, laPku, laPke, laPkr]

||  
|| END OF FILTER

**IADEBT\***

I would like to ask you about any other financial commitments [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] may have apart from mortgages or housing related loans. [^Do you / Does [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] currently owe any money on credit or store cards?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether owes money on credit or store cards = yes [ladebt = 1]*

| **IADEBM\***

| How much was the outstanding balance on these cards after the last monthly payment was made?

| Range: 0..99997

| **[CHECK IA71 - IA72]**

| IF (amount of outstanding balance on cards = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
| [(ladebm = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

|| **IADEBMB\* @**

|| Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
|| BRACKETS (1000, 2000, 5000, 25000)

|| **[Bracket results are recorded in iadebml, iadebmu, iadebme, iadebmr]**

||  
|| END OF FILTER

||  
|| END OF FILTER

**IAOWE\***

[^Do you / Does [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] currently owe any money to friends, relatives, or other private individuals?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether currently owes money to someone = yes [laowe = 1]*

| **IAOWEM\***

| How much [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife /

partner]] owe?  
Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK IA73]**

IF (amount owed = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) [(laowem = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**IAOWETB\*@**

Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?  
BRACKETS (1000, 2000, 5000, 25000)

// **[Bracket results are recorded in iaoweml, iaowemu, iaoweme, iaowemr]**

END OF FILTER

**IAREGR\***

[^Do you / Does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]]  
make regular repayments on these loans?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

IF whether makes regular payments on these loans = yes [laRegR = 1]

**IAREGRP\***

What period do these repayments cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

IF period repayments cover = RESPONSE [laRegRP = RESPONSE]

**IAREP\***

How much are [^your / [^name's]] usual repayments?  
Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK IA74]**

END OF FILTER

IF (period repayments cover = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount of usual  
repayments = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(laRegRP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (larep = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

IF period repayments cover = one week [laRegRP = 1]

```

|||| IARPWB*@
|||| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (10, 20, 50, 150)
|||| [Bracket results are recorded in iarepwl, iarepwu, iarepwe, iarepwr]
||||
|||| ELSE
||||
|||| IF period repayments cover = two weeks [laRegRP = 2]
||||
|||| IARPFB*@
|||| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (20, 40, 100, 300)
|||| [Bracket results are recorded in iarepfl, iarepfu, iarepfe, iarepfr]
||||
|||| ELSE
||||
|||| IF period repayments cover = [four weeks, one month] [laRegRP = [4, 5]]
||||
|||| IARPMB*@
|||| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (40, 80, 200, 600)
|||| [Bracket results are recorded in iarepml, iarepmu, iarepme, iarepmr]
||||
|||| ELSE
||||
|||| IF period repayments cover = [one year, lump sum] [laRegRP = [52, 95]]
||||
|||| IARPYB*@
|||| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (500, 1000, 2500, 7500)
|||| [Bracket results are recorded in iarepyl, iarepyu, iarepye, iarepyr]
||||
|||| ELSE
||||
|||| IARPOB*@
|||| Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
|||| BRACKETS (40, 80, 200, 600)
|||| [Bracket results are recorded in iarepol, iarepou, iarepoe, iarepor]
||||
|||| END OF FILTER

```

**IALOAN\***

SHOW CARD TT

On which, if any, of these [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / or [^your / his / her] [^husband /

wife / partner]] currently owe money?  
PROBE: What others? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Hire purchase agreements
- 2 Personal loans (from bank, building society or other financial institution)
- 3 Overdraft
- 4 Catalogue or mail order purchase agreements
- 5 DWP social fund loan
- 6 Loan from a money lender or 'tally man'
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to IALOAN are recorded in variables IALOAN1 to IALOAN4]  
[code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]**

**[CHECK IA75]**

IF (owes money on following = RESPONSE) AND NOT (owes money on following = none)  
[(Ialoan = RESPONSE) AND NOT (Ialoan = 96)]

**IALOAM\***

How much in total [^do you / does [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband / wife / partner]] owe on these loans?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK IA76]**

IF (total amount owed on loans = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])  
[(Ialoam = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**IALOAMB\* @**

Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (1000, 2000, 5000, 25000)

**// [Bracket results are recorded in ialoaml, ialoamu, ialoame, ialoamr]**

END OF FILTER

IF NOT ((Ialoan.CARDINAL = 1) AND (owes money on following = overdraft))  
[NOT ((Ialoan.CARDINAL = 1) AND (Ialoan = 3))]

**IALREP\***

What period [^do / does] [^your / ^name's]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her] [^husband's / wife's / partner's]] usual repayments on these loans cover?

INTERVIEWER: If doesn't make repayments, code 97.

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

```

| | 97 Doesn't make repayments
| |
| | IF (periods usual repayments cover = RESPONSE) AND (periods usual repayments cover
| | = doesn't make repayments) [(lalreP = RESPONSE) AND (lalreP = 97)]
| |
| | IALRE*
| | How much [^are / is] [^your / ^name's]] usual repayments on these loans?
| | Range: 0..99997
| |
| | [CHECK IA77]
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF (periods usual repayments cover = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (amount of usual
| | repayments on loans = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | [(lalreP = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL]) OR (lalre = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| |
| | IF period usual repayments cover = one week [lalreP = 1]
| |
| | IALRPWB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (10, 20, 50, 150)
| | //// [Bracket results are recorded in ialrewl, ialrewu, ialrewe, ialrewr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF period usual repayments cover = two weeks [lalreP = 2]
| |
| | IALRPFB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (20, 40, 100, 300)
| | ///// [Bracket results are recorded in ialrefl, ialrefu, ialrefe, ialrefr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF period usual repayments cover = [four weeks, one month] [lalreP = [4, 5]]
| |
| | IALRPMB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (40, 80, 200, 600)
| | ///// [Bracket results are recorded in ialremi, ialremu, ialreme, ialremr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF period usual repayments cover = [one year, lump sum] [lalreP = [52, 95]]
| |
| | IALRPYB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (500, 1000, 2500, 7500)
| | ///// [Bracket results are recorded in ialreyi, ialreyu, ialreya, ialreyr]
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IALRPOB*@
| | Is it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (40, 80, 200, 600)

```

||||| [**Bracket results are recorded in ialreol, ialreou, ialree, ialreor**]

||||| END OF FILTER

IF (ICoupleN > 0) AND (ICAskIA = yes)

[(ICoupleN > 0) AND (ICAskIA = 1)]

**IAJNT\***

Can I just check, [^do you / does [^name]] have any savings, investments, property or other assets that are held jointly with [^your / [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner]?

1 Yes

2 No

IF whether holds assets jointly with partner = yes [laJnt = 1]

**IAAM\***

About how much would [^your / [^name's]] personal share amount to, minus share of any joint debts [^you and your / [^name] and [^name's]] [^husband / wife / partner] might have?

Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK IA78]**

IF (amount of personal share = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])

[(laAm = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]

**IAAMB\*@**

Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?

BRACKETS (1000, 2500, 10000, 50000)

||| [**Bracket results are recorded in laAml, laAmu, laAme, laAmr**]

||| END OF FILTER

||| END OF FILTER

||| END OF FILTER

IF (AskPay = [0, AllocP]) AND (owes money on following <> EMPTY)

[(AskPay = [0, AllocP]) AND (laloan <> EMPTY)]

**IAFCON\***

SHOW CARD UU

Which of the phrases on the card best describes how [^you / [^name]] [^BLANK / and [^your / his / her]] [^husband / wife / partner]] [^are / is] getting along financially these days?

1 manage very well

| 2 manage quite well  
| 3 get by alright  
| 4 don't manage very well  
| 5 have some financial difficulties  
| 6 have severe financial difficulties

| IF (ICouple = [married, cohabiting]) [(ICouple = [1, 2])]

| **IAORGF**

| SHOW CARD VV

| People organise their family finances in different ways. Which of the methods on this card comes closest to the way you organise yours. It doesn't have to fit exactly - just choose the nearest one. You can just tell me the number which applies.

| CODE ONE ONLY.

| 1 I look after all the household money except my partner's personal spending money  
| 2 My partner looks after all the household money except my personal spending money  
| 3 I am given a housekeeping allowance. My partner looks after the rest of the money  
| 4 My partner is given a housekeeping allowance. I look after the rest of the money  
| 5 We share and manage our household finances jointly  
| 6 We keep our finances completely separate  
| 95 Some other arrangement

| IF method of organising finances = some other arrangement [laorgf = 95]

| **IAORGD@**

| INTERVIEWER: Please record details.

| String 60

| **[Open responses to laorgd were coded and then incorporated into laorgf. laorgfc identifies that an open response was given at lafinw and incorporated into lafind]**

| END OF FILTER

| **IAFIND**

| In your household who has the final say in big financial decisions?

| DO NOT PROMPT. CODE ONE ONLY.

| 1 Respondent  
| 2 Partner  
| 3 Both have equal say  
| 95 Other

| IF person with final say = other [lafind = 95]

| **IAFINW@**

| INTERVIEWER: Write in other answer.

| String 20

| **[Open responses to lafinw were coded and then incorporated into lafinw. lafindc identifies that an open response was given at lafinw and incorporated into lafind]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| IF (AskPay = AllocP) AND (owes money on following <> EMPTY)  
| [(AskPay = AllocP) AND (laloan <> EMPTY)]

| LOOP FOR hloop:= 1 TO 16

```

| |
| | IF (interview status for each person = 16) [(IndStat = 16)]
| |
| | IAPAYW*
| | During the last year did [^name] do any work for pay?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No
| | /// [There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are
| | recorded in /// iapyw iapyw2 to iapyw10.]
| | IF whether did paid work during last year = yes [lapayw = 1]
| |
| | IAEARN
| | About how much money did [^name] earn from all jobs in the last year, before any tax or
| | other deductions?
| | Range: 0..999997
| | [There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are
| | recorded in
| | iaern iaern2 to iaern10.]
| | [CHECK IA79]
| |
| | IF (money earned from all jobs in last year = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | [(iaearn = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| |
| | IAEARNB@
| | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (10000, 20000, 35000, 100000)
| | ///// [Bracket results are recorded in
| | END OF FILTER
| |
| | IF Ask IAREc? = yes [AskRec = 1]
| |
| | IAREC
| | Not including any job income, about how much in total did [^name] [^BLANK / and [^name]]
| | receive in the last year from benefits, pensions, interest, gifts or anything else (before any
| | taxes or deductions)?
| | Range: 0..999997
| |
| | [CHECK IA80]
| |
| | IF (amount received excluding job income = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | [(larec = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| |
| | IARECB@
| | Was it less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (250, 500, 1000, 5000)
| | /// [Bracket results are recorded in iarecl, iarecu, iarece, iarecr]
| |
| | END OF FILTER
| |

```

```

| | IAOM
| | (Do / does) [^name] [^BLANK / and [^name]] have more than £2,500 total in bank accounts,
| | other financial assets, vehicles, property, or other investments?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No
| |
| | IF whether have / has more than £2,500 = yes [laom = 1]
| |
| | IAOMM
| | About how much altogether would that amount to, minus any debts he / she / they might
| | have?
| | Range: 0..999997
| |
| | [CHECK IA81]
| |
| | IF (amount of investments minus debts = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])
| | [(laomm = [DON'T KNOW, REFUSAL])]
| |
| | IAOMMB@
| | Would it amount to less than [^amount], more than [^amount] or what?
| | BRACKETS (1000, 5000, 20000, 150000)
| | //// [Bracket results are recorded in iaomml, iaommu, iaomme, iaommr]
| |
| | END OF FILTER

```

```

IAX@
INTERVIEWER: The Investments and Assets section is finished.
Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.
Range: 1..1

```

## HOUSING AND CONSUMPTION MODULE (HO)

Please note that the data for many of the mortgage questions in this module have not been included in the main archived dataset. A separate mortgage dataset was archived in November 2006, and is at an individual level so that it can be matched on to the main dataset if required.

*IF (name in whose the accommodation is owned or rented = RESPONSE) AND (Total of previous HHs still in household = HW1.HHldr.CARDINAL)  
[(HW1.HHldr = RESPONSE) AND (HoAsk = HW1.HHldr.CARDINAL)]*

### HOWHO\*

I'd like to check some general information about [^your / ^name's] / your household's / [[^name's] household's] accommodation.

Is [^your / his / her] accommodation still in [^your / ^name's] / your and [^name's] / etc.] name?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF whether accommodation is same person's name as last time = EMPTY OR whether accommodation is same person's name as last time = no [HoWho = EMPTY OR HoWho = 2]*

### HOWHN\*

[^BLANK / I'd like to get some general information about [^your / ^name's] household's accommodation.] In whose name is the accommodation owned or rented?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

01 [^Person's name[1]]

02 [^Person's name[2]]

03 [^Person's name[3]]

04 [^Person's name[4]]

05 [^Person's name[5]]

06 [^Person's name[6]]

07 [^Person's name[7]]

08 [^Person's name[8]]

09 [^Person's name[9]]

10 [^Person's name[10]]

11 [^Person's name[11]]

12 [^Person's name[12]]

13 [^Person's name[13]]

14 [^Person's name[14]]

15 [^Person's name[15]]

16 [^Person's name[16]]

97 Not a household member

**[Multiple responses to HOWHN are recorded in variables HOWHN01 to HOWHN05]  
[code maximum 17 out of 17 possible responses]**

### [CHECK HO1]

LOOP FOR k:= 1 TO 16

*IF (((person number k still present in household = yes) AND NOT (whose name accommodation is owned or rented in = k)) AND NOT (person number of partner = person in whose name the accommodation is owned or rented)) AND (person's age >=*

16) [(((DMPres = 1) AND NOT (HoWhN = k)) AND NOT (CoupleN = HoWhN)) AND (IAgeOf >= 16)]

**HOBAS\***

On what basis [^are you / is [^name]] living here? [^Do you / Does [^name] / Does your household / Does [^name's] household]

...READ OUT... CODE ONE ONLY.

- 1 ... pay regular rent,
- 2 pay something from time to time,
- 3 or, live here rent free?

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each person]**

**[Responses are recorded in hobas, hobas2 to hobas9]**

*IF basis on which lives here = regular rent [HoBas = 1]*

**HOBP\***

Thinking about [^your / [^name's] / you and your household's] last rent payment, what period did it cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each rent payment]**

**[Responses are recorded in hobp, hobp2 to hobp9]**

*IF period covered by last rent payment = RESPONSE [HoBP = RESPONSE]*

**HOBA\***

How much was [^your / [^name's] / you and your household's] last rent payment?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount.

Range: 0..99997

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each person's rent payment]**

**[Responses are recorded in hoba, hoba2 to hoba9]**

**[CHECK HO2]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (((Period covered by last rent payment = DON'T KNOW) OR (Period covered by last rent payment = REFUSAL)) OR (amount of last rent = DON'T KNOW)) OR (amount of last rent = REFUSAL) [(((HoBP = DON'T KNOW) OR (HoBP =*

REFUSAL)) OR (HoBA = DON'T KNOW)) OR (HoBA = REFUSAL)]

IF period covered by last rent payment = one week [HoBP = 1]

**HOBPW\*@**  
Was it less than [^20 / 40 / 60 / 150 pounds], more than [^20 / 40 / 60 / 150 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hobawl, hobawu, hobawe, hobawr for person 1 and hoba2wl, hoba2wu, hoba2we, hoba2wr for person 2 ]**

ELSE

IF period covered by last rent payment = two weeks [HoBP = 2]

**HOBPF\*@**  
Was it less than [^40 / 80 / 120 / 300 pounds], more than [^40 / 80 / 120 / 300 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hobaf1, hobafu, hobafe, hobafr for person 1 and hoba2f1, hoba2fu, hoba2fe, hoba2fr for person2]**

ELSE

IF period covered by last rent payment = [four weeks, one month] [HoBP = [4, 5]]

**HOBPM\*@**  
Was it less than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds], more than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hobaml, hobamu, hobame, hobamr for person 1 and hoba2ml, hoba2mu, hoba2me, hoba2mr for person 2]**

ELSE

IF period covered by last rent payment = [one year, lump sum] [HoBP = [52, 95]]

**HOBPY\*@**  
Was it less than [^1000 / 2000 / 3000 / 7500 pounds], more than [^1000 / 2000 / 3000 / 7500 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hobay1, hobayu, hobaye, hobayr for person 1] and hoba2y1, hoba2yu, hoba2ye, hoba2yr for person 2]**

ELSE

**HOBPO\*@**  
Was it less than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds], more than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hobaol, hobaou, hoba oe, hobaor for person 1] and hoba2ol, hoba2ou, hoba2oe, hoba2or for person 2]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER



|  
END OF FILTER

*IF tenure status <> yes [HoTenuN <> 1]*

| **HOTENU\***

| SHOW CARD WW

| In which of these ways [^does the owner own / does the renter rent / do you / [^name] and [^name] occupy / does [^name] occupy] this accommodation?

| INTERVIEWER: If own outright or own with help of a mortgage or loan, include owning with equity release.

- | 1 Own it outright
- | 2 Buying it with the help of a mortgage or loan
- | 3 Pay part rent and part mortgage (shared ownership)
- | 4 Rent it
- | 5 Live here rent free (including rent free in relative's / friend's property; excluding squatting)
- | 6 Squatting

| **[CHECK HO3]**

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (how occupies accommodation = [pay part rent and part mortgage, rents]) at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = Yes) [(HoTenu = 3, 4) AND (HoEli = 1)]*

| **HOJOB\***

| Does the accommodation go with the job of someone in the household?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| **HOLAND\***

| SHOW CARD XX

| Who is [^your / [^name's]] landlord?

| INTERVIEWER: Include New Town Development in Code 1.

- | 1 Local authority or council
- | 2 Housing association or co-operative or charitable trust
- | 3 Individual private landlord
- | 4 Employer of a household member
- | 5 Relative/friend of a household member
- | 95 Another organisation / individual

| **HOFURN\***

| Is [^your / [^name's]] accommodation provided ... READ OUT ...

- | 1 ...furnished
- | 2 partly furnished (e.g. curtains and carpets only)
- | 3 or, unfurnished?

|  
END OF FILTER

*IF how occupies accommodation = pays part rent and part mortgage AND at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = yes [HoTenu = 3 AND HoEli = 1]*

| **HOPART\***

| What percentage of the property [^are you / is [^name]] buying?

- | 1 25 percent
- | 2 50 percent

3 75 percent  
95 Other

*IF percentage of property buying = Other [HoPart = 95]*

**HPOPR\***

INTERVIEWER: ENTER OTHER PERCENTAGE

Range: 1..99

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (how occupies accommodation = [rents, pays part rent and part mortgage]) AND (at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = Yes) [(HoTenu = 3, 4) AND (HoEli = 1)]*

**HOPERI\***

Thinking about [^your / ^name's] last rent payment, what period did this cover?

INTERVIEWER: If 100% rent rebate, code 97.

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)
- 97 DOESN'T MAKE RENT PAYMENTS

*IF (period covered by last rent payment = RESPONSE) AND (period covered by last rent payment <> doesn't make rent payments) [(HoPeri = RESPONSE) AND (HoPeri <> 97)]*

**HORENT\***

How much was [^your / ^name's] last rent payment (including any services or charges but after any rebates)?

INTERVIEWER: If 100% rent rebate, code 99997.

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK HO4]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (((period covered by last rent payment = DON'T KNOW) OR (period covered by last rent payment = REFUSAL)) OR (amount of last rent repayment = DON'T KNOW)) OR (amount of last rent repayment = REFUSAL) [(((HoPeri = DON'T KNOW) OR (HoPeri = REFUSAL)) OR (HoRent = DON'T KNOW)) OR (HoRent = REFUSAL)]*

*IF period covered by last rent payment = one week [HoPeri = 1]*

**HORNTWB\*@**  
 Was it less than [^20 / 40 / 60 / 150 pounds], more than [^20 / 40 / 60 / 150 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in horenwl, horenwu, horenwe, horenwr]**  
 ELSE  
*IF period covered by last rent payment = two weeks [HoPeri = 2]*  
**HORNTFB\*@**  
 Was it less than [^40 / 80 / 120 / 300 pounds], more than [^40 / 80 / 120 / 300 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in horenfl, horenfu, horenfe, horenfr]**  
 ELSE  
*IF period covered by last rent payment = [four weeks, one month] [HoPeri = [4, 5]]*  
**HORNTMB\*@**  
 Was it less than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds], more than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in horenml, horenmu, horenme, horenmr]**  
 ELSE  
*IF period covered by last rent payment = [one year, lump sum] [HoPeri = [52, 95]]*  
**HORNTYB\*@**  
 Was it less than [^1000 / 2000 / 3000 / 7500 pounds], more than [^1000 / 2000 / 3000 / 7500 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in horenyl, horenyu, horenye, horenyr]**  
 ELSE  
**HORNTOB\*@**  
 Was it less than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds], more than [^80 / 160 / 240 / 600 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in horenol, horenou, horenoe, horenor]**  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
*IF (amount of last rent repayment <> 99997) AND (period covered by last rent payment <> doesn't make rent payments) [(HoRent <> 99997) AND (HoPeri <> 97)]*

**HOINCL\***

SHOW CARD YY

Did [^your / [^name's]] last rent payment include any of these?

PROBE: What else?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Water charges
- 2 Sewerage charges
- 3 Land or business premises
- 4 Separate Garage
- 5 Heating or lighting or hot water
- 6 Council Tax
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HOINCL are recorded in variables HOINCL1 to HOINCL5]  
[code maximum 7 out of 7 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HO5]**

**HOINCA\***

SHOW CARD ZZ

Did [^your / [^name's]] last rent payment include any of these?

PROBE: What else?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- 1 Meals
- 2 Gardening
- 3 Cleaning
- 4 Warden or porter
- 5 Security service/guard
- 95 Other services
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HOINCA are recorded in variables HOINCA1 to HOINCA5]  
[code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]**

**[Open responses to Hoinc are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Hoinca (recorded in Hoinca1 to Hoinca5). These merged responses are recorded in variables Hoinam1 to Hoinam5]**

*IF (items last rent payment included = other) [HoInca = 95]*

**HOINC\*@**

What other services does [^your / [^name's]] rent include?

INTERVIEWER: Write in.

String 60

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK HO6]**

**HOHBEN\***

Did you receive any housing benefit (also known as rent rebate or rent allowance) to help pay your last rent?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether received housing benefit for last rent = yes [HoHBen = 1]*

**HORHB\***

Did you receive the benefit directly (cash, cheque or into a bank account) or was it deducted from your rent?

- 1 Deducted from rent
- 2 Received it directly

*IF how received benefit = received directly [HorHB = 2]*

**HOHBCK\***

Can I just check, was the last rent payment that you just told me about before or after taking off the Housing Benefit?

- 1 Before
- 2 After

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (period covered by last rent payment = doesn't make rent payments) OR (amount of last rent payment = 99997) OR (how received benefit = deducted from rent) OR (rent payment made before of after housing benefit = after) [(HoPeri = 97) OR (HoRent = 99997) OR (HorHB = 1) OR (HoHBck = 2)]*

**HOREBA\***

What would [^your / [^name's]] last rent payment have been if housing benefit had not been deducted from it?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK HO7]**

*IF (last rent payment if housing benefit not deducted = RESPONSE AND period rent covers = doesn't make rent payments) [(HoReba = RESPONSE AND HoPeri = 97)]*

**HOREBP\***

What period would this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

END OF FILTER

*IF (last rent payment if housing benefit not deducted = DON'T KNOW) OR (last rent payment if housing benefit not deducted = REFUSAL) OR (period covered by last rent payment = DON'T KNOW) OR (period covered by last rent payment = REFUSAL) OR (period rent covers = DON'T KNOW) OR (period rent covers = REFUSAL) [(HoReba = DON'T KNOW) OR (HoReba = REFUSAL) OR (HoPeri = DON'T KNOW) OR (HoPeri = REFUSAL) OR (HoRebP = DON'T KNOW) OR (HoRebP = REFUSAL)]*

*IF period covered by last rent payment = one week [HoPeri = 1]*

**HOREBWB\*@**

Would it have been less than [<sup>^</sup>30 / 50 / 75 / 150 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>30 / 50 / 75 / 150 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horebwl, horebwu, horebwe, horebwr]**

ELSE

*IF period covered by last rent payment = two weeks [HoPeri = 2]*

**HOREBFB\*@**

Would it have been less than [<sup>^</sup>60 / 100 / 150 / 300 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>60 / 100 / 150 / 300 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horebfl, horebfu, horebfe, horebfr]**

ELSE

*IF period covered by last rent payment = [four weeks, one month] [HoPeri = [4, 5]]*

**HOREBMB\*@**

Would it have been less than [<sup>^</sup>120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horebml, horebmu, horebme, horebmr]**

ELSE

*IF period covered by last rent payment = [one year, lump sum] [HoPeri = [52, 95]]*

**HOREBYB\*@**

Would it have been less than [<sup>^</sup>1500 / 2500 / 3750 / 7500 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>1500 / 2500 / 3750 / 7500 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horebyl, horebyu, horebye, horebyr]**

ELSE

**HOREBOB\*@**

Would it have been less than [<sup>^</sup>120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horebol, horebou, horeboe, horebor]**

||| END OF FILTER  
||| END OF FILTER

*IF (whether last rent payment was before or after taking off housing benefit = before)  
OR rent payment made before or after housing benefit = NONRESPONSE  
[HoHBck = 1 OR HoHBck = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHBP\***

Thinking about your last housing benefit payment you received, what period did this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

**HOHBA\***

How much housing benefit did you receive last time?  
Range: 0..99997

*IF amount of housing benefit received last time = NONRESPONSE OR  
period covered by housing benefit payment = NONRESPONSE  
[HoHBa = NONRESPONSE OR HoHBP = NONRESPONSE]*

*IF period covered by housing benefit payment = one week [HoHBP = 1]*

**HOHBWB\*@**

Would it have been less than [<sup>^</sup>30 / 50 / 75 / 150 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>30 / 50 / 75 / 150 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hohbawl, hohbawu, hohbawe, hohbawr]**

ELSE

*IF period covered by housing benefit payment = two weeks [HoHBP = 2]*

**HOHBFB\*@**  
 Would it have been less than [^60 / 100 / 150 / 300 pounds], more than [^60 / 100 / 150 / 300 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in hohbafI, hohbafu, hohbafe, hohbafR]**  
 ELSE  
*IF period covered by housing benefit payment = [four weeks, one month]*  
*[HoHBP = [4, 5]]*  
**HOHBMB\*@**  
 Would it have been less than [^120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds], more than [^120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in hohbamI, hohbamu, hohbame, hohbamR]**  
 ELSE  
*IF period covered by housing benefit payment = [one year, lump sum]*  
*[HoHBP = [52, 95]]*  
**HOHBYB\*@**  
 Would it have been less than [^1500 / 2500 / 3750 / 7500 pounds], more than [^1500 / 2500 / 3750 / 7500 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in hohbayI, hohbayu, hohbaye, hohbayR]**  
 ELSE  
**HOHBOB\*@**  
 Would it have been less than [^120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds], more than [^120 / 200 / 300 / 600 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in hohbaol, hohbaou, hohbaoe, hohbaor]**  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
*IF (period covered by last rent payment = doesn't make rent payments) OR (last rent payment = 100% rebate) [(HoPeri = 97) OR (HoRent = 99997)]*  
**HOHB\***  
 SHOW CARD ZZ  
 Does [^your / ^name's] accommodation include any of these?  
 PROBE: What else?  
 CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Meals
- 2 A garden
- 3 Cleaning
- 4 Warden or porter
- 5 Security service / guard
- 95 Other services
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HOHB are recorded in variables HOHB1 to HOHB3]  
 [code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]  
 [CHECK HO8]**

*IF (service included with accommodation = other) [HoHB = 95]*

**HOHBO\* @**

What other services does [^you / ^name's] accommodation come with?  
 String 60

**[Open responses to Hohbo are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Hohb (recorded in Hohb1 to Hohb3). These merged responses are recorded in variables hohbm1 to hohbm3]**

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK HO9]**

END OF FILTER

**HORTSET\* @**

INTERVIEWER: The Renting section is finished.  
 Please enter <1> here to make the program store the current time and date.  
 Range: 1..1  
 [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

END OF FILTER

**HOMSTSET\* @**

INTERVIEWER: Start of Mortgages section.  
 Please enter <1> here to make the program store the current time and date.  
 Range: 1..1  
 [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF (((how occupies accommodation = owns it outright, buying with a mortgage or loan, shared ownership) AND (at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = yes)) AND NOT ((Change in tenure = yes) AND year accommodation bought (Wave 1) = RESPONSE))) AND NOT ((how occupies accommodation = owns it outright) AND (how occupies accommodation remains the same = no)) [(((HoTenu = 1, 2, 3) AND (HoEli = 1)) AND NOT ((HoTenuSt = 1) AND HoYear (Wave 1) = RESPONSE))] AND NOT ((HoTenu = 1) AND (HoTenuN = 2))]*

**HOYEAR\***

In what year did [^you / ^name] buy this accommodation?  
 Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK HO10]**

**[CHECK HO11]**

**[CHECK HO12]**

*IF NOT ((Change in tenure = yes) AND amount paid for | property (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)) [NOT HoTenuSt = 1 AND HoPay (Wave 1) = RESPONSE]*

**HOPAY\***

How much did [^you / [^name]] pay for the property?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount to the nearest £.

Range: 0..9999997

*IF amount paid for property = RESPONSE [HoPay = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK HO13]**

ELSE

*IF (amount paid for property = DONT KNOW) OR (amount paid for property = REFUSAL) [HoPay = DONT KNOW OR HoPay = REFUSAL]*

**HOPAYB\*@**

Was it less than [^10000 / 2000 / 50000 / 150000 pounds], more than [^10000 / 2000 / 50000 / 150000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hopayl, hopayu, hopaye, hopayr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HORTB**

SHOW CARD AB

Who did [^you / [^name]] buy this accommodation from?

INTERVIEWER: Code 'Right to Buy Scheme' as 'Council or Local Authority'.

CODE ONE ONLY.

- 1 Private Owner
- 2 Council or Local Authority
- 3 Housing Association
- 4 Landlord
- 5 Family or relative
- 96 None of these

*IF who accommodation bought from (Wave 1) <> council) AND (who accommodation bought from <> council)) AND whether bought from council or local authority (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE) [HoRTB (Wave 1) <> 2 AND HoRTB <> 2 AND HoRTBe (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

**HORTBE**

[^Have you / has [^name]] ever bought a home from a council or local authority, for example under the Right to Buy scheme?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (((how occupies accommodation = own) AND (whether interviewing at same address as last time = no))) OR (((how occupies accommodation = own) AND (whether interviewing at same address as last time = yes)) AND how occupies accommodation = own) AND whether mortgage taken when bought accommodation (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)) OR how occupies accommodation (Wave 1) = [renting, rent-free, squatting]) OR how occupies accommodation (Wave 1) = NONRESPONSE))) AND (at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = yes)) [((IAskPx <> 1) AND ((HoTenu = 1) AND (DhSameH = 2))) OR (((HoTenu = 1) AND (DhSameH = 1)) AND HoTenu = 1) AND HoEvM (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)) OR HoTenu (Wave 1) = [4, 5, 6]) OR HoTenu (Wave 1) = NONRESPONSE))) AND HoEli = 1))]*

| **HOEVM**

| When [^you / ^name] bought this accommodation, did [^you / ^name] take out a mortgage?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

|  
END OF FILTER

| **HOORM**

| [^Did / Not including your original mortgage, did] [^you / ^name] ever take out any [^BLANK / additional] mortgages or loans secured on this property?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No

*IF (how occupies accommodation = [owns it outright, buying with a mortgage or loan, shared ownership]) AND (at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = Yes) [(HoTenu = [1, 2, 3]) AND (HoEli = 1)]*

| **HOSELLP\***

| How much would [^you / ^name] expect to get for [^your / his / her] home if [^you / he / she] sold it today?  
| Range: 0..9999997

| **[CHECK HO14]**

| *IF (amount expected to get if property sold = DONT KNOW) OR (amount expected to get if property sold = REFUSAL) [(HoSellP = DONT KNOW) OR (HoSellP = REFUSAL)]*

| **HOSELLPB\*@**

| Would it be less than [^50000 / 75000 / 125000 / 500000 pounds], more than [^50000 / 75000 / 125000 / 500000 pounds] or what?

| **[Bracket results are recorded in hoselll, hosellu, hoselle, hosellr]**

|  
END OF FILTER

|  
END OF FILTER

**Households who reported mortgages at Wave 1 are asked a series of questions (starting with HOMSAM) which update the details of those mortgages. They are then asked if they have taken out any new mortgages since Wave 1 (HOMNEW). There is then a check to**

see if any mortgages have been missed (HOMMIS). Mortgages reported at these questions are also followed up by a series of questions.

Households who did not have mortgages are Wave 1 but are now buying their property with a mortgage are asked details about their mortgages starting with HOOUTM.

IF how occupies accommodation = [buying with a mortgage or loan, shared ownership] [HoTenu = [2, 3]]

IF (((whether interviewing at same address as last time = Yes) AND how occupies accommodation (Wave 1) = [buying with a mortgage or loan, shared ownership])) AND number of mortgages outstanding on property (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)) AND (total of previous householders still in household = 0)) OR (whether any householders from previous wave are still there = No [(((DhSameH = 1) AND HoTenu (Wave 1) = [2, 3])) AND HoOutM (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)) AND (HoAsk > 0)) OR (AnyHHSame = 2)]

ELSE

**HOOUTM\***

How many mortgages or loans [^do you / does [^name]] have outstanding on this property?

Range: 1..10

END OF FILTER

IF number of mortgages outstanding on property (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) OR (number of mortgages outstanding on property = RESPONSE) [(HoOutM (Wave 1) = RESPONSE) OR (HoOutM = RESPONSE)]

LOOP FOR k:= 1 TO 5

IF number in mortgage loop >= k [MaxMort >= k]

IF mortgage status = previous mortgage under same terms [HoDMSt = 1]

**HOMSAM [HOMSAM3 to HOMSAM7]\***

We now want to update the details of your mortgages. Last time we interviewed

[^you / [^name]], [^you / he / she] told us that [^you / he / she] had [^HoOutM (Wave 1)] mortgage[^BLANK/s]. [^This / The first / second / third etc.] was

^PMorttype.

[^Do you / Does he / Does she] still have this mortgage?

INTERVIEWER: Code yes if years left to run has changed or if the mortgage has been extended.

1 Yes

2 No

3 SPONTANEOUS: Never had this mortgage (details incorrect)

[This question updates details of mortgages reported at Wave 1, and is repeated for each mortgage reported. HOMSAM3 updates the first mortgage recorded at Wave 1, HOMSAM4 the second and so on, up to HOMSAM7 which updates the fifth mortgage reported at Wave 1.]

IF whether has same mortgage = Yes [HoMSam = 1]

**HOMEXT [HOMEXT3 to HOMEXT7] \***

Have [^you / [^name]] extended this mortgage since we last interviewed [^you / him / her] ([^on date of last interview])? That is, borrowed additional money from the same lender as part of the same agreement (for which the repayments are combined with the repayments for the original amount).

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether mortgage extended since last interview = Yes [HoMExt = 1]*

**HOMEXTA [ HOMXA3 to HOMXA7] \***

How much did [^you / [^name]] extend the mortgage by?

Range: 0..100000

*IF amount of mortgage extension = NONRESPONSE [HoMExtA = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOMEXTB\***

Was it less than [^5000 / 10000 / 30000 / 75000 pounds], more than [^5000 / 10000 / 30000 / 75000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in HOM3XL, HOMX3U, HOMX3E, HOMX3R to HOMX7L, HOMX7U, HOMX7E, HOMX7R]**

END OF FILTER

**HOMUSE**

What was the mortgage extension used for?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Home extension
- 2 Home improvements
- 3 Car purchase
- 4 Other consumable goods
- 5 Other use (please specify)

**[Multiple responses to HOMUSE are recorded in variables HOMUM13, HOMUM23, HOMUM33 to HOMUM17, HOMUM27, HOMUM37]**

**[Code maximum 5 out of 5 possible responses]**

*IF purpose of mortgage extension = other [HoMUse = 5]*

**HOMUSEO**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify.

String 60

**[Open responses to HOMUSEO are coded and incorporated into HOMUM]**

END OF FILTER

*IF purpose of mortgage extension.CARDINAL >1 [HoMUse.CARDINAL > 1]*

**HOMREA [HOMREA3 TO HOMREA7]\***

What was the main reason for this [^additional mortgage or loan / mortgage or loan which we do not have on our records / mortgage or loan] - that is, what was most of the money spent on?

- 1 [^Home extension]
- 2 [^Home improvements]

```

| | | | | 3 [^Car purchase]
| | | | | 4 [^Other consumable goods]
| | | | | 5 [^Other use]
| | | | |
| | | | | [CHECK HO15]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF mortgage status = [new mortgage, additional mortgage, previous mortgage
| | | | | that was missed at last interview] [HoDMSt = [2, 3, 4]]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMTY [HOMTY1, HOMTY2, HOMTY8 TO HOMTY10]*
| | | | | SHOW CARD AC
| | | | | [^What / Thinking about [^your / [^name's]] mortgage what / Thinking about the first /
| | | | | second / third etc. mortgage what] type of mortgage or loan is that?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Please refer to annual statement or mortgage paper work where
| | | | | possible.
| | | | | 1 A repayment mortgage or loan (where [^your / his / her] mortgage
| | | | | payments cover interest and part of the original loan)
| | | | | 2 An endowment mortgage (where [^your / his / her] mortgage
| | | | | payments cover interest only and [^you / he / she]] save[^BLANK/s]
| | | | | separately to pay off the capital)
| | | | | 3 Part repayment and part endowment
| | | | | 4 A pension mortgage (where [^your / his / her] mortgage payments cover interest
| | | | | only)
| | | | | 5 A PEP, ISA or Unit Trust mortgage
| | | | | 95 Other type of mortgage or loan
| | | | | 96 SPONTANEOUS: interest only mortgage
| | | | | 97 SPONTANEOUS: Equity release
| | | | |
| | | | | [HOMTY is asked for mortgages reported at HOOUTM, HOMNEW and HOMMIS.
| | | | | HOMTY1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMTY2 refers to the
| | | | | second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMTY8 refers to the first mortgage
| | | | | reported at HOMNEW, HOMTY9 refers to the second mortgage reported at
| | | | | HOMNEW and HOMTY10 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF type of mortgage or loan = other [HoMTy = 95]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMTO*
| | | | | What other type of mortgage or loan is that?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Write in.
| | | | | If interest only then go back and code this at the previous question.
| | | | | String 60
| | | | |
| | | | | [Answers reported at HOMTO are coded and incorporated into HOMTY.]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF type of mortgage or loan <> equity [HoMTy <> 97]

```

**HORMO [HORMO1, HORMO2, HORMO8 TO HORMO10]\***  
 Does this mortgage or loan include any re-mortgage?  
 1 Yes  
 2 No  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
 END OF FILTER  
*IF (mortgage status = [new mortgage, additional mortgage taken out since last interview, previous mortgage that was missed at last interview]) OR (whether has same mortgage = yes) [(HoDMSt = [2 , 3, 4]) OR (HoMSam = 1)]*  
**HOMFV [HOMFV1 TO HOMFV10]\***  
 At the moment, is this mortgage or loan fixed or variable rate?  
 1 Fixed rate  
 2 Variable rate  
**[HOMFV is asked for all mortgages. HOMFV1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMFV refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMFV3 HOMFV7 refer to the first to fifth mortgages reported at HOMSAM, HOMFV8 HOMFV9 refer to the first and second mortgages reported at HOMNEW and HOMFV refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**  
**HOVML [HOVML1 TO HOVML10]\***  
 [^How / Not including the value of his/her endowment, how] much [^do you / does [^name]] currently owe on this mortgage or loan?  
 Range: 0..9999997  
**[HOVML is asked for all mortgages. HOVM1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOVM2 refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOVM3 HOVM7 refer to the first to fifth mortgage reported at HOMSAM, HOVM8-HOVM refer to the first and second mortgage reported at HOMNEW and HOVM10 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**  
*IF amount owes on mortgage or loan = RESPONSE [HoVml = RESPONSE]*  
**[CHECK HO16]**  
 ELSE  
*IF amount owes on mortgage or loan = NONRESPONSE [HoVml = NONRESPONSE]*  
**HOVMB\***  
 Is it less than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds], more than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds] or what?  
**[Bracket results are recorded in HOVM1L, HOVM1U, HOVM1E, HOVM1R to HOVM10L, HOVM10U, HOVM10E, HOVM10R.]**  
 END OF FILTER

||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| IF (type of mortgage or loan = [endowment mortgage, part repayment part  
 ||| endowment]) OR type of mortgage or loan (Wave 1)= [endowment mortgage,  
 ||| part repayment part endowment]) [(HoMTy = [2, 3]) OR (HoMTy (Wave 1) =  
 ||| [2, 3])]  
 ||| **HOVE [HOVE1 to HOVE10]\***  
 ||| What is the current value of [^your / [^name's]] endowment?  
 ||| Range: 0..9999997  
 ||| **[HOVE is asked for all endowment mortgages. HOVE1 to HOVE2 refer to the first  
 ||| and second mortgages reported at HOOUTM, HOVE3-HOVE7 refer to the first to  
 ||| fifth mortgage reported at HOMSAM, HOVE8-HOVE9 refer to the first and second  
 ||| mortgage reported at HOMNEW and HOVE refers to the first mortgage reported at  
 ||| HOMMIS.]**  
 ||| **[CHECK HO17]**  
 ||| IF (current value of endowment = DONT KNOW) OR (current value of endowment =  
 ||| REFUSAL) [HoVe = DONT KNOW OR HoVe = REFUSAL]  
 ||| **HOVEB\***  
 ||| Is it less than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds], more than [^10000  
 ||| / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds] or what?  
 ||| **[Bracket results are recorded in HOVE1L, HOVE1U, HOVE1E, HOVE1R TO  
 ||| HOVE10L, HOVE10U, HOVE10E HOVE10R]**  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| IF number of mortgages outstanding on property (Wave 1) = NONRESPONSE  
 ||| [HoOutM (Wave 1) = NONRESPONSE]  
 ||| **HOYML**  
 ||| How many years does this mortgage or loan have left to run?  
 ||| Range: 0..50  
 ||| **[ Due to a problem with the program, this question was not asked.]**  
 ||| **[CHECK HO18]**  
 ||| END OF FILTER  
 ||| IF mortgage scenario = one [MortScen = 1]

**HOMNEW\***

[^Have you / Has [^name]] taken out any additional mortgages on this property since we last interviewed [^you / him / her] ([^on date of last interview])? That is, [^have you / has he / has she] taken out additional money as part of a different agreement?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[This question checks to see whether households who had a Wave 1 mortgage have taken out any new mortgages since Wave 1, and is asked after all the Wave 1 mortgage details have been updated.]**

*IF whether taken additional mortgages = yes [HoMNew = 1]*

**HOMNEWN\***

How many additional mortgages (remortgages) [^have you / has [^name]] taken out on this property since we last interviewed [^you / him / her]?

INTERVIEWER: Enter number of mortgages.

Range: 1..10

**HOMNUSE\***

Apart from paying off an existing mortgage, what did [^you / [^name]] use the new mortgage(s) for?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Home extensions
- 2 Home improvements
- 3 Car purchase
- 4 Other consumable goods
- 95 Other (Please specify)
- 96 None of these - used only to pay off existing mortgage

**[Multiple responses to HOMNUSE are recorded in variables HOMNM18, HOMNM28, HOMNM38, HOMNM48 to HOMNM19, HOMNM29, HOMNM39, HOMNM49.**

**Variables ending in 8 refer to the first mortgage reported at HOMNEWN and Variables ending in 9 refer to the second mortgage reported at HOMNEWN.]**

**[Code maximum 5 out of 6 possible responses]**

*IF uses of new mortgage = other [HoMNUse = 95]*

**HOMNUO\***

INTERVIEWER: Please specify other use.

String 80

**[Answers recorded at HOMNUO are coded and incorporated into HOMNUSE.]**

END OF FILTER

*IF uses of new mortgage = none [HoMNUse = 96]*

**[CHECK HO19]**

ELSE

*IF uses of new mortgage.CARDINAL 1 [HoMNUse.CARDINAL 1]*

**HOMNREA [HOMNRE8 to HOMNRE9]\***

```

| | | | | Apart from paying off an existing mortgage, what was the main use of the
| | | | | new mortgage(s) - that is what was most of the money spent on?
| | | | | 1 [^Home extensions]
| | | | | 2 [^Home improvements]
| | | | | 3 [^Car purchase]
| | | | | 4 [^Other consumable goods]
| | | | | 95 [^Other]
| | | | |
| | | | | [CHECK HO20]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (uses of new mortgage = RESPONSE) AND NOT (uses of new mortgage = None)
| | | | | [HoMNUse = RESPONSE AND NOT HoMNUse = 96]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMNEWA [HOMWA8 to HOMWA9]*
| | | | | How much did [^you / ^name]] use for [^Home Extensions / Home improvements /
| | | | | Car purchase etc.]?
| | | | | Range: 0..100000
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount used = NONRESPONSE [HoMNewa = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMNEWB*
| | | | | Was it less than [^5000 / 10000 / 30000 / 75000 pounds], more than [^5000 /
| | | | | 10000 / 30000 / 75000 pounds] or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in HOMW8L, HOMW8U, HOMW8E, HOMW8R to
| | | | | HOMW9L, HOMW9U, HOMW9E, HOMW9R]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | LOOP FOR k:= 1 TO 5
| | | | |
| | | | | IF number of additional mortgages since last interview >= k [HoMNewN >= k]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF mortgage status = [new mortgage, additional mortgage, previous mortgage
| | | | | that was missed at last interview] [HoDMSt = [2 , 3, 4]]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMTY [HOMTY1, HOMTY2, HOMTY8 – HOMTY10]*
| | | | | SHOW CARD AC
| | | | | [^What / Thinking about [^your / ^name's]] mortgage what / Thinking about the first /
| | | | | second / third etc. mortgage what] type of mortgage or loan is that?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Please refer to annual statement or mortgage paper work
| | | | | where possible.
| | | | | 1 A repayment mortgage or loan (where [^your / his / her] mortgage payments cover
| | | | | interest and part of the original loan)
| | | | | 2 An endowment mortgage (where [^your / his / her] mortgage
| | | | | payments cover interest only and [^you / he / she]] save[^BLANK/s] separately to pay
| | | | | off the capital)
| | | | | 3 Part repayment and part endowment
| | | | | 4 A pension mortgage (where [^your / his / her] mortgage payments cover interest
| | | | | only)
| | | | | 5 A PEP, ISA or Unit Trust mortgage
| | | | | 95 Other type of mortgage or loan

```

96 SPONTANEOUS: interest only mortgage  
97 SPONTANEOUS: Equity release

**[HOMTY is asked for mortgages reported at HOOUTM, HOMNEW and HOMMIS. HOMTY1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMTY2 refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMTY8 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMNEW, HOMTY9 refers to the second mortgage reported at HOMNEW, and HOMTY10 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**

*IF type of mortgage or loan = other [HoMTy = 95]*

**HOMTO\***

What other type of mortgage or loan is that?

INTERVIEWER: Write in.

If interest only then go back and code this at the previous question.

String 60

**[Answers reported at HOMTO are coded and incorporated into HOMTY.]**

END OF FILTER

*IF type of mortgage or loan <> equity [HoMTy <> 97]*

**HORMO [HORMO1, HORMO2, HORMO8 – HORMO10]\***

Does this mortgage or loan include any re-mortgage?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (mortgage status = [new mortgage, additional mortgage taken out since last interview, previous mortgage that was missed at last interview]) OR (whether has same mortgage = yes) [(HoDMSt = [2 , 3, 4]) OR (HoMSam = 1)]*

**HOMFV [HOMFV1 to HOMFV10]\***

At the moment, is this mortgage or loan fixed or variable rate?

1 Fixed rate

2 Variable rate

**[HOMFV is asked for all mortgages. HOMFV1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMFV refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMFV3-HOMFV7 refer to the first to fifth mortgages reported at HOMSAM, HOMFV8-HOMFV9 refer to the first and second mortgages reported at HOMNEW and HOMFV refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**

**HOVML [HOVM1 to HOVM10]\***

[^How / Not including the value of [^your / his / her] endowment, how] much

[^do you / does [^name]] currently owe on this mortgage or loan?

Range: 0..9999997

**[HOVML is asked for all mortgages, HOVM1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOVM2 refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOVM3**

HOVM7 refer to the first to fifth mortgage reported at HOMSAM, HOVM8-HOVM9 refer to the first and second mortgage reported at HOMNEW and HOVM10 refer to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]

*IF amount owes on mortgage or loan = RESPONSE [HoVml = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK HO22]**

ELSE

*IF amount owes on mortgage or loan = NONRESPONSE [HoVml = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOVMB\***  
Is it less than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds], more than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in HOVM1L, HOVM1U, HOVM1E, HOVM1R TO HOVM10L, HOVM10U, HOVM10E, HOVM10R.]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (type of mortgage or loan = [endowment mortgage, part repayment part endowment]) OR (type of mortgage or loan (Wave 1)= [endowment mortgage, part repayment part endowment]) [(HoMTy = [2, 3]) OR (HoMTy (Wave 1) = [2, 3])]*

**HOVE [HOVE1 to HOVE10]\***  
What is the current value of [^your / ^name's] endowment?  
Range: 0..9999997

**[HOVE is asked for all endowment mortgages. HOVE1 to HOVE2 refer to the first and second mortgages reported at HOOUM, HOVE3-HOVE7 refer to the first to fifth mortgages reported at HOMSAM, HOVE8-HOVE9 refer to the first and second mortgages reported at HOMNEW and HOVE refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**

**[CHECK HO23]**

*IF (current value of endowment = DONT KNOW) OR (current value of endowment = REFUSAL) [(HoVe = DONT KNOW) OR (HoVe = REFUSAL)]*

**HOVEB\***  
Is it less than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds], more than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in HOVE1L, HOVE1U, HOVE1E, HOVE1R to HOVE10L, HOVE10U, HOVE10E, HOVE10R.]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF number of mortgages outstanding on property (Wave 1) = NONRESPONSE [HoOutM (Wave 1) = NONRESPONSE]*

```

| | | | | HOYML*@
| | | | | How many years does this mortgage or loan have left to run?
| | | | | Range: 0..50
| | | | |
| | | | | [Due to a problem with the program, this question was not asked.]
| | | | |
| | | | | [CHECK HO24]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF number mortgages outstanding on property (Wave 1) <> NONRESPONSE AND
| | | | | (whether interviewing at same address as last time <> no) HoOutM (Wave 1) <>
| | | | | NONRESPONSE AND (DhSameH <> 2)]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMMIS*
| | | | | Can I just check, [^do you / does [^name]] hold any other mortgages on this
| | | | | property?
| | | | | 1 Yes
| | | | | 2 No
| | | | |
| | | | | [This question is asked to all households who had mortgages at wave 1. It is
| | | | | included purely to check to see if the household holds any mortgages that they have
| | | | | not already been asked about. Variables referring to mortgages reported at HOMMIS
| | | | | have a suffix of 10.]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF whether other mortgages held on property = yes [HoMMis = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMMISN*
| | | | | How many other mortgages [^do you / does [^name]] have on this property?
| | | | | Range: 1..10
| | | | |
| | | | | LOOP FOR k:= 1 TO 5
| | | | |
| | | | | IF number of other mortgages >= k [HoMMisN >= k]
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | | IF mortgage status = [new mortgage, additional mortgage, previous mortgage
| | | | | that was missed at last interview] [HoDMSt = [2 , 3, 4]]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOMTY [HOMTY1, HOMTY2, HOMTY8 – HOMTY10]*
| | | | | SHOW CARD AC
| | | | | [^What / Thinking about [^your / [^name's]] mortgage what / Thinking about
| | | | | the first / second / third etc. mortgage what] type of mortgage or loan is that?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Please refer to annual statement or mortgage paper work
| | | | | where possible.
| | | | | 1 A repayment mortgage or loan (where [^your / his / her] mortgage

```

- payments cover interest and part of the original loan)
- 2 An endowment mortgage (where [^your / his / her] mortgage payments cover interest only and [^you / he / she]] save[^BLANK/s] separately to pay off the capital)
- 3 Part repayment and part endowment
- 4 A pension mortgage (where [^your / his / her] mortgage payments cover interest only)
- 5 A PEP, ISA or Unit Trust mortgage
- 95 Other type of mortgage or loan
- 96 SPONTANEOUS: interest only mortgage
- 97 SPONTANEOUS: Equity release

**[HOMTY is asked for mortgages reported at HOOUTM, HOMNEW and HOMMIS. HOMTY1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMTY2 refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMTY8 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMNEW, HOMTY9 refers to the second mortgage reported at HOMNEW, and HOMTY10 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**

*IF type of mortgage or loan = other [HoMTy = 95]*

**HOMTO\***

What other type of mortgage or loan is that?

INTERVIEWER: Write in.

If interest only then go back and code this at the previous question.

String 60

**[Answers reported at HOMTO are coded and incorporated into HOMTY.]**

END OF FILTER

*IF type of mortgage or loan <> equity [HoMTy <> 97]*

**HORMO [HOMRMO1, HORMO2, HORMO8 – HORMO10]\***

Does this mortgage or loan include any re-mortgage?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (mortgage status = [new mortgage, additional mortgage taken out since last interview, previous mortgage that was missed at last interview]) OR (whether has same mortgage = Yes) [(HoDMSt = [2 , 3, 4]) OR (HoMSam = 1)]*

**HOMFV [HOMFV1 to HOMFV10]\***

At the moment, is this mortgage or loan fixed or variable rate?

1 Fixed rate

2 Variable rate

**[HOMFV is asked for all mortgages. HOMFV1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMFV refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOMFV3-HOMFV7 refer to the first to fifth mortgage reported at HOMSAM, HOMFV8-HOMFV9 refer to the first and second mortgage reported at HOMNEW**

and HOMFV refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]

**HOVML [HOVM1 to HOVM10]\***  
 [^How / Not including the value of his/her endowment, how] much [^do you / does [^name]] currently owe on this mortgage or loan?  
 Range: 0..9999997

**[HOVML is asked for all mortgages. HOVM1 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOVM2 refers to the second mortgage reported at HOOUTM, HOVM3 HOVM7 refer to the first to fifth mortgage reported at HOMSAM, HOVM8-HOVM9 refer to the first and second mortgage reported at HOMNEW and HOVM10 refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**

*IF amount owes on mortgage or loan = RESPONSE [HoVml = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK HO26]**

ELSE

*IF amount owes on mortgage or loan = NONRESPONSE [HoVml = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOVMB\***  
 Is it less than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds], more than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds] or what?

////// **[Bracket results are recorded in HOVM1L, HOVM1U, HOVM1E, HOVM1R to HOVM10L, HOVM10U, HOVM10E, HOVM10R.]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (type of mortgage or loan = [endowment mortgage, part repayment part endowment]) OR (type of mortgage or loan (Wave 1)= [endowment mortgage, part repayment part endowment])  
 [(HoMTy = [2, 3]) OR (HoMTy (Wave 1) = [2, 3])]*

**HOVE [HOVE1 to HOVE10]\***  
 What is the current value of [^your / [^name's]] endowment?  
 Range: 0..9999997

**[HOVE is asked for all endowment mortgages. HOVE1 to HOVE2 refer to the first and second mortgages reported at HOOUTM, HOVE3-HOVE7 refer to the first to fifth mortgages reported at HOMSAM, HOVE8-HOVE9 refer to the first and second mortgages reported at HOMNEW and HOVE refers to the first mortgage reported at HOMMIS.]**

**[CHECK HO27]**

*IF (current value of endowment = DONT KNOW) OR (current value of endowment = REFUSAL) [HoVe = DONT KNOW OR HoVe = REFUSAL]*

**HOVEB\***  
 Is it less than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds], more than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 250000 pounds] or what?



*(additional mortgages since last interview > 0)) OR (other mortgages on property > 0)) OR (NofExt > 0) [(((HoTenu = [2, 3]) OR (HoMNewN > 0)) OR (HoMMisN > 0)) OR (NofExt > 0)]*

**HOINC\***

Does this repayment include any of the following...

INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn.

Code all that apply.

- 1 ... a mortgage protection policy?
- 2 ... buildings insurance?
- 3 ... contents or possessions insurance?
- 4 ... other extra payments?
- 96 None of these

**[Multiple responses to HOINC are recorded in variables HOINC1 to HOINC4]  
[code maximum 5 out of 5 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HO30]**

*IF (items included in repayment = other) [Holnc = 4]*

**HOINCE\*@**

What else does [^your / ^name's] repayment include?

WRITE IN

String 60

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK HO31]**

*IF (((items included in repayment = mortgage protection policy ) OR (items included in repayment = building insurance)) OR (items included in repayment = contents insurance)) OR (items included in repayment = other extra payments) [(((Holnc = 1) OR (Holnc = 2)) OR (Holnc = 3)) OR (Holnc = 4)]*

**HOINCC\***

How much of [^your / ^name's] monthly repayment is for those additional items?

Range: 0..9997

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (outstanding mortgages or loans = 1) AND (whether reported re-mortgages <> yes) [(HoOutM = 1) AND (AnyReMort <> 1)]*

**HOEVRE\***

Not including [^your / ^name's] original mortgage did [^you / ^name] ever take out any additional mortgages or loans on this property?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

**HOMETSET\*@**

| INTERVIEWER: The Mortgages section is finished.  
| Please enter <1> here to make the program store the current time and date.  
| Range: 1..1  
| [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

| **[CHECK HO32]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF (how occupies accommodation = [owns outright, buying with a mortgage or loan, shared ownership]) AND (at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = Yes) [(HoTenu = [1, 2, 3]) AND (HoEli = 1)]*

| **HORINC\***

| It is possible to raise money based on the value of your home. These arrangements are sometimes known as equity release schemes. [^BLANK / Last time [^you / [^name]] told us [^he / she] had raised money through a scheme] [^BLANK / We would like to update the details of this scheme, but first we would like to check whether [^you / [^name]] have raised any additional money in any of these ways since we last interviewed [^you / him / her] on [^date of last interview]. Can I check whether [^you / [^name]] have raised any additional money in any of these ways since we last interviewed [^you / him / her] on [^date of last interview]. [^Have you / has [^name]] raised any income or capital from the value of your / his / her current home through]

| ...READ OUT... CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- | 1 ...a home income or mortgage annuity plan,
- | 2 a home reversion scheme,
- | 3 a private arrangement (for example with a relative),
- | 4 or, in some other way?
- | 96 None of these
- | 97 [^Dispute]

| **[Multiple responses to HORINC are recorded in variable HORINC1]**  
| **[code maximum 5 out of 6 possible responses]**

| **[CHECK HO33]**

| **[CHECK HO34]**

| *IF method by which raised equity on home = other [HoRinc = 4]*

| **HOEQREL\***

| Does that other way match either of these descriptions?

| INTERVIEWER: Read Out. Code one only.

- | 1 You take out a loan secured on your property which provides you with a monthly income. The loan is not repaid until you die. You still own your home.
- | 2 You sell part or all of your home to a company in return for a monthly income or a lump sum payment. You continue to live in your home rent-free.
- | 3 No, neither of these descriptions

| *IF type of equity release = loan [HoEqRel = 1]*

| **[CHECK HO35]**

| ELSE

| **[CHECK HO36]**

END OF FILTER

*IF type of equity release = neither [HoEqRel = 3]*

**HOOINCX\*@**

INTERVIEWER: Record details.

String 40

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (((method by which raised equity on home = income plan) OR method by which raised equity on home (Wave 1) = income plan) AND NOT (method by which raised equity on home = dispute)) [(((HoRinc = 1) OR HoRinc (Wave 1) = 1) AND NOT (HoRinc = 97))]*

*IF method by which raised equity on home = income plan [HoRinc = 1]*

**HORMOL\***

How much was the mortgage or loan from home income or mortgage annuity plan? [^BLANK / Please only include the additional amount that [^you / [^name]] raised since we last interviewed [^you / him / her].

Range: 0..9999997

**HORMOL\***

*IF (amount from annuity plan = DONT KNOW) OR (amount from annuity plan = REFUSAL) [(HoRmol = DONT KNOW) OR (HoRmol = REFUSAL)]*

**HORMOLB\*@**

Was it less than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 100000 pounds], more than [^10000 / 25000 / 50000 / 100000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hormoll, hormolu, hormole, hormolr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HORINM\***

[^Now, thinking about the amount that [^you / [^name]] receive from the home income or mortgage annuity plan that [^you / he / she] told us about last time, how much [^do you / does he / does she] [^receive in total from these schemes / currently receive from this scheme / receive from this home income or mortgage annuity plan / scheme] / Thinking about [^your / [^name's]] home income or mortgage annuity plan, how much [^do you / does he / does she] [^receive in total from these schemes / currently receive from this scheme / receive from this home income or mortgage annuity plan / scheme] per month?]

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK H037]**

*IF amount per month = NONRESPONSE [HoRinm = NONRESPONSE]*

**HORINMB\*@**

Is it less than [^75 / 150 / 250 / 1000 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 250 / 1000

pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horinml, horinmu, horinme, horinmr]**

END OF FILTER

*IF method by which raised equity on home = income plan [HoRinc = 1]*

**HORFEE\***

[^Was / Thinking about the plan that [^you have / he has / she has] taken out since we last interviewed [^you / him / her] was] the fee that paid to the insurer for taking out this scheme...

... READ OUT...

- 1 ... a fixed amount,
- 2 a percentage of the value of the mortgage,
- 3 or, a percentage of the value of the house?

**[Responses are recorded in HORFEE1]**

*IF fee paid to insurer = a percentage value of the mortgage [HoRfee = 2]*

**HORFEP\***

What was this percentage?

Range: 1..50

**[Responses are recorded in HORFEP1]**

END OF FILTER

**HOALF\***

Did [^you / he / she] pay an additional legal fee?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses are recorded in HOALF1]**

*IF whether paid additional legal fee = yes [HoAlf = 1]*

**HOALFM\***

How much was this additional legal fee?

Range: 0..99997

**[Responses are recorded in HOALFM1]**

**[CHECK HO38]**

*IF (amount of additional legal fee = DONT KNOW) OR (amount of additional legal fee = REFUSAL) [(HoAlfm = DONT KNOW) OR (HoAlfm = REFUSAL)]*

**HOALFMB\*@**

Was it less than [^100 / 250 / 500 / 2500 pounds], more than [^100 / 250 / 500 / 2500 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hoalf1l, hoalf1u, hoalf1r, hoalf1t]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HOALI\***

[^Have you / Has [^name]] taken out additional life insurance?

1 Yes

2 No

**[Responses are recorded in HOALI1]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (((method by which raised equity on home = home reversion scheme) OR method by which raised equity on home (Wave 1)= home reversion scheme) AND NOT (method by which raised equity on home = dispute)) [(((HoRinc = 2) OR HoRinc (Wave 1) = 2) AND NOT (HoRinc = 97))]*

*IF method by which raised equity on home = home reversion scheme [HoRinc = 2]*

**HORPAY\***

[^Did / Thinking about the additional amount [^you / ^name]] raised through a home reversion scheme since we last interviewed [^you / him / her] did] [^you / he / she] receive a one-off payment or [^do you / does he / does she] receive regular payments from [^your / his / her] home reversion scheme?

1 One-off payment

2 Regular payments

3 Both

*IF payment type = [Oneoff, Both] [HoRPay = [1, 3]]*

**HORPM\***

How much was this one-off payment?

Range: 0..9999997

**[CHECK HO39]**

*IF amount of one-off payment = NONRESPONSE [Horpm = NONRESPONSE]*

**HORPMB\*@**

Was it less than [^2500 / 7500 / 15000 / 100000 pounds], more than [^2500 / 7500 / 15000 / 100000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horpml, horpmu, horpme, horpmr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (((payment type = [regular payments, both]) OR payment type (Wave 1) = regular payments) AND NOT (method by which raised equity on home = dispute)) [(((HoRPay = [2,*

3]) OR HoRpay (Wave 1) = 2) AND NOT (HoRinc = 97))]

**HOMINC\***

[^Now, thinking about the amount that [^you / ^name]] receive from the home income or mortgage annuity plan that [^you / he / she] told us about last time, how much [^do you / does he / does she] [^receive in total from these schemes / currently receive from this scheme / receive from this home income or mortgage annuity plan / scheme] / Thinking about [^your / ^name's]] home income or mortgage annuity plan, how much [^do you / does he / does she] [^receive in total from these schemes / currently receive from this scheme / receive from this home income or mortgage annuity plan / scheme]]?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK HO40]**

*IF (amount of regular payment = DONT KNOW) OR (amount of regular payment = REFUSAL) [(HoMinc = DONT KNOW) OR (HoMinc = REFUSAL)]*

**HOMINCB\* @**

Is it less than [^75 / 150 / 250 / 1000 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 250 / 1000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in homincl, homincu, homince, homincr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF method by which raised equity on home = home reversion scheme [HoRinc = 2]*

**HORMS\***

[^Do you / Does [^name] / Thinking about the home reversion scheme that [^you / ^name]] have taken out since we last interviewed [^you / him / her]] [^do you / does he / does she] pay a rent to remain in [^your / his / her] home with this scheme?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether pays rent to remain in home with scheme = yes) OR ((whether pays rent to remain in home with scheme (Wave 1) = yes) AND NOT (method by which raised equity on home = dispute)) AND NOT ((whether pays rent to remain in home with scheme = Yes) AND (method by which raised equity on home = home reversion scheme) AND (method by which raised equity on home = dispute) AND (whether pays rent to remain in home with scheme = no)) [(HoRms = 1) OR ((HoRms (Wave 1) = 1) AND NOT (HoRinc = 97)) AND NOT ((HoRms (Wave 1) = 1) AND (HoRinc = 2) AND (HoRinc = 97) AND (HoRms = 2))]*

**HORRM\***

[^How / Thinking about the new home reversion scheme and the one that [^you / ^name] told us about last time, how / Thinking about the home reversion scheme that [^you / ^name]] told us about last time, how] much rent do [^you / ^name]] currently pay [^BLANK / in total] per month?

Range: 0..99997

**[CHECK HO41]**

IF (amount of rent pays per month = DONT KNOW) OR (amount of rent pays per month = REFUSAL) [(HoRrm = DONT KNOW) OR (HoRrm = REFUSAL)]

**HORRMB\*@**

Is it less than [^75 / 150 / 250 / 1000 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 250 / 1000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in horrml, horrmu, horrme, horrmr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF method by which raised equity on home = home reversion scheme [HoRinc = 2]

**HORFEE\***

[^Was / Thinking about the plan that [^you have / [^name] has] taken out since we last interviewed [^you / him / her] was] the fee that [^you / he / she] paid to the insurer for taking out this scheme...

... READ OUT...

- 1 ... a fixed amount,
- 2 a percentage of the value of the mortgage,
- 3 or, a percentage of the value of the house?

**[Responses are recorded in HORFEE2]**

IF fee paid to insurer = percentage of mortgage value [HoRfee = 2]

**HORFEP\***

What was this percentage?

Range: 1..50

**[Responses are recorded in HORFEE2]**

END OF FILTER

**HOALF\***

Did [^you / he / she] pay an additional legal fee?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses are recorded in HOALF2]**

IF whether paid additional legal fee = yes [HoAlf = 1]

**HOALFM\***

How much was this additional legal fee?

Range: 0..99997

**[Responses are recorded in HOALFM2]**

**[CHECK HO42]**

IF (amount of additional legal fee = DONT KNOW) OR (amount of additional legal fee =

REFUSAL) [(HoAlfm = DONT KNOW) OR (HoAlfm = REFUSAL)]

**HOALFMB\*@**

Was it less than [^100 / 250 / 500 / 2500 pounds], more than [^100 / 250 / 500 / 2500 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hoalf1l, hoalf1u, hoalf1r, hoalf1t]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HOALI\***

[^Have you / Has [^name]] taken out additional life insurance?

1 Yes

2 No

**[Responses are recorded in HOALI2]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HORPOS**

Thinking about [^your / ^name's] [^BLANK / new] private arrangement, [^do you / does he / does she] receive regular payments from this source in return for a claim on the value of [^your / his / her] property?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether receives regular payments = yes [HoRpos = 1]*

**HORPOF**

What period do these payments usually cover?

01 One week

02 Two weeks

03 Three weeks

04 Four weeks

05 Calendar month

07 Two Calendar months

08 Eight times a year

09 Nine times a year

10 Ten times a year

13 Three months / 13 weeks

26 Six months / 26 weeks

52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks

90 Less than one week

95 One off / lump sum

96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period payments cover = RESPONSE [HoRpof = RESPONSE]*

**HORMU**

How much [^do you / does he / does she] usually receive?

Range: 0..999997

**[CHECK HO43]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (((period payments cover = DONT KNOW) OR period payments cover = REFUSAL) OR  
(amount usually received = DONT KNOW)) OR (amount usually received = REFUSAL)  
[(((HoRpor = DONT KNOW) OR HoRpor = REFUSAL) OR (HoRmu = DONT KNOW)) OR  
(HoRmu = REFUSAL)]*

*IF period payments cover = one week [HoRpor = 1]*

**HORMWB@**

Is it less than [<sup>25</sup> / 50 / 100 / 1000 pounds], more than [<sup>25</sup> / 50 / 100 / 1000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hormuwl, hormuwu, hormuwe, hormuwr]**

ELSE

*IF period payments cover = two weeks [HoRpor = 2]*

**HORMFB@**

Is it less than [<sup>50</sup> / 100 / 200 / 2000 pounds], more than [<sup>50</sup> / 100 / 200 / 2000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hormufl, hormufu, hormufe, hormufr]**

ELSE

*IF period payments cover = [four weeks, one month] [HoRpor = [4, 5]]*

**HORMMB@**

Is it less than [<sup>100</sup> / 200 / 400 / 4000 pounds], more than [<sup>100</sup> / 200 / 400 / 4000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hormuml, hormumu, hormume, hormumr]**

ELSE

*IF period payments cover = [one year, lump sum] [HoRpor = [52, 95]]*

**HORMYB@**

Is it less than [<sup>1250</sup> / 2500 / 5000 / 50000 pounds], more than [<sup>1250</sup> / 2500 / 5000 / 50000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hormuyl, hormuyu, hormuye, hormuyr]**

ELSE

**HORMOB@**

Is it less than [<sup>100</sup> / 200 / 400 / 4000 pounds], more than [<sup>100</sup> / 200 / 400 / 4000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hormuol, hormuou, hormuoe, hormuor]**

```

||||| END OF FILTER
|||||
ELSE
|
| IF whether receives regular payments = No [HoRpos = 2]
|
| HORPC
| Thinking about [^your / ^name's] [^BLANK / new] private arrangement, [^have you
| / has he / has she] [^BLANK / ever] received a payment from this source in return
| for a claim on the value of [^your / his / her] property?
| 1 Yes
| 2 No
|
| IF whether received payment in return for a claim on property = Yes [HoRpc = 1]
|
| HORPCM
| How much did [^you / ^name]] receive?
| Range: 0..999997
|
| [CHECK HO44]
|
| IF (amount received = DONT KNOW) OR (amount received = REFUSAL)[(HoRpcm =
| DONT KNOW) OR (HoRpcm = REFUSAL)]
|
| HORPCMB@
| Was it less than [^1000 / 5000 / 10000 / 100000 pounds], more than [^1000 /
| 5000 / 10000 / 100000 pounds] or what?
|
| [Bracket results are recorded in horpcml, horpcmu, horpcme, horpcmr]
|
| END OF FILTER
|
| IF (whether receives regular payments (Wave 1) = yes) AND NOT (method by which | raised
| equity of home = dispute) [HoRpos (Wave 1) = 1 AND NOT (HoRinc = 97)]
|
| HORPOSO*
| Are you still receiving regular payments from the private arrangement that you told
| us about last time?
| 1 Yes
| 2 No
|
| IF whether payments received from private arrangement = yes [HoRposo = 1]

```

**HORPOFO\***

What period do these payments usually cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off / lump sum
- 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

*IF period payments cover = RESPONSE [HoRpof0 = RESPONSE]*

**HORMUO\***

How much do you usually receive?

Range: 0..999997

*IF period payments cover = one week [HoRpof0 = 1]*

**[CHECK HO45]**

ELSE

*IF period payments cover = two weeks [HoRpof0 = 2]*

**[CHECK HO46]**

ELSE

*IF period payments cover = [four weeks, one month] [HoRpof0 = [4 , 5]]*

**[CHECK HO47]**

ELSE

**[CHECK HO48]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF period payments cover = NONRESPONSE OR amount usually receives  
= NONRESPONSE [HoRpof0 = NONRESPONSE OR HoRmuo = NONRESPONSE]*



|| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| **HOETSET\*@**

| INTERVIEWER: The Equity Release section is finished.

| Please enter <1> here to make the program store the current time and date.

| Range: 1..1

| [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

| **[CHECK HO49]**

| END OF FILTER

*IF NOT ((whether interviewing at same address as last time = yes) AND (date property was built (Wave 1) = RESPONSE)) [NOT ((DhSameH = 1) AND (HoOld (Wave 1) = RESPONSE))]*

| **HOOLD\***

| When was this property built?

| 1 Before 1919

| 2 1919-1944

| 3 1945-1964

| 4 1965-1984

| 5 1985 or later

| END OF FILTER

| **HOCTA\*@**

| How much Council Tax [^do you / does [^name] / does your household / does [^name's] household] currently pay?

| INTERVIEWER: Code how answer given.

| 1 Annual amount

| 2 Instalment

| 3 Percentage

| 4 Does not pay Council Tax

*IF payment of council tax - annual amount of instalment reported = annual amount[HoCTA = 1]*

| **HOCTY\*@**

| INTERVIEWER: Enter annual amount.

| Range: 0..9997

| *IF (annual amount of council tax = DONT KNOW) OR (annual amount of council tax = REFUSAL) [(HoCTY = DONT KNOW) OR (HoCTY = REFUSAL)]*

| **HOCTYB\*@**

| Is it less than [^500 / 750 / 1000 / 2000 pounds], more than [^500 / 750 / 1000 / 2000 pounds] or what?

| **[Bracket results are recorded in hoctyl, hoctyu, hoctye, hoctyr@]**

| END OF FILTER

| ELSE

| *IF payment of council tax - annual amount of instalment reported = instalment*

| [*HoCTA = 2*]

|

| **HOCTI\*@**

| INTERVIEWER: Enter amount of instalment.

| Range: 0..9997

|

| *IF (amount council tax instalment = DONT KNOW) OR (amount council tax instalment =*

| *REFUSAL) [(HOCTI = DONT KNOW) OR (HOCTI = REFUSAL)]*

|

| **HOCTLB\*@**

| Is it less than [<sup>^</sup>50 / 75 / 100 / 200 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>50 / 75 / 100 / 200

| pounds] or what?

|

| [**Bracket results are recorded in hoctil, hoctiu, hoctie, hoctir@**]

|

| END OF FILTER

|

| **HOCTN\*@**

| How many instalments are there, over the whole year?

| Range: 1..50

|

| END OF FILTER

|

| END OF FILTER

|

| *IF (payment of council tax = [annual amount, instalments]) AND (household size = 1) [(HoCTA =*

| *[1, 2]) AND (HHTot = 1)]*

|

| **HODISC\*@**

| [<sup>^</sup>Did / In addition to [<sup>^</sup>your / [<sup>^</sup>name's] benefit, did] [<sup>^</sup>you / [<sup>^</sup>name]] receive a 25%

| single person discount in relation to Council Tax?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

|

| END OF FILTER

|

| *IF payment of council tax - annual amount of instalment reported <> does not pay Council Tax*

| *[HoCTA <> 4]*

|

| **HOCTB\*@**

| [<sup>^</sup>Are you / Is [<sup>^</sup>name]] allowed Council Tax benefit or rebate, to help pay [<sup>^</sup>your / his /

| her] Council Tax?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

|

| *IF whether allowed benefit or rebate to help pay council tax = yes [HoCTB = 1]*

|

| **HOCTBA\*@**

| How much was allowed?

| Range: 0..9997

|

| *IF (whether allowed benefit or rebate to help pay council tax = DONT KNOW) OR (whether*

| *allowed benefit or rebate to help pay council tax = REFUSAL)*

| *[(HoCTBA = DONT KNOW) OR (HoCTBA = REFUSAL)]*

|

|

|| | **HOCTBAB\*@**  
|| | Was it less than [^50 / 75 / 100 / 200 pounds], more than [^50 / 75 / 100 / 200  
|| | pounds] or what?

|| | **[Bracket results are recorded in hoctbal, hoctbau, hoctbae, hoctbar@]**

|| | END OF FILTER

|| | **HOCTBP\*@**

|| | What period did this cover?

- || | 01 One week
- || | 02 Two weeks
- || | 03 Three weeks
- || | 04 Four weeks
- || | 05 Calendar month
- || | 07 Two Calendar months
- || | 08 Eight times a year
- || | 09 Nine times a year
- || | 10 Ten times a year
- || | 13 Three months / 13 weeks
- || | 26 Six months / 26 weeks
- || | 52 One Year / 12 months / 52 weeks
- || | 90 Less than one week
- || | 95 One off / lump sum
- || | 96 None of these (EXPLAIN IN A NOTE)

|| | END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

**HOSW\*@**

How much did [^you / name] pay for water and sewerage charges in the last year, that is since [^date a year ago]?

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO50]**

*IF (amount paid for water and sewerage in past year = DONT KNOW) OR (amount paid for water and sewerage in past year = REFUSAL) [(HoSW = DONT KNOW) OR (HoSW = REFUSAL)]*

| **HOSWB\*@**

| Was it less than [^50 / 100 / 200 / 500 pounds], more than [^50 / 100 / 200 / 500  
| pounds] or what?

| **[Bracket results are recorded in hoswl, hoswu, hoswe, hoswr]**

| END OF FILTER

*IF NOT (how occupies accommodation = [rent free, squatting, own it outright]) AND (at least one person named at HoWHN is eligible for interview = yes) [NOT (HoTenu = [5, 6, 1]) AND (HoEli = 1)]*

| **HODIFF\***

| Many people these days are finding it difficult to keep up with their housing payments.  
| In the last 12 months would you say [^you have / [^name] has] had difficulties paying

| for [^your / his / her] accommodation?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| **HODIFFT\***

| In the last 12 months [^have you / has [^name]] ever found [^yourself / himself / herself] more than two months behind with [^your / his / her] [^rent / mortgage / mortgage and rent]?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| **HODOC\***

| INTERVIEWER: Code whether respondent consulted documents when answering the questions about mortgage / rent.

- | 1 Respondent consulted documents
- | 2 Respondent did not consult documents

| **HOINTA\***

| INTERVIEWER: How accurate do you think the answers given by the respondent were?

- | 1 Very accurate
- | 2 Fairly accurate
- | 3 Not very accurate
- | 4 Not at all accurate

| END OF FILTER

| **HORET\***

| INTERVIEWER: Ask or code.

| Some accommodation is only available to people over a certain age (usually 55 or 60).

| This is sometimes called 'retirement housing'. Is [^your / [^name's]] home retirement housing?

| INTERVIEWER: If the respondent seems unsure, code no.

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No
- | 3 Don't know

| *IF (whether interviewing at same address as last time <> yes) OR ((whether interviewing at same address as last time = yes) AND (year moved into accommodation (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)) [(DhSameH <> 1) OR ((DhSameH = 1) AND (HoMove (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE)]*

| **HOMOVE\***

| In what year did [^you / [^name]] move to this accommodation?

| INTERVIEWER: If born there, code year of birth.

| IF ASKED: Code earliest year a member of household moved to the accommodation.

| Range: 1900..2050

| *IF year moved into accommodation = RESPONSE [HoMove = RESPONSE]*

| **[CHECK HO51]**

| **[CHECK HO52]**

| **[CHECK HO53]**

| **[CHECK HO54]**

| END OF FILTER  
|  
| END OF FILTER

| *IF whether interviewing at same address as last time <> yes [DhSameH <> 1]*

| **HORMOV\***

| People move for many different reasons. In general terms, what were the reasons you moved home?

| INTERVIEWER: Probe fully.

| CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- | 01 Job relocated
- | 02 Moved to start a new job
- | 03 Moved to a better area, or one with fewer problems
- | 04 Moved to a more suitable home
- | 05 Bought own home
- | 06 Was evicted, couldn't afford to pay rent or had home repossessed
- | 07 Moved for health reasons
- | 08 Moved in with partner
- | 09 Split from partner
- | 10 Moved in with family or friends
- | 11 Moved to be nearer family and / or friends
- | 12 Other financial reason such as to release capital or couldn't afford to run house
- | 95 Other reason (Please specify)

| **[Multiple responses to HORMOV are recorded in variables HORMV1 to HORMV4]**

| **[code maximum 13 out of 13 possible responses]**

| *IF reasons moved house = other [HoRMov = 95]*

| **HORMOVO\*@**

| INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other reason.

| String 80

| **[Open responses to Hormovo are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Hormov (recorded in Hormv1 to Hormv4). These merged responses are recorded in variables Hormvm1 to Hormvm4]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF reasons moved house.CARDINAL > 1 [HoRMov.CARDINAL > 1]*

| **HORMAIN\***

| What was your main reason for moving home?

- | 01 [^Job relocated]
- | 02 [^Moved to start a new job]
- | 03 [^Moved to a better area, or one with fewer problems]
- | 04 [^Moved to a more suitable home]
- | 05 [^Bought own home]
- | 06 [^Was evicted, couldn't afford to pay rent or had home repossessed]
- | 07 [^Moved for health reasons]
- | 08 [^Moved in with partner]
- | 09 [^Split from partner]
- | 10 [^Moved in with family or friends]
- | 11 [^Moved to be nearer family and/or friends]

12 [^Other financial reason such as to release capital or couldn't afford to run house]  
95 [^Other reason (Please specify)]

*IF main reason moved house = new home more suitable [HoRMain = 4]*

**HORMOVA\***

In what way is your new home more suitable?

INTERVIEWER: Probe fully.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Smaller
- 2 Larger
- 3 Fewer maintenance problems
- 4 More suitable given respondent's health problems
- 5 Other reason (Please specify)

***[Multiple responses to HORMOVA are recorded in variables HORMVA1 to HORMVA4]  
[code maximum 5 out of 5 possible responses]***

*IF reasons why new home more suitable = other [HoRMova = 5]*

**HORMOVB\* @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other reason

String 360

***[Open responses to Hormovb are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Hormova (recorded in Hormva1to Hormva4). These merged responses are recorded in variables Hormam1 to Hormam4]***

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**HOROOM\***

How many rooms [^do you / does [^name] / does your household / does [^name's] household] occupy here, including bedrooms but not counting bathrooms, kitchens and any rooms [^you / he / she] let[^BLANK/s] or sublet[^BLANK/s]?

Range: 1..30

END OF FILTER

**HOADPT\***

SHOW CARD AK

Some homes have special features to assist people who have physical impairments or health problems. Whether [^you use / [^name] uses] them or not, does [^your / his / her] home have any of the features on this card?

PROBE: What others?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 01 Widened doorways or hallways
- 02 Ramps or street level entrances
- 03 Hand rails
- 04 Automatic or easy open doors
- 05 Accessible parking or drop off site
- 06 Bathroom modifications
- 07 Kitchen modifications
- 08 Lift

- 09 Chair lift or stair glide
- 10 Alerting devices, such as button alarms
- 95 Any other special features
- 96 None of these

***[Multiple responses to HOADPT are recorded in variables HOADP1 to HOADP10]  
[code maximum 12 out of 12 possible responses]***

***[CHECK HO55]***

**HOPROB**

SHOW CARD AL

Does [^your / [^name's]] accommodation have any of these problems?

PROBE: What others?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 01 Shortage of space
- 02 Noise from neighbours
- 03 Other street noise, such as traffic, businesses, factories
- 04 Too dark, not enough light
- 05 Pollution, grime or other environmental problems caused by traffic or industry
- 06 Rising damp in floors and walls
- 07 Water getting in from roof, gutters or windows
- 08 Bad condensation problem
- 09 Problems with electrical wiring or plumbing
- 10 General rot and decay
- 11 Problems with insects, mice or rats
- 12 Too cold in winter
- 95 Other problems
- 96 None of these

***[Multiple responses to HOPROB are recorded in variables HOPROB1 to HOPRB10]  
[code maximum 14 out of 14 possible responses]***

***[CHECK HO56]***

*IF (problems accommodation has = other) [HoProb = 95]*

|

| **HOPROBO**

| INTERVIEWER: ENTER OTHER PROBLEMS

| String 40

|

| ***[Open responses to Hoprobo are coded and merged with the multiple responses to  
Hoprob (recorded in Hoprob1 to Hoprob10). These merged responses are recorded in  
variables Hoprm1 to Hoprm10]***

|

END OF FILTER

**HOHAVE**

SHOW CARD AM

At the present time, [^do you / does [^name] / does your household / does [^name's]  
household] have any of the following items?

PROBE: What others?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

INTERVIEWER: Items that are provided communally may be included.

- 01 Television
- 02 Video recorder

- 03 CD player
- 04 Deep freeze or fridge freezer (exclude fridge only)
- 05 Washing machine
- 06 Tumble Dryer / Washer - Dryer
- 07 Dish washer
- 08 Microwave oven
- 09 Computer
- 10 On-line-digital / Satellite / Cable Television
- 11 Phone (landline)
- 12 DVD player
- 95 All of these
- 96 None of these

***[Multiple responses to HOHAVE are recorded in variables HOHAV1 to HOHAV12]  
[code maximum 12 out of 14 possible responses]***

*IF household items have = none [HoHave = 96]*

|  
| ***[CHECK HO58]***

ELSE

| ***[CHECK HO59]***

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items have = RESPONSE) AND NOT (household items have = none) [(HoHave = RESPONSE) AND NOT (HoHave = 96)]*

| **HOHAVB**

| SHOW CARD AM

| Did [^you / [^name] / your household / [^name's] household] buy the item / any of the items

| you've just mentioned in the last two years, that is since [^date two years ago]? [^BLANK /

| Please only include equipment that you have bought. Do not include subscriptions, call costs

| or line rental.]

| PROBE: What others?

| CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

| INTERVIEWER: Do not code if communally provided.

| 01 [^Television]

| 02 [^Video recorder]

| 03 [^CD player]

| 04 [^Deep freeze or fridge freezer (exclude fridge only)]

| 05 [^Washing machine]

| 06 [^Tumble Dryer / Washer Dryer]

| 07 [^Dish washer]

| 08 [^Microwave oven]

| 09 [^Computer]

| 10 [^On-line digital / Satellite / Cable Television]

| 11 [^Phone (landline)]

| 12 [^DVD player]

| 95 [^All of these]

| 96 [^None of these]

| ***[Multiple responses to HOHAVB are recorded in variables HOHAVB1 to HOHAVB12]  
[code maximum 12 out of 14 possible responses]***

**[CHECK HO60]**

*IF (household items bought in past two years = television) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 1) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV01**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^Television] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package. Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO61]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^100 / 200 / 500 / 1000 pounds], more than [^100 / 200 / 500 / 1000 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hohv01l, hohv01u, hohv01e, hohv01r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = video recorder) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 2) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV02**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^Video recorder] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO62]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^75 / 100 / 300 / 750 pounds], more than [^75 / 100 / 300 / 750 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hohv02l, hohv02u, hohv02e, hohv02r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = CD player) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 3) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV03**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^CD player] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO63]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^75 / 150 / 300 / 500 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 300 / 500 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv03l, hohv03u, hohv03e, hohv03r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = deep freeze or fridge freezer) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 4) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV04**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^deep freeze or fridge freezer] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO64]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^75 / 150 / 300 / 500 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 300 / 500 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv04l, hohv04u, hohv04e, hohv04r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = washing machine) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 5) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV05**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^washing machine] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO65]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^150 / 250 / 350 / 500 pounds], more than [^150 / 250 / 350 / 500 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv05l, hohv05u, hohv05e, hohv05r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = tumble dryer / washer dryer) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 6) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV06**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^tumble dryer / washer dryer] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO66]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^100 / 200 / 300 / 500 pounds], more than [^100 / 200 / 300 / 500 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv06l, hohv06u, hohv06e, hohv06r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = dish washer) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 7) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV07**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^dish washer] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO67]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^100 / 250 / 350 / 500 pounds], more than [^100 / 250 / 350 / 500 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv07l, hohv07u, hohv07e, hohv07r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = microwave oven) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 8) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV08**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^microwave oven] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO68]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^50 / 100 / 200 / 400 pounds], more than [^50 / 100 / 200 / 400 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv08l, hohv08u, hohv08e, hohv08r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = computer) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 9) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV09**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^computer] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO69]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^500 / 750 / 1000 / 2000 pounds], more than [^500 / 750 / 1000 / 2000 pounds] or what?

**||| [Bracket results are recorded in hohv09l, hohv09u, hohv09e, hohv09r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = on-line digital / satellite / cable TV) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 10) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV10**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^on-line digital / satellite / cable TV] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO70]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV[10] = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^500 / 750 / 1000 / 2000 pounds], more than [^500 / 750 / 1000 / 2000 pounds] or what?

**||| [Bracket results are recorded in hohv10l, hohv10u, hohv10e, hohv10r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = phone) OR (household items bought in past two years = all) [(HoHavB = 11) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV11**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^phone] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO71]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV[11] = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^25 / 50 / 100 / 150 pounds], more than [^25 / 50 / 100 / 150 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv11l, hohv11u, hohv11e, hohv11r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (household items bought in past two years = DVD player) OR (HoHavB = all) [(HoHavB = 12) OR (HoHavB = 95)]*

**HOHV12**

How much in total did [^you / ^name] / your household / [^name's] household] pay for the [^DVD player] excluding any interest paid on loans?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £. Accept approximate amount.

If items bought as combined unit / package e.g. TV and video enter total amount once only and code 9997 for the other items in the package.

Record what was paid, i.e. price after any discounts from trade-in or money received from selling the old one. If purchased on hp or payments deferred to future collect retail price excluding interest on loan etc.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO72]**

*IF interest paid in total = NONRESPONSE [HoHV[12] = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOHVB@**

Was it less than [^75 / 150 / 300 / 500 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 300 / 500 pounds] or what?

**[[ Bracket results are recorded in hohv12l, hohv12u, hohv12e, hohv12r]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

|  
END OF FILTER

**HOCO@**

Now I have some questions about [^your / [^name's] / you and your household's] spending on some other common items. [^BLANK / Please include the amount spent by all household members]

INTERVIEWER: Enter <1> to continue

Range: 1..1

**HOFOOD**

First thinking about [^you / [^name]] / your household's / [^name's] household's weekly food bills, approximately how much [^do you / does [^name] / does your household / does [^name's] household] *usually* spend in total on food and groceries - include all food, bread, milk, soft drinks, etc and meals on wheels; *exclude* pet food, alcohol, cigarettes, takeaways and meals out?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £.

If asked, tell respondent to exclude cleaning products.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK HO73]**

*IF (usual amount spent on food per week = DONT KNOW) OR (usual amount spent on food per week = REFUSAL) [(HoFood = DONT KNOW) OR (HoFood = REFUSAL)]*

|  
| **HOFOODB@**

| Is it usually less than [^30 / 50 / 75 / 150 pounds], more than [^30 / 50 / 75 / 150 pounds] or what?

|  
| **[Bracket results are recorded in hofoodl, hofoodu, hofoode, hofoodr]**

|  
END OF FILTER

**HOOUTF**

Approximately how much [^do you / does [^name] / does your household / does [^name's] household] *usually* spend in a month in total on takeaways and food consumed out of the home - include all food consumed out of the home e.g. restaurants, meals consumed at the workplace etc?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £.

Range: 0..9997

*IF (usual amount spent every month on eating out = DONT KNOW) OR (usual amount spent every month on eating out = REFUSAL) [(HoOutf = DONT KNOW) OR (HoOutf = REFUSAL)]*

|  
| **HOOUTFB@**

| Is it usually less than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500 pounds], more than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500 pounds] or what?

|  
| **[Bracket results are recorded in hooutfl, hooutfu, hooutfe, hooutfr]**

|  
END OF FILTER

**[CHECK HO74]**

**HOMEAL**

Can I just check, in the last 12 months that is since [^date a year ago] did [^you / [^name]] (or

anyone else in [^your / his / her] household) ever cut the size of your meals or skip meals because there wasn't enough money for food?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether cuts size of meals because of lack of money = yes [HoMeal = 1]*

|  
| **HOMOFT**  
| Did this happen ... READ OUT ...  
| 1 ... one or more times per month,  
| 2 almost every month,  
| 3 most months but not every month,  
| 4 or, once or twice in the year?

|  
| END OF FILTER

### **HOCL**

The last three questions about spending are all about how much you actually spent in the last four weeks, whether this was for you or someone else. Thinking of the last four weeks (since [^date four weeks ago]), approximately how much did [^you / [^name] (or a member of this household)] spend on clothes, including outerwear, underwear, footwear and accessories?  
INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £.

Range: 0..9997

### **[CHECK HO75]**

*IF amount spent on clothing in past month = NONRESPONSE [HoCl = NONRESPONSE]*

|  
| **HOCLB@**  
| Was it less than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500 pounds], more than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500 pounds]  
| or what?

|  
| **[Bracket results are recorded in hocll, hoclu, hocle, hoclr]**

|  
| END OF FILTER

### **HOLEIS**

SHOWCARD AN

Again, thinking of the last four weeks (since [^date four weeks ago]), approximately how much did [^you / [^name] (or a member of this household)] spend on leisure activities, other than eating out, of the kind listed on this card?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £.

Range: 0..9997

### **[CHECK HO76]**

*IF amount spent on leisure activities in past month = NONRESPONSE [HoLeis = NONRESPONSE]*

|  
| **HOLEISB@**  
| Was it less than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500 pounds], more than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500  
| pounds] or what?

|  
| **[Bracket results are recorded in holeisl, holeisu, holeise, holeisr]**

|

END OF FILTER

**HOTRAN**

And thinking of the last four weeks (since [^date four weeks ago]), how much money have [^you / ^name] (or a member of this household) given to relatives or other people outside your household, including money to charity?

INTERVIEWER: Write in to nearest £.

Include all donations to charities, all monetary transfers to individuals (when nothing received in return). Do not include lottery.

Range: 0..9997

**[CHECK H077]**

*IF amount given to charity and individuals outside household in past month =  
NONRESPONSE [HoTran = NONRESPONSE]*

|

| **HOTRANB@**

| Was it less than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500 pounds], more than [^30 / 50 / 150 / 500  
| pounds] or what?

|

| **[Bracket results are recorded in hotranl, hotranu, hotrane, hotranr]**

|

END OF FILTER

**HOCENH**

[^Do you / Does [^name]] have any form of central heating in [^your / his / her] accommodation?

INTERVIEWER: Include storage heaters.

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether has central heating = Yes [HoCenH = 1]*

|

| **HOCENP**

| Is the central heating fuelled by ...READ OUT...

| INTERVIEWER: Code coal, wood etc. as solid fuel.

| 1 ...mains gas,

| 2 electricity,

| 3 solid fuel,

| 4 oil,

| 5 or something else?

|

END OF FILTER

**HOOHEA**

[^Do you / Does [^name]] use any other forms of heating such as ...READ OUT...

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

INTERVIEWER: Do not include if available in the household but not used.

1 ...gas fire,

2 electric fire,

3 paraffin heaters,

4 open fire (log/wood/coal),

95 or something else? (please specify)

96 SPONTANEOUS: No other heating

**[Multiple responses to HOOHEA are recorded in variables HOOHEA1 to HOOHEA3]  
[code maximum 5 out of 6 possible responses]**

**[CHECK HO78]**

*IF (additional forms of heating used = other) [HoOhea = 95]*

**HOOHEO@**  
INTERVIEWER: RECORD OTHER TYPE OF HEATING  
String 60

*[Open responses to Hooheo are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Hoohea (recorded | in Hoohea1 to Hoohea3). These merged responses are recorded in variables Hoohem1 to Hoohem3]*

END OF FILTER

**HOFUEL**

SHOW CARD AO

Can I just check, which of these do you use in your home, either for heating or for any other purpose?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

INTERVIEWER: Do not include if available in the household but not used.

- 1 Mains gas
- 2 Electricity
- 3 Coal / Smokeless fuel
- 4 Paraffin / Bottled gas
- 5 Oil
- 6 Wood
- 95 Other source of fuel or power

**[Multiple responses to HOFUEL are recorded in variables HOFUEL1 to HOFUEL5]  
[code maximum 7 out of 7 possible responses]**

*IF (household fuel = mains gas) AND (household fuel = electricity)  
[(HoFuel = 1) AND (HoFuel = 2)]*

**HOFSUP**

Do you get your gas and electricity from the same supplier or from different suppliers?

- 1 Same supplier
- 2 Different suppliers

*IF whether has same supplier for gas and electricity = same [HoFSup = 1]*

**HOFTOG**

And do you pay for your gas and electricity together or separately?

- 1 Pay together
- 2 Pay separately

*IF whether pays for gas and electricity together = together [HoFTog = 1]*

**HOFPAY**

SHOW CARD AP

Which of these methods do you use to pay for your gas and electricity?

- 1 Direct debit
- 2 Monthly / quarterly bill (including standing orders)
- 3 Pre-payment (key / card or token) meters
- 4 Included in rent

```

| | | 5 Frequent cash payment (ie more frequent than once a month)
| | | 6 Fuel direct / direct from benefits
| | | 7 Staywarm scheme
| | | 95 Other
| | |
| | | IF method of payment for gas and electricity = direct debit [HoFPay = 1]
| | |
| | | HOFD
| | | Is your gas and electricity direct debit monthly or quarterly?
| | | 1 Monthly
| | | 2 Quarterly
| | |
| | | IF frequency of direct debit for gas and electricity = monthly [HoFD = 1]
| | |
| | | HOFDM
| | | How much is your monthly direct debit for your gas and electricity?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of monthly direct debit for gas and electricity = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoFDm = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOFDMB@
| | | Is it less than [^25 / 50 / 75 / 100 pounds], more than [^25 / 50 / 75 / 100
| | | pounds] or what?
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in hofdml, hofdmu, hofdme, hofdmr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF frequency of direct debit for gas and electricity = quarterly [HoFD = 2]
| | |
| | | HOFDQ
| | | How much is your quarterly direct debit for your gas and electricity?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of quarterly direct debit for gas and electricity = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoFDq = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOFDQB@
| | | Is it less than [^75 / 150 / 205 / 300 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 205 / 300
| | | pounds] or what?
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in hofdq, hofdqu, hofdqe, hofdqr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF method of payment for gas and electricity = bill [HoFPay = 2]
| | |
| | |

```

**HOFB**

Is your gas and electricity bill monthly or quarterly?

- 1 Monthly
- 2 Quarterly

*IF frequency of bill for gas and electricity = monthly [HoFB = 1]*

**HOFBMW**

How much is your monthly gas and electricity bill during *winter*?

Range: 0..999

*IF amount of monthly gas and electricity bill in winter = NONRESPONSE*

*[HoFBmw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFBMW@**

Is it less than [<sup>^</sup>25 / 50 / 75 / 100 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>25 / 50 / 75 / 100 pounds] or what?

***[Bracket results are recorded in hofbmwl, hofbmwu, hofbmwe, hofbmwr]***

END OF FILTER

**HOFBMS**

And how much is your monthly gas and electricity bill during *summer*?

Range: 0..999

*IF amount of monthly gas and electricity bill in summer = NONRESPONSE*

*[HoFBms = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFBMS@**

Is it less than [<sup>^</sup>25 / 50 / 75 / 100 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>25 / 50 / 75 / 100 pounds] or what?

***[Bracket results are recorded in hofbmsl, hofbmsu, hofbmse, hofbmsr]***

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF frequency of bill for gas and electricity = quarterly [HoFB = 2]*

**HOFBQW**

How much is your quarterly gas and electricity bill during *winter*?

Range: 0..999

*IF amount of quarterly gas and electricity bill in winter = NONRESPONSE*

*[HoFBqw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFBQW@**

Is it less than [<sup>^</sup>75 / 150 / 200 / 300 pounds], more than [<sup>^</sup>75 / 150 / 200 / 300 pounds] or what?

***[Bracket results are recorded in hofbqwl, hofbqwu, hofbqwe, hofbqwr]***

END OF FILTER

```

| | | | | HOFBQS
| | | | | And how much is your quarterly gas and electricity bill during summer?
| | | | | Range: 0..999
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount of quarterly gas and electricity bill in summer = NONRESPONSE
| | | | | [HoFBqs = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFBQSB@
| | | | | Is it less than [^75 / 150 / 200 / 300 pounds], more than [^75 / 150 / 200 / 300
| | | | | pounds] or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hofbqsl, hofbqsu, hofbqse, hofbqsr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF method of payment for gas and electricity = prepay [HoFPay = 3]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFPW
| | | | | In winter, how much do you pay into the gas and electricity meter in an average
| | | | | week (to the nearest pound)?
| | | | | Range: 0..99
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount pays into gas and electricity meter in average week in winter =
| | | | | NONRESPONSE [HoFPw = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFPWB@
| | | | | Is it less than [^5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds], more than [^5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds]
| | | | | or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hofpwl, hofpwu, hofpwe, hofpwr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFPS
| | | | | And in summer, how much do you pay into the gas and electricity meter in an
| | | | | average week (to the nearest pound)?
| | | | | Range: 0..99
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount pays into gas and electricity meter in average week in summer =
| | | | | NONRESPONSE [HoFPs = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFPSB@
| | | | | Is it less than [^5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds], more than [^5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds]
| | | | | or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hofpsl, hofpsu, hofpse, hofpsr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE

```

```

| | | | |
| | | | | IF method of payment for gas and electricity = [included in rent, frequent cash payment,
| | | | | direct from benefits, other] [HoFPay = [4, 5, 6, 95]]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFOW
| | | | | In winter, how much do you spend on gas and electricity in an average week
| | | | | (to the nearest pound)?
| | | | | Range: 0..99
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount spent on gas and electricity in average week in winter =
| | | | | NONRESPONSE [HoFOw = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFOWB@
| | | | | Is it less than [5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds], more than [5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds]
| | | | | or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hofowl, hofowu, hofowe, hofowr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFOS
| | | | | And in summer how much do you spend on gas and electricity in an average
| | | | | week (to the nearest pound)?
| | | | | Range: 0..99
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount spent on gas and electricity in average week in summer =
| | | | | NONRESPONSE [HoFOs = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFOSB@
| | | | | Is it less than [5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds], more than [5 / 15 / 25 / 50 pounds]
| | | | | or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hofosl, hofosu, hofose, hofosr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF method of payment for gas and electricity = staywarm scheme [HoFPay = 7]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFSP
| | | | | Is your Staywarm payment weekly, monthly or quarterly?
| | | | | 1 Weekly
| | | | | 2 Monthly
| | | | | 3 Quarterly
| | | | |
| | | | | IF frequency of Staywarm payment = weekly [HoFSp = 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOFSW
| | | | | How much is your weekly Staywarm payment for your gas and electricity?
| | | | | Range: 0..999
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount of Staywarm payment for gas and electricity per week =
| | | | | NONRESPONSE [HoFSw = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | |

```





```

| | | How much is your quarterly direct debit for your gas?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of quarterly direct debit for gas = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoGDq = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOGDQB@
| | | Is it less than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150 pounds], more than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150
| | | pounds] or what?
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in hogdql, hogdqu, hogdqe, hogdqr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF method of payment for gas = bill [HoGPay = 2]
| | |
| | | HOGBP
| | | Is your gas bill monthly or quarterly?
| | | 1 Monthly
| | | 2 Quarterly
| | |
| | | IF frequency of bill for gas = monthly [HoGBp = 1]
| | |
| | | HOGBMW
| | | How much is your monthly gas bill during winter?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of monthly gas bill in winter = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoGBmw = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOGBMW@
| | | Is it less than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75 pounds], more than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75 pounds]
| | | or what?
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in hogbmwl, hogbmwu, hogbmwe, hogbmwr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | HOGBMS
| | | And how much is your monthly gas bill during summer?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of monthly gas bill in summer = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoGBms = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOGBMS@
| | | Is it less than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75 pounds], more than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75 pounds]
| | | or what?
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in hogbmsl, hogbmsu, hogbmse, hogbmsr]

```

```

| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF frequency of bill for gas = quarterly [HoGBp = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOGBQW
| | | | | How much is your quarterly gas bill during winter?
| | | | | Range: 0..999
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount of quarterly gas bill in winter = NONRESPONSE
| | | | | [HoGBqw = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOGBQWB@
| | | | | Is it less than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150 pounds], more than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150
| | | | | pounds] or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hogbqwl, hogbqwu, hogbqwe, hogbqwr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | HOGBQS
| | | | | And how much is your quarterly gas bill during summer?
| | | | | Range: 0..999
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount of quarterly gas bill in summer = NONRESPONSE
| | | | | [HoGBqs = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOGBQSB@
| | | | | Is it less than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150 pounds], more than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150
| | | | | pounds] or what?
| | | | |
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hogbqsl, hogbqsu, hogbqse, hogbqsr]
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF method of payment for gas = prepay [HoGPay = 3]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOGPW
| | | | | In winter, how much do you pay into the gas meter in an average week (to the
| | | | | nearest pound)?
| | | | | Range: 0..99
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount pays into gas meter in average week in winter = NONRESPONSE
| | | | | [HoGPw = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOGPWB@
| | | | | Is it less than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds]

```

or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hogpwl, hogpwu, hogpwe, hogpwr]**

END OF FILTER

**HOGPS**  
 And in *summer*, how much do you pay into the gas meter in an average week (to the nearest pound)?  
 Range: 0..99

*IF amount pays into gas meter in average week in summer = NONRESPONSE*  
*[HoGPs = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOGPSB@**  
 Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hogpsl, hogpsu, hogpse, hogpsr]**

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF method of payment for gas = [included in rent, frequent cash payment, direct from benefits, other] [HoGPay = [4, 5, 6, 95]]*

**HOGOW**  
 In *winter*, how much do you spend on gas in an average week (to the nearest pound)?  
 Range: 0..99

*IF amount spent on gas in average week in winter = NONRESPONSE*  
*[HoGOw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOGOWB@**  
 Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hogowl, hogowu, hogowe, hogowr]**

END OF FILTER

**HOGOS**  
 And in *summer* how much do you spend on gas in an average week (to the nearest pound)?  
 Range: 0..99

*IF amount spent on gas in in average week in summer = NONRESPONSE*  
*[HoGOs = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOGOSB@**  
 Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hogosl, hogosu, hogose, hogosr]**



```

| | | How much is your quarterly direct debit for your electricity?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of quarterly direct debit for electricity = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoEDq = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOEDQB@
| | | Is it less than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150 pounds], more than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150
| | | pounds] or what?
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in hoedql, hoedqu, hoedqe, hoedqr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF method of payment for electricity = bill [HoEPay = 2]
| | |
| | | HOEB
| | | Is your electricity bill monthly or quarterly?
| | | 1 Monthly
| | | 2 Quarterly
| | |
| | | IF frequency of bill for electricity = monthly [HoEB = 1]
| | |
| | | HOEBMW
| | | How much is your monthly electricity bill during winter?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of monthly electricity bill in winter = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoEBmw = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOEBMWB@
| | | Is it less than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75 pounds], more than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75
| | | pounds] or what?
| | |
| | | [Bracket results are recorded in hoebmw, hoebmwu, hoebmwe, hoebmwr]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | HOEBMS
| | | And how much is your monthly electricity bill during summer?
| | | Range: 0..999
| | |
| | | IF amount of monthly electricity bill in summer = NONRESPONSE
| | | [HoEBms = NONRESPONSE]
| | |
| | | HOEBMSB@
| | | Is it less than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75 pounds], more than [^10 / 25 / 40 / 75 pounds]
| | | or what?
| | |
| | |

```

```

| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hoebmsl, hoebmsu, hoebmse, hoebmsr]
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF frequency of bill for electricity = quarterly [HoEB = 2]
| | | |
| | | | HOEBQW
| | | | How much is your quarterly electricity bill during winter?
| | | | Range: 0..999
| | | |
| | | | IF amount of quarterly electricity bill in winter = NONRESPONSE
| | | | [HoEBqw = NONRESPONSE]
| | | |
| | | | HOEBQWB@
| | | | Is it less than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150 pounds], more than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150
| | | | pounds] or what?
| | | |
| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hoebqwl, hoebqwu, hoebqwe, hoebqwr]
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | HOEBQS
| | | | And how much is your quarterly electricity bill during summer?
| | | | Range: 0..999
| | | |
| | | | IF amount of quarterly electricity bill in summer = NONRESPONSE
| | | | [HoEBqs = NONRESPONSE]
| | | |
| | | | HOEBQSB@
| | | | Is it less than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150 pounds], more than [^30 / 75 / 100 / 150
| | | | pounds] or what?
| | | |
| | | | [Bracket results are recorded in hoebqsl, hoebqsu, hoebqse, hoebqsr]
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END OF FILTER
| | | |
| | | | ELSE
| | | |
| | | | IF method of payment for electricity = prepay [HoEPay = 3]
| | | |
| | | | HOEPW
| | | | In winter, how much do you pay into the electricity meter in an average week
| | | | (to the nearest pound)?
| | | | Range: 0..99
| | | |
| | | | HOEPS
| | | | And in summer, how much do you spend pay into the electricity meter in an
| | | | average week (to the nearest pound)?
| | | | Range: 0..99
| | | |
| | | |

```

IF amount pays into electricity meter in average week in summer =  
 NONRESPONSE [HoEPs = NONRESPONSE]

**HOEPSB@**  
 Is it less than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds]  
 or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hoeps1 , hoepsu , hoepse, hoepsr]**

END OF FILTER

ELSE

IF method of payment for electricity = [included in rent, frequent cash payments, direct  
 from benefits, other] [HoEPay = [4, 5, 6, 95]]

**HOEOW**  
 In *winter*, how much do you spend on electricity in an average week (to the  
 nearest pound)?  
 Range: 0..99

IF amount spent on electricity in average week in winter =  
 NONRESPONSE [HoEOw = NONRESPONSE]

**HOEOWB@**  
 Is it less than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds]  
 or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hoeowl, hoeowu, hoeowe, hoeowr]**

END OF FILTER

**HOEOS**  
 And in *summer*, how much do you household spend on electricity in an average  
 week (to the nearest pound)?  
 Range: 0..99

IF amount spent on electricity in average week in summer = NONRESPONSE  
 [HoEOs = NONRESPONSE]

**HOEOSB@**  
 Is it less than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [^5 / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds]  
 or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hoeosl, hoeosu, hoeose, hoeosr]**

END OF FILTER

*IF Household fuel = coal [HoFuel = 3]*

**HOF CW**

Now thinking about how much coal / smokeless fuel you use in your home.  
In *winter*, how much do you spend on coal / smokeless fuel in an average week (to the nearest pound)?

INTERVIEWER: If free coal enter zero.

Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on coal / smokeless fuel in average week in winter =  
NONRESPONSE [HoFCw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOF CWB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hofcwl, hofcwu, hofcwe, hofcwr]**

END OF FILTER

**HOF CS**

And in *summer*, how much do you spend on coal / smokeless fuel in an average week (to the nearest pound)?

INTERVIEWER: If free coal enter zero.

Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on coal / smokeless fuel in average week in summer =  
NONRESPONSE [HoFCs = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOF CSB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hofcsl, , hofcsu, hofcse, hofcsr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF household fuel = paraffin / bottled gas [HoFuel= 4]*

**HOF PGW**

Now thinking about how much paraffin / bottled gas you use in your home. In *winter*, how much do you spend on paraffin / bottled gas in an average week (to the nearest pound)?

Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on paraffin/bottled gas in average week in winter =  
NONRESPONSE [HoFPGw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOF PGWB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hofpgwl, hofpgwu, hofpgwe, hofpgwr]**

END OF FILTER

**HOFPGS**

And in *summer*, how much do you spend on paraffin / bottled gas in an average week (to the nearest pound)?

Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on paraffin / bottled gas in average week in summer = NONRESPONSE [HoFPGs = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFPGSB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hofpgsl, hofpgsu, hofpgse, hofpgsr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF household fuel = oil [HoFuel = 5]*

**HOFOW**

Now thinking about how much oil you use in your home.

In *winter*, how much do you spend on oil in an average week (to the nearest pound)?

Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on oil in average week in winter = NONRESPONSE [HoFOlw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFOWB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hofoiwl, hofoiwu, hofoiwe, hofoiwr]**

END OF FILTER

**HOFOWS**

And in *summer*, how much do you spend on oil in an average week (to the nearest pound)?

Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on oil in average week in summer = NONRESPONSE [HoFOIs = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFOWSB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

**[Bracket results are recorded in hofoisl, hofoisu, hofoise, hofoisr]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF household fuel = wood [HoFuel = 6]*

**HOFWW**

Now thinking about how much wood you use in your home.  
In *winter*, how much do you spend on wood in an average week (to the nearest pound)?  
Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on wood in average week in winter = NONRESPONSE*  
*[HoFWw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFWWB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

***[Bracket results are recorded in hofwwl, hofwwu, hofwwc, hofwwr]***

END OF FILTER

**HOFWS**

And in *summer*, how much do you spend on wood in an average week (to the nearest pound)?  
Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on wood in average week in summer = NONRESPONSE*  
*[HoFWs = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFWSB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

***[Bracket results are recorded in hofwsl, hofwsu, hofwsc, hofwsr]***

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF household fuel = other [HoFuel = 95]*

**HOFUELO**

Which other sources of fuel or power do you use?  
String 50

**HOFXW**

Now thinking about how much [<sup>other source of fuel or power used</sup>] you use in your home. In *winter*, how much do you spend on [<sup>other source of fuel or power used</sup>] in an average week (to the nearest pound)?  
Range: 0..99

*IF amount spends on other fuel in average week in winter = NONRESPONSE*  
*[HoFXw = NONRESPONSE]*

**HOFXWB@**

Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

***[Bracket results are recorded in hofxwl, hofxwu, hofxwc, hofxwr]***

END OF FILTER

**HOFXS**

And in *summer*, how much do you spend on [<sup>other source of fuel or power used</sup>]

| in an average week (to the nearest pound)?

| Range: 0..99

| *IF amount spends on other source of fuel in average week in summer =*

| *NONRESPONSE [HoFXs = NONRESPONSE]*

| **HOFXSB@**

| Is it less than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds], more than [<sup>5</sup> / 15 / 30 / 50 pounds] or what?

| **[Bracket results are recorded in hofxsl, hofxsu, hofxse, hofxsr]**

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

LOOP FOR k:= 1 TO HoVeh

| **HOCC**

| At the time of last interview, [<sup>you</sup> / [<sup>name</sup>]] or someone in [<sup>your</sup> / [<sup>name's</sup>]]  
| household owned (or was the main user of) a [<sup>make</sup> and model of vehicle owned in  
| Wave 1] [<sup>BLANK</sup> / with a [<sup>letter</sup>] registration / with a [<sup>letter</sup>] registration letter at the  
| beginning / with a [<sup>letter</sup>] registration at the end / with a 51/02 new registration number / with  
| a new registration number].

| Is that vehicle still owned by you or someone in your household?

| [<sup>BLANK</sup> / INTERVIEWER: Owner(s) in previous wave: [<sup>name</sup>] / [<sup>name</sup>] and [<sup>name</sup>]

| 1 Yes, still has vehicle

| 2 Never had vehicle

| 3 Had similar vehicle but details incorrect

| 4 Vehicle has now changed ownership within the household

| 5 Out of service, sold, given away or keeper no longer in household

| 6 Not read out as didn't make sense

| **[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the car respondent owns.**

| **Responses are recorded in hocc1 to hocc20.]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (number of remaining vehicles since last wave < 1) OR (number of vehicles owned in  
household (Wave 1) < 1) OR (number of vehicles owned in household (Wave 1) =  
NONRESPONSE) [(NoFOldVeh < 1) OR (HoVeh (Wave 1) < 1) OR (HoVeh (Wave 1) =  
NONRESPONSE)*

| **HOVEH**

| How many cars, vans or motorbikes, if any, [<sup>do you</sup> / does [<sup>name</sup>]] or [<sup>your</sup> / his /  
| her] household] own (including company, lease or cars owned through motability  
| scheme)?

| INTERVIEWER: Include cars owned by people outside the household *only* if the  
| respondent's household is the sole or main user of that car.

| Exclude company cars if only available for business use.

| Range: 0..20

END OF FILTER

*IF (number of vehicles owned in household > 0) OR (number of vehicles owned in household  
(wave 1) > 0) [(HoVeh > 0) OR (NoFOldVeh > 0)]*

| LOOP FOR Idx:= 1 TO 16

IF ((number of vehicles owned in household + number of vehicles owned in household at Wave 1) >= Idx) OR (C[Idx - 1].whether owns any other vehicles = yes) [(HoVeh + NoFOldVeh) >= Idx] OR (C[Idx - 1].HoVNew = Yes)]

IF status of vehicle reported last time = [still has vehicle, changed ownership] [HoVSt = 1, 4]

ELSE

IF status of vehicle reported last time = [had similar vehicle but details incorrect, has new vehicle] [HoVSt = 3, 6]

**HOVM@**

What make and model is the car, van or motorbike?  
String 60

**HOVW**

ASK OR CODE: Is this a car, a van or a motorbike?

- 1 Car
- 2 Van
- 3 Motorbike

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the car respondent owns. Response are recorded in Hovw, Hovw2 to Hovw16]**

**HOVAG**

How old is this [^car / van / motorbike]?

INTERVIEWER: Code here how to record the age of the vehicle.

Record registration year even if bought second hand. If it has a personalised or cherished number plate, record the year the vehicle was registered.

- 1 Answer given in year vehicle was registered
- 2 Answer given in registration letter (Letter at beginning)
- 3 Answer given in registration letter (Letter at the end)
- 4 Answer given in new registration number (Number in middle)

IF age of vehicle = answer given in year registered [HoVAg = 1]

**HOVYR**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the year the vehicle was registered.

Range: 1900..2050

**[CHECK HO80]**

ELSE

IF age of vehicle = answer given in registration letter (letter at beginning) [HoVAg = 2]

**HOVLR**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the registration letter (the letter at the beginning).

String 2

ELSE

```

| | | | |
| | | | | IF age of vehicle = answer given in registration letter (letter at end)
| | | | | [HoVAg = 3]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOVER
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter the registration letter (the letter at the end).
| | | | | String 2
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF age of vehicle = answer given in new registration number [HoVAg = 4]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOVNR
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Code the new registration number (the number in the middle).
| | | | | 1 51
| | | | | 2 02
| | | | | 3 52
| | | | | 4 03
| | | | | 5 53
| | | | | 95 Other
| | | | |
| | | | | IF new registration number = other [HoVNr = 95]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOVNO
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter the other new registration number.
| | | | | Range: 0..99
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END OF FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF (household size > 1) AND (status of vehicle <> still has vehicle)
| | | | | [HHTot > 1 AND HoVSt <> 1]
| | | | |
| | | | | HOVOW
| | | | | [^Who / Can I just check, who] owns this [^car / van / motorbike]?
| | | | | PROBE: Who else?
| | | | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY
| | | | | 01 [^Person's name[1]]
| | | | | 02 [^Person's name[2]]
| | | | | 03 [^Person's name[3]]
| | | | | 04 [^Person's name[4]]
| | | | | 05 [^Person's name[5]]
| | | | | 06 [^Person's name[6]]
| | | | | 07 [^Person's name[7]]
| | | | | 08 [^Person's name[8]]

```

09 [^Person's name[9]]  
10 [^Person's name[10]]  
11 [^Person's name[11]]  
12 [^Person's name[12]]  
13 [^Person's name[13]]  
14 [^Person's name[14]]  
15 [^Person's name[15]]  
16 [^Person's name[16]]  
17 [Not a household member]  
18 [Company/employer]  
19 [Lease company, including motability scheme]

**[Multiple responses to HOVOW are recorded in variables HOVOW1 to HOVOW4]  
[code maximum 4 out of 19 possible responses]  
[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the car's owner(s).  
Responses are recorded in Hovo11 and Hovo12, Hovo21 and Hovo22, Hovo31 and  
Hovo32, Hovo41 and Hovo51....to Hovo161 and Hovo162]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (PSeq >= PLast) AND (number of vehicles owned in household <> RESPONSE)  
[PSeq >= PLast AND HoVeh <> RESPONSE]*

#### **HOVNEW**

Are there any (other) vehicles owned by [^you / ^name] (or a member of this household)] (including company, lease or cars owned through motability scheme)?

INTERVIEWER: Include cars owned by people outside the household *only* if respondent's household is the sole or main user of that car. Exclude company cars if only available for business use.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each of the new car respondent might have. Responses are recorded in Hovnw, Hovnw2 to Hovnw16]**

END OF FILTER

**[CHECK HO81]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF whether change in number of vehicles since last wave = yes [VehChange = 1]*

#### **HOVEHX**

Can I just check, in total, how many cars, vans or motorbikes, if any, [^do you / does [^name]] own (including company or lease vehicles)?

Range: 0..20

*IF (total number of vehicles = RESPONSE) AND (total number of vehicles > 0) [(HoVehx = RESPONSE) AND (VehTot > 0)]*

**[CHECK HO82]**

**[CHECK HO83]**

```
|||  
|| END OF FILTER  
||  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER
```

**HOX@**

INTERVIEWER: The Housing section is finished.

Please enter <1> here to make the program store the current time and date.

Range: 1..1

## **COGNITIVE FUNCTION MODULE (CF)**

### **CFINTA @**

In the next section of the interview, we will do some memory and concentration tasks and I will ask about your expectations for the future and how you feel now.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

### **CFMETM**

Part of this study is concerned with people's memory. How would you rate your memory at the present time?

Would you say it is ...READ OUT...

- 1 ... excellent,
- 2 very good,
- 3 good,
- 4 fair,
- 5 or, poor?

### **CFMETMT**

Compared to two years ago, would you say your memory is ...READ OUT...

- 1 better now,
- 2 about the same,
- 3 or worse now than it was then?

### **CFINT @**

Now we will do the memory and concentration tasks.

Some of them may seem rather easy but others are more difficult so please listen carefully.

The tasks are designed so no-one gets the highest score possible. Please just do the best you can on all of them.

INTERVIEWER: Before starting the tests, make sure respondent has glasses etc if needed.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **CFDATD**

Please tell me today's date.

INTERVIEWER: Code whether the day of month ([^today's date]) is given correctly.

- 1 Day of month given correctly
- 2 Day of month given incorrectly/doesn't know day

### **CFDATM**

INTERVIEWER: Code whether the month ([^today's date]) is given correctly.

- 1 Month given correctly
- 2 Month given incorrectly/doesn't know month

### **CFDATY**

INTERVIEWER: Code whether the year ([^today's date]) is given correctly.

- 1 Year given correctly
- 2 Year given incorrectly/doesn't know day

### **CFDAY**

And please tell me what day of the week it is today?

CORRECT ANSWER: [^today's day]

- 1 day of week given correctly
- 2 day of week given incorrectly/doesn't know day

### **CFPROM @**

Now I would like you to remember to do a task in order to assess everyday memory.  
At some point during the interview I will hand you this clipboard and a pencil.  
(INTERVIEWER: Show respondent the clipboard).  
When I do I would like you to write your initials on the top left hand corner of the piece of paper attached to the clipboard. Is that clear?  
INTERVIEWER: If 'No' explain further.  
Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
String 1

### **CFLSINT @**

For the next task the computer will 'read' a list of words which I will ask you to recall.  
First I'd like to check that you will be able to hear the computer voice - please listen to this short message.  
INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter> to activate the test message.  
Range: 1..1

### **CFTEST**

INTERVIEWER: If the respondent cannot hear properly, adjust the volume on the laptop, then go back to the previous question and press <Enter> to play the test message again.  
INTERVIEWER: If the respondent still cannot hear properly, code that you will read out the list yourself.  
1 List read out by computer  
2 List read out by interviewer

*IF how list read out = read by interviewer [CfTest = 2]*

|  
| **CFLISST @**  
| I will now read a set of 10 words. I would like you to recall as many as you can.  
| We have purposely made the list long so it will be difficult for anyone to recall all the words.  
| Most people recall just a few.  
| Please listen carefully to the set of words as they cannot be repeated. When I have finished, I  
| will ask you to recall aloud as many of the words as you can, in any order. Is this clear?  
| INTERVIEWER: If no, explain further.  
| Read out word list below at a slow steady rate approximately one word every 2 seconds.  
| [^list of words]  
| After word list has been read out press <1> and <Enter>.  
| String 1  
|  
| *[Note for users - Respondents were read out one of four lists of words. They were given a  
| different list to the one they were given at the last interview and each respondent in a  
| household was given a different list. Please look at the cognitive function booklet for the four  
| lists of words which were used.]*  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF how list read out = read by computer [CfTest = 1]*

|  
| **CFLIS @**  
| The computer will now read a set of 10 words. I would like you to recall as many as you can.  
| We have purposely made the list long so it will be difficult for anyone to recall all the words.  
| Most people recall just a few.  
| Please listen carefully to the set of words as they cannot be repeated. When it has finished,  
| I will ask you to recall aloud as many of the words as you can, in any order. Is this clear?  
| INTERVIEWER: If no, explain further.  
| If yes, press <Enter> to begin test and have booklet ready.  
| String 1

| *IF word list used for respondent = 1 [CfWrds = 1]*  
 |  
 | **CFSNDA @**  
 | INTERVIEWER: After the word list has been read out press <Enter>.  
 | [^list of words]  
 | String 1  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | *IF word list used for respondent = 2 [CfWrds = 2]*  
 |  
 | **CFSNDB @**  
 | INTERVIEWER: After the word list has been read out press <1> and <Enter>.  
 | [^list of words]  
 | String 1  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | *IF word list used for respondent = 3 [CfWrds = 3]*  
 |  
 | **CFSNDC @**  
 | INTERVIEWER: After the word list has been read out press <Enter>.  
 | [^list of words]  
 | String 1  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | *IF word list used for respondent = 4 [CfWrds = 4]*  
 |  
 | **CFSNDD @**  
 | INTERVIEWER: After the word list has been read out press <Enter>.  
 | [^list of words]  
 | String 1  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER

**CFLISEN**

Now please tell me the words you can recall.

[^list of words]

INTERVIEWER: Write the words in the booklet provided. Allow as much time as the respondent wishes, up to 2 minutes. Enter the number of words the respondent correctly recalls.

Range: 0..10

**[CHECK CF1]**

**CFANIST @**

Now I would like you to name as many different animals as you can think of. You have one minute to do this. The computer voice will tell you when to stop.

Ready, go!

INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter> as you say 'go!'.

Range: 1..1

**CFANI**

INTERVIEWER: Write animals mentioned in booklet provided.  
Enter the number of different animals mentioned.  
Range: 0..100

**[CHECK CF2]**

**CFMEM**

INTERVIEWER: Attach booklet (open to the letter cancellation page) to the clipboard and hand to the respondent along with a pencil and say: 'These are for you.'

INTERVIEWER: Pause for exactly 5 seconds. If no response, prompt:

'You were going to do something when I gave you the clipboard and pencil. Can you remember what it was?'

INTERVIEWER: If respondent says 'Am I supposed to....?' then say: 'Do whatever you think you are supposed to.'

INTERVIEWER: Code whether or not you prompted respondent.

1 No prompt given

2 Prompt given

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**CFLET @**

**LETTER CANCELLATION PAGE**

The next task is a measure of how rapidly you can do something. In a moment I will ask you to work through this list as quickly as you can crossing out all the P's and W's. Start at the top left hand corner where the arrow is and work along the line. Then go to the beginning of the next line and work along the line again as if you were reading a page. Carry on this way crossing out all the P's and W's with one mark of pencil as in the example at the top of the page. Please work as quickly and as accurately as you can. The computer voice will tell you when to stop.

When you are told to stop, underline the last letter on which you finish. You may begin now.

INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter> as you say 'now'.

Range: 1..1

**CFLETEN @**

INTERVIEWER: After the computer says 'stop now', say: Please underline the letter on which you finished.

INTERVIEWER: Now take back the booklet and clipboard.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

**CFMEMS**

INTERVIEWER: Code what respondent did when you handed them the clipboard and pencil.

1 Wrote their initials in top left hand corner

2 Wrote their initials somewhere else

3 Wrote something else in top left hand corner

4 Did something else

5 [^Remembered they had to do something but not what/ Did nothing or did not remember what to do]

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**CFLISD**

A little while ago, you were read a list of words and you repeated the ones you could remember. Please tell me any of the words that you can remember now.

[^list of words]

INTERVIEWER: Write the words in the booklet provided. Allow as much time as the respondent wishes, up to 2 minutes. Enter the number of words the respondent correctly recalls.

Range: 0..10

**[CHECK CF3]**

**CFLITA @**

SHOW CARD AQ

The final task in this section is about comprehension. Please turn to card AQ. This is a made-up medicine label and does not refer to a real medicine. It is often difficult to read and understand instructions on medicine labels. In a moment, I will ask you to read the card quietly to yourself. I will then ask you some questions about what it says. You do not have to memorise the card, as you will be able to look at it while answering the questions.

INTERVIEWER: Please give the respondents time to read the showcard.

If needed, confirm that they do not need to read the label out loud or memorise what it says.

Press one and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**CFLITSK**

INTERVIEWER: Is the respondent able to do the literacy test?

1 Yes

2 No - sight difficulties

3 No - health problems

4 No - other (Specify)

*IF whether able to do literacy test = No – Other reason [CfLitSK = 4]*

**CFLITSO @**

INTERVIEWER: Record other reason.

String 150

***[Open responses to Cflitso were coded and then incorporated into Cflitsk. Cflitc identifies that an open response was given at Cflitso and incorporated into Cflitsk]***

END OF FILTER

*IF whether able to do literacy test = Yes [CfLitSK = 1]*

**CFLITB**

Looking at the card, what is the maximum number of days you may take this medicine?

INTERVIEWER: The correct response is 7. If responds with 'one week', probe for number of days. Code whether respondent gives correct or incorrect answer.

1 Correct answer: seven

2 Incorrect answer: any other response

**CFLITC**

Looking at the card, list three situations for which you should consult a doctor.

INTERVIEWER: Respondent should mention at least three of the following. Stop when respondent mentions three:

- (Before giving medication to children with) chicken pox

- (Before giving medication to children with) influenza

- Reyes syndrome

- (During) lactation

- (During) pregnancy,

- If symptoms persist

- (Accidental) overdose

INTERVIEWER: Code whether respondent gives correct or incorrect answer.

1 Correct answer: at least three situations

2 Incorrect answer: any other response

| **CFLITD**

| Looking at the card, list one condition for which you might take the Medco tablet.

| INTERVIEWER: Respondent should mention at least one of the following as conditions for which you could take the tablet:

- | - Headaches
- | - Muscle pains
- | - Rheumatic pains
- | - Toothache
- | - Earache
- | - Common cold

| INTERVIEWER: Code whether respondent gives correct or incorrect answer.

- | 1 Correct answer: one correct condition
- | 2 Incorrect answer: any other response

| **CFLITE**

| Looking at the card, list one condition for which you should not take the Medco tablet.

| INTERVIEWER: Respondent should mention at least one of the following as conditions for which you should not take the tablet:

- | - Gastritis
- | - Peptic ulcer
- | - Serious liver illness
- | - Bronchial asthma

| INTERVIEWER: Code whether respondent gives correct or incorrect answer.

- | 1 Correct answer: one correct condition
- | 2 Incorrect answer: any other response

|  
END OF FILTER

**CFWHO**

INTERVIEWER: Was there anyone other than you and the respondent in the room while you were conducting the cognitive function tests?

- 1 No
- 2 Yes - respondent's spouse or partner
- 3 Yes - other household member (adult)
- 4 Yes - other household member (child)
- 5 Yes - not a household member

**[code maximum 4 out of 5 possible responses]**

**[Multiple responses to cfwho are recorded in variables cfwho1 to cfwho4]**

**[CHECK CF4]**

**CFIMP**

INTERVIEWER: Were there any factors that may have impaired the respondent's performance on the tests? Include any reasons for letter cancellation not attempted.

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether other factors impaired performance = Yes [CfImp = 1]*

| **CFWHAT**

| INTERVIEWER: Write in details.

| Open

| **[Open responses to Cfwhat were coded and then incorporated into cfwhz1 to cfwhz3]**

|  
END OF FILTER

**CFTSET @**

INTERVIEWER: The Cognitive Function section is finished. Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.

Range: 1..1

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

## EXPECTATIONS MODULE (EX)

### EXEVNT @

SHOW CARD AR

Now I have some questions about how likely you think various events might be. When I ask a question I'd like you to give me a number from 0 to 100, where 0 means that you think there is absolutely no chance an event will happen, and 100 means that you think the event is absolutely certain to happen.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

### EXRAIN

SHOW CARD AR

Let's try an example and start with the weather. What do you think the chances are it will be rainy tomorrow? (where 100 means a 100 percent chance of rainy weather and you can say any number from 0 to 100. For example, if you think there is a good chance that it will be rainy tomorrow, you might say there is an 80 percent chance of rain.)

Range: 0..100

*IF whether this is an institutional respondent <> Yes [IAskInst <> 1]*

|

#### | EXMOVHA

| SHOW CARD AR

| What are the chances that you will move out of your current home at some time in the future?

| INTERVIEWER: I.e. this person will change their permanent residence. Includes buying,

| renting, moving into a nursing home or other institution, current holiday home or going to live

| with someone else. Do not include moving between properties or living abroad some months

| of the year.

| Range: 0..100

|

| *IF respondent's age >= 60 [IAgeOf >= 60]*

|

#### | EXMOVNB

| SHOW CARD AR

| And what are the chances that you will move to a nursing home in the next five years?

| INTERVIEWER: Nursing homes are institutions primarily for people who need constant

| nurse supervision or are unable to live independently. Nursing supervision must be provided

| on a continuous basis for an institution to qualify as a nursing home. Probe for answer, ask

| respondent to ignore whether they actually want to or are planning to move to a nursing

| home.

| Range: 0..100

|

| END OF FILTER

|

END OF FILTER

### EXLO80

SHOW CARD AR

What are the chances that you will live to be [<sup>^</sup>Age1Txt] or more?

Range: 0..100

*IF a woman aged 54 or under: ISex = 2 AND IAgeof <= 54, ^agetxt = 55.*

*ELSEIF a woman aged 55 to 59: ISex = 2 AND IAgeof <= 59, ^agetxt = 60.*

*ELSEIF a man aged 59 or under: ISex = 1 AND IAgeof <= 59, ^agetxt = 60.*

*ELSEIF a man aged 60 to 64: ISex = 1 AND IAgeof <= 64, ^agetxt = 65.*

*IF respondent's sex = female AND respondent's age < 65 [ISex = 2 AND IAgeOf < 65]*

**EXPW**

SHOW CARD AR

Thinking about paid work in general [^,/,and not just your present job] what are the chances that you will be working after you reach age [^AgeTxt]?

Range: 0..100

*IF (ISex = Female) AND (IAgeof <= 54) THEN AgeTxt = 55  
ELSEIF (ISex = Female) AND (IAgeof <= 59) THEN AgeTxt = 60  
ELSEIF (ISex=male) AND (IAgeof <= 59) THEN AgeTxt = 60  
ELSEIF (ISex = male) AND (IAgeof <= 64) THEN AgeTxt = 65*

*IF (chances of working after reaching age AgeTxt > 0) OR (chances of working after reaching age AgeTxt = DONTKNOW) [ExpPW > 0 OR ExPW = DONTKNOW]*

**EXPWF**

SHOW CARD AR

If you were doing any paid work after you reached age [^AgeTxt], what are the chances that this would be for 35 hours a week or more, that is, full-time?

Range: 0..100

*IF (ISex = Female) AND (IAgeof <= 54) THEN AgeTxt = 55  
ELSEIF (ISex = Female) AND (IAgeof <= 59) THEN AgeTxt = 60  
ELSEIF (ISex=male) AND (IAgeof <= 59) THEN AgeTxt = 60  
ELSEIF (ISex = male) AND (IAgeof <= 64) THEN AgeTxt = 65*

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (activities done in past month = paid work) OR (activities done in past month = self-employment) OR (status of unemployment in past month = temporarily away from paid work) [WpAct = 1 OR WpAct = 2 OR WpAway = 1]*

*IF respondent's age < 65 [IAgeOf < 65]*

**EXHLIM**

SHOW CARD AR

What are the chances that your health will limit your ability to work before you reach age 65?

Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**EXRSLF**

SHOW CARD AR

What are the chances that at some point in the future you will not have enough financial resources to meet your needs?

Range: 0..100

**EXAINH**

SHOW CARD AR

Including property and valuables, what are the chances that you will receive any inheritance during the next 10 years?

Range: 0..100

*IF (expected inheritance > 0) OR (expected inheritance = DONTKNOW) [ExAInh > 0 OR ExAInh = DONTKNOW]*

| **EXCINH**

| SHOW CARD AR

| What are the chances that you will receive an inheritance totalling £10,000 or more during the next 10 years?

| Range: 0..100

| *IF (expected inheritance over £10,000 = DONTKNOW) OR (expected inheritance over £10,000 > 0) [ExCinh = DONTKNOW OR ExCinh > 0]*

| | **EXINHE**

| | SHOW CARD AR

| | What are the chances that you will receive an inheritance totalling £100,000 or more during the next 10 years?

| | Range: 0..100

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**EXCIN**

SHOW CARD AR

Including property and other valuables that you [^BLANK / and your husband / wife / partner] might own, what are the chances that you [^BLANK / and your husband / wife / partner] will leave an inheritance totalling £50,000 or more?

Range: 0..100

*IF (chances of leaving an inheritance totalling £50,000 or more = RESPONSE AND chances of leaving an inheritance totalling £50,000 or more = 0) OR (chances of leaving an inheritance totalling £50,000 or more = DONTKNOW) [ExCin = RESPONSE AND ExCin = 0 OR ExCin = DONTKNOW]*

| **EXCAIN**

| SHOW CARD AR

| What are the chances that you [^BLANK / and your husband / wife / partner] will leave any inheritance?

| Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF chances of leaving an inheritance totalling £50,000 or more > 0 [ExCin > 0]*

| **EXCPIN**

| SHOW CARD AR

| What are the chances that you [^BLANK / and your husband / wife / partner] will leave an inheritance totalling £150,000 or more?

| Range: 0..100

END OF FILTER

*IF ((house tenure = own outright OR buying with help of mortgage / loan OR paying part rent part mortgage) AND (whether interviewing at same address as last time = Yes)) OR (house*

tenure = own outright OR buying with help of mortgage / loan OR paying part rent part mortgage) [HoTenu = 1, 2, 3 AND DhSameH = 1 OR HoTenu = 1, 2, 3]

**EXHVA**

SHOW CARD AR

What are the chances that the value of your house will [^increase / decrease] by more than [^5% / 10%] over the next year?

INTERVIEWER: Code 997 if respondent does not own their house.

Range: 0..997]

**[CHECK EX1]**

END OF FILTER

*IF whether this is an institutional respondent <> Yes [IAskInst <> 1]*

**EXPLAN**

SHOW CARD AS

In deciding how much of your [^BLANK / family's] income to spend or save, people are likely to think about different financial planning periods. In planning your [^BLANK / family's] saving and spending, which of the following time periods is more important to you?

INTERVIEWER: If unable to give answer from card, probe for spontaneous codes.

- 1 The next few weeks
- 2 The next few months
- 3 The next year
- 4 The next few years
- 5 The next 5-10 years
- 6 Longer than 10 years
- 7 SPONTANEOUS: Plans day to day
- 8 SPONTANEOUS: Plans over other period
- 9 SPONTANEOUS: Does not plan

**EXRELA**

SHOW CARD AT

Looking at this card, please say how often you find you have too little money to spend on what you feel [^your / you and your household's] needs are?

- 1 Never
- 2 Rarely
- 3 Sometimes
- 4 Often
- 5 Most of the time

**EXRELB**

SHOW CARD AU

Compared to the financial situation of other people living around here, would you say your household is...

- 1 Much worse off
- 2 A bit worse off
- 3 About the same
- 4 A bit better off, or
- 5 Much better off

**EXRELC**

SHOW CARD AU

And how does your financial situation compare with most of your friends, (would you say your household is...)

- | 1 Much worse off
- | 2 A bit worse off
- | 3 About the same
- | 4 A bit better off, or
- | 5 Much better off
- | 6 SPONTANEOUS: No friends

| *IF (activities done in past month= paid work OR temporarily away from paid work)*  
 / *[WPActW = 1, 2]*

| **EXRELD**

| SHOW CARD AU

| And how does your financial situation compare to most of your close work colleagues,  
 | (would you say your household is...)

- | 1 Much worse off
- | 2 A bit worse off
- | 3 About the same
- | 4 A bit better off, or
- | 5 Much better off
- | 6 SPONTANEOUS ONLY: No work colleagues

| END OF FILTER

| **EXRELE**

| SHOW CARD AV

| Does having too little money stop you from doing any of the following things?

| INTERVIEWER: Code all that apply.

- | 01 Buy your first choices of food items
- | 02 Have family and friends round for a drink or meal
- | 03 Have an outfit to wear for social or family occasions
- | 04 Keep your home in a reasonable state of decoration
- | 05 Replace or repair broken electrical goods
- | 06 Pay for fares or other transport costs to get to and from places you want to go
- | 07 Buy presents for friends or family once a year
- | 08 Take the sorts of holidays you want
- | 09 Treat yourself from time to time
- | 96 None of these

| *[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]*

| *[Multiple responses to exrele are recorded in variables exrele1 to exrele9]*

| END OF FILTER

| **EXSBINTA @**

Growing older can mean different things to different people. As well as knowing about your overall situation, we are interested in your experience of growing older. The following questions might seem strange at first but please try to answer them as best as you can.

INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter>.

Range: 1..1

| **EXPOSAGA**

What would you say are the most positive things about growing older?

INTERVIEWER: Probe fully.

Press <Alt S> to close and save the answer.

Open

***[Open responses to Exposaga were coded and recorded in Expos1 to Expos7]***

**EXNEGAGA**

What would you say are the most negative things about growing older?

INTERVIEWER: Probe fully.

Press <Alt S> to close and save the answer.

Open

***[Open responses to Exnega were coded and recorded in Exnega1 to Exnega7]***

**EXTSET @**

INTERVIEWER: The Expectations section is finished.

Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.

Range: 1..1

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

## EFFORT AND REWARD MODULE (ER)

### ERVOLCAR @

Earlier in the interview you told me that you had [^done some voluntary work and / or cared for someone].

INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*IF activities done in past month = cared for someone [WpAct = 4]*

### ERCAA

Did you look after anyone in the past week (including your partner or other people in your household)?

INTERVIEWER: By 'look after' we mean the active provision of care.

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether looked after anyone in past week = Yes [ErCAA = 1]*

### ERCAB

What relation is this person or people to you?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

1 Spouse or partner

2 Child

3 Grandchild

4 Parent

5 Parent in law

6 Other relative

7 Friend or neighbour

95 Other

**[code maximum 8 out of 8 possible responses]**

**[Multiple responses to ercab are recorded in variables ercab1 to ercab5]**

*IF (relationship to person / people = other) [ErCAB = 95]*

### ERCAX @

INTERVIEWER: Enter details of other person(s) who they cared for.

String 60

**[Open responses to Ercax are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Ercab (recorded in Ercab1 to Ercab5). These merged responses are recorded in variables Ercam01 to Ercam05]**

END OF FILTER

*IF relationship to person / people = RESPONSE [ErCAB = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR EACH RESPONSE TO ERCAB (*i.e. asked separately about people of each type of relationship*)

### ERCABNUM

How many [^children / grandchildren / parents etc.] did you look after in the past week?

Range: 0..99

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are**

**recorded in variables Ercanu1 to Ercanu8 ]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF derived number of people looked after in past week > 0 [ErTotNum > 0]*

**ERCALIVE**

[^Does the person / Do any of the people] you care for live with you?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether lives with person cared for = Yes [ErCALive = 1]*

**ERCADPN**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the person number of each person who was cared for.  
CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 01 [^Name of person living in household - [01]]
- 02 [^Name of person living in household - [02]]
- 03 [^Name of person living in household - [03]]
- 04 [^Name of person living in household - [04]]
- 05 [^Name of person living in household - [05]]
- 06 [^Name of person living in household - [06]]
- 07 [^Name of person living in household - [07]]
- 08 [^Name of person living in household - [08]]
- 09 [^Name of person living in household - [09]]
- 10 [^Name of person living in household - [10]]
- 11 [^Name of person living in household - [11]]
- 12 [^Name of person living in household - [12]]
- 13 [^Name of person living in household - [13]]
- 14 [^Name of person living in household - [14]]
- 15 [^Name of person living in household - [15]]
- 16 [^Name of person living in household - [16]]

**[code maximum 16 out of 16 possible responses]**

**[Multiple responses to ercadbpn are recorded in variables ercadp1 to ercadp5]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

**ERCAC**

How many hours in the past week did you do this?

INTERVIEWER: If 'all the time', enter 168.

Range: 0..168

**ERMOTIVA**

SHOW CARD AW

For which of the reasons given on this card, if any, did you care for someone last week?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 01 To meet other people
- 02 To contribute something useful
- 03 For personal achievement
- 04 Because I am needed
- 05 To earn money

| | 06 Because I enjoy it  
| | 07 To use my skills  
| | 08 To keep fit  
| | 09 Because I feel obliged to do it  
| | 96 None of these

| | **[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]**

| / **[Multiple responses to ermotiva are recorded in variables ermotc1 to ermotc7]**

| / **[CHECK ER1]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

*IF (activities done in past month = voluntary work) OR (frequency of doing voluntary work <> never) [WpAct = 3 OR WpVW <> 6]*

| **ERVOLINT @**

| I would now like to ask you about voluntary work.

| INTERVIEWER: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| Range: 1..1

| **ERMOTIV**

| SHOW CARD AW

| For which of the reasons given on this card, if any, do you do voluntary work?

| INTERVIEWER: CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

| 01 To meet other people  
| 02 To contribute something useful  
| 03 For personal achievement  
| 04 Because I am needed  
| 05 To earn money  
| 06 Because I enjoy it  
| 07 To use my skills  
| 08 To keep fit  
| 09 Because I feel obliged to do it  
| 96 None of these

| **[code maximum 9 out of 10 possible responses]**

| / **[Multiple responses to ermotiv are recorded in variables ermotv1 to ermotv8]**

| **[CHECK ER2]**

| END OF FILTER

| **ERINTRO @**

| I will now read a couple of statements that are related to your commitment towards other people. Please tell me whether you strongly agree, agree, disagree, or strongly disagree with each statement.

| 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

*IF (activities done in past month = voluntary work) OR (frequency of doing voluntary work <> never) [WpAct = 3 OR WpVW <> 6]*

| **ERVOLA**

| SHOW CARD AX

| Considering all the efforts that I have put into my voluntary work, I am fully satisfied with what I have gained so far.

| Would you say that you strongly agree, agree, disagree or strongly disagree?

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **ERVOLB**

| SHOW CARD AX

| Considering all the efforts that I have put into my voluntary work, I have always received adequate appreciation from others.

| (Would you say that you strongly agree, agree, disagree, or strongly disagree?)

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| END OF FILTER

| *IF activities done in past month = cared for someone [WpAct = 4]*

| **ERCARA**

| SHOW CARD AX

| Considering all the efforts that I have put into caring for someone, I am fully satisfied with what I have gained so far.

| (Would you say that you strongly agree, agree, disagree or strongly disagree?)

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **ERCARB**

| SHOW CARD AX

| Considering all the efforts that I have put into caring for someone, I have always received adequate appreciation from others.

| (Would you say that you strongly agree, agree, disagree or strongly disagree?)

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| END OF FILTER

## **PSYCHOSOCIAL MODULE (PS)**

### **PSCEDI @**

Now think about the past week and the feelings you have experienced. Please tell me if each of the following was true for you much of the time during the past week.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

### **PSCEDA**

(Much of the time during the past week), you felt depressed?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

### **PSCEDB**

(Much of the time during the past week), you felt that everything you did was an effort?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

### **PSCEDC**

(Much of the time during the past week), your sleep was restless?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

### **PSCEDD**

(Much of the time during the past week), you were happy?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

### **PSCEDE**

(Much of the time during the past week), you felt lonely?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

### **PSCEDF**

(Much of the time during the past week), you enjoyed life?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

### **PSCEDG**

(Much of the time during the past week), you felt sad?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

### **PSCEDH**

(Much of the time during the past week), you could not get going?

INTERVIEWER: Prompt if necessary - 'Would you say yes or no?'

1 Yes

2 No

*IF number of depression symptoms (PScedA to PScedH) >= 5 [TotalPSC >= 5]*

**PSFEEL**

Have you spoken to a doctor, nurse or mental health professional about these feelings?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether spoke to a health professional <> EMPTY [PsFeel <> EMPTY]*

**PSNTIMB @**

Time at start of Quality of care section

**PSNDATB @**

Date at start of Quality of care section

END OF FILTER

*IF (whether spoke to a health professional = Yes) AND (type of treatment recommended = EMPTY) [PsFeel = 1 AND HePsya = EMPTY]*

**PSPSYA**

I have some questions about any treatment you may have had for [^these feelings].

Did a doctor or nurse suggest that you take medication, or see a mental health professional for counselling?

INTERVIEWER: PROBE - 'This may include seeing a psychiatrist, psychologist, or social worker for counselling or psychotherapy.'

- 1 Medication
- 2 Counselling
- 3 Both medication and counselling
- 4 None

*IF medical advice given <> None [PsPsya <> 4]*

**PSPSYB**

Did you start [^medication / seeing a mental health professional / medication and seeing a mental health professional] response within 2 weeks of being offered this treatment?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether treatment started within two weeks = Yes [PsPsyb = 1]*

**PSPSYC**

Did you feel better within 6 weeks after [^medication / seeing a mental health professional / medication and seeing a mental health professional]?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF whether felt better within 6 weeks = No [PsPsync = 2]*

**PSPSYD**

Did any doctor or nurse start you on medication, change the dose of the medication that you were taking or, change the medications to help you feel better?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END OF FILTER

|| | END OF FILTER

|| | *IF medical advice given = Counselling [PsPsy = 2]*

|| | **PSPSYE**

|| | When you talked about these feelings with a doctor or nurse, did they ask you on that day if you had thoughts about suicide?

|| | 1 Yes

|| | 2 No

|| | END OF FILTER

**PSTSET @**

INTERVIEWER: The Psychosocial section is finished.

Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.

Range: 1..1

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

## FINAL QUESTIONS MODULE (FQ)

### FQNR\*

[^Now I have some final questions before we reach the end of the interview / Now I have some final questions about [^your / [^name's]] background]

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

*IF ethnic group at previous wave <> RESPONSE [FqEthn (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| **FQETHN\* @ [Recoded ethnicity recorded in FqEthnr – White or non-White]**

| SHOW CARD AY

| Can I check, to which of the groups on this card do you consider that [^you / [^name]] belong?

| INTERVIEWER: Code one only.

- | 1 White
- | 2 Mixed ethnic group
- | 3 Black
- | 4 Black British
- | 5 Asian
- | 6 Asian British
- | 95 Any other group

| END OF FILTER

*IF ethnic group = White [FqEthn = 1]*

| *IF white cultural background at previous wave <> RESPONSE [FqWCult (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| **FQWCULT\* @**

| What is [^your / [^name's]] cultural background? Is it...

| INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply.

- | 1 ... English?
- | 2 ... Irish?
- | 3 ... Scottish?
- | 4 ... Welsh?
- | 5 ... Other European?
- | 95 ... Any other cultural background? (specify)

| **[code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]**

| **[Multiple responses to FqWCult are recorded in variables fqwcult1 to fqwcult6 @]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

*IF ethnic group = Mixed Ethnic Group [FqEthn = 2]*

| *IF mixed ethnic cultural background at previous wave = RESPONSE [FqBcg (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| **FQBCG\* @**

| What is [^your / [^name's]] cultural background? Is it...

| INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply.

- | 1 ... White British and Black Caribbean?
- | 2 ... White British and Black African?

| 3 ... White British and Asian?  
 | 95 ... any other cultural background?(specify)  
 | **[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]**  
 | **[Multiple responses to Fqbcg are recorded in variables fqbcg1 to fqbcg4 @]**  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER

*IF ethnic group = [Black, Black British] [FqEthn = 3, 4]*

| *IF black cultural background at previous wave <> RESPONSE [FqBack (Wave 1) <>*  
 | *RESPONSE]*  
 | **FQBACK\* @**  
 | What is [^your / [^name's]] cultural background? Is it...  
 | INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply.  
 | 1 ... Caribbean?  
 | 2 ... African?  
 | 95 ... any other cultural background? (specify)  
 | **[code maximum 3 out of 3 possible responses]**  
 | **[Multiple responses to Fqback are recorded in variables fqback1 to fqback3 @]**  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER

*IF ethnic group = [Asian, Asian British] [FqEthn = 5, 6]*

| *IF Asian cultural background at previous wave <> RESPONSE [FqCbac (Wave 1) <>*  
 | *RESPONSE]*  
 | **FQCBAC\* @**  
 | What is [^your / [^name's]] cultural background? Is it...  
 | INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply.  
 | 1 ... African-Indian?  
 | 2 ... Indian?  
 | 3 ... Pakistani?  
 | 4 ... Bangladeshi?  
 | 95 ... any other cultural background? (specify)  
 | **[code maximum 5 out of 5 possible responses]**  
 | **[Multiple responses to Fqcbac are recorded in variables fqcbac1 to fqcbac5 @]**  
 | END OF FILTER  
 |  
 | END OF FILTER

*IF ethnic group = Any Other [FqEthn = 95]*

| *IF other cultural background at previous wave <> RESPONSE [FqCulb (Wave 1) <>*  
 | *RESPONSE]*  
 | **FQCULB\* @**

| | What is [^your / ^name's] cultural background? Is it...  
| | INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply.  
| | 1 ... Chinese?  
| | 2 ... Japanese?  
| | 3 ... Philippino?  
| | 4 ... Vietnamese?  
| | 95 ... any other cultural background? (specify)

| | **[code maximum 5 out of 5 possible responses]**

| | **[Multiple responses to Fqculb are recorded in variables fqculb1 to fqculb5 @]**

| | END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (cultural background = other) [FqWCult = 95 OR FqBcg = 95 OR FqBack = 95 OR FqCbac = 95 OR FqCulb = 95]*

| | *IF other cultural background at previous wave <>RESPONSE [FqCulb (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| | **FQCULTO\* @**

| | How would you describe [^your / ^name's] cultural background?  
| | String 60

| | **[Open responses to FqCultO are coded into variables fqcul1 to fqcul2 @]**

| | END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

IF Country of birth given at previous wave <> RESPONSE [PFqCbth (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]

| | **FQCBTH\* @ [Recoded country of birth recorded in FqCbthr - UK or outside of UK]**

| | In which country [^were you / was [^name]] born?

- | | 1 England
- | | 2 Scotland
- | | 3 Wales
- | | 4 Northern Ireland
- | | 5 Republic of Ireland
- | | 6 Elsewhere outside of UK

END OF FILTER

IF ((country of birth = RESPONSE) AND (country of birth <> England)) OR (((country of birth at previous wave = RESPONSE) AND (country of birth at previous wave <> England)) AND year of arrival to England at previous wave <> RESPONSE) [(FqCbth = RESPONSE AND FqCbth <> 1) OR (FqCbth (Wave 1) = RESPONSE AND FqCbth (Wave 1) <> 1) AND FqCeng (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]

| | **FQCENG\***

| | [^In / Last time we interviewed you on [^date of last interview] you said that you were not born in England], in what year did [^you / ^name]] come to live in England?

| | INTERVIEWER: Write in year.

| | Range: 1900..2050

| **[CHECK FQ1]**  
| **[CHECK FQ2]**  
| **[CHECK FQ3]**

| END OF FILTER

| *IF qualifications at previous wave = RESPONSE [FqQual (Wave 1) = RESPONSE]*

| **FQMQUA\***

| Since the last time that we interviewed [^you / [^name]] [^in date of last interview], [^have you / has [^name]] obtained any [^BLANK / further] qualifications?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| ELSE

| **FQAQUA\***

| SHOW CARD AZ

| Do you have any of the qualifications listed on this card? Please look down the whole list before telling me.

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| END OF FILTER

| *IF (whether obtained any new qualifications = Yes) OR (whether has any qualifications listed on card AZ = Yes) [FqMqua = 1 OR FqAqua = 1]*

| **FQQUAL\***

| SHOW CARD AZ

| Which of the qualifications on this card [^do you have / have you obtained since then]? Just tell me the number written beside each one.

| INTERVIEWER: Record all that apply.

| PROBE - 'Any others?'

- | 01 Degree/degree level qualification (including higher degree)
- | 02 Teaching qualification
- | 03 Nursing qualifications SRN, SCM, SEN, RGN, RM, RHV, Midwife
- | 04 HNC/HND, BEC/TEC Higher, BTEC Higher/SCOTECH Higher
- | 05 ONC/OND/BEC/TEC/BTEC not higher
- | 06 City and Guilds Full Technological Certificate
- | 07 City and Guilds Advanced/Final Level
- | 08 City and Guilds Craft/Ordinary Level
- | 09 A-levels/Higher School Certificate
- | 10 AS level
- | 11 SLC/SCE/SUPE at Higher Grade or Certificate of Sixth Year Studies
- | 12 O-level passes taken in 1975 or earlier
- | 13 O-level passes taken after 1975 GRADES A-C
- | 14 O-level passes taken after 1975 GRADES D-E
- | 15 GCSE GRADES A-C
- | 16 GCSE GRADES D-G
- | 17 CSE GRADE 1/SCE BANDS A-C/Standard Grade LEVEL 1-3
- | 18 CSE GRADES 2-5/SCE Ordinary BANDS D-E
- | 19 CSE Ungraded
- | 20 SLC Lower
- | 21 SUPE Lower or Ordinary
- | 22 School Certificate or Matric

| 23 NVQ Level 5  
| 24 NVQ Level 4  
| 25 NVQ Level 3/Advanced level GNVQ  
| 26 NVQ Level 2/Intermediate level GNVQ  
| 27 NVQ Level 1/Foundation level GNVQ  
| 28 Recognised Trade Apprenticeship completed  
| 29 Clerical or Commercial Qualification (eg typing/book-keeping/commerce)  
| 95 Other qualifications

| **[code maximum 3 out of 30 possible responses]**

| **[Multiple responses to Fqqual are recorded in variables fqqual1 to fqqual3]**

| *IF (qualification = other) [FqQual = 95]*

| **FQOQ\* @**

| What qualifications are these?

| INTERVIEWER: Record all other qualifications in full.

| PROBE - 'What else?'

| String 60

| **[Open responses to Fqoq are coded and merged with the multiple responses to Fqqual (recorded in Fqqual1 to Fqqual3). These merged responses are recorded in variables fqquzm1 and fqquzm2]**

| END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF age finished education at previous wave <> RESPONSE [FqEnd (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

| **FQEND\***

| At what age did [^you / ^name]] finish [^your / his / her] continuous full-time education at school or college?

| 1 Not yet finished

| 2 Never went to school

| 3 14 or under

| 4 At 15

| 5 At 16

| 6 At 17

| 7 At 18

| 8 19 or over

END OF FILTER

**FQPROX @**

Sometime in the next two years, we will wish to contact you again. If we are unable to contact you personally when we next visit, for example if you were ill at the time, or had moved into a residential or nursing home and were unable to speak to us, would you be prepared for us to collect information about your circumstances from [^your wife / husband / partner] a relative or a close friend?

INTERVIEWER: If asked please clarify further: 'For example, we would not intentionally approach someone if you were away on holiday or temporarily ill. We would only approach the person if you were too sick, either physically or mentally, or if you had died. We would not give the person details of what you have said in previous interviews.'

INTERVIEWER: If given, write details on ARF at Section G (Proxy Informant).

1 Willing to give proxy nomination

- 2 Unwilling to give proxy nomination
- 3 Does not wish to be interviewed by proxy

*IF give stable address <> Willing [FqAddr <> 1]*

**FQADDR\* @**

[^BLANK / Sometime in the next two years, we will wish to contact [^you / [^name]] again].  
 In case [^you move / [^name] moves] from this address, could you tell me the address and telephone number of a relative or close friend we could contact to find out where [^you are / [^name] is]?

INTERVIEWER: If the respondent is unwilling to give address as they are not planning to move, add: 'As people who aren't planning to move sometimes do move because their circumstances change, we would be very grateful if you could give us the name and address of a contact person just in case you do move unexpectedly.'

INTERVIEWER: If given, write the details on ARF at Section G (Stable Address).

- 1 Willing to give contact address
- 2 Unwilling to give contact address
- 3 Does not wish to be re-contacted

ELSE

*IF give stable address = Willing [FqAddr = 1]*

**FQSTC\* @**

Sometime in next two years, we will wish to contact you again. Last time we interviewed [^you / [^name]] [^you / he / she] gave us the address and telephone number of a relative or close friend we could contact to find out where you are if [^you / he / she] move from this address. Can I check that these details are still correct?

INTERVIEWER: Check name, address and telephone number of stable contact, as given on the ARF cover sheet, are still correct. If different, write correct details on ARF at Section G (Stable Address).

- 1 Contact address details correct
- 2 Contact address details not correct
- 3 Does not wish to be recontacted

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF name of proxy respondent = other [DiInt = 97]*

**FQADDP\* @**

For our records, we would like to record who answered the interview on [^Name]'s behalf. Could you please give me your full name, address and telephone number?

INTERVIEWER: If given write on ARF at Section G (Proxy Informant).

- 1 Willing to give address
  - 2 Unwilling to give address
- [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

END OF FILTER

*IF Type of sample member = Core member or Core partner [NewName = CM,CP]*

**FQNURSE @**

There are two parts to this survey. You have just helped us with the first part. We hope you will also help us with the second part, which is a visit by a qualified nurse to collect more

medical information and carry out some measurements.  
I would like to make an appointment for the nurse to come round and explain some more about what is required. May I suggest some dates and times and see when you are free?  
INTERVIEWER: If asked for details say - 'The nurse will take some measurement including your height, weight and blood pressure. You will not have any measurements taken if you do not wish to.'  
1 Yes to nurse visit  
2 No to nurse visit

*IF agreed nurse visit = No [FqNurse = 2]*

**FQNURRF @**

INTERVIEWER: Record reason why respondent refused nurse contact.

- 0 Own doctor already has information
- 1 Given enough time already to this survey / expecting too much
- 2 Too busy, cannot spare the time (if Code 1 does not apply)
- 3 Had enough of medical tests/medical profession at present time
- 4 Worried about what nurse may find out/'might tempt fate'
- 5 Scared / of medical profession / particular medical procedures (e.g. blood sample)
- 6 Not interested / Can't be bothered / No particular reason
- 7 Other reason (specify)

**[code maximum 6 out of 8 possible responses]**

**[Multiple responses to Fqnurrf are recorded in variables fqnurrf1 to fqnurrf6 @]**

*IF reason for refusing nurse contact = Other [FqNurRf = 7]*

**FQNRRFO @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify other reason for refusal.

String 60

END OF FILTER

ELSE

*IF agreed nurse visit = Yes [FqNurse = 1]*

**FQAPT @**

INTERVIEWER: Fill in details on the nurse appointment record card including the date and time of appointment if arranged. Explain to respondent that the nurse will try to call to confirm or arrange the appointment. Explain that the card gives details of how they can prepare for the nurse visit, including the fasting blood sample, and the nurse will run through it with them when they telephone. Don't forget to leave the genetics leaflet.

Code how the nurse appointment is arranged:

- 1 Nurse appointment arranged by the nurse
- 2 Nurse appointment arranged by me

*IF who arranged nurse visit <> EMPTY [FqApt <> EMPTY]*

**FQAPREM @**

INTERVIEWER: Please tell the respondent not to fast if they are aged 80 or over, are diabetic, on treatment, have ever had a fit, have a clotting or bleeding disorder, or are taking any anti-coagulant drugs.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

|| | END OF FILTER  
|| |  
|| | END OF FILTER  
|| |  
| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

*IF (consent given to health or economic consent at previous wave <> given) AND ((health consent at previous wave <> given) AND (Economic consent at previous wave <> given)) [FQCons (Wave 1) <> 1 AND Conreca (Wave 1) <> 1 AND Conrecb (Wave 1) <> 1]*

**FQCONS @**

We have asked about your health and economic circumstances. To make this information complete we would like to find out more about your health and treatment and more about your National Insurance contributions, social security benefits and tax credits. We would like to collect this information from administrative records held by the Office for National Statistics, the National Health Service, Inland Revenue and the Department for Work and Pensions. Like the answers you have given us, the information collected from these records will be completely confidential in accordance with the Data Protection Act. This form explains in more detail and you can ask me any questions that you may have.

INTERVIEWER: Give respondent the yellow consent form.

If respondent signs form, remember to leave them the white tear-off copy.

Press <F9> for help on where to find NI number.

- 1 Consents A and B given
  - 2 Consent A only given
  - 3 Consent B only given
  - 4 Both consents refused
  - 5 Consent form left with respondent
- [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[CHECK FQ4]**

ELSE

*IF (health consent at previous wave <> given) AND (economic consent at previous wave = given) [Conreca (Wave 1) <>1 AND Conrecb (Wave 1) =1]*

**FQCONA @**

Last time we interviewed you you kindly gave us written permission to obtain more information about your National Insurance contributions, social security benefits and tax credits from administrative records held by the Inland Revenue and the Department for Work and Pensions. In order to make our information about your health complete, we would like to find out more about your health and treatment from administrative records held by the National Health Service. The information from these records will be completely confidential in accordance with the Data Protection Act.

INTERVIEWER: Probe to find out if respondent is likely to give additional consent. If yes, give yellow form. If no, give orange form and tick box 'B'. Say: 'Would you be willing to give us this additional consent, or would you prefer to leave your consent status as it is?'

INTERVIEWER: If the respondent wishes to withdraw their consent, explain that they can do so by writing to NatCen.

- 1 Additional consent given
  - 2 Additional consent refused - reminder form left with respondent
  - 3 Yellow Consent form left with respondent
- [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[CHECK FQ5]**

ELSE

*IF (health consent at previous wave = given) AND (Economic consent at previous wave <> given) [Conreca (Wave 1) =1 AND Conrecb (Wave 1) <> 1]*

**FQCONB @**

Last time we interviewed you you kindly gave us written permission to obtain more information about your health and treatment from administrative records held by the National Health Service. You may still have a copy of the form you signed.

In order to make our information about your economic circumstances complete, we would like to find out more about your National Insurance contributions, social security benefits and tax credits from administrative records held by the Inland Revenue and Department for Work and Pensions. The information from these records will be completely confidential in accordance with the Data Protection Act.

INTERVIEWER: Press <F9> for help on where to find the NI number.

INTERVIEWER: Probe to find out if respondent is likely to give additional consent. If yes, give yellow form. If no, give orange form and tick box 'A'. Say: 'Would you be willing to give us this additional consent, or would you prefer to leave your consent status as it is?'

INTERVIEWER: If the respondent wishes to withdraw their consent, explain that they can do so by writing to NatCen.

1 Additional consent given

2 Additional consent refused - reminder form left with respondent

3 Yellow Consent form left with respondent

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[CHECK FQ6]**

ELSE

*IF (health consent at previous wave = given) AND (economic consent at previous wave = given) Conreca (Wave 1) = 1 AND Conrecb (Wave 1) = 1]*

**FQCONC @**

Last time we interviewed you you kindly gave us written permission to obtain more information about your health and treatment from administrative records held by the National Health Service and your National Insurance contributions, social security benefits and tax credits from administrative records held by the Inland Revenue and the Department for Work and Pensions. You may still have a copy of the form you signed. I'd like to give you this form to remind you of the permission that you gave us last time.

INTERVIEWER: Give the respondent the orange consent reminder form.

If respondent wishes to withdraw their consent, explain that they can do so by writing to the NatCen at the address given on the form.

1 Respondent accepted reminder form

2 Respondent queried they gave NatCen this consent last time

3 Respondent asked to withdraw consent

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF Consent to link to National Health Service Central Register at previous wave <> RESPONSE  
[NHSCR (Wave 1) <> RESPONSE]*

**FQNHSC @**

The National Health Service has a central register which records information on important diseases and causes of death. May we have your permission to pass your name, address, and date of birth to this register?

1 Permission given

2 Refused

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF details passed onto NHS = permission given [FQNHSC = 1]*

**FQNHSCS @**

INTERVIEWER: EXPLAIN THE NEED FOR WRITTEN CONSENT: 'Before I can pass your details on, I have to obtain written consent from you'.

INTERVIEWER: Enter details on NHS Central Register Consent Form.

Ask respondent to sign and date form. Code whether signed consent obtained.

1 Signed consent obtained

2 Signed consent not obtained

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF other respondent in HH has died*

*IF deceased respondent in HH eligible for exit interview = Yes [PElig = 1]*

**FQEIINT\* @**

I was told earlier that [^name] has passed away. In order to ensure that we understand the end of [^his / her] life, we have some questions we would like to ask about [^him / her].

Would you be willing to answer these questions at a future date?

INTERVIEWER: Give details of content of exit interview. It will cover the deceased respondent's activities in the last year of life, [^his / her] health and some summary financial information. Offer a telephone unit appointment if respondent would prefer. Say 'If you would prefer I can organise for another interviewer to ask you the questions over the telephone. Priority code.

1 willing to answer exit interview face-to-face

2 willing to answer exit interview by telephone

3 unwilling to answer exit interview

4 SPONTANEOUS ONLY: Unwilling for anyone to answer the exit interview

*[There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are recorded in Fqeiiint, fqeiiint2 to fqueiint9 @]*

ELSE

*IF deceased respondent in HH eligible for exit interview = No [PElig = 2]*

**FQEILAT\* @**

I understand that [^name]'s death occurred very recently. If at some time in the future we'd like to talk to you about [^him / her], may we contact you to see if you would be willing to help us?

```

| | | 1 Willing to be approached
| | | 2 Unwilling to be approached
| | |
| | | [There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are
| | | recorded in Fqeilat, fqeilat2 to fqeilat9 @]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | IF (exit interview = UnWilling) OR (approach in future for exit interview = UnWilling)
| | | [FqEiInt = 3 OR FqEiLat = 2]
| | |
| | | FQEIAN* @
| | | Could you nominate someone else who could answer the questions?
| | | If appropriate, refer to stable address contact.
| | | 1 Willing to give details of exit interview informant
| | | 2 Unwilling to give details of exit interview informant
| | |
| | | [There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are
| | | recorded in Fqeiany, Fqeiany2 to Fqeiany9 @]
| | |
| | | IF give details of exit informant = Willing [FqEiAny = 1]
| | |
| | | IF eligible for exit interview = No [PElig = 2]
| | |
| | | FQEINOAR* @
| | | INTERVIEWER: Please collect contact details for nominated person on ARF at D4 and
| | | record this in admin block. You do not need to open an ERF.
| | | Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| | | Range: 1..1
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | FQEIHMEM* @
| | | INTERVIEWER: Enter person number of potential exit interview respondent.
| | | 97 : Not a household member
| | | Range: 1..97
| | |
| | | [CHECK FQ7]
| | |
| | | IF person number of potential exit interview respondent = RESPONSE
| | | [FqEiHMem = RESPONSE]
| | |
| | | FQEIREL* @
| | | How is the potential exit interview respondent related to [^name]?
| | | 01 Husband / Wife
| | | 02 Partner / cohabitee
| | | 03 Natural son / daughter
| | | 04 Adopted son / daughter
| | | 05 Foster son / daughter
| | | 06 Step son / daughter / child of partner
| | | 07 Son / daughter-in-law
| | | 08 Natural parent
| | | 09 Adoptive parent
| | | 10 Foster parent

```

11 Stepparent / parent's partner  
12 Parent-in-law  
13 Natural brother / sister  
14 Half-brother / sister  
15 Step-brother / sister  
16 Adopted brother / sister  
17 Foster brother / sister  
18 Brother / sister-in-law  
19 Grandchild  
20 Grandparent  
21 Other relative  
22 Other non-relative  
96 (THIS CODE NOT USED)  
[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are recorded in Fqeire1 , fqeirel2 to fqeirel9 @]**

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (exit interview = Willing - face-to-face, Willing - telephone) OR ((eligible for exit interview= Yes) AND (nominate someone else for exit interview = Willing))*  
*[FqEiInt = 1, 2 OR PElig = 1 AND FqEiAny = 1]*

**FQEIARF\* @**

INTERVIEWER: Open an ERF (Exit Record Form) and complete contact details as directed.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are recorded in variables fqeiarf, fqeiarf2 to fqeiarf5 @]**

END OF FILTER

*IF (eligible for exit Interview = Yes) AND (nominate someone else for exit interview = Willing) [PElig = 1 AND FqEiAny = 1]*

**FQEIWH\* @**

INTERVIEWER: Will it be possible for you to follow this up?

If it is within a reasonable distance, please attempt to.

1 Yes

2 No

**[There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are recorded in variables Fqeiwh, Fqeiwh2 to Fqeiwh12 @]**

END OF FILTER

*IF proxy to answer exit interview = Willing - face-to-face [FqEiInt = 1]*

**FQEIAPT\* @**

INTERVIEWER: You are required to follow this up. Arrange appointment and write details on appointment record card.

```

| | | Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| | | Range: 1..1
| | |
| | | [There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are
| | | recorded in variables fqeiapt, fqeiapt2 to fqeiapt9 @]
| | |
| | | ELSE
| | |
| | | IF proxy to answer exit interview = Willing - telephone [FqEilnt = 2]
| | |
| | | FQEITU* @
| | | INTERVIEWER: Collect telephone details.
| | | String 15
| | |
| | | [There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are
| | | recorded in variables fqeitu, fqeitu2 to fqeitu12 @]
| | |
| | | FQEIBT* @
| | | INTERVIEWER: Establish when would be the best time for the telephone unit to call.
| | | 1 9 am - 12 pm
| | | 2 12 pm - 3 pm
| | | 3 3 pm - 6 pm
| | | 4 6 pm - 9 pm
| | | 5 Any time in morning (before midday)
| | | 6 Any time in afternoon (after midday)
| | | 7 Any time at all
| | |
| | | [There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are
| | | recorded in variables fqeibt, fqeibt2 to fqeibt12 @]
| | |
| | | FQEIBD* @
| | | INTERVIEWER: Which is the best day for the telephone unit to call?
| | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.
| | | 1 Monday
| | | 2 Tuesday
| | | 3 Wednesday
| | | 4 Thursday
| | | 5 Friday
| | | 6 Saturday
| | | 7 Sunday
| | | 8 Any weekday
| | | 9 At the weekend
| | |
| | | [code maximum 4 out of 9 possible responses]
| | | [Multiple responses to Fqeibd are recorded in variables fqeibd1 to fqeibd4 @]
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER
| | |
| | | END OF FILTER

```

*IF other respondent in HH has moved into an institution*

| IF type of institution interview needed = personal, proxy - respondent in HH, proxy -  
| respondent outside HH Yes [PElig = 1]

| IF type of institution interview needed = proxy - respondent outside HH Yes [PType = 3]

| **FQMIPRX\* @**

| You told me earlier that [^name] has moved into a residential / nursing home and would  
| not be capable of answering questions [^himself / herself]. Please can you give me  
| the details of the person you would like us to talk to about [^him / her].

| INTERVIEWER: If given, please write on ARF section C5.

- | 1 Willing to give institution proxy informant details
- | 2 Unwilling to give institution proxy informant details

| **[There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are  
| recorded in variables fqmiprx, fqmiprx2 to fqmiprx9@]**

| ELSE

| **FQMIADD\* @**

| You told me earlier that has moved into a residential / nursing home. [^BLANK / In  
| order to understand the variation in the lives of older people, we'd like to ask him / her  
| to continue to participate in the study.] Would you be prepared to give me the contact  
| details of [^name]'s residential / nursing home [^BLANK / for our records]?

| INTERVIEWER: If given, write details on ARF section C7.

- | 1 Willing to give institution details
- | 2 Unwilling to give institution details

| **[There is a separate variable for responses about each person. Responses are  
| recorded in variables fqmiadd, fqmiadd2 to fqmiadd9 @]**

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| END OF FILTER

| **TITL\***

| INTERVIEWER: Check / collect respondent's title, first name and surname.

| If new / different, write the details on ARF at Section G.

- | 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| **ADDR\***

| INTERVIEWER: Check address as written on the ARF is correct. If not, correct.

- | 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| **TEL\***

| INTERVIEWER: Check / collect respondent's telephone number.

| If new / different, write the details on ARF.

- | 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| **EMAIL\***

| INTERVIEWER: Ask respondent for their email address (if they have one).

| If given, write on ARF at G.

- | 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

**FQHELP\***

INTERVIEWER: Did respondent need any help reading the showcards during the interview?

- 1 Yes - due to sight problems
- 2 Yes - due to literacy problems
- 3 Yes - don't know reason
- 4 No

## TIMED WALK (MEASUREMENT) MODULE (MM)

### MFIRST

INTERVIEWER: This is the Measurements Qre for... [^Name]

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

### MINTDAT @

INTERVIEWER: Today's date is displayed below. Please amend it if it's not correct.

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

### [CHECK MM1]

*IF Respondent's age >= 60 [IAgeOF >= 60]*

#### MMSCHS

INTERVIEWER: Record respondent status.

1 Observed walking without help of another person or using support

2 Observed walking with help of another person or using support

3 Not observed - in wheelchair

4 Not observed - bed bound

5 Not observed - uncertain if respondent has impairment

*IF Whether observed respondent walking = walking without help [MmSchs = 1]*

#### MMALONE

I would like to test whether you can walk a very short distance comfortably. (Can I just check,)

are you able to walk alone without holding on to another person (using a walking stick or

other aid if necessary)?

1 Yes

2 Yes but aid unavailable

3 No

END OF FILTER

*IF (Whether observed respondent walking = walking without help) OR (whether can walk alone without help = Yes) [MmSchs = 1 OR MmAlone = 1]*

#### MMHSS

[^BLANK / I would now like to test whether you can walk a very short distance comfortably

(using a walking stick or other aid if necessary).] First, I would like to ask a few questions to

check it is safe to carry out the test. Do you have any problems from recent surgery, injury, or

other health conditions that might prevent you from walking?

1 No apparent restriction

2 Yes, Recent surgery

3 Yes, Injury

4 Yes, Other health condition

*IF Whether has medical condition that restricts walking = No Restriction [MmHSS = 1]*

#### MMWILL

Are you willing to do the walking test?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether willing to do walking test = Yes [MmWill = 1]*

**MMSAF**

INTERVIEWER: Do you feel that it is safe to continue with the walking test?

1 Yes

2 No

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF (Whether has medical condition that restricts walking = recent surgery, aid unavailable, Other, don't know, refusal) OR (whether can walk alone without help = aid unavailable, no, don't know, refusal) OR (whether interviewer feels it is safe to do walking test = No, don't know, refusal) [MmHSS = 2, 3, 4, DONTKNOW, REFUSAL OR MmAlone = 2, 3, DONTKNOW, REFUSAL OR MmSaf =no, don't know, refusal]*

**MMSTOP @**

INTERVIEWER: Stop test, for example saying: 'It would be safest to skip this test and move on to the next set of questions'.

1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF Respondent's age >= 60 [IAgeOF >= 60]*

*IF (Whether willing to do the walking test = Yes) AND (Whether interviewer feels it is safe to do the walking test = Yes) [ MmWill = 1 AND MmSaf = 1]*

**MMAVSP**

INTERVIEWER: Check availability of suitable space.

1 Suitable space available

2 No suitable space

*IF whether suitable space available = Suitable space [MmAvsp = 1]*

**MMWALA**

This is our walking course. I want you to walk to the other end of the course at your usual walking pace, just as if you were walking down the street to go to the shops. Walk all the way past the other end of the tape before you stop.

INTERVIEWER: Demonstrate the walk for the respondent.

(I will walk with you.) Do you feel this would be safe?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF whether feels walking test would be safe = Yes [MmWala = 1]*

**MMSTRT @**

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin!'

INTERVIEWER: Ask the respondent to stand with both feet together at the start of the walking course. When the respondent is properly positioned at the start of the walking course, say: 'Ready, begin!' Press the start / stop button to start the stopwatch as the respondent's foot hits the floor across the starting line. If possible walk behind and to the

||| side of the respondent. Stop timing when the respondent's foot hits the floor after the end  
||| of the walking course.  
||| Enter 1 to continue.  
||| Range: 1..1

||| **MMTRYA**

||| INTERVIEWER: Record results of first trial.

||| Enter time at next question.

||| 1 Completed successfully

||| 2 Attempted but unable to complete

||| 3 Stopped by the interviewer because of safety reasons

||| 4 Respondent refused

||| *IF result of first walking test = Completed successfully [MmTrya = 1]*

||| **MMWLKA**

||| INTERVIEWER: Record time in seconds to two decimal places.

||| **MMWALB @**

||| Now I want you to repeat the walk. Remember to walk at your usual pace, and go all the  
||| way past the other end of the course.

||| 1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

||| **[CHECK MM2-MM4]**

||| **MMTRYB**

||| INTERVIEWER :Record result of second trial.

||| Enter time at next question.

||| 1 Completed successfully

||| 2 Attempted but unable to complete

||| 3 Stopped by the interviewer because of safety reasons

||| 4 Respondent refused

||| *IF result of second walking test = Completed successfully [MmTryb = 1]*

||| **MMWLKB**

||| INTERVIEWER: Record time in seconds to two decimal places.

||| **[CHECK MM5-MM9]**

||| END OF FILTER

||| *IF Respondent's age >= 60 [IAgeOF >= 60]*

||| *IF (result of first walking test = Completed successfully) OR (result of second walking test =*  
||| *Completed successfully) [ MmTrya = 1 OR MmTryb = 1]*

**MMPAIN**

INTERVIEWER: Code if respondent has commented on pain,  
OTHERWISE ASK: 'Did you have pain while you were performing the walking test?'

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**MMRECR**

INTERVIEWER: Record type of floor surface.

- 1 Linoleum / tile / wood
- 2 Low-pile carpet
- 3 Thick-pile carpet
- 4 Concrete
- 5 Others

*IF Type of floor surface = Other [MmRecR = 5]*

**MMRECRO @**

INTERVIEWER: Enter other type of floor surface.  
String 20

*/// [Open responses to Mmrecro were coded and then incorporated into Mmrecr.  
/// Mmrecrc identifies that an open response was given at Mmrecro and incorporated  
/// into Mmrecr]*

END OF FILTER

**MMAID**

INTERVIEWER: Record type of aid used.

- 1 None
- 2 Walking stick or cane
- 3 Elbow crutches
- 4 Walking frame
- 5 Others

*IF Type of walking aid used = Other [MmAid = 5]*

**MMAIDO @**

INTERVIEWER: Enter other type of aid used.  
String 20

*/// [Open responses to Mmaido were coded and then incorporated into Mmaid. Mmaidc  
/// identifies that an open response was given at Mmaido and incorporated into Mmaid.]*

END OF FILTER

END OF FILTER

*IF NOT ((result of first walking test = completed successfully) AND (result of second walking  
test = completed successfully)) [NOT MmTrya = 1 AND MmTryb = 1]*

**MMCOM@**

INTERVIEWER: Provide details about why the walking test was not completed successfully,  
i.e. why it was stopped for safety reasons, refused, or not completed.  
Open

| END OF FILTER  
|  
END OF FILTER

**MMX@**

INTERVIEWER: The Measurements Interview is finished.  
Please enter 1 here to make the program store the current time and date.  
Range: 1..1

**MTHANK @**

INTERVIEWER: The Measurements Interview is finished.  
- to return to the Individual Qre, press <Ctrl> <Enter >  
- to start another Individual Qre, press <Ctrl> <Enter >  
- to update the Admin details, press <Ctrl> <Enter>  
1 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

## PAPER SELF-COMPLETION QUESTIONNAIRE MODULE (SC) (PDF version also archived)

### SCPTP

Which of these statements apply to you?

TICK ALL THAT APPLY

- 2 I read a daily newspaper
- 3 I have a hobby or pastime
- 4 I have taken a holiday in the UK in the last 12 months
- 5 I have taken a holiday abroad in the last 12 months
- 6 I have gone on a daytrip or outing in the last 12 months
- 7 I use the internet and/or email
- 8 I own a mobile phone
- 96 None of these statements apply to me

[Multiple responses to Scptp are recorded in variables Scpt02 to Scpt09]

### SCORG

Are you a member of any of these organisations, clubs or societies?

TICK ALL THAT APPLY

- 1 Political party, trade union or environmental groups
- 2 Tenants groups, resident groups, Neighbourhood watch
- 3 Church or other religious groups
- 4 Charitable associations
- 5 Education, arts or music groups or evening classes
- 6 Social Clubs
- 7 Sports clubs, gyms, exercise classes
- 95 Any other organisations, clubs or societies
- 96 No, I am not a member of any organisations, clubs or societies

[Multiple responses to Scorg are recorded in variables Scorg01 to Scorg09]

*IF has been a member of any of the organisations, clubs or societies: Scorg <> 96*

|

#### | SCORGN

| Thinking about all the organisations, clubs or societies that you are a member of,  
| how many committee meetings if any, do you attend in a year?

| Range: 0..52

|

*ENDIF*

### SCACCA

How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?

Bank or cash point

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

### SCACCB

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Chiroprapist

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy

- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

**SCACCC**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Dentist

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

**SCACCD**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

General Practitioner

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

**SCACCE**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Hospital

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

**SCACCF**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Local Shops

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

**SCACCG**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Optician

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

**SCACCH**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Post Office

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

### **SCACCI**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Shopping Centre

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

### **SCAC CJ**

(How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?)

Supermarket

- 1 Very easy
- 2 Quite easy
- 3 Quite difficult
- 4 Very difficult
- 5 Does not apply

### **SCACTA**

Now for some questions about your social activities. How often, if at all, do you do any of the following activities?

Go to the cinema

- 1 Twice a month or more
- 2 About once a month
- 3 Every few months
- 4 About once or twice a year
- 5 Less than once a year
- 6 Never

### **SCACTB**

(How often, if at all, do you do any of the following activities?)

Eat out of the house

- 1 Twice a month or more
- 2 About once a month
- 3 Every few months
- 4 About once or twice a year
- 5 Less than once a year
- 6 Never

### **SCACTC**

(How often, if at all, do you do any of the following activities?)

Go to an art gallery or museum

- 1 Twice a month or more
- 2 About once a month
- 3 Every few months

- 4 About once or twice a year
- 5 Less than once a year
- 6 Never

**SCACTD**

(How often, if at all, do you do any of the following activities?)

Go to the theatre, a concert or the opera

- 1 Twice a month or more
- 2 About once a month
- 3 Every few months
- 4 About once or twice a year
- 5 Less than once a year
- 6 Never

**SCMOREA**

Would you like to do any of the following activities more often but feel that, for whatever reason, you cannot?

Go to the cinema

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**SCMOREB**

(Would you like to do any of the following activities more often but feel that, for whatever reason, you cannot?)

Eat out of the house

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**SCMOREC**

(Would you like to do any of the following activities more often but feel that, for whatever reason, you cannot?)

Go to an art gallery or museum

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**SCMORED**

(Would you like to do any of the following activities more often but feel that, for whatever reason, you cannot?)

Go to the theatre, a concert or the opera

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

Here is a list of statements that people have used to describe their lives or how they feel. How often, do you feel like this?

**SCQOLA**

My age prevents me from doing the things I would like to

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLB**

I feel that what happens to me is out of my control

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes

- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLC**

I feel free to plan for the future

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLD**

I feel left out of things

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLE**

I can do the things that I want to do

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLF**

Family responsibilities prevent me from doing what I want to do

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLG**

I feel that I can please myself what I do

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLH**

My health stops me from doing things I want to do

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLI**

Shortage of money stops me from doing things I want to do

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLJ**

I look forward to each day

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes

- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLK**

I feel that my life has meaning

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLL**

I enjoy the things that I do

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLM**

I enjoy being in the company of others

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLN**

On balance, I look back on my life with a sense of happiness

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLO**

I feel full of energy these days

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLP**

I choose to do things that I have never done before

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLQ**

I feel satisfied with the way my life has turned out

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLR**

I feel that life is full of opportunities

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes

- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

**SCQOLS**

I feel that the future looks good for me

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Not often
- 4 Never

The next questions are about how you feel about different aspects of your life. For each one, please say how often you feel that way.

**SCFEELA**

How often do you feel you lack companionship?

- 1 Hardly ever or never
- 2 Some of the time
- 3 Often

**SCFEELB**

How often do you feel left out?

- 1 Hardly ever or never
- 2 Some of the time
- 3 Often

**SCFEELC**

How often do you feel isolated from others?

- 1 Hardly ever or never
- 2 Some of the time
- 3 Often

**SCFEELD**

How often do you feel in tune with the people around you?

- 1 Hardly ever or never
- 2 Some of the time
- 3 Often

**SCLIFEA**

Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements. In most ways my life is close to ideal

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Neither agree nor disagree
- 5 Slightly disagree
- 6 Disagree
- 7 Strongly disagree

**SCLIFEB**

(Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements.) The conditions of my life are excellent

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Neither agree nor disagree
- 5 Slightly disagree

- 6 Disagree
- 7 Strongly disagree

**SCLIFEC**

(Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements.) I am satisfied with my life

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Neither agree nor disagree
- 5 Slightly disagree
- 6 Disagree
- 7 Strongly disagree

**SCLIFED**

(Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements.) So far I have got the important things I want in life

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Neither agree nor disagree
- 5 Slightly disagree
- 6 Disagree
- 7 Strongly disagree

**SCLIFEE**

(Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements.) If I could live life again, I would change almost nothing

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Neither agree nor disagree
- 5 Slightly disagree
- 6 Disagree
- 7 Strongly disagree

Here are some questions about how you feel about your life in general. Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements.

**SCDCA**

At home, I feel I have control over what happens in most situations

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Moderately agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Moderately disagree
- 6 Strongly disagree

**SCDCC**

I feel what happens in life is often determined by factors beyond my control

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Moderately agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Moderately disagree
- 6 Strongly disagree

**SCDCD**

In general, I have different demands that I think are hard to combine

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Moderately agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Moderately disagree
- 6 Strongly disagree

**SCDCE**

In general, I have enough time to do everything

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Moderately agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Moderately disagree
- 6 Strongly disagree

**SCDCG**

Considering the things I have to do at home, I have to work very fast

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Moderately agree
- 3 Slightly agree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Moderately disagree
- 6 Strongly disagree

**SCPTR**

Do you have a husband, wife or partner with whom you live?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF has a husband, wife or partner with whom they live: Scptr = 1*

| We would now like to ask you some questions about your spouse or partner. Please  
| tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.

**SCPTRA**

| How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCPTRB**

| How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCPTRC**

| How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some

- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCPTRD**

| How much do they criticise you?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCPTRE**

| How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCPTRF**

| How much do they get on your nerves?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCPTRG**

| How close is your relationship with your spouse or partner?

- | 1 Very close
- | 2 Quite close
- | 3 Not very close
- | 4 Not at all close

| *ENDIF*

| **SCCHD**

| Do you have any children?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| *IF has any children: Scchd = 1*

| We would like to ask you some questions about your children. Please tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.

| **SCCHDA**

| How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCCHDB**

| How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

**SCCHDC**

How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCCHDD**

How much do they criticise you?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCCHDE**

How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCCHDF**

How much do they get on your nerves?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCCHDG**

On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of your children, not counting any who live with you?

Meet up (include both arranged and chance meetings)?

- 1 Three or more times a week
- 2 Once or twice a week
- 3 Once or twice a month
- 4 Every few months
- 5 Once or twice a year
- 6 Less than once a year or never

**SCCHDH**

(On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of your children, not counting any who live with you?)

Speak on the phone?

- 1 Three or more times a week
- 2 Once or twice a week
- 3 Once or twice a month
- 4 Every few months
- 5 Once or twice a year
- 6 Less than once a year or never

**SCCHDI**

(On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of your children, not counting any who live with you?)

Write or email?

- 1 Three or more times a week

- | 2 Once or twice a week
- | 3 Once or twice a month
- | 4 Every few months
- | 5 Once or twice a year
- | 6 Less than once a year or never

| **SCCHDM**

| How many of your children would you say you have a close relationship with?

| Range: 0..10

| *ENDIF*

| **SCFAM**

| Do you have any other immediate family, for example, any brothers or sisters, parents, cousins or grandchildren?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| *IF has any other immediate family: Scfam = 1*

| We would now like to ask you some questions about these family members. Please tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.

| **SCFAMA**

| How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCFAMB**

| How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCFAMC**

| How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCFAMD**

| How much do they criticise you?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCFAME**

| How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little

| 4 Not at all

| **SCFAMF**

| How much do they get on your nerves?

- | 1 A lot
- | 2 Some
- | 3 A little
- | 4 Not at all

| **SCFAMG**

| On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of these family members, not counting any who live with you?

| Meet up (include both arranged and chance meetings)?

- | 1 Three or more times a week
- | 2 Once or twice a week
- | 3 Once or twice a month
- | 4 Every few months
- | 5 Once or twice a year
- | 6 Less than once a year or never

| **SCFAMH**

| (On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of these family members, not counting any who live with you?)

| Speak on the phone?

- | 1 Three or more times a week
- | 2 Once or twice a week
- | 3 Once or twice a month
- | 4 Every few months
- | 5 Once or twice a year
- | 6 Less than once a year or never

| **SCFAMI**

| (On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of these family members, not counting any who live with you?)

| Write or email?

- | 1 Three or more times a week
- | 2 Once or twice a week
- | 3 Once or twice a month
- | 4 Every few months
- | 5 Once or twice a year
- | 6 Less than once a year or never

| **SCFAMM**

| How many of these family members would you say you have a close relationship with?

| Range: 0..20

| *ENDIF*

| **SCFRD**

| Do you have any friends?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| *IF has any friends: Scfrd = 1*

|

We would now like to ask you some questions about your friends. Please tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.

**SCFRDA**

How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCFRDB**

How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCFRDC**

How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCFRDD**

How much do they criticise you?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCFRDE**

How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCFRDF**

How much do they get on your nerves?

- 1 A lot
- 2 Some
- 3 A little
- 4 Not at all

**SCFRDG**

On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of these friends, not counting any who live with you?

Meet up (include both arranged and chance meetings)?

- 1 Three or more times a week
- 2 Once or twice a week
- 3 Once or twice a month
- 4 Every few months
- 5 Once or twice a year
- 6 Less than once a year or never

| **SCFRDH**

| (On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of these friends,  
| not counting any who live with you?)

| Speak on the phone?

- | 1 Three or more times a week
- | 2 Once or twice a week
- | 3 Once or twice a month
- | 4 Every few months
- | 5 Once or twice a year
- | 6 Less than once a year or never

| **SCFRDI**

| (On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of these friends,  
| not counting any who live with you?)

| Write or email?

- | 1 Three or more times a week
- | 2 Once or twice a week
- | 3 Once or twice a month
- | 4 Every few months
- | 5 Once or twice a year
- | 6 Less than once a year or never

| **SCFRDM**

| How many of your friends would you say you have a close relationship with?

| Range: 0..30

| *ENDIF*

| **SCEMPL**

| Were you in paid employment last month?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| *IF paid employment in last month: Scempl = 1*

| Here are some statements people might use to describe their work. We would like  
| to know how strongly you think that these apply to the paid employment you did in  
| the last month.

| **SCWORKA**

| All things considered I am satisfied with my job

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKB**

| My job is physically demanding

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKC**

| I receive the recognition I deserve in my work

- | 1 Strongly agree

- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKD**

| My salary is adequate

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKE**

| My job promotion prospects are poor

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKF**

| My job security is poor

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKG**

| I am under constant pressure due to a heavy workload

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKH**

| I have very little freedom to decide how I do my work

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKI**

| I have the opportunity to develop new skills

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKJ**

| I receive adequate support in difficult situations

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKK**

| At work I feel I have control over what happens in most situations

- | 1 Strongly agree

- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCWORKL**

| Considering the things I have to do at work I have to work very fast

- | 1 Strongly agree
- | 2 Agree
- | 3 Disagree
- | 4 Strongly disagree

| **SCRAGE**

| At what age would you like to retire?

| Range: 0 to 201

| 996 I have already retired

|  
ENDIF

**SCLDDR**

Think of this ladder as representing where people stand in our society. At the top of the ladder are the people who are the best off – those who have the most money, most education and best jobs. At the bottom are the people who are the worst off – who have the least money, least education and the worst jobs or no jobs. The higher up you are on this ladder, the closer you are to people at the very top and the lower you are, the closer you are to people at the very bottom. Please mark a cross on the rung on the ladder where you would place yourself.

Range: 0..10

**SCLADD**

Has your position on the ladder changed within the last two years?

- 1 Yes, I have moved up
- 2 Yes, I have moved down
- 3 No, my position has not changed

The next few questions are about how you feel about your age and experience of growing older.

**SCOLD**

How old do you feel that you are?

Range: 0 to 120

**SCTOBE**

What age would you like to be?

Range: 0 to 120

**SCPONEG**

On the whole has growing older been a positive or negative experience?

- 1 Very positive
- 2 Mainly positive
- 3 Neither positive nor negative
- 4 Mainly negative
- 5 Very negative

Thinking of old age and your own ageing experience, to what extent do you agree or disagree with each of the following statements?

**SCEXPA**

We can learn a lot from old people

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPB**

As I get older, I expect to become more lonely

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPC**

Old age is a time of ill health

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPD**

As I get older I become more tolerant

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPE**

Old age is a time of loneliness

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPF**

As I get older, I expect to be able to do the things I've always done

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPG**

When I think of old people I think of them as generally grumpy and miserable

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPH**

I worry that my health will get worse as I grow older

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPI**

I don't think of myself as old

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPJ**

Old people don't get respect in society

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPK**

Retirement is a time of leisure

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCEXPL**

Growing older doesn't bother me

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Slightly agree
- 3 Neither agree nor disagree
- 4 Slightly disagree
- 5 Strongly disagree

**SCAKO**

Thinking now about all kinds of drink, how often have you had an alcoholic drink of any kind in the last 12 months?

- 1 Almost every day
- 2 Five or six days a week
- 3 Three or four days a week
- 4 Once or twice a week
- 5 Once or twice a month
- 6 Once every couple of months
- 7 Once or twice a year
- 8 Not at all in the last 12 months

*IF had alcohol in the last 12 months : Scako <> 96*

|

| **SCAL7A**

| Did you have an alcoholic drink in the seven days ending yesterday?

- | 1 Yes

| 2 No

| IF had alcohol in the last 7 days : Scal7a = 1

| **SCAL7B**

| On how many days out of the last seven did you have an alcoholic drink?

- | 1 One
- | 2 Two
- | 3 Three
- | 4 Four
- | 5 Five
- | 6 Six
- | 7 Seven

| Please think about the day in the last week on which you drank the most. (If you drank the same amount on more than one day, please answer about the most recent of those days.)

| From the list, please tick all the types of alcoholic drinks which you drank on that day. For the ones you drank, write in how much you drank on that day.

| EXCLUDE NON-ALCOHOLIC OR LOW-ALCOHOL DRINKS, EXCEPT SHANDY

| **SCDRI**

| Please tick all drinks drunk on that day

- | 1 Normal strength beer, lager, stout or cider or shandy (less than 6% alcohol) – excludes bottles/cans of shandy
- | 2 Strong beer, lager, stout or cider (6% alcohol or more, such as Tennants, Extra, | | Special Brew, Diamond White)
- | 3 Spirits or liqueurs, such as gin, whisky, rum, brandy, vodka, or cocktails
- | 4 Sherry or martini (including port, vermouth, cinzano, dubonnet)
- | 5 Wine (including babycham and champagne)
- | 6 Alcoholic soft drinks or 'alcopops' (such as Barcardi Breezer, Smirnoff Ice)
- | 7 Other (a)
- | 8 Other (b)

| **[Multiple responses to Scdri are recorded in variables Scdri01 to Scdri08]**

| *IF drank other (a) alcohol on heaviest day of drinking : [Scdri = 7]*

| **SCDRI07**

| Write in name of drink

| Text: up to 20 characters

| ENDIF

| *IF drank other (b) alcohol on heaviest day of drinking : [Scdri = 8]*

| **SCDRI08**

| Write in name of drink

| Text: up to 20 characters

| ENDIF

| *IF drank normal strength beer : Scdri = 1*

| **SCABNP**

| How many pints of normal strength beer were drunk on that day?

|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| **SCABNLC**  
|| How many large cans or bottles of normal strength beer were drunk on that day?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| **SCABNSC**  
|| How many small cans or bottles of normal strength beer were drunk on that day?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| *ENDIF*  
||  
|| *IF drank strong beer : Scidri = 2*  
||  
|| **SCABSP**  
|| How many pints of strong beer were drunk on that day?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| **SCABSP**  
|| How many large cans or bottles of strong beer were drunk on that day?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| **SCABNSC**  
|| How many small cans or bottles of strong beer were drunk on that day?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| *ENDIF*  
||  
|| *IF drank spirits or liqueurs : Scidri = 3*  
||  
|| **SCASPIR**  
|| How many glasses of spirits or liqueurs were drunk on that day (count doubles as  
|| 2 singles)?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| *ENDIF*  
||  
|| *IF drank sherry or martini : Scidri = 4*  
||  
|| **SCASHER**  
|| How many glasses of sherry or martini were drunk on that day (count doubles as  
|| 2 singles)?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| *ENDIF*  
||  
|| *IF drank wine : Scidri = 5*  
||  
|| **SCAWIN**  
|| How many glasses of sherry or martini were drunk on that day?  
|| Range: 0 to 30  
||  
|| *ENDIF*  
||  
|| *IF drank alcoholic soft drinks or 'alcopops' : Scidri = 6*  
||  
||

||| **SCAPOPG**

||| How many small cans or bottles of alcoholic soft drink or 'alcopop' were drunk on  
||| that day?

||| Range: 0 to 30

|||

|| *ENDIF*

||

| *ENDIF*

|

*ENDIF*

**SCEND**

If there is anything else you would like to tell us please write in this space below. We shall be very interested to read what you have to say.

Text: up to 100 characters

P2158 **A**

Serial number 1-9	CK 10	Person 11-12	First name	Card 13-14 Batch 15-19
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="text" value="2"/>

# Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

## Self-Completion Questionnaire In Confidence

### HOW TO FILL IN THIS QUESTIONNAIRE

Please answer the questions by:

Ticking a box like this

Or writing a number in a box like this

Sometimes you will find an instruction telling you which questions to answer next like this Yes

No  Go to **1**

### HOW TO RETURN THIS QUESTIONNAIRE

If the interviewer is still in your home when you have completed the questionnaire, please hand it back to them. If not, please return the completed questionnaire in the pre-paid envelope as soon as you possibly can.

**PLEASE START THE QUESTIONNAIRE AT QUESTION **1** ON THE NEXT PAGE**

**THANK YOU AGAIN FOR YOUR HELP**

**1 Which of these statements apply to you?***Tick all that apply*

- I read a daily newspaper  02
- I have a hobby or pastime  03
- I have taken a holiday in the UK in the last 12 months  04
- I have taken a holiday abroad in the last 12 months  05
- I have gone on a daytrip or outing in the last 12 months  06
- I use the internet and/or email  07
- I own a mobile phone  08
- None of these statements apply to me  09

**2 Are you a member of any of these organisations, clubs or societies?***Tick all that apply*

- Political party, trade union or environmental groups  01
- Tenants groups, resident groups, Neighbourhood Watch  02
- Church or other religious groups  03
- Charitable associations  04
- Education, arts or music groups or evening classes  05
- Social clubs  06
- Sports clubs, gyms, exercise classes  07
- Any other organisations, clubs or societies  08
- No, I am not a member of any organisations, clubs or societies  09
- Go to **3**
- Go to **4**

**3 Thinking about all the organisations, clubs or societies that you are a member of, how many committee meetings, if any, do you attend in a year?**

Please write the number in this box

4

**How easy or difficult would it be for you to get to each of the following places, using your usual form of transport?**

*Tick one box on each line*

	Very easy	Quite easy	Quite difficult	Very difficult	Does not apply	
Bank or cash point	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	52
Chiropodist	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	53
Dentist	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	54
General Practitioner	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	55
Hospital	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	56
Local Shops	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	57
Optician	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	58
Post Office	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	59
Shopping Centre	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	60
Supermarket	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	61

5

**Now some questions about your social activities. How often, if at all, do you do any of the following activities?**

*Tick one box on each line*

	Twice a month or more	About once a month	Every few months	About once or twice a year	Less than once a year	Never	
Go to the cinema	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	62
Eat out of the house	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	63
Go to an art gallery or museum	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	64
Go to the theatre, a concert or the opera	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	65

6

**Would you like to do any of the following activities more often but feel that, for whatever reason, you cannot?**

*Tick one box on each line*

	Yes	No	
Go to the cinema	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	66
Eat out of the house	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	67
Go to an art gallery or museum	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	68
Go to the theatre, a concert or the opera	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	69

7

**Here is a list of statements that people have used to describe their lives or how they feel. How often, do you feel like this?**

*Tick one box on each line*

Often    Some-  
times    Not  
Often    Never

My age prevents me from doing the things I would like to	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	70
I feel that what happens to me is out of my control	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	71
I feel free to plan for the future	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	72
I feel left out of things	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	73
I can do the things that I want to do	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	74
Family responsibilities prevent me from doing what I want to do	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	75
I feel that I can please myself what I do	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	76
My health stops me from doing things I want to do	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	77
Shortage of money stops me from doing the things I want to do	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	78
I look forward to each day	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	79
I feel that my life has meaning	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	80
I enjoy the things that I do	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	81
I enjoy being in the company of others	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	82
On balance, I look back on my life with a sense of happiness	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	83
I feel full of energy these days	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	84
I choose to do things that I have never done before	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	85
I feel satisfied with the way my life has turned out	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	86
I feel that life is full of opportunities	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	87
I feel that the future looks good for me	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	88

8

The next questions are about how you feel about different aspects of your life. For each one, please say how often you feel that way.

*Tick one box on each line*

Hardly ever or never      Some of the time      Often

How often do you feel you lack companionship?  1     2     3    89

How often do you feel left out?  1     2     3    90

How often do you feel isolated from others?  1     2     3    91

How often do you feel in tune with the people around you?  1     2     3    92

9

Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements.

*Tick one box on each line*

Strongly agree    Agree    Slightly agree    Neither agree nor disagree    Slightly disagree    Disagree    Strongly disagree

In most ways my life is close to my ideal  1     2     3     4     5     6     7    93

The conditions of my life are excellent  1     2     3     4     5     6     7    94

I am satisfied with my life  1     2     3     4     5     6     7    95

So far I have got the important things I want in life  1     2     3     4     5     6     7    96

If I could live my life again, I would change almost nothing  1     2     3     4     5     6     7    97

10

Here are some questions about how you feel about your life in general. Please say how much you agree or disagree with the following statements.

*Tick one box on each line*

Strongly agree    Moderately agree    Slightly agree    Slightly disagree    Moderately disagree    Strongly disagree

At home, I feel I have control over what happens in most situations  1     2     3     4     5     6    98

I feel that what happens in life is often determined by factors beyond my control  1     2     3     4     5     6    99

In general, I have different demands that I think are hard to combine  1     2     3     4     5     6    100

In general, I have enough time to do everything  1     2     3     4     5     6    101

Considering the things I have to do at home, I have to work very fast  1     2     3     4     5     6    102

**11****Do you have a husband, wife or partner with whom you live?**

103

*Tick one box*Yes  1 **Go to 12**No  2 **Go to 14****12****We would now like to ask you some questions about your spouse or partner. Please tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.***Tick one box on each line*

A lot    Some    A little    Not at all

How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?  1  2  3  4

104

How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?  1  2  3  4

105

How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?  1  2  3  4

106

How much do they criticise you?  1  2  3  4

107

How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?  1  2  3  4

108

How much do they get on your nerves?  1  2  3  4

109

**13****How close is your relationship with your spouse or partner?**

110

*Tick one box*Very close  1Quite close  2Not very close  3Not at all close  4

**14 Do you have any children?**

*Tick one box*

Yes  1 **Go to 15**

No  2 **Go to 18**

**15 We would now like to ask you some questions about your children. Please tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.**

*Tick one box on each line*

A lot      Some      A little      Not at all

How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4		112
How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4		113
How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4		114
How much do they criticise you?	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4		115
How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4		116
How much do they get on your nerves?	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4		117

**16 On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of your children, not counting any who live with you?**

*Tick one box on each line*

Three or more times a week      Once or twice a week      Once or twice a month      Every few months      Once or twice a year      Less than once a year or never

Meet up (include both arranged and chance meetings)	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	<input type="checkbox"/>	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	6		118
Speak on the phone	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	<input type="checkbox"/>	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	6		119
Write or email	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	<input type="checkbox"/>	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	6		120

**17 How many of your children would you say you have a close relationship with?**

Please write the number in this box

**18** Do you have any other immediate family, for example, any brothers or sisters, parents, cousins or grandchildren?

Tick one box

Yes  1 Go to **19**

No  2 Go to **22**

**19** We would now like to ask you some questions about these family members. Please tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.

Tick one box on each line

	A lot	Some	A little	Not at all	
How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	124
How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	125
How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	126
How much do they criticise you?	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	127
How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	128
How much do they get on your nerves?	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	129

**20** On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of these family members, not counting any who live with you?

Tick one box on each line

	Three or more times a week	Once or twice a week	Once or twice a month	Every few months	Once or twice a year	Less than once a year or never	
Meet up (include both arranged and chance meetings)	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	130
Speak on the phone	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	131
Write or email	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	132

**21** How many of these family members would you say you have a close relationship with?

133-134

Please write the number in this box

**22 Do you have any friends?**

*Tick one box*

Yes  <sup>1</sup> **Go to 23**

No  <sup>2</sup> **Go to 26**

**23 We would now like to ask you some questions about your friends. Please tick the box which best shows how you feel about each statement.**

*Tick one box on each line*

A lot      Some      A little      Not at all

How much do they really understand the way you feel about things?  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup> 136

How much can you rely on them if you have a serious problem?  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup> 137

How much can you open up to them if you need to talk about your worries?  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup> 138

How much do they criticise you?  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup> 139

How much do they let you down when you are counting on them?  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup> 140

How much do they get on your nerves?  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup> 141

**24 On average, how often do you do each of the following with any of your friends, not counting any who live with you?**

*Tick one box on each line*

Three or more times a week      Once or twice a week      Once or twice a month      Every few months      Once or twice a year      Less than once a year or never

Meet up (include both arranged and chance meetings)  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup>  <sup>5</sup>  <sup>6</sup> 142

Speak on the phone  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup>  <sup>5</sup>  <sup>6</sup> 143

Write or email  <sup>1</sup>  <sup>2</sup>  <sup>3</sup>  <sup>4</sup>  <sup>5</sup>  <sup>6</sup> 144

**25 How many of your friends would you say you have a close relationship with?**

Please write the number in this box

26

**Were you in paid employment last month?**

*Tick one box*

Yes  <sup>1</sup> **Go to 27**

No  <sup>2</sup> **Go to 29**

27

**Here are some statements people might use to describe their work. We would like to know how strongly you think these apply to the paid employment you did in the last month.**

*Tick one box on each line*

	Strongly agree	Agree	Disagree	Strongly disagree	
All things considered I am satisfied with my job	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	148
My job is physically demanding	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	149
I receive the recognition I deserve for my work	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	150
My salary is adequate	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	151
My job promotion prospects are poor	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	152
My job security is poor	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	153
I am under constant time pressure due to a heavy workload	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	154
I have very little freedom to decide how I do my work	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	155
I have the opportunity to develop new skills	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	156
I receive adequate support in difficult situations	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	157
At work, I feel I have control over what happens in most situations	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	158
Considering the things I have to do at work, I have to work very fast	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>2</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> <sup>4</sup>	159

28

**At what age would you like to retire?**

160-162

Write in years

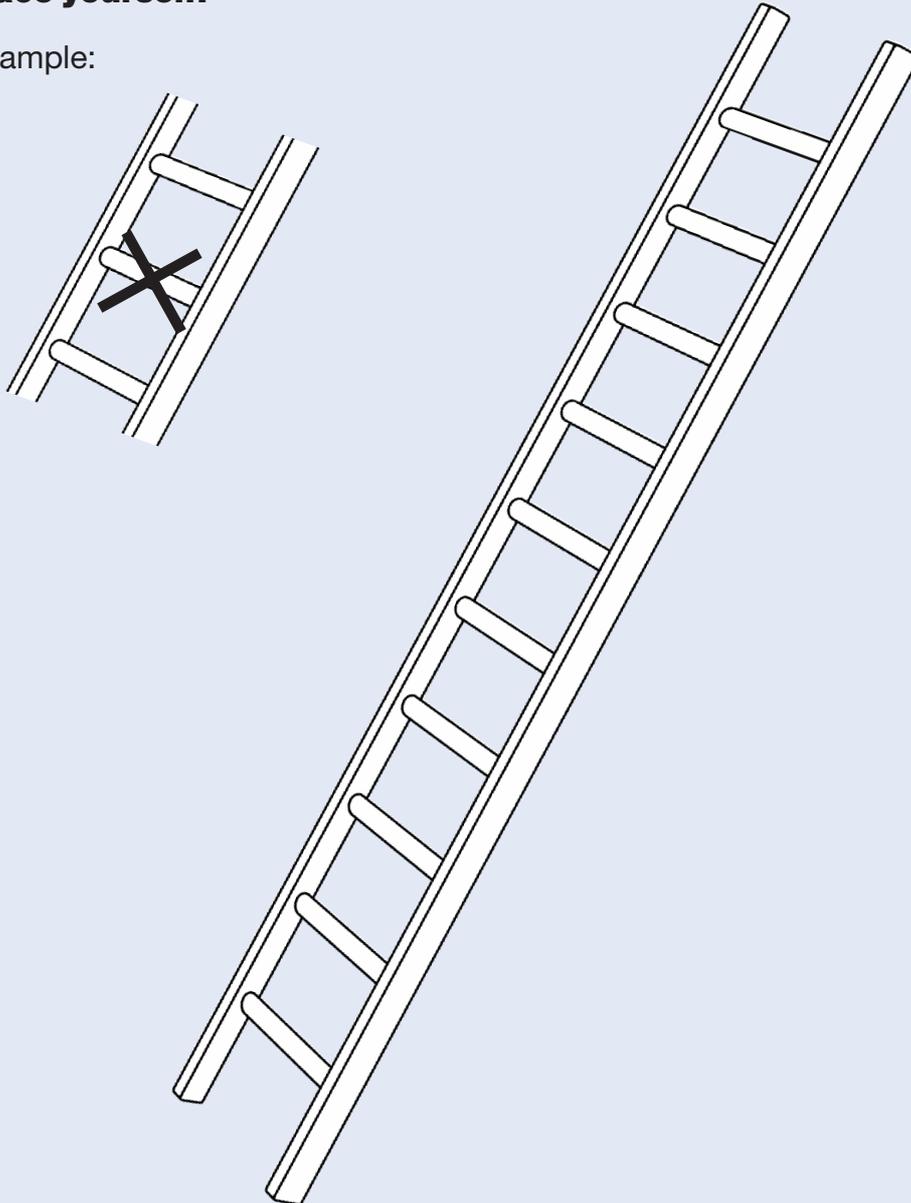
I have already retired  996

29

Think of this ladder as representing where people stand in our society. At the top of the ladder are the people who are the best off – those who have the most money, most education and best jobs. At the bottom are the people who are the worst off – who have the least money, least education, and the worst jobs or no jobs. The higher up you are on this ladder, the closer you are to the people at the very top and the lower you are, the closer you are to the people at the very bottom.

Please mark a cross on the rung on the ladder where you would place yourself.

Example:



163-165

--	--	--

30

Has your position on the ladder changed within the last two years?

166

Tick one box

Yes, I have moved up  1

Yes, I have moved down  2

No, my position has not changed  3

31

The next few questions are about how you feel about your age and experience of growing older.  
How old do you feel that you are?

167-169

Write in years

32

What age would you like to be?

170-172

Write in years

33

On the whole, has growing older been a positive or negative experience?

173

*Tick one box*

Very positive

Mainly positive

Neither positive nor negative

Mainly negative

Very negative

1

2

3

4

5

34

Thinking of old age and your own ageing experience, to what extent do you agree or disagree with each of the following statements?

*Tick one box on each line*

Strongly agree

Slightly agree

Neither agree nor disagree

Slightly disagree

Strongly disagree

We can learn a lot from old people

1

2

3

4

5

174

As I get older, I expect to become more lonely

1

2

3

4

5

175

Old age is a time of ill health

1

2

3

4

5

176

As I grow older, I become more tolerant

1

2

3

4

5

177

Old age is a time of loneliness

1

2

3

4

5

178

As I get older, I expect to be able to do the things I've always done

1

2

3

4

5

179

When I think of old people, I think of them as generally grumpy and miserable

1

2

3

4

5

180

I worry that my health will get worse as I grow older

1

2

3

4

5

181

I don't think of myself as old

1

2

3

4

5

182

Old people don't get respect in society

1

2

3

4

5

183

Retirement is a time of leisure

1

2

3

4

5

184

Growing older doesn't bother me

1

2

3

4

5

185

**35** Thinking now about all kinds of drinks, how often have you had an alcoholic drink of any kind during the last 12 months?

*Tick one box*

- Almost every day  1
- Five or six days a week  2
- Three or four days a week  3
- Once or twice a week  4 → Go to **36**
- Once or twice a month  5
- Once every couple of months  6
- Once or twice a year  7
- 
- Not at all in the last 12 months  8 → Go to **39**

**36** Did you have an alcoholic drink in the seven days ending yesterday?

*Tick one box*

- Yes  1 → Go to **37**
- No  2 → Go to **39**

**37** On how many days out of the last seven did you have an alcoholic drink?

*Tick one box*

- One  1
- Two  2
- Three  3
- Four  4 → Go to **38**
- Five  5
- Six  6
- Seven  7

**38**

**Please think about the day in the last week on which you drank the most. (If you drank the same amount on more than one day, please answer about the most recent of those days.)**

**From this list, please tick all the types of alcoholic drink which you drank on that day.**

**For the ones you drank, write in how much you drank on that day.**

**EXCLUDE NON-ALCOHOLIC OR LOW-ALCOHOL DRINKS, EXCEPT SHANDY.**

Tick all drinks drunk on that day		Write in how much drunk on that day						
		Glasses (Count doubles as 2 singles)	Pints	Large cans or bottles	Small cans or bottles			
189-204 Normal strength beer, lager, stout, cider or shandy (less than 6% alcohol) – exclude bottles/cans of shandy		<input type="checkbox"/>	01	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	205-212
Strong beer, lager, stout or cider (6% alcohol or more, such as Tennants Extra, Special Brew, Diamond White)		<input type="checkbox"/>	02	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	213-220
Spirits or liqueurs, such as gin, whisky, rum, brandy, vodka, or cocktails		<input type="checkbox"/>	03	<input type="text"/>				221-222
Sherry or martini (including port, vermouth, cinzano, dubonnet)		<input type="checkbox"/>	04	<input type="text"/>				223-224
Wine (including babycham and champagne)		<input type="checkbox"/>	05	<input type="text"/>				225-226
Alcoholic soft drinks or ‘alcopops’ (such as Barcardi Breezer, Smirnoff Ice)		<input type="checkbox"/>	06				<input type="text"/>	227-228
Other kinds of alcoholic drink Write in name of drink								
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	07	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	229-238
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	08	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	239-248

**39** If there is anything else you would like to tell us, please write in the space below. We shall be very interested to read what you have to say.

**Thank you very much for taking the time to answer our questions. Please give the questionnaire to the interviewer or post it back in the envelope provided. All your answers will remain confidential.**

# **English Longitudinal Study of Ageing**

## **END OF LIFE**

**Wave Two END OF LIFE Questionnaire – 2004 to 2005**

**Prepared by NatCen**

**Version 1.0 MAY 2015**

## Contents

About the respondent .....	4
Scenario of ELSA respondent's death .....	7
Activities and help .....	15
Cognitive ability .....	26
Problem behaviour .....	31
Mental health .....	32
Sight and hearing .....	34
Cardiovascular conditions .....	35
Chronic conditions .....	39
Joint replacement and resurfacing (Artificial implants) .....	43
Financing medical care .....	45
Financing the funeral .....	47
Work and pensions .....	50
Assets and inheritances .....	59

## **IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT THE PAPER VERSION OF THE QUESTIONNAIRE**

### **Textfills**

^ - This annotation is shown before any textfills that were used in questions. The different options of the textfill are provided in square brackets e.g. [^him/her].

### **Routing**

<> - This annotation is used to indicate 'not equals to'.

### **Variables omitted from archived data**

@ - This annotation is used to indicate that a variable has not been archived (with this name). If the data for such a variable has been archived under a different name this will be indicated. Some variables have been omitted altogether from the archived data (e.g. text variables or "press 1 and continue" variables) – see User Guide for more information. Some have been converted to group the data to reduce disclosiveness.

@@ - This annotation is used to indicate that a financial variable has not been archived for reasons of disclosiveness. Small quantities of data mean it has not been converted into a non-disclosive derived variable either.

### **Checks**

The CAPI instrument contains a number of checks to help ensure that the information entered by the interviewer is accurate and consistent. The checks included in the End of Life questionnaire are not included within this documentation. If information is needed about checks please contact the ELSA team.

### **Queries**

Please contact the data manager ([ELSAdata@natcen.ac.uk](mailto:ELSAdata@natcen.ac.uk)) if you have any queries about the questionnaire.

**Version 1.0 MAY 2015**

# WAVE 2 ELSA

## End of Life interview

### *About the respondent*

#### **SERIAL @**

Serial Number

Range: 1..9999999999

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

#### **FIRST @**

INTERVIEWER: For your information:.. You are in the questionnaire for serial number [Serial] - To enter the questionnaire press and . - To update the Admin details, press .1 Press and to continue.

#### **INTDAT @ (See INTDATMM and INTDATYY for month and year of interview)**

INTERVIEWER: Today's date. Amend if not correct. Else, press to continue.

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

ELSE

|

#### **DECEASED ELSA RESPONDENT'S NAME @**

| ELSA respondent's first name.

| STRING 30

|

#### **EINAME2 @**

| ELSA respondent's surname.

| STRING 30

|

#### **EIDATLA @ (See EIDatLaMM and EIDatLAYY for month and year of last interview)**

| Date of last ELSA interview

|

END FILTER

(EiSex included in dataset but not in questionnaire – sex of deceased)

#### **EIINTRO @**

You may be aware that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] generously participated in the ELSA study before

[^his/her] death. [^His/Her] contribution was very valuable. We would find it extremely helpful to have some information about the last year or two of [^his/her] life. I appreciate that this may upset or distress you. All the information collected is strictly confidential, and will be held anonymously.

INTERVIEWER: Press 1 and to continue.

Range: 1..1

#### **EIINTR2 @**

Before we begin, I'd like to ask you some questions about you.

1 Continue

**EIRREL**

SHOW CARD EI1

What was your relationship to [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]? Were you [^his/her]...

- 01 Husband/Wife
- 02 Partner/cohabitee
- 03 Natural son/daughter
- 04 Adopted son/daughter
- 05 Foster son/daughter
- 06 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 07 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 08 Natural parent
- 09 Adoptive parent
- 10 Foster parent
- 11 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 12 Parent-in-law
- 13 Natural brother/sister
- 14 Half-brother/sister
- 15 Step-brother/sister
- 16 Adopted brother/sister
- 17 Foster brother/sister
- 18 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 19 Grandchild
- 20 Grandparent
- 21 Other relative (specify)
- 22 Other non-relative (specify)

*IF Relationship was other relative or other non relative [EiRRel = 21 or 22]*

| **EIRRELOT @**

| INTERVIEWER: The respondent has answered 'other' relationship: Write in relationship to [^deceased ELSA respondent's name].

| STRING 100

*IF Relationship was other non relative [EiRRel = 22]*

| | **EIRFRI**

| | Would you say [^he/she] was a close friend, or not?

- | | 1 Yes
- | | 2 No
- | | 3 Other

| END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF NOT a spouse or partner [(EiRRel <> 1 and EiRRel <> 2)]*

| | **SURVSP**

| | INTERVIEWER ASK OR CODE: Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have a surviving spouse/partner at the time of [^his/her] death?

- | | 1 Yes
- | | 2 No

END FILTER

*If respondent is not a child, parent, sibling or grandparent [ NOT(Eirrel IN [NatCh, NatPar, NatSib, Grandch, GrandPar])]*

**EIRKNOW2 (this question changed in wave 3 so this version only used in wave 2 is called EIRKNOW2)**

How long had you known [^him/her]?

*INTERVIEWER: Code how the question is answered*

- 1 *Number of years and/or months,*
- 2 *Since specific age of respondent,*
- 3 *Date they met (month and year)*

*| IF How long had you known =number of years and/or months [EIRKNOW2= 1]*

**| NUMMTHW2 (NB routing to this question changed in wave 3)**

*| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months the respondent has known the deceased.*

*| Range: 0..11*

**| NUMYRW2 (NB routing to this question changed in wave 3)**

*| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years the respondent has known the deceased.*

*| Range: 0..97*

**||END FILTER**

*| IF How long had you known = since specific age of respondent, [EIRKNOW2= 2]*

**| AGEMET (not included in waves 3,4,6)**

*| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age of respondent when they met [^deceased ELSA respondent's name].*

*| If known ^himher since birth enter 'O'.":*

*| 0..99*

*| END FILTER*

*| IF How long had you known = Date they met (month and year), [EIRKNOW2= 3]*

**|| YRMET (not included in waves 3,4,6)**

*| INTERVIEWER: Enter the year they met*

*| 1900..2900*

**| MTHMET (not included in waves 3,4,6)**

*| INTERVIEWER: Enter the month they met*

*| 01 January*

*| 02 February*

*| 03 March*

*| 04 April*

*| 05 May*

*| 06 June*

*| 07 July*

*| 08 August*

*| 09 September*

*| 10 October*

*| 11 November*

*| 12 December*

**END FILTER**

**EIRAGE @** (DVEIRAGE includes aged 90 and over collapsed to avoid disclosure)

What was your age last birthday?

Range: 0..120

**EIRSEX**

INTERVIEWER: Ask or code respondent's sex.

1 Male

2 Female

**Scenario of ELSA respondent's death**

**EILONGW2 (at waves 3,4,6 there was no category for one or two hours so category numbering does not match)**

I would now like to ask you a few questions about things that happened at the time of [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s death. How long had [^he/she] been ill before [^he/she] died?

1 Was not ill, died suddenly

2 One or two hours

3 Less than 24 hours

4 One day or more, but less than one week

5 One week or more but less than one month

6 One month or more but less than 6 months

7 6 months or more but less than a year

8 One year or more

9 Don't know

*IF death was sudden [EiLong =1]*

**EISUDD**

Would you say [^his/her] death was unexpected?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Other

4 Don't know

*IF death was not unexpected [EiSudd = No]*

**EISUDEX @**

Why was [^his/her] death expected?

STRING 200

END FILTER

ELSE

| *If Death was not sudden [(EiLong 2...9)] OR (EiLong =*  
| *REFUSAL)]*

| | **EIEXPT**

| | Would you say [^his/her] death was expected, or unexpected?

| | 1 Expected

| | 2 Unexpected

| | 95 Other (please specify at next question)

| | 96 Don't know

| | *If Other answer in would you say death was expected [EiExPt = Other]*

| | **EIEXPTOT @**

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter details.

| | STRING 250

| | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

| END FILTER

**EICAUS @** (See DCEiCaus for backcoded and summarized variable to avoid non-disclosure)

SHOW CARD EI2

What was the main cause of [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s death?

1 Cancer

2 Heart Attack

3 Stroke

4 Other cardiovascular related illness

5 Respiratory disease

95 Other (Please specify)

96 Don't know

| *If cause of death was other [EiCaus = Other]*

| | **EICAUSOT @**

| | INTERVIEWER: Please enter details of the cause of death.

| | STRING 200

| | END FILTER

**EIDATED @**

May I ask, on what date did [^he/she] die?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the day of month at this question.

Range: 1..31

**EIDATEM @**

INTERVIEWER: Enter month at this question.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December

**EIDATEY**

INTERVIEWER: Enter year at this question.

Range: 2000..2050

**EIPLAC (please note that at W2 sheltered housing was actually category 8 in questionnaire but variable has been recoded so that order of categories matches that at waves 3, 4, 6)**

And where did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] die? Was it ...READ OUT...

- 01 ...at home,
- 02 in sheltered housing,
- 03 at another person's home,
- 04 in hospital,
- 05 in a hospice,
- 06 in a nursing home,
- 07 in a residential home,
- 08 in a mixed nursing /residential home,
- 09 in an ambulance/en route to hospital/en route to hospice etc?
- 95 Other (Please specify)

*IF place of death was other [EiPlac = 95 Other]*

|

| **EIPLACOT @**

| (What was this other place?)

| INTERVIEWER: Write in.

| STRING 100

|

ELSE

|

| *IF died in another person's home [EiPlac = 3]*

|

| | **EIPLACOH**

| | In whose home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] die?

- | | 1 Relative
- | | 2 Non-relative

| |

| | END FILTER

|

END FILTER

*If did not die at home [EiPlac = 2..9 or 95]*

|

| **EIPLCN**

| On how many different occasions did [[^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in [place] in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If appropriate include more than one person's home INTERVIEWER: Specify the number

| of times.

| Range: 1..95

|

| **EIPLCL**

| In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in [^place from EiPlac] in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

| 1 One day or more, but less than one week

| 2 One week or more but less than one month

| 3 One month or more but less than 3 months

| 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months

| 5 6 months or more but less than a year

| 6 A year or more

| 7 Don't know

|

END FILTER

**EILIVINT**

I would now like to ask you some questions about where [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] lived or stayed overnight as a result of [^his/her] health in the two years before [^he/she] died.

1 Continue

**EILIVE**

*[Multiple responses to EILIVE are recorded in variables EILIVE1 to EILIVE9]*

SHOW CARD EI3

How many other types of places did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in overnight during the two years before [^he/she] died, because of [^his/her] health?

INTERVIEWER: Include NHS and privately-owned establishments CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

01 At home

02 In sheltered housing

03 Other person's home

04 In hospital

05 In a hospice

06 In a nursing home

07 In a residential home

08 In a mixed nursing /residential home

91 Not known whether residential or care home

95 Other place (Specify at next question)

96 Stayed at no other places

(In addition there are backcoded categories from other answers: 9 = hotel/ B and B, 91= unknown whether nursing or care home)

*If lived or stayed in another person's home [EILive =3]*

|

| **EIHOMESTY**

| In whose home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay?

- | 1 Relative
- | 2 Non-relative

| **EILOTHA**

| On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in another person's home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

| Range: 1..95

| **EILOTHB**

| In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in another person's home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- | 1 One day or more, but less than one week
- | 2 One week or more but less than one month
- | 3 One month or more but less than 3 months
- | 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- | 5 6 months or more but less than a year
- | 6 A year or more
- | 7 Don't know

END FILTER

*If lived or stayed in hospital [EiLive=4]*

| **EILHOSPA**

| On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a hospital in the last two years before [^e/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

| Range: 1..95

| **EILHOSPB**

| In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a hospital in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- | 1 One day or more, but less than one week
- | 2 One week or more but less than one month
- | 3 One month or more but less than 3 months
- | 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- | 5 6 months or more but less than a year
- | 6 A year or more
- | 7 Don't know

END FILTER

*If lived or stayed in hospice [EiLive=5]*

| **EILHPCEA**

| On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a hospice in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

| Range: 1..95

| **EILHPCEB**

| In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a hospice in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- | 1 One day or more, but less than one week
- | 2 One week or more but less than one month
- | 3 One month or more but less than 3 months
- | 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- | 5 6 months or more but less than a year
- | 6 A year or more
- | 7 Don't know

| END FILTER

| *IF lived or stayed in a nursing home [EiLive=6]*

| **EILNURSA**

| On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a nursing home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

| Range: 1..95

| **EILNURSB**

| In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a nursing home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- | 1 One day or more, but less than one week
- | 2 One week or more but less than one month
- | 3 One month or more but less than 3 months
- | 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- | 5 6 months or more but less than a year
- | 6 A year or more
- | 7 Don't know

| END FILTER

| *IF lived or stayed in a care home [EiLive=7]*

| **EILRESA**

| On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a residential home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

| Range: 1..95

| **EILRESB**

| In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in a residential home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- | 1 One day or more, but less than one week
- | 2 One week or more but less than one month
- | 3 One month or more but less than 3 months
- | 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- | 5 6 months or more but less than a year
- | 6 A year or more
- | 7 Don't know

|  
END FILTER

*IF lived or stayed in a mixed nursing and care home [EiLive=8]*

| **EILMIXA**

| On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in mixed nursing/residential home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

| Range: 1..95

| **EILMIXB**

| In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in mixed nursing/residential home in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- | 1 Less than 24 hours
- | 2 One day or more, but less than one week
- | 3 One week or more but less than one month
- | 4 One month or more but less than 3 months
- | 5 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- | 6 6 months or more but less than a year
- | 7 A year or more
- | 8 Don't know

|  
END FILTER

*IF lived or stayed in sheltered housing [EiLive=2]*

| **EILSHELA**

| On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in sheltered housing in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

| Range: 1..95

**EILSHELB**

In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in sheltered housing in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- 1 One day or more, but less than one week
- 2 One week or more but less than one month
- 3 One month or more but less than 3 months
- 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- 5 6 months or more but less than a year
- 6 A year or more
- 7 Don't know

END FILTER

*IF lived or stayed in other place EiLive=95 (other)]*

**EILIVEA**

How many other types of places did [^he/she] stay in during the two years before [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: If more than one other place, record each place at a separate question.

Range: 1..5

*IF How many other types of place = RESPONSE [EiLIVEa = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR idx:= 1 TO EiLIVEa

**EILIVEB @**

***[Loop: Responses to EILIVEB are recorded in variables EILIVE1 to EILIVE5]***

(What was this other place)?

INTERVIEWER: Write in the other place.

STRING 100

**EILEXTA**

***[Loop: Responses to EILEXTA are recorded in variables EILEXT1 to EILEXT5]***

On how many different occasions did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in this place in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of times.

Range: 1..95

**EILEXTB**

***[Loop: Responses to EILEXTB are recorded in variables EILEXT1 to EILEXT5]***

In total, how long did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stay in this place in the last two years before [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: If stayed on more than one occasion add the times together.

- 1 One day or more, but less than one week
- 2 One week or more but less than one month
- 3 One month or more but less than 3 months
- 4 3 months or more but less than 6 months
- 5 6 months or more but less than a year
- 6 A year or more
- 7 Don't know

END FILTER

||  
| END FILTER  
END FILTER

## ***Activities and help***

### **EIDISTPH**

SHOW CARD EI4

We'd like to ask you about [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s physical health and activity. During [^his/her]

last year, which of these descriptions fits [^his/her] experience best?

- 1 [^He/She] was active and disability free, and died suddenly
- 2 [^He/She] was mostly active and disability free, but declined during the last few months before [^he/she] died
- 3 [^He/She] had times of being seriously disabled, mixed with times of being active
- 4 [^He/She] gradually become more and more disabled, without times of being active
- 5 None of these
- 6 Don't know

### **EIADLINT @**

I would now like to ask you about problems [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] might have had in [^his/her] everyday life, before [^he/she] died. The next questions are about help [^he/she] may have received. Please tell me if [^he/she] had received any help because of a physical, mental, emotional or memory problem during the last three months of [^his/her] life.

INTERVIEWER: Press and to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **EIADLA**

During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... dressing, including putting on shoes and socks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

### **EIADLB**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... walking across a room?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

### **EIADLC**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... bathing or showering?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

**EIADLD**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... eating such as cutting up [^his/her] food?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

**EIADLE**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... getting in or out of bed?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

**EIADLF**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... using the toilet, including getting up and down?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

**EIADLG**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... preparing hot meals?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

**EIADLH**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... shopping for groceries?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

**EIADLI**

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... making telephone calls?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

## EIADLJ

(During the last three months of [^his/her] life, did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] need help with ...)

INTERVIEWER: READ OUT ... taking medication?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF needed help with dressing in last three months of life [EiADLA = Yes]*

|

| **EIADLA2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

| In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help with dressing when [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

| 1 In months and years

| 2 Since a specified age

| 96 Don't know

|| *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*

|| **EIADLA2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.

|| 0..110

|| **EIADLA2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.

|| 0..11

| END FILTER

|| *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*

|| **EiADLA2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age

|| 0..110

|| END FILTER

| END FILTER

|| **EiADLA2W was not included at W2**

|| **EiADLA2M was not included at W2**

|| **EiADLA2Y was not included at W2**

*IF needed help with walking in last three months of life [EiADLB= Yes]*

|

| **EiADLB2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

| For how long had [^he/she] needed help with walking, when [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

| 1 In months and years

| 2 Since a specified age

| 96 Don't know

|| *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*

|| **EiADLB2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.

|| 0..110

| | **EIADLB2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.

| | 0..11

| | END FILTER

| | *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*

| | **EiADLB2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age

| | 0..110

| | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

| | **EiADLB2W was not included at W2**

| | **EiADLB2M was not included at W2**

| | **EiADLB2Y was not included at W2**

| | *IF did not need help with walking in last three months of life [EiADLB= No]*

| | **EIADLB3**

| | During the last three months of [^his/her] life, was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] able to walk 100 yards by [^him/herself] and without using any special equipment? Did [^he/she] have ...READ OUT...

| | 1 ...no difficulty,

| | 2 some difficulty,

| | 3 much difficulty,

| | 4 was unable to do this?

| | 5 Don't know

| | *IF had no difficulty walking 100 yards by him/herself [EiADLB3 = 1]*

| | **EIADLB4**

| | During the last three months of [^his/her] life, was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] able to walk for a quarter of a mile by [^him/herself] and without using any special equipment? Did [^he/she] have ...READ OUT...

| | 1 ...no difficulty,

| | 2 some difficulty,

| | 3 much difficulty,

| | 4 was unable to do this?

| | 5 Don't know

| | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

*IF needed help with bathing or showering in last three months of life [EiADLC= Yes]*

**EIADLC2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help with bathing or showering, when [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

1 In months and years

2 Since a specified age

96 Don't know

*IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*

**EIADLC2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.

0..110

**EIADLC2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.

0..11

END FILTER

*IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*

**EiADLC2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age

0..110

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EiADLC2W was not included at W2**

**EiADLC2M was not included at W2**

**EiADLC2Y was not included at W2**

*IF needed help with eating in last three months of life [EiADLD= Yes]*

**EIADLD2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help with eating when [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

1 In months and years

2 Since a specified age

96 Don't know

*IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*

**EIADLD2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.

0..110

**EIADLD2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.

0..11

END FILTER

| | *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*  
| | **EiADLD2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age  
| | 0..110  
| | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER

| | **EiADLD2W was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLD2M was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLD2Y was not included at W2**

| | *IF needed help with getting in or out of bed in last three months of life [EiADLE= Yes]*  
| | **EiADLE2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help getting in or out of bed, when [^he/she] died?  
| | INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."  
| | 1 In months and years  
| | 2 Since a specified age  
| | 96 Don't know

| | *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*  
| | **EiADLE2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.  
| | 0..110

| | **EiADLE2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.  
| | 0..11  
| | END FILTER

| | *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*  
| | **EiADLE2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age  
| | 0..110  
| | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER

| | **EiADLE2W was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLE2M was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLE2Y was not included at W2**

| | *IF needed help with using the toilet in last three months of life [EiADLF= Yes]*  
| | **EiADLF2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help with using the toilet, when [^he/she] died?  
| | INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."  
| | 1 In months and years  
| | 2 Since a specified age  
| | 96 Don't know

| | *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*  
| | **EIADLF2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.  
| | 0..110

| | **EIADLF2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.  
| | 0..11  
| | END FILTER

| | *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*  
| | **EIADLF2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age  
| | 0..110  
| | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER

| | **EiADLF2W was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLF2M was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLF2Y was not included at W2**

*IF needed help with preparing hot meals in last three months of life [EiADLG= Yes]*

| | **EiADLG1**  
| | (You said earlier that during the last three months of [^his/her] life [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] received help to prepare hot meals.) Was that because of a health or memory problem?  
| | INTERVIEWER: If the respondent gives an actual reason, decide whether this was a problem with either  
| | their health or memory.  
| | 1 Yes  
| | 2 No  
| | 3 Don't know

| | **EiADLG2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help with preparing hot meals, when [^he/she] died?  
| | INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."  
| | 1 In months and years  
| | 2 Since a specified age  
| | 96 Don't know

| | *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*  
| | **EiADLG2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.  
| | 0..110

| | **EiADLG2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.  
| | 0..11  
| | END FILTER

| | *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*  
| | **EiADLG2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age  
| | 0..110  
| | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER

| | **EiADLG2W was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLG2M was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLG2Y was not included at W2**

| | *IF needed help with shopping for groceries in last three months of life [EiADLH= Yes]*

| | **EiADLH1**  
| | (You said earlier that during the last three months of [^his/her] life [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] received help with shopping for groceries.) Was that because of a health or memory problem?  
| | INTERVIEWER: If the respondent gives an actual reason, decide whether this was a problem with either  
| | their health or memory.  
| | 1 Yes  
| | 2 No  
| | 3 Don't know

| | **EiADLH2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help with shopping for groceries, when [^he/she] died?  
| | INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."  
| | 1 In months and years  
| | 2 Since a specified age  
| | 96 Don't know

| | *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*  
| | **EiADLH2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.  
| | 0..110

| | **EiADLH2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.  
| | 0..11  
| | END FILTER

| | *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*  
| | **EiADLH2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age  
| | 0..110  
| | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER

| | **EiADLH2W was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLH2M was not included at W2**  
| | **EiADLH2Y was not included at W2**

*IF needed help with making telephone calls in last three months of life [EiADLI= Yes]*

**EIADLI1**

(You said earlier that during the last three months of [^his/her] life [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] received help to make phone calls.) Was that because of a health or memory problem?

INTERVIEWER: If the respondent gives an actual reason, decide whether this was a problem with either

their health or memory.

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

**EIADLI2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

In total, for how long had [^he/she] needed help making telephone calls, when [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

1 In months and years

2 Since a specified age

96 Don't know

*IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*

**EIADLI2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.

0..110

**EIADLI2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.

0..11

END FILTER

*IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*

**EiADLI2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age

0..110

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EiADLI2W was not included at W2**

**EiADLI2M was not included at W2**

**EiADLI2Y was not included at W2**

*IF needed help with taking medication in last three months of life [EiADLJ= Yes]*

| **EIADLJ1**

| (You said earlier that during the last three months of [^his/her] life [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] received

| help with taking medication.) Was that because of a health or memory problem?

| INTERVIEWER: If the respondent gives an actual reason, decide whether this was a problem with either

| their health or memory.

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| 3 Don't know

| **EIADLJ2W2 (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

| In total, for how long when [^he/she] died had [^he/she] needed help when taking medication?

| INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

| 1 In months and years

| 2 Since a specified age

| 96 Don't know

|| *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EiADLA2 = 1]*

|| **EIADLJ2a (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of years.

|| 0..110

|| **EIADLJ2b (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the number of months.

|| 0..11

| END FILTER

|| *IF answer to how long given in since age [EiADLA2 = 2]*

|| **EIADLJ2c (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age

|| 0..110

| END FILTER

| END FILTER

|| **EiADLJ2W was not included at W2**

|| **EiADLJ2M was not included at W2**

|| **EiADLJ2Y was not included at W2**

**EIADLK**

Were there any other activities that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] had problems with in the last 3 months of [^his/her] life?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF there were any other difficulties with activities [EiADLK = Yes]*

| **EIADLKO** @ (but back coded other answers are available in EiADLKZ1..10 based on answers to EIADLKO)

| What other activities did they have problems with?

| STRING 50

| **EIADLK2**

| Did anyone help [^him/her] with these activities?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| 3 Don't know

END FILTER

**EiHCnt**

Computed: number of ADLS deceased ELSA respondent had problems with [computed from answers to EiALDA...K]

*IF needed help with at least one ADL 1 [EiHCnt >= 1]*

| **EIWHLF** (NB the categories in this question are different from W4 and W6)

| **[Multiple responses to EIWHLPF are recorded in variables EIWHLP01S to EIWHLP17S for wave 2]**

SHOW CARD EI5

| Thinking about the [^activity from EiADLA..K] that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] had problems with, who usually helped [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] with [^this\these activity\ies]?

PROBE: [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] with [^this\these activity\ies]?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

|01 Respondent (you)

|02 Husband or wife or partner

|03 Mother or father

|04 Son

|05 Son-in-law

|06 Daughter

|07 Daughter-in-law

|08 Sister

|09 Brother

|10 Grandson

|11 Granddaughter

|12 Other relative

|13 Unpaid volunteer

|14 Privately paid employee

|15 Social or health service worker

|16 Friend or neighbour

|17 Other person

END FILTER

## ***Cognitive ability***

### **EICOGINT @**

Now I would like to ask you some questions about [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s memory and concentration during [^his/her] last year of life.

1 Continue

### **EICOGA**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have difficulty remembering things about [^his/her] family and friends, like occupations, birthdays or addresses? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

### **EICOGB**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty remembering things that had happened recently? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

### **EICOGC**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty recalling conversations a few days after they had taken place? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

### **EICOGD**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty remembering [^his/her] address and telephone number? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

### **EICOGE**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty remembering what day and month it was? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

**EICOGF**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have difficulty remembering where things were usually kept? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

**EICOGG**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty following a story in a book, on the radio or on the TV? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

**EICOGH**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty making decisions on everyday matters? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

**EICOGI**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty handling financial matters, like [^his/her] pension or dealing with the bank? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

**EICOGJ**

Did [^he/she] ever forget what had been said and repeat the same question again and again? IF YES, PROBE: Did [^he/she] do this occasionally or frequently?

- 1 No
- 2 Occasionally
- 3 Frequently
- 4 Don't know

**EICOGK**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have difficulty in interpreting surroundings, such as knowing where [^he/she] was, or distinguishing between different types of people, such as doctors, visitors and relatives? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 or, great difficulty?
- 4 SPONTANEOUS: Don't know

**EICOGJ**

Did [^he/she] have difficulty finding the way about [^the/ his/her home] or finding the toilet? Did he have ... READ OUT ...

- 1 ...no difficulty,
- 2 slight difficulty,
- 3 great difficulty,
- 4 Not applicable
- 5 Don't know

**EICOGM**

When speaking, did [^he/she] sometimes have difficulty finding the right word, or sometimes use the wrong words? IF YES, PROBE: Did [^he/she] do this occasionally or frequently?

- 1 No
- 2 Yes, occasionally
- 3 Yes, frequently
- 4 Don't know

**EICOGN**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] sometimes repeat the same word or phrase over and over again?

- 1 No
- 2 Yes
- 3 Don't know

**EICOGO**

Did [^his/her] thinking seem muddled at times?

- 1 No
- 2 Yes
- 3 Don't know

*IF had any of the cognitive difficulties at EiCogJ, EiCogK, EiCogL, EiCogM, EiCogN, EiCogO,*

*[NOT ((((((EiCogJ = No) AND (EiCogK = No)) AND (EiCogL = No)) AND (EiCogM = No)) AND (EiCogN = No)) AND (EiCogO = No)) AND NOT ((((((EiCogJ = NONRESPONSE AND EiCogK = NONRESPONSE) AND EiCogL = NONRESPONSE) AND EiCogM = NONRESPONSE) AND EiCogN = NONRESPONSE) AND EiCogO = NONRESPONSE)]*

|

| **EICOGPW2**

| How long were these changes or difficulties with memory and concentration present?

| PROBE: From about how long before [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

- | 1 In months and years
- | 2 Since a specified age
- | 96 Don't know

|| *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EICOGPW2 = 1]*

|| **EiCOGPa (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| In total, how many months was this?

|| Range: 2..24

|| ELSE

|

| | *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EICOGPW2 = 1]*  
| | **EiCOGPb (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | In total, how many years was this?  
| | Range : 3..97  
| | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER

| | *IF answer to how long given in since age [EICOGPW2 = 2]*  
| | **EiCOGPc (This was not included in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age  
| | 0..110  
| | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER

| | **EiCOGPW was not included in wave 2**  
|

| | **EICOGQ**  
| | Did these changes or difficulties develop gradually or did they come on suddenly?  
| | 1 Gradually  
| | 2 Suddenly  
| | 3 Don't know  
|  
| | END FILTER

| | **EICOGR**  
| | Were there marked fluctuations in [^his/her] level of attention or alertness?  
| | 1 No  
| | 2 Yes  
| | 3 Don't know

| | *IF there were marked fluctuations in attention or alertness[EiCogR = Yes]*  
|

| | **EICOGSW2**  
| | How long were these fluctuations in [^his/her] levels of attention or alertness present?  
| | PROBE: From about how long before [^he/she] died?  
| | INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."  
| | 1 In months and years  
| | 2 Since a specified age  
| | 96 Don't know

| | *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EICOGSW2 = 1]*  
| | **EiCOGSa (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | In total, how many months was this?  
| | Range: 2..24  
| | ELSE  
|

| | *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EICOGSW2 = 1]*  
| | **EiCOGSb (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**  
| | In total, how many years was this?  
| | Range : 3..97  
| | END FILTER

| END FILTER

|| *IF answer to how long given in since age [EICOGSW2 = 2]*

|| **EiCOGS** (This was not included in waves 3, 4, 6)

|| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age

|| 0..110

|| END FILTER

| END FILTER

|| **EICOGSW** not included at wave 2

|

| END FILTER

## ***Problem behaviour***

### **EITIMEIN @**

Now I'm going to describe some difficult behaviors, which only a minority of people experience, and which can make caring for them more of a challenge. I would like you to tell me how frequently, if at all [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] engaged in these behaviors during [^his/her] last year of life. We would like to know if [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] engaged in the behavior often, sometimes, rarely, or never.

INTERVIEWER: Press and to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **EIPBHA**

SHOW CARD EI6

During [^his/her] last year of life, how often did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have temper tantrums? Was it often, sometimes, rarely, or never?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

### **EIPBHB**

SHOW CARD EI6

And did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] make violent threats or attempts? How often did [^he/she] do this?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

### **EIPBHC**

SHOW CARD EI6

How often did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] break things on purpose?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

### **EIPBHD**

SHOW CARD EI6

How often did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] cause complaints from the community?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Not applicable
- 6 Don't know

### **EIPBHE**

SHOW CARD EI6

During [^his/her] last year of life, how often did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] engage in

strange or peculiar behaviour?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

**EIPBHF**

SHOW CARD EI6

And how often did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s behaviour cause complaints from family members?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

***Mental health***

**EIMHFINT @**

I would now like to ask you a few questions about [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s mood during the last year of [^his/her] life.

- 1 Continue

**EIMHFHA**

Did [^he/she] seem to lose interest or enjoyment in most things, during [^his/her] last year of life?

- 1 No
- 2 Yes
- 3 Don't know

**EIMHFB**

Do you think that [^he/she] was inclined to blame [^him/herself] or feel unreasonably guilty about things during [^his/her] last year of life?

- 1 No
- 2 Yes
- 3 Don't know

**EIMHFC**

Do you think [^he/she] was depressed during [^his/her] last year of life? IF YES, PROBE:  
Was [^he/she] depressed sometimes or frequently?

- 1 No
- 2 Yes, sometimes
- 3 Yes, frequently
- 4 Don't know

| **EIMHFD**

| Do you think there was a reason for [^him/her] to [^lose interest or enjoyment in things/ feel guilty about things/ feel depressed about things] during this time?

- | 1 No
- | 2 Yes
- | 3 Don't know

**EIMHFE**

| Did [^he/she] feel so bad that it affected every part of [^his/her] life, (like [^his/her] work, friendship and family life) during [^his/her] last year of life?

- | 1 No
- | 2 Yes
- | 3 Don't know

**EIMHFFW2 (different wording in waves 3,4,6)**

| How long had [^he/she] felt like this, when [^he/she] died?

| INTERVIEWER: Code how the answer is given."

- | 1 In months and years
- | 2 Since a specified age
- | 96 Don't know

|| *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EIMHFFW2 = 1]*

**EIMHFFa (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| In total, how many months was this?

- || Range: 2..24
- || ELSE

|| *IF answer to how long given in months and years [EIMHFFW2 = 1]*

**EIMHFFb (This was included in a different way in waves 3, 4, 6)**

|| In total, how many years was this?

- || Range : 3..97

|| *IF answer to how long given in since age [EIMHFFW2 = 2]*

**EIMHFFc (This was not included in waves 3, 4, 6)**

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age

- | 0..110
- | END FILTER
- | END FILTER

**EIMHFFW not included in wave 2****EIMHFG**

SHOW CARD EI6

How often do you think [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] felt happy during [^his/her] last year of life?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

**EIMHFH**

SHOW CARD EI6

How often do you think [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] felt contented or at peace during [^his/her] last year of life?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

**EIMHFI**

SHOW CARD EI6

And how about the last three months of [^his/her] life, how often do you think [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] felt contented or at peace during this time?

- 1 Often
- 2 Sometimes
- 3 Rarely
- 4 Never
- 5 Don't know

***Sight and hearing*****EIHRINT @**

The next questions are about problems [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] may have had with [^his/her] eyesight or hearing, during the last 3 months of [^his/her] life.

- 1 Continue

**EIEYE**

Was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s eyesight (using glasses or corrective lens as usual)...READ OUT...

- 1 excellent,
- 2 very good,
- 3 fair,
- 4 or, poor?
- 5 SPONTANEOUS: Registered or legally blind

**EIOPT**

***[Multiple responses to EIOPT are recorded in variables EIOPT1 to EIOPT4, EIOPT96 ]***

Did a doctor ever tell [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] that [^he/she] had any of these conditions?

INTERVIEWER: Read out each in turn and code all that apply. Include diabetic retinopathy in code 2.

Include age related maculopathy in code 3.

- 1 Glaucoma or suspected glaucoma
- 2 Diabetic eye disease
- 3 Macular degeneration
- 4 Cataracts
- 96 None of these

*IF doctor ever told deceased they had cataracts [EiOpt=4]*

|

| **EICAT**

| Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] ever have cataract surgery?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
| 3 Don't know  
|  
| END FILTER

**EIHEAR**

Was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s hearing (using a hearing aid as usual)...READ OUT...  
1 excellent  
2 very good  
3 fair  
4 or, poor?

**Cardiovascular conditions**

**EICAINT @**

I would now like to ask you a few questions about other conditions that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] may have suffered from.  
1 Continue

*IF Heart Attack was the main cause of death [QScenario.EiCaus = 2]*

|  
| **EICAHA**  
| You told me earlier that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] died following a heart attack. Did a  
| doctor ever tell [^him/her] that [^he/she] had had a heart attack, before the one that led to [^his/her]  
| death?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
| 3 Don't know

ELSE

| *IF Stroke was the main cause of death [QScenario.EiCaus = 3]*

| **EICAST**  
| You told me earlier that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] died following a stroke. Did a doctor  
| ever tell [^him/her] that [^he/she] had had a stroke, before the one that led to [^his/her] death?  
| 1 Yes  
| 2 No  
| 3 Don't know

| END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIDIAA**

*[Multiple responses to EIDIAA are recorded in variables EIDIAA1 to EIDIAA9]*

SHOW CARD E17

[^ And apart from this did\ Did] a doctor ever tell [^him/her] that [^he/she] had any [^other] of the conditions on this

card? PROBE : What others? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

01 High blood pressure or hypertension

02 Angina

03 A heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis)

04 Congestive heart failure

05 A heart murmur

06 An abnormal heart rhythm

07 Diabetes or high blood sugar

08 A stroke (cerebral vascular disease)

95 Any other heart trouble (SPECIFY)

96 None of these

*IF doctor ever told deceased he/she had other condition [EiDiaA= 95 (other)]*

|

| **EIDIX @**

|

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the name of the other heart condition.

|

| STRING 50

|

END FILTER

*IF doctor ever told deceased he/she had high blood pressure or hypertension [ EiDiaA=1]*

|

| **EiBP (not in waves 3,4,6)**

|

| Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had high blood pressure?

|

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years."

|

| Range: 0..110

|

| **EIBPST**

|

| Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have high blood pressure during the last 12 months of

|

| [^his/her] life?

|

| 1 Yes

|

| 2 No

|

| **EIMDA**

|

| Was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] taking any medicines, tablets or pills for high blood

|

| pressure during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

|

| 1 Yes

|

| 2 No

|

| 3 Don't know

|

END FILTER

*IF doctor ever told deceased he/she had angina [ EiDiaA=2]*

|

| **EIAGA**

| Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had angina?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| Range: 0..110

| **EIYR1**

| Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have angina during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| | END

| **EiHMed (not in wave 2)**

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had had a heart attack  
[(EiDiaA=3) OR (EiCaHa = Yes)]*

| **EIAGB**

| Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had had a heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis)?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| Range: 0..110

| ELSE

*If cause of death was not heartattack [QScenario..EiCaus~=2]. If iEiCaus=1 then EIYR2=1  
automatically. If conditional above applies*

| **EIYR2 (In Waves 4 and 6 this question was replaced by a question about number of heart attacks - EINMMI)**

| Did [EiName1] have a heart attack or myocardial infarction during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| END FILTER

END FILTER

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had congestive heart failure [EiDiaA=4]*

| **EIAGC**

| Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had congestive heart failure?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| Range: 0..110

END FILTER

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had a heart murmur [ EiDiaA=5]*

**EIAGK**

Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had a heart murmur?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

Range: 0..110

**EIAGK2**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have a heart murmur during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

1 Yes

2 No

END FILTER

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had an abnormal heart rhythm [ EiDiaA=6]*

**EIAGL**

Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had an abnormal heart rhythm?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

Range: 0..110

**EIAGL2**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have an abnormal heart rhythm during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

1 Yes

2 No

END FILTER

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had diabetes or high blood sugar [ EiDiaA=7]*

**EIAGD**

Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had diabetes or high blood sugar?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

Range: 0..110

**EIAGDI**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] inject insulin for diabetes during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

1 Yes

2 No

**EIMDB**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] take any tablets, pills or other medicines for diabetes during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

1 Yes

2 No

END FILTER

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had had a stroke [( EiDiaA=8) OR (EiCaSt = Yes)]*

| **EIAGM**

| Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had had a stroke?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| Range: 0..110

| | ELSE

|| **EIAGM2 (NB in Wave 4 and Wave 6 there was a new question EINMST about number of strokes instead of this question**

|| Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have a stroke in the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

|| 1 Yes

|| 2 No

| | END FILTER

END FILTER

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had high cholesterol [EiDiaA=9]*

| **EiCYR**

| Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have high cholesterol during the last 12 months [^his/her] life?"

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| **EiMDC**

| Was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] taking medication to lower [^his/her] cholesterol level during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?"

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

END FILTER

*If deceased was told by the doctor they had other condition [EiDiaA=95 (other)]*

| **EIAGN**

| Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had [^name of other condition from EiDix]?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| Range: 0..110

| **EIAGN2**

| Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have [^name of other condition from EiDix] during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

END FILTER

## **Chronic conditions**

*If Cancer was the main cause of death [QScenario.EiCaus = 1]*

| **EICACA**

| You told me earlier that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] died of cancer. Did a doctor ever tell [^him/her] that [^he/she] had cancer?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No
- | 3 Don't know

|  
END FILTER

**EIDIAB (note that category 10 in Waves 4 and 6 was not included at Wave 2 or wave 3)**

*[Multiple responses to EIDIAB are recorded in variables EIDIAB1 to EIDIAB10, EIDIAB96]*

SHOW CARD EI8

[^ And apart from this do\ Do] you know if [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] was ever told by a doctor that [^he/she] had any [^other] of the conditions on this card?

INTERVIEWER PROBE - 'What others?'...CODE ALL THAT APPLY. [Add1]

- 01 Chronic lung disease such as chronic bronchitis or emphysema
- 02 Asthma
- 03 Arthritis (including osteoarthritis , or rheumatism)
- 04 Osteoporosis, sometimes called thin or brittle bones
- 05 Cancer or a malignant tumour (excluding minor skin cancers)
- 06 Parkinson's disease
- 07 Any emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems
- 08 Alzheimer's disease
- 09 Dementia, organic brain syndrome, senility or any other serious memory impairment
- 96 None of these

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had Chronic lung disease [EiDiaB=1]*

| **EILNG**

| Was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] taking medication or other treatment for [^his/her] lung condition during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

|  
END FILTER

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had Asthma [EiDiaB=2]*

| **EIAMA**

| Was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] taking medication or other treatment for [^his/her] asthma during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

|  
END FILTER

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had Arthritis [EiDiaB=3]*

| | **EIART**

| | **[Multiple responses to EIART are recorded in variables EIART1 to EIART4]**

| | Do you know which type or types of arthritis [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] had? Was it ...READ OUT...

| | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- | | 1 Osteoarthritis?
- | | 2 Rheumatoid arthritis?
- | | 3 Some other kind of arthritis?
- | | 4 Don't know

| | **EIAGF**

| | Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had arthritis?

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| | Range: 0..110

| | END FILTER

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had Cancer [(EiDiaB=5) OR (EiCaCa = Yes)]*

| | **EIAGG**

| | Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had cancer or a malignant tumour?

| | INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| | Range: 0..110

| | **EICANA**

| | SHOW CARD EI9

| | In which organ or part of [^his/her] body did the cancer or tumour start? CODE ONE ONLY

- | | 1 Lung
- | | 2 Breast
- | | 3 Colon, bowel or rectum
- | | 4 Lymphoma
- | | 5 Leukaemia
- | | 6 Melanoma or other skin cancer
- | | 95 Somewhere else

| | *IF cancer started somewhere else [EICANA= 95 (somewhere else)]*

| | **EiCanO @**

| | INTERVIEWER: Record where cancer or tumour started. "

| | : STRING[100]

| | END FILTER

| | **EiCanM (not included at wave 2)**

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had Parkinson's disease [EiDiaB=6]*

**EIPRK**

Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had Parkinson's disease?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

Range: 0..110

END FILTER

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems [EiDiaB=7]*

**EIAGH**

Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

Range: 0..110

**EIPSY**

**[Multiple responses to EIPSY are recorded in variables EIPSY1 to EIPSY8, EIPSY95]**

SHOW CARD EI10

What type of emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems did [^he/she] have? PROBE:  
What others? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Hallucinations
- 2 Anxiety
- 3 Depression
- 4 Emotional problems
- 5 Schizophrenia
- 6 Psychosis
- 7 Mood swings
- 8 Manic depression
- 95 Something else

ELSE

**EIYRC**

Did [^he/she] have these problems during the last 12 months of [^his/her] life?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END FILTER|

END FILTER

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had Alzheimer's disease [EiDiaB=8]*

**EIAGI**

Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had Alzheimer's Disease?

INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

Range: 0..110

END FILTER

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they had dementia, senility or any other serious memory impairment [EiDiaB=9]*

|

**EIAGJ**

| Approximately how old was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] was first told by a doctor that [^he/she] had dementia, senility or any other serious memory impairment?

| INTERVIEWER: Enter the age in years.

| Range: 0..110

|

END FILTER

*IF deceased was told by the doctor they a malignant blood disorder [EiDiaB=10]*

| **EILEUK and EIAGK were not asked in Waves 2 and 3**

END FILTER

**EIAGO**

Did [^he/she] have any other major illnesses in the year preceding [^his/her] death?

1 Yes (Please specify at next question)

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF Did have any other major il = Yes [EiAgo = Yes]*

|

**EIAGOA @**

|

| INTERVIEWER: Write in any other major illnesses.

| STRING 100

|

END FILTER

***Joint replacement and resurfacing (Artificial implants)***

**EIMEDINT @** (Note that at Wave 4 and 6 the wording of these questions was changed to refer to joint replacement or resurfacing rather than artificial implants)

I would now like to ask you about any artificial implants [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] may have had.

1 Continue

**EIMEDA**

Did [^he/she] ever have an artificial joint, such as an artificial hip, knee or finger joint implanted??

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF deceased ever had a joint replacement or resurfacing [EiMedA = Yes]*

**EIMEDN**

| How many such joints did [^he/she] have implanted?

| Range: 1..10

|

| *IF responded to question about number of joints [EiMedN = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR Idx:= 1 TO EiMedN

**EIMEDB @**

*[Loop: Responses to EIMEDB are recorded in variables EIMEDBZ1 to EIMEDBZ3, EIMEDBZ9, EIMEDBZ10]*

Which was the [^first\second etc] joint [^he/she] had implanted?

STRING 50

**EIMEDC**

*[Loop: Responses to EIMEDC are recorded in variables EIMEDC1 to EIMEDC3]*

In what year was the [^ joint mentioned at EiMedB] implanted?

INTERVIEWER: Specify the year.

Range: 1900..2900

**EIMEDCA**

*[Loop: Responses to EIMEDCA are recorded in variables EIMEDCA1 to EIMEDCA3]*

Was the [^ joint mentioned at EiMedB] implanted during [^his/her] last year of life?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

**EIMEDDA**

*[Loop: Responses to EIMEDDA are recorded in variables EIMEDDA1 to EIMEDDA3]*

In what month was the [^first\second etc] joint implanted?

INTERVIEWER: Specify the month.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

**EIMEDE** (this question was not included at waves 4 and 6)

Was the [^ joint mentioned at EiMedB] removed or replaced?

1 Yes, removed

2 Yes, replaced

3 Neither

4 Don't know

| | | *If joint was removed or replaced [EiMedE = 1 OR 2]*  
| | | **EiMEDEA** (this question was not included at waves 4 and 6)  
| | | Was the ^EiMedB removed or replaced during the last year of life?:  
| | | 1 Yes, removed  
| | | 2 Yes, replaced  
| | | 3 Neither  
| | | 4 Don't know

| | | END FILTER  
| | END FILTER  
| |  
| END FILTER  
|  
END FILTER

## ***Financing medical care***

### **EIEXPINT @**

I'd now like to ask you some questions about any expenses which [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] incurred as a result of the medical care [^he/she] received in the year before [^he/she] died. Before I do that, though, I'd like to assure you again that everything you have already told me and anything else you tell me will be kept completely confidential.  
INTERVIEWER: Press and to continue.  
Range: 1..1

### **EIEXPS**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] receive any medical treatments other than on the NHS?  
1 Yes  
2 No  
3 Don't know

*IF deceased receive any medical treatment other than NHS [EiExpS = Yes]*

| | **EIPHI**  
| Were any of the costs of these medical treatments covered by private health insurance?  
| 1 Yes, all of the cost  
| 2 Yes, some of the cost  
| 3 No, none of the cost  
| 4 No costs  
| 5 Don't know

*IF some or none of the costs covered by insurance [EiPHI=2 or 3]*

### **EIFHLP**

| | Other than insurances did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] receive any financial help to pay for any of these medical treatments?  
| | 1 Yes  
| | 2 No  
| | 3 Don't know

| | *IF receive any financial help = Yes [EiFHlp = Yes]*  
| |

**EIFWHO**

*[Multiple responses to EIFWHO are recorded in variables EIFWHO1 to EIFWHO3]*

Who else did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] receive financial help from? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Child
- 2 Other relative
- 95 Other (please specify at next question)
- 96 Don't know

*IF receive financial help from other [EiFWho=95 (other)]*

**EIFWHOA @**

INTERVIEWER: Record who [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] received financial help from.  
STRING 150

END FILTER

**EITOTL @@**

How much money in total did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] receive from others to pay for these treatments?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount to the nearest £.  
Range: 0..9999997

*IF NONRESPONSE in How much money in total [EiTotl = NONRESPONSE]*

**EiTotlB**

Was it.....  
BRACKETS (250, 1000, 5000, 10000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in EiTol, EiTou, EiToe, EiTor]

END FILTER

**EIFAMT @@**

How much did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name][^and you/his/her spouse or partner] pay for the treatment [^themselves/ yourselves]?

INTERVIEWER: Enter amount to the nearest £.  
Range: 0..9999997

*IF NON-RESPONSE in How much paid for the treatment [EiFAmt = NONRESPONSE]*

**EiFAmtB**

Was it.....  
BRACKETS (250, 1000, 5000, 10000)  
[Bracket results are recorded in EiFAI, EiFAu, EiFAe, EiFAr]

| | *IF amount paid for treatment was [(EiFAmt > 0) OR (EiFAmtB.RESULT = 1)]*

| | **EIHPAY**

| | *[Multiple responses to EIHPAY are recorded in variables EIHPAY1 to EIHPAY3, EIHPAY95, EIHPAY96]*

| | How were these costs financed? CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- | | 1 Paid using savings/earnings
- | | 2 Took out a loan
- | | 3 Have not yet paid
- | | 95 Other (specify)
- | | 96 Don't know

| | *IF Costs were financed an other way [EiHPay= 95 (other)]*

| | **EIHPAYO @**

| | INTERVIEWER: Write in how the costs are financed.

| | STRING 80

| | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

## ***Financing the funeral***

**EIFUN @**

I asked you earlier about expenses incurred for the health care that [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] received.

Now I would like to ask you about expenses which were associated with [^his/her] funeral, or legal fees related to [^his/her] death.

INTERVIEWER: Press and to continue.

Range: 1..1

**EIDCSTB**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have an insurance policy specifically designed to cover [^his/her] funeral expenses?

- 1 Yes, covered it partially
- 2 Yes, covered it totally
- 3 No

*IF had an insurance policy [EiDcstb=1 or 2]*

| | **EIFUINS @** (see DVEIFUINS grouped for non-disclosure)

| | In total, how much did this insurance pay out?

| | Range: 0..999997

| | END FILTER

*IF had no insurance or partial insurance policy [EiDcstb= 2 or 3]*

**EIDCSTA @** (see DVEIDCSTA grouped for non-disclosure)

What was the total cost of the funeral expenses and legal fees[^after the insurance payment]?

Range: 0..999997

**EIFUNREL**

***[Multiple responses to EIFUNREL are recorded in variables EIFUNR01 to EIFUNR23 and EIFUNR47 to EIFUNR51 for answers backcoded from other EIRRELOT ]***

SHOW CARD EI11

Who [^else] paid for the funeral expenses (that is what is their relationship to [^deceased ELSA respondent's name])? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

- 01 Respondent (you)
- 02 Husband/Wife
- 03 Partner/cohabitee
- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF other relative or other non-relative paid [EiFunRel= 22 or 23]*

**EIRRELOT @** (answers backcoded into EIFUNR47 to EIFUNR51)

INTERVIEWER: The respondent has answered 'other' relationship: Write in relationship to

[^deceased ELSA respondent's name].

STRING 100

END FILTER

| *IF respondent paid towards funeral expenses [(EiFunRel=1) AND (EiFunRel.CARDINAL >= 2)]*

| | **EITOTRES @** (see DVEITOTRES grouped for non-disclosure)

| | In total, how much did you pay towards [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s funeral expenses?

| | Range: 0..999997

| END FILTER

| *IF husband or wife paid towards funeral expenses [(EiFunRel=2) AND (EiFunRel.CARDINAL >= 2)]*

| | **EITOTSPS @@**

| | In total, how much did the husband/wife pay towards [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s funeral expenses?

| | Range: 0..999997

| END FILTER

| *IF partner or cohabitee paid towards funeral expenses [(EiFunRel=3) AND (EiFunRel.CARDINAL >= 2)]*

| | **EITOTPRT @@**

| | In total, how much did the partner/cohabitee pay towards [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s funeral expenses?

| | Range: 0..999997

| END FILTER

| LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

| | *Loop for each relative from EIFUNREL [EiFunRel=4..21]*

| | | **EIFUNUM**

| | | **[Loop: Responses to EIFUNUM are recorded in variables EIFUNU04 to EIFUNU23]**

| | | How many [[^relatives from EIFUNREL] paid towards the funeral expenses?

| | | INTERVIEWER: If same relationship, do not include respondent here.

| | | Range: 1..20

| | | *IFEIFUNUM answered [Eifunum = RESPONSE and >1]*

| | | | **EITOTREL @** (See DVEITOTR01 and DVEITOTR02 for first and second son

| | | | or daughter grouped for non-disclosure. Data for other relatives are not included owing to small numbers)

| | | | **[Loop: Responses to EITOTREL are recorded in variables EITOTR04 to EITOTR23]**

| | | | In total, how much did the [^first\second etc] [^relative from EIFUNREL] pay towards the funeral expenses?

| | | | INTERVIEWER: Enter amount in pounds.

| | | | Range: 1..999997

| | | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

```
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
|
END FILTER
```

## ***Work and pensions***

### **EIWORINT @**

Now I'd like to ask you some questions about [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s employment situation since we last spoke to [^him/her].

1 Continue

### **EIWORKA**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] do any paid work in the time since we last interviewed [^him/her] on [^date of deceased ELSA respondent's last interview].

1 Yes - Full time

2 Yes - part time

3 Yes - from time to time

4 No

5 Don't know

*IF deceased did paid work from time to time since last interview [EiWorkA = 3]*

### **EIWHNTM**

When was the last time [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] worked?

INTERVIEWER: Enter month.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

### **EIWHNTY**

(When was the last time [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] worked?)

INTERVIEWER: Enter year.

Range: 2002..2900

ELSE

*IF did paid work since the last interview [EiWorkA = 1 or 2]*

**EISTOP**

Had [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] stopped working before [^his/her] death?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF Had stopped working before death [EiStop = Yes]*

**EIWHEN**

In what month and year did [^he/she] stop working?

INTERVIEWER: Enter month.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

**EIWHENY**

INTERVIEWER: Enter year.

Range: 1900..2050

**EIWHY**

*[Multiple responses to EIWHY are recorded in variables EIWHY01 to EIWHY15, EIWHY95]*

SHOW CARD E112

Why did [^he/she] stop working?

INTERVIEWER: Code all that apply.

01 Own ill health or disability

02 Working was too tiring/stressful

03 Ill health or disability of a relative/friend

04 Company went out of business/site closed down

05 Made redundant/dismissed/had no choice

06 Took voluntary redundancy

07 Could not find another job

08 Could afford to stop working

09 To spend more time with partner/family

10 To enjoy life while still fit and young enough

11 Fed up with working and wanted a change

12 To stop working at same time as husband/wife/partner

13 To give young generation a chance

14 Moved to a different area

15 Retired

95 Other reason

*IF stopped for other reason [EiWhy=95 (other)]*

**EIWHYOTH @**

What was the reason?

INTERVIEWER: Write in.

STRING 200

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIPENM**

Was [^he/she] a member of a private pension plan, including employer provided, personal, stakeholder, or any other scheme?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF member of a private plan [EiPenM = Yes]*

**EIPENN**

How many pension funds did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have?

Range: 1..8

*IF response to number of pension funds [EiPenN = RESPONSE]*

**EIPTYPE (note at Wave 4 and 6 there were additional categories introduced)**

***[Loop: Responses to EIPTYPE are recorded in variables EIPTYP1 to EIPTYP8]***

SHOW CARD E113

What type of pension scheme was this [^first\second etc] scheme?

1 Employer provided (occupational) scheme

2 Private Personal pension scheme

3 Group Personal pension

4 Stakeholder pension

5 S226 plan

6 Retirement Annuity pension (pre 86 PPPs)

9 other retirement saving scheme

*IF employer provided scheme [EiPType = 1]*

**EIEMP @**

What is the name of the employer provided scheme?

INTERVIEWER: If police, local authority etc, probe for name of force/local authority etc. WRITE IN.

STRING 80

END FILTER

**EIPEN**

*[Loop and multiple responses: Responses to EIPEN are recorded in variables EIPEN1 to EIPEN5, EIPEN95, EIPEN96 for Loop 1; EIPEN6 to EIPEN10, EIPEN97, EIPEN98 for Loop 2; EIPEN11 to EIPEN15, EIPEN99, EIPEN100 for Loop 3; EIPEN16 to EIPEN20, EIPEN102, EIPEN103 for Loop 4]*

When [^he/she] died, what happened to [^his/her] [^ pension type from EiPType]? ...READ OUT...  
CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Someone is receiving regular payments
- 2 Someone received a lump sum payment
- 3 Someone expects to receive regular payments in the future
- 4 Someone expects to receive a lump sum payment in the future
- 5 Payments were lost
- 95 Other (specify at next question)
- 96 Don't know

*IF other happened to pension scheme [EiPen=95 (other)]*

**EIPENO @**

*[Loop: Responses to EIPENO are recorded in variables EIPENO1 to EIPENO8]*

INTERVIEWER: Enter details.  
STRING 100

END FILTER

*IF Now IN EiPen OR Received IN EiPen OR ExpectP IN EiPen OR ExpectL*

*/ / / IN EiPen [((Now IN EiPen) OR (Received IN EiPen)) OR (ExpectP IN EiPen)) OR*

*/ / / (ExpectL IN EiPen)]*

**EIPENWHO**

*[Loop: Responses to EIPENWHO are recorded in variables EIPENWho to EIPENWh2..8]*

SHOW CARD EI14

Who is receiving or expects to receive payments?

INTERVIEWER: Code one only. If respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son/daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

- 01 Respondent (you)
- 02 Husband/Wife
- 03 Partner/cohabitee
- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister

- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF other relative expects to receive payments [EiPenWho = 22]*

**EIPENWR @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other relative.  
STRING 80

ELSE

*IF other non-relative expects to receive payments [EiPenWho = 23]*

**EIPENWN @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other non-relative.  
STRING 80

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF expect to receive regular payments in future [EIPen =3]*

**EIPENXPM**

***[Loop: Responses to EIPENXPM are recorded in variables EIPENXPM1 to EIPENXP1..8]***

In what month and year do [^you/they] expect to start receiving these regular payments?

INTERVIEWER: Enter month.

- 01 January
- 02 February
- 03 March
- 04 April
- 05 May
- 06 June
- 07 July
- 08 August
- 09 September
- 10 October
- 11 November
- 12 December

**EIPENXPY**

***[Loop: Responses to EIPENXPY are recorded in variables EIPENXPY|1 to EIPENXPY8]***

INTERVIEWER: Enter year.  
Range: 2002..2900

**EIPENXPA**

**[Loop: Responses to EIPENXPA are recorded in variables EIPENXPA1 to EIPENXPA4]**

How much do [^you/they] expect to receive per month?

Range: 0..999997

*IF EiPenxpa not answered [EiPenxpa = NONRESPONSE]*

EiPenxpB

Is it.....

BRACKETS (250, 500, 1000, 2500)

[Loop: Bracket results are recorded in EiPexpl1 to EiPexpl4, EiPexpu1 to EiPexpu4 ,

EiPexpe1 to EiPexpe4, EiPexpr1 to EiPexpr4]

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF expect to receive lumpsum in future [EIPen =4]*

**EIPENXLM**

**[Loop: Responses to EIPENXLM are recorded in variables EIPENXLM1 to EIPENXLM4]**

In what month and year do [^you/they] expect to receive the lump sum?

INTERVIEWER: Enter month.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

**EIPENXLY**

**[Loop: Responses to EIPENXLY are recorded in variables EIPENXLY1 to EIPENXLY8]**

INTERVIEWER: Enter year.

Range: 2002..2900

**EIPENXLA**

**[Loop: Responses to EIPENXLA are recorded in variables EIPENX1 to EIPENX4]**

How much do [^you/they] expect the lump sum to amount to?

Range: 0..999997

*IF EiPenxla = NONRESPONSE [EiPenxla = NONRESPONSE]*

EiPenxB

Is it.....

BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 50000, 100000)

[Loop: Bracket results are recorded in EiPexll1 to EiPexll4, EiPexlu1 to EiPexlu4 , EiPexle1 to EiPexle4, EiPexlr1 to EiPexlr4]

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF someone is receiving regular payments [EiPen=1]*

**EIPENPD**

***[Loop: Responses to EIPENPD are recorded in variables EIPENPD1 to EIPENPD4]***

Thinking about the last regular payment [^you/they] received, what period did this cover?

- 01 One week
- 02 Two weeks
- 03 Three weeks
- 04 Four weeks
- 05 Calendar month
- 07 Two Calendar months
- 08 Eight times a year
- 09 Nine times a year
- 10 Ten times a year
- 13 Three months/13 weeks
- 26 Six months/26 weeks
- 52 One Year/12 months/52 weeks
- 90 Less than one week
- 95 One off/lump sum
- 96 None of these (Explain in a note)

**EIPENPA**

***[Loop: Responses to EIPENPA are recorded in variables EIPENPA1 to EIPENPA4]***

How much did [^you/they] receive?

Range: 0..99997

```

| | | | | IF amount not given but period was given [EiPenpA = NONRESPONSE AND (EiPenPd =
| | | | | RESPONSE)]
| | | | |
| | | | | IF EiPenPd IN [OneWeek .. ThrWeek] [EiPenPd IN [OneWeek ..
| | | | | ThrWeek]]
| | | | |
| | | | | EiPenpW
| | | | | Was it.....
| | | | | BRACKETS (50, 100, 250, 500)
| | | | | [Loop: Bracket results are recorded in EiPerw1 to EiPerw4 , EiPerwu1 to EiPerwu4 ,
| | | | | EiPerwe1 to EiPerwe4, EiPerwr1 to EiPerwr4]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF EiPenPd IN [Fourweek .. OneYear] [EiPenPd IN [Fourweek ..
| | | | | OneYear]]
| | | | |
| | | | | EiPenpM
| | | | | Was it.....
| | | | | BRACKETS (250, 500, 1000, 2500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in EiPerm1 to EiPerm4 , EiPermu1 to EiPermu4 ,
| | | | | EiPerme1 to EiPerme4, EiPermr1 to EiPermr4]
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE (IF less than one week or one off lump sum or none of these periods)
| | | | |
| | | | | EiPenpO
| | | | | Was it.....
| | | | | BRACKETS (250, 500, 1000, 2500)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in EiPerol1 to EiPerol4 , EiPerou1 to EiPerou4 ,
| | | | | EiPeroe1 to EiPeroe4, EiPeror1 to EiPeror4]
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF someone received lump sum [EiPen=2]
| | | | |
| | | | | EIPENLA @@
| | | | | [Loop: Responses to EIPENLA are recorded in variables EIPENL1 to EIPENL8]
| | | | | Thinking about the lump sum payment [^you/they] received, how much was this?
| | | | | Range: 0..999997
| | | | |
| | | | | IF amount not given [EiPenla = NONRESPONSE]
| | | | |
| | | | | EiPenlb
| | | | | Was it.....
| | | | | BRACKETS (5000, 10000, 50000, 100000)
| | | | | [Bracket results are recorded in EiPerll1 to EiPerll4 , EiPerlu1 to EiPerlu4 ,
| | | | | EiPerle1 to EiPerle4, EiPerlr1 to EiPerlr4]

```

||| |  
| | | | END FILTER  
| | | | END FILTER

## **Assets and inheritances**

### **EIASSINT @**

I would now like to ask you some questions about what happened to [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s assets after [^his/her] death.

1 Continue

### **EIASCK**

Can I just check, has [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s estate been distributed yet?"

1 Yes

2 No

*If estate has been distributed [EIASCK=yes]*

### **EIWILLA**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have a Will?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*If did not have a will or does not know [EiWilla=no or don't know]*

### **EIKIN**

SHOW CARD EI14

Who was [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s next of kin?

INTERVIEWER: Code one only. If respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son/daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

04 Natural son/daughter

05 Adopted son/daughter

06 Foster son/daughter

07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner

08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law

09 Natural parent

10 Adoptive parent

11 Foster parent

12 Step-parent/parent's partner

13 Parent-in-law

14 Natural brother/sister

15 Half-brother/sister

16 Step-brother/sister

17 Adopted brother/sister

18 Foster brother/sister

19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law

20 Grandchild

21 Grandparent

22 Other relative (specify at next question)

23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*If next of kin was other relative or other non-relative [EiKin =22 or 23]*

```

| |
| | EIKINO @
| | INTERVIEWER: The respondent has answered 'other' relationship: Write in relationship to
| | [^deceased ELSA respondent's name].
| | STRING 100
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | ELSE
| |
| | IF had a Will [EiWillA = Yes]
| |
| | EIEXEC
| | Are you the legal executor of the Will?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No
| | 3 Don't know
| |
| | EIBEN
| | Are you a beneficiary of the Will?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No
| | 3 Don't know
| | 4 SPONTANEOUS - Assets not yet been shared out
| |
| | EIPROB
| | Did/Does [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s Will need to go to probate?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No
| | 3 Don't know
| |
| | IF will needed to go to probate [EiProb = Yes]
| |
| | EIWILLB
| | Has [^his/her] Will been through probate?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No
| | 3 Don't know

```

**PLEASE NOTE THAT ALTHOUGH THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS WERE INCLUDED, THE DATA ARE NOT INCLUDED IN THE ARCHIVED DATASET OWING TO SMALL NUMBERS. These are available in the waves 3, 4 and 6 datasets.**

```

| |
| | IF will has not been through probate [EiWillB = No]
| |
| | EIWILLPRO @@
| | What is the total value of [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s assets?
| | Range: 1..999997
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | END FILTER

```

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIHOME**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own [^his/her] main home or share of [^his/her] main home when [^he/she] died? By main home I mean the place where [^he/she] lived most of the time (before they moved into an institution).

INTERVIEWER: Other properties [^he/she] may have owned will be covered later.

1 Yes

2 No

*IF owned main home or share [EiHome = Yes]*

*IF respondent is husband or wife or partner of deceased or spouse of deceased is still alive  
[(EiRRel = 1 or 2) or (SurvSp = Yes)]*

**EISP**

Did [^you/ their spouse/partner] inherit the home or [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s share of the home?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF respondent/ spouse did not inherit the home or share of home [EiSp = No]*

**EISPOWN**

[^Do you/ Does their spouse/partner] currently own a share of the home?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF currently own a share of the home [EiSpOwn = Yes]*

**EISPSH**

What share of the home [^do/does you/ their spouse/partner] currently own?

INTERVIEWER: Code how question will be answered

1 As a percentage

2 As a fraction

3 As a monetary amount

*IF share expressed as percentage [EiSpSh = 1]*

**EISPP**

(What share of the home [^do you/ does their spouse/partner] currently own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a percentage.

Range: 1..100

ELSE

*IF share expressed as fraction [EiSpSh = 2]*

**EISPF @@**

(What share of the home [^do you/ does their spouse/partner] currently own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a fraction.

STRING 15

ELSE

*IF share expressed as an amount [EiSpSh =3]*

**EISPA**

(What share of the home [^do you/ does their spouse/partner] currently own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as an amount.

Range: 1..9999997

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF did inherit the home or share of the home [EiSp = Yes]*

**EISPINH**

Did [^you/their spouse/partner] inherit the home (or [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s share of the home) solely or jointly with some other people?

1 Solely inherited

2 Jointly inherited

END FILTER

*IF did inherit the home jointly [EiSpInH = 2]*

**EISHARE**

What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?

INTERVIEWER: Code how question will be answered

1 As a percentage

2 As a fraction

3 As a monetary amount

*IF deceased's share expressed as a percentage [EiShare = 1]*

**EISHP**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a percentage.

Range: 1..100

ELSE

*IF deceased's share expressed as a fraction [EiShare = 2]*

**EISHF @@**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a fraction.

STRING 15

ELSE

*IF deceased's share expressed as an amount [EiShare = 3]*

**EISHA**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as an amount.

Range: 1..9999997

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF did not inherit home or inherited jointly [(EiSp = No) OR (EiSplnH = 2)]*

**EIHOWH**

***[Multiple responses to EIHOWH are recorded in variables EIHOWH01 to EIHOWH23]***

SHOW CARD EI14

[^Who inherited the home/ deceased ELSA respondent's name share] (that is, what is their relationship to [^deceased ELSA respondent's name])?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

04 Natural son/daughter

05 Adopted son/daughter

06 Foster son/daughter

07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner

08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law

09 Natural parent

10 Adoptive parent

11 Foster parent

12 Step-parent/parent's partner

13 Parent-in-law

14 Natural brother/sister

15 Half-brother/sister

16 Step-brother/sister

17 Adopted brother/sister

18 Foster brother/sister  
19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law  
20 Grandchild  
21 Grandparent  
22 Other relative (specify at next question)  
23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF other relative inherited home/ share of home [EiHowH=22]*

**EIHOWOR @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other relative.  
STRING 60

END FILTER

*IF other non-relative inherited home/ share of home [EiHowH=23]*

**EIHOWON @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other non-relative.  
STRING 60

END FILTER

*IF SHOW CARD E114 (that is, wh = RESPONSE [EiHowH =  
/ / / RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

*IF QFinance.QHomSp.idy IN EiHowH [idy IN EiHowH]*

**EIHOWN**

***[Loop: Responses to EIHOWN are recorded in variables EIHOWN01 to EIHOWN23]***

How many [^type of relative from EIHOWH] are you referring to?

INTERVIEWER: If same relationship, do not include respondent here.

Range: 1..20

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF only one answer coded at EIHOWH (EiHowN[EiHowH[1].ORD] = 1)*

*IF not husband/ wife or partner who inherited the home [EiHowH<>2 and EiHowH<>3]*

**EIHOLIV**

INTERVIEWER ASK OR CODE: Does this person live in this home at present?

1 Yes

2 No

END FILTER

ELSE (i.e. more than one type of relative coded at EIHOWH)

EiHoLv

Do any of these people currently live in that home?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF any of these people currently live in that home [EiHoLv = Yes]*

**EIHOLW**

***[Multiple responses to EIHOLW are recorded in variables EIHOLW01 to EIHOLW23]***

SHOW CARD EI14

Who lives in the house at present? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

04 Natural son/daughter

05 Adopted son/daughter

06 Foster son/daughter

07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner

08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law

09 Natural parent

10 Adoptive parent

11 Foster parent

12 Step-parent/parent's partner

13 Parent-in-law

14 Natural brother/sister

15 Half-brother/sister

16 Step-brother/sister

17 Adopted brother/sister

18 Foster brother/sister

19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law

20 Grandchild

21 Grandparent

22 Other relative (specify at next question)

23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EISPLIVE**

INTERVIEWER ASK OR CODE: Does [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s spouse/partner live in that home at present?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF no one lives in the house [((EiHoLiv <> Yes) AND (EiHoLv <> Yes)) AND (EiSpLive <> Yes)]*

**EIHOSLD** (see also EIHOSZ for backcoded answers)

What has happened to that home?

- 1 It is currently empty
- 2 It is currently being let out (i.e. tenants living there)
- 3 It is currently on the market
- 4 It has already been sold
- 95 Other (specify at next question)

*IF other has happened to that home [EiHoSld = 95 (Other)]*

**EIHOSOTH @**

INTERVIEWER: Record what has happened to the home.  
STRING 100

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIHOA @** (see DVEIHOA grouped for non-disclosure)

What [^was/is] the [^value/selling price] of that home?

Range: 1..9999997

*IF no answer to value question [EiHoa = NONRESPONSE]*

**EiHoab**

Was it.....

BRACKETS (50000, 75000, 125000, 500000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EiHol, EiHou, EiHoe, EiHor]

END FILTER

**EIHOMG**

Was there any outstanding mortgage on this home (before any insurance might have paid the outstanding balance)?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF there was outstanding mortgage [EiHoMg = Yes]*

**EIHOMGI**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have any insurance policies that will pay off or have paid off the mortgage either in full or partially?

- 1 Yes, In full
- 2 Yes, partially
- 3 No

*IF deceased did not have insurance policy to pay off mortgage fully [EiHoMg]=2 or 3]*

**EIHOMGA**

How much was the outstanding balance on this mortgage [^after the insurance policy pay out]?  
Range: 1..9999997

*IF no answer to the outstanding balance [EiHoMga = NONRESPONSE]*

**EiHoMgab**

Was it.....

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EiHobl, EiHobu, EiHobe, EiHobr]

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

ELSE

**EIJJOINT**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own this home jointly with someone else?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF deceased owned home jointly [EiJoint = Yes]*

**EIOTH0**

***[Multiple responses to EIOTH0 are recorded in variables EIOTH001 to EIOTH023]***

Who else owned the house with [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: CODE ALL THAT APPLY INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

- 01 Respondent (you)
- 02 Husband/Wife
- 03 Partner/cohabitee
- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent

- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF who else owned the house with deceased was answered [EiOthO = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

*IF QFinance.QHomNo.idy IN EiOthO [idy IN EiOthO]*

**EIOTHN**

***[Loop: Responses to EIOTHN are recorded in variables EIOTHN01 to EIOTHN23]***

How many [^type of relative from EIOTHO] are you referring to?

Range: 1..20

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIOSHARE**

What share of the house did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?

1 As a percentage

2 As a fraction

3 As a monetary amount

*IF share of house expressed as a percentage [EiOShare = 1]*

**EIOSHP**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a percentage.

Range: 1..100

ELSE

*IF share of house expressed as a fraction [EiOShare = 2]*

**EIOSHF @@**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a fraction.

STRING 15

ELSE

*IF share of house expressed as an amount [EiOShare = 3]*

**EIOSHA**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as an amount.

Range: 1..9999997

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIOIN**

Did only those with joint ownership inherit [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s share of the house?

1 Yes

2 No

3 Don't know

*IF it was not only those with joint ownership who inherited deceased's share [EiIn = No]*

**EIOINW**

***[Multiple responses to EIOINW are recorded in variables EIOINW01 to EIOINW23]***

Who else inherited [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s share of the home?

INTERVIEWER: DO NOT CODE JOINT OWNERS AGAIN INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

04 Natural son/daughter

05 Adopted son/daughter

06 Foster son/daughter

07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner

08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law

09 Natural parent

10 Adoptive parent

11 Foster parent

12 Step-parent/parent's partner

13 Parent-in-law

14 Natural brother/sister

15 Half-brother/sister

16 Step-brother/sister

17 Adopted brother/sister

18 Foster brother/sister

19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law

20 Grandchild

21 Grandparent

22 Other relative (specify at next question)

23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

```

| | | LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23
| | |
| | | IF QFinance.QHomNo.idy IN EioInW [idy IN EioInW]
| | | EIOINN
| | | [Loop: Responses to EIOINN are recorded in variables EIOINN01 to EIOINN23]
| | | How many [^type of relative at EIOINW] are you referring to?
| | | Range: 1..20
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | ELSE (i.e. IF house was not jointly owned)
| | | EioHwH
| | | SHOW CARD EI14
| | | Who inherited this home (that is, what is their relationship to
| | | [^deceased ELSA respondent's name])?
| | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY
| | | INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if
| | | respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or
| | | daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than
| | | respondent.
| | | 01 Respondent (you)
| | | 02 Husband/Wife
| | | 03 Partner/cohabitee
| | | 04 Natural son/daughter
| | | 05 Adopted son/daughter
| | | 06 Foster son/daughter
| | | 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
| | | 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
| | | 09 Natural parent
| | | 10 Adoptive parent
| | | 11 Foster parent
| | | 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
| | | 13 Parent-in-law
| | | 14 Natural brother/sister
| | | 15 Half-brother/sister
| | | 16 Step-brother/sister
| | | 17 Adopted brother/sister
| | | 18 Foster brother/sister
| | | 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
| | | 20 Grandchild
| | | 21 Grandparent
| | | 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
| | | 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

```

IF who inherited the home was answered [EioHwH = RESPONSE]

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

IF QFinance.QHomNo.idy IN EioHwH [idy IN EioHwH]

**EIOHWN**

**[Loop: Responses to EIOHWN are recorded in variables EIOHWN01 to EIOHWN23]**

How many [^type of relative at EIOHWH] are you referring to?

Range: 1..20

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

IF only one type of relative mentioned at EioHwH

**[((EioThO.CARDINAL = 1) AND (EioThN[EioThO[1].ORD] = 1)) AND (EioIn = Yes)) OR ((EioHwH.CARDINAL = 1) AND (EioHwN[EioHwH[1].ORD] = 1))]**

**EIOHLIV**

INTERVIEWER: ASK OR CODE: Does this person live in the home at present?

1 Yes

2 No

ELSE (i.e. more than one relative mentioned at EioHwH)

**EioHLv**

Do any of these people who now own the property currently live in that home?

1 Yes

2 No

IF any who now own the property currently live in that home [EioHLv = Yes]

**EIOHLW**

**[Multiple responses to EIOHLW are recorded in variables EIOHLW01 to EIOHLW23]**

Who lives in the house at present? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

04 Natural son/daughter

05 Adopted son/daughter

06 Foster son/daughter

07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner

08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law

- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

ELSE

*IF none of owners live in home [EioHLv = No]*

**EIOHSLD**

What has happened to that home?

- 1 It is currently empty
- 2 It is currently being let out (i.e. tenants living there)
- 3 It is currently on the market
- 4 It has already been sold
- 95 Other (specify at next question)

*IF other has happened to the home [EioHSld = 95 (Other)]*

**EIOHSO @**

INTERVIEWER: Record what has happened to the home.

STRING 100

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIOHA @** (see DVEIOHA grouped for non-disclosure)

What [<sup>^</sup>is/was] the [<sup>^</sup>value/selling price] of that home?

Range: 1..9999997

*IF value of home not answered [EioHa = NONRESPONSE]*

**EioHab**

Was it.....

BRACKETS (50000, 75000, 125000, 500000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EioHI, EioHu, EioHe, EioHr]

END FILTER

**EIOHMG**

Was there any outstanding mortgage on this home (before any insurance might have paid the outstanding balance)?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF there was outstanding mortgage [EioHMg = Yes]*

**EIOHMGI**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have any insurance policies that will pay off or have paid off the mortgage either in full or partially?

1 Yes, In full

2 Yes, partially

3 No

*IF deceased did not have insurance policy to pay off mortgage fully [EioHMgl =2 or 3]*

**EIOHMGA**

How much was the outstanding balance on this mortgage [^after the insurance policy pay out]?

Range: 1..9999997

*IF no response to outstanding balance [EioHMga = NONRESPONSE]*

**EioHMgab**

Was it.....

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EioHbl, EioHbu, EioHbe, EioHbr]

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIPRP**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own any property, or share of any property, other than their main home

when [^he/she] died? (Exclude business property and other non-residential property, include holiday homes and timeshares.)

1 Yes

2 No

*IF deceased owned property other than main home [EiPrp = Yes]*

**EIPRPN**

How many other properties did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?

Range: 1..20

*IF number of properties answered [EiPrpN = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR idx:= 1 TO EiPrpN

*IF respondent is husband or wife or partner of deceased or spouse of deceased is still alive | | |  
[(EiRRel = 1 or 2) or (SurvSp = Yes)]*

**EISP** (EISP2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EISP are recorded in variable EISP2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

Did [^you/ their spouse/partner inherit the [first] home or [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s share of the home?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF respondent or spouse/partner did not inherit the first other home [EiSp = No]*

**EISPOWN** (EISPOWN02 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EISPOWN are recorded in variable EISPOW2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

[^Do you/ does their spouse/partner] currently own a share of the home?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF respondent or spouse partner owns share of the home [EiSpOwn = Yes]*

**EISPSH** (EISPSH2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EISPSH are recorded in variable EISPSH2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

What share of the home [^do you/ does their spouse/partner] currently own?

INTERVIEWER: Code how question will be answered

1 As a percentage

2 As a fraction

3 As a monetary amount

*IF share of home expressed as a percentage [EiSpSh = 1]*

**EISPP** (EISPP2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EISPP are recorded in variable EISPP2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

(What share of the home [^do you/does their spouse/partner] currently own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a percentage.

Range: 1..100

ELSE

```

| | | | | IF share of home expressed as a fraction [EiSpSh = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | EISPF @
| | | | | [Loop: Responses to EISPF are recorded in variable EISPF2 as maximum number
| | | | | of other properties was 1 so only one loop]
| | | | | (What share of the home [^do you/does their spouse/partner] currently own?)
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a fraction.
| | | | | STRING 15
| | | | |
| | | | | ELSE
| | | | |
| | | | | IF share of home expressed as an amount [EiSpSh = 3]
| | | | |
| | | | | EISPA (EISPA2 for first other home)
| | | | | [Loop: Responses to EISPA are recorded in variable EISPA2 as maximum number
| | | | | of other properties was 1 so only one loop]
| | | | | (What share of the home [^do you/does their spouse/partner] currently own?)
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as an amount.
| | | | | Range: 1..9999997
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF respondent or spouse/partner inherited the first other home [EiSp = Yes]
| | | | |
| | | | | EISPINH (EISPINH2 for first other home)
| | | | | [Loop: Responses to EISPINH are recorded in variable EISPIN2 as maximum number
| | | | | of other properties was 1 so only one loop]
| | | | | Did [^you/their spouse/partner] inherit the home (or [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s
| | | | | share of the home) solely or jointly with some other people?
| | | | | 1 Solely inherited
| | | | | 2 Jointly inherited
| | | | |
| | | | | END FILTER
| | | | |
| | | | | IF first other home inherited jointly [EiSplnH = 2]
| | | | |
| | | | | EISHARE (EISHARE2 for first other home)
| | | | | [Loop: Responses to EISHARE are recorded in variable EISHAR2 as maximum
| | | | | number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]
| | | | | What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?
| | | | | INTERVIEWER: Code how question will be answered
| | | | | 1 As a percentage
| | | | | 2 As a fraction
| | | | | 3 As a monetary amount

```

*IF share of home expressed as a percentage [EiShare = 1]*

**EISHP** (EISHP2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EISHP are recorded in variables EISHP2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a percentage.

Range: 1..100

ELSE

*IF share of home expressed as a fraction [EiShare = 2]*

**EISHF @**

**[Loop: Responses to EISHF are recorded in variables EISHF2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a fraction.

STRING 15

ELSE

*IF share of home expressed as an amount [EiShare = 3]*

**EISHA** (EISHA2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EISHA are recorded in variables EISHA2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as an amount.

Range: 1..9999997

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF respondent/ spouse/ partner does not own all of home [(EiSp = No) OR (EiSplnH = 2)]*

**EIHOWH** (EISHA39..61 for first other home)

**[Multiple responses to EIHOWH are recorded in variables EIHOWH39 to EIHOWH61]**

SHOW CARD EI14

[^Who inherited this home/ deceased ELSA respondent's name's share] (that is, what is their relationship to [^deceased ELSA respondent's name])? CODE ALL

THAT APPLY

INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF other relative owns home/share [EiHowH=22]*

**EIHOWOR @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other relative.

STRING 60

END FILTER

*IF other non-relative owns home/share [EiHowH=23]*

**EIHOWON @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other non-relative.

STRING 60

END FILTER

*IF answer given to relationship of owner [EiHowH = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

*IF QFinance.idy IN EiHowH [idy IN EiHowH]*

**EIHOWN** (EIHOWN24 to 46 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIHOWN are recorded in variables EIHOWN24 to EIHOWN46]**

How many [^type of relative from EIHOWH] are you referring to?

Range: 1..20

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF only one answer at EIHOWH*

*[(EiHowH.CARDINAL = 1) AND (EiHowN[EiHowH[1].ORD] = 1)]*

*IF first other home not owned by husband/wife/partner [EiHowH<>1 & EiHowH<>2]*

**EIHOLIV** (EIHOLIV2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EIHOLIV are recorded in variable EIHOLIV2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

INTERVIEWER ASK OR CODE: Does this person live in this home at present?

1 Yes

2 No

END FILTER

ELSE (i.e. more than one relative given at EIHOWH)

**EiHoLv** (EIHOLV2 for first other home)

Do any of these people currently live in that home?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF any of these people currently live in home [EiHoLv = Yes]*

**EIHOLW** (EIHOLW24 to 46 for first other home)

***[Multiple responses to EIHOLW are recorded in variables EIHOLW24 to EIHOLW 46 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

SHOW CARD EI14

Who lives in the house at present? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

04 Natural son/daughter

05 Adopted son/daughter

06 Foster son/daughter

07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner

08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law

09 Natural parent

10 Adoptive parent

11 Foster parent

12 Step-parent/parent's partner

13 Parent-in-law

14 Natural brother/sister

15 Half-brother/sister

16 Step-brother/sister

17 Adopted brother/sister

18 Foster brother/sister

19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law

20 Grandchild

21 Grandparent

22 Other relative (specify at next question)

23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EISPLIVE** (EISPLIV2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EISPLIVE are recorded in variable EISPLIV2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

INTERVIEWER ASK OR CODE: Does [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s spouse/partner live in that home at present?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF no one lives in the home [((EiHoLiv <> Yes) AND (EiHoLv <> Yes)) AND (EiSpLive <> Yes)]*

**EIHOSLD** (EIHOSLD2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EIHOSLD are recorded in variable EIHOSLD2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

What has happened to that home?

1 It is currently empty

2 It is currently being let out (i.e. tenants living there)

3 It is currently on the market

4 It has already been sold

95 Other (specify at next question)

*IF Other has happened to home [EiHoSld = 95 (Other)]*

**EIHOSOTH @**

INTERVIEWER: Record what has happened to the home.

STRING 100

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIHOA @** (see DVEIHOA2 for first other home grouped for non-disclosure)

***[Loop: Responses to EIHOA are recorded in variable EIHOA2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

What [^is/was] the [^value/ selling price] of that home?

Range: 1..9999997

*IF no response to value of home [EiHoa = NONRESPONSE]*

**EiHoab** (for first other home)

Was it.....

BRACKETS (50000, 75000, 125000, 500000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EiHool1, EiHoou1, EiHooe1, EiHoor1]

END FILTER

**EIHOMG** (EIHOMG2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIHOMG are recorded in variable EIHOMG2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

Was there any outstanding mortgage on this home (before any insurance might have paid the outstanding balance)?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF there was outstanding balance on mortgage [EiHoMg = Yes]*

**EIHOMGI** (EIHOMGI2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIHOMGI are recorded in variables EIHOMGI2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have any insurance policies that will pay off or have paid off the mortgage either in full or partially?

1 Yes, In full

2 Yes, partially

3 No

*IF deceased did not have insurance policy to pay off mortgage fully [EiHoMgl 2 or 3]*

**EIHOMGA** (EIHOMGA2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIHOMGA are recorded in variables EIHOMGA2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

How much was the outstanding balance on this mortgage [mgtxt]?

Range: 1..9999997

*IF no response to outstanding balance [EiHoMga = NONRESPONSE]*

**EiHoMgab** (first other home)

Was it.....

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EiHobol1, EiHobou1, EiHoboe1, EiHobor1]

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

ELSE

**EIJOINT** (EIJOINT2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIJOINT are recorded in variables EIJOINT2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own this home jointly with someone else?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF deceased owned home jointly [EiJoint = Yes]*

**EIOTH0** (EIOTH024 to 46 for first other home)

**[Multiple responses to EIOTH0 are recorded in variables EIOTH024 to EIOTH046]**

Who else owned the house with [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] when [^he/she] died?

INTERVIEWER: CODE ALL THAT APPLY

- 01 Respondent (you)
- 02 Husband/Wife
- 03 Partner/cohabitee
- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF Response given to who else owned home [EiOth0 = RESPONSE]*

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

*IF QFinance.idy IN EiOth0 [idy IN EiOth0]*

**EIOTHN @**

**[Loop: Responses to EIOTHN are recorded in variables EIOTHN2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

How many [^types of relative from EIOTH0] are you referring to?

Range: 1..20

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EISHARE** (EISHARE2 for first other home)  
**[Loop: Responses to EIOSHARE are recorded in variables EIOSHA01 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

What share of the house did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?

- 1 As a percentage
- 2 As a fraction
- 3 As a monetary amount

*IF share expressed as a percentage [EiOShare = 1]*

**EIOSHP** (EIOSHP2 for first other home)  
**[Loop: Responses to EIOSHP are recorded in variables EIOSHP2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a percentage.

Range: 1..100

ELSE

*IF share expressed as a fraction [EiOShare = 2]*

**EIOSHF @@**

**[Loop: Responses to EIOSHF are recorded in variables EIOSHF2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as a fraction.

STRING 15

ELSE

*IF share expressed as an amount [EiOShare = 3]*

**EIOSHA** (EIOSHA2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIOSHA are recorded in variables EIOSHA2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

(What share of the home did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own?)

INTERVIEWER: Give the answer as an amount.

Range: 1..9999997

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIOIN** (EIOIN2 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIOIN are recorded in variables EIOIN2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

Did only those with joint ownership inherit [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s share of the house?

- 1 Yes

- 2 No
- 3 Don't know

*IF it was not only those with joint ownership who inherited share of the house [Eioln = No]*

**EIOINW** (EIOINW24 to 46 for first other home)

**[Multiple responses to EIOINW are recorded in variables EIOINW24 to EIOINW46]**

Who else inherited [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s share of the home?

INTERVIEWER: DO NOT CODE JOINT OWNERS AGAIN

- 01 Respondent (you)
- 02 Husband/Wife
- 03 Partner/cohabitee
- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

*IF QFinance.idy IN EiolnW [idy IN EiolnW]*

**EIOINN** (EIOINN24 to 46 for first other home)

**[Loop: Responses to EIOINN are recorded in variables EIOINN24 to EIOINN46]**

How many [^type of relative from EIOINW] are you referring to?

Range: 1..20

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

ELSE (i.e. IF house was not jointly owned)

**EioHwH** (EIOHWH24 to 46 for first other home)

**[Multiple responses to EIOINW are recorded in variables EioHwH24 to EioHwH46]**

SHOW CARD EI14

Who inherited this home (that is, what is their relationship to  
[^deceased ELSA respondent's name]?)

CODE ALL THAT APPLY

INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if  
respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or  
daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than  
respondent.

01 Respondent (you)

02 Husband/Wife

03 Partner/cohabitee

04 Natural son/daughter

05 Adopted son/daughter

06 Foster son/daughter

07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner

08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law

09 Natural parent

10 Adoptive parent

11 Foster parent

12 Step-parent/parent's partner

13 Parent-in-law

14 Natural brother/sister

15 Half-brother/sister

16 Step-brother/sister

17 Adopted brother/sister

18 Foster brother/sister

19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law

20 Grandchild

21 Grandparent

22 Other relative (specify at next question)

23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF who inherited the home was answered [EioHwH = RESPONSE]*

|LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

|*IF QFinance.QHomNo.idy IN EioHwH [idy IN EioHwH]*

| | | **EIOHWN** (EIOHWN24 to 46 for first other home)

| | | **[Loop: Responses to EIOHWN are recorded in variables EIOHWN24 to EIOHWN46]**

| | | How many [^type of relative from EioHwH] are you referring to?

| | | Range: 1..20

| | | END FILTER

| | END FILTER

| END FILTER

| END FILTER

*IF only one answer at EioHwH*  
*[(EioHwH.CARDINAL = 1) AND (EiHowN[EioHwH [1].ORD] = 1)]*

**EIOHLIV** (EIOHLIV2 for first other home)  
**[Loop: Responses to EIOHLIV are recorded in variables EIOHLIV2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

INTERVIEWER: ASK OR CODE: Does this person live in the home at present?  
1 Yes  
2 No

*ELSE (i.e. more than one relative mentioned at EioHwH)*

**EioHLv** (EIOHLV2 for first other home)  
**[Loop: Responses to EIOHLV are recorded in variables EIOHLV2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]**

Do any of these people who now own the property currently live in that home?  
1 Yes  
2 No

*IF any other owner lives in the home [EioHLv = Yes]*

**EIOHLW** (EIOHLW24 to 46 for first other home)  
**[Multiple responses to EIOHLW are recorded in variables EIOHLW01 to EIOHLW23]**

Who lives in the house at present? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 01 Respondent (you)
- 02 Husband/Wife
- 03 Partner/cohabitee
- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

ELSE

*IF no one lives in the home [EioHLv = No]*

**EIOHSLD** (EIOHSLD2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EIOHSLD are recorded in variables EIOHSL2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

What has happened to that home?

- 1 It is currently empty
- 2 It is currently being let out (i.e. tenants living there)
- 3 It is currently on the market
- 4 It has already been sold
- 95 Other (specify at next question)

*IF other has happened to home [EioHSLd = 95 (Other)]*

**EIOHSLD @**

INTERVIEWER: Record what has happened to the home.

STRING 100

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIOHA** (EIOHA2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EIOHA are recorded in variables EIOHA2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

What [^is/was] the [^value/selling price] of that home?

Range: 1..9999997

*IF no response to value [EioHa = NONRESPONSE]*

**EioHab** (first other home)

Was it.....

BRACKETS (50000, 75000, 125000, 500000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EioHI2, EioHu2, EioHe2, EioHr2]

END FILTER

**EIOHMG** (EIOHMG2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EIOHMG are recorded in variables EIOHMG2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

Was there any outstanding mortgage on this home (before any insurance might have paid the outstanding balance)?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF EioHMG = Yes [EioHMG = Yes]*

**EIOHMG** (EIOHMG2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EIOHMG are recorded in variables EIOHMG2 as maximum***

***number of other properties was 1 so only one loop***

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have any insurance policies that will pay off or have paid off the mortgage either in full or partially?

- 1 Yes, In full
- 2 Yes, partially
- 3 No

*IF no insurance policy to pay of mortgage fully [EioHMgl =2 or 3]*

**EIOHMGA** (EIOHMGA2 for first other home)

***[Loop: Responses to EIOHMGA are recorded in variables EIOHMGA2 as maximum number of other properties was 1 so only one loop]***

How much was the outstanding balance on this mortgage [^after the insurance policy pay out]?

Range: 1..9999997

*IF no response to outstanding balance [EioHMga = NONRESPONSE]*

**EioHMgab** (for first other home)

Was it.....

BRACKETS (2500, 5000, 15000, 50000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EioHI2, EioHu2, EioHe2, EioHr2]

END FILTER

**EIPHY**

Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] own a business or share in a business, including land or premises?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF owned a business or share [Elphy = Yes]*

**EIPHYA**

In total, how much were these business assets worth (after any debts had been paid off on them)?

Range: 0..9999997

| *IF no response to value of business assets [ELPHYA = NONRESPONSE]*

| | **Elphyab**

| | Was it.....

| | BRACKETS (10000, 50000, 150000, 500000)

| | [Bracket results are recorded in Elphl, Elphu, Elphe, Elphr]

| | END FILTER

| END FILTER

| *IF owned a business or share of business [ELPHY = Yes]*

| | **EIPHYWH**

| | **[Multiple responses to EIPHYWH are recorded in variables EIPHYW01 to EIPHYW23]**

| | SHOW CARD EI14

| | Who inherited these business assets? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

| | INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

- | | 01 Respondent (you)
- | | 02 Husband/Wife
- | | 03 Partner/cohabitee
- | | 04 Natural son/daughter
- | | 05 Adopted son/daughter
- | | 06 Foster son/daughter
- | | 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- | | 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- | | 09 Natural parent
- | | 10 Adoptive parent
- | | 11 Foster parent
- | | 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- | | 13 Parent-in-law
- | | 14 Natural brother/sister
- | | 15 Half-brother/sister
- | | 16 Step-brother/sister
- | | 17 Adopted brother/sister
- | | 18 Foster brother/sister
- | | 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- | | 20 Grandchild
- | | 21 Grandparent
- | | 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- | | 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF Other relative inherited business assets or share of business [EIPhyWh= 22]*

**EIPHYWR @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other relative(s).  
STRING 80

END FILTER

*IF Other non-relative inherited business assets or share of business [EIPhyWh= 23]*

**EIPHYWN @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other non-relative(s).  
STRING 80

END FILTER

*IF respondent inherited business assets [EIPhyWh=1]*

**EIPHYRES**

In total, how much did you inherit from these business assets?  
Range: 0..9999997

END FILTER

*IF husband/wife inherited business assets [EIPhyWh=2]*

**EIINHSPS**

In total, how much did the husband/wife inherit from these business assets?  
Range: 0..9999997

END FILTER

*IF partner inherited business assets [EIPhyWh=3]*

**EIINHPRT**

In total, how much did the partner/cohabitee inherit from these business assets?  
Range: 0..9999997

END FILTER

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

*IF QFinance.idy [idy IN EIPhyWh]*

**EINUMREL**

**[Loop: Responses to EINUMREL are recorded in variables EINUMRE04 to EINUMR23]**

How many [^type of relative from EIOTHAS] are you referring to?

INTERVIEWER: If same relationship, do not include respondent here.

Range: 1..20



22 Other relative (specify at next question)  
23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)  
96 No other assets inherited

*IF other relative inherited rest of assets [EiOthAs=22]*

**EIOTHWR @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other relative(s).  
STRING 80

END FILTER

*IF other non-relative inherited rest of assets [EiOthAs=23]*

**EIOTHWN @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other non-relative(s).  
STRING 80

END FILTER

*IF respondent inherited rest of assets [EiOthAs=1]*

**EIOTHRES @** (see DVEIOTHRES grouped for non-disclosure)  
In total, how much did you inherit from the rest of [^his/her] assets?  
Range: 0..9999997

END FILTER

*IF husband/wife inherited rest of assets [EiOthAs=2]*

**EIOTHSPS @** (see DVEIOTHSPS grouped for non-disclosure)  
In total, how much did the husband/wife inherit from the rest of [^his/her] assets?  
Range: 0..9999997

END FILTER

*IF partner inherited rest of assets [EiOthAs=3]*

**EIOTHPRT**  
In total, how much did the partner/cohabitee inherit from the rest of [^his/her] assets?  
Range: 0..9999997

END FILTER

LOOP FOR idy:= 4 TO 23

```

| | IF QFinance.idy IN SHOW CARD EI14 Excluding any [idy IN EiOthAs]
| |
| | EINUMREL
| | [Loop: Responses to EINUMREL are recorded in variables EINUMR24 to EINUMR40]
| | How many [^type of relative from EIOTHAS] are you referring to?
| | INTERVIEWER: If same relationship, do not include respondent here.
| | Range: 1..20
| |
| | IF responded to EINUMREL [EiNumRel = RESPONSE]
| |
| | LOOP FOR idx:= 1 TO EiNumRel
| |
| | EIAMT
| | [Loop: Responses to EIAMT are recorded in variables EIAMT401 to EIAMT800]
| | In total, how much did the [^first\second etc] [^type of relative from EIOTHAS] inherit [^from
| | these]?
| | INTERVIEWER: Enter amount in pounds.
| | Range: 1..9999997
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | IF assets have not yet been shared out [QWill.EiBen = NotYet (4)]
| |
| | EIAMPROB @@
| | Excluding any housing, pensions, or businesses [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] had, what
| | was [the total value of these other assets?
| | Range: 0..9999997
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | EILI
| | Did [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] have any life insurance policies which paid out on [^his/her]
| | death?
| | 1 Yes
| | 2 No

```

*IF had any life insurance [EiLI = Yes]*

**EILIWH**

**[Multiple responses to EILIWH are recorded in variables EILIWH01 to EILIWH23]**

SHOW CARD EI14

Who were the beneficiaries of the life insurance policies? CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

INTERVIEWER: Only code once for respondent. For example if respondent is son or daughter code 'Respondent', and not son or daughter. Only code 'Son' or 'Daughter' for those other than respondent.

- 01 Respondent (you)
- 02 Husband/Wife
- 03 Partner/cohabitee
- 04 Natural son/daughter
- 05 Adopted son/daughter
- 06 Foster son/daughter
- 07 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 08 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 09 Natural parent
- 10 Adoptive parent
- 11 Foster parent
- 12 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 13 Parent-in-law
- 14 Natural brother/sister
- 15 Half-brother/sister
- 16 Step-brother/sister
- 17 Adopted brother/sister
- 18 Foster brother/sister
- 19 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 20 Grandchild
- 21 Grandparent
- 22 Other relative (specify at next question)
- 23 Other non-relative (specify at next question)

*IF other relative was a beneficiary of insurance policy [EiLIWh=22]*

**EILIWR @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other relative(s).

STRING 80

END FILTER

*IF other non-relative was a beneficiary of insurance policy [EiLIWh=23]*

**EILIWN @**

INTERVIEWER: Please specify the other non-relative(s).

STRING 80

END FILTER

**EILIA @** (see DVEILLA grouped for non-disclosure)

How much in total was the pay out from the life insurance?

Range: 1..9999997

LOOP FOR idx:= 1 TO 24

**EILIB**

*[Loop: Responses to EILIB are recorded in variables EILIB01 to EILIB24]*

How much did [^you\the type of relative] receive from these life insurance policies.

Range: 1..9999997

*IF no response to amount received [EiLlb[idx] = NONRESPONSE]*

**EiLlab**

Was it.....

BRACKETS (2000, 10000, 50000, 300000)

[Bracket results are recorded in EiLli1-24, EiLlu1-24, EiLle1-24, EiLlr1-24]

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

**EIENDA @**

We have asked you many questions about numerous aspects of [^deceased ELSA respondent's name]'s health and finances, and we want to thank you very much for your assistance with them. Is there anything else you would like to add about [^deceased ELSA respondent's name] in [^his/her] last year of life?

INTERVIEWER: If nothing to say, type None and press END.

STRING 500

**EIENDB @**

Thank you once again for all the information you have given us. It will prove extremely useful in helping us to understand how people fare at the end of their lives, and in forming policies which can help them.

Range: 1..1

**HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES  
OF PEOPLE AGED  
50 AND OVER**

**(P2158)**

**SHOWCARDS**

## CARD A

- 1 Husband/wife
- 2 Partner/cohabitee
- 3 Natural son/daughter
- 4 Adopted son/daughter
- 5 Foster son/daughter
- 6 Step-son/step-daughter/child of partner
- 7 Son-in-law/daughter-in-law
- 8 Natural parent
- 9 Adoptive parent
- 10 Foster parent
- 11 Step-parent/parent's partner
- 12 Parent-in-law
- 13 Natural brother/sister
- 14 Half-brother/sister
- 15 Step-brother/sister
- 16 Adopted brother/sister
- 17 Foster brother/sister
- 18 Brother-in-law/sister-in-law
- 19 Grandchild
- 20 Grandparent
- 21 Other relative
- 22 Other non-relative

## **CARD B**

- 1 Single, that is never married
- 2 Married, first and only marriage
- 3 Remarried, second or later marriage
- 4 Legally separated
- 5 Divorced
- 6 Widowed

## **CARD C**

- 1 Cancer
- 2 Heart Attack
- 3 Stroke
- 4 Other cardiovascular related illness
- 5 Respiratory disease
- 96 None of these

**CARD D**

- 1 Chest pain
- 2 Fatigue/too tired
- 3 Shortness of breath
- 4 Tremor(s)
- 5 Pain in leg or foot
- 6 Swelling in leg or foot
- 7 Incontinence or fear of incontinence
- 8 Seeing difficulty
- 9 Hearing difficulty
- 10 Confusion
- 11 Difficulty concentrating
- 12 Memory problems
- 13 Unsteady on feet or balance problems
- 14 Light-headed or dizziness
- 15 Fear of falling
- 16 Anxiety or fear
- 17 Amputation
- 95 Some other problem or symptom

## CARD E

- 1 High blood pressure or hypertension
- 2 Angina
- 3 A heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis)
- 4 Congestive heart failure
- 5 A heart murmur
- 6 An abnormal heart rhythm
- 7 Diabetes or high blood sugar
- 8 A stroke (cerebral vascular disease)
- 9 High cholesterol
- 95 Any other heart trouble (please say what)
- 96 None of these

**CARD F**

<b>Acebutolol</b>	<b>Metoprolol Tartrate with diuretic</b>
<b>Atenolol</b>	Moducren
<b>Atenolol with calcium-channel blocker</b>	Monocor
Beta-Adalat	Monozide
Beta-Cardone	<b>Nadolol</b>
Betaloc	<b>Nadolol with diuretic</b>
Betaloc-SA	Nebilet
<b>Betaxolol Hydrochloride</b>	<b>Nebivolol</b>
Betim	<b>Oxprenolol</b>
<b>Bisoprolol Fumarate</b>	<b>Oxprenolol Hydrochloride</b>
<b>Bisoprolol Fumarate with diuretic</b>	<b>Oxprenolol Hydrochloride with diuretic</b>
Cardicor	<b>Pindolol</b>
<b>Carvedilol</b>	<b>Pindolol with diuretic</b>
Celectol	<b>Propranolol</b>
<b>Celiprolol</b>	<b>Propranolol Hydrochloride</b>
<b>Celiprolol Hydrochloride</b>	<b>Propranolol Hydrochloride with diuretic</b>
Co-Betaloc	Secadrex
Co-Betaloc SA	Sectral
Cogard	Slow-Trasicor
Corgaretic	Sotacor
<b>Co-tenidone</b> (Atenolol with diuretic)	<b>Sotalol</b>
Emcor	<b>Sotalol Hydrochloride</b>
Eucardic	Tenben
Half-Inderal LA	Tenoret 50
Inderal	Tenoretic
Inderal-LA	Tenormin
Inderetic	<b>Timolol Maleate</b>
Inderex	<b>Timolol Maleate with diuretic</b>
Kalten	Trandate
<b>Labetalol hydrochloride</b>	Trasicor
Lopresor	Trasidrex
Lopresor SR	Viskaldix
<b>Metoprolol Tartrate</b>	Visken

## CARD G

Accupro	<b>Lisinopril</b>
Amias	<b>Lisinopril with Diuretic</b>
Aprovel	<b>Losartan Potassium</b>
<b>Candesartan Cilexetil</b>	<b>Losartan Potassium with</b>
Capoten	<b>Diuretic</b>
Capozide	Micardis
<b>Captopril</b>	Micardis Plus
Carace	Odrik
Carace Plus	<b>Perindopril Erbumine</b>
<b>Cilazapril</b>	<b>Quinapril Hydrochloride</b>
CoAprovel	<b>Ramipril</b>
Coversyl	<b>Ramipril with Calcium</b>
Cozaar	<b>Channel Blocker</b>
Cozaar-Comp	Staril
<b>Co-Zidocapt</b>	Tanatril
<b>(Hydchloroth/Captopril)</b>	Tarka
Diovan	<b>Telmisartan</b>
<b>Enalapril Maleate</b>	<b>Telmisartan with Diuretic</b>
<b>Enalapril maleate with</b>	Teveten
<b>Diuretic</b>	<b>Trandolapril</b>
<b>Eprosartan</b>	<b>Trandolapril + Calcium</b>
<b>Fosinopril Sodium</b>	<b>Channel Blocker</b>
Gopten	Triapin
<b>Imidapril Hydrochloride</b>	Tritace
Innovace	<b>Valsartan</b>
Innozide	Vascace
<b>Irbesartan</b>	Zestoretic
<b>Irbesartan with Diuretic</b>	Zestril

## CARD H

- 1 Just about everything you need to know
- 2 Most of what you need to know
- 3 Some of what you need to know
- 4 A little of what you need to know
- 5 Almost none of what you need to know

# CARD I

- 1 Chronic lung disease such as chronic bronchitis or emphysema
- 2 Asthma
- 3 Arthritis (including osteoarthritis, or rheumatism)
- 4 Osteoporosis, sometimes called thin or brittle bones
- 5 Cancer or a malignant tumour (excluding minor skin cancers)
- 6 Parkinson's disease
- 7 Any emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems
- 8 Alzheimer's disease
- 9 Dementia, organic brain syndrome, senility or any other serious memory impairment
- 96 None of these

## **CARD J**

- 1 Lung
- 2 Breast
- 3 Colon, bowel or rectum
- 4 Lymphoma
- 5 Leukaemia
- 6 Melanoma or other skin cancer
- 95 Somewhere else

## **CARD K**

- 1 Hallucinations
- 2 Anxiety
- 3 Depression
- 4 Emotional problems
- 5 Schizophrenia
- 6 Psychosis
- 7 Mood swings
- 8 Manic depression
- 95 Something else

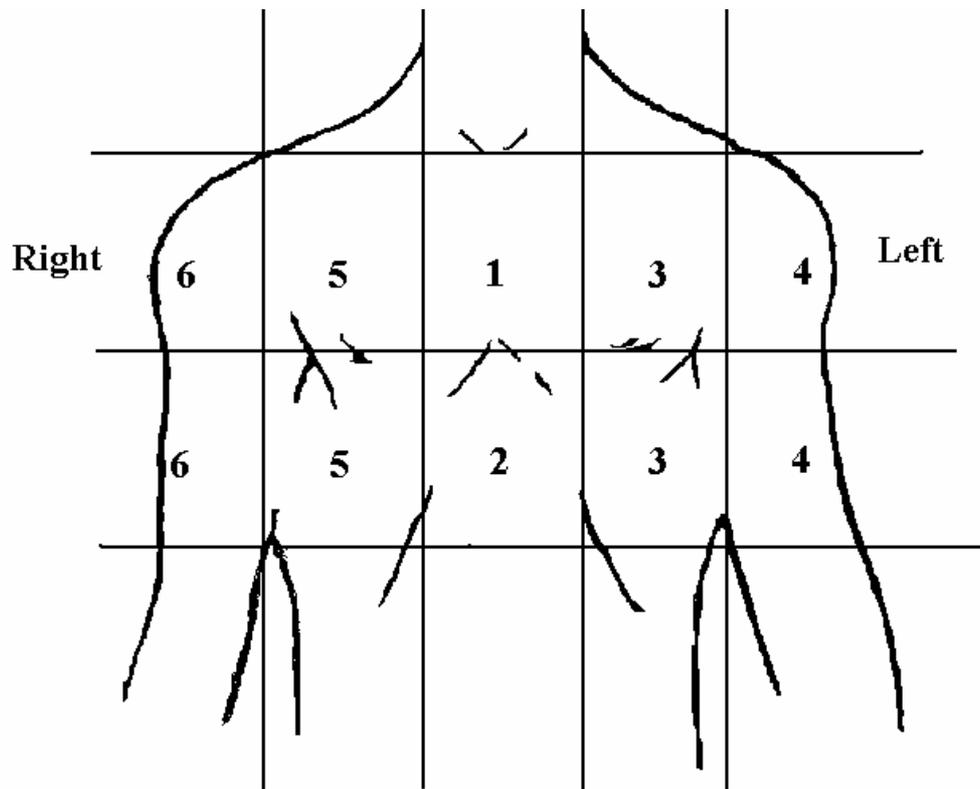
## CARD L

- 1 Much improved
- 2 A bit improved
- 3 Not much change
- 4 A bit worse
- 5 Much worse

## **CARD M**

- 1 Always
- 2 Very Often
- 3 Often
- 4 Sometimes
- 5 Never

# CARD N



## CARD O

- 1 Walking 100 yards
- 2 Sitting for about two hours
- 3 Getting up from a chair after sitting for long periods
- 4 Climbing several flights of stairs without resting
- 5 Climbing one flight of stairs without resting
- 6 Stooping, kneeling, or crouching
- 7 Reaching or extending your arms above shoulder level (either arm)
- 8 Pulling or pushing large objects like a living room chair
- 9 Lifting or carrying weights over 10 pounds like a heavy bag of groceries
- 10 Picking up a 5p coin from a table
- 96 None of these

## CARD P

- 1 Dressing, including putting on shoes and socks
- 2 Walking across a room
- 3 Bathing or showering
- 4 Eating, such as cutting up your food
- 5 Getting in or out of bed
- 6 Using the toilet, including getting up or down
- 7 Using a map to figure out how to get around in a strange place
- 8 Preparing a hot meal
- 9 Shopping for groceries
- 10 Making telephone calls
- 11 Taking medications
- 12 Doing work around the house or garden
- 13 Managing money, such as paying bills and keeping track of expenses
- 96 None of these

**CARD Q**

- 1 Husband or wife or partner
- 2 Mother or father
- 3 Son
- 4 Son-in-law
- 5 Daughter
- 6 Daughter-in-law
- 7 Sister
- 8 Brother
- 9 Grandson
- 10 Granddaughter
- 11 Other relative
- 12 Unpaid volunteer
- 13 Privately paid employee
- 14 Social or health service worker
- 15 Friend or neighbour
- 95 Other person

## CARD R

- 1 Doctor or nurse said I should stop
- 2 It is unhealthy
- 3 It is expensive / to save money
- 4 Pressure from family or friends
- 5 Worried about effect of passive smoke  
on people around me
- 6 Stopped enjoying it
- 7 Cosmetic reasons (e.g. smell, stained  
teeth, fingers, hair)
- 8 It's becoming harder to smoke in  
public or at work
- 9 Advertising
- 95 Other (please say what)

## CARD S

### **Vigorous**

*For example:*

Running or jogging

Swimming

Cycling

Aerobics or gym workout

Tennis

Digging with a spade or shovel

### **Moderate**

*For example:*

Gardening

Cleaning the car

Walking at a moderate pace

Dancing

Floor or stretching exercises

### **Mild**

*For example:*

Vacuuming

Laundry

Home repairs

## CARD T

- 1 Paid work
- 2 Self employment
- 3 Voluntary Work
- 4 Cared for someone
- 5 Looked after home or family
- 6 Attended a formal educational or training course
  
- 96 None of these

## **CARD U**

- 1 Retired
- 2 Employed
- 3 Self employed
- 4 Unemployed
- 5 Permanently sick or disabled
- 6 Looking after home or family
- 95 Other (please say what)

## CARD X

### **1 Sedentary occupation:**

You spend most of your time sitting

### **2 Standing occupation:**

You spend most of your time standing or walking. However the way you spend your time does not require intense physical effort

### **3 Physical work:**

This involves some physical effort including handling of heavy objects and use of tools

### **4 Heavy manual work:**

This involves very vigorous physical activity including handling of very heavy objects

## CARD Y

- 1 Own ill health or disability
- 2 Job was too tiring/stressful
- 3 Ill health or disability of a relative/friend
- 4 Company went out of business/site closed down
- 5 Made redundant/dismissed/had no choice
- 6 Took voluntary redundancy
- 7 To spend more time with partner/family
- 8 Career progression
- 9 Fed up with job and wanted a change
- 10 Moved to a different area
- 95 Other reason

## **CARD Z**

- 1 Less physically demanding
- 2 Less mentally demanding/stressful
- 3 Fewer hours/job sharing
- 4 More flexible hours
- 5 Working from home sometimes
- 6 Special equipment/workplace  
adaptation
- 96 None of these

## CARD AA

- 1 Own ill health or disability
- 2 Job too tiring/stressful
- 3 Ill health or disability of a relative/friend
- 4 Company going out of business/site closing down
- 5 Being made redundant/dismissed/ have no choice
- 6 Taking voluntary redundancy
- 7 To spend more time with partner/family
- 8 Fed up with job and want a change
- 9 Fed up with employer/colleagues and want a change
- 10 To progress my career
- 11 To earn more money
- 12 Moving to a different area
- 95 Other reason

## **CARD BB**

- 1 Less physically demanding
- 2 Less mentally demanding/stressful
- 3 Fewer hours/job sharing
- 4 More flexible hours
- 5 Working from home sometimes
- 6 Special equipment/workplace  
adaptation
- 95 Other change
- 96 None of these

# CARD CC

## **1 Sedentary occupation:**

You spend most of your time sitting

## **2 Standing occupation:**

You spend most of your time standing or walking. However the way you spend your time does not require intense physical effort

## **3 Physical work:**

This involves some physical effort including handling of heavy objects and use of tools

## **4 Heavy manual work:**

This involves very vigorous physical activity including handling of very heavy objects

## CARD DD

- 1 Own ill health or disability
- 2 Working was too tiring/stressful
- 3 Ill health or disability of a relative/friend
- 4 Company went out of business/site closed down
- 5 Made redundant/dismissed/had no choice
- 6 Took voluntary redundancy
- 7 Could not find another job
- 8 Could afford to stop working
- 9 To spend more time with partner/family
- 10 To enjoy life while still fit and young enough
- 11 Fed up with working and wanted a change
- 12 To stop working at same time as husband/wife/partner
- 13 To give young generation a chance
- 14 Moved to a different area
- 95 Other reason

## **CARD EE**

- 1 Employer provided (occupational) pension scheme
- 2 Private Personal Pension
- 3 Group Personal Pension
- 4 Stakeholder pension
- 5 S226 plan (self-employed personal pension)
- 6 Retirement Annuity pension (personal pension taken out before 1986)
- 95 Other retirement saving scheme

## **CARD FF**

### **Type A:**

My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire

### **Type B:**

My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary

Don't know

## **CARD GG**

### **Type A:**

My pension contributions were put into a fund which grew over time and my pension depended on the size of this fund when I retired

### **Type B:**

My pension is based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary

Don't know

## CARD HH

- 1 Some fraction of my final year's salary
- 2 Some fraction of my salary from all  
years when I have been in the scheme
- 3 Some fraction of my last five years'  
salary
- 4 In some other way
- 5 Don't know

## **CARD II**

### **Type A:**

My pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and my pension will depend on the size of this fund when I retire

### **Type B:**

My pension will be based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary

Don't know

## CARD JJ

### **Type A:**

My pension contributions were put into a fund which grew over time and my pension depended on the size of this fund when I retired

### **Type B:**

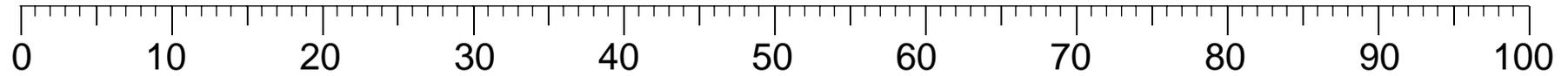
My pension is based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary

Don't know

## CARD KK

- 1 Employer provided (occupational) pension scheme
- 2 Private Personal Pension
- 3 Group Personal Pension
- 4 Stakeholder pension
- 5 S226 plan (self-employed personal pension)
- 6 Retirement Annuity pension (personal pension taken out before 1986)
- 95 Other retirement saving scheme

# CARD LL



Absolutely  
No Chance

Absolutely  
Certain

## CARD MM

- 1 Own ill health
- 2 Ill health of a relative/friend
- 3 Made redundant/dismissed/had no choice
- 4 Offered reasonable financial terms to retire early or take voluntary redundancy
- 5 Could not find another job
- 6 To spend more time with partner/ family
- 7 To enjoy life while still young and fit enough
- 8 Fed up with job and wanted a change
- 9 To retire at the same time as husband/wife/partner
- 10 To retire at a different time to husband/wife/partner
- 11 To give the young generation a chance
- 95 Other (please say what)
- 96 None of these

## CARD NN

- 1 Reached retirement age
- 2 Own ill health
- 3 Ill health of a relative/friend
- 4 Made redundant/dismissed/had no choice
- 5 Could not find another job
- 6 To spend more time with partner/ family
- 7 To enjoy life while still young and fit enough
- 8 Fed up with my job and wanted a change
- 9 To retire at the same time as husband/wife/partner
- 10 To retire at a different time to husband/wife/partner
- 11 To give the young generation a chance
- 95 Other (please say what)
- 96 None of these

## CARD OO

- 1 Incapacity Benefit (previously Invalidity Benefit)
- 2 Severe Disablement Allowance (SDA)
- 3 Statutory sick pay (SSP)
- 4 Attendance Allowance
- 5 Disability Living Allowance
- 6 Industrial Injuries Disablement Benefit
- 7 War Disablement Pension or War Widow's Pension
- 8 Invalid Care Allowance
- 95 Some other benefit for people with disabilities (please say what)
- 96 None of these

## CARD PP

- 1 Income Support or Minimum Income Guarantee (MIG)
- 2 Pension Credit (replaced Minimum Income Guarantee (MIG) in October 2003)
- 3 Working Tax Credit (formerly Working Families Tax Credit)
- 4 Job-seeker's Allowance (formerly Unemployment Benefit)
- 5 Guardian's Allowance
- 6 Widow's pension/Widowed mother's allowance/Widowed Parent's allowance/Bereavement allowance
- 7 Child Benefit
- 8 Child Tax Credit
- 95 Some other state benefit (please say what)
- 96 None of these

## CARD QQ

- 1 Current Account at a bank, building society or elsewhere
- 2 Savings Account at a bank, building society or elsewhere
- 3 TESSA
- 4 ISA
- 5 Premium Bonds
- 6 National Savings Accounts or Certificates
- 7 PEP
- 8 Stocks and/or Shares
- 9 Share Options/Employee share ownership
- 10 Share clubs
- 11 Unit or Investment Trusts
- 12 Bonds and Gilts (government or corporate)
- 95 Other savings or investments
- 96 None of these

## CARD RR

- 1 Houses, flats or holiday homes, including time shares (not including this home)
- 2 Farm or Business Property (such as a shop, warehouse or garage)
- 3 Other land
- 4 Money owed to you by others
- 5 A trust
- 6 A covenant or inheritance
- 95 Other assets (including works of art or collectibles such as antiques or jewellery)
- 96 None of these

## CARD SS

- 1 Life insurance policy
- 2 Lump sum pension payout
- 3 Personal Accident plan
- 4 Other Insurance Payment
- 5 Redundancy payment
- 6 Inheritance or bequest (inc. inherited property)
- 7 Win(s) on the football pools, national lottery or other form of gambling
- 95 Other payment (please say what)
- 96 None of these

## CARD TT

- 1 Hire purchase agreements
  - 2 Personal loans (from bank, building society or other financial institution)
  - 3 Overdraft
  - 4 Catalogue or mail order purchase agreements
  - 5 DWP Social fund loan
  - 6 Loan from a money lender or `tally man`
- 96 None of these

## **CARD UU**

- 1 Manage very well
- 2 Manage quite well
- 3 Get by alright
- 4 Don't manage very well
- 5 Have some financial difficulties
- 6 Have severe financial difficulties

## CARD VV

- 1 I look after all the household money except my partner's personal spending money
- 2 My partner looks after all the household money except my personal spending money
- 3 I am given a housekeeping allowance. My partner looks after the rest of the money
- 4 My partner is given a housekeeping allowance. I look after the rest of the money
- 5 We share and manage our household finances jointly
- 6 We keep our finances completely separate
- 95 Some other arrangement

## CARD WW

- 1 Own it outright
- 2 Buying it with the help of a mortgage  
or loan
- 3 Pay part rent and part mortgage  
(shared ownership)
- 4 Rent it
- 5 Live here rent free (including rent free  
in relative's/friend's property; excluding  
squatting)
- 6 Squatting

## **CARD XX**

- 1 Local authority or council
- 2 Housing association or co-operative or charitable trust
- 3 Individual private landlord
- 4 Employer of a household member
- 5 Relative/friend of a household member
- 95 Another organisation / individual

## CARD YY

- 1 Water charges
- 2 Sewerage charges
- 3 Land or business premises
- 4 Separate Garage
- 5 Heating or lighting or hot water
- 6 Council Tax
- 96 None of these

## **CARD ZZ**

- 1 Meals
- 2 Gardening
- 3 Cleaning
- 4 Warden or porter
- 5 Security service/guard
- 95 Other services (please say what)
- 96 None of these

## **CARD AB**

- 1 Private Owner
- 2 Council or Local Authority
- 3 Housing Association
- 4 Landlord
- 5 Family or relative
- 96 None of these

## CARD AC

- 1 A repayment mortgage or loan (where your mortgage payments cover interest and part of the original loan)
- 2 An endowment mortgage (where your mortgage payments cover interest only and you save separately to pay off the capital)
- 3 Part repayment and part endowment
- 4 A pension mortgage (where your mortgage payments cover interest only)
- 5 A PEP, ISA or Unit Trust mortgage
- 95 Another type of mortgage or loan

# CARD AK

- 1 Widened doorways or hallways
- 2 Ramps or street level entrances
- 3 Hand rails
- 4 Automatic or easy open doors
- 5 Accessible parking or drop off site
- 6 Bathroom modifications
- 7 Kitchen modifications
- 8 Lift
- 9 Chair lift or stair glide
- 10 Alerting devices, such as button alarms
- 95 Any other special features
- 96 None of these

## CARD AL

- 1 Shortage of space
- 2 Noise from neighbours
- 3 Other street noise, such as traffic, businesses, factories
- 4 Too dark, not enough light
- 5 Pollution, grime or other environmental problems caused by traffic or industry
- 6 Rising damp in floors and walls
- 7 Water getting in from roof, gutters or windows
- 8 Bad condensation problem
- 9 Problems with electrical wiring or plumbing
- 10 General rot and decay
- 11 Problems with insects, mice or rats
- 12 Too cold in winter
- 95 Other problems (please say what)
- 96 None of these

## CARD AM

- 1 Television
- 2 Video recorder
- 3 CD player
- 4 Deep freeze or fridge freezer (exclude fridge only)
- 5 Washing machine
- 6 Tumble Drier/Washer - Dryer
- 7 Dishwasher
- 8 Microwave oven
- 9 Computer
- 10 On-line-digital/Satellite/Cable Television
- 11 Phone (landline)
- 12 DVD player
- 95 All of these
- 96 None of these

## CARD AN

The cost of any visits to the cinema, theatre, sports, bingo etc, in the last four weeks (including any expenses whilst out)

Any payments that have been made in the last four weeks on:

- subscriptions to sports and social clubs and societies
- fees for day or evening classes
- subscriptions to the internet, cable or satellite
- TV licences and rentals

## CARD AO

- 1 Mains gas
- 2 Electricity
- 3 Coal/Smokeless fuel
- 4 Paraffin/Bottled gas
- 5 Oil
- 6 Wood
- 95 Other source of fuel or power

## CARD AP

- 1 Direct debit
- 2 Monthly/quarterly bill (including standing orders)
- 3 Pre-payment (key/card or token) meters
- 4 Included in rent
- 5 Frequent cash payment (i.e. more frequent than once a month)
- 6 Fuel direct/direct from benefits
- 7 Staywarm scheme
- 95 Other

## CARD AQ

### MEDCO TABLET

INDICATIONS: Headaches, muscle pains, rheumatic pains, toothaches, earaches.

RELIEVES COMMON COLD SYMPTOMS

DOSAGE: ORAL. 1 or 2 tablets every 6 hours, preferably accompanied by food, for not longer than 7 days. Store in a cool, dry place.

CAUTION: Do not use for gastritis or peptic ulcer. Do not use if taking anticoagulant drugs. Do not use for serious liver illness or bronchial asthma. If taken in large doses and for an extended period, may cause harm to kidneys. Before using this medication for chicken pox or influenza in children, consult with a doctor about Reyes Syndrome, a rare but serious illness. During lactation and pregnancy, consult with a doctor before using this product, especially in the last trimester of pregnancy. If symptoms persist, or in the case of an accidental overdose, consult a doctor. Keep out of reach of children.

INGREDIENTS: Each tablet contains  
500 mg acetylsalicylic acid.

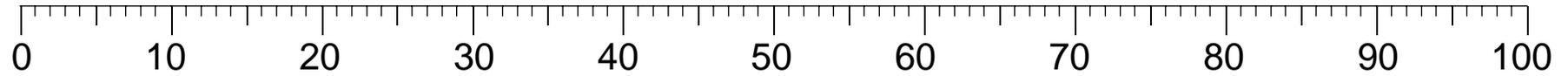
Excipient c.b.p 1 tablet

Reg. No. 88246

Made in Canada by STERLING PRODUCTS. INC  
1600 Industrial Blvd. Montreal, Quebec H9J 3P1



# CARD AR



Absolutely  
No Chance

Absolutely  
Certain

## CARD AS

- 1 The next few weeks
- 2 The next few months
- 3 The next year
- 4 The next few years
- 5 The next 5-10 years
- 6 Longer than 10 years

## **CARD AT**

- 1 Never
- 2 Rarely
- 3 Sometimes
- 4 Often
- 5 Most of the time

## **CARD AU**

- 1 Much worse off
- 2 A bit worse off
- 3 About the same
- 4 A bit better off
- 5 Much better off

## CARD AV

- 1 Buy your first choices of food items
- 2 Have family and friends round for a drink or meal
- 3 Have an outfit to wear for social or family occasions
- 4 Keep your home in a reasonable state of decoration
- 5 Replace or repair broken electrical goods
- 6 Pay for fares or other transport costs to get to and from places you want to go
- 7 Buy presents for friends or family once a year
- 8 Take the sorts of holidays you want
- 9 Treat yourself from time to time
- 96 None of these

## CARD AW

- 1 To meet other people
- 2 To contribute something useful
- 3 For personal achievement
- 4 Because I am needed
- 5 To earn money
- 6 Because I enjoy it
- 7 To use my skills
- 8 To keep fit
- 9 Because I feel obliged to do it
- 96 None of these

## **CARD AX**

- 1 Strongly agree
- 2 Agree
- 3 Disagree
- 4 Strongly disagree

## CARD AY

- 1 White
- 2 Mixed ethnic group
- 3 Black
- 4 Black British
- 5 Asian
- 6 Asian British
- 95 Any other group

## CARD AZ

- 1 Degree/degree level qualification (including higher degree)
- 2 Teaching qualification
- 3 Nursing qualifications SRN, SCM, SEN, RGN, RM, RHV, Midwife
- 4 HNC/HND, BEC/TEC Higher, BTEC Higher/SCOTTECH Higher
- 5 ONC/OND/BEC/TEC/BTEC not higher
- 6 City and Guilds Full Technological Certificate
- 7 City and Guilds Advanced/Final Level
- 8 City and Guilds Craft/Ordinary Level
- 9 A-levels/Higher School Certificate
- 10 AS level
- 11 SLC/SCE/SUPE at Higher Grade or Certificate of Sixth Year Studies
- 12 O-level passes taken in 1975 or earlier
- 13 O-level passes taken after 1975 GRADES A-C
- 14 O-level passes taken after 1975 GRADES D-E
- 15 GCSE GRADES A-C
- 16 GCSE GRADES D-G
- 17 CSE GRADE 1/SCE BANDS A-C/Standard Grade LEVEL 1-3
- 18 CSE GRADES 2-5/SCE Ordinary BANDS D-E
- 19 CSE Ungraded
- 20 SLC Lower
- 21 SUPE Lower or Ordinary
- 22 School Certificate or Matriculation
- 23 NVQ Level 5
- 24 NVQ Level 4
- 25 NVQ Level 3/Advanced level GNVQ
- 26 NVQ Level 2/Intermediate level GNVQ
- 27 NVQ Level 1/Foundation level GNVQ
- 28 Recognised Trade Apprenticeship completed
- 29 Clerical or Commercial Qualification (eg typing/book-keeping/commerce)
- 95 Other qualifications (please say what)
- 96 None of these

HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES OF PEOPLE  
AGED 50 AND OVER

P2158  
ELSA WAVE TWO  
PROJECT INSTRUCTIONS

ELSA W2/Version 2/November 2004

# CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>ABOUT THE STUDY .....</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	BACKGROUND AND INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY .....	4
1.2	OVERVIEW OF CONTENT OF THE STUDY .....	5
1.3	OUTLINE OF THE NURSE VISIT.....	7
1.4	OVERVIEW OF STUDY PROCEDURES .....	8
1.5	MATERIALS FOR THE STUDY .....	9
<b>2</b>	<b>SAMPLE INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>10</b>
2.1	SAMPLE SOURCE.....	10
2.2	SAMPLE DEFINITION .....	10
2.3	SAMPLE INFORMATION.....	13
2.3.1	<i>Serial numbers</i> .....	13
2.3.2	<i>Address and information labels</i> .....	13
<b>3</b>	<b>FIELDWORK ISSUES AND DOCUMENTS .....</b>	<b>16</b>
3.1	FIELDWORK TIMETABLE AND ASSIGNMENTS .....	16
3.2	CONTACTING RESPONDENTS AND INTRODUCING THE STUDY .....	16
3.2.1	<i>Study title</i> .....	16
3.2.2	<i>Advance letters</i> .....	16
3.2.3	<i>Incentive payment</i> .....	17
3.2.4	<i>Study leaflet</i> .....	17
3.2.5	<i>Initial contact and response</i> .....	17
3.2.6	<i>Appointments and scheduling</i> .....	18
3.2.7	<i>Movers and tracing</i> .....	18
3.2.8	<i>Defining institutional addresses</i> .....	20
3.3	NURSE VISIT .....	20
3.3.1	<i>Liaising with your nurse partner</i> .....	22
3.3.2	<i>Making Appointments for the Nurse Visit</i> .....	22
3.3.3	<i>Transferring information to the nurse : NRF</i> .....	24
3.4	THE ADDRESS RECORD FORM (ARF).....	26
3.4.1	<i>ARF A</i> .....	26
3.4.2	<i>ARF B</i> .....	29
3.4.3	<i>Exit Interview ARF (ERF)</i> .....	29
3.4.4	<i>Consent forms</i> .....	30
3.5	GENERAL FIELDWORK PROCEDURES.....	30
<b>4</b>	<b>CONDUCTING THE INTERVIEW .....</b>	<b>31</b>
4.1	OVERVIEW OF INTERVIEW CONTENT AND STRUCTURE.....	31
4.1.1	<i>Content of the interview</i> .....	31
4.1.2	<i>Structure of the interview</i> .....	33
4.2	PROXY INTERVIEWS .....	34
4.3	EXIT INTERVIEWS .....	36
4.4	INTERVIEWS IN INSTITUTIONS.....	37
4.5	NON-STANDARD ELEMENTS OF THE INTERVIEW .....	38
4.6	CONCURRENT INTERVIEWING.....	39
4.7	INTERVIEW LENGTH .....	41
4.8	FLEXIBLE INTERVIEWING .....	42
4.9	PRACTICE SERIAL NUMBERS, CHECK LETTERS AND SCENARIO .....	42
4.10	SELF-COMPLETION QUESTIONNAIRE .....	43
<b>5</b>	<b>THE QUESTIONNAIRE.....</b>	<b>44</b>
5.1	DESCRIPTION AND EXPLANATION OF THE CONTENT OF QUESTIONNAIRE .....	44
5.2	DETAILED NOTES ON THE QUESTIONS .....	48
<b>6</b>	<b>ADMIN AND RETURN OF WORK .....</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>CONTACTS .....</b>	<b>98</b>

<b>APPENDIX A PROTOCOL FOR THE TIMED WALK .....</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>APPENDIX B PROTOCOL FOR COGNITIVE MODULE.....</b>	<b>105</b>
<b>APPENDIX C REFERRING TO DOCUMENTS DURING THE INTERVIEW.....</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>APPENDIX D HOW TO ADJUST THE VOLUME CONTROL ON YOUR LAPTOP .....</b>	<b>112</b>

# 1 ABOUT THE STUDY

## 1.1 Background and introduction to the study

Fieldwork for the first wave of the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing (ELSA) was conducted by Natcen between March 2002 – March 2003. The main ELSA sample was selected from households that took part in the HSE in 1998, 1999 or 2001.

In June 2004, fieldwork for the second wave of ELSA begins. Interviewers will be asking Wave 1 respondents to take part in ELSA for a second time (and encouraging any new partners to participate) so this is a very important moment in establishing a long-term commitment to the study. We hope to revisit these respondents every two years in order to track changes in their health, economic and social circumstances.

This wave of fieldwork will include a substantial personal interview, a paper self-completion, and a nurse visit.

Over time, the study will allow us to explore many questions, for example:

- How does people's health and level of disability change over time?
- What explains who has good health in later life and who does not?
- When do people retire and how do they plan for their retirement?
- Do people have enough savings to provide for their older age?
- How do people's activities, relationships and quality of life change over time?
- How do changes in memory and concentration affect well being?
- What is the relationship between these different factors?

ELSA is modelled on a similar study in the US (the Health and Retirement Study). A parallel study is being developed in Europe, the Survey of Health Ageing and Retirement in Europe (indeed some NatCen interviewers helped with its development). There are also plans to develop similar studies in many other countries of the world - Canada, Ireland and elsewhere - so ELSA can be seen as part of an international effort to understand ageing and what it means for people. As a result, we will be able to compare experiences across countries and understand how national policies and contexts effect people's lives.

The study is being carried out by a collaboration between the National Centre, the Department of Epidemiology and Public Health at University College London (UCL), the Institute for Fiscal Studies (IFS) and academics from Cambridge and Nottingham Universities. The principal investigator in the research team is Professor Sir Michael Marmot, Head of the Department of Epidemiology and Public Health and Director of the International Centre for Health and Society, UCL.

So far, our funding covers two waves of data collection; the survey held in 2002 and the 2004 survey starting now. Half of the research budget has been provided by the US National Institute on Aging who also fund the Health and Retirement Study mentioned earlier. The remaining funding for the study has been provided by a consortium of UK government departments (Department of Health, Department of Work and Pensions, Office for National Statistics, Department of Environment,

Transport and the Regions, Department for Education and Skills, Department of Culture, Media and Sport and HM Treasury).

**You (and respondents) can find out more about the study at [www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa](http://www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa). Results from the first wave of ELSA fieldwork were released in December of this year. Summary findings will be sent to all Wave One respondents and to respondents to this year's pilots. We would also be very happy to send them to interviewers!**

## **1.2 Overview of content of the study**

In this section we try to give a brief outline of the content of the study. **Sections 4.1 and 5.1 give a full overview of the content and structure of the interview. These sections provide important additional information so please take time to read them.** In Section 5.2 there are detailed notes on specific questions or sets of questions.

<b>Household demographics</b> This module collects basic demographic information about everyone who now lives in the household (for example their sex, age and relationships to each other). It updates the household grid information that was collected at Wave One and checks their eligibility and the destination of any people who are no longer in the household. It identifies any new household members and establishes whether they are eligible for an ELSA interview. The module also updates collects information about any eligible respondents' children living outside the household.
<b>Individual demographics</b> This module updates or collects details about respondents' marital status, relatives and parent's age and cause of death.
<b>Health</b> This module covers many different aspects of people's health; self-reported general health, longstanding illness or disability; eyesight and hearing; specific diagnoses and symptoms; pain; difficulties with a range of activities of daily living (ADLs) and health behaviours (e.g. smoking and physical activity). Respondents aged 65 and over are asked about falls and fractures. Many of the questions covered in Wave One are covered here again, but there are some new questions, for example about the quality of care respondents have received for some specific conditions. The health module also collects information about mental health and urinary incontinence.
<b>Social participation</b> This module of questions covers the use of public transport. Other questions which previously appeared in this module have been transferred to the self-completion questionnaire.
<b>Work and pensions</b> This module collects or updates information about respondents' current work activities and any current or past pensions that they may have. For respondent's who have retired and are receiving a pension, we ask about the number and kinds of pensions and how much they receive. This module updates information given at Wave One to avoid having to recollect information that has stayed the same and gathers information about any new jobs or pension schemes. New questions have been included to: (a) understand reasons why respondent changed jobs, (b) understand health related job limitations, (c) get a better measure of respondent's expected income after retirement. These have been used successfully in the United States but are new to surveys in Britain.

**Income and assets**

This module estimates the income the respondent(s) have received from a variety of sources – wages, state pensions, private pensions, other annuity income, and state benefits – over the last 12 months. It then explores the amount of financial and non-financial assets held in various forms and any income from these assets. It asks about any regular transfers the respondent(s) may have received from non-household members and any one-off payments in the last year. This module remains very similar to the one used at Wave One though a few changes have been made to update or check information given earlier and to take account of some changes in the benefit and tax credit system.

**Housing and Consumption**

This module collects information about the respondents' current housing situation, including the size and quality of the accommodation. Owners and mortgagees are asked about the value of their property and, depending on the individuals' tenure, questions are asked about mortgages, rent, and so on. Respondents who have moved since Wave One will be asked almost all of the housing questions afresh and respondents who have changed tenure (for example ceasing to be mortgage holders) will be asked some new questions. However most respondents will still be at the same accommodation with the same tenure and we will be updating information given at Wave One wherever possible. At Wave One, this module also asked about housing related expenses, ownership of durable goods and cars, and expenditure on food. This section has been expanded at Wave Two so that it now includes questions on other kinds of consumption – for example, fuel, leisure and clothing.

**Cognitive function**

This module of questions measures a variety of different aspects of the respondent's cognitive function, including literacy, memory, mental speed and flexibility. Interviewers from Wave One may notice that the questions on numeracy have been dropped, as has the second prospective memory test (when the respondent was asked to remind the interviewer to record the time).

**Expectations**

This module of questions measures people's expectations; the level of certainty they feel about the future, how they make financial decisions within their household and their optimal planning horizon. Since Wave One some new questions have been added; about expectations, 'relative deprivation' (that is how well off or badly off people feel relative to others) and subjective views of ageing.

**Psychosocial health**

This module of questions asks how the respondent views his or her life across a variety of dimensions.

**Effort/Reward**

This new module of questions assesses motivations behind voluntary work and caring for others, and the relationship between effort and reward.

**Final questions and consents**

As at Wave One, this module of questions asks for demographic information, a stable or contact address, details of any proxy informants and requests permission to obtain health and economic data from various administrative sources. In Wave Two it also asks the respondent who we should approach to answer questions on their behalf if they are too sick to respond in the future. Finally this block provides an opportunity to set up the Nurse Visit and to ask for contact details for anyone who is nominated to respond if an exit or institutional interview is needed.

**Measurement - Timed walking test**

The timed walk involves recording the time taken by the respondent to walk a distance of 8 feet (244cm) at their usual walking pace. It should be completed for all individuals aged 60 and over, where it is safe to do so. The timed walk must be carried out systematically, according to the briefing instructions and protocol (Appendix B). It is exactly the same test as was applied in Wave One and will provide a useful measure of how respondents' health has changed since last time we interviewed them.

**Self-completion**

At Wave Two, the questions in the self-completion ask about the respondents' quality of life, social participation, mobility, control at work, life satisfaction, views about ageing, social networks and alcohol consumption. Although some questions are the same, many have been introduced at this wave.

### 1.3 Outline of the Nurse Visit

As with the HSE, some respondents will be asked for their consent to a nurse visit. Since you will be informing respondents of this additional element of the study it is important that you have a broad understanding of its content. Please note that many (though not all) respondents will have undertaken a nurse visit as part of the HSE so they will have had a prior experience. If a cause for medical concern is identified during the nurse visit then the respondent's GP will be notified (if the respondent gives prior permission).

**Biomedical and performance measures**

The nurse visit covers a range of measures, but respondents will not have to have any measurements taken that they do not wish to. The visit comprises the following:

- blood pressure
- grip strength - this is a measure of upper body strength, during which the respondent is asked to squeeze a grip gauge up to three times with each hand
- lung function - this is a measure of how much air respondents can blow out from lungs, and is measured using a spirometer
- weight
- sitting height -this is measured using a stadiometer
- standing height -this is measured using a stadiometer, in the same way as HSE
- waist and hip measurement - this measures the distribution of body fat across the body
- blood sample - ideally respondents will have fasted (if aged under 80) prior to the visit
- balance - respondents are asked to place their feet heel to toe, side-by-side, and if under 70 years of age, to lift one foot off the ground for up to 30 seconds.
- chair rises - this is measure of lower body strength, during which respondents are asked to stand up from a firm chair without using their arms. If they succeed, they are asked to stand up and down as quickly as they can for either five rises if they are aged 70 and over, or up to ten rises if aged under 70 years.
- saliva sample - respondents will be asked to supply us saliva samples over a 24 hour period to measure cortisol, an indicator of stress .

The physical performance measures taken by the nurse – namely chair rises, grip strength and balance measures, will be analysed alongside the “timed walk” measure carried out by interviewers during the personal interview. These performance tests provide a very good measure of the respondents physical well-being and are an excellent way of tracking change in health over time.

**Please try to encourage respondents to take part in the nurse visit, answering their questions, and giving them the nurse visit leaflet which explains each of the tests.**

#### **Self-completion at end of the Nurse Visit**

- In one in ten households, nurses will be asked to leave a self-completion questionnaire at the end of their visit (to be posted back by respondents). This will help us determine whether a standard measure of mental health can successfully be included in ELSA Wave three, without respondents being overloaded, or feeling that the questions we ask are repetitive. Completion of this additional booklet is entirely voluntary.

## **1.4 Overview of study procedures**

The study procedures are set out in greater detail in the remaining sections of these instructions. In brief, the process you should follow is:

- (a) You will need to send out your own advance letters. These letters will be to respondents to Wave One – both sample members, younger partners and new partners.
- (b) Please locate individuals specified on the ARF label and conduct the initial household demographics module to clarify who is eligible for interview in the household
- (c) Where a sample member no longer lives in a household, or the entire household has moved, do your best to trace them.
- (d) Where you find out a respondent has died, please determine eligibility for Exit interview (recording details at Section D of ARF) and if necessary open an Exit Record Form (ERF -described below).
- (e) Where a respondent has moved into an institution such as a nursing or residential home. Record details at Section C of ARF.
- (f) Wherever appropriate, conduct the elements of the survey with all eligible individuals, following the procedures set out in these instructions; for example **ensuring that the respondent is given an information leaflet** and is asked to sign or, is given a reminder consent form.
- (g) Issue self-completion questionnaires to all respondents and, where relevant, return these to the Yellow Team at Brentwood. In other cases, described in detail below, please leave the self-completion questionnaire with the respondent so that they can return it to us directly.
- (h) At Wave Two, particular emphasis is being placed on finding a proxy informant where an interview cannot be carried out in person because of a physical or cognitive impairment. **When an interview cannot be conducted with the named individual because of a physical or mental impairment, it is very important that you attempt to conduct the interview by proxy.** The notes in Section 4.2 explain this in more detail, but do not conduct a proxy interview for reasons like refusal, working away from home, or inadequate spoken English.

- (i) Fill out the relevant sections of the NRF for all households (described in detail below). A nurse-interviewer link has been set-up. If you need to telephone nurses to let them know of the appointments you have made, please be extra vigilant that both you and the nurse link the correct person numbers with the correct respondent names, as information will be sent on to GPs and hence must apply to the correct person!

## 1.5 Materials for the study

For this project you will need:

- (1) These project instructions
- (2) Two sets of show cards (**the second set of showcards should be used when you are interviewing two people in a concurrent session**)
- (3) An appointment diary to record when the nurse you are linked to is available to conduct nurse visits with the respondents
- (4) A police letter which contains space for your and your nurse's details to be handed into the police station for the area you will be working in
- (5) Tracing ('mover') letters used to find people who have moved

For each household or respondent you will need:

- (6) An ARF A for each household (green) with coversheet attached
- (7) You may also need an ARF B (lilac) if the household has split.
- (8) A NRF for each household
- (9) You may also need an NRF B (peach) if the household has split
- (10) Incentive cheques

For each interview in person you will need to have:

- (11) A cognitive function booklet (white)
- (12) A blue self-completion booklet
- (13) A timed walk recording card for all individuals aged 60 or over (white A5 card)
- (14) Consent forms (yellow, orange, NHS form)
- (15) An appointment card (yellow) with the date and time that the respondent should expect the nurse visit (as arranged) to be left with the respondent.
- (16) A project leaflet (blue)
- (17) A nurse leaflet (pink)
- (18) A 'genetics' leaflet (green)

You will also need equipment for the timed walk (MM) and cognitive function (CF) modules:

- (19) A pencil
- (20) Your clipboard
- (21) Stopwatch and
- (22) Tape measure with mark to identify correct distance for timed walk

You will be given various envelopes (for advance letters, return of self-completion booklets, issuing and returning tracing letters).

In addition you will need the standard leaflets about NatCen to leave with each respondent.

## **2 SAMPLE INFORMATION**

### **2.1 Sample source**

The sample for ELSA was originally drawn from the Health Survey for England (HSE). The HSE is a study conducted jointly by the Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, UCL, and the National Centre for Social Research, on behalf of the Department of Health. The major advantage of the HSE sampling source is that extensive data had already been collected about respondents' health (details of morbidity, lifestyle, diets and blood samples).

The Wave One mainstage sample was selected from three separate years of the HSE (1998, 1999 and 2001) to provide a large, representative sample of the English population aged 50 or over living in private households.

The ELSA sample was issued at a **household** level. Almost 60 percent of households in the sample at Wave One had two people eligible for an ELSA interview while the remaining 40 percent had just one. In other words, in almost all cases there are one or two individuals eligible for interview. In a very small percentage of households there were three or more individuals eligible for interview. We anticipate that the ELSA Wave Two sample will have a very similar composition.

At Wave 2 we will be issuing approximately 8000 households, with 11,900 individuals. All households issued have at least one person who was interviewed at Wave 1 and agreed to be recontacted. The addresses will be in monthly batches to ensure that the period of time between the first and second ELSA interviews is reasonably constant (and as close as possible to two years).

The majority of the sample members have been written to in advance and asked to inform us of any changes of address. We would also hope to have heard if any significant changes of circumstance had occurred (e.g. if a sample member had died so they could then be excluded from the sample) though it is possible that this will be discovered at the doorstep.

In most cases, the information we hold about sample members' individual personal details (title, name and surname) is very accurate. This is because HSE interviewers entered the details of all the people they interviewed into the CAPI admin block and for the most part (except where the case was unproductive at Wave One), these details were then checked and confirmed by ELSA interviewers. If you do, however, find inaccurate information about sample members, you will have an opportunity to correct this during the CAPI interview.

### **2.2 Sample definition**

There are three different types of respondents who are eligible to take part in the study:

### Core Member (CM)

- Someone born on or before 29<sup>th</sup> February 1952 who was living within a household which took part in HSE 1998, 1999 or 2001 at the time of the HSE interview and was still living in the household sector within England when they were visited at Wave One (see Section 3.2.7).
- There may be more than one Core Member at an address

### Young Partner (YP)

- A cohabiting spouse or cohabiting partner of a Core Member who was living within a household which took part in HSE 1998, 1999 or 2001 at the time of the HSE interview. All Young Partners were born AFTER 29<sup>th</sup> February 1952 (since if they had been born on or before 29<sup>th</sup> February 2002 they would be Core Members). This means that most of them were aged under-50 when we attempted to interview them at Wave One (some may now have turned 50).

### New Partner (NP1)

- Someone who is the cohabiting spouse or cohabiting partner of a Core Member who joined the household since the HSE, many of whom were interviewed at Wave One.

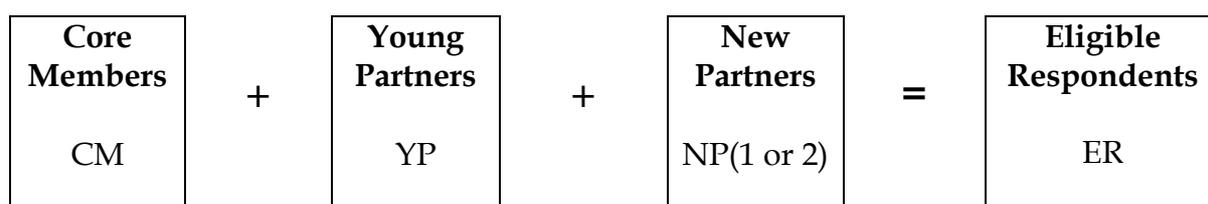
### New Partner (NP2)

- Someone who has joined the household since the ELSA Wave One interview and is the cohabiting spouse or cohabiting partner of a Core Member. New partners can be of any age.

Please note, people who have joined the household of a Core Member **since the ELSA Wave One interview** are only eligible for interview if they are the cohabiting spouse or cohabiting partner of a Core member, regardless of their age. New household members who are over-50 (born on or before 29<sup>th</sup> Feb 1952) will NOT be eligible for interview UNLESS they are the spouse/partner of a Core Member.

The eligibility status (CM or YP) of all Core Members or Young Partners will be indicated on the ARF label. New Partners since Wave One (NP2) are not identified on the ARF label because we have no information about them.

The figure below summarises the groups that comprise our 'eligible respondents'. The great majority (about 95 per cent) are Core Members while the minority are Young Partners (about 3-4 per cent) and New Partners (1-2 per cent).



There is a further distinction which is important in conducting this study. Core Members and Young Partners fall into three distinct groups, defined as their **past interview status**:

- Most Core Members and Young Partners (95 per cent) conducted a full individual ELSA interview and implicitly consented to be re-approached. And most of the sample that was not issued at wave one, conducted a full individual HSE interview and agreed to be re-approached
- A minority did not complete a full individual ELSA interview though someone in their household did. Similarly, a minority of the sample that was not issued at Wave One, did not complete a full individual HSE interview, though someone in their household did.
- A minority completed an individual ELSA interview but did not consent to be re-approached, although someone else in their household did. These individuals will be invited to rejoin the study. They are flagged on the ARF label with a 'REF'.

Key information about these different groups of eligible respondents and their interview status can be summarised in a different way

- Core Members, Younger Partners and New Partners (**only** those identified at Wave One) who were personally interviewed at ELSA Wave One (or HSE if in sample not issued at Wave One)  
*Majority*  
*Status indicated on ARF label (see 2.3.2)*  
*Will receive advance letter*  
*Have ELSA individual data fed forward (or HSE individual data fed forward if in sample not issued at Wave One)*
- Core Members, Younger Partners and New Partners (**only** those identified at Wave One) who were not personally interviewed at ELSA or HSE  
*Minority*  
*Status indicated on ARF label (see 2.3.2)*  
*Will not receive advance letter*  
*Will have minimal HSE data fed forward where available*
- Core Members, Younger Partners and New Partners (**only** those identified at Wave One) who were personally interviewed at ELSA or HSE but refused re-contact  
*Minority*  
*Status indicated on ARF label (see 2.3.2)*  
*Will not receive advance letter*  
*Will have minimal ELSA data fed forward (or HSE individual data fed forward if in sample not issued at Wave One)*

In addition, New Partners identified at Wave Two (have moved in since Wave One):

*Very few cases*  
*Not on label*  
*Will **not** receive advance letter*  
*No individual HSE data fed forward*

Only some interviewers will receive sample that were not interviewed at wave one so for the majority of the households you will approach, the respondents will have participated in the first wave of the study.

## 2.3 Sample Information

### 2.3.1 Serial numbers

The household serial numbers (serialh) have 7 digits, and the individual serial number has 9 digits (the 7 digits from the household number, plus 2 digits for person number).

### 2.3.2 Address and information labels

There are two ARF labels.

The address label gives you the serial number, check letter, issue month (EL1 = ELSA issue month 1) point number, address, and telephone number.

The information label gives you the serial number, check letter, field area, and information about eligibility of household members.

Address label format:

SN:999999211 X    E11            PT: 272
Address
Address
Address
Postcode
Tel No.

Example Information label:

SN: 999999211 X                    FA: 9
01            Mr Tom Brown
CM ELSAAgr 1/2/1949

This information label tells us that Tom Brown is person number 01. He is a Core Member, agreed to be recontacted at ELSA Wave 2, and his date of birth is 1/2/1949.

The information label may also list the Core Members and Young Partners either from our ELSA records, or from our HSE records. Please bear in mind, particularly if the respondent has not been interviewed since HSE, that some of the name information on this label may be inaccurate if the data collected in the last interview was incorrect, or insufficient information was available. Some individuals will have left or joined the household so you will not know about who is fully eligible for interview until you have completed the household demographics module.

### **The Coversheet**

Will be attached to ARF

Provides great deal of information.

### *Field information*

1. Serial number and CKL
2. Group (1 and 5) - to do with allocations - for BW not interviewers
3. Issue month - EL1 thru EL9
4. Point and field area

### *Household information*

1. Address and telephone number
2. Previous address where interviewed if there is one - might aid interviewer recognition - also indicates whether have moved since last time - from pre-advance letter - important since if have, HO information will not be fed forward.
3. W1 household outcome code:
  - 110 Fully prod:per - - fully productive household, all interviews in person
  - 121 Fully prod:prx - fully productive household, all interviews by proxy
  - 122 Fully prod:per/prx - fully productive household, at least one interview by proxy
  - 210 Partially prod - partially productive household

### *Information to help appointment making*

1. Day, date and time of last interview (either W1 or ELSA) - may help at w2
2. Preferred day and time given at W1 interview
3. W1 interviewer number - you might find you have some you went to before
4. Number of calls made - to give indication of how easy or difficult might be
5. Number addresses visited at W1 (if more than 1, will have moved at W1)

### *Information about all household members*

To give you complete picture of hh composition and change since they started taking part in Natcen surveys.

1. Person no, first names, sex, Dob
2. Type of sample - CM, YP, NP1, CP
3. Whether present at W1 (since might have moved out between HSE & W1, and they might move back in) - Y or N
4. Status in HH as we know it now (after pre-advance letters went out)
  - Pres@W1\*\*\*\*MOST COMMON
  - Notpres@W1\*\*\*\*MOST COMMON
  - Deceased@w1
  - Rel.ended@W1

### *Following from pre-advance letter*

- Moved out@W1
- Moved - no add
- Moved - out Br
- Moved - PO rtn
- Moved - unknown
- Gone away
- Died since w1\*\*\*\*SHOW THIS ONE, AS ON EXAMPLE
- Moved - MI
- Refusal@W2\*\*\*\*NOTE THIS ONE IN PARTICULAR - HH ONLY STILL ISSUED AS SOMEONE ELSE AGREED
- House demolished

5. Relationships to each other in the household - up to 6 people, so a small number may be incomplete (about 0.01%!)

*Information about eligible household members only*

1. Person no and name
2. ELSA - Agr if agreed to be reapproached, Ref if refused\*\*\*INTS BE CAREFUL
3. Individual outcome code from W1
  - Full int:per\*\*\*MOST COMMON
  - Full int: prx
  - Partial int:per
  - Partial int:prx\*\*\*NOT MANY
  - No contact
  - Office ref
  - Ref b4 int
  - Ref during int
  - Broken appnt
  - Ill at home
  - Away/in hosp
  - Phy/men incap
  - Lang difficulties
  - Other unprod

*Specific information to help estimate length of interview*

- **HStat** - health status - to give indication of health problems and so length of interview
  - 1 "excellent"
  - 2 "very good"
  - 3 "good"
  - 4 "fair"
  - 5 "poor"
- **WStat** - wealth status - number of assets reported at W1 - length of IA indication
- **Estat** - economic status - ie whether working at W1 - just an indication - if no value, likely they were not working for pay at W1
  - 1 "paid wk"
  - 2 "temp away"
  - 3 "wait work"
- **NHS** - whether interviewer needs to take NHS mortality consent form to individual - yes, means interviewer should take one
- **Admin** - ties in with consent procedure - BOTH means take the 2 admin forms, REM means only take reminder form.

*Other miscellaneous*

- **HO Resp** - person no who answered HO last time - want same person if possible

- **IA Resp** - person no of IA resp - ideally want the same person - CAPI will ask you to check
- **Stable address** - if gave last time, is printed here to help tracing.

### **3 FIELDWORK ISSUES AND DOCUMENTS**

#### **3.1 Fieldwork timetable and assignments**

The number of addresses issued to each interviewer will vary, depending on the number of people interviewed at Wave One in each of the areas. You have 4 weeks (including two weekends) to complete your assignment. Remember to transmit your work regularly during the fieldwork period.

#### **3.2 Contacting respondents and introducing the study**

##### **3.2.1 Study title**

As at Wave One, this study has two names. The field name is 'health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over' which explains what the study is about. The name emphasises the fact that we want to interview everyone aged 50 and above and are not just interested in the older old.

The study also has the academic name, the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing, or ELSA. We want respondents to know about ELSA because over time they may hear about it on the radio or see it referred to in the press. In the long-term, we want people to identify with this name.

ELSA has been written on all the materials we gave respondents and they may have come to understand that name by now, but it still may be sensible to approach this as an interview about the health and lifestyles of people aged fifty and over. However, please do mention the study name during the course of your visit and try to encourage people to see themselves as part of ELSA, a new ongoing study, which will be important in the future.

##### **3.2.2 Advance letters**

You need to send out your advance letters to the Core Members (CM), Younger Partners (YP) and New Partners (NP1) interviewed at ELSA Wave One who we know about. Letters cannot be sent to any partners who are genuinely 'new' to the household at Wave Two, since they will not have been recorded at the last interview.

The letter covers the usual material:

- who has funded the study and who is carrying it out
- why they have been selected
- and confidentiality

The advance letter provides a contact freephone number at Brentwood and includes the web address for the ELSA respondent website.

The letter explains (as it did at Wave One) that we will want to interview every two years but please reassure potential respondents that they will always have the opportunity to refuse and are not making a long term commitment.

### 3.2.3 Incentive payment

There is an incentive payment of £10 cheque that you should give to all eligible individuals (either before or after the interview). You will be given these in your workpacks. If younger partners are identified at Wave 2, there is a facility in the CAPI program for you to request that additional or replacement payments be issued if this is needed.

Since every respondent will be given a cheque as a token of our appreciation for the time that they have given, this means that some households will receive two or, in rare cases, three payments. In the case of proxies, the eligible individual will receive the cheque and at this stage, the proxy informant would only receive the payment if they negotiated this with the eligible individual. We may need to make additional incentive payments to proxy informants who are not themselves eligible individuals at the mainstage and any feedback about this at the pilot debrief would be valuable. Proxy interviews are discussed at greater length in Section 4.2.

### 3.2.4 Study leaflet

The study leaflet describes the study in greater detail than is possible in a short letter. You may want to provide a copy of the leaflet during your doorstep approach. **If you choose not to do this, you should give a leaflet to each respondent before the interview begins.** You will have some spares, so if you feel this is appropriate you can leave an additional leaflet with the household at the end of the interview.

Like the advance letter, the leaflet provides a freephone number at Brentwood and the web address for the ELSA respondent website.

### 3.2.5 Initial contact and response

Because it is important to trace as many eligible respondents as possible, we would like you to try to trace respondents as far as you can. If they cannot be traced and contacted in the time available, please find as much information as you can as it may be possible for the respondent to be followed up in the future.

The majority of respondents will have helped us before with both the HSE and Wave One of ELSA (or occasionally with one or the other alone). As usual, your initial contact should be by personal visit. The normal rules about making calls at varying times of the day and on different days of the week apply. We want to ensure a very high response rate so that we get a good mix of respondents including those of different ages and those who are still active in work or are busy with other commitments or pastimes.

We have provided **phone numbers** where they are available. However, you should **only** use these in rare circumstances. If you find that you have to travel some distance to an address to find a mover, or are running to the end of your fieldwork period, we advise telephone contact first to enable establishing an appointment to speed the process. After you have made an initial contact you can consider using the

phone but only with the consent of the respondent or in specific circumstances where you believe this will be helpful and not intrusive.

### **3.2.6 Appointments and scheduling**

The ELSA interview is long and varies considerably. Experience suggests that it is better to make an appointment on your first visit, rather than interview straight away. The Wave One interview lasted an average of 70 minutes though this varied. An individual session took an average of one hour and twenty-five minutes, while a concurrent session took an average of two hours and five minutes. The Wave Two interview will take a bit longer overall, however some modules will be quicker than Wave One, as respondents would not have to give all the details they gave last time (for example about jobs they still hold).

You should be honest and clear with respondents about the length of the interview. We acknowledge that the interview can take much longer – particularly if the respondent has ill-health, is working, has a complex pension history or has a lot of different sources of income and assets. Please be aware of this and ensure that respondents' expectations are reasonably set before you begin.

We recommend that you attempt to schedule ELSA interviews carefully so that if they do last longer than anticipated this will not present a significant problem. For example, do not start interviewing very late in the day. Ideally you should leave a morning, afternoon or evening for an ELSA interview rather than expect to fit in several interviews during a short time period.

We have introduced several features which we have called 'flexible interviewing' which we have designed specifically to help you manage the interview in the way you see best. These are discussed further in Section 4.6.

### **3.2.7 Movers and tracing**

It is possible that all the sample members within the household will have moved since we last interviewed them at ELSA Wave One. If all of the sample members have moved, you will be directed on the ARF to attempt to find a follow-up address for the sample members (at Section B). You should do this by asking the present occupants, neighbours, friends etc. We do not expect you to consult electoral registers, phone books or other public records. Be careful not to give too much information about why you are trying to contact the respondent. But do mention, if it helps, that the person was aware that we planned to recontact them in the future.

We would like you to do your best to make contact with movers. One important source of information will be the Stable Address provided by the respondent that appears, on the coversheet (see 2.3.2). Ideally, we would like you to make face to face contact with the householder at the stable address. However if this is not possible, please contact by telephone if number has been provided.

You may make contact with someone who knows the potential respondents' new address but is not prepared to give you this information directly. Ask them if they would please give or post a letter to the sample member on your behalf. If they agree to do this, take a tracing letter and write in:

- the serial number (**please also write this on the white New Address Information sheet that we ask the respondent to return**)
- the name of the individual(s) you are trying to contact
- the name of the person who has told you the Sample Member has moved away and
- your name.

**It is extremely important that you also write the serial number on the white New Address Information sheet that we ask the Sample Member to return to us.**

Put this letter along with the white New Address Information sheet and a reply paid envelope into another envelope. Write the sample members name on the front. Then leave it to the contact to forward the letter. Please write on the ARF that you have done this.

If you come across a situation in which all of the sample members have moved home and you have been given a new address, you should follow up the new address as long as it is local to you. If the new address is not in your area, please code final household outcome and return the ARF to the team at Brentwood straight away. Please remember that at Wave Two, addresses in Wales and Scotland are eligible.

In addition, you should not interview in institutions but do collect information in Section C of the ARF (see Section 3.2.7).

If you are uncertain about whether the address is in your area, or have any other queries about movers, please ask your Area Manager or contact the Yellow Team at Brentwood.

You may find that some of the eligible respondents are still resident at the address but others have moved away. If this is the case, you will be directed by the ARF to complete an ARF B. All Core Members, Younger Partners and New Partners should be traced unless they **refused to be recontacted**.

We would encourage you to look for movers for several reasons:

- movers will have had a different experience and we will benefit from their feedback
- even if it is impossible to find the respondent in the given time period, it may be possible to revisit at a later stage.

If you are unable to locate a respondent who is eligible to be traced then we will start a search for the individual when the ARF is returned to the office. The Office for National Statistics (ONS) have a special mechanism for finding people through the network of General Practitioners around the country. This mechanism respects the individual's confidentiality but allows us to let the relevant sample members know that the survey is ongoing and that we would like them to contact us about the survey. On rare occasions, you may find that you will be asked to interview individuals who have been found in this way.

### 3.2.8 Defining institutional addresses

As mentioned in Section 2.2 and above, only sample members who were still living in the household sector in England at the time of ELSA interview were eligible for interview at Wave One. At Wave Two, however, we will include institutions although they cannot be interviewed at this stage. We are developing the questionnaire to be asked of those in institutions. If someone has moved to an institutional address please record their details so that we can contact them in the future.

We are using a standard definition of **an institutional address**. This is one at which:

- the establishment is run or managed by the owner or by someone who is employed to run it.
- four or more people, not all related to each other, live and are catered for **communally** (i.e. by someone else who is paid to provide them with board and lodging).

Small communal establishments with fewer than ten rooms are treated as **private households** if:

- there are fewer than four unrelated people staying there
- there are no resident staff other than the warden, proprietor etc (and his family).

In small communal establishments such as these (eg boarding houses and guest houses), the usual rules for deciding who is a household member apply.

**One point to note:** sometimes there are private households within institutions; for example, a warden of an old people's home or a school caretaker may have a flat within the home or school, with its own living room and catering facilities. These people are living in private households and are still eligible for interview when those living in the institution themselves are ineligible.

Some establishments are borderline cases because the people living there have their own **separate accommodation with facilities for cooking** (e.g. some sheltered housing for the elderly). If less than half the people living there have these facilities, count it as an institution. If at least half have these facilities, **whether or not they use them**, count them as a collection of private households.

### 3.3 Nurse visit

Only Core Members are eligible for the nurse visit.

The measurements carried out by the nurse are an integral part of the survey data and without them the interview data, although very useful, is incomplete. The respondents are not asked to take part in the nurse visit until right at the end of the CAPI.

Convincing interview respondents of the importance of the second stage of this survey is therefore an essential part of your work and should be taken as seriously as getting an interview in the first place. Your job is only complete when you have arranged an appointment for the nurse to make a visit.

The question called *FqNurse* on the Individual Questionnaire gives an introduction to this second stage of the survey. Use this wording to start with. But sometimes you will need to provide further information in order to convince people of the importance of this stage. They may want to know more about what is involved. Some may be nervous of seeing a nurse and you will need to allay any fears.

Try to convince respondents that seeing a nurse is a vital part of the study and that it is non-threatening.

If the person is reluctant, use the arguments given in the box below to try to get them to change their mind:

- Stress that by making an appointment to see the nurse the person is not committing themselves to helping with all, or any, of the measurements
- Explain that the nurse is the best person to describe what (s)he wants to do. The respondent can always change his/her mind after hearing more about it
- The nurse will ask for separate permission to carry out the various measurements
  - We would still like a nurse to visit, even if a respondent says that (s)he will not want to consent to all of the measurements

Respondents and their GPs, if the respondent wishes, will be given their blood pressure, lung function and blood sample readings. If you feel that knowing this will help you get an appointment for the nurse, please explain this. **However, be careful to avoid calling the nurse visit a 'health check' - it is not.** One of the most common reasons given for respondents refusing to see the nurse is 'I don't need a medical check - I have just had one'. Avoid getting yourself into this situation. You are asking the respondent to help with a survey.

**As with the doorstep introduction, say what is needed in order to gain co-operation but do not add more as there is a risk this will confuse or raise concerns. The respondent will have time to discuss more detailed issues with the nurse.**

**Information you may need to know if the respondent asks you questions about the nurse visit**

- it is an integral part of the survey - the information the nurse collects will make the survey even more valuable
- the nurse is highly qualified (Grade E or above). They have all had extensive experience, working in hospitals, health centres etc and have also been especially trained for this survey

- if the respondent wants, (s)he will be given the results of the measurements carried out by the nurse. If (s)he likes, this information will also be sent to their GP.
- respondents are not committing themselves in advance to agreeing to everything the nurse wants to do. The nurse will ask separately for permission to do each test - so the respondent can decide at the time if (s)he does not want to help with a particular one.
- the Medical Research Ethics Committee has given approval to the survey

### 3.3.1 Liaising with your nurse partner

It is vital that you and your nurse partner establish a good working relationship. Even though we have a link between the interview and nurse CAPI, we are still relying on you to communicate directly with the nurse so that they know when their appointments are, and so that you can transfer all of the information they need **if the nurse appointment is very soon after the personal interview.**

If possible, you should arrange to meet up before you start working. The success of the survey depends on a good working relationship between the interviewer and the nurse. It is the interviewer's task to initiate this. You **must** contact your nurse partner before you start work. Respondents often want more information about the nurse. You may want to describe the nurse, so an elderly or concerned respondent knows who to expect.

Things you need to know about your nurse partner include:

- Make and registration number of her/his vehicle.
- Days and times of availability for the month ahead.
- Does (s)he work as a nurse in a hospital/clinic/in the community, as well as being a survey nurse?
- Does (s)he wear a uniform (the nurse makes her/his own decision about this)?
- How well do they know the area you are both working in?

### 3.3.2 Making Appointments for the Nurse Visit

You will need to confirm whether you are responsible for making appointments for the nurse, or whether they would prefer to deal with it themselves.

If interviewer makes appointments:

If you are making appointments for the nurse, you will need to be in close contact with them so you know when s/he is available to visit. You have both been given an Appointment Diary covering the relevant survey period. Go through this together before you start work. Note **carefully** the days and times on which the nurse is available to make a visit. If you get this wrong, you will not only probably lose the respondent but you will irritate your nurse. You will need to liaise frequently in order to update this information.

Ideally you will provide the nurse with an even spread of work and minimise the number of visits (s)he has to make to the area. But of course this might not always be possible.

Try to arrange for everyone in a household to be seen one after the other. Each visit will take approximately one hour.

You will know how long a nurse will need to get from one address to another if you are making appointments on the same day. Do **not** under-estimate these times. **Please remember that in addition to all the normal rules for keeping appointments strictly, in this instance, study participants may be fasting while waiting for the nurse. This means that broken appointments and delays must be avoided.**

Nurses will be contacting all respondents before their visit to answer any concerns, and check on eligibility for fasting blood sample.

If nurse makes own appointments:

You should explain to the respondent that the nurse will be telephoning shortly to arrange an appointment to visit them in their own home.

It would be useful if you could get some idea of respondent availability and pass this information onto the nurse.

### **Appointment Record Card**

All eligible respondents for the nurse visit should be left with an Appointment Record Card (even if the nurse is making the appointments). Remember to always fill in the household serial number, in case any respondent has to telephone the office with a problem. If you have made appointments for individual people remember to write their name on the Appointment Record and note carefully the dates and times of each person's nurse appointment in your Appointment Diary and be sure to pass this information on to the nurse, by telephone.

Point out to all respondents the notes at the bottom of the Appointment Record Card. These tell respondents that we would like them not to eat, drink, smoke or take part in vigorous exercise for half an hour before their appointment, and ask them try to wear light clothing. Respondents are asked not to wear tight clothing, as the nurse will be measuring waist and hip. Light clothing makes it much easier to get accurate measurements.

You may need to discuss requirements for fasting. To be eligible to give a fasting blood sample all respondents should be aged 79 or under. Show respondents the fasting guidelines on the back of the Appointment Record Card.

**In all cases, please check whether the respondent is diabetic or on medication which means they cannot fast.** Please also emphasise they do not have to do anything they don't want to.

**Make sure you telephone the nurse to inform them whether a nurse visit is required or not. Telephone appointments through to your nurse the same day as your interview or early the next day.** A very important part of your job is keeping

the nurse fully informed about the outcomes of your attempts to interview people and to arrange for the follow-up nurse visit.

### Genetics Leaflet

All eligible respondents who agree to the nurse visit must also be left with a green Genetics Leaflet. The CAPI will prompt you to leave this, along with the Appointment Record Card, at question *FqApt*. If respondents agree to have blood sample taken, the nurse will ask their permission for us to analyse the DNA in the sample. The leaflet contains full information about this, and you should familiarise yourself with it. However, if the respondent asks you about the DNA analysis you should explain that they should read the leaflet and that the nurse will be the best person to answer their questions. If respondents are particularly concerned, you can again emphasise that they do not have to do anything they do not want to during the nurse visit.

### 3.3.3 Transferring information to the nurse : NRF

The nurse has a list of the addresses in her point. (S)he needs to know the outcome of your visits to each address (including any at which no interview can be attempted because they are vacant or screened out etc). This information is communicated via the Nurse Record Form (NRF). The NRF is the nurse's equivalent of your ARF.

It is your responsibility to prepare one of these for each **household** in your sample. Your sample pack contains a set of pre-labelled NRFs which correspond to your ARFs. As soon as you have finished your work at a household, make out the NRF and send it to the nurse (even if you have already told him or her by telephone of appointments you have made).

#### Completing the NRF

It is your responsibility to complete the sections on page 1 and 2 of the NRF. Pages 3 and 4 are for the nurse to complete. Check you have got the correct NRF by looking at the labels and checking serial number and respondents' details. Enter your name/number and that of the nurse at the top of the first page. Enter the telephone number.

Pass onto the nurse any useful tips you can about how to find the address, if this is difficult, and write in change of address details

#### Completing Part A

1. Complete the **Interviewer Outcome Summary** box:  
If you have arranged at least one appointment for the nurse, **ring code A**, and complete Part A.
2. Indicate whether the nurse should visit the original address (as on label) or a new address which you will written in the information box.
3. Enter the date on which you conducted the **household interview**.
4. Write in the **total** number of persons in the household for the nurse's information.
5. Record if anyone listed on NRF label has died
6. Record if anyone listed on NRF label has moved into an institution

7. Complete the grid at Question 7 on page 2. The Admin block has a screen called *NRF*. This shows you exactly what to enter here. In brief, enter all those eligible for a nurse visit (from section E on ARF). When you complete the Admin Block check your entries on the NRF. This tells you exactly what to enter into these grids.

Make sure you enter household members in the same order as they appear in the screen called *NRF* in the Admin block. It is **vital** that for a particular person the Person Number the nurse uses is **identical** to the Person Number assigned by the computer to that person.

For each person:

- enter their Person Number
- enter their full name and title (eg Mr. John Anderson)
- circle a code to indicate their sex (1= male, 2=female)
- their age at the date of the Household interview if different from label
- ring code 1 if that person agreed to see the nurse
- ring code 2 if you interviewed that person but they refused to see the nurse
- ring code 3 if they are not eligible for a visit eg YP or NP
- ring code 4 if that person was not interviewed
- enter the appointment date and time

If there is not enough time for the NRF to arrive before the date of the nurse appointment, you should fill in the appropriate details on the NRF and telephone the nurse to inform them. Read out the information about the respondent/s from the NRF, and give her/him the date of the household interview. The nurse has a form called the **Interim Appointment Record**, it is a copy of the page on the NRF with Q7. The nurse will fill in the respondent's information onto the Interim Appointment Record sheet. The nurse will use this until s/he receives the NRF from you. Always make sure you get the nurse to read back the **person number and name** to you so that you are both sure the information has been transferred correctly. The nurse will check the details on the NRF against the Interim Appointment Record when it arrives.

Transmitting your work

In most cases, the information the nurse needs to carry out the nurse visit, ie names, ages etc, will be transmitted to the nurse automatically via modem. You simply connect to the host machine, the necessary information is extracted and made available to the nurse when (s)he connects to the host machine later.

So, once you have made an appointment for the nurse, you should:

Connect to the host machine to transmit the details to the nurse

Complete a NRF and forward this to the nurse as usual (it is important to have a paper record, both as a back-up and to allow checks later)

Telephone the nurse to inform her/him of the appointment date and time.

The system works as long as there is a gap of at least two days between the interviewer transmitting the details and the nurse visit. If the gap is less than two days, the nurse is able to enter the details directly into CAPI, either from the paper NRF or from the Interim Appointment Record which (s)he will have completed with you over the telephone. We wish to avoid this happening wherever possible, because there is far less risk of error if the information is transmitted automatically. If

interviewers transmit their work promptly, we ought to be able to use the automatic data transfer system in over 90% of cases.

It is therefore vital that you connect to the host machine as soon as possible after making a nurse appointment. You do not need to have completed all work at a household, or to have done the admin block for a household, in order to transmit the nurse details. You simply connect up, transmit, and the host machine will take only the information it needs to pass to the nurse.

Remember, it is still important to make the nurse appointment for as soon as possible after the interview. If the nurse information has not been automatically transferred, the nurse can enter the details manually.

### **3.4 The Address Record Form (ARF)**

#### **3.4.1 ARF A**

As always, you will receive your address record form (ARFs) pre-labelled. You will receive one ARF per household.

#### **Front Page**

On the front of the ARF there is the standard calls record form for you to keep a note of the times, dates and results of all your calls. Please remember to fill this in at each separate visit. It will help you to plan any further visits you may have to make.

In the top right hand corner is a box for you to fill in the final outcome code when you have finished with the serial number.

Each ARF should have a final household outcome code. In the case of tracing this outcome should relate to the last traced address.

#### **Section A**

In this section you attempt to establish whether any of the eligible individuals (CM, YP or NP listed on the ARF information label) are resident at the address given on the ARF address label.

- If any of the eligible individuals (CM, YP or NP) named on the ARF information label is resident then code A at A1, and you will be directed to A4 to find out if they ALL still live there. Providing all are still resident you go straight to Section E on page 7 to record individual outcome codes.
- If at least one eligible individual is no longer resident, you will be asked to code the reason why (at A5). If they have moved to a private address you will need to open up an ARF B.
- If an eligible individual has died you will be directed to Section D as one or more exit interviews may be required.
- If an eligible individual has moved into an institution you will be directed to Section C. You will need to determine whether the person could be interviewed themselves or whether a proxy would be required. These will be followed up in the future.

- If none of the eligible individuals are resident, you will be directed to B1 and asked to attempt to establish a follow-up address for any living eligible individuals.

### **Section B**

- After recording details of your tracing attempts at B1, you are asked at B3 to record whether or not you were successful in finding a follow-up address for the sample members. Make sure that if you leave the tracing letter with anyone, you record the fact that you have done this at B2.
- If you are unable to establish a follow-up address for the eligible individual, you should code 'No' at B3 and return the address with a code 910 so that administrative tracing attempts can begin in office.
- However if you do identify a follow-up address you will be asked to go to B4. Here, you should code whether the follow-up address is private residential (F), an institution (G) or other (H).
- If you code "private residential" at B4 then you are directed to write it in the address at question B6 and then code at B8 whether or not it is in your interviewing area (even if this is across the borders into Scotland or Wales). If the follow-up is in your interviewing area, please attempt to make contact at this address.
- If at B8 you are able to establish a follow-up address but it is not in your area(s), the Yellow Team will re-allocate it to an interviewer near the address they have moved to. You should talk to your supervisor or Area Manager if you are uncertain whether a case falls in your area. If you are unable to establish a follow-up address, the Yellow Team will refer the case to ONS for tracing.
- If you make contact at the follow-up address and establish that an eligible individual is living there, you will be directed to E1 and you should attempt to conduct the interview. If there are no eligible individuals at the address you will be directed to BB1 to record attempts to find another address.

### **Section BB**

- This section is identical to section B and should be completed in the same way. The ARF has two tracing attempts in total, at B and BB. If more are needed you should use a continuation sheet.

### **Section C**

- Please record all details about the person who has moved into an institution (and if applicable, who the proxy informant would be)

### **Section D**

- Please record details about the person who has died. The questions will determine whether eligible for an exit interview.

### **Section E**

- You should record individual outcomes for all eligible individuals living at the address.
- If you do complete the household module, the CAPI program will display the names of the household members that are eligible for interview. You should record their first names and person numbers in the grid at question E2. In most cases these will be the people named on the front of the ARF, but not in all cases. It is possible that some of the sample members (SM), young partners (YP) and new partners (NP) named on the ARF may have left the household. In addition, new entrants may be eligible for interview if they are the cohabiting partner or spouse of a sample member i.e. a new partner (NP2) that has arrived in the household since Wave One.

These are the people you should attempt to interview. There is a list of individual outcome codes in a box at the bottom left hand side of the page. Productive individual outcome codes (11, 21, 13, 23) and code 44 will be computed for you in Admin. You will have to choose the appropriate unproductive individual outcome codes.

- **Please note that you should only code 53, physically or mentally unable/incompetent if after a proper effort you are not able to identify a proxy informant who can respond on behalf of the eligible sample member.** Please note that if a respondent does not have adequate English to complete the interview then you should not carry out an individual interview but instead code them as unproductive here (54). While you can allow an individual to have help with some questions, they will need to answer the private modules alone, so must have reasonable language skills in English.
- If any of the individual outcome codes are unproductive, or partially productive, you will be asked to write in the reasons why not all interviews were conducted/some of the interviews were partials at E4.
- You should also identify the appropriate self-completion status and nurse status and record this in the grid at E2. In order to identify the appropriate status for the self-completion and the nurse visit, please refer to the box at the bottom right hand side of the page.
- If an eligible respondent has moved into an institution or died, this should be recorded at E3.

#### Section F

- **Please note at the top of Section F, the reminder that if a household has split you should open an ARF B to find a follow-up address.**
- At question F1 you need to record the final outcome code for the household. Productive codes (110, 120, 210) will be computed for you in Admin as will code 44. If at least one of the interviews you conduct is by proxy, the outcome code will be computed as 120 (i.e. it's not necessarily the case that all code 12's will have some interviews in person, as it says on the ARF).
- For all unproductive addresses, you will be asked to record the reasons at F2 why no interviews were conducted.

#### Section G

- This section should be completed for all the people you interview and you will be prompted to do so in the CAPI. You should **always** write in the person number of each person that you interview in a separate grid at F1. At the end of the interview that you conduct you will be prompted to check the respondent's title, name and surname (or collect them in the case of new partners). If they are different from the details printed on the information label (and for all new partners) you should write them in the grid at G1. All respondents will be asked for an email address – if they give you one, you should write this in the appropriate space.
- All respondents will be asked for a stable/contact address – if they gave us a stable contact address when we last interviewed them you will be prompted to check this in the interview. If they tell you it is not correct and give you a new one, you should write this in the grid. If they did not give us a stable/contact address last time, or were not interviewed last time, and they tell you one this time, you should write this in the grid. If a person gives the same contact address as that already written in for someone else in the household, you do not need to write in the full details again – just write 'same as person x'.

- If a respondent was interviewed by proxy, and the proxy informant gives you their contact details, record this in the grid.
- All respondents, except proxies, will be asked to nominate their own proxies who we can approach in the future if they are unable to be interviewed in person. If they give you a self-nominated proxy, please write this in the grid, in the section called 'self-nominated proxy name and address'. If the name and address is the same as the stable contact given earlier then write 'Same as stable address'.

## Section H

- This section should be completed for mover addresses only i.e. if the sample member(s) has moved from the original address and you have followed them up at the new address.

### 3.4.2 ARF B

In the mainstage, for all split households you will need to use an ARF B. This may occur when, for example, you are issued with a household which contains two eligible individuals and find, when you make contact or complete the household grid at this address that one of the eligible individuals has moved to a different address. In this situation you should interview the eligible individual who is still resident at the original address and record the outcome on the (green) ARF A and attempt to find and interview the eligible individual who has moved away using the (lilac) ARF B.

Alternatively you may find that both eligible individuals have moved away from the original address but that they have split and are no longer living together. In these cases, you should attempt to find and interview one of the eligible individuals using the ARF A and, using an ARF B, try to find and interview the other eligible individuals. REMEMBER you should only attempt to trace sample members who agreed to be recontacted.

When you need to use an ARF B you should write the names of the eligible individuals who have left the original household (i.e. who you are trying to find and interview using the ARF B) on the front of the ARF and write in the serial number which will be the same as the original except that the last digit will be different (usually 2). Wherever you need to use an ARF B you will also need to create an additional household in the CAPI menu system. You can do this once you have selected the serial number at the address menu. You will find yourself at the household menu and can scroll down to select the option HHOLD? [OPEN NEW HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE]. You should then follow the instructions on screen. Please remember **not** to return any work for a household serial number that has split until you have completed interviewing at all relevant households.

The rest of the ARF B is very similar to the ARF A, (though it starts off in a different way by asking you to attempt to find the sample members who have left the household) and should be completed as described above. Note that as you will only be using ARF B for mover addresses (i.e. not the original ELSA address) you should complete section G whenever you use an ARF B.

### 3.4.3 Exit Interview ARF (ERF)

The Exit Interview is fully described in Section 4.3. An ERF should be opened if a respondent at W1 has died more than 6 months ago.

### 3.4.4 Consent forms

The following summarises the consent procedure:

At Wave 1, we asked for two forms of consent. The first was link to HEALTH data and the second was to link to ECONOMIC admin data. Both consents were recorded on a yellow form.

At Wave 2, we will do the following:

- If gave BOTH consents at Wave 1 - we will REMIND them using an orange reminder form
- If gave NO consents at Wave 1 - we will ask AFRESH for both consents using the yellow form
- If gave PARTIAL consent at Wave 1 - we will ask them to give full consent at Wave 2 (ie. consent to Health AND Admin data)
  - If YES - give yellow form (carbon copy)
  - If NO - give reminder form, ticking which consent given at Wave 1

At Wave 2 we are also asking for additional consent to link to the NHS Central Register (not asked at Wave 1). Some respondents may have consented to this at HSE, so we will not be asking them again. However if they did NOT give their consent at HSE (or were not interviewed at HSE) will be ask AFRESH (with pink consent form, leaving behind the carbon copy for respondent)

It is possible to leave behind the consent forms with a return envelope for the respondent to return, once they have considered whether to give consent or not.

### 3.5 General Fieldwork Procedures

Any study that enquires in detail about people's circumstances runs the risk of creating suspicion about your credentials. The older age of this sample *may* mean that you encounter more anxiety or need to provide more reassurance. On the other hand, respondents will now be more familiar with the study and so with NatCen interviewers. Nevertheless, to minimise the risk of problems, you should:

- a) As always, check in at the local police station(s) before you start work. You may be working in areas you are unfamiliar with and so may need to find the nearest police station. Please tell them what the survey is about, give them a copy of the advance letter, and explain how long you will be working in the area. Then present your identity card and leave your name and home telephone number. Ensure that all the details you have given are recorded in the day-book at the station desk if that station has one. Make a note of the name of the officer to whom you speak and the date of your call so that you are fully covered in the event of any query or complaint to the police. It is reassuring for suspicious sample members, as well as other people you come into contact with, to be told that the police know about you. **You must not start work until you have registered with the police.** Please note that in this instance your police letter covers both you **and** the nurse working in your area. This means that you must contact your nurse to collect her details before you begin.

- b) Be meticulous about showing your ID card to respondents, even if the people you speak to do not appear to be interested in it.
- c) Avoid giving away information about the study to neighbours in your attempts to find respondents at home.

## 4 CONDUCTING THE INTERVIEW

### 4.1 Overview of interview content and structure

#### 4.1.1 Content of the interview

The content of the interview is summarised in the table below. Section 5 (below) contains a full description of what is covered by the CAPI program and the self-completion questionnaire.

HD	Household Demographics
ID	Individual Demographics
HE	Health
SP	Social Participation
MM	Timed Walk (floating block)
WP	Work and Pensions
IA	Income and Assets
HO	Housing and Consumption
CF	Cognitive Function
EX	Expectations
PS	Psychosocial
FQ	Final questions and consents
	Self-completion (paper)

All eligible respondents who are able to complete an interview themselves should complete all sections of the interview with four exceptions:

#### **Who should complete the household demographics section?**

This section only needs to be completed by one person in each household, this can be anyone eligible for interview i.e. a sample member, young partner or new partner named on the ARF label or a new partner who has entered the household since Wave One.

#### **Who should complete the timed walk/measurement section?**

Only respondents aged 60 and over who are able to complete an interview themselves are eligible to do the timed walk/measurement section (MM). We hope that all respondents aged 60 and over will do the timed walk but there are some questions in the CAPI which ensure that it is safe to carry out the test.

#### **Who should complete the income and assets section?**

The section on income and assets should be completed by one person in each financial unit. A financial unit is defined as either a single person or a couple, so in most couples only one of them should complete the section on income and assets on behalf of both people. In most households, the people who are eligible for interview

will either be a single person or a couple so you should only need to complete this section once. However, if a couple keep their finances completely separate, they will be treated as separate financial units and so will both be asked the section on income and assets about their own finances.

In all households with a couple eligible for interview, there is a question in the household grid which establishes whether or not they have joint or separate finances. Couples who share finances (which will be most couples) will have to nominate, either in the household grid or at the start of the section (see 5.1 below for more detail), one of them to answer the questions about their joint finances. However, although we have to record one of them as answering in the CAPI program, ideally we want the benefit of their joint knowledge about their joint finances so if possible we would like the other member of the couple to be present and contributing to the answers as well. It's very important that couples with joint finances understand that in nominating one of them to be asked the questions, they are not precluding the other person from contributing to the answers that are given by the named respondent.

In households where you have a couple with shared finances, we would generally hope you can interview them concurrently (see section 4.3 below). However, in some cases you may have to interview them separately – in these cases you will be asked to code in the household grid (at DhlaWho) which of them should answer the questions on income and assets on behalf of the couple. It is possible, though we hope unlikely, that you may not succeed in interviewing the person which you code in the grid as the person who should answer these questions on behalf of the couple. If this happens and if the other member of the couple is willing to be or already has been interviewed, then we would like you to try to complete the section on income and assets with the member of the couple who you can/have interviewed. (In order to do this you will need to change your answer to DhlaWho in the household grid.)

In an ideal world we would expect couples to remain consistent over time in whether they report their income and assets jointly (and who acts as the main informant) or separately (and if so, whether privately or in a concurrent session). Nevertheless it is possible that eligible individuals will want to change their reporting behaviour and we need to allow for this.

### **Who should complete the housing section?**

The section on housing needs to be asked of one person per household, regardless of how many people there are eligible for interview. In households where there is more than one person eligible for interview, you will be asked to code either in the household grid (at DhHou) or at the start of the section (see 5.2 below) which person should answer the section on housing. **The CAPI program will direct you to check who completed the housing section which is provided on the third information label and ideally the same person will agree to act as the primary informant on this occasion as well.** However, as with the section on income and assets, we ideally would like any (eligible) member of the household with relevant knowledge to be present and contributing to the answers as well. This is particularly true in households with couples who jointly own or rent the property. It's very important that respondents understand that in nominating one of them to be asked the questions, they are not precluding any of the other eligible respondents from contributing to the answers that are given by the named respondent.

In households where you have two people eligible for interview, we would generally hope you can interview them concurrently (see section 4.3 below). However, in some cases you may have to interview them separately or, in rare cases, there may be more than two people eligible for interview. In these cases you will be asked to code in the household grid (at DhHou) which of the eligible respondents should answer the questions on housing on behalf of the household. This should usually be one of the people in whose name the accommodation is owned or rented. It is possible, though we hope unlikely, that you may not succeed in interviewing the person which you code in the grid as the person who should answer these questions on behalf of the household. If this happens and if another member of the household is eligible and willing to be (or already has been) interviewed, then we would like you to try to complete the section on housing with the member of the household who you can/have interviewed. (In order to do this you will need to change your answer to DhHou in the household grid.)

#### 4.1.2 Structure of the interview

The CAPI program is structured in such a way as to allow for flexibility and for different sections of the interview to be conducted in different ways. Section 4.6 below discusses the kinds of ways in which you may want to use the program flexibly. Importantly, in households with more than one person eligible for interview, the program will allow you to interview up to two people concurrently. This means that the questions are split up into short blocks and you ask each block to the first person, then to the second person. The advantages and disadvantages of concurrent interviewing are discussed in 4.4 below, as are the things that you should bear in mind when deciding whether or not to interview two people concurrently.

In concurrent interviewing sessions, as the sections on individual demographics (ID), health (HE), social participation (SP) and work and pensions (WP) are always asked to all respondents, the questions in these sections will be asked, in blocks, first to one person then to the next person in the session. The section on income and assets (IA) will often only be addressed to one person in a concurrent interviewing session (though the other person can be present). However, sometimes it will be asked to both people (if they are separate financial units) and in these cases, the program will work in the same way as for ID, HE, SP and WP. As the section on housing is only asked to one person in each household, in concurrent sessions only one of the people in the session will be asked these questions. There is one exception – if there are other eligible respondents in the household then it is possible that the housing module will be asked in a different session.

The sections on cognitive function (CF), expectations (EX), psychosocial (PS), Effort/Reward (ER) and final questions (FQ) **must, however, be completed privately**. This is because the content of these modules is sensitive. The CAPI program is designed in such a way to make this possible even when you are doing a concurrent interview. In effect what happens is that these four modules are treated as one very long concurrent block – so all four of these modules are asked in one go to the first person in the concurrent session. Then they are all asked in one go to the second person in the concurrent session. At the start of this section, you will be prompted to ask the second person in the concurrent session to leave the room and complete a self-completion questionnaire while these four sections of the CAPI interview are asked in private to the first person in the session. Then when the first person has finished answering these sections in private you will be prompted to ask

the second person to come back into the room to complete these four sections of the CAPI interview in private while the first person leaves the room to complete their self-completion. Thus, using the self-completion in this way has two important benefits in concurrent session: it facilitates the sensitive part of the CAPI interview being done in private and means that both of the people in the session will complete their self-completion during the course of the interview. We realise that this will not always be possible in all cases but hope that, if the reasons we are doing this are explained well, it should be possible in most cases where you are doing a concurrent interview. In interviewing sessions where you only interview one person, you will be prompted to leave the self-completion behind with the respondent at the end of the interview.

Another important feature of the CAPI program is that the measurement/timed walk section is in a 'floating' block. This means that you can complete it at any time, once you have allocated respondents to an interviewing session. To access this section, you should press CNTRL <ENTER> to bring up the parallel blocks and scroll down to select the Measurements block. You will first be prompted to do the timed walk (if any of the people you are interviewing are eligible i.e. 60 or over) after the section on social participation, which is where we would normally recommend that it should be done. However, you can do it before this point (though we would recommend that you at least do this preliminary section on individual demographics and ideally, social participation, first) or you can do it after this point. You will be prompted to complete this section again just before cognitive function and at the end of the interview (if you haven't already completed it).

## 4.2 Proxy Interviews

You should attempt to carry out an individual interview with **all** eligible individuals. If possible interview all eligible individuals personally, even where there is some reluctance on the part of a carer or partner but the eligible respondent is happy and capable of carrying out an interview.

In an important minority of cases it will not be possible to conduct an interview in person with an eligible respondent because they have a physical or cognitive impairment that prevents them from completing an interview on their own behalf. **In all cases where an individual interview cannot be conducted in person because the eligible respondent is physically or cognitively impaired, please conduct a proxy interview.** You should also conduct a proxy interview if an eligible respondent is away in hospital or temporary care throughout the fieldwork period. If someone is expected to return home from hospital or temporary care before the end of the fieldwork period, please try to wait until they do so and attempt to conduct an interview with them in person. You may be told that the person would not be able to conduct an interview in person due to physical or cognitive impairment, even when they return from hospital or temporary care. If possible, you should wait until they do return home in order to make this assessment yourself and then, if necessary conduct a proxy interview because of their impairment. We would **not** want you to visit the person in hospital or care in order to try to make this assessment.

Do **not** conduct a proxy interview for any other reasons. For example, if the individual does not speak English sufficiently well to conduct an interview then you should **not** conduct a proxy.

**At this stage, respondents who have moved into an institution permanently are eligible for an institutional interview and we would like you to record all the relevant information that will make this visit possible in Section C of the ARF. However it is not yet possible for you to conduct interviews in institutions.**

The proxy informant (i.e. the person who answers on behalf of the eligible respondent) can be any responsible adult (of at least 16 or over) who knows enough about the respondent's circumstances to be able to provide information about them. Where possible, involve close family members such as a partner, son or daughter, but other people such as a carer could fulfil this role. In most instances, the eligible respondent will not be in a position to give consent for a proxy interview to be carried out on their behalf so you do not need to consult with them directly. Of course, you should not carry out a proxy interview if, for any reason, the eligible respondent specifically objects to you doing so.

The CAPI program will guide you through the proxy interview automatically. In all proxy interviews you will be asked to complete ID, HE, WP and FQ. The three modules that are asterisked in the table below will be asked in specific circumstances.

HD*	Household grid
ID	Individual demographics
HE	Health (variant on main module)
WP	Work and Pensions
IA*	Income and Assets
HO*	Housing
FQ	Final questions and consents

In cases where there is no one else in the financial unit eligible for interview, the proxy interview will include the section on income and assets. For couples, where one of them is coded in the household grid as needing a proxy interview, the other member of the couple will automatically be asked income and assets on behalf of the couple when they are interviewed in person. The question about whether or not they share finances will not be asked. If both members of a couple need a proxy interview, the section on income and assets will only be asked in one of their proxy interviews about both of their finances. For single people, income and assets will always be asked as part of the proxy interview.

In cases where there is no one else in the household eligible for an interview, the sections on household demographics and housing will need to be done as part of the proxy interview.

**As mentioned earlier, a cheque will have been sent to all eligible individuals who are listed on the ARF. This means that a cheque has been given to the proxy individual but *not* their informant. If a voucher should be sent to a proxy informant who completed an interview on behalf of an eligible individual and did not complete an interview in their own right (and so has received no thank you payment) please enter this in the CAPI screen when you are prompted to record action on incentives.**

As you progress through a proxy questionnaire, you will find that some proxy informants will have only a limited knowledge of the eligible respondents

circumstances. Encourage estimates where reasonable but enter Ctrl-K when appropriate.

You will see that only a subset of questions is asked during a proxy interview and that there are a few additional questions in the health section asking the proxy respondent to assess the cognitive/psychosocial health of the relevant individual.

### **4.3 Exit interviews**

ELSA Wave Two introduces a new element of the survey, the Exit Interview. Since ELSA is a longitudinal study it is crucial that we collect as much information as possible about respondents and understand the trajectories that they follow. This means that we need to understand what happened to them in the last year of their life and what happened to their any assets that they had. An individual's death also has a significant impact on the people around them and we need to know what impact this has had on any surviving sample members.

As a result, we are developing an 'exit interview' which covers the places of residence of the eligible individual in the last twelve months of their life, their place and cause of death, their health in the last year (as in the main study focussing on heart problems, respiratory difficulties and activities of daily living and instrumental activities of daily living. In terms of each individual's financial circumstances, we will be asking questions about various aspects of the settlement of their estate.

Anyone who is eligible for main interview but has died since the Wave One interview should have an Exit Interview. This includes sample members (SM), younger partners (YP) and new partners (NP) who were living in the ELSA household at the time of Wave One.

The Exit interview can take place at any convenient time but this must be six months or longer after the death.

The person who can complete the Exit Interview should have known the deceased respondent well, as the questions cover their health (which a carer might know about best) and financial information (which a family member might be best placed to answer). Clearly, the informant will vary and will depend on the circumstances in the eligible household. In priority order, the individuals who should be considered as informants are the eligible individuals':

- Spouse or partner
- Next of kin eg siblings, adult children
- Stable address (if not either of the above)

After Wave Two, we will prioritise the proxy that individuals nominate for themselves.

Exit Interviews can take place either face to face, or by telephone (using the telephone unit). The advantage of allowing either of these modes is that this is a sensitive subject so we should let the informant decide to respond in way that makes them feel most comfortable. It is also helpful in practical terms as we can involve the Telephone Unit if the Exit Interview is needed while ELSA is not in the field (interviews are likely to take place every six months)

The Exit Interview will be in a separate CAPI programme which some of you will have on your laptops at the mainstage. If the informant agrees to do it face to face, interviewers will need to leave the p2158 project and enter the new project number, though priority will go to completing the main ELSA interview first.

Individuals who are eligible for an Exit Interview will be identified in the Household Demographics section. If they have died less than six months ago then their death will be acknowledged and permission sought to reapproach to ask questions in the future. If the person died more than 6 months ago then a range of questions will be triggered in FQ to establish who will complete the exit interview. In the mainstage, the CAPI program will also determine how they will complete it, and when. Interviewers should also note that during the standard ELSA interview, some modules will differ if a partner has died since the last interview. In particular, the Income and Assets block will vary to allow for the collection of information about the income of deceased partners in the previous twelve months.

In Section E2 of the main ARF, and in the main ELSA Admin block, you will need to enter the individual outcome code 95, 96, or 97 to record that an eligible individual has died. Where appropriate, you will also be asked to enter the details from the ERF into the Exit Admin block.

#### **4.4 Interviews in institutions**

In the future we will be attempting to interview individuals who have entered an institution since ELSA Wave One. The motivation for the interviews in institutions is very similar to that for Exit Interviews. Since this is a longitudinal study it is vitally important that we collect information about as many Wave One respondents as possible. In this instance, we need to understand the experiences of individuals in later life who have moved into institutions and to appreciate the impact that a move into a residential care home may have on other members of the originating household. This is an area of genuine interest, both to members of the public and to government, since provision of care homes and funding of long-term care provides many challenges for the future. At the same time it is a very challenging task for ELSA, and we need as much feedback as possible from the pilot so that we can identify how we should best carry out this task.

We will not be asking you to complete any interviews within the institution but will instead be trying to obtain information that will enable any eligible individuals to be interviewed in the future (or for proxy informants to be interviewed on their behalf) so that we can understand the *process* that we will need to go through. At this stage, for example, we are exploring how likely respondents are to say that a person in an institution can answer on their own behalf, and we are trying to determine whether we have a good chance of being given contact details for the institution.

If an institutional interview can be carried out directly with the eligible individual in the institution then the coverage of the survey will be more or less the same as the main interview, though some relevant questions about social participation will be added and other questions about housing, which are not appropriate, will be removed. Alternatively, the institutional interview will take place by proxy. In this instance, this will be very similar to a standard proxy interview, with some additional questions about the services provided in the institution. As with a

standard proxy, it will be possible to conduct a proxy institutional interview at the same time as a main interview with another person in the household.

The potential informant for the institutional interview needs to be someone who knows the respondent well, since questions will cover health (which a carer might know about best) and financial information (which a family member might know about best). This will differ depending on the circumstances of the originating household and the eligible individual. The order you should consider is:

- Spouse or partner
- Next of kin e.g. siblings, adult children
- Stable address (if not either of the above)
- Care home manager

At Wave Three, we will have a nominated proxy who will be the first priority, but this is the preferred order for the time being.

Individuals who are eligible for an institutional interview will be identified during the household grid. The CAPI interview will then ask you to determine whether the individual in the institution is likely to be able to answer the questions in the personal interview him or herself. If a proxy interview is required, then the CAPI will identify who the best person to answer the questions on his or her behalf would be. During the mainstage, it will be possible to use this information to set up a proxy interview at the same time as the main interview (even concurrently) but this is not available at this stage. If the proxy informant lives outside the household then contact details will be collected in FQ (at FqMiPrx) as will questions about the address of the institution itself (at FqMiAdd). You will be prompted to enter details in the ARF at Section C.

#### 4.5 Non-standard elements of the interview

There are various non-standard and innovative features in the ELSA interview:

- The interview involves ‘dependent interviewing’ using feed forward data. This means that whether some of the questions are asked depends on answers given in the ELSA Wave One interview, or where this is unavailable, on information given in the original HSE interview. At Wave One, the mainstage interview varied slightly as different topics were covered in HSE 1998, 1999 and 2001. Since almost all of the feedforward data is now drawn from ELSA Wave One, this variability should now be very slight or have disappeared altogether. Section 5.2 below describes in detail where this might happen.

**Because of the use of feed forward data it is absolutely vital that all interviewing takes place in the slot allocated to that respondent. If an individual is interviewed in any other slot than their own, the interview will make little sense to them, and someone else’s private information could be inappropriately revealed to them. Individuals who are interviewed, for any reason, in a slot that uses someone else’s serial number will simply be discarded, resulting in inconvenience to the interviewer and respondent and a lost individual, possibly to the study as a whole.**

- Randomisation is used at different points during the interview; in allocating people to sessions (though the order used in Wave One takes precedence where possible), within the unfolding brackets, in deciding which word list is used in

the cognitive function section and in deciding which versions of some of the expectations and psychosocial questions will be asked.

- Sound clips are used in the cognitive function section of the questionnaire. This will enable us to achieve a higher degree of standardisation in the way these lists are presented to respondents than has ever been done before. Four word lists were used in Wave One and we ensured that different respondents in the same session received different lists. At Wave Two respondents should receive a different list to the one they had at Wave One, and a different list to the one received by another respondent in their session.
- Unfolding brackets are used extensively in the economics sections of the interview. They reduce the number of individuals who do not answer these questions and help us understand the extent to which people 'anchor' their answers. This is the first study in the UK to use this technique and we have piloted our approach carefully. At Wave Two, respondents will use the same random entry point to each bracket as they were assigned at Wave One (though in fact, they may not have been asked that bracket at Wave One). This means that we will have information that we can interpret consistently across waves.
- The expectations module is also innovative as ELSA Wave One was the first time that questions in this form (where the respondent is asked to give a probability from 0 to 100) had been used on a study in the UK. This was a very successful section at Wave One and has generated a lot of very interesting data. As a result it has been very slightly expanded.
- In the Wave Two questionnaire we have built on this approach to include some new questions in the work and pensions module which also use probabilities. Here, there are two 'Manski' questions which, as far as we are aware, have not previously been used in the UK. These questions ask respondents for the minimum and maximum amount they expect to receive as their pension in the future and then asks the probability of their receiving specific amounts within that range. They are described in further detail in Section 5 below.

#### 4.6 Concurrent Interviewing

Individuals living alone or who are the only eligible respondent in the household should be interviewed alone and in private wherever possible. However in households with more than one eligible respondent, two individuals can be interviewed concurrently. This means that the questions are split into short blocks and asked to one person then the next. Two is the maximum number of individuals that can be interviewed concurrently on this study. **Any two eligible respondents can be interviewed concurrently - regardless of their relationship.**

The main advantage of concurrent interviewing is that there is a time saving for the interviewer. Although the specific figures used here are drawn from Wave One and may be different for Wave Two, the example is relevant. In a typical two-person household at Wave One - a couple who share finance, so one of them does income and assets on behalf of the couple and the other does housing on behalf of the household - it would take an average of 75 minutes each to interview them separately, 150 minutes (or 2½ hours) in total. However, to interview them both concurrently took on average 125 minutes (2 hours and 5 minutes) - a time saving of

25 minutes. However, the main disadvantage of concurrent interviewing is that each person has to give up more time – i.e. they both have to give up 125 minutes (though they will have periods when they are not answering questions) instead of each of them giving up 75 minutes. Most respondents will not mind this and will prefer to be interviewed together. However some respondents, perhaps if they are both working, will not be able to find this amount of time to both be interviewed together. If it is difficult to schedule a concurrent interview, it is perfectly acceptable to interview them separately.

One of the most important things to consider when deciding to do a concurrent interview is whether or not the two people have shared finances and if not, whether or not they are willing to discuss their finances in front of each other. Remember that all single people will be answering about their own income and assets, so if you want to interview two single people, for example a brother and sister together (or a single person and one member of a couple), you should check that they are willing to talk about their finances in front of each other. For couples, you will be prompted to ask them in the grid whether or not they share finances and if they don't, you should check that they are happy to talk about their separate finances in front of each other before interviewing them together. Although, you will usually be prompted to check this in the household grid, you may want to set up an appointment for a concurrent interview before you have done the household grid. If so, you may need to check that the two people you want to interview are happy to talk about their finance in front of each other before setting up the appointment (without, of course, putting them off taking part!).

Concurrent interviewing will be normally be conducted with two eligible respondents answering in their own right but in certain circumstances a proxy interview can be carried out concurrently with a normal interview. You should only do this if the person who is doing their own interview is also acting as the proxy informant. In other words, it is okay for Jack to do his own interview and at the same time answer a proxy interview about his wife, Jill BUT you shouldn't have a concurrent session where Jack is doing his own interview and someone else is answering about Jill. It is also possible for two proxy interviews to be conducted concurrently but you should only do this if the same informant is answering for them both.

There are two different ways in which a concurrent interviewing session can be set-up. The most important thing to remember is that once an interviewing session is set-up – either with one person or with two people – it CANNOT then be changed. The different ways of setting up an interviewing session are described in detail in section 5.2 below. In households where there are only two people eligible for a (non-proxy) interview, you will be given the opportunity to set up a concurrent interviewing session with them both automatically (at DhNow). In general, if you are going to do a concurrent interview we would prefer you to set it up automatically in this way. This method will be quicker and easier for you but the main advantage methodologically is that the order in which the respondents are allocated to a session (i.e. who gets the questions first) will be randomised. The advantage of this is that we will be able to study what effects going first or second has on the answers given. This will help us understand any bias that may result from the first person in the household (which will usually be the (male) head of household) always being asked the questions (and the private block) first in concurrent interviews. However, if for any reason you want to override that random allocation of respondents or you

simply change your mind and decide to do a concurrent interview after coding 'no' at DhNow, then you can allocate respondents to a concurrent interview manually (at AllocP1 and AllocP2). This is discussed in detail in section 5.2 below.

You will have received two sets of showcards. Whenever you interview two people in a concurrent session please give each a set of showcards. This will help the flow of the interview, particularly where the circumstances of the respondents are different and the questions they are asked differ.

#### **4.7 Interview Length**

There is no doubt that the interview is very full and, as a consequence, it takes a long time to complete. At Wave One the overall average per person was 70 minutes. This comprised an average of 1 hour and 25 minutes for individual in a single session where Income and Assets and Housing is done and around 2 hours and 5 minutes when two people in household are interviewed concurrently. In addition, interview length will vary significantly according to the circumstances of the individual concerned. Individuals who have more medical conditions to report, who are working, who have complex pension histories, or who have a lot of assets and income, will all have longer interviews. However, due to the multi-disciplinary nature of the study the interview needs to be long in order to cover all the different aspects of people's lives. The Wave Two interview is longer (we estimate 80 minutes for one person in single session).

A long interview can present problems both in terms of gaining co-operation and scheduling the interview and in terms of respondent and interviewer fatigue. However there are various ways in which the flexibility of the CAPI program can help you manage the length of the interview (discussed in section 4.6 below) and there are various compensating factors:

- Concurrent interviewing will save you time
- The interview flows well and is varied
- Respondents like the study and say it is interesting and relevant
- They do not generally complain about length if expectations are properly set
- Almost all the respondents have already been interviewed and agreed to be re-contacted so are relatively compliant and used to the question-answer process
- Many interviewers will be interviewing respondents who they have interviewed before
- Respondents will have received a £20 cheque which they can keep whether or not they decide to take part. We hope that this means they will be well disposed to the study when you approach them – we look forward to receiving your feedback.

Interviews conducted by proxy should be significantly shorter than main interviews because several modules of questions are entirely omitted. Our estimate is that they will take about 20 minutes (plus another 10 minutes each if Income and Assets and/or Housing are included).

## 4.8 Flexible Interviewing

We have tried to make the CAPI program as flexible as possible to help you manage the interview:

- You can choose whether or not to use concurrent interviewing depending on the circumstances of the people you want to interview.
- You can override the random order in which people are allocated to a concurrent session if needed. For example, if you know that one person will have to leave before the you expect the interview to end, you can allocate them to the session first, so you can complete their private CAPI section (CF,EX,PS,FQ) with them before they leave and then leave the self-completion behind for them to return by post.
- You can choose when to conduct the timed walking test. You may wish to do this when there is a natural break in the interview, to avoid breaking up the flow of the interview. Or you may want to break up the interview, if you feel that either you or the respondent is becoming fatigued.
- You can skip IA and HO and return to them at the end/at another date. In most concurrent interviews, only one of the respondents will need to answer these sections, so you may wish to skip them and complete the rest of the interview with both people. Then you can either complete these sections with one person at the end of the interview or return on a different day to complete these section. Alternatively, if you have for example, an elderly respondent who will not be able, due to fatigue, to complete the whole interview at once, you may wish to skip these sections and make an appointment to return to do these sections on a different day.
- You can offer to replace cheque with a voucher if the respondent is not satisfied with this form of incentive payment. You will be prompted in the CAPI to identify any necessary action on incentives in the final questions block (FQ).

## 4.9 Practice serial numbers, check letters and scenario

You have 9 practice serial numbers for this study. Due to the flexible nature of the program it is particularly important on this study that you familiarise yourself with the structural aspects of the program, so you feel confident negotiating the program and adapting it to your needs when out interviewing.

Please try out

- the different ways of selecting people to interviewing sessions
- skipping Income and Assets and Housing and going back to them later
- suspending people in sessions and un-suspending them
- setting up more than one session per household
- coding that some people have left the household and that others (in particular a new partner) have joined
- try different routings to see the effect of dependent interviewing
- **individuals who have died or moved to institutions (particularly a partner who has died so that you can see how the Income and Assets section will change)**

It is also particularly important that you practice the timed walk and the cognitive function section before you go out interviewing.

#### **4.10 Self-completion questionnaire**

The purpose and content of the self-completion questionnaire are described in Section 5 below. All respondents who complete an individual interview themselves should be given the self-completion questionnaire. The CAPI program will prompt you when to give the self-completion questionnaire to the respondent. Make sure that you write the serial number and the respondent's first name on the front page before giving them the self-completion. In most instances, where interviewing is taking place concurrently, one respondent should be asked to complete the self-completion in a different room, while the other continues to answer CAPI questions in private. The second respondent will then be asked to complete the self-completion questionnaire while the other completes their private CAPI session. However, in some instances one or both respondents may not complete the questionnaire at the appointed time in which case it should be left behind with them to complete in their own time and return by post. In all cases, where only one individual is interviewed in a session, you will be prompted to leave a self-completion with the respondent at the end of the interview for them to complete in their own time and return by post. We do not recommend that you wait while a respondent completes the questionnaire at the end of an interview but if you are asked to, it is fine to do so. In all cases where you leave the self-completion behind for the respondent to complete in their own time you should leave a prepaid A5 Return to Brentwood envelope with the respondent. If convenient, you can chose to collect it at a later date, however we do not expect you to do this.

In the event that you find yourself leaving an address and promising to return to complete an interview (for example to complete Income and Assets or Housing or if the respondent has been called away or is unable to complete the interview in one session because of fatigue or a health problem) you can chose to leave the self-completion with them so that it can be collected on your return.

In the mainstage, the self-completion questionnaire will be scanned - this means that it should be completed with a blue or black pen and should not be folded. If you are leaving the self-completion behind it is important that you mention these two things to respondents.

If the respondent needs help completing the self-completion, you may help them to do so if you wish, though we do not expect you to do this. However we do not recommend that you do this at the end of a long interview. In specific instances, you could suggest that someone from the office telephone at a convenient time to help them fill in the self-completion by phone. Please discuss this with your supervisor or Area Manager.

## 5 THE QUESTIONNAIRE

### 5.1 Description and explanation of the content of questionnaire

The second round of ELSA interviews will be concerned with updating and adding to the baseline data on health, economic position and social participation that was collected at Wave One. Before ELSA Wave One, we already had lots of information about the health of our sample from the interview that was conducted as part of the Health Survey for England, but very little about their economic and financial position. At Wave One we tried to rebalance the situation by including a substantial section of questions about the respondent's economic circumstances. At Wave Two we have added questions that make the interview a little more rounded, for example about spending as well as income, and more about social activities and general well being.

This section provides a description of the topics covered by each of the modules of the questionnaire and some background to and explanation of why we are asking about these topics. We want you to understand why certain questions have been included, so that if a respondent is reluctant to take part or reluctant to answer certain sections you can encourage them to answer by explaining why the questions are a necessary and important part of the study. In addition we want you to be convinced of the value and importance of the questions you are asking respondents. However, obviously you should try to avoid giving too much description or explanation about the questions where it's not necessary as we don't want respondents' answers to be influenced too much by what they think we are asking about or what they think their answers mean. As always try to just ask the questions as written and only provide explanation where necessary to get an (accurate) answer.

#### **Household demographics (HD)**

This section covers basic demographics (sex, age, relationships) of everyone who lives in the household, including new entrants to the household. If anyone has left the household since the HSE interview, we want to know why they are no longer living there. This is because if a respondent has suffered a bereavement or relationship breakdown this may impact on their health, social and economic circumstances. It also allows us to follow up any partners who have moved out of the household, or into institutions, or to gather information about an eligible individual who has died. In this section we also ask whether any of the eligible respondents have any children living outside the household and if they do, we collect details of all these children. This is to help us get a full picture of their family networks and circumstances and to help us understand their economic behaviour.

#### **Individual demographics (ID)**

In this section we complete our demographic profile of the respondent by collecting details about their marital status and other family members; siblings, grandchildren and parents. Marital status (including whether or not a person has had a previous marriage) has been shown to be closely related to different aspects of people's health, social and economic circumstances. Parent's age and cause of death are asked because they are good predictors of an individual's mortality. We also collect some basic information about their family and economic circumstances during childhood so we can see how it has affected their current situation.

**Health (HE)**

The health module covers many different aspects of people's health. First, respondents will be asked about their general health, whether they have any longstanding illness or disability and how this affects them. There are some questions about eyesight and hearing, as deterioration in these key senses is common as people grow older and clearly impacts on people's daily lives. Respondents will be asked about whether they have been diagnosed with specific health conditions. In particular, they will be asked about cardiovascular disease (CVD) and chronic conditions and illnesses, such as arthritis. We are interested in CVD as this is one of the leading causes of death in this age group and chronic conditions as many of them are related to functioning problems. There are some questions about falls and fractures which are asked only to respondents aged 60 and over – this is a common cause of disability or functioning problems in this age group. As experiencing pain can clearly have an impact on people's daily lives, we ask about this. Although we have asked about diagnosed conditions, some people may have the symptoms of a particular condition without having been diagnosed. For this reason we ask about symptoms of chest pain, wheezing and pain in the leg. These questions are designed to pick up symptoms of CVD and respiratory conditions. All respondents will be asked whether they have difficulty with a range of activities of daily living (ADL's). This is a widely used measure of disability. Finally respondents will be asked some summary questions about certain aspects of their behaviour which can impact on their health (smoking and physical activity; information about drinking has been moved to the self-completion questionnaire). Although this is an important aspect of people's health, the questions are brief as these topics were covered in detail at the HSE interview.

**Social participation (SP)**

This module is primarily concerned with use of public transport. Many of the questions about people's social circumstances are included in the self-completion questionnaire.

**Work and pensions (WP)**

The aim of this module is to update or obtain information on the respondent's current work activities, if any, and update or obtain information about any new or current pensions that they may have. Since the activities of this age group are becoming increasingly diverse we particularly want to investigate the degree to which respondents may be doing more than one thing as they move into retirement, for example part-time work coupled with some voluntary work or self-employment. The work part of the module predominantly focuses on the 'main' activity in the previous month, but also asks some summary questions about other activities.

One of the main aims of this study is to build a comprehensive picture of the pensions that the respondent can expect to get when they retire. At Wave One, we needed to collect information about any current pensions that the respondent may have had (this was usually with their current jobs) and also some details of any of the private pensions – that is all non-state pensions – that they may have had in the past. For respondents who have retired and are receiving a pension, we needed to know about what kind and how many pension schemes they were receiving a pension from and how much they received. Several of these questions are quite complex and it is important to be familiar with the distinctions between different types of pension schemes that respondents may currently belong to or may have belonged to in the

past. The module is now designed to add and update to the information collected at Wave One.

Some of the pension questions are particularly complicated so 'don't know' is a perfectly reasonable response to expect. Indeed this is interesting in itself since it reflects the information that the respondent has when they think about their likely pension income and their decisions of whether to retire.

Many of the questions in this module will update information that may have changed between waves, particularly if an individual has retired, or moved jobs and/or employers. If someone is basically doing the same thing as at the previous interview then most of these questions should be skipped and only the topics that may reasonably change across years (pay, pension contributions etc.) should be covered.

### **Income and Assets (IA)**

The first part of this module is to establish the income of the respondent(s) from a variety of sources – wages, state pensions, private pensions, other annuity income, and state benefits – over the last 12 months. Although we have already collected current income from work and private pensions we still need to collect these broader measures for two reasons. Firstly, there may be other components of incomes that we would miss out otherwise. Second, incomes may move around during the year, particularly if a respondent moves onto or off a benefit, and hence their 'current' income may not be a very good indicator of their resources over the year as a whole.

The second part of this module looks at the amount of financial and non financial assets held in various forms and any income from these assets. In some cases this will mean trying to establish the current values of items such as investment trusts, properties, life insurance policies and the values of any outstanding debts. The majority of individuals will have few different types of financial assets, although there will also be a few individuals who hold savings and investments in virtually all forms. It will be important in this section to use documents such as bank statements as much as possible. It is important for us to measure the net amount of wealth the respondent(s) has in order to see how they may choose to finance their retirement. There are also questions about any regular transfers the respondent(s) may have received from non-household members and any one-off payments in the last year, in order to complete the picture of their income.

### **Housing (HO)**

There are two parts to this module. It begins by getting information about the respondent's current housing situation, including the size and quality of the accommodation. For those who own or are buying their accommodation, there are questions about the value of their property. Respondents will also be asked about mortgage repayments and the amount and term outstanding on their mortgage (or mortgages). The aim of this first section of the module is to measure how much net wealth the respondent has in the form of housing, as for most people in this age group their home is by far their most valuable asset.

The second part of the module focuses on some summary details of housing related expenses as well as some other measures of consumption items such as ownership of durable goods and cars and expenditure on food. We ask about whether the household contains certain modern appliances in order to build a broader picture of

the respondent's quality of life. Food expenditures are an important part of weekly budgets for many in this age group, as well as being important determinants of health status.

### **Cognitive function (CF)**

This section measures a variety of different aspects of the respondent's cognitive function, including different types of memory, literacy, the speed at which individuals can process information and do a visual search, and mental flexibility. It is important for us to measure cognitive function as it impacts both upon people's ability to carry out daily activities and on their ability to make complex decisions about their retirement and their lives more generally. In addition, as cognitive function declines with age it is essential for a full understanding of the ageing process.

### **Expectations (EX)**

As this is a longitudinal study, it is important for us to measure people's expectations and any uncertainty they feel about the future for two reasons. Firstly, this will help us to understand their current behaviour and secondly so that we can, in time, see how closely people's expectations are linked to what actually happens, how people react when their expectations are not met and how and why expectations themselves change over time. This module is very similar to the module used at Wave One but some questions have been added. In addition, questions about 'relative deprivation' have been introduced.

### **Psychosocial (PS)**

This module is primarily concerned with recording how the respondent views his/her life across a variety of dimensions. A number of studies have shown that these views are related to health and they may be related to decisions that the respondent makes in other dimensions of his/her life. There are also some new questions about voluntary work and caring for others. There are some additional psychosocial questions in the self-completion questionnaire.

### **Effort/Reward (ER)**

This new module assesses motivations behind voluntary work, and caring for others, and the relationship between effort and reward.

### **Final questions and consents (FQ)**

This section contains some additional demographic information (ethnic origin, education), a request for a stable/contact address and for a nominated proxy. There is also a consents section where the respondent is asked to give us permission to obtain health and economic data from various administrative sources if they have not already done so at a previous interview, or are reminded of the consents given previously. Details about any necessary exit or institutional interviews are collected here and the Nurse Visit is set up.

### **Measurement - Timed Walk (MM)**

The timed walk, which involves recording the time taken by the respondent to walk a distance of 8 feet (244cm) at their usual walking pace, is included in the study as it is an objective measure of disability. It has been shown that there are cultural differences in the way people answer questions about their levels of disability so in order to be able to compare people in England with people in other countries we need this measure.

### Self-completion questionnaire

The questions contained in the self-completion are essential to the aims of the study as it completes our information about the respondent's social circumstances, for example their social participation, social networks and relationships. It also contains measures of well being and quality of life that are crucial outcome variables in the study. Without it we will have information about the respondents' economic and health circumstances, but little to relate either of these factors to.

## 5.2 Detailed notes on the questions

In the following notes, where it mentions data collected at Wave 1/HSE this refers to information that was given by respondents either at Wave 1 or, for those respondents who were not interviewed at Wave 1, to answers they gave in HSE.

1. HOUSEHOLD DEMOGRAPHICS	
Question Name	Notes
DhSameh	<p>It is important to code the answer to this question carefully as it will determine whether or not information from Wave 1/HSE about the household's housing situation will be referred to during the Housing section of the interview.</p> <p>You will not be asked to code this in any additional households you may interview.</p>
DhResp, DhWho, DhWarn	<p>Any household member who is eligible for interview, including new partners can answer the household questionnaire. Names of all sample members and young partners (including any who were interviewed at Wave 1/HSE and have refused re-contact) will be displayed at <i>DhResp</i>, except for any who are known to have died.</p> <p>Non-household members/Members of the household should only complete the grid if all eligible respondents are unable to do so - either due to physical or cognitive impairment or because they are away in hospital/temporary care throughout the fieldwork period.</p>
Household grid	<p>Information from Wave 1/HSE about who is part of the household will be pre-loaded into the programme. You will need to check these details, collect them if they are missing or correct them if they are incorrect. You will also need to collect details of new household entrants and record some details about people who have left the household since the Wave 1/HSE interview.</p> <p>The CAPI program will identify any new household members who are eligible for interview (i.e. new spouses/partners of sample members).</p>

DhWhat	For any members of the Wave 1/HSE household who are no longer resident this question, about why they are no longer living there will be asked. You should only code 'Living elsewhere - relationship ended' in cases where a married/cohabiting couple have separated.
DhDead	For any members of the Wave 1/HSE household who have died, the household respondent will be asked for the year and month of death. In some cases (from HSE 1998 only) we already know that someone has died as they consented at the HSE interview to be flagged on the National Health Service Central Register (NHSCR) and, as a result we have been informed of their death. Where this has happened, this question will be prefaced with 'We understand that X has died'. Obviously all cases where someone has died should be treated as sensitively as possible.
DhCh, DhNCh	<p>These questions ask about children outside the household.</p> <p>All couples are asked whether either of them have any children and if so, for the total number of children they both have e.g. if they had one child together and each of them had one child from a previous marriage/relationship, then in total they would have 3 children, i.e we don't just want to know about the child they have together.</p> <p>We want the respondent to tell us how many children they consider themselves as having. If they ask you whether or not to include step, foster and adoptive children, they can include them if they want but aren't obliged to if they don't consider them to be their children.</p>
DhCR	Relationships of children outside the household to anyone in the household will be collected.
DhAnyPx, DhProxy	<i>DhAnyPx</i> displays the names of people eligible for interview and you are asked whether any of them need a proxy interview. You should conduct a proxy interview if an eligible respondent is unable to complete an individual interview due to physical or cognitive impairment or is away in hospital/temporary care throughout the fieldwork period. If you code 'yes' here and there is more than one person eligible for interview, you will be asked to code at <i>DhProxy</i> which of the people

	<p>eligible for interview needs a proxy. This will generate a proxy interview for this person and mean they are not eligible for an individual interview.</p> <p>You can change your answer to this question i.e. record that someone previously coded as needing a proxy does not need one or that someone previously coded as not needing a proxy does need one, at any point BEFORE you have begun the interview with or about the individual. You may need to do this if, for example, it becomes apparent that someone who was expected to return home from hospital/temporary care during the fieldwork period, will not be doing so. However, once you have begun either an individual interview with a respondent or a proxy interview about a respondent, then you CANNOT change from an individual to a proxy interview or a proxy to an individual interview.</p>
DhIAsep	<p>This question will be asked of all couples eligible for interview (except where one or both of them needs a proxy interview) and determines whether or not they will both answer the section about their own income and assets (if they answer is 'yes') or whether one of them will answer it on behalf of them both (if the answer is 'no').</p>
DhNow, DhSurY	<p>In all households where ONLY two people are eligible for an individual (i.e. non-proxy) interview, you will be asked at <i>DhNow</i> whether you are about to begin a concurrent interview with these two people. This will be asked in all households where there are only two people eligible for an individual interview - including when the two people eligible are e.g. a brother and sister/mother and daughter as well as when the two people eligible are a couple.</p> <p>If you are about to do this and have no reason to override the random order of the allocation displayed on screen, then you should code 'yes' here. If the two respondents do not have shared finances, you will be prompted to check that they are happy to talk about their finances in front of each other before interviewing them together. You will then be asked, at <i>DhSurY</i>, to confirm that you are about to begin an concurrent interview with these two people. Coding 'yes' at this question will mean that they will be allocated to a concurrent interviewing session - <b>once you have allocated</b></p>

	<p><b>respondents to an interviewing session, this CANNOT then be changed.</b> After coding 'yes' at <i>DhSurY</i>, you will not be able to change your mind and choose NOT to interview them together.</p> <p>However, if you code 'No' at <i>DhNow</i>, you will not be asked to confirm that you are not about to interview them together. This is because coding 'no' at <i>DhNow</i> does NOT prohibit you from interviewing them concurrently. However, you cannot change your answer to <i>DhNow</i> so if you do change your mind and decide that you do want to interview them concurrently after coding 'no' at <i>DhNow</i>, you will have to allocate the respondents to a concurrent session manually at <i>AllocP1/AllocP2</i> (see below). Similarly, if you are about to interview the two people together BUT wish to override the random order of the allocation to the session, then you should code 'no' at <i>DhNow</i> and select them in the order you choose at <i>AllocP1/AllocP2</i>.</p>
DhIAWho	<p>The question will be asked of all couples who share finances (DhIAsep=No), EXCEPT if you have just coded at <i>DhNow</i> that you are about to interview them both concurrently. This question identifies which member of the couple should get asked the section on income and assets on behalf of the couple. If you have coded at <i>DhNow</i>, that you are about to interview them both concurrently, this question will not be asked. Instead a similar question will be asked during the concurrent interview at the beginning of the section on income and assets as both of the people who it could be asked of will be there being interviewed together.</p> <p>If it turns out that you are unable to interview the person you code as answering this section on behalf of the couple or they refuse part way through the interview BUT the other member of the couple is willing to be or has been interviewed, you should change the answer to this question and complete this section with this person.</p>
DhHou	<p>This question will be asked in all households where there is more than one person for an individual (i.e. non-proxy) interview EXCEPT if you have just coded at <i>DhNow</i> that you are about to interview the only two people eligible for individual interview concurrently. This question identifies which of the respondents eligible for an individual interview will be asked the questions on housing.</p>

	<p>As a de-fault this question is set to the person number of the first person eligible for interview – however you should ask the question and code the answer given. If you have coded at <i>DhNow</i>, that you are about to interview both of the people eligible for individual interview concurrently, this question will not be asked. Instead a similar question will be asked during the concurrent interview at the beginning of the section on housing as both of the people who it could be asked of will be there together.</p> <p>If it turns out that you are unable to interview the person you code as answering this section on behalf of the household or they refuse part way through the interview BUT another member of the household is eligible and is willing to be or has been interviewed, you should change the answer to this question and complete this section with this person.</p>
Eligible	<p>This screen displays who is eligible for an individual interview, who is eligible for a proxy interview and who is eligible for the measurements (timed walk) section. At this point you should write the person numbers and first names of all the eligible respondents in the grid at E2 on the ARF and begin the individual interviews.</p>
AllocP1, AllocP2, SessConf	<p>These questions allow you to manually allocate eligible respondents to interviewing sessions. You will need to do this in all households EXCEPT where you have already committed yourself to do a concurrent interview by coding ‘yes’ at <i>DhNow</i> . Remember that in households with only one person or more than two people eligible for an individual interview, <i>DhNow</i> won’t be asked so this is the only method of allocating respondents to interviewing sessions. Respondents who need a proxy interview can be allocated to interviewing sessions in the same way as respondents who are completing their own individual interview. In households with more than one person eligible for interview you can choose to interview up to two people.</p> <p>You should enter the person number of the first person you wish to interview in the interviewing session at <i>AllocP1</i>. This person will be asked the questions first. The names of all eligible respondents are displayed on the screen. If you</p>

	<p>want to interview a second person <b>concurrently</b> with this person you should enter their person number at <i>AllocP2</i>. If you don't wish to interview another person concurrently, or indeed there is only one person eligible for interview, you should enter '97: No one else' at <i>AllocP2</i>. After you have chosen who to interview in that session you will be asked to confirm the selection of respondents to the session at <i>SessConf</i>. This will set the interviewing session – <b>once you have allocated respondents to an interviewing session, this CANNOT then be changed.</b></p> <p>In households where there are more than two people eligible for interview you will need to interview them in more than one session, or where there are only two people eligible for interview and you don't want to interview them concurrently, you will need to use more than one session. To start a second (or subsequent) interviewing session, press Ctrl &lt;ENTER&gt; to bring up the parallel blocks and select 'Individual_Session [2]', then allocate any remaining respondents to the second session in the same way at <i>AllocP1</i> and <i>AllocP2</i>.</p>
--	---

2. INDIVIDUAL DEMOGRAPHICS	
Question Name	Notes
PersDisp	This question displays the person numbers and names of the respondents that have been allocated to the interviewing session.
AdResp	If you are conducting a proxy interview, you should code the person number of the person who is the proxy informant or code 97 if it is not a household member. Although the name of the person who the proxy interview is about is displayed here, you will not be allowed to select this person.
DiPRe	If the proxy informant is not a household member, he/she will be asked about his/her relationship to the respondent about whom he/she is answering.
DiMar	Note that this question is about current, legal marital status. If the respondent says that they are married check whether this is their first and only marriage.
DiGran	This question will be asked to some respondents, even if they have already told us that they do not have any living children, as they may

	grandchildren or great-grandchildren if they have had a child who has died. The only people who won't get asked this question are those who have already told us that they have grandchildren living in the household and those who told us at Wave 1/HSE that they had grandchildren (they will be routed straight to <i>DiGnMy</i> ).
DiGnMy	If a respondent has any great, great-grandchildren they can be counted here as well.
DiSib	As with children, step, adoptive and foster brothers and sisters can be included here but don't have to be. Brothers/Sister-in-law should not be counted.
DiNMA, DiNFA,	All respondents except those who told us at Wave 1/HSE that their natural parents had died will be asked whether or not their natural mother and father are alive. Only respondents who took part in HSE 1998 were asked about parent's death during their HSE interview.
DiMAD, DiFAD	All respondents whose natural mother/father has died, except those who told us their natural mother/father's age of death at HSE 1998 will be asked this question. Some people may have told us that their natural mother/father had died at Wave 1/HSE but not their age of death, in these cases the question will be asked here.
DiCDNM, DiCDNF	All respondents whose natural mother/father has died, including those who did not tell us the cause of death at Wave 1 will be asked this question. We are only interested in whether or not they died from any of these specific conditions - so all other causes of death should be coded as 'None of these'.
DiKLiv	This question is only asked if the respondent did not answer this question at Wave 1. It's up to the respondent to interpret 'most of your childhood'. If asked, childhood is usually thought of as ending at 16.
DiFJob	This question will usually be asked about father's occupation, but will adjust depending on the answer given to <i>DiKLiv</i> . You should code the answer given as one of the pre-specified categories. If you are having difficulty here then open a Memo and enter the text verbatim. Here are some example about the types of job that can be included in the different categories:

	<p><b>Manager or senior official in someone else's business</b> could include shop manager, marketing or sales manager, health service manager, works manager, bank manager, transport manager</p> <p><b>Professional or technical</b> could include teacher, stockbroker, lawyer, engineer, architect, doctor, accountant, nurse, computer programmer, musician, train driver, police officer, graphic designer, footballer</p> <p><b>Administrative, clerical or secretarial</b> could include bank clerk, typist, secretary, civil service or local government clerical officer, VDU operator</p> <p><b>Skilled trade</b> could include tool maker, electrician, fitter, motor mechanic, sewing machinist, printer, carpenter, baker, builder, chef</p> <p><b>Caring, leisure, travel or personal services</b> could include ambulance driver, dental nurse, nursery nurse, travel agent, hairdresser, caretaker, undertaker</p> <p><b>Sales or customer service</b> could include shop assistant, market trader, sales representative, customer care adviser</p> <p><b>Plant, process or machine drivers or operators</b> could include assembly line worker, packer, asphalter, lorry driver, taxi driver</p> <p>If you are in doubt please either attempt to code and add a note (this is preferable) or simply enter in the note verbatim.</p>
--	---

3. HEALTH	
Question Name	Notes
Hehelp	This question collects respondents' own opinion of how their health is.
HeFInt	By 'long-term' we mean a condition that has lasted or is expected to last three months or more.
HeFunc	'Special equipment' includes all kinds of walking aids.
HeAtt, HeAta	These questions deliberately ask respondents to attribute their difficulty or inability to walk a quarter of a mile to symptoms rather than a health

	<p>conditions. We will ask about specific conditions later in the section, so encourage respondents to choose a symptom(s) from the card at these questions.</p>
<p><i>New at wave 2</i> Hebala-Hebalc</p>	<p>These measures are intended to help us learn about the quality of respondents' past health care experiences for particular health problems.</p> <p>We hope to see whether this influences their long-term health over time.</p> <p>These particular questions are asked to respondents who report having difficulties walking a quarter of a mile (unsteady, dizziness, falls) or who always, very often or often have balance problems. We want to know whether they joined an exercise program or had physiotherapy because a doctor or nurse recommended they should.</p>
<p>HeEye, Hefrnd, Hepap</p>	<p>You should usually read out the words in brackets at these questions to prompt the respondent to evaluate their eyesight when using glasses and corrective lens if they usually wear them for the activities that are asked about. There is no need to read the words in brackets out if the respondent tells you that they never use glasses/contact lens.</p>
<p>HeOpt</p>	<p>Only include eye conditions that have been diagnosed by a health practitioner (including an optician) at this question.</p> <p>Diabetic retinopathy is the medical term for diabetic eye-disease and age-related maculopathy is the medical term for macular degeneration. As with lots of other health conditions, most people who have these conditions will recognise the terms used.</p>
<p><i>New at wave 2</i> Hedreye</p>	<p>This is one of the measures that are intended to help us learn about the quality of care people are receiving if they are experiencing particular health problems and whether this influences their long-term health over time.</p>
<p>HeHear, HeHra</p>	<p>You should usually read out the words in brackets at these questions to prompt the respondent to evaluate their hearing when using their hearing aid if they usually use one. There is no need to read the words in brackets out if the respondent tells you that they never use a hearing aid.</p>

<p><i>New at wave 2</i></p> <p>HeHrb-HeHrg</p>	<p>These measures are intended to help us learn about the quality of care people are receiving if they are experiencing particular health problems and whether this influences their long-term health over time.</p>
<p><i>New at wave 2</i></p> <p>HeBpchk</p>	<p>We want to learn whether there is variation in the preventive checking of blood pressure amongst people this age and how this influences their long-term health. This question is only asked if the respondent is aged 65 years or over.</p>
<p>HeDiaa</p> <p><i>New at wave 2: High cholesterol has been added to this question</i></p>	<p>These conditions are cardiovascular disease (CVD) or related conditions. However it is important that you do not use the term 'cardiovascular' as this could lead people to exclude conditions which they have but do not realise belong to this category. Only conditions that have been diagnosed by a doctor should be included here and it is important that all conditions that the respondent has ever been diagnosed by a doctor as having are included here.</p> <p>For most of these conditions, there are follow-up questions about age of diagnosis, whether had condition in the last two years and whether currently on medication for the condition. The follow-up questions vary from condition to condition. Respondents who report having a stroke will be asked whether they have any remaining problems with various aspects of functioning as a result of their stroke.</p>
<p>HeAga-HeAgeRY</p>	<p>If a respondent told us at Wave 1 that they had a condition (e.g. angina) but did not say the age they got it, they will now be asked how old they were when they were diagnosed with it. If they did not have the condition at Wave 1 but have it now they will be asked the date they were diagnosed.</p>
<p><i>New at wave 2</i></p> <p>HeHibp-Hehibpb, HeHrta-HeHrtf, Hechol-Hecholc</p>	<p>These measures are intended to help us learn about the quality of care people are receiving if they are experiencing particular health problems and whether this influences their long-term health over time.</p> <p>HeHibp - if a doctor was unable to explain high blood pressure to the respondent, code 'no'.</p>
<p><i>New at wave 2</i></p> <p>HeBeta-HeBetb HeAce-HeDiXb</p>	<p>These questions are also to learn about quality of care amongst people with heart problems or diabetes. Please be sure you see all the medications that the respondent is currently taking. When you</p>

	<p>have spotted one on the list of medications, respond affirmatively and stop the process. You do not need to continue looking at medications once you have identified one of those that are on the list.</p>
<i>HeDiab</i>	<p>This question covers other chronic illnesses and conditions. Again only conditions that have been diagnosed by a doctor should be included here and all conditions that the respondent has <i>ever</i> had diagnosed should be included.</p> <p>Note: Alzheimer's disease is a specific illness, distinct from dementia.</p> <p>For most of these conditions, there are follow-up questions though they vary with condition. Age of diagnosis, whether had condition in the last two years and whether currently on medication for the condition are the most common.</p>
HeAga, HeAgb, HeAgc, HeAgd, HeAge, HeAgf, HeAgg, HeAgh, HeAgi, HeAgj	<p>For all questions which ask for age of diagnosis, encourage the respondent to give an estimate if they cannot recall the exact age.</p>
<i>New at wave 2</i> HeArta-HeArte, HeOste-HeOsted, HePsy-HePsye	<p>These measures are intended to help us learn about the quality of care people are receiving if they are experiencing particular health problems and whether this influences their long-term health over time.</p>
HeCana	<p>Lymphoma and Leukaemia are types of cancer that start in the lymph glands and blood respectively.</p>
HePsy	<p>Although this question is multi-coded and we would normally want you to probe, it is important to do this sensitively, particularly in concurrent interviews, due to the potentially sensitive nature of the question.</p>
HeFla-HeJic	<p>These questions are asked of those aged 65 or older and cover all falls from standing position (including when drunk), fractures and joint replacements.</p>
HeFla	<p>All falls should be included here, regardless of the reason for the fall.</p>
Heiqa - Heiqq	<p>These questions are only asked in proxy interviews and are designed to assess the respondent's level of cognitive functioning.</p>

HePab, HeBck, HeHip, HeKne, HeFet	Respondents who report pain (at <i>HePain</i> ) are then asked to rate their pain in specific parts of the body on a scale of 0 to 10. It is important not to offer any other anchors for the respondent to evaluate their level of pain, other than those provided in the question. If the respondent is uncertain, prompt by repeating the definition of the scale on the screen and encourage them to give a value.
<i>New at wave 2</i> HePac-HePak2, HeBala-Hebalc	Again, these measures are intended to help us learn about the quality of care people are receiving if they are experiencing particular health problems and whether this influences their long-term health over time. This is the second place from where respondents can be routed into HeBala-Hebalc.
HeAnInt-HeAnk	<p>The questions in this section come from the “Rose Angina Questionnaire” which is recommended by the World Health Organisation for detecting symptoms related to cardiovascular disease. When administering these questions, make no attempt to help the respondent by interpreting the questions. For example, you should not say what you think is meant by ‘pain or discomfort in the chest’. These questions are intended to stand entirely on their own and for the respondent to use his/her own interpretation.</p> <p>If serious doubt arises about the correct interpretation of a particular answer, it should be recorded in such a way as to <i>exclude</i> the suspected condition, eg  Q “Do you get it when you walk uphill or in a hurry?”  A “Well maybe, but I can’t really remember”</p> <p>This answer should be coded as ‘no’. However, please note that the question named HeAna is an exception to this (see below).</p>
<i>HeAna</i>	Record <u>any</u> instance of pain. For example, an answer such as “No, except for indigestion” should be coded ‘yes’. The questions that follow are designed to filter out any chest pains that are not related to cardiovascular disease.
<i>HeAnb</i>	The answer must be interpreted strictly. We only want to know about pain when walking uphill or hurrying – not when doing any other activity. Pain experienced only when going up stairs should be recorded as ‘no’.

<i>HeAnf</i>	If the respondent says s/he takes a tablet (eg GTN, nitroglycerin, trinitrin) or mouth spray (for the heart and <u>not</u> for wheeze), code '1' (ie s/he stops walking).
<i>HeAng</i>	If the pain goes away after taking a tablet or mouth spray then code '1' (ie the pain goes away after stopping and taking medicines)
<i>HeAni</i>	Please be as precise as possible in recording the location of the pain, using the diagram as a guide. Be careful about which side is left and which is right. The numbers on the diagram match the numbers that need to be coded at <i>HeAni</i> . The card is designed to be used by you and the respondent together. The respondent should indicate the area of the pain on his/her own body, and between you, you should work out which part of the diagram corresponds.
<i>HeAnk</i>	A severe pain across the front of the chest lasting for half an hour or more could indicate that the respondent has heart problems. Do not give the respondent any guidance about what is meant by a severe pain across the front of the chest.
HeAnl-Hechola	If respondents have angina according to the Rose angina questionnaire, and have not reported diagnosed angina, we want to know if they have sought treatment for symptoms. If they have, we want to know about the kind of care they received.
HeRpa-HeRpj	This section deals with wheezing and asthma.  In this section do <b>NOT mention the term asthma</b> .  In this section it is particularly important that you obey the following rules (which apply to most questionnaires most of the time):  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The question should be repeated exactly as it appears on the screen. If there is an ambiguity or misunderstanding, repeat the question emphasising the wording, but do not change the wording.</li> <li>2. Try to get the respondent to give a definite answer.</li> <li>3. If the respondent does not understand a yes/no question even after it is repeated, code it as Don't know (CTRL K).</li> <li>4. On other questions, if the respondent does not know the exact answer, get their best guess.</li> </ol>

	5. For some questions (detailed below) an explanation may be given.
HeRpg	Wheezing can be described as: <i>a whistling sound whether high or low pitched, and however faint</i> . No distinction is made between those who wheeze during the day and those who only wheeze at night. <b>DO NOT MENTION ASTHMA.</b>
HeCda-HeCdf	These questions deal with pain in the leg muscles <i>brought on</i> by walking and are designed to elicit in what circumstances the pain occurs, and how long it lasts <i>after</i> the informant stops walking.
HeAdla, HeAdlb	<p>These questions are about any difficulties the respondent has with activities of daily living (ADLs). For the first set of activities (HeADLa) , only include limitations because of physical illness and problems. For the second set of activities (HeADLb) include limitations because of any physical and mental illness or memory problem as well. The items covered include physical activities (eg sitting), mixed physical and mental activities (eg dressing) and mental activities (eg using a map).</p> <p>If the respondent reports that they do <i>not</i> have a difficulty doing a particular item because somebody does it for them, but would have a difficulty if they did it themselves, they should be recorded as having a difficulty.</p> <p>Furthermore, if a respondent reports avoiding doing a task because it wouldn't be 'sensible' for them to do it, they should be recorded as having a difficulty.</p> <p>If a respondent reports they do not have a problem stooping, kneeling or crouching, but rather with getting back up, code that they have difficulty (code 6 at HeAdla).</p>
HeHpa	Respondents who report difficulty with any of the ADLs (at HeAdla or HeAdlb) are asked this question. Only practical help received for the activities that they have difficulty with should be included. If respondents sometimes receive help, code Yes.
HeHpc	Only respondents who receive help with any ADLs are asked whether the help they receive meets their needs. This should be the respondent's own

	subjective evaluation of the help they receive.
HeAid	This question is asked in three places (but only once per respondent), either after quality of care questions about exercise programs and physio programs for balance or walking problems, or when they report difficulties with any of the ADLs. It asks whether they use particular mobility aids and whether they use special eating utensils. Only personal alarms (both fixed in the home and mobile alarms carried on respondent) used to call for help in the event of falls etc should be included in code 7 – not other types of personal security alarm such as rape/attack alarms.
HeAidC	If respondent reported using aid at W1 but does not report using any aid at W2, they are reminded what they said last time. This is to measure improvements.
HeInct <i>Incontinence has been expanded</i>	Like all potentially sensitive questions, this should be asked in a matter-of-fact way. Includes incontinence for any reason.
HeSlfca	a diabetes self-management course or class, special training on how to manage diabetes: this does include such activities as a 30min consultation with a dietician.
HeSkb, HeSkc	Encourage the respondent to give an average. If s/he cannot and gives a range instead, enter the mid-point of the range (eg 20 to 30 should be entered as 25).
HeAlb	Only respondents who were interviewed at HSE (both 1998 and 2001) and agreed re-contact will be asked this question.
<i>New at wave 2</i> HeStop-Henico, Hecgstp-Henictk	If respondents have stopped smoking between waves 1 and 2, we would like to know why and whether they used any nicotine replacement products to help them. If respondents are currently smoking, we are interested in whether there are differences in the support that people receive to give up smoking from medical professionals.
HeActa, HeActb, HeActc	These questions are slightly unusual as although there is a card, the card does not have the response categories on it – you should read these out as in other READ OUT question. The questions are orientated around three levels of activity, vigorous,

	<p>moderate and mild which are shown on the card. Each level has a number of examples on the card to 'anchor' the respondent. Allow the respondent to use additional examples, but the respondent, not you, should judge which of the three categories (vigorous, moderate and mild), the activity should go into. However, you should not include work related activities, these are asked about in the work and pensions section of the questionnaire. Add all activities within a particular category together to provide an estimate of frequency.</p>
--	--

4. SOCIAL PARTICIPATION	
Question	Notes
SpCar	Code 'yes' if the respondent has access to a car even if s/he is driven by someone else and does not drive it him/herself.
SpTran	Here include standard forms of public transport; not specialist services such as dial-a-ride, nor vehicles privately hired, such as Taxis.

5. TIMED WALK	
Question	Notes
See Appendix A	<p>It is <b>vital</b> that you learn to administer the protocol included at Appendix B properly and systematically. If you have any problems in either administering the protocol or with the equipment, contact the research team immediately.</p> <p>It might be helpful to explain to the respondent that we are conducting this test to draw comparisons across countries and over time. This is why the introduction and demonstration have to be conducted in a systematic and consistent way <b>in all cases</b>.</p>

6. WORK AND PENSIONS	
Question	Notes
WpAct	Note that at this question we only want to know about activities in the last month. Retired people will be able to have the fact that they are retired recorded at the subsequent question <i>WpDes</i> .
WpAway	This question is asked to everyone who does not report doing any paid work or self-employment in the last month, regardless of their age. This is because we do not want to rule out the possibility

	that people over age 65 may be looking for work.
WpDes	Note that we are interested in respondent's self-defined status here – the standard rules that normally apply to classification questions DO NOT apply here.
WpAct, WpEdC	Include only formal educational courses, do not include, for example, learning using TV courses or language tapes.
WpAct, WpVW	By 'voluntary work', we mean any kind of unpaid work, whether formal (e.g. one day a week volunteering for the local charity shop) or informal – helping out at a village hall or on a committee etc.
Key terms - job/main job	<p>A job is defined as a period of paid work for an employer or a period of continuous self-employment.</p> <p>If a respondent has more than one job, their main job is the one in which they work most hours. If they work equal hours in both/all their jobs, their main job is the one which is highest paid. The first section of this module is primarily concerned with collecting information about a respondent's main job.</p>
Wpjob, Wpjobl, WpStj, WpEmp, WpEver,	<p>This section is heavily filtered depending on answers given at Wave 1. There are 5 different routes into this section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Respondents who are not in work now and were not in work at the time of Wave 1, will be asked whether they've had a job in between. If they have, they will be asked the standard classification questions about this job.</li> <li>• Respondents who are not in work now but were in work at Wave 1 will be asked whether the job they told us about at HSE was their most recent job. If it was they will not be asked the standard questions about this job UNLESS the information they gave us was incomplete. If they've had a different job since details of this job will be collected.</li> <li>• Respondents who are in work now and were in work at the time of Wave 1, will be asked whether the job they were doing at Wave 1 is their main job now and , for employees, whether they are working for the same employer. If so, then they will not be asked the</li> </ul>

	<p>standard classification questions UNLESS the information they gave us at Wave 1 was incomplete. If their main job now is different to the one they told us about at Wave 1, they will be asked details about their main job.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Respondents who were not interviewed at Wave 1 or HSE and are not working now, will be asked if they've ever worked and if so, they will be asked for details about their most recent job.</li> <li>• Respondents who were not in work at the time of Wave 1 but are working now will be asked about their current job.</li> </ul>
Wpsal, WpCjb	<p>All respondents who are currently in work (as well as those for whom we are collecting full job details) will be asked these additional questions about their status in employment. As the labour market is becoming increasingly complex, the distinction between employees and self-employed is becoming less clear – these questions are designed to classify people more precisely into these groups.</p>
WpNoE	<p>This question will be asked to all current employees and may be asked in addition to the standard question on workplace size. This is about employer rather than workplace size and is necessary as rules governing some pension schemes depend on the total number of employees a company has.</p>
WpJAct	<p>Note that at this question there are examples on the screen but not in the card that you can use to prompt respondents if necessary. We want them to answer about the work that they do most of the time in their job – even if this is different than their 'official' job description.</p>
WpJobsM	<p>At this question (and many others where we ask for months) if the respondent does not know the month ask them for the season. Winter (start of year) is Jan/Feb and Winter (end of year) is Dec.</p>
WpCjob	<p>Here we are asking about the type of contract the employee is on, not the type or duration of the job. Shorter term contracts are commonly thought of as being causes of job insecurity, even though they may often be renewed once the contracted term expires.</p>
WpWlym	<p>We want the total number of weeks in the last year</p>

	<p>they were in employment at this question – which in most cases will be different from the number of week’s they worked. Periods of paid leave should be included, for example teachers who are paid over the summer holidays should count these weeks. Similarly if a respondent was employed part-time for the whole of the last year they should answer 52. For the self-employed, we want to know the number of weeks they were ‘actively self-employed’, this means the number of weeks in which they spent some time carrying out any activity pertaining to their self-employment business or trade.</p>
WpWly	<p>Casual jobs/employment should not be included here.</p>
Wpllly, WplljM	<p>At this question we want the date job ended – which may be different than the date the respondent stopped work in the job – for example they may have stopped work and then been on leave/off sick etc for a period before the job ended.</p>
WpNIC, WpNICE	<p>The distinction between paying national insurance contributions yourself and having them paid on your behalf is that contributions may be paid on the behalf of those individuals who are looking after dependants or are on certain benefits and currently looking for work.</p>
Wpthl	<p>Only code yes here if their most recent pay is significantly different to their usual take home pay – if the difference is within five pounds, there is no need to collect their usual pay as well.</p>
WpIR-WpBusV	<p>For those that don’t file accounts we just try to capture some measure of what their income was in the past year. This will be only an approximate measure, but we do need to compare how well off such people are compared to the rest of the population. For these groups, income could be thought of as what you would have received, all things considered, had you been doing the same job for someone else who had paid all the expenses and outgoings you may have incurred. By the ‘worth’ of the business we mean the value the individual could expect to get for it if they sold it to someone else.</p>
WpMoJ	<p>This question will be slightly different depending on whether the respondent is in work or not. We want all respondents to include any kind of casual</p>

	work they may do from time to time here but for those in work, we also want them to include any formal second jobs they have here as well.
WpERet, WpErAg	Many employers offer older workers attractive incentives to take early retirement. We are interested in whether respondents who are still in work have been offered such arrangements since these are a very common influence on the decision to retire early.
WpBPS, WpAnyP, WpPSM	For those employees who are not in an employer pension scheme, it is important for us to identify whether or not this is because the employer doesn't offer a scheme or because they are not eligible to join the employer scheme or because they chose not to join their employer scheme.
WpCPS	Pension schemes in which contributions are currently made on the behalf of the respondent should be included here. This may happen in (non-contributory) schemes in which an employer makes contributions without requiring the scheme members to do so.
WpCPSC	Some people may neither be currently contributing to a pension scheme, nor have a scheme in which contributions are currently made on their behalf BUT they may have a scheme to which they could currently contribute. For example if they are in a personal pension, and have made contributions in the past but are not currently making them because their circumstances may have changed. It is extremely important that respondents don't include past pension schemes here. By past pensions we mean pensions that went with previous jobs that may still have some value, but to which contributions can no longer be made.
WpPs, WpCPS, WpCPSC	<p>All respondents aged under 65 and respondents aged 65 and over who are in work, will be asked whether they have a current pension scheme.</p> <p>If they are an employee they will be asked whether they are in their employer scheme (WpPS), if they are in work but not an employee (i.e. self-employed), or if they are an employee who is not in their employer's scheme or if they are not in work they will be asked WpCPS/WpCPSC.</p> <p>All respondents with a current pension will be asked if they have any other current pension</p>

	<p>schemes. It is possible to have a second current pension but should be fairly rare and will typically be when a respondent has two jobs.</p>
<p>WpKp</p>	<p>All these pension types, apart from employer provided schemes, are very similar.  Personal Pensions are individual contracts with a pension company.  A group personal pension is similar, but everyone in the same job or workplace tends to have a pension contract with the same company.  Stakeholder pensions are less likely to come up in this sample. They are the new low cost pensions the government introduced last year. They are like personal pensions and the employer has to offer all it's employees a provider so they can join the scheme if they want.  S226 plans are simply personal pension plans for the self-employed. These have been around for longer than since 1986 though.  All the above pension schemes are Defined Contribution schemes These are often called money purchase schemes, and will usually be held through a financial company such as Equitable life, or Scottish Widows etc.</p> <p>Employer provided pension schemes can either be money purchase/defined contribution (DC) schemes which are similar to personal pensions or defined benefit/final salary schemes (DB) which operate in a different way (see below).</p> <p>There are similar follow-up questions for all types of schemes. Respondents' with private personal pensions, group personal pensions, stakeholder pensions and retirement annuity schemes will get the same follow-up questions. Those with s226 plans (self-employed personal pensions) will get slightly fewer follow-up questions. Respondents with employer schemes will get different questions depending on what type of employer scheme they have (see below).</p>

WpDPS, WpPDes	<p>This is a key question that separates the out two different types of employer pension. We need to know whether the employer pension is an individual fund that works similar to a mutual fund or investment fund and in the same way as a personal pension (Type A - defined contribution or money purchase) or whether it depends on final salary &amp; years of service (Type B - defined benefit or final salary scheme). Most traditional employer or company pensions are in the latter category.</p> <p>It is crucial that these questions are answered correctly. If they are not, some of the subsequent questions about the pension fund will not make sense. For example, in the case of the latter we ask about the number of years of service and the way in which final entitlements are calculated whereas in the case of the former we ask for the current value of the accumulated fund.</p>
WpNPS	<p>The rules by which pension schemes are run are published by the Government, and by knowing the name of the scheme we will be able to match in the rules for each respondent. Importantly, if the respondent is in a public sector scheme such as a local authority or police force pension scheme we need to know which area it is, since different areas are run differently.</p> <p>Here we need to get as much information as possible to facilitate the link to the scheme data held by the Government, so record as much of the information the respondent can give, since it will help us code the answers more accurately.</p> <p>EXAMPLES:  British Telecommunications PLC BT Pension Scheme  J Sainsbury PLC Pension Scheme  Post Office Pension Scheme  Unison Staff Pension Fund  London Borough of Haringey superannuation fund  University Superannuation Scheme  Royal National Institute for the Blind Retirement Benefits Scheme  Scottish Mutual personal pension plan  Equitable Life personal pension.</p>
WpCos	<p>It is important to establish whether they are contracted-out of the state scheme since this will be important in the calculation of their total pension entitlement. 'Contracted out' means that their National Insurance contributions, which would</p>

	otherwise have been diverted into the State Earnings Related Pension Scheme, are instead paid into their private pension as well as the respondents own contributions or those of their employer.
WpYbs	Some pension schemes are transferable between jobs - we want to know the number of years the respondent has been in their current pension scheme, not only the years they've been in the scheme with their current job. For example, teachers may have changed jobs but stayed in the teacher's pension scheme.
WpErc	Some employer schemes may require scheme members to make contributions, other do not.
WpACon, WpMMin	Members of employer schemes who are required to make a minimum contribution, are asked if they make any additional contributions to their scheme. Those with Defined Benefit (Type B) schemes may make additional contributions in 3 different ways: Additional voluntary contributions (which are known as AVC's, so you should read this out in the question) are when you pay extra percentages of your salary in return for getting more pension rights. Added rights are the same, but you buy them by the year - i.e. you buy an extra year at a time, as opposed to paying x% and getting whatever fraction of the year that will buy you.
WpYcAmt	Members of employer schemes who are not required by their employer to contribute, are asked how much they do contribute to their scheme. It is possible that they may not contribute, for example if the employer makes contributions on their behalf.
WpECon	In most employer-provided pension schemes, the employer will make a contribution to the scheme member's pension. Respondents with more than one employer should answer this question about the employer who provides the scheme they are answering about.
WpNRA	Most employer pension schemes will have a Normal Retirement Age which is the age at which scheme members are normally able to retire and draw pension benefits. Some may have a period of service after which time members can retire. Some schemes may have both an NRA and a period of service.

WpEra	Some pension schemes may have a standard early retirement age. Other schemes may periodically or occasionally offer early retirement 'windows' to scheme members.
WpDesP	This just asks how the final salary benefits for the pension will be calculated - when a respondent gets 2/3 of their final salary how will this 'final salary' be defined?. Three of the most common options are listed as response categories but there may be others (average of last three years, etc...).
WpFsap	The most commonly used fractions are given as answer categories on screen. If the respondent says they don't know it may be worth prompting gently with these examples as this may help trigger their memory - but be sure not to lead the respondent and record don't know if necessary.
WpFSav	All respondents with Defined Benefit (Type B) employer schemes will be asked if they make Free-standing additional voluntary contributions (FSAVC's). These are less common than AVCs but respondents that are making them will know what they are. They are like AVCs but the contribution goes into a separate pension instead of into the same pension.
WpCons	This questions asks for consent to contact the employer to find out more about the rules of the pension scheme - note that we will only be asking about how the scheme operates for all employees. We will not ask about the respondent's contributions to the scheme or disclose that they have taken part in the study.
WpAPF, WpCuv, WpCB	Respondents with defined contribution (Type A) employer schemes or any kind of personal pension will be asked the current value of their pension fund. This is important because it tells us how much they have put in over the past and is a good guide to how much they will receive once they retire.
WpPCont	Respondents with personal pensions may never have contributed to their pension scheme (but had contributions made on their behalf by an employer) , they may be contributing regularly or irregularly or they may have stopped contributing to their pension scheme.

WpRSc	For those people with personal pensions that they have stopped contributing to, we are particularly interested in the reason they have stopped contributing.
Respondent's own and employer contributions to pension schemes	<p>Generally you should find that respondents are quite knowledgeable about their own pension contributions but may be less so about employer's contributions.</p> <p>Answers may be given in amounts or as a percentage of salary. In employer provided schemes the amount the employer contributes might be depend on the amount the scheme member contributes so this can be given as a percentage of the scheme members contributions. For respondents with more than one pension scheme (who will usually have more than one employer), the questions about the 'employer' contributions to their second scheme will usually relate to their second/subsidiary job as opposed to the main job.</p>
Expected pension income (WpPtp, WpPtoP, WpPExp, WpLpe)	<p>One important determinant of respondents working and retirement decisions will be the amount of pension income they themselves expect to get when they retire, on top of anything they might get from the government. In these questions all respondents can answer either with an annual amount , those with defined benefit (Type B) employer schemes can give a fraction of their salary just before they retire and those with defined contribution (Type A) employer schemes or any kind of personal pension can give a total amount that their pension will be worth. There is no right or wrong answer here, we are purely interested in how much they expect to get. Note that we are asking for an amount in today's prices, i.e. ignoring the effects of inflation.</p>
WpInfo, WpInfS	These questions will be asked about all current pension schemes. We are interested in where respondents get information about their pension scheme and their perception of whether or not they have enough information because...
WpPrPe, WpPePr, WpNoSc	It's important that respondents include all pension schemes that they have ever belonged to or contributed to in the past regardless of what has happened to the contributions that were made to the scheme. We want them to include any pensions

	they are currently receiving, but not to include their current pension scheme (which, if they have one they will have just told us about).
WpRec	Respondents will be asked about up to three past pension schemes – we want to know about their past schemes in order of importance. By most important we mean the scheme they were a member of for most years or the scheme from which they are getting or expect to get most income in retirement. For those pensions they are receiving, respondents will be asked how much they are receiving.
WpMSc	See note above on WpKp.
WpNsc	See note above on WpNP.
WpDS, WpES	Encourage respondents to give an estimate here if they can't remember the exact years.
WpRgh	At this questions we find out , for those past pensions that respondents are not already receiving, what has happened to the contributions that were made to the scheme.  It is possible if you have a very elderly respondent, that he/she might have already received all their pensions from the scheme, though this is very unlikely so shouldn't be offered as a response, even if the respondent is unsure of the answer.  For those schemes that respondents have retained rights in, they will be asked how much they expect to get from the scheme (see note on expected pension above).
WpPw, WpExW	Many pensions have a system whereby if one member of a married couple contributes during their working life benefits may accrue to the spouse if the contributor dies, or if the couple divorces. The final questions of this section are therefore designed to find out if the respondent currently get or expects to get any income from pensions that their husband or wife had contributed to at some point in the past.
WpInfo	Respondents who are currently receiving a pension will be asked whether they felt they needed more information about how much they would receive. This will help us to measure whether or nor their

	income in retirement is what they expected to get.
WpERet	Note the very specific meaning of the term 'early retirement' at this question. For schemes which had a period of service rather than a normal retirement age – the questions should be interpreting as meaning did they retire before they had completed the period of service in their scheme.
WpReas, WpMRea, WpRRe, WpMRRe, WpWkR	The ages at which people are retiring are becoming much more diverse, and the way in which people are moving into retirement is becoming more complex. These questions are designed to find out the role of negative (push) and positive (pull) factors in determining retirement outcomes, and establishing whether retirement was a choice or not. In particular, we are interested if respondents who give 'reached retirement age' as their main reason for retiring were given the opportunity to work past retirement age.
WpPHI	By private health insurance we mean things like BUPA – where you get private health care if you get ill. Dental and friendly plans, which just cover teeth and glasses respectively shouldn't be included.

7. INCOME AND ASSETS	
Question	Notes
IIANow	At this question you are given the chance to skip this section, by coding 'no'. If you do this you must make sure you come back and complete it at a later time/ date, when you should change your answer to this question from 'no' to 'yes'.
IIAWho	If this section is being asked once about a couple who share finances and you have not already coded in the household grid who should answer this section on behalf of the couple – i.e. if you automatically set-up a concurrent interviewing session with both of them – you will be asked to code who the questions will be addressed to. You will not be able to complete the section if the person you code here (or the person who was coded in the grid as answering these questions), has been suspended (see below). If the member of the couple who has been coded here or in the grid as answering these questions on behalf of the couple, has been suspended and is

	<p>unwilling to finish the interview at a later date, you should change what you code here or in the grid and complete the section with the other member of the couple.</p>
IaWork	<p>Because we are interested in incomes over the last year, if the respondent has been widowed in the previous twelve months, it is important that we take into account any income that their spouse may have had during that time. For respondents in this situation, the introductory wording to this question explains this to them.</p> <p>For this reason, many of the subsequent questions in this module will refer to “you and your husband/wife/partner” even though their spouse has died.</p>
IaSPen	<p>This refers to the total state pension that the individual receives. Depending on the age and the circumstances of the individual it could include combinations of basic state pension, minimum income guarantee (formerly known as income support for pensioners), SERPS (the State-Earnings Related Pension Scheme also known as additional pension) and graduated pension. Since the majority of individuals may not know which of these they are getting we are only after the total amount received.</p>
IaPAm, IaPPAm	<p>If the respondent does not know how much state pension they receive because it is paid along with state benefits, they should answer the total amount they receive here and enter 99997 at the benefits questions which will indicate that the amount they get has been counted elsewhere. It’s crucial that the amount they receive is not entered twice as this would mean we will over-estimate their income.</p>
IaPly, IaPlyw	<p>The aim of this module is to get a measure of annual income, so we need to know whether the respondent started receiving their state pension in the last year and is so, which month.</p>
IaPPen	<p>This refers to any non-state pension income, i.e. company or employer pensions, Personal Pensions or self-employment (S226) pension plans.</p>
IaAnIn	<p>This refers to all other forms of annuity incomes apart from pensions. Annuity arrangements are where an individual gives a financial institution a sum of money, and in return the institution agrees to pay the individual a certain income for the rest</p>

	<p>of their life. Note that this definition is on a help screen in the CAPI program.</p>
Iahdb, IaBeB (and follow-up questions)	<p>Since it is easier for respondents to recall benefits in the period in which they are paid than to add it up over the year, we ask benefits separately for each individual, and separately by each benefit. As with state pensions, we need to know if they started to receive it in the last year and if so, which month. Most individuals should only be in receipt of very few of these benefits. Since we are interested in income over the whole year, however, even if they are not currently getting the benefit we also need to know whether they have got it at any point during the past year and if so, how much they got and for how long.</p>
Iahdb, IaBeB (and follow-up questions)	<p>Since it is easier for respondents to recall benefits in the period in which they are paid than to add it up over the year, we ask benefits separately for each individual, and separately by each benefit. As with state pensions, we need to know if they started to receive it in the last year and if so, which month. Most individuals should only be in receipt of very few of these benefits. Since we are interested in income over the whole year, however, even if they are not currently getting the benefit we also need to know whether they have got it at any point during the past year and if so, how much they got and for how long.</p> <p>Note on the pension credit The pension credit came into operation on the 6th October 2003. This benefit replaced the Minimum Income Guarantee (MIG) and it can only be claimed by those over 60. Respondents who are interviewed before 6th October 2004, will have been able to claim both the MIG and the Pension Credit in the past year.</p> <p>A number of checks are used at this question depending on which of the two benefits that the respondent says they have received. This is to because the Pension Credit is more generous than the MIG for some people, so it is important that we collect the amount received under both schemes.</p>
IaA	<p>If the respondent is currently receiving more than one benefit and they are paid together, they may not know how much they are getting from each one. If so, the total amount received for all benefits should be entered at the first of the 'amount'</p>

	<p>question and 9997 should be entered when asked amounts for other benefits. This way we will know that we have recorded their total benefit income. In this situation recording the information this way, is preferable to entering 'don't know' for all of the 'amount' questions. Similarly, if the amount of the benefit has already been counted along with state pension income, you should enter 9997 here. So, if the respondent is unable to give all the component parts of their state pension and benefit income, the most important thing is to get the total amount they receive and not to enter the total amount they get in more than one place.</p>
IaFuel	<p>All respondents aged 60 and over are eligible for a winter fuel payment regardless of income although they do need to actively claim it if they are not receiving the state pension. There should only be one per household though.</p>
IaFAInt	<p>For couple who keep their finances separately and so are both answering this section on their own behalf, there will be an instruction here for them to include only assets held in their sole name. This instruction applies to all the asset and debt questions. There will be a question at the end where they can tell us the net value of any shared assets that they might have.</p>
IaSi	<p>Although the distinction between current and savings accounts is becoming increasingly blurred, a current account is an account used for everyday purposes which typically pays no interest, or only very low interest on balances held. In contrast a savings account typically pays higher interest and is not designed to be used for everyday transactions (even though it may be instant access).</p>
IaSava	<p>If a respondent has both a current and saving account, but their current account is overdrawn, we just want the positive amount in their savings account here i.e. we don't want them to give the amount in their savings account minus their overdraft. Similarly, if the respondent just has an overdrawn current account, they should enter '0' here. We will ask for the amount of their overdraft later in the module.</p>
IaIsa	<p>Respondents may hold cash, life insurance and/or stocks and shares in their ISAs.</p>
IaIP, IaSSS, Iabg, Iauit	<p>Here we are interested in the respondent's</p>

	<p>assessment of what these are worth currently, once any costs associated with selling them, or anything outstanding that is owed on them, has been met. That is, how much you would get, net of any costs or repayments, if you sold them today.</p>
IaShTyp, IaDeNat, IaDeMut, IaDen, IaDem	<p>Many people who own shares only own shares in former nationalised industries (BT, British Gas, Railtrack, etc.) or in former building societies or mutual societies (Abbey National, Halifax etc.) which have 'demutualised'. By 'demutualised' we mean when mutual societies floated on the stock market and gave, or sold, shares to their former account holders.</p> <p>We are interested in separating out these shares from other types of shares and finding out whether they bought/received all/some of these shares at the time of privatisation/demutualisation, as a way of identifying how 'connected' individuals are to the stock market as a method of investment. Similarly, some people may have previously bought/received shares in privatised industries/demutualised societies.</p>
IaSick	<p>This screen displays a summary of the information you've entered about the value of the respondent's financial assets. This primarily to avoid keying mistakes - e.g. entering an extra '0' by accident. Please check this yourself and query/correct any which seem incorrect.</p>
IaLiW, IaSC	<p>There are two types of life insurance in the UK. One type is pure insurance - the individual gives a company money each year. If that individual dies the company pays money to their dependents but if they don't die (before a certain date) the company just keeps all the money. The other type of life insurance has a savings component so even if the individual does not die before a certain date they will receive a sum of money (typically the value of a fund) on that date all the same. The questions here are designed to get at both types of life-insurance since we need to know both separately. Note that the second type is exactly the same as an endowment mortgage, although we do not want them to count their endowment policies here since we will be asking for them in the housing section.</p>
Ialiya	<p>This should include any insurance policy that pays out on death.</p>

Iaprop	This question asks about real assets. Note that only farm or business property should be included here - we have already collected the value of any businesses they own at the section on work and pensions.
Iaregp	All kinds of regular payments from non-household members should be included here – apart from any (such as wages/benefits/pensions etc) that have already been asked about.
Iadebt, Iadebm	Respondents should only say that they currently owe money on credit/store cards if the outstanding balance after the last monthly payment was made was greater than zero.
IaJnt	This question will be asked to both members couple who keep their finances separately (and so are each answering income and assets on their own behalf). Any joint assets they have APART from their current home should be included here. Information about their current home will be covered in the housing section.
IAPK	This refers to any other regular payments the respondent receives. If received a large gift from someone then record in ‘other’.
IAFcon	This question aims to capture how people manage their money even if they only have a little amount to manage.
Iapayw, Iaearn, Iarec, Iaom, Iaomm	In households where there are other adults living who are not eligible for interview, some summary questions about their income from work and other sources and their assets will be asked to one eligible respondent in each household. We understand that some respondents may be reluctant to answer these questions but it is important for us to ask them as household income is an important source of resources, and in order to understand household poverty and inequality we need a household measure of income that includes anything that other adults may earn.

8. HOUSING	
Question	Notes
IHoNow	At this question you are given the chance to skip this section, by coding ‘no’. If you do this you must make sure you come back and complete it at a later

	time/ date, when you should change your answer to this question from 'no' to 'yes'.
IHoWho	If you have not already coded in the household grid who should answer this section – i.e. if you automatically set-up a concurrent interviewing session with all people in household who could answer this section – you will be asked to code who the questions will be addressed to. You will not be able to complete the section if the person you code here (or indeed the person who was coded in the grid as answering these questions), has been suspended (see below).
HoBas	This question will be asked about all adults household members who are not named as householders at HoWho/HoWhN (or married to/cohabiting with a householder).
HoTenu, HoTenuN	This question refers to the tenure of the householder i.e. the person/people in whose name it is owned or rented. This will usually be the person answering the module or their spouse/partner. It may however, be another household member not eligible for interview (for example, if the people eligible for interview are elderly parents living in their son/ daughter's home) or a non-household member. If this is the case, there will be very few follow-up questions about housing circumstances.
HoMove	At this question we want to know the earliest year in which a current member of the household moved to the accommodation.
HoAdpt	All respondents are asked whether their accommodation has been modified in any way to assist people with physical impairments, record any of the features present even if not used by the respondent.
HoRtb, HoRtbe	We are particularly interested in knowing whether the respondent bought their home or has ever bought a home through the right to buy scheme. This was most commonly used in the eighties when Mrs Thatchers government introduced the scheme to allow people to buy their council houses.
New at wave 2 HoMSam	For respondents who are in the same accommodation and held at least one mortgage at

	<p>wave one and still own with a mortgage, we want to update the information about mortgages. Most respondents will not have changed their mortgage arrangements but we still need to update the information about repayments and number of years left to run as these may have changed.</p> <p>HoMSam brings up a list of previous mortgages that the respondent told us about and asks them whether they still have this mortgage. If only the number of years left to run has changed enter yes. If respondents have made arrangements to borrow more money using this mortgage, also code yes as we will collect information on this at the next question.</p> <p>There may be some cases where the respondent had more than one mortgage at wave one but we cannot distinguish between them because they were the same type (repayment, endowment etc) and had the same number of years left to run. In these cases, it doesn't matter in which order the details of these mortgages are collected. The important thing is that the details of each mortgage are updated.</p>
<p>New at wave 2: HoMExt, HoMexta , HoMUse HoMReas</p>	<p>Here we are interested in whether the respondent has borrowed more money using their existing mortgage. If they have, they are asked how much extra they borrowed and the reasons for the extension.</p>
<p>New at wave 2 HoMNew, HoMNUse HoMNReas</p>	<p>Here we are interested in completely new mortgage arrangements. Again we ask respondents why they took out the new mortgage. One common thing that people do is to replace their existing mortgage with a different mortgage (perhaps to take advantage of a lower interest rate or more flexible repayment options for example). In this circumstance, you should code No at HoMSam and yes at HoMNew.</p> <p>In some circumstances paying off the existing mortgage will be the only reason for taking out the new mortgage and this can be coded at HoMNUse. In other circumstances respondents may have borrowed additional money for other uses and this is also asked at HoMNUse.</p>
<p>HoMMis</p>	<p>This question asks about any other mortgages that they have which we have not asked them about.</p>

	This question is intended as a check only, as all mortgages should have been picked up by previous questions.
HoOutM	This question is as at wave 1 and is asked of movers or people who did not hold mortgages last time. Most people will only have one or two outstanding mortgages or loans. We will collect details of up to five outstanding mortgages or loans.
HoMTy	Interest-only mortgages are where the mortgage holder pays only the interest, and will need to find some other way of paying off the amount borrowed when the mortgage expires Equity release schemes are NOT types of mortgages or loans (see below). However, some people may mistakenly think that they are and if they give this answer you can code it here.
HoRmo, HoEvRe, HoOrm	There are two different ways in which people can re-mortgage their home. They can either add to a re-mortgage element to their original mortgage or they can take out a separate additional mortgage. If a respondent has more than one outstanding mortgage or loan, we know that one of these must be a re-mortgage. Respondents with only one outstanding mortgage or loan may tell us that this includes a re-mortgage. Those respondents with only one outstanding mortgage which does not include a re-mortgage, will be asked whether they've ever re-mortgaged their home. Respondents who own outright will also be asked if they ever re-mortgaged their home. We are interested in whether people have ever re-mortgaged because the issue of how individuals use their housing wealth as they get older is a fundamental one for the analysis of wealth and poverty amongst the elderly.
HoRInc	This question asks about equity release schemes. This is where someone who owns their house outright signs over the ownership of the house, in return for receiving a lump sum and a flow of income payments to be made until they die, as well as being allowed to live in the house until they die. It is sometimes called a reverse mortgage, or a home reversion plan. Whilst still relatively rare, it is rapidly becoming more common amongst this group. It is also possible for people who are still in the process of buying their home to have taken out one of these schemes.

	<p>It is possible (although unlikely) that respondents who had taken out an equity release scheme at wave one, have raised more money in this way since then. These may be an extension of the previous scheme or a completely new scheme. For those who had an equity release scheme at wave 1, this question first asks whether any additional money has been raised in any of the ways on the showcard.</p> <p>For those who have raised additional money since wave 1, the questions which follow sometimes ask specifically about the money that has been raised since the last interview and others ask about all the schemes that a respondent may have.</p>
HoCTB	<p>Council tax benefit or rebate is a means-tested benefit and should not be confused with discounts (for example, single person discounts), which are asked about separately at HoDisc.</p>
New at wave 2 HoRet	<p>This question asks about retirement housing. Retirement housing is intended specifically for older people, and usually residents need to be at least 55 or 60. The housing tends to be in a scheme or court of between 20 and 40 flats, or sometimes bungalows. Usually, the housing provides some support for residents but the services provided in retirement housing can differ considerably from scheme to scheme. There are sometimes communal facilities such as a shared lounge or laundry. Residents do not have to be of ill health to live in retirement housing.</p> <p>This is ask or code. Respondents will usually know if they are in retirement housing so if they are unsure then this is unlikely to be the case and therefore code 'no'.</p>
Add in summary of consumption questions, how to deal with packages etc	<p>Hohave asks about durables the respondent may have. The following question will ask which of the durables were bought in the last two years. Whatever is coded here, the amount spent will be asked for. If respondents have a package of a few of the items, code all of the items in package at Hohave, and HohaveB but at Hohv code the total amount at first durable mentioned and code 9997 for the other items in package.</p> <p>If there are communal durables, code them at Hohave but do not report them at HohavB.</p>

HoFood etc	Only if asked, mention exclusion of cleaning products as we need to keep comparability over waves.
HoOHea and HOFuel	Forms of heating are only to be coded if actually used as opposed to just having them available in the home and not used.
HoGPay & HoEpay	Code other forms of payment in 'other'. Some people pay regularly but not by direct debit and this should be coded in 'other'.
HoCC - HoVnew	These questions ask about the respondent's car(s). In many instances you will be confirming that they have the same car as the previous wave but sometimes you will be entering car details from scratch.
HoVow	If details were entered incorrectly last time but still same car, code never had vehicle and enter correct details.
HoVAg	Note that there are different ways in which the age of the vehicle can be recorded. For all vehicles, the year of registration may be given. For all cars with personalised or cherished number plates you should collect the year the vehicle was registered.
HoRmov	<p>If respondent has moved house since the last wave, they will be asked for their reasons for moving. Code 4 (Moved to a more suitable home) is referring to the physical aspects of the building such as being smaller, larger or having special adaptations. In code 12 (Other financial reasons), code any financial reason other than evictions or repossession. This could be reasons concerning the house running costs or for the purpose of freeing up monies.</p> <p>If code 4 is a sole or main reason, there will be a follow up question to gain a more specific answer to why new residence may be more suitable. Code 4 of HorMova (More suitable given respondent's health problems) is referring to physical aspects such as new home being a bungalow or having special adaptations eg wide doors, ramps, alarms or special taps.</p>

9. COGNITIVE FUNCTION	
Question	Notes
See Appendix B below	<p>It is vital that this section is administered systematically so please see the detailed instructions for this module in Appendix B below.</p> <p>Please make sure you enter the serial number on the front page of the cognitive function booklet before you begin.</p>

10. EXPECTATIONS	
Question	Notes
ExRain-ExSMa	<p>For all these questions it may be necessary to reassure respondents that there are no correct or incorrect answers, and encourage them to give a response even if they feel they must generalise.</p> <p>Respondents can select any number from 0 to 100, not just those marked on the card (0,10,20).</p>
ExRain	In this example question, you should only read out the additional instructions in brackets, if the respondent is having problems understanding how they are supposed to answer the question.
<i>New at W2</i> ExMovHa	These questions establish how likely it is that the respondent will move out of their current home at any time in the future. Please note that this refers to a change in <b>permanent</b> residence and includes buying, renting, moving into a residential or nursing home or any other institution, transferring primary residence to a home, which is currently used for holidays only or moving in with relatives or friends. It does not include temporary moves into hospitals, holiday homes or living in two homes simultaneously. If the likelihood of moving at any time in the future is greater than zero then the respondent is asked about the likelihood of moving in the next <b>two</b> years.
<i>New at W2</i> ExMovNb	These questions relate to moves into a nursing home.
ExLo80	The age given in this question will be adjusted according to the age of the respondent.
ExPW	This question is asked to women aged under 60 (for whom question will refer to age 60) and men aged under 65 (for whom question will refer to age

	65), including those not currently in work. These ages have been chosen as they are the state retirement ages.
ExHLim	This question is only asked to those currently in work aged under 65.
ExAInh, ExCInh, ExInhe	These questions are about expectations of receiving an inheritance. For all of these questions property or valuables should be included, though respondents are only prompted to include them at the first of these questions. These questions start with the expectation of receiving any inheritance, then ask about increasing amounts of inheritance.
ExCin, ExCain, ExCpIn	These questions are about expectations of giving an inheritance. Again property and valuables should be included at all questions, though respondents are only prompted to include them at the first of these questions. These questions start with inheritance of £50,000 and depending on their answer respondents are then asked about the chances of leaving any inheritance or an inheritance of £150,000 or more.
ExHva	The wording of this question will be randomly altered – quarter of respondents will be asked ‘increase by 5%’, quarter will get ‘increase by 10%’, another quarter ‘decrease by 5%’ and the final quarter ‘decrease by 10%’. If the respondent does not own their house, you should code 997. They should answer about the property you are interviewing them in – not any other property they may own. If this property is not a house (e.g. a flat), they should answer about their flat. Expectations about housing value are important as for most people their home is the most valuable asset they own.
ExPlan	If the respondent is unable to give an answer from the card, you should probe for the reason they are not able to do so and choose the appropriate ‘Spontaneous’ code.
ExRela - Exrele	
<i>New at W2</i> ExSbInt, ExSbjag, ExDesag	We have also introduced several new questions that will help us understand respondents’ subjective views of ageing. Please encourage respondents to give a specific age in years. Values will be accepted from 0 to 120. Code values higher than this as 120 and make a note of this for the

	pilot debrief.
<i>New at W2</i> ExExpag, ExPosag, ExNegag	These questions identify whether respondents have a positive or negative experience of ageing. Please enter verbatim text of the top three positive and negative aspects of ageing. This will help us to test the questions and, if appropriate, develop code frames for the next stage of piloting the survey.

11. PSYCHOSOCIAL	
Question	Notes
PsCedi	These questions ask about the respondents feeling over the past week – they should answer about the past week even if it wasn't a 'typical' week.
PsCedA-PsCedH	These questions take a slightly unusual form, so you may have to use the prompt for the first few until the respondent learns how we want them to answer. For each question, we want them to say 'yes' – if it's true that 'much of the time in the past week they X' - or 'no' – if it's not true that 'much of the time in the past week they X'. These questions are designed to measure depressed mood.

12. FINAL QUESTIONS	
Question	Notes
FqEthn-FwCultO	These ethnicity questions were asked as part of the HSE 2001 interview, so respondents for whom we have this information will not be asked again. Note that the 'cultural background' questions can be multi-coded.
FqCbth, FqCEng	Respondents from the HSE 1998 sample were asked for their country of birth and so will not be asked it as part of the ELSA interview. Anyone born outside England, including those born in other parts of the UK, will be asked what year they came to live in this country.
FqMqua, FqQual	In both HSE 1998 and 2001, respondents were asked about their qualifications – if we have this information about a respondent he/she will only be asked to report any further qualifications they have obtained since the HSE interview. Any respondents who were not interviewed at HSE (and those who were interviewed and refused re-contact), will be asked about any qualifications they have ever obtained.

FqEnd	<p>In both HSE 1998 and 2001, respondents were asked about their age left education. Only respondents for whom we don't have this information for will be asked as part of the ELSA interview.</p>
FqAddr	<p>This question asks respondents to give a stable contact address. All respondents will be asked this question (including in proxy interviews). As we will be going back to this sample, we would like as many respondents as possible to give us a contact/stable address. In the pilots for wave 1 of this study, we found that a lot of people in this age group were reluctant to give a contact address as they were sure that they were not going to move. However, as people's circumstances can change unexpectedly, try to encourage respondents to give an address and re-assure that we would only contact their contact person if they had moved. Write the details of the contact on the ARF at E1. It's likely that if you interview more than one person in a household they may give the same contact person - if so, there is no need to write the details on the ARF twice - just write, for example, 'same as person 1'.</p> <p>You are able to code at this question that the respondent does not wish to be contacted again - obviously we wouldn't want you to offer this as an option and please only to do this if the respondent adamant that they don't wish to be contacted again. Try to avoid having to code this by re-assuring that they can tell the interviewer in 2 years time that they don't wish to take part then if they still feel the same way at that time.</p> <p>At Wave 1 approximately 80% of respondents gave a stable contact address. In the majority of cases the program will ask you to check the details are still correct, rather than re-collecting. Please look on the cover sheet of the ARF for full details and check with respondent. If they have changed, write the new details on the ARF.</p>
FqProx	<p>This question will be asked in all non-proxy interviews. It is important to the study to keep as many of our sample in the study as possible, and this means collecting as much contact information about them as possible. At Wave 2 we want to want to ask respondents to nominate a close relative or close friend who could act as a proxy in future years if necessary. This is likely to happen in</p>

	<p>the following circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Respondent becomes physically or mentally incompetent</li> <li>- Respondent moves into a residential home and becomes physically or mentally incompetent</li> <li>- Respondent dies and needs someone to complete an exit interview</li> </ul> <p>We will not approach the nominated proxy if the respondent:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- is on holiday</li> <li>- Is temporarily sick</li> <li>- Is temporarily in hospital</li> <li>- Is temporarily away</li> </ul> <p>The proxy interview does not disclose any sensitive information that the respondent has told us in previous waves to the proxy informant. There will be no feedforward data in the exit interview. This interview covers health, work activities and settlement of estate issues.</p> <p>Please be as clear as possible to the respondents so they understand what the nominated proxy will be required to do. You are able to code at this question that the respondent does not wish to be interviewed by proxy - obviously we wouldn't want you to offer this as an option and please only to do this if the respondent adamant that they don't wish anyone to answer on their behalf.</p>
FqCons	<p>This question will be asked in all non-proxy interviews where the respondents have not been interviewed before, or where the respondents did not give any consent at wave 1. Please try to ensure that all respondents read through the form before deciding whether or not to sign. If the respondent is unable to read for any reason, please read it to them.</p> <p>There are two different consents on the form. The first (A) is to give permission for the research team to obtain information about the respondent's health and treatment from the Hospital Episode Statistics database. The kind of information we would obtain would be about admission to hospital and treatment given. The data will be used to help us understand illnesses and treatment and should help us avoid asking very detailed questions about these events at future interviews!</p>

	<p>The second (B) is consent for the research team to obtain information from the Department for Work and Pensions and the Inland Revenue about the respondent's National Insurance Contributions, benefits and tax credits. The kind of information we would help us get a more complete picture about periods of employment, levels of income and pension contributions. Again, it will help us find out more information without burdening the respondent.</p> <p>If possible, to facilitate this data linkage, please try to collect the respondent's National Insurance number. There is a help screen with some places where NI number can be found.</p> <p>If the respondent is happy to agree to both of these things, ask them to print their name and sign and date the form. If the respondent is willing to give consent for one of these data linkages but not the other, simply ask them to cross-out either A or B and then ask them to print their name and sign and date the form. Make sure you write the serial number on the form before giving the white copy to the respondent (as this will help should they wish to revoke their consent in the future). If the respondent is not willing to give consent, simply code this in the CAPI program.</p> <p>If the respondent needs more time to think about it, leave the yellow consent form with them along with an envelope. Tell them if they do decide to sign, to tear off the top copy and send it back to us in the envelope provided.</p>
FqConC	<p>In the majority of cases, the respondent will have given both types of consent at Wave 1. The programme will prompt you to give them a reminder consent form (orange). This is a gesture of good will, as we want respondents to feel fully informed at all times.</p> <p><b>RESPONDENTS DO NOT NEED TO SIGN THE ORANGE REMINDER FORM - IT IS JUST FOR INFORMATION.</b></p> <p>Please tell the respondents that if they wish to withdraw their consent for whatever reason, to write to the address at the bottom of the form.</p>
FqConA and FqConB	<p>Some respondents only gave one type of consent at Wave 1. We want to use this opportunity to try to</p>

	<p>obtain full consents. The program will prompt you to remind the respondent that they gave either the economics or the health consent at Wave 1, and then to ask for the other consent. Probe to find out whether it is likely they will give this consent, or whether they want to stick with what they have already given us. This is so you know which form to give them.</p> <p>If you think they may give the additional consent, give them the yellow consent form and ask them to read and sign the whole thing if they wish to. Remember to give them the tear off slip for their records.</p> <p>If the respondent needs more time to think about it, leave the yellow consent form with them along with an envelope. Tell them if they do decide to sign, to tear off the top copy and send it back to us in the envelope provided.</p> <p>If you do not think they will, give them the orange reminder form, ticking the appropriate box indicating what consent they have given us previously. Point out the address at the base of the form that they can write to if they wish to withdraw their consent for whatever reason. If a respondent does want to withdraw, record it in the CAPI but they must still put the request in writing.</p>
FqNhsc and FqNhscS	<p>This question asks consent to link to NHS mortality records. Since it is asked at HSE, we will not be asking those respondents who have already given us consent. However, we will be asking those who refused at HSE and those who were not interviewed at HSE.</p> <p>We are required to obtain written consent, so if the respondent agrees, ask them to sign the NHS Register Consent Form (pink). As for the consent form for the administrative records linkage, if the respondent needs more time to think about it, then leave the form along with an envelope.</p> <p>In some cases, you may be interviewing in a household where one person gave consent at HSE and the other person didn't. The programme will only prompt you to ask consent from the person whose consent we do not have. If you are asked any questions about why one person is asked and the other not, say 'When you were interviewed for the Health Survey for England you were all asked</p>

	<p>this question. Our records show that we do not have name's consent, for whatever reason, and so we are using this opportunity to ask afresh'.</p> <p>Equally, if someone recalls being asked for this consent previously and refusing, explain that this study is separate from the HSE, and we are trying to obtain as complete a picture about all our respondents as possible. Please emphasise to respondents that they are under no obligation to give us their consent.</p>
Titl, Addr, Tel, Email	<p>As we will be contacting the respondents again, it is very important that the contact details - title, name, surname, addresses and telephone numbers - are accurate. If the details we have already i.e. those that are printed on the ARF labels, there is no need to write them on the ARF/enter them in the Admin. However, if they are incorrect in any way, please be sure to make these corrections on the ARF and then enter them in Admin. For all new partners and new addresses, you will need to record full details of their title/name/surname and the full address and phone number. We want to collect their email addresses both as a way of keeping in touch and because it is interesting in itself to know which of our respondents have email accounts.</p>
FqHelp	<p>As we do not ask directly about literacy problems, please record this here if appropriate.</p>

13. SELF COMPLETION	
Question	Notes
Front page	<p>Make sure you complete the serial number and name on the front page before giving it to the respondent.</p> <p>There are also instructions here which you should draw the respondent's attention to.</p> <p>As with a CAPI interview, if the respondent is unwilling to answer all these questions, please encourage them to answer the ones they are happy to answer.</p>
1-3	<p>These questions are about the respondent's social participation.</p>
4	<p>These questions are about the respondent's mobility.</p>

5-6	These questions are about the respondent's social participation.
7	This question is designed to measure quality of life.
8-10	This question is designed to measure life satisfaction and levels of control.
11-25	These questions are about people's social networks and support.
26-28	These questions are about control at work.
29-30	Question 29 is taken from the Whitehall study and asks people to place themselves on a ladder which represents where people stand in society. It has been used in other studies to measure perceived status and been shown to be highly related to people's health. At Wave Two we have added a second question (30) asking how people believe their place on the ladder has changed.
31-34	These questions are about subjective ageing, that is how people see themselves in society and how they see 'older' people as a whole.
35-38	These questions are about people's drinking habits and are used in the Health Survey for England.
39	There is a space here for respondents to write in anything else they want to tell us.

<b>14. GENERAL</b>	
Date and time stamps	As the CAPI program allows a certain degree of flexibility about when certain modules are completed, it is particularly important that these date and time stamps are set accurately as this will allow us to investigate how the order in which the modules are completed may have affected the answers that are given - this is called context effects.
Who [1], Who [2]	At the end of the section on work and pensions, you will be given the opportunity to abort/suspend one or both of the people in the session. Obviously, we hope that this won't be necessary in many cases and that once a person has begun the interview they will complete it. However, it is possible that someone might refuse to continue part way through the interview or that

	<p>someone might be called away unexpectedly. If you are interviewing someone on their own or both the people in the concurrent session refuse/are unable to continue, you can exit the questionnaire as normal. However, if you have set up a concurrent interviewing session and one of the two people you are interviewing refuses/is unable to continue, then you can choose to suspend/abort them at this point by choosing code 2. If one person drops out before this point, you should continue asking the questions to the person who remains and enter CTRL-R at the questions for the person who has dropped out up to this point. For any people you suspend you should attempt to go back and complete the interview from where they stopped at a later date (NB – you won't be prompted to do this). You can un-suspend them by changing code 2 to code 1 here but remember that if they have not answered some of the questions before this point, you should ask them these questions too. Note that when you do this, you will need to key over the answers given by the other person in the session who has already completed their own interview. Be careful not to overwrite these answers.</p>
RemindA, RemindB, RemindC	<p>You will be prompted to do the measurements section (if needed and you haven't already done it) after Social Participation, before Cognitive Function and at the end of the interview. After doing the measurements interview, when you re-enter the main interview, to get to the point you were up to, just press END.</p>
WhoSo	<p>Before the section on Cognitive Function, you will be asked to code whether anyone else was in the room during the interview up to this point. Note that this means other than the respondent or respondents allocated to the interviewing session. So, for example, if you are doing a concurrent interview with a couple and they were the only people (other than you) present you should code 'no' here – not 'yes – respondent's spouse partner', but if only one of the couple was being interviewed but their partner was in the room as well, you should code 'yes – respondent's spouse/partner' here.</p>
ScIntA	<p>During concurrent interviews you will be prompted just before the section on cognitive function to ask one of the respondents to leave the room and do their self-completion while you</p>

	<p>complete CF/EX/PS/FQ in private. It is important to stress to the person who leaves the room that they should not come back in until asked to do so, so they don't interrupt the private questions. Note that in all interviews, if there is someone else in the room who is not being interviewed, you should ask them to leave the room at this point as well. The first person allocated to the session will always be asked to do their private CAPI session first.</p>
Sc4End	<p>During concurrent interviews, after the first person has answered their private questions in CAPI, you will be prompted to ask the respondents to swap i.e. first person to do their self-completion while second person does their CAPI. At this point you should collect back the second person's completed self-completion.</p>
Sc6End	<p>In one-person sessions (or concurrent sessions that have become one person sessions because you have suspended someone part way through), you will be prompted to leave the self-completion at the end of the interview.</p>
IaHoCk	<p>If you have skipped either the section on Income and Assets or the section on Housing, or both, you will be prompted at the end of the interview to either go back to complete them or arrange a time to come back to do them. In order to easily get back to the beginning of those sections, choose the appropriate code in CAPI, you will then get a check – instead of suppressing it, simply press ENTER, this will take you back automatically to the beginning of the section.</p> <p>If you are completing these modules on a later date, the easiest way to get to the beginning of them is to go to this question (by pressing END) and then choosing which one you want to complete and pressing ENTER at the check.</p>
Vouch	<p>At the end of the interview you will be asked whether any further action is needed with regards to vouchers. If cheque has the wrong details on it, you will need to tear the corner off, and code that a replacement cheque is needed. It will be sent with the thank you letter. If there is someone in the household who did not get an advance letter (eg if they refused to be recontacted or are a new partner) they will be entitled to a voucher. Code at this question, and again, it will be sent with the thank you letter.</p>

Interview length	At the end of the household and the individual interview, you should enter how many minutes each of these interviews took to complete. In addition to the lengths entered by you, we will also have the computer timings available.
------------------	---

## 6 ADMIN AND RETURN OF WORK

### Completing the Admin Block

When you have finished all your interviewing at an address, please complete the Admin details before returning your work.

In households where you have completed the household grid, and therefore established who is eligible for interview, you will need to make sure that individual outcome codes for all eligible respondents are recorded both on the ARF (at E2) and in the Admin block (at IndOutC). All productive individual outcome codes (11, 13, 21, 23) will be computed for you, as will code 44 (refusal during interview). Note that you will only be presented with computed individual outcome codes/asked to enter unproductive individual outcomes in the Admin block, if you have completed the household grid. If you haven't completed the household grid you will not have established who to interview in the household so you are not asked to record individual outcomes on the ARF.

For all individuals who are interviewed by proxy (codes 13 and 23), you will be asked to enter the reason that you conducted a proxy interview. For all individuals who were interviewed in person (codes 11 and 21), you will be asked to enter their self-completion status (at ScStat) i.e. whether it has been done and will be returned by you, whether it has been left behind with the respondent or whether the respondent refused/did not complete the self-completion. For respondents who were not interviewed/interviewed by proxy, this will be computed as = 4. You need to make sure that the self-completion status is recorded on the ARF at D2 for all eligible respondents. If the respondent did not complete the self-completion and it was not left with them to return, you will be asked to record the reason why it was not done/left.

You will also need to make sure that the final outcome codes for the household is recorded on the ARF (at F1)/in the Admin (at Out2d). Productive final outcome codes (11, 12, 21) and code 44, refusal after Household module, will be computed for you in Admin and you just need to record this on the ARF. For unproductive households (other than code 44) you will have to enter the appropriate code in Admin.

For all addresses (except for outcomes 41 and 90), you will be asked to enter at *NumTrace* how many addresses you personally visited because you thought a sample member lived there. Usually, at least one of the sample members is living at the address on the ARF label, so this will just be one. If you have visited more than one address you will be asked to enter the outcome at each of the previous addresses. In additional households (i.e. where a household has split), you should enter the total number of addresses you visited in order to try and locate the sample member who had split from the original household (NB - you should still count the originally issued address as the first address so in additional households *Numtrace* should

always be greater than one). In all original households, where *NumTrace*=1 (i.e. at least one of the sample members was resident at the originally issued address), you will be asked to confirm whether or not the address and telephone number printed on the ARF was correct (at *AdrChk*). Remember we will be re-visiting these addresses so please make any corrections, however minor to the address and phone number. In all original households where *NumTrace*>1 (i.e. they were not living at the original address) and in all additional households, you will be asked to enter the final address (and telephone number) for the sample member(s) – for both productive and unproductive addresses. You will also be asked to enter the details of the area which you should have coded on the ARF. If the sample members were no longer living at the original address and you did not find a follow-up address/were not able to attempt an interview at the follow-up address because it was outside your area, you will not be asked to enter this information.

Where applicable, for all individuals who gave a contact stable address when asked in the CAPI interview (either new respondent, or a wave 1 respondent who did not give a stable address at W1, or any corrected or new addresses), you will be asked to enter these details in Admin (which you should have written on F1 on the ARF). If more than one person in the same household has given the same contact person/address, you will be able to code this and will not need to enter the same details twice. Similarly, for all individuals who nominated their own proxy when asked in the CAPI interview, you will be asked to enter these details in the Admin as well (taking this from section E1 on the ARF). For proxy interviews, you will need to enter the contact details of the proxy informant in the Admin, if given and if different from the stable address. For all productive addresses, you will have the chance to record a new address for the respondents if they have told you that they are planning to move. Also for all productive addresses you will be asked to record any information that may be useful for the interviewer in 2 years time and also whether or not you used any of the 'flexible' features of the program.

### **Returning your work to the office**

Please transmit your work and bring back all your materials (used and unused) to the debriefing). Before you return your work check that you have completed everything you have to do at the household. You will need to return

- ARFs
- Cognitive function booklets for all respondents who were interviewed in person
- Self completion booklets for all respondents who completed them (unless you have left them behind for the respondent to post back themselves)
- Signed consent forms
- Timed walk record cards
- Any nurse documents

Consent forms should be returned in the same envelope as the ARF. Self-completions, timed-walk record cards and cognitive function booklets can be sent together but should always be returned in a separate envelope to the ARFs.

At the end of your work please return your stopwatch and tape measure.

If you have any problems during the fieldwork period you should report this quickly, so that we can try to do something to address the situation.

## General Admin Notes

**Appointment cards:** Whenever you leave an appointment card with a respondent always write the project number on it – in this instance P2158. Respondents often only have the appointment card when they phone the Brentwood office. If there is not a project number on the card reception does not know which team to put the call through to. We then risk either annoying the respondent, as they are passed from team to team; or insufficient information being taken to identify who the message is for.

**Receiving an updated programme from the host machine:** Please pick up the new programme, as explained, on .

**Number of cases in a Slot:** Each slot on your laptop can hold up to 99 serial numbers. Once you go over 99 we irretrievably lose any work that you do. The 99 limit includes all serial numbers, including those with an outcome code, even if they have been transmitted. Contact Yellow Team or a supervisor straight away if at any time you do have 99 or more serial numbers in one slot, so that we may rectify the problem before any interviews are lost.

**Receipt envelopes:** *Please* use a Receipt Envelope every time you send in receipts, train tickets, etc to Brentwood. Should a receipt get separated from the Claims Form or your ARFs we have no way of telling who it is from unless it is in a properly completed Receipt Envelope.

**Self-completions return envelopes:** Self-completions must never be sent back in the same envelope as the ARFs. This is to keep the identity of the respondent separate from any information that they have given us, to maintain confidentiality. For P2158 we are monitoring who has sent the self-completion back to Brentwood: you or the respondent. Please ensure that you use the correct envelope. If you are returning the self-completion use a normal Returns Envelope (but not the same one that the ARF is in!). You may send several self-completions back together in the same return envelope. If the respondent is returning the self-completion themselves, then you should leave them one of the white C4 envelope marked with a Y that you were issued with for this purpose.

**Supplies:** If you need any standard supplies please contact Brentwood in the normal way.

**Progress Chasers:** The Yellow Team will want to check your progress. If you are having difficulty completing your assignment *please* let her know.

**Back up Discs:** Back up your work at frequent intervals. If all else fails we can usually recover lost work from the backup disc (although not if your problem is 99+ cases in one slot).

## 7 CONTACTS

If you have any queries relating to this project then you should contact:

- Hayley Cheshire on 020 7549 8544, Kate Cox on 020 7549 5142, or Dan Philo on 020 7549 9555

- Audrey Hale or any member of the Yellow Team
- Your Area Manager
- In an emergency where the program is failing, you can contact the programmer Sven Sjodin on 020 7250 1866.

Good luck and we hope you enjoy working on this project.

## Appendix A Protocol for the timed walk

### Introduction and purpose

These instructions, accompanied by the video, demonstration and practice session during the face to face briefing with the project researchers, will tell you how to administer the 'Timed Walk'.

The purpose of this test is to objectively measure the overall health and level of disability of a large population of people aged 60 years and above. Walking speeds in older people have been shown to be very predictive of level of disability, future use of health care and mortality. This test will allow us to gather very important information about the respondents.

This is a unique opportunity to gain valuable information because we will be able to compare the results we gather with a large study that has been done in the United States. We will be comparing the data we gather now with the data collected at the last interview and at future interviews. In addition, we will be comparing our findings with those from the US. As a result, it is very important that the test is performed the same way every time.

Reassure respondents that it is very important that they repeat the test this time, even though they have done it before. This is one of the best ways we can measure everyone's physical well being in a standard way so that we can compare people of different characteristics, at different times and in different countries with confidence that the test 'means' the same in all circumstances.

### Content

The Timed Walk involves timing how long it takes to walk a distance of 8 feet (244 cm). Our target is to measure **everyone** we interview who is aged 60 or older, as this is a key part of the survey. That said, the test should only be performed if it is safe to do so.

### Description of equipment

You will use a tape rule with the correct distance marked on it, a measurement card to record the time of each test and a stopwatch to carry out the timed walk.

The tape rule is easy to operate and has a lock on it to keep it open while it is being used. Please release this lock **very carefully** as it can easily hurt you or someone else. Please also ensure that it does not become an obstacle that could trip someone.

You will be given a measurement card to remind you of the key points to remember when performing the test and record the test results as you go along. The card should be placed at the end of (or, if necessary, adjacent to) the walking course so that you can easily fill in the information after each walk is completed.

### Stopwatch instructions

Before you begin interviewing please ensure you are familiar with using the stopwatch. You only need to remember three things.

*To change from time mode to stopwatch mode:*  
Press the middle button labelled "Mode".

*To reset the stopwatch:*

Press the button on the left-hand side.

*To start and stop the stopwatch:*

Press the yellow button on the right hand side labelled "Start . Stop".

When you record the timed walk it is very important that you do so accurately. The last four digits of the stopwatch will display the time in hundredths of a second e.g. 02.34. Please transcribe this carefully on to the timed walk recording card and from there into the CAPI programme.

### Introducing the test

As closely as possible, follow the instructions in the CAPI programme and this protocol to describe the test and how to perform it correctly. Do not provide any additional encouragement beyond the script provided in the CAPI programme and this protocol.

The detailed instructions and demonstration may seem unnecessary to some respondents. Say that you are going to explain the test to the respondent in detail since this is the best way to make sure that everyone does the test in a similar manner.

### Performing the test safely

Your safety and that of the respondents is paramount in this study. The Timed Walk is a very safe test to perform and has been administered to ten thousand respondents in the US without incident.

Before the respondent performs the test, you will have the chance to assess the safety and the respondent's willingness to perform the test. If you do not believe the respondent is safe then do not conduct the test.

Once the respondent has consented to perform the test, make sure that there are no barriers to safety such as poor lighting, loose rugs, furniture or pets in the way. If possible, and with the respondent's permission, remove any barriers to safety as appropriate. Do not risk harming yourself by moving heavy furniture.

The test may be performed in a hallway or sheltered corridor if there is no suitable space elsewhere as long as the surface and lighting are good and the location is safe and reasonably private. In rare instances where these criteria are met, it could be conducted outside however it is vital that you avoid dark spaces or uneven floor surfaces. It is strongly preferable to conduct the timed walk on a floor that is level, not carpeted and not slippery (e.g. highly polished). If all the available space is carpeted, choose a floor with the thinnest and hardest carpet.

If the respondent is wearing slippers or high-heeled shoes or is not wearing shoes, ask them if they can change into a pair of low-heeled shoes or trainers. If they do not have a suitable pair of shoes it would be safer for them to do the test in bare feet rather than in socks or tights.

Walking aids (such a stick or zimmer frame) may be used on this test but the respondent should not rely on the support of another person. Continue to record the time the test takes by watching the respondent's feet. That is to say, do not start or

stop counting from the time the walking aid crosses the line. Instead, focus on when the first foot touches the floor, fully across the line.

#### Demonstrating the test

Demonstrate the walk for the respondent. Remind the respondent not to begin to do the walk until after you have demonstrated it. It is very important that the interviewer demonstrates each step correctly. Experience has shown that respondents follow more closely what the interviewer does rather than what he or she says. If the respondent indicates that he or she does not understand how to do the test, demonstrate it again rather than relying on repeating verbal instructions. Repeat the demonstration only once. If the respondent still does not understand, skip the test. Do not 'coach' the respondent.

#### Criteria for an acceptable test

Please note the following criteria must be met for a measurement to be considered acceptable. If they are not met, the walk should be repeated:

- i) Respondent begins with both feet together at the beginning of the course.
- ii) The interview starts timing when either foot is placed down on the floor across the start line. The *whole* foot must be across the line before the test is started, so if the respondent is shuffling, or puts their foot down so that it straddles the line, start the stopwatch when the *whole* foot has crossed the line.
- iii) The respondent walks and does not race.
- iv) The respondent walks all the way past the end of the tape ruler.
- v) The interviewer stops timing when either foot is placed down on the floor across the finish line. The *whole* foot must be across the line before the test is complete, so if the respondent is shuffling, or puts their foot down so that it straddles the line, stop the stopwatch when the *whole* foot has crossed the line.

#### Safety during the test

The interviewer should not do the test if the respondent appears to be in danger of falling.

If space allows, the interviewer should stand close enough to the respondent to offer support if he or she loses balance or trips. Ideally, position yourself standing at the respondent's side, slightly behind him or her. If there is not enough room to walk alongside the respondent, for example if you are in a narrow corridor, double-check your assessment that they are safe to conduct the test and stand at the end of the course facing the respondent. You will then be close to the respondent as they turn to start the second test. This is the time when an individual is most likely to need to check their balance. Standing at the end of the course will also enable you to see the respondent complete the test clearly.

If you are walking at the respondent's side, slightly behind him or her, one hand should be positioned close to the respondent (at the hip or waist level) but you should not be touching them. If you find yourself in a situation where the respondent

appears to lose balance, you may want to help them to recover their balance by placing both hands on their trunk. If the respondent begins to fall it is not safe to try to catch him or her. It is more appropriate to attempt to steady them or, if necessary, to slowly ease them to the floor. Do not hold their arm, hold around their body. This will prevent the respondent **and you** from becoming injured.

If the respondent does fall call for help if appropriate, but if they are not injured, help them by first having them get on their knees or on all fours. Place a chair next to the respondent and have him or her support him or herself onto the chair. If assistance is needed, lift under the shoulders; do not hold their arm, hold around their body. Do not try to lift the respondent alone from the floor or put yourself at risk. Remember to seek help if it is needed and to complete a report for any incident of this kind.

If the respondent loses their balance or falls, do not attempt to complete the walking test.

#### Interviewer script

The following pages provide an appropriate script. Please try to use the same wording every time you administer the Timed Walk so that all tests are administered consistently between interviewers, over time, and between studies.

When you are ready to complete the Timed Walk select Ctrl- <Enter> and choose Measurements. The opening screen will clarify who should complete the Timed Walk test (i.e. individuals who are aged 60 or older and who are completing an interview on their own behalf).

***(A) First, follow the CAPI screens in Block MM which will help you exclude individuals for whom it would not be appropriate to carry out the Timed Walk.***

***(B) If appropriate, begin to set up and introduce the Timed Walk***

I: "OK, we'll proceed then. I'd like to find a space we can use to do the walk. We'll ideally need 12 feet of space."

*If you cannot find a suitable space or do not feel the space is safe, tell them "It would be safest to skip this test and move on to the next set of questions."*

Ensure that the respondent is wearing appropriate footwear at this point. If not, ask them to change their shoes or to put shoes on.

I: "I'm going to place the measuring tape alongside the space where the walk will take place. This is our walking course. I want you to walk to the other end of the course at your usual speed, just as if you were walking down the street to go to the shops. Walk all the way past the other end of the tape before you stop."

If there is space "I will walk with you. Do you feel this would be safe?"

*If they answer "No" tell them "It would be safest to skip this test and move on to the next set of questions."*

I: "Now I'd like to demonstrate how to do the test. Please don't get up until after I demonstrate the test."

"You will start by lining your feet up at the starting point."

If there is space say: "I'll walk along side you the whole time during the test."

"For the test I'll say "Ready? Begin" Are you ready to go now?"

Interviewer gets the timer ready. Places the card at the end of the walking course.

"Now, I am going to time you as you walk the course. I will be asking you to walk the course two times. I'd like you to stand here with your feet lined up. Start walking when I say "Begin". "Ready, begin"

*Record the results of the first trial in hundredths of a second, exactly as it is shown on the timer. If the respondent was unable to complete the test or you stopped them because of safety reasons, do not attempt to complete the test. Tell them "It would be safest to skip this test and move on to the next set of questions." Otherwise, continue.*

I: "Now I want you to repeat the walk. Remember to walk at your usual pace and go all the way past the other end of the course. I'd like you to stand here with your feet lined up. Start walking when I say "Begin". "Ready, begin"

*For the second trial ensure that the respondent walks back along the course they have already covered. Record the results of the second trial in hundredths of a second.*

**(C) Return to the lap top, enter the data and complete Block MM**

In instances where the respondent did not complete the test, the CAPI programme will prompt you to briefly describe why.

In all instances, follow the protocol.

## Appendix B Protocol for Cognitive Module

The cognitive module is very similar to the one used in Wave One (though the numeracy questions and the second prospective memory task have been dropped) so interviewers who took part in the fieldwork during 2002 will have some familiarity with the protocols. There is also an inclusion of a literacy test which was not included in the first pilot questionnaire.

Nevertheless, it is very important that interviewers who worked on ELSA at Wave One refresh their skills by reading this protocol thoroughly and rehearsing the activities during the pilot. This is because it is vital the module is administered systematically in every case and that differences and similarities from Wave One are properly understood. At Wave Two, interviewers will need to be able to administer the tests *and* be able to reassure respondents about repeating the activities.

The great majority of respondents will have completed this test at Wave One and some may be surprised to meet the same questions again. It is important that you reassure respondents that it is a deliberate part of the study to ask people to repeat certain activities at each interview so that we can understand how and when people's circumstances change. One of the tasks will change from wave to wave; the CAPI programme selects one of four word lists for the memory task so that each household member receives a different list and each individual receives a range of lists over time. However a number of the tasks, such as the animal naming exercise and the letter cancellation test, are repeated. Though some respondents may find the task easier on the second or third occasion, and a few may even practice, the research evidence shows that using the same task is still the best way to measure changes in memory and concentration over time.

The following equipment is needed:

Cognitive Module - Interviewer recording booklet

Pencil

Clipboard (if you need a clipboard please speak to a member of the Yellow Team)

### Considerations prior to cognitive testing

Good cognitive testing assumes that the optimal performance of the respondent has been obtained. As a minimum, this means that if a participant normally uses reading glasses or hearing aids, these must be used during testing. It also means that the tests are performed in private i.e. only the interviewer and respondent should be in the room at the time and that the settings should be as free as possible from interruption or disturbance. At the end of the CAPI module you will be asked to record whether or not these conditions were observed. If there are any circumstances which you feel interfered with test performance, please record this information.

### Considerations during testing

The participants should be given encouragement during the testing, but do not give any specific feedback or assistance beyond what is specified in the instructions.

*Please be sure to administer each test exactly as specified.* This includes delivering each test instruction precisely as written. Even subtle departures from the written

instructions and procedure can influence the respondent's performance. It is crucial that these tests are performed in a standardised way by all interviewers in order that we can compare the performance of different respondents in this study and compare our findings with other studies.

*Please note that for timed tasks, precise timing is of crucial importance.*

### **Debriefing participants**

Following testing, some participants may request feedback about their performance. *Specific feedback should not be given.* You can say "Everybody finds it difficult, you have done fine" but do not say exactly how well they have performed, and never provide the correct answers.

Indeed participants should not be encouraged to dwell on their performance in terms of good, average or poor. For example, it is not unusual for people to be concerned about poor memory performance when in fact their scores are quite good. For participants who need reassurance, it may be helpful to reiterate that the tests are designed to be difficult. In rare cases where the respondent feels genuinely concerned about their performance, they may be advised to discuss their concerns with their general practitioner.

### **Scoring cognitive tests**

Note that for cognitive tests, "don't know" responses should be entered as incorrect. In this section the CAPI will not allow you to enter Ctrl-K. This is because experience shows that such responses are usually associated with inability or difficulty in doing the task. Try to encourage respondents to "Just have a go".

### **Description of specific cognitive tests** (*question names in brackets*)

- Literacy test (*CfLita to CfLith*)

This test aims to establish the respondent's ability to understand and use information contained in textual material. The respondent is given a short text (a medicine label) and asked four questions about the text with increasing difficulty.

First of all, the respondents are asked two questions regarding their own reading skills and whether they need help with reading. Then they are asked to read the short text which is presented on a show card. Give the respondents sufficient time to read the label but if respondent reports problems reading the label or appears to be struggling, do not help but say "We'll just start and see how far we get". If the respondent cannot answer any or all of the questions then code Ctrl-K (or Ctrl-R if they refuse) as appropriate. Emphasise that the label refers to a hypothetical medical label and respondents should not be answering from their own knowledge. When coding the answer provided, only code whether it is correct or incorrect from the correct answers provided on screen. You will not need to enter the actual answers given by the respondent.

For question CfLite which asks for the respondent for three conditions, you should only code correct if all three conditions (but any three from the list on the screen) are provided, otherwise you should enter incorrect. Stop the respondent after they have

provided three correct conditions to prevent the respondent from reciting the whole list.

- Self-rated memory (*CfMetM*)

This is an indication of whether the respondent is worried about their memory.

- Orientation in time (*CfDatD, CfDatM, CfDatY, CfDay*)

Knowing the day and date is a simple but effective test of memory. The respondent will be asked the date and day, you will need to code whether they got the day of month, month, year and day of the week correct. If the respondent does not mention any element of the day and date then you can prompt.

- Prospective memory instructions (*CfProM*)

Sometimes referred to as “remembering to remember”, prospective memory concerns memory for future actions. In Wave Two of ELSA we have one prospective memory task (rather than the two included at Wave One). The instruction for this task is given at this question near the beginning of the interview and involves asking the respondent to write their initials at the top left-hand corner of a piece of paper which you will give them attached to a clipboard, with a pencil which you will also give them. The paper that we want them to write on is the third page of the interviewer recording booklet – the page on which they will carry out the letter cancellation task. The CAPI programme will prompt you to attach this booklet, open to the correct page, to the clipboard and hand it to the respondent.

- Word list learning (*CfLsInt to CfLisEn*)

This is a test of verbal learning and recall, where the participant is required to learn a list of 10 common words.

The respondent will be asked to recall the words immediately and later on in this section of the interview (delayed word list recall).

There are four different lists. A different list will be given to different members of the household and respondents will not be given the same list as they were at Wave One. The computer will decide which of the lists to use.

The list should, if possible, be presented by the computer using a recorded voice. The CAPI program will prompt you to activate a test message to check that the respondent can hear the recorded computer voice and allow you to adjust the volume if necessary. Ensure that the computer voice is not too loud as this produces distortions. If the recorded computer test message cannot be heard by the respondent, please adjust the volume using the instructions on the last page of this document. Please call the help desk if you still have no success with adjusting the volume of your laptop.

If, despite adjustments, the respondent cannot hear the computer voice then you will have the opportunity to read the list to the respondent. The respondent should only hear the list once. You should read the list clearly and at approximately two-second intervals (imitating the pace and clarity of the computer voice).

Please write down, on the first page of the booklet provided, each word that the respondent recalls. The respondent can recall the words in any order. Do not interrupt the respondent. Note that each word in a list starts with a different letter of the alphabet, so if there is not time to write the words in full, you can abbreviate them by writing down the letter with which they start. Take care not to count any words the respondent says which are not on the list (even if the respondent misheard the word). You will be asked to enter the number of words the respondent recalled correctly.

If the respondent mis-hears a word you should **not** count it as correct.

- Verbal fluency – animal naming (*CfAniSt, CfAni*)

This is a test of how quickly participants can think of words from a particular category, in this case naming as many different animals as possible within one minute. **Only if** the participant asks for clarification, explain that animals include birds, insects, fish etc. If the participant gets stuck, encourage them with “Can you think of any more?”

Respondents are asked to name as many different animals as they can think of in one minute. The timing will be controlled by the computer – you will need to press ‘1’ and enter when prompted to start the test. Write the responses on the sheet provided. **It is very important that the flow of the respondent is not limited in any way.** If the respondent is saying words more rapidly than can be written down in full, switch to a suitable abbreviation such as first letters or a tally. If this is necessary, however, be certain to monitor for repetitions, which do not count towards the total. After one minute has passed, the computer voice will say ‘Stop, now’.

You will be asked to enter the total number of different animal names given by the respondent. Do not count repetitions and do not count redundancies (e.g. white cow, brown cow). Do not count name animals (e.g. Spot, Bambi, or – as was queried in briefings - Yogi Bear!). However, different breeds (e.g. dog, terrier, poodle) and different gender or generation-specific names (e.g. bull, cow, steer, heifer, calf) each count as correct. If the respondent gives the name of an animal which you have not heard of (e.g. kudu, echidna) give them the benefit of the doubt and count them as correct.

- Prospective memory test (*CfMem, CfMemS*)

The interviewer recording booklet, which has been opened to the Letter Cancellation page (see below), will be handed to the respondent attached to the clipboard along with a pencil. At this point the participant should remember to write their initials on the top left-hand corner of the page. The score is based on their ability to do this without being reminded. If they make no response within 5 seconds, you will need to give them the reminder.

**Please make sure you wait for exactly 5 seconds before prompting, since the timing is crucial to this test.**

The respondent can get both actions correct (writing initials, using the top left-hand corner) or get only one action correct (e.g. writing initials in the right-hand corner, or writing their name in the left-hand corner) or neither action correct, before or after a prompt.

The CAPI programme will ask you to record whether the respondent needed a prompt and, after the Letter Cancellation task (see below), whether they wrote their initials, and whether they did this in the correct place.

- Letter Cancellation (*CfLet*)

This is a test of attention, mental speed and visual scanning. The participant is given a page of random letters of the alphabet and asked to cross out as many “Ps” and “Ws” as possible within one minute. They need to do this both as quickly and as accurately as possible.

**Exact timing is crucial for this test.** The timing will be controlled by the computer. Do not allow them to start before giving all the instructions. Be sure to make it clear to the participant exactly when they should start. The computer voice will tell them when to stop. You should immediately ask them to underline the letter on which they finished. This means, wherever their eye has reached, **not** the last P or W that they have underlined.

The completed Letter Cancellation task will be scored by ELSA staff. For this reason it is vital that you remember to write the respondent’s serial number in the boxes provided on the **front** of the booklet. You will need to return completed booklets for each respondent who completes the test.

- Delayed word list recall (*CfLisD*)

Again, please write down on the sheet provided, each word that the respondent recalls. Note that each word in a list starts with a different letter of the alphabet, so if there is not time to write the words in full, you can abbreviate them by writing down the letter with which they start. Take care not to count any words the respondent says that are not on the list. You will be asked to enter the number of words the respondent recalled correctly.

## **Appendix C Referring to documents during the interview**

Note: If people have direct debits or standing orders, their bank statements can be used for a lot of the information below.

### ***Rental payments and housing benefits:***

- Shorthold tenancy agreement
- Housing benefit statement
- Rent Card or Rent book

### ***Mortgage***

- Amount and amount outstanding: Mortgage statement
- Monthly repayments: Bank statement,
- Monthly repayments: Building society letter of notification of interest rate change

### ***Council Tax***

- Council tax bill, statement or payment book

### ***Insurance policies***

- Policy document
- Bank statement

### ***Pay from work***

- Payslip

### ***Income from self-employment***

- Notice of Tax assessment – form 300 CODA or SHIP – prepared by IR after submission of accounts/ tax return – sets out income, deductions, any allowances, amount on which tax is chargeable and tax payable
- Annual accounts (including summary)
- Tax return (self-employment section SE1-SE4)

### ***Tax credits***

- Payslip (if received in pay)
- Order book/ receipt from PO (if received by order book)
- Letter from IR (If paid direct to bank/building society)
- Bank statement (If paid direct to bank/building society and no letter available)

### ***Benefits***

- Letter or notification from DWP (BR2198 or BR2199) if paid into bank
- Bank statement if paid into bank and no letter available
- Giro cheque book
- Receipt from PO if cashed at PO using benefit payment card
- Order book

### ***Pensions***

- Contributions: payslip
- Accumulated amounts, scheme name: Latest annual statement from pension scheme

### *Savings and Investments*

- Bank statement
- Building society statement or book
- TESSA book or statement
- Latest annual statement from Unit Trusts, PEPs or ISAs
- Shares – amount: share certificate (for number of shares, but not value)
- Shares – amount and dividend income: Dividend note (interim or final) from the company which issues the stocks or shares. Comes with the cheque and also states holding details
- Life Insurance – Annual statement
- Debts: latest loan or credit card statements

### *NI number*

- Payslip
- Benefit book
- Tax return
- Annual pension statement

## Appendix D How to adjust the volume control on your laptop

MODEL		How to adjust the volume....
Toshiba 210		The laptops do not contain a sound card and therefore are not useable on this project. DO NOT CONDUCT ANY INTERVIEWS IF YOU HAVE A TOSHIBA 210 - CONTACT YOUR AREA MANAGER IMMEDIATELY
Toshiba 320 Toshiba 4010 Toshiba 4070 Toshiba 4200 Toshiba 4300		Adjust the volume by moving the dial located on the left-hand side of the laptop.
Del Latitude		Press Fn+PgUp to increase the volume Press Fn+PgDown to decrease the volume

The information you provide will help the government to ensure that the health care and pension system meets people's needs.

The study will not be of direct benefit to you, although the results of health measures will be sent to you or your GP if you agree to this.

### **Who is paying for the study?**

Half of the funding for the first five years of ELSA has come from a number of UK government departments. The other half of the funding for the study has been provided by the National Institute on Aging from the United States who also fund a parallel study in the US.

### **Who is carrying out the study?**

The study is being carried out by some of Britain's leading research organisations in health, economics and social research:

- National Centre for Social Research
- International Centre for Health and Society, University College London
- Institute for Fiscal Studies
- Cambridge University

### **Who can I contact about the study?**

If you have any more questions, or would like to inform us of a change in your circumstances such as a new address please contact us on the freephone number 0800 652 4569.

Alternatively, you can write to:

Helen Selwood  
National Centre for Social  
Research  
100 Kings Road  
Brentwood  
Essex  
CM14 4LX

You can find out more about the study, or contact us, via the ELSA web site:

<http://www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa/>

**ELSA** English  
Longitudinal  
Study of  
Ageing

# **Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over**

This leaflet gives you more information about the content of the second round of this study and answers some of the questions you may have. If you have any queries or need to contact us, please call freephone 0800 652 4569

## What is the study about?

As you may know, the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing (ELSA) is a major research project that explores the lives of people who are aged 50 and over, and their partners. We plan to interview members of the study every two years.

Over 12,000 people participated in the first round. We would very much like to speak to all of you again – we cannot replace you with anyone else. We hope to look at how your circumstances and experiences may have changed or stayed the same over the last couple of years. We do hope that you will take part again, and enjoy the experience.

## Is the survey confidential?

As before, we will take very great care to protect the confidentiality of the information you give us. The study results will never be in a form that can reveal your identity. Your name and address will only be known to the researchers at NatGen and will not be stored with the information you provide.

## What does the study involve?

The second round of ELSA is similar in many ways to the first round. Again, an interviewer will visit you in your home.

### Interviewer visit

When the interviewer visits, they will ask you more questions about things we believe are important in the lives of people aged 50 and over.

Topics covered will include:

- Health
- Housing
- Finances
- Quality of life

There are new and different questions throughout, and this time we will ask you more about your own experiences of growing older!

### Nurse visit

We have introduced a nurse visit to

the second round. This should be a familiar experience for those of you who took part in the Health Survey for England. If you agree, a nurse will visit you and ask to take a variety of health measurements such as:

- Blood pressure
- Height and weight
- Blood sample

Your interviewer will give you a leaflet which tells you more about the nurse visit. If you agree to give a blood sample, the nurse will ask you for your written consent.

Your participation is, of course, entirely voluntary, so you are welcome to change your mind at any time.

Your interviewer and nurse will be happy to address any concerns you may have.

## Why are you important?

We are gradually building up a picture of people living in Britain aged 50 and over. This age group now accounts for half of the

nation's spending and three quarters of the nation's wealth. Many now retire earlier and enjoy an active and healthy retirement, while many others struggle financially or suffer poor health.

## Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

Some time ago you took part in the first stage of a study on ageing, conducted jointly by the National Centre for Social Research and academic researchers from University College London and the Institute for Fiscal Studies. The study is funded by a number of Government Departments in Britain and the National Institute on Aging in the United States. Your contribution helped make the first wave of the study a success, and we are writing to you now about the next stage, which is now called the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing (ELSA). ELSA explores the health, lifestyles and financial situation of people as they grow older.

We would like to revisit everyone who participated in the study during 2002, to conduct a second interview to see how their lives have changed over the last two years. Everyone who is interviewed will receive a token of appreciation for their help.

We are currently updating our records and wish to establish whether your contact details are correct. Therefore if this letter has been forwarded to you at an address that is different from that above, please complete the enclosed *yellow* form and return it to us in the envelope provided by 23<sup>rd</sup> July 2004. By giving us your address you are not committing yourself to be interviewed. We will be in touch again some time in the near future and you can decide then whether you would like to take part.

If the addressee has moved into a residential care home such as a nursing home, or passed away, we would appreciate it if you could spare the time to complete the enclosed *blue* form and return it to us in the envelope provided by 23<sup>rd</sup> July 2004. You will not need a stamp if returning a yellow or blue form.

Any information you provide us will be treated in strict confidence in accordance with the Data Protection Act. If you have any questions about the survey, please do not hesitate to contact Helen Selwood on freephone 0800 652 4569.

Yours sincerely,



Helen Selwood  
Project Manager

## Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

Some time ago, you kindly took part in the first stage of a new study about ageing. It was conducted by the *National Centre for Social Research* jointly with academic researchers from University College London and the Institute for Fiscal Studies, and was funded by a number of government departments in Britain and the National Institute on Ageing in the United States. Your contribution helped make the first wave of the study a great success, and we are writing to you now to ask for your help in the next stage.

As you may recall, this ground-breaking study, the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing (ELSA), explores the health, lifestyles and financial situation of people as they grow older. We are hoping to revisit everyone who participated in the study during 2002 to 2003, to conduct a second interview to see how their lives have changed, or stayed the same. Taking part is entirely voluntary, though we very much hope to interview everybody who took part last time so that our results give an accurate picture of people's experiences. We cannot replace you with anyone else.

As a token of our appreciation, the interviewer will give you a cheque for £10. This is similar to the gift voucher we gave you when we last spoke to you. If you are unable to bank the cheque, we can arrange for you to be sent a gift voucher instead.

Your interviewer, \_\_\_\_\_, will visit you in the next few days to invite you to take part and, if you are willing, arrange a time to do the interview. They will be carrying an identification card, with a photograph and the logo of the National Centre for Social Research. They should be able to answer any questions you may have about the study.

**All your answers will be treated in strict confidence.** We hope that you will want to be involved in this important study, and enjoy speaking to one of our interviewers. If you have any questions or would like to make other arrangements for the interview, please don't hesitate to phone Helen Selwood on freephone 0800 652 4569.

Yours sincerely,



Professor Sir Michael Marmot  
Principal Investigator



Helen Selwood  
Project Manager



Serial number							CKL	PerNo	A	B	

**W2/V2/P2158 Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over**

We have asked about your health and economic circumstances. To make this information complete we would like to find out

- more about your health and treatment from NHS health records and,
- more about your National Insurance Contributions, benefits and tax credits from data held by the Inland Revenue and the Department for Work and Pensions (formerly the DSS).

We need your written permission for any information to be released. Like everything else you have told us, the information will be completely confidential and will be used for research purposes only. Names and addresses are never included in the results and no individual can be identified from the research. You do not have to give your consent for us to collect this data if you don't want to. Please ask the interviewer about anything that concerns you or you can call the research team on 0800 652 4569.

I have read or heard this information and have had the opportunity to ask questions. I understand that all the information about me will be treated in strict confidence and used solely for the purpose of research.

**HEALTH DATA**

A. I authorise the Department of Health to disclose to the National Centre for Social Research a link to information about my health and treatment held on the Hospital Episodes database. The information we obtain will be limited to the purposes of this study and will cover dates of admission to and discharge from hospital, diagnoses received and treatments given. The link to this information can only be used by researchers who have gained ethical approval for analysing this database. This consent will remain valid until revoked by me in writing.

**NATIONAL INSURANCE CONTRIBUTIONS, BENEFITS AND TAX CREDITS**

B. I authorise the Department of Work and Pensions and the Inland Revenue to disclose to the National Centre for Social Research information about my National Insurance Contributions, benefit and tax credit records. This consent will remain valid until revoked by me in writing.

**Please cross out A or B above if you do not wish to give permission for them both. If you give permission for us to collect any of this information please sign below.**

Signature _____	Date _____									
Print Name _____										
<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>										

National Insurance Number (if known):

Serial number								CKL	PerNo	
								<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

P2158

## Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

- The NHS Central Register lists all the people in the country and their National Health Service (NHS) number.
- We would like to ask for your consent for us to send your name, address and date of birth to the National Health Service Central Register. A marker will be put against your name to show that you took part in the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing.
- If a person who took part in the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing dies, the cause of death will be linked with their answers to the survey. By linking this information the research is more useful as we can look at how people’s lifestyle can have an impact on their future health.
- This information will be confidential and used for research purposes only.
- By signing this form you are only giving permission for the linking of this information to routine administrative data and nothing else. We will not be able to obtain any other details from your medical records.
- You can cancel this permission at any time in the future by writing to us at the following address:
  - National Centre for Social Research, 35 Northampton Square, London EC1V 0AX or
  - Dr James Nazroo, Department of epidemiology and public health, University College London, 1-19 Torrington Place, London, WC1E 6BT.

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_ consent to the National Centre for Social Research /UCL Joint Health Surveys Unit passing my name, address and date of birth to the National Health Service Central Register. I understand that these details will be used for research purposes only.

Signature _____	Date _____
Print Name _____	

Serial number								CKL	PerNo	
								<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

W2/V2/P2158

## Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over Reminder Form

We have asked about your health and economic circumstances. To make this information complete we would like to find out

- more about your health and treatment from NHS health records and,
- more about your National Insurance Contributions, benefits and tax credits from data held by the Inland Revenue and the Department for Work and Pensions (formerly the DSS).

We need your written permission for any information to be released. Like everything else you have told us, the information will be completely confidential and will be used for research purposes only. Names and addresses are never included in the results and no individual can be identified from the research. You do not have to give your consent for us to collect this data if you don't want to. Please ask the interviewer about anything that concerns you or you can call the research team on 0800 652 4569.

I have read or heard this information and have had the opportunity to ask questions. I understand that all the information about me will be treated in strict confidence and used solely for the purpose of research.

### HEALTH DATA

Tick if consent given at previous interview

- A. I authorise the Department of Health to disclose to the National Centre for Social Research information about my health and treatment held on the Hospital Episode Statistics database<sup>1</sup>. This consent will remain valid until revoked by me in writing.

### NATIONAL INSURANCE CONTRIBUTIONS, BENEFITS AND TAX CREDITS

Tick if consent given at previous interview

- B. I authorise the Department of Work and Pensions and the Inland Revenue to disclose to the National Centre for Social Research information about my National Insurance Contributions, benefit and tax credit records. This consent will remain valid until revoked by me in writing.

Operations Department, 100 Kings Road, Brentwood, Essex CM14 4LX  
Telephone 01277 200 600, Fax 01277 214 117

<sup>1</sup> The information we obtain will be limited to the purposes of this study and will cover dates of admission to and discharge from hospital, diagnoses received and treatments given. The link to this information can only be used by researchers who have gained ethical approval for analysing this database.

**P2158**

Serial number								Ck	Person	First name:
1-9								10	11-12	Spare 13-20

# Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

## COGNITIVE MODULE - INTERVIEWER RECORDING BOOKLET

### Word List – First Recall

**Please write down the words the respondent recalls in the space provided:**

- Do NOT interrupt the respondent
- If respondent is saying words more quickly than you can write them down in full, just write down the first letter of the word
- Do NOT count any words the respondent says which are not on the list

Word List A	Word List A - responses
Hotel	
River	
Tree	
Skin	
Gold	
Market	
Paper	
Child	
King	
Book	

Word List B	Word List B – responses
Sky	
Ocean	
Flag	
Dollar	
Wife	
Machine	
Home	
Earth	
College	
Butter	

Word List C	Word List C – responses
Woman	
Rock	
Blood	
Corner	
Shoes	
Letter	
Girl	
House	
Valley	
Engine	

Word List D	Word List D – responses
Water	
Church	
Doctor	
Palace	
Fire	
Garden	
Sea	
Village	
Baby	
Table	

## Animal Names

**Please write down all the animal names given by the respondent in the space provided:**

- Do NOT interrupt the respondent
- If respondent is saying names more quickly than you can write them down in full, use abbreviations or a tally
- ONLY if the respondent asks for clarification, explain that animals include birds, insects, fish etc.
- If the respondent gets stuck, say "Can you think of any more?"

--	--

**Points to remember:**

- Do NOT count repetitions
- Do NOT count redundancies (e.g. white cow, brown cow)
- Do NOT count named animals (e.g. Spot, Bambi)
- DO count different breeds (e.g. terrier, greyhound)
- DO count gender- or generation-specific names (e.g. bull, cow, heifer, calf)
- If the respondent names animals that are unfamiliar to you, give them the benefit of the doubt and count them (e.g. Kudu)

# Letter Cancellation

EXAMPLE: G T G E ~~W~~ N R E F ~~P~~ A Q B N D

→ A Y O V K S V S Y K W E Z J Z G V A U X C S H S P N K A A K  
I Y N O L C S C L I U A O P F E G M Z T Y M F Y D U P U U O  
O I T V L B U F V L N T H W T T N V D C H H X W A F A A M R  
M I S V X V G H H F P Z G P X T D Q X R U Q E K I E M V C W  
Q Z E I H B W M H A D B Y A S J Z L I H F Y K P Z X W J M C  
R S U W Y E P U Y W U V H Q G N J E J A V K E J M S Y H G Y  
S Y T I H E N V M U G M Q G J J C R Y N K T U D L H M F T V  
N H L P L I X K P G G J X D Q H V E A T V H L I W G V T H B  
L H V M J D T L M W P D W O A N E S T D G X Z D H C A N U W  
A Q F H B B P N O K M E R U F R L F H T M J C N P T Y O I S  
C D N E K E V J X V D Q W S U B M L C Y S N Z I Y Y N O R S  
T R L I E T O L B T N O T R G M D M B J O Z H R Y J X U Y I  
K L T F F T R S Y G N M D M P E I G O V D A B E S N Y P O S  
L C I V X L F V O W C Z P P S W J F B J H P C E G N W K C O  
J M R Y J F L X U H M E Z W K S P L S W J B K I K Q V B R P  
Q S S W G W K V M C K Y C S M E D I G B G B C R D P K E J V  
B K Q R Z Q X W I Z E O K O A M L G Z Z A L R X E L O X O P  
O W Z A H X Q P H B B Z R V H Y X O W H A F K L Q L O R X T  
G Q C F C V T Z B N Z K N A D L K W M X O Q L N S T U Q C Q  
I T W D P W O B E K Q F S Z P L S X O C I Q N O K L K F T O  
S Q X J W U T X F Z S S U K D T F O P U Y L E S P I B N W P  
N S W S U T I P M X O D R C V D L N O F R V W W I N I C U O  
D H T G I Z C M M H X X N K H W Q I T Z X X I O N C S V Y N  
S O V B A B G D B I M T J G T E T L G N H C N Z D C C X U J  
E K J O V C Q Y G D R P L M D R W L W D S H K R D L A R T T  
X X Q U S U I Y C Q C B U O O B T Z P G Q G H C N L I I W Q

## Word List – Second Recall

**Please write the words the respondent recalls in the space provided:**

- Do NOT interrupt the respondent
- If respondent is saying words more quickly than you can write them down in full, just write down the first letter of the word
- Do NOT count any words the respondent says which are not on the list.

Word List A	Word List A - responses
Hotel	
River	
Tree	
Skin	
Gold	
Market	
Paper	
Child	
King	
Book	

Word List B	Word List B – responses
Sky	
Ocean	
Flag	
Dollar	
Wife	
Machine	
Home	
Earth	
College	
Butter	

Word List C	Word List C – responses
Woman	
Rock	
Blood	
Corner	
Shoes	
Letter	
Girl	
House	
Valley	
Engine	

Word List D	Word List D – responses
Water	
Church	
Doctor	
Palace	
Fire	
Garden	
Sea	
Village	
Baby	
Table	

Office use only – scoring letter cancellation

Row and column reached

--	--	--	--

21-24

Correct

--	--

25-26

Missed

--	--

27-28

Serial number

Ck

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

P2158

**HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES OF  
PEOPLE AGED 50 AND OVER  
TIMED WALK**

First person: No   Name

Time for first walk:   •

Time for second walk:   •

Second person: No   Name

Time for first walk:   •

Time for second walk:   •

- Assess safety
- Level floor
- No obstacles
- Walking aids acceptable
- Low-heeled shoes or trainers
- Start timer when first foot touches floor **beyond** line
- Stop when first foot touches floor **beyond** line

Serial number

Ck

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

P2158

**HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES OF  
PEOPLE AGED 50 AND OVER  
TIMED WALK**

First person: No   Name

Time for first walk:   •

Time for second walk:   •

Second person: No   Name

Time for first walk:   •

Time for second walk:   •

- Assess safety
- Level floor
- No obstacles
- Walking aids acceptable
- Low-heeled shoes or trainers
- Start timer when first foot touches floor **beyond** line
- Stop when first foot touches floor **beyond** line

**Explain and demonstrate:**

This is our walking course.

I am going to time you as you walk the course.

I will ask you to walk the course twice.

When I say **Ready, begin** I want you to walk to the other end of the course at your usual walking pace, just as if you were walking down the street to go to the shops. Walk all the way past the other end of the tape before you stop.

**Demonstrate.**

*(If room available: I will walk with you.)*

Do you feel this would be safe?

**Preparation before walk:**

I'd like you to stand here with your feet lined up at the starting point. Remember to walk at your usual speed, just as if you were walking down the street to go to the shops, and go all the way past the other end of the tape before you stop. Please start walking when I say 'begin'. **Ready, begin.**

**Now I want you to repeat the walk:**

(Repeat explanation)

**Explain and demonstrate:**

This is our walking course.

I am going to time you as you walk the course.

I will ask you to walk the course twice.

When I say **Ready, begin** I want you to walk to the other end of the course at your usual walking pace, just as if you were walking down the street to go to the shops. Walk all the way past the other end of the tape before you stop.

**Demonstrate.**

*(If room available: I will walk with you.)*

Do you feel this would be safe?

**Preparation before walk:**

I'd like you to stand here with your feet lined up at the starting point. Remember to walk at your usual speed, just as if you were walking down the street to go to the shops, and go all the way past the other end of the tape before you stop. Please start walking when I say 'begin'. **Ready, begin.**

**Now I want you to repeat the walk:**

(Repeat explanation)

## **User Guide for the ELSA Wave 2 Nurse Visit Data (version 2).**

### **Introduction**

The English Longitudinal Study of Ageing (ELSA) is a study of people aged 50 and over and their younger partners, who were living in private households in England at the time of the first wave of fieldwork (2002/2003). The sample was drawn from households that had previously responded to the Health Survey for England (HSE) in 1998, 1999 or 2001.

As a longitudinal study, the aim is to interview the same group of people each time to measure change in their health, economic and social circumstances. ELSA can complete the picture of what it means to grow older in the new century, and help us understand what accounts for the variety of patterns that are seen. More information about ELSA can be found in the user guide for the core datasets for Wave 1 and Wave 2 (in the archive) or online at: <http://www.ifs.org.uk/elsa/>.

This User Guide relates to the second version of data deposited for the ELSA Wave 2 nurse visit, which was carried out between July 2004 and August 2005. Respondents were asked towards the end of their main Wave 2 interview if they agreed to a nurse visit. An appointment with the respondent was either set at the time by the interviewer or later by the nurses themselves. Respondents will receive a nurse visit every other Wave, so the next one will be carried out with Wave 4 fieldwork, which is scheduled for 2008/2009.

ELSA is the result of collaboration between University College London, the Institute of Fiscal Studies, and the National Centre for Social Research (NatCen). Other academic collaborators are based at the Universities of Cambridge, Exeter and East Anglia, who provided expert advice on specific modules.

The differences between this version of the data and the initial version that was deposited at the Data Archive are that it contains further variables relating to the fasting glucose blood result and also some additional derived variables relating to the blood analyses. It also contains a revised version of the variable FASTELI.

### **Data Collection Methods**

The nurse interview comprised a personal face-to-face CAPI interview, the taking of a number of different measures and an additional voluntary self-completion questionnaire. The nurse visit has been a feature of HSE since the survey was first carried out in 1991. When the nurse visit was incorporated into ELSA, most modules from the HSE nurse visit were kept and a number of new ones were added in. The modules that were taken from HSE were blood pressure, blood sample, standing and sitting height, weight, waist and hip measurement and lung function. The modules that were added were balance, leg raise, chair rise, grip strength, and the saliva log. The first three of these new measurements, taken alongside the walking speed measurement carried out in the main ELSA interview, form a battery of tests that have been shown to be highly predictive of level of disability, future use of health care and mortality. These measures were adapted from the EPESE (Established Populations for Epidemiologic Studies of the Elderly) protocol, which looks at older cohorts and the development of disability.<sup>1,2</sup> The grip strength measure was taken from the Survey of Health, Ageing and Retirement in Europe (SHARE).<sup>3</sup>

The changes between HSE and ELSA were made because ELSA focuses on an older population. The collection of saliva, in order to measure cortisol, and the accompanying questionnaire was added

---

<sup>1</sup> Studenski S, Perera S, Wallace D, Chandler JM, Duncan PW, Rooney E, Fox M, Guralnik JM. 2003, 'Physical performance measures in the clinical setting', *J Am Geriatr Soc.*, 51, pp. 314-22.

<sup>2</sup> Kuh D, Hardy R, Butterworth S, Okell L, Richards M, Wadsworth M, Cooper C, Sayer AA. 2006, 'Developmental Origins of Midlife Physical Performance: Evidence from a British Birth Cohort', *Am J Epidemiol.*

<sup>3</sup> <http://www.share-project.org/>, retrieved 29/6/2006.

because preliminary data from the Whitehall II study showed that cortisol levels are linked to social environments and ageing.<sup>4</sup>

The importance of reading out the questions in the interview *exactly as specified* was emphasised to the nurses. This was essential to ensure comparability of answers.

The respondent was offered a copy of their results for several of the measures (blood pressure, height, weight, waist, hip and lung function). These were written on a "Respondent Measurement Record Card", which is archived along with this User Guide. The nurse was asked not to give any interpretation of the results except for blood pressure, and here the nurse was only asked to say whether the measurement was normal or high and, where necessary, whether the respondent should contact their GP.

With the respondent's consent, we also sent them a letter after their nurse visit, which showed whether the result of each of the analyses conducted on the blood was within or outside normal. If any results were out of range, respondents were told that they should contact their GP in the near future.

Again, with the respondent's consent we sent their blood pressure, lung function and blood sample results to their GP. The exact results for the blood analyses were included, and GPs were informed of the normal range for each analysis.

We aimed to send the results to respondents and their GPs within three months of the nurse visit, unless there was a clinical indication to do so more urgently.

For further information on the protocols for the nurse visit please see the "Nurse Project instructions" which are archived with this User Guide.

## Sample Design

The ELSA sample has been designed to represent people aged 50 and over, who were living in private households in England in the first wave of ELSA (2002/2003). Three years of the Health Survey for England (HSE) were selected as the sampling frame: 1998, 1999 and 2001. These years were chosen because they were recent and could provide a sufficiently large sample size. ELSA used the core samples for these years, all of which were nationally representative.

The HSE 1999 sample design also included a boost sample that represented ethnic minorities. Because of funding constraints, it was not possible to follow-up the boost sample and it was discarded. Together these three HSE years contained 23,132 responding households. Households were removed from the HSE sampling frame if it was known that there was no adult of 50 years or older in the household who had agreed to be re-contacted at some time in the future. Individuals in the remaining households provided the basis for the ELSA sample (11,578 households containing 18,813 eligible individuals).

The ELSA Wave 1 interview provided the baseline for the study. Only households that responded at Wave 1 were approached at Wave 2. Eligible sample members who responded at Wave 1 were renamed 'core members' to distinguish them as the core element of the continuing ELSA sample. Core sample members are individuals who were living within the household at the time of the HSE interview and were born on or before 29<sup>th</sup> February 1952. This date was chosen to ensure that all sample members were aged 50 or over at the beginning of March 2002 (i.e. at the beginning of Wave 1 fieldwork). They were eligible for interview at Wave 2 unless they had explicitly asked not to be re-contacted at the end of their first ELSA interview, or had died or moved out of Britain (respondents who had moved to Wales or Scotland were eligible for interview). 81.5% of those who completed a Wave 1 interview and were eligible for a Wave 2 interview as an ELSA 'core member' had an interview at Wave 2. Only core sample members who had a Wave 2 interview in person (i.e. not by proxy) were eligible for a nurse interview. There were 8688 respondents eligible for the nurse visit. Other types of sample member that appear in the main Wave 2 interview archived data set, such as younger partners and new partners, were not eligible for a nurse interview.

---

<sup>4</sup> Cohen S, Schwartz JE, Epel E, Kirschbaum C, Sidney S, Seeman T. 2006, 'Socio-economic status, race, and diurnal cortisol decline in the Coronary Artery Risk Development in Young Adults (CARDIA) Study', *Psychosom Med.*, 68, pp.41-50.

The number of respondents who had a productive nurse interview is 7666, which is 88.2% of those eligible for a nurse visit, or 71.2% of all those eligible for an ELSA Wave 2 interview. Of these, 5990 (78.1%) had one or more results from the blood sample analysis, and 3741 of these respondents (62.5%) were eligible for a fasting blood sample (see the 'Blood sample' section for more details about fasting).

### Content of the nurse visit

As with the ELSA main interview, the nurse interview was divided up into a number of modules. Further details about the modules in the main CAPI modules in the nurse visit are given in this section.

Below is a table giving an idea of the eligibility conditions for each module. These conditions are also explained in more detail in this section.

Module	Eligibility
Blood pressure	All
Grip Strength	All
Blood Sample	All except if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Had clotting or bleeding disorder or was on anti-coagulant drugs at time of interview</li> <li>• Had ever had a fit (including epileptic fit, convulsion or convulsion associated with high fever)</li> <li>• Were taking anticoagulant drugs (such as Warfarin, protamine or acenocoumarol).</li> </ul> Additionally, respondents were asked to give a fasting blood sample unless they were: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aged 80 or over</li> <li>• Diabetic and were on treatment</li> <li>• Considered to be malnourished or otherwise unfit to fast (information obtained from interviewer).</li> </ul>
Standing and sitting height and Weight	All. Standing height and weight were not measured if the person was chairbound, too unsteady on their feet, or found standing painful. Weight was also not measured if the person weighed over 130kg
Waist and Hip	All except if chairbound or have a colostomy or ileostomy
Lung Function	All except if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Had abdominal or chest surgery in the preceding 3 weeks</li> <li>• Had been admitted to hospital with a heart complaint in the preceding 6 weeks</li> <li>• Had eye surgery in the preceding 4 weeks</li> </ul>
Balance	Side by side stand – all Semi-tandem – if held side by stand for 10 sec. Full-tandem – if held semi-tandem for 10 sec.
Leg Raise	Eyes open - If aged 69 years or under and held side-by-side stand for 10 sec. Eyes shut - If held the leg raise with eyes open for 30 seconds.
Chair Rise	All

For all the tests, if a participant was uncomfortable performing the test or if the nurse felt that a procedure was not safe for a given individual, the test should not have been performed.

### Blood pressure

Three measurements were taken of systolic and diastolic pressure as well as pulse rate on the respondent's right arm while they were seated. The respondent was given advice if their results indicated a higher than normal reading. The nurses were instructed to give this advice based on the higher of the last two blood pressure readings – the first reading can be high, as people are sometimes nervous about having their blood pressure taken.

If you wish to compare the blood pressure results to earlier HSE ones, please note that Omron machines were used to take the readings in the ELSA Wave 2 nurse visit and in HSE from 2003 onwards. In HSE prior to 2003, Dinamap machines were used to take the readings. A conversion factor will need to be applied to the results, as the machines are not comparable. Please contact the ELSA or HSE data manager for more details (see end of User Guide).

All respondents were eligible to have their blood pressure measured.

### Grip strength

Three measurements of grip strength were taken on both the dominant and non-dominant hand. The respondent was asked which was their dominant hand. The precise measure carried out was the isometric handgrip strength measure.

All respondents were eligible to have their grip strength measured.

Further details on the grip strength protocol can be found in the "Nurse Project Instructions" and also the "Scriptcard, Chair Rise & Grip Strength" (archived with this User Guide).

### Blood sample

All sample members who gave consent were eligible for a blood sample to be taken. The only exceptions to this were people with clotting or bleeding disorders, people with a history of fits or convulsions, or people who were on anticoagulant drugs (e.g. Warfarin, protamine, acenocoumarol).

Respondents aged 80 or under were asked to fast before their nurse visit so a fasting blood sample could be taken. Respondents were not asked to fast if they had diabetes and were on treatment or if they were considered to be malnourished or otherwise unfit to fast (this information was obtained from the interviewer). Respondents who were asked to fast were given guidelines about when and what they could eat based on their appointment time. These guidelines can be found on the "Appointment Card" (archived with this User Guide).

In the nurse visit, respondents were asked when they had last eaten and, if this was in the last 24 hours, what they had eaten. The CAPI program used their responses to work out if they had fasted adequately. A respondent was considered to have fasted and therefore be eligible for a fasting blood sample if (see FASTELI – note that this release of the data contains a revised version of this variable):

- They hadn't eaten or drunk anything (apart from water) on the day of their nurse visit OR
- They hadn't eaten or drunk anything (apart from water) in the past 5 hours and had only had a light meal (see appointment record card) or a piece of fruit or drink the last time they ate.

Blood was only taken from respondents on one occasion; so if they had fasted adequately (i.e. met one of the conditions above) then all the analytes for that person should be considered as a fasting sample, otherwise they were non-fasting samples. All the blood analytes (except blood glucose) were measured for all the blood samples (i.e. both fasting and non-fasting samples). Therefore, for some cases the lipids measures were on fasting samples and for others it was on non-fasting samples. If you are doing analyses that are dependent on the blood being a fasting sample, e.g. fasting lipids for metabolic syndrome or cardiac risk, please ensure that you only use the sub-sample of respondents who actually fasted (i.e. FASTELI=1).

Blood glucose was only measured for people who had fasted.

Respondents were asked if they consented to DNA being extracted from their blood sample and stored for future analysis. A maximum of six small tubes of blood (ranging in size from 2ml to 6 ml) were collected for each respondent. 3 of these were collected from all respondents, an additional tube was collected if the respondent had fasted, and the final 2 tubes were collected if the respondent consented to have their DNA analysed.

The blood samples were sent to an external laboratory where a number of analyses were carried out, and the levels of certain compounds in the blood were measured, which are detailed further below:

**Fibrinogen** – A protein necessary for blood clotting. High levels are also associated with a higher risk of heart disease.

**Total cholesterol** – Cholesterol is a type of fat present in the blood, related to diet. Too much cholesterol in the blood increases the risk of heart disease.

**HDL cholesterol** – This is 'good' cholesterol, which is protective for heart disease.

**Triglycerides** - Together with total and HDL cholesterol, they provide a lipid profile that can give information on the risk of cardiovascular disease.

**LDL cholesterol** – This is 'bad' cholesterol, increased levels are associated with atherosclerosis, and thus myocardial infarctions, strokes and peripheral vascular disease.

**Ferritin and Haemoglobin (Hb)** – These are measures of iron levels in the body and are related to diet and other factors.

**C-reactive protein (CRP)** – The level of this protein in the blood gives information on inflammatory activity in the body, and it is also associated with risk of heart disease.

**Apolipoprotein E (ApoE)** – This is involved in the transport of cholesterol and plays a protective role.

**Fasting glucose and non-fasting glycated haemoglobin (HBA1c)** – Both indicate the presence or risk of type 2 diabetes, which is associated with an increased risk of heart disease. The fasting glucose result is now archived with this version of the data.

The samples were taken in a particular order so that if a situation arose where there was insufficient blood to fill all the tubes, the analyses with the highest priority could still be undertaken. The analyses in order of priority were fibrinogen, full lipids (total cholesterol, HDL cholesterol and triglycerides), ferritin, CRP, ApoE, fasting glucose (if applicable), haemoglobin, glycated haemoglobin, and finally DNA extraction (if consent was given).

Also included in the Blood Sample section of the data are three derived variables. The first, BSOUTC, shows whether taking a blood sample was attempted and, if so, how successful it was. The second, BLOODR, shows whether a blood sample was taken and, if so, whether all the blood tubes were received at the lab for analysis. The third, FASTHRS, shows how long the respondent had fasted for (distinguishing those who fasted for between five and eight hours and those who fasted for at least eight hours).

For further details about these variables, please see the derived variables section at the end of this User Guide.

#### Height and weight measurement

Height was measured both standing and sitting. Sitting height is a measure of pre-pubertal growth. If height or weight could not be measured then an estimate was obtained from the respondent instead. If the nurse thought the measurement was likely to be more than 2 cm (3/4 inch) from the true figure for height or more than 1 kg (2 lbs.) from the true figure for weight, it was considered unreliable and they were asked to code it as such.

The maximum weight that would register accurately on the scales was 130kg (20½ stone). If the nurse thought the respondent exceeded this limit then they were instructed to code "Weight not attempted" and ask the respondent for an estimate instead.

Users of the data are reminded to consider the variables HJREL and WJREL when looking at the measurements in this module as they show whether the data is likely to be reliable or not.

All respondents were eligible to have their height and weight measured.

Using the height and weight measurements obtained, BMI (body mass index) was calculated. This is a measure of body fat based on height and weight that applies to both men and women. BMI values were then grouped according to World Health Organisation definitions of obesity.

Further information on the protocols for the height and weight measurements can be found in the "Nurse Project Instructions" and also the "Frankfort Plane Card". These documents have been archived along with this User Guide.

### Waist and hip measurement

Both these measurements were taken twice each, however, if the second measurement differed from the first by 3cm or more, the nurse was given an error message by the CAPI program and asked to either amend one of the previous responses, or to take a third measurement.

If the nurse believed that the measurements they took were 0.5cm more or less than the true measurement because of problems encountered (e.g. clothing the respondent was wearing), this was considered unreliable.

All respondents were eligible to have their waist and hip measurements taken, unless they were chairbound or had a colostomy or ileostomy.

Further information on the protocols for the waist and hip measurements can be found in the "Nurse Project Instructions" which has been archived along with this User Guide.

### Lung function

Three measurements each were taken of FVC (forced vital capacity), FEV (forced expiratory volume) and PF (peak flow) using a spirometer.

Occasionally by mistake the nurse recorded the value of the ratio between FEV and FVC (i.e. FEV/FVC) in the CAPI instead of FEV. As it is impossible to know for certain which interviews this occurred in, all FEV values that were less than 1 have been re-coded to their own code (-3).

It should be noted that the variables HTFVC and HTFEV (highest technically satisfactory values of FVC and FEV respectively) should not be combined to give a FEV/FVC ratio without checking that they are from the same blow.

All respondents were eligible to have their lung function measured, except for the following:

- Those who had had abdominal or chest surgery in the preceding 3 weeks
- Those who had been admitted to hospital with a heart complaint in the preceding 6 weeks
- Those who had had eye surgery in the preceding 4 weeks.

Further information on the protocols for the lung function measurement can be found in the "Nurse Project Instructions", which has been archived along with this User Guide.

### Balance

This module involved the respondent completing three stands (a side-by-side, a semi-tandem and a full-tandem), each of which was demonstrated to the respondent by the nurse beforehand.

The eligibility for the balance module is slightly more complex than for the other modules. All respondents start with the side-by-side, if they held this for 10 seconds they attempted the semi-tandem stand for 10 seconds. Respondents who completed this were then asked to do the full tandem stand. If the respondent was aged 69 and under they were asked to attempt the full tandem stand for 30 seconds; if they were 70 or over they were asked to do the full tandem stand for 10 seconds.

Further details on the balance protocols for each balance test can be found in the "Nurse Project Instructions" and also the "Scriptcard, Balance and Leg Raise". These documents have been archived along with this User Guide.

### Leg raise

Only respondents aged 69 and under who successfully passed the side-by-side stand were asked to complete this module. They were asked to stand on one leg with their eyes open for 30 seconds and then, if they did this, they were asked to complete the same movement with their eyes closed for 30 seconds.

Further details on the leg raise protocol can be found in the "Nurse Project Instructions" and also the "Scriptcard, Balance and Leg Raise".

### Chair rise

This is a measure of lower body strength, during which respondents were asked to stand up from a firm chair without using their arms. If they succeeded, they were asked to stand up and down as quickly as they could for either five rises if they were aged 70 and over, or up to ten rises if aged 69 and under. The nurse recorded the time that respondents took to do the number of rises required. For respondents who did ten rises, the nurse recorded the times taken to do both five and ten rises (in the same attempt) so that all respondents had a time for five rises which could be compared.

Further details on the chair rise protocol can be found in the "Nurse Project Instructions" and also the "Scriptcard, Chair Rise & Grip Strength".

All respondents were eligible for the chair rise.

### Saliva log

Respondents aged less than 80 were asked to collect four samples of their saliva at certain times during a 24-hour period. The purpose of collecting saliva was to measure respondents' cortisol levels, which are related to stress. Respondents were asked to fill in a log book each time they collected a saliva sample that asked how they were feeling at that time. The saliva and log book data will be archived later in 2006.

### Personal beliefs and wellbeing questionnaire

In addition to the main face-to-face CAPI interview, a voluntary self-completion booklet about respondent's personal beliefs and wellbeing questionnaire was also left with one in 10 respondents after the nurse visit. Data from the self-completion questions will be archived in late 2006 or early 2007.

### **Other documents used in the data collection process (all have been archived, unless indicated otherwise)**

<b>Filename</b>	<b>Description</b>
ELSA Survey Leaflet.pdf	Leaflet given to respondents containing general information about ELSA
Scriptcard, Chair Rise and Grip Strength.pdf	Protocol for Chair Rise and Grip Strength modules, which show the wording that the nurses used when describing the measures to the respondents.
Scriptcard, Balance and Leg Raise.pdf	Protocol for Balance and Leg Raise modules.
Respondent Measurement Record Card.pdf	Where the nurse recorded height, weight, waist, hip, lung function and blood pressure measurements for the respondent, if the respondent wished.
Respondent Grip Strength Record Card.pdf	Where the nurse recorded grip strength measurements, which was sent back to the office in order to check any discrepancies.

Genetics Leaflet.pdf	Leaflet given to respondents about the collection of genetic material as part of the study and why it is being done.
Frankfort Plane Card.pdf	More detailed protocol about taking the height measurement.
Nurse Project Instructions.pdf	Detailed information about all aspects of the nurse visit, given to nurses to read before they carried out their interviews.
Nurse Leaflet.pdf	Leaflet given to respondents containing information about the ELSA nurse visit.
Appointment Record Card	Given to respondents to remind them of their appointment with the nurse and advise them how to prepare for it.
Consent booklets, Office and Respondent copies (pdf's)	The Office Consent Booklet contains the forms the respondent has to sign to give written consent for: - blood pressure readings to be sent to their GP - lung function readings to be sent to their GP - blood samples to be taken - blood test results to be sent to their GP - blood sample for storage for future analysis - blood sample for DNA extraction and storage - saliva samples to be collected.  The Respondent Consent Booklet contains a copy of the different consents and permissions that the respondent was asked to sign during the interview, for their records.
Self Completion Questionnaire – Personal Beliefs and Wellbeing.pdf	<i>Will be archived in late 2006 or early 2007.</i>
Saliva Sample Logbook.pdf	<i>Will be archived in late 2006 or early 2007.</i>
Questionnaire.doc	Documentation of the Nurse CAPI questionnaire <i>Will be archived in late 2006 or early 2007.</i>

## Data Preparation

In preparing the data for archiving, it was necessary to delete certain variables. The following types of variables have been deleted in order to reduce the potential to identify individuals and for other reasons (specified below):

1. Those containing text
2. Those which contained a personal identifier (e.g. name/address)
3. Those considered to be disclosive, such as:
  - Full interview date
  - Full date of birth
4. Timing variables
5. Variables that only contain missing values – excluded because not useful.

There are no geographical variables in either this or the main archived ELSA dataset. Various geographical variables are available under secure arrangements. Please contact the data manager at NatCen if you would like to request access to these variables.

The questionnaire for the nurse visit will be archived in the near future; there will be an indication in this document of the variables that were dropped, rather than putting in a list of them in this User Guide.

A number of questions in the interview gave the nurse the opportunity to enter an 'other' answer. In the main ELSA interview, these 'other' responses were then back-coded into the original question where possible. Please note that no editing or back-coding has been done on this data, as the

majority of the questions with 'other' responses have not been archived because they dealt with administrative information about conducting the tests.

### **Weighting**

There are two weighting variables that are included on the dataset – W2WTBLD and W2WTNUR. The first of these applies to the blood sample results only, while the second applies to the rest of the data. They should be used when carrying out any analyses of this data.

Weights are necessary to adjust the estimates generated from the responding survey sample so that they more accurately represent the characteristics of the population of interest. If appropriate weights are not applied, then the survey estimates will be biased towards the characteristics of the people that participated in the survey, rather than the entire population.

## Variable list

This part of the document categorises all the variables included in the archived Wave 2 nurse dataset, and it is therefore easier to see the coverage of questions asked at this summary level. You will need to look at the other documentation to see in more detail exactly how the question was asked in the interview (see full nurse visit questionnaire - to be archived in late 2006 or early 2007), or how a derived variable has been defined (see Appendix 1).

The source of each variable is indicated in the final column of each table of variables with abbreviations as follows:

Nurse	Nurse CAPI Questionnaire
Lab	Results from laboratory, i.e. from blood sample testing
Derived	A variable derived from other variables, detailed in Appendix 1: Derived variable specification
Weight	Weighting variable, to be used for analysis

Individual		
Variable	Description	Source
IDAUNIQ	Unique individual serial number	Nurse
IDAINDW2	Wave 2 individual analytical serial number	Nurse
IDAHHW2	Wave 2 household analytical serial number	Nurse
HHAGE	Age from dates of birth and nurse visit – used for eligibility for measures	Nurse
CONFAGE	Actual age at nurse visit	Nurse
DOBYEAR	Year of birth	Derived
SEX	Sex	Nurse
W2WTNUR	Weight for nurse data (excluding blood sample analyses)	Weight
W2WTBLD	Weight for blood sample analyses	Weight

Nurse Admin		
Variable	Description	Source
VISMON	Date of nurse interview, month	Nurse
VISYEAR	Date of nurse interview, year	Nurse

Blood Pressure		
Variable	Description	Source
BPCONST	Consent to BP measurement	Nurse
CONSUB1	BP: 1st thing respondent has done in last 30 minutes that will affect their BP	Nurse
CONSUB2	BP: 2 <sup>nd</sup> thing respondent has done in last 30 minutes that will affect their BP	Nurse
CONSUB3	BP: 3 <sup>rd</sup> thing respondent has done in last 30 minutes that will affect their BP	Nurse
CUFSIZE	BP: Cuff size used	Nurse
AIRTEMP	BP: Air temperature (centigrade)	Nurse
SYS1	BP: 1 <sup>st</sup> Systolic reading (mmHg)	Nurse
DIAS1	BP: 1st Diastolic reading (mmHg)	Nurse
PULSE1	BP: 1 <sup>st</sup> Pulse reading (bpm)	Nurse
MAP1	BP: 1 <sup>st</sup> Mean Arterial Pressure (MAP) reading (mmHg)	Nurse
FULL1	BP: 1 <sup>st</sup> set of BP readings are complete	Nurse
SYS2	BP: 2 <sup>nd</sup> Systolic reading (mmHg)	Nurse
DIAS2	BP: 2nd Diastolic reading (mmHg)	Nurse
PULSE2	BP: 2 <sup>nd</sup> Pulse reading (bpm)	Nurse
MAP2	BP: 2 <sup>nd</sup> Mean Arterial Pressure (MAP) reading (mmHg)	Nurse
FULL2	BP: 2 <sup>nd</sup> set of BP readings are complete	Nurse
SYS3	BP: 3 <sup>rd</sup> Systolic reading (mmHg)	Nurse
DIAS3	BP: 3rd Diastolic reading (mmHg)	Nurse
PULSE3	BP: 3 <sup>rd</sup> Pulse reading (bpm)	Nurse
MAP3	BP: 3 <sup>rd</sup> Mean Arterial Pressure (MAP) reading (mmHg)	Nurse
FULL3	BP: 3 <sup>rd</sup> set of BP readings are complete	Nurse
YNOBP	BP: Whether BP measurements attempted and not obtained or not attempted	Nurse
BPRESPC	(D) Whether BP readings are valid – not ate, drank, smoked or exercised recently	Derived
SYSVAL	(D) Valid Mean Systolic BP	Derived
DIAVAL	(D) Valid Mean Diastolic BP	Derived
PULVAL	(D) Valid Pulse Pressure	Derived
MAPVAL	(D) Valid Mean Arterial Pressure	Derived
RESPBPS	BP: Response to BP measurements	Nurse
NATTBP1	BP: 1 <sup>st</sup> reason why full set of BP measurements was not collected	Nurse
NATTBP2	BP: 2 <sup>nd</sup> reason why full set of BP measurements was not collected	Nurse

DIFBPC1	BP: 1 <sup>st</sup> difficulty with taking BP measurements	Nurse
DIFBPC2	BP: 2 <sup>nd</sup> difficulty with taking BP measurements	Nurse
DIFBPC3	BP: 3 <sup>rd</sup> difficulty with taking BP measurements	Nurse

Grip Strength		
Variable	Description	Source
MMGSWIL	Grip strength: Whether respondent is willing to have grip strength measured	Nurse
MMGSDOM	Grip strength: Dominant hand to be used for grip strength measurements	Nurse
MMGSSTA	Grip strength: Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands	Nurse
MMGSD1	Grip strength: 1st measurement dominant hand (kg)	Nurse
MMGSN1	Grip strength: 1st measurement non-dominant hand (kg)	Nurse
MMGSD2	Grip strength: 2nd measurement dominant hand (kg)	Nurse
MMGSN2	Grip strength: 2nd measurement non-dominant hand (kg)	Nurse
MMGSD3	Grip strength: 3rd measurement dominant hand (kg)	Nurse
MMGSN3	Grip strength: 3rd measurement non-dominant hand (kg)	Nurse
MMGSTP	Grip strength: Respondent's position during grip strength measurements	Nurse
MMGSRES	Grip strength: Number of grip strength measurements obtained	Nurse
MMGSPR1	Grip strength: 1st reason why none or only some measurements were obtained	Nurse
MMGSPR2	Grip strength: 2nd reason why none or only some measurements were obtained	Nurse

Blood Sample		
Variable	Description	Source
CLOTB	Blood sample: Whether has clotting disorder	Nurse
FIT	Blood sample: Whether ever had a fit	Nurse
BSWILL	Blood sample: Consent to take blood sample	Nurse
FASTASK	Blood sample: Whether respondent was asked to fast	Nurse
FASTELI	Blood sample: Eligible for a fasting sample? - based on when and what last ate	Nurse
FASTHRS	(D) Time respondent last ate if eligible for fasting sample - see User Guide'	Derived
REFBSC1	Blood sample: 1st reason why taking of blood sample was refused	Nurse
REFBSC2	Blood sample: 2nd reason why taking of blood sample was refused	Nurse
REFBSC3	Blood sample: 3rd reason why taking of blood sample was refused	Nurse
SAMPTAK	Blood Sample: Whether any blood samples taken (incl. DNA samples)	Nurse
SAMDIF1	Blood Sample: 1st problem in taking blood sample	Nurse
SAMDIF2	Blood Sample: 2nd problem in taking blood sample	Nurse
SAMDIF3	Blood Sample: 3rd problem in taking blood sample	Nurse
SAMDIF4	Blood Sample: 4th problem in taking blood sample	Nurse
NOBSM1	Blood Sample: 1st reason for not obtaining blood sample	Nurse
NOBSM2	Blood Sample: 2nd reason for not obtaining blood sample	Nurse
BSOUTC	(D) Outcome of blood sample (excludes DNA sample)	Derived

Blood Sample Results		
Variable	Description	Source
CFIB	Blood fibrinogen level (g/l)	Lab
CHOL	Blood total cholesterol level (mmol/l)	Lab
HDL	Blood HDL level (mmol/l)	Lab
TRIG	Blood triglyceride level (mmol/l)	Lab
LDL	Blood LDL level (mmol/l)	Lab
FGLU	Blood glucose level (mmol/L) - fasting samples only	Lab
RTIN	Blood ferritin level (ng/ml)	Lab
HSCRIP	Blood CRP level (mg/l)	Lab
APOE	Blood APOE level (mmol/l)	Lab
HGB	Blood haemoglobin level (g/dl)	Lab
HBA1C	Blood glycated haemoglobin level (%)	Lab
BLOODR	(D) Whether blood sample was taken and received by the lab	Derived

Height and Weight		
Variable	Description	Source
RESPHTS	Standing height: Whether standing height measurement was attempted or obtained	Nurse
HEIGHT	Standing height: Standing height (cm) including unreliable measurements	Nurse
RESNHI	Standing height: Reason for refusal of height measurement	Nurse
EHTCH	Standing height: Whether estimated height will be in metric or imperial measures	Nurse
EHTM	Standing height: Estimated height (metres)	Nurse
EHTFT	Standing height: Estimated height (feet)	Nurse
EHTIN	Standing height: Estimated height (inches)	Nurse
ESTHT	Standing height: Final measured/estimated height (cm) incl. unreliable measures	Nurse
HTVAL	(D) Valid height (cm)	Derived
HTOK	(D) Whether height measure is valid	Derived

NOHTBC1	Standing height: 1st reason for not obtaining height measurement	Nurse
NOHTBC2	Standing height: 2nd reason for not obtaining height measurement	Nurse
NOHTBC3	Standing height: 3rd reason for not obtaining height measurement	Nurse
NOHTBC4	Standing height: 4th reason for not obtaining height measurement	Nurse
RELHITE	Standing height: Reliability of standing height measurement according to nurse	Nurse
HINREL	Standing height: Reason for standing height measurement to be unreliable	Nurse
SITHTRS	Sitting height: Whether sitting height measurement was attempted or obtained	Nurse
SITHGT	Sitting height measurement (cm)	Nurse
RESPWTS	Weight: Whether weight measurement was attempted or obtained	Nurse
WEIGHT	Weight (kg) including unreliable measures	Nurse
RESNWT	Weight: Reason for refusal of weight measurement	Nurse
EWTCH	Weight: Whether estimated weight will be in metric or imperial measures	Nurse
EWTKG	Weight: Estimated weight (kg)	Nurse
EWTST	Weight: Estimated weight (stone)	Nurse
EWTL	Weight: Estimated weight (lb)	Nurse
ESTWT	Weight: Final measured or estimated weight (kg) including unreliable measures	Nurse
WTVAL	(D) Valid weight (Kg) inc. estimated>130kg	Derived
WTOK	(D) Whether weight measure is valid	Derived
NOWTBC1	Weight: 1st reason for not obtaining weight measurement	Nurse
NOWTBC2	Weight: 2nd reason for not obtaining weight measurement	Nurse
NOWTBC3	Weight: 3rd reason for not obtaining weight measurement	Nurse
NOWTBC4	Weight: 4th reason for not obtaining weight measurement	Nurse
FLOORC	Weight: Surface scales places on	Nurse
RELWAIT	Weight: Reliability of weight measurement	Nurse
BMI	(D) BMI - inc. unreliable measurements (kg/m <sup>2</sup> )	Derived
BMIVAL	(D) Valid BMI - inc. estimated>130kg	Derived
BMIOK	(D) Whether BMI measure is valid	Derived
BMIOBE	(D) Valid BMI grouped according to WHO definitions (kg/m <sup>2</sup> )	Derived

### Waist and Hip

Variable	Description	Source
WHINTRO	Waist/Hip: Consent to waist/hip measurements	Nurse
WAIST1	Waist: 1st waist measurement (cm)	Nurse
HIP1	Hip: 1st hip measurement (cm)	Nurse
WAIST2	Waist: 2nd waist measurement (cm)	Nurse
HIP2	Hip: 2nd hip measurement (cm)	Nurse
WAIST3	Waist: 3rd waist measurement (cm)	Nurse
HIP3	Hip: 3rd hip measurement (cm)	Nurse
WSTVAL	(D) Valid Mean Waist (cm)	Derived
HIPVAL	(D) Valid Mean Hip (cm)	Derived
WHVAL	(D) Valid Mean Waist/Hip ratio	Derived
WSTOKB	(D) Whether waist measurements are valid	Derived
HIPOKB	(D) Whether hip measurements are valid	Derived
WHOKB	(D) Whether waist/hip measure is valid	Derived
YNOWH	Waist/Hip: Reason why none or only some measurements were obtained	Nurse
RESPWH	Waist/Hip: Response to waist/hip measurements	Nurse
WHPNAB1	Waist/Hip: 1st reason for not obtaining waist and hip measurements	Nurse
WHPNAB2	Waist/Hip: 2nd reason for not obtaining waist and hip measurements	Nurse
WHPNAB3	Waist/Hip: 3rd reason for not obtaining waist and hip measurements	Nurse
WJREL	Waist: Whether problems with waist measurement	Nurse
PROBWJ	Waist: Problems likely to increase/decrease waist measurement	Nurse
HJREL	Hip: Whether problems with hip measurement	Nurse
PROBHJ	Hip: Problems likely to increase/decrease hip measurement	Nurse

### Lung Function Admin

Variable	Description	Source
HASURG	Lung function: Whether respondent had abdominal or chest surgery in last 3 weeks	Nurse
EYESURG	Lung function: Whether respondent has had eye surgery in the last 4 weeks	Nurse
HASTRO	Lung function: Whether admitted to hospital for heart complaint in last 6 weeks	Nurse
CHESTIN	Lung function: Whether respondent had any respiratory infection in last 3 weeks	Nurse
INHALER	Lung function: Whether used an inhaler/puffer in last 24 hours	Nurse
INHALHR	Lung function: How many hours ago inhaler/puffer used	Nurse
LFWILL	Lung function: Willing to have lung function measured	
LFTEMP	Lung function: Air temperature (centigrade)	
FVC1	Lung function: 1st FVC reading (litres)	Nurse
FEV1	Lung function: 1st FEV reading (litres)	Nurse
PF1	Lung function: 1st PF reading (litres per minute)	Nurse
TECHNI1	Lung function: Whether respondent's technique was satisfactory for 1st reading	Nurse

FVC2	Lung function: 2nd FVC reading (litres)	Nurse
FEV2	Lung function: 2nd FEV reading (litres)	Nurse
PF2	Lung function: 2nd PF reading (litres per minute)	Nurse
TECHNI2	Lung function: Whether respondent's technique was satisfactory for 2nd reading	Nurse
FVC3	Lung function: 3rd FVC reading (litres)	Nurse
FEV3	Lung function: 3rd FEV reading (litres)	Nurse
PF3	Lung function: 3rd PF reading (litres per minute)	Nurse
TECHNI3	Lung function: Whether respondent's technique was satisfactory for 3rd reading	Nurse
NLSATLF	Lung function: Whether technique was satisfactory on any measurements	Nurse
HTFVC	Lung function: Highest technically satisfactory FVC reading (litres)	Nurse
HTFEV	Lung function: Highest technically satisfactory FEV reading (litres)	Nurse
HTPF	Lung function: Highest technically satisfactory PF reading (litres per minute)	Nurse
NOREAD	Lung function: No readings obtained	Nurse
YNOLF	Lung function: Reason why no measurements were obtained	Nurse
LFSTAND	Lung function: Measurements taken while standing or sitting?	Nurse
LFRESP	Lung function: How many technically correct blows were obtained	Nurse
PROBLF1	Lung function: 1st reason why not all lung function measurements were obtained	Nurse
PROBLF2	Lung function: 2nd reason why not all lung function measurements were obtained	Nurse
PROBLF3	Lung function: 3rd reason why not all lung function measurements were obtained	Nurse
NOATTLF	Lung function: Reason why refused or no measurements obtained	Nurse
LFNOMEA	(D) Reason why lung function not measured	Derived

<b>Balance</b>		
<b>Variable</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Source</b>
MMBCSC	May be prevented from balancing or standing up from chair due to health reasons	Nurse
MMSSSC	Side-by-side stand: Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt stand	Nurse
MMSSRE	Side-by-side stand: Outcome	Nurse
MMSSTI	Side-by-side stand: Time position held (seconds)	Nurse
MMSSNA	Side-by-side stand: Reason not attempted	Nurse
MMSTSC	Semi-tandem stand: Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt stand	Nurse
MMSTRE	Semi-tandem stand: Outcome	Nurse
MMSTTI	Semi-tandem stand: Time position held (seconds)	Nurse
MMSTNA	Semi-tandem stand: Reason not attempted	Nurse
MMFTSC	Full tandem stand: Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt stand	Nurse
MMFTTI	Full tandem stand: Time position held (seconds)	Nurse
MMFTRE2	(D) Outcome of full tandem stand according to age	Derived
MMFTNA	Full tandem stand: Reason not attempted	Nurse

<b>Leg Raise</b>		
<b>Variable</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Source</b>
MMLOSC	Leg raise (eyes open): Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt it	Nurse
MMLORE	Leg raise (eyes open): Outcome	Nurse
MMLOTI	Leg raise (eyes open): Time leg raise held (seconds)	Nurse
MMLONA	Leg raise (eyes open): Reason not attempted	Nurse
MMLSSC	Leg raise (eyes shut): Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt it	Nurse
MMLSRE	Leg raise (eyes shut): Outcome	Nurse
MMLSTI	Leg raise (eyes shut): Time leg raise held (seconds)	Nurse
MMLSNA	Leg raise (eyes shut): Reason not attempted	Nurse

<b>Chair Rise</b>		
<b>Variable</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Source</b>
MMCRAV	Chair rise: Whether suitable chair available	Nurse
MMCRSC	Chair rise: Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt single chair rise	Nurse
MMCRRE	Chair rise: Single chair rise outcome	Nurse
MMCRNA	Chair rise: Reason single chair rise not attempted	Nurse
MMRRSC	Chair rise: Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt multiple chair rises	Nurse
MMRRRE	Chair rise: Outcome of multiple chair rises (number of rises completed)	Nurse
MMRRFTI	Chair rise: Time to complete 5 rises (seconds)	Nurse
MMRRTTI	Chair rise: Time to complete ten rises (seconds) - only eligible if under 70 yrs	Nurse
MMRROC	(D) Chair rise: Outcome of multiple chair rises, split by age	Derived
MMRRNA	Chair rise: Reason multiple chair rises not attempted	Nurse

## Appendix 1 – Derived variable and recoding specification

This section of the User Guide gives further detail about derived variables that are being archived and any existing variables that were re-coded or combined. In the case of many of the variables an explanation of the derivation is given as well as the SPSS syntax. Explanations of variables used in the derivations that haven't been archived are also provided.

### DOBYEAR

This variable is the same as NDOBY (not archived) but year of birth has been re-coded to -7 for everyone aged 90 or over (age from HHAGE). This is done as there are relatively few ELSA respondents over 90 and it is considered disclosive to give their actual year of birth.

```
compute dobyear=ndoby.
execute.
do if hhage>=90.
compute dobyear=-7.
end if.
execute.
variable label dobyear '(D) Year of birth, collapsed for those aged 90
or over'.
value labels dobyear
-7 'Year of birth of respondent aged 90 or over'.
```

### BPRESPC

The information from RESPBPS (the number of blood pressure readings obtained), FULL1-3 (whether blood pressure readings were ok) and CONSUB1-4 (whether the respondent did anything that might affect their blood pressure just before it was taken) is combined in this variable. This variable is a measure of whether the BP readings are *technically* valid, i.e. the respondent had not eaten, drunk, smoked, or exercised in the half hour prior to the measurement being taken.

```
RECODE respbps (1=1) (2,3=4) (4,5,6=5) into bprespc.
execute.
IF ANY(full1,2,-8,-9) | ANY(full2,2,-8,-9) | ANY(full3,2,-8,-9)
bprespc=4.
IF (respbps=1 & ANY(1,consub1,consub2,consub3)) bprespc= 2.
IF (respbps=1 & ANY(2,consub1,consub2,consub3)) bprespc= 2.
IF (respbps=1 & ANY(3,consub1,consub2,consub3)) bprespc= 2.
IF (respbps=1 & ANY(4,consub1,consub2,consub3)) bprespc= 2.
IF (respbps=1 & ANY(-9,consub1,consub2,consub3)) bprespc= 3.
IF (bpconst=1 & respbps=5) bprespc=4.
VARIABLE LABEL bprespc "(D) Whether BP readings are valid".
VALUE LABELS bprespc
 1 'Valid blood pressure measurement'
 2 'Ate, drank, smoked, exercised in previous half hour'
 3 'Not known if ate, drank, smoked or exercised'
 4 'Three valid readings not obtained'
 5 'Refused, attempted but not obtained, not attempted'.
execute.
```

### DIAVAL, SYSVAL, MAPVAL and PULVAL

These variables give the mean of the second and third readings for diastolic, systolic, arterial pressure and pulse pressure. To clarify, the mean values for the four blood pressure measurements are calculated on the second and third measurements only, as the first measurement is often higher as respondents can be anxious about having their blood pressure taken. Only the *technically* valid

readings are given in this variable (i.e. when the respondent had not eaten, drunk, smoked, or exercised in the half-hour prior to the measurement being taken).

```
do if respbps=1 and bprespc=1.
COMPUTE diaval=(dias2 + dias3)/2.
COMPUTE sysval=(sys2 + sys3)/2.
COMPUTE mapval=(map2 + map3)/2.
COMPUTE pulval=sysval-diaval.
end if.
VARIABLE LABELS diaval "(D) Valid Mean Diastolic BP".
VARIABLE LABELS sysval "(D) Valid Mean Systolic BP".
VARIABLE LABELS mapval "(D) Valid Mean Arterial Pressure".
VARIABLE LABELS pulval "(D) Valid Pulse Pressure".
recode diaval sysval mapval pulval (sysmis=-1).
add value labels diaval sysval mapval pulval
-1 'Either invalid or incomplete set of BP readings obtained'.
```

### FASTHRS

This variable shows, for those who were eligible for a fasting blood sample, the number of hours ago that the respondent last ate before their blood sample was taken. During the nurse visit, the CAPI program worked out whether the respondent was eligible to fast or not based on the criteria described in the Blood Sample section (see pages 4-5). According to these criteria, the respondent is considered as having fasted if they had not eaten or drunk anything (apart from water) in the past **five hours**. These people have FASTELI=1. However, as some analysts may want to exclude any respondents who did not fast for at **least eight hours**, we have created a derived variable that indicates this.

This variable is only applicable to those who were eligible for a fasting blood sample. Unfortunately, there were some problems with the way that the CAPI program stored the time and date that the respondent last ate. So, for those who were eligible, it first considers those whose times or dates last eaten were not reliable. It does this using ATEDBEF (not archived), itself a derived variable showing whether the respondent last ate the day before their nurse visit or on the day of the visit itself, and additionally whether the time last eaten was recorded.

Those who last ate the day before their nurse visit (ATEDBEF=1) are considered to have fasted for more than eight hours. Those who ate on the same day as their nurse visit and have a time last eaten recorded as being at least eight hours before their blood sample was taken (ATEDBEF=2 and TIMEATE=3), are also put in the category of having fasted for more than eight hours. TIMEATE is also not archived, and was another derived variable.

Finally, those who ate on the same day as their nurse visit but have a time last eaten recorded that is between five and eight hours before their blood sample was taken (ATEDBEF=2 and TIMEATE=2) are categorised as having fasted for between five and eight hours.

```

do if fasteli=-1 or fasteli=2.
compute fasthrs=-1.
end if.
do if sysmis(fasthrs) and (atedbef=-2 or atedbef=0).
compute fasthrs=-2.
end if.
do if sysmis(fasthrs) and atedbef=1.
compute fasthrs=1.
end if.
do if sysmis(fasthrs) and atedbef=2 and timeate=3.
compute fasthrs=1.
end if.
do if sysmis(fasthrs) and atedbef=2 and timeate=2.
compute fasthrs=2.
end if.
do if sysmis(fasthrs) and atedbef=2 and timeate=1.
compute fasthrs=3.
end if.
Execute.
variable labels fasthrs '(D) Time respondent last ate if eligible for
fasting sample - see User Guide'.
value labels fasthrs
-2 'No reliable info about time or date last eaten'
-1 'Not applicable'
1 'More than 8 hours before blood sample taken'
2 'Between 5 and 8 hours before blood sample taken'.

```

## BSOUTC

This variable combines information from SAMPF1 – 4 (not archived, these showed whether the blood sample tubes were filled or not) as well as CLOTB, FIT and BSWILL. It is an outcome variable for the blood sample. Please note that BSOUTC only equals 1 if **all** the blood samples were taken for this respondent (excluding the ones for DNA analysis), i.e. the respondent must have had a fasting blood sample.

```

compute bsoutc=-1.
execute.
if any (1, sampf1, sampf2, sampf3, sampf4) bsoutc=2.
if sampf1=1 and sampf2=1 and sampf3=1 and sampf4=1 bsoutc=1.
if sampf1=2 and sampf2=2 and sampf3=2 and sampf4=2 bsoutc=3.
if sampf1=2 and sampf2=2 and sampf3=-1 and sampf4=2 bsoutc=3.
if clotb=1 or fit=1 bsoutc=4.
if bswill=2 bsoutc=5.
execute.
variable labels bsoutc '(D) Outcome of blood sample (excludes DNA
sample)'.
value labels bsoutc
1 'Full sample taken - all tubes at least partially filled'
2 'Partial sample taken - at least one tube (partially) filled'
3 'No sample taken - no tubes filled or partially filled'
4 'Respondent not eligible due to clotting disorder or fit'
5 'Respondent did not consent to sample being taken'.

```

## BLOODR

This variable shows whether a respondent had a blood sample taken and whether the lab then received the sample for analysis. In particular it highlights three respondents, all of whose blood samples were not received.

```
compute bloodr=-1.
execute.
if blood_fl=1 and chol~=-1 and hdl~=-1 and trig~=-1 and ldl~=-1 and
rtin~=-1 and hscrp~=-1 and hbalc~=-1 and cfib~=-1 and hgb~=-1 and
apoe~=-1 bloodr=1.
if blood_fl=1 and any (-1, chol, hdl, trig, ldl, rtin, hscrp, hbalc,
cfib, hgb, apoe) bloodr=2.
if blood_fl=1 and chol=-1 and hdl=-1 and trig=-1 and ldl=-1 and
rtin=-1 and hscrp=-1 and hbalc=-1 and fglu=-1 and cfib=-1 and hgb=-1
and apoe=-1 bloodr=3.
if blood_fl=0 bloodr=4.
value labels bloodr
  1 'All bloods taken were received by lab'
  2 'Some bloods taken were not received by lab'
  3 'No bloods taken were received by lab'
  4 'No blood sample taken'.
variable labels bloodr '(D) Whether blood sample was taken and
received by the lab'.
```

## HTOK

This variable combines information from RESPHTS (whether height was measured) and RELHITE (whether the nurse thought the height measurement was reliable). This variable is an indication of whether the height measurement was *technically* valid (i.e. whether the nurse considered the measure to have been reliable or not).

```
RECODE resphts (1=1) (2=3) (3=4) (4=5) (-1=-1) INTO htok.
IF relhite=3 htok=2.
VARIABLE LABELS htok "(D) Whether height measure is valid".
VALUE LABELS htok
  1 "Valid (according to nurse)"
  2 "Height not usable (not valid according to nurse)"
  3 "Refused"
  4 "Attempted but not obtained"
  5 "Not attempted".
```

## WTOK

This variable combines information from RESPWTS (whether weight was measured) and RELWAIT (whether the nurse thought the weight measurement was reliable). This variable is an indication of whether the weight measurement was *technically* valid (i.e. whether the nurse considered the measure to have been reliable or not).

```
RECODE respwts (0,1=1) (2=3) (3=4) (4=5) (-1=-1) INTO wtok.
IF relwait=3 wtok=2.
VARIABLE LABELS wtok "(D) Whether weight measure is valid".
VALUE LABELS wtok
  1 "Valid (according to nurse)"
  2 "Weight not usable (not valid according to nurse)"
  3 "Refused"
  4 "Attempted but not obtained"
  5 "Not attempted".
```

## HTVAL

This variable is the same as HEIGHT but excludes measurements that were considered to be unreliable by the nurse.

```
COMPUTE htval=-1.
IF htok=1 htval=height.
VARIABLE LABELS htval "(D) Valid height (cm)".
Value labels htval -1 'Not applicable'.
```

## WTVAL

This variable is the same as WEIGHT but excludes measurements that were considered to be unreliable by the nurse. This variable also includes estimated weight (ESTWT) for respondents who weighed more than 130kg and could therefore not have their weight measured on the scales.

```
COMPUTE wtval=-1.
IF wtok=1 wtval=weight.
if range(estwt,130,500) & any(wtok,3,4,5) wtval=estwt.
VARIABLE LABELS wtval "(D) Valid weight (Kg) inc. estimated>130kg".
Value labels wtval -1 'Not applicable'.
```

## BMI

This is a calculation of the body mass index, which is derived from height and weight. Please note that this variable includes measurements that were considered unreliable by the nurse.

```
COMPUTE bmi=-1.
IF height>0 & weight>0 bmi=(weight*100*100)/(height*height).
variable labels bmi '(D) BMI - inc unreliable measurements (kg/m2)'.
value labels bmi -1 "Not Applicable".
```

## BMIVAL

This variable provides the body mass index (BMI) measurements that were considered to be reliable by the nurse. If the respondent's height measurement was considered to be reliable (from HTOK) but the weight measurement was an estimate (necessary if the respondent's weight was greater than 130kg, ESTWT), then BMI is calculated using these measurements.

```
COMPUTE bmival=-1.
IF (bmiok=1) bmival=bmi.
IF (range(estwt,130,500) & ANY(wtok,3,4,5) & htok=1)
  bmival=(estwt * 100 * 100)/(height * height).
VARIABLE LABELS bmival "(D) Valid BMI - inc estimated>130kg".
```

## BMIOK

This variable combines information regarding the technical validity of the height and weight measurements (HTOK and WTOK respectively) into an indication of whether the BMI (body mass index) value that is derived from them is valid. Only respondents for whom both the height and weight measurements were considered to be reliable by the nurse are considered to have valid BMI measures.

```
IF ANY(1,htok) & wtok=1 bmiok=1.
IF ANY(2,htok,wtok) bmiok=2.
IF ANY(3,htok,wtok) bmiok=3.
IF ANY(4,htok,wtok) bmiok=4.
IF ANY(5,htok,wtok) bmiok=5.
IF htok=-1 bmiok=-1.
IF wtok=-1 bmiok=-1.
VARIABLE LABELS bmiok "(D) Whether BMI measure is valid".
VALUE LABELS bmiok
  1 "Valid (according to nurse)"
  2 "Height/weight not usable (not valid according to nurse)"
  3 "Height/weight refused"
  4 "Height/weight attempted but not obtained"
  5 "Height/weight not attempted".
```

## BMIOBE

This variable contains technically valid body mass index (BMI) measurements (BMIVAL) grouped according to the current World Health Organisation definitions of obesity.

```
recode bmival (0 thru 18.5=1) (18.5 thru 25=2) (25 thru 30=3) (30 thru
35=4) (35 thru 40=5) (40 thru hi=6) (lo thru-1=copy)
into bmiobe.
execute.
variable label bmiobe "(D) Valid BMI grouped according to WHO
definitions".
value labels bmiobe
  1 'Under 18.5, underweight'
  2 '18.5 or over but less than 25, normal range'
  3 '25 or over but less than 30, pre-obese'
  4 '30 or over but less than 35, obese class I'
  5 '35 or over but less than 40, obese class II'
  6 '40 or over, obese class III'.
```

## WSTOKB

This variable shows which of the three waist measurements are valid. It is worked out initially as a recoded version of RESPWH (whether waist and hip measurements are valid). Three temporary variables are created (XXST12, XXST13 and XXST23, not archived) which show the difference between each waist measurement. If the difference between the first and second measurements is 3cm or less, and the waist measurement is, at worst, only slightly unreliable (WJREL) then these measurements are coded as usable. Similarly, the difference between the first and third, and second and third measurements is then considered.

```

RECODE respwh (1=1) (2=1) (3=8) (4=9) (-6,-2,-1=COPY) INTO wstokb.
COMPUTE xxwst12=abs(waist-waist2).
COMPUTE xxwst13=abs(waist-waist3).
COMPUTE xxwst23=abs(waist2-waist3).
IF respwh=1 & xxwst12<=3 & any(wjrel,1,2,3) wstokb=1.
DO IF respwh=1 & xxwst12>3.
COMPUTE wstokb=6.
IF xxwst13<=3 wstokb=2.
IF xxwst23<=3 wstokb=3.
END IF.
IF respwh=1 & xxwst12<=3 & xxwst13<=3 & xxwst23<=3 wstokb=4.
DO if respwh=1 or respwh=2.
If any(waist, -1, -2) & any(waist2, -1, -2) wstokb=7.
If any(waist, -1, -2) & any(waist3, -1, -2) wstokb=7.
If any(waist2, -1, -2) & any(waist3, -1, -2) wstokb=7.
End if.
IF ANY(wjrel,4,-9) wstokb=5.
execute.
VARIABLE LABELS wstokb "(D) Whether waist measurements are valid".
VALUE LABELS wstokb
  1 'Usable 1st & 2nd measurements'
  2 'Usable 1st & 3rd measurements'
  3 'Usable 2nd & 3rd measurements'
  4 'Usable 1st & 2nd & 3rd measurements'
  5 'Not useable: unreliable (according to nurse)'
  6 'Not useable: difference > 3cm'
  7 'Partial response'
  8 'Refused'
  9 'Not attempted'.

```

### WSTVAL

This variable gives the mean of the useable waist measurements (WSTOKB).

```

COMPUTE wstval=-1.
IF wstokb=1 wstval=(waist+waist2)/2.
IF wstokb=2 wstval=(waist+waist3)/2.
IF wstokb=3 wstval=(waist2+waist3)/2.
IF wstokb=4 wstval=(waist+waist2+waist3)/3.
VARIABLE LABEL wstval "(D) Valid Mean Waist (cm)".
Add value labels wstval -1 'Not applicable'.

```

### HIPOKB

This variable shows which of the three hip measurements are valid. It's derivation is very similar to that of WSTOKB, in that the differences between the measures are assessed in temporary variables (XXHIP12, XXHIP13, and XXHIP23, not archived), and it is then calculated which measurements are usable.

```

RECODE respwh (1=1) (2=1) (3=8) (4=9) (-6,-2,-1=COPY) INTO hipokb.
COMPUTE xxhip12=abs(hip-hip2).
COMPUTE xxhip13=abs(hip-hip3).
COMPUTE xxhip23=abs(hip2-hip3).
IF respwh=1 & xxhip12<=3 & any(hjrel,1,2,3) hipokb=1.
DO IF respwh=1 & xxhip12>3.
COMPUTE hipokb=6.
IF xxhip13<=3 hipokb=2.
IF xxhip23<=3 hipokb=3.
END IF.
IF respwh=1 & xxhip12<=3 & xxhip13<=3 & xxhip23<=3 hipokb=4.
do if respwh=1 or respwh=2.
if any(hip, -1, -2) & any(hip2, -1, -2) hipokb=7.
if any(hip, -1, -2) & any(hip3, -1, -2) hipokb=7.
if any(hip2, -1, -2) & any(hip3, -1, -2) hipokb=7.
end if.
IF ANY(hjrel,4,-9) hipokb=5.
execute.
VARIABLE LABELS hipokb "(D) Whether hip measurements are valid".
VALUE LABELS hipokb
  1 'Usable 1st & 2nd measurements'
  2 'Usable 1st & 3rd measurements'
  3 'Usable 2nd & 3rd measurements'
  4 'Usable 1st & 2nd & 3rd measurements'
  5 'Not useable: unreliable (according to nurse)'
  6 'Not useable: difference > 3cm'
  7 'Partial response'
  8 'Refused'
  9 'Not attempted'.

```

## HIPVAL

This variable gives the mean of the useable hip measurements (HIPOKB).

```

COMPUTE hipval=-1.
IF hipokb=1 hipval=(hip+hip2)/2.
IF hipokb=2 hipval=(hip+hip3)/2.
IF hipokb=3 hipval=(hip2+hip3)/2.
IF hipokb=4 hipval=(hip+hip2+hip3)/3.
VARIABLE LABEL hipval "(D) Valid Mean Hip (cm)".
Add value labels hipval -1 'Not applicable'.

```

## WHOKB

This variable draws on WSTOKB and HIPOKB to calculate the usability of the waist and hip measurements.

```

RECODE wstokb(-6,-2,-1=COPY) into whokb.
IF RANGE(wstokb,1,4) & RANGE(hipokb,1,4) whokb=1.
IF ANY(5,wstokb,hipokb) | ANY(6,wstokb,hipokb) whokb=2.
IF ANY(7,wstokb,hipokb) whokb=3.
IF ANY(8,wstokb,hipokb) whokb=4.
IF ANY(9,wstokb,hipokb) whokb=5.
VARIABLE LABELS whokb "(D) Whether waist/hip measure is valid".
VALUE LABELS whokb
  1 "Valid"
  2 "Waist/Hip not usable"
  3 "Waist/Hip partial response"
  4 "Waist/Hip refused"
  5 "Waist/Hip not attempted".

```

## WHVAL

This variable gives the mean waist/hip ratio if both the waist and hip measurements are considered to be useable (WSTOKB and HIPOKB).

```
COMPUTE whval=-1.
IF whokb=1 whval=wstval/hipval.
VARIABLE LABEL whval "(D) Valid Mean Waist/Hip ratio".
Add value labels whval -1 'Not applicable'.
```

## MMRROC

This variable was derived to clarify the outcome of the number of chair rises completed by age. It is based on MMRRRE) Respondents aged 70 or over were only asked to do 5 chair rises whereas younger respondents were asked to do 10 chair rises.

```
compute mmrroc=-1.
if mmrrre>4 and hhage>=69 mmrroc=1.
if mmrrre>-1 and mmrrre<5 and hhage>=69 mmrroc=2.
if mmrrre>-1 and hhage<=70 mmrroc=4.
if mmrrre=10 and hhage<=70 mmrroc=3.
if mmrrsc=2 mmrroc=5.
add value labels mmrroc
  1 'Completed 5 rises, respondent aged 70 or over'
  2 'Completed less than 5 rises, respondent aged 70 or over'
  3 'Completed 10 rises, respondent aged less than 70'
  4 'Completed less than 10 rises, respondent aged less than 70'
  5 'Not attempted - did not feel it was safe'
-1 'Not applicable - did not do single rise successfully'.
variable labels mmrroc '(D) Chair rise: Outcome of multiple chair rises,
split by age'.
```

## LFNOMEA

This variable shows more clearly the reason why lung function was not measured.

```
compute lfnomea=-1.
if lfwill=-1 lfnomea=1.
if xlftemp=1 lfnomea=2.
if noread=1 or lfwill=3 lfnomea=3.
if lfwill=2 lfnomea=4.
variable labels lfnomea '(D) Reason why lung function not measured'.
add value labels lfnomea
-1 'Not applicable'
  1 'Respondent ineligible for LF measurement for medical reasons'
  2 'Temperature too cold for LF measurement to take place'
  3 'Not attempted or obtained for reason other than refusal'
  4 'Respondent refused'.
```

## MMFTRE2

This variable was derived to clarify the outcome of the full-tandem stand by age. It uses MMFTRE (not archived), which was the original outcome variable.

```
compute mmftre2=-1.
recode mmftre (3=5) into mmftre2.
do if hhage >=70.
  recode mmftre (1=1) into mmftre2.
  recode mmftre (2=2) into mmftre2.
end if.
do if hhage <70.
  recode mmftre (1=3) into mmftre2.
  recode mmftre (2=4) into mmftre2.
end if.
execute.
value labels mmftre2
-1 "Ineligible - did not hold semi-tandem stand for 10 seconds"
 1 'Held for 10 seconds, respondent aged 70 or over'
 2 'Held for less than 10 seconds, respondent aged 70 or over'
 3 'Held for 30 seconds, respondent aged less than 70'
 4 'Held for less than 30 seconds, respondent aged less than 70'
 5 'Stand not attempted'.
variable labels mmftre2 '(D) Outcome of full tandem stand according to
age'.
```

### Contact details

*ELSA Research Team:*

E-mail: [ELSAData@natcen.ac.uk](mailto:ELSAData@natcen.ac.uk)

Telephone: 020 7250 1866

*Health Survey for England (HSE):*

E-mail: [HSEData@natcen.ac.uk](mailto:HSEData@natcen.ac.uk)

Telephone: 020 7250 1866

# **English Longitudinal Study of Ageing**

**Wave Two Nurse Questionnaire – 2004-2005**

**Archived Version 1 - February 2007**

## **IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT THE PAPER VERSION OF THE QUESTIONNAIRE**

### **Variables omitted from the archived dataset**

@ - This means that the variable has been omitted from the archived dataset (see User Guide for more information).

### **Textfills**

^ - This annotation is shown before any textfills that were used in questions. The different options of the textfill are provided in square brackets e.g. [^him/her].

### **Program Checks**

The CAPI instrument contains a number of checks to help ensure that the information entered by the nurse is accurate and consistent. The places where checks were used are indicated in this documentation. These are numbered and all have the prefix "N" (to indicate that they are in the nurse questionnaire): e.g.

***[CHECK N1]***

The routing and wording for the checks are in the appendix.

## DEMOGRAPHICS MODULE

### NAME @

NURSE: Enter the name of person number [^person number from Household Grid] from section 7 on the NRF.

String 20

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

### SEX

NURSE: Code the sex of person number [^person number from Household Grid] from section 7 on the NRF.

1 Male

2 Female

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

### AGE @

NURSE: Enter the age of person number [^person number from Household Grid] from section 7 on the NRF.

Range: 0..120

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

### OC @

NURSE: Enter the nurse status code for person number [^person number from Household Grid] from section 7 on the NRF.

1. Agreed Nurse Visit

2. Refused Nurse Visit

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

### STRTNUR @

NURSE: Enter the start time of the interview in hours and minutes using the 24-hour clock (e.g 17:30).

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Date of interview = EMPTY [NurDate = EMPTY]*

|

### | DATEOK @

| NURSE: Today's date according to the laptop is [^automatically recorded date of interview]. Is this the correct date?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

|

| *IF Whether today's date is shown correctly = Yes [DateOK = 1]*

|

| *ELSE IF Whether today's date is shown correctly = No [DateOK = 2]*

|

### | NURDATE @

| NURSE: Enter the date of this interview.

| [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

|

| ***[Month of interview is recorded in variable VISMON and year of interview is***

| | **recorded in variable VISYEAR]**

| | END FILTER

| **ELSE IF Date of interview = RESPONSE [NurDate = RESPONSE]**

| | **NURDATE @**

| | NURSE: Enter the date of this interview.

| | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

| | **[Month of interview is recorded in variable VISMON and year of interview is recorded in variable VISYEAR]**

| | **[CHECK N1]**

| | END FILTER

**NDOBD @**

Can I just check your date of birth?

NURSE: Enter day, month and year of [^Name of respondent]'s date of birth separately.

Enter the day here.

Range: 1..31

**NDOBM @**

NURSE: Enter the code for the month of [^Name of respondent]'s date of birth.

01 January

02 February

03 March

04 April

05 May

06 June

07 July

08 August

09 September

10 October

11 November

12 December

**NDOBY @**

NURSE: Enter the year of [^Name of respondent]'s date of birth.

Range: 1890..2100

**[Year of birth is recorded in variable DOBYEAR.  
Respondents aged 90 or over are coded as -7]**

**[There are 2 age variables in the file:**

**HHAGE: Age derived from date of birth and date of nurse visit - used for eligibility for measures throughout interview**

**CONFAGE: Actual age at nurse visit]**

**[CHECKS N2 - N5]**

**DISPAGE @**

CHECK WITH RESPONDENT: So your age is [^respondent's age (derived from respondent's date of birth and today's date)]?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

***[CHECKS N6 - N7]***

## **BLOOD PRESSURE MODULE**

### **BPMOD @**

NURSE: Now follows the Blood Pressure module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **BPCONST**

(As I mentioned earlier) We would like to measure your blood pressure. The analysis of blood pressure readings will tell us a lot about the health of the population.

NURSE: Does the respondent agree to blood pressure measurement?

- 1 Yes, agrees
- 2 No, refuses
- 3 Unable to measure BP for reason other than refusal

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether respondent agrees to BP measurement = Yes [BPConst = 1]*

### **CONSUBX**

May I just check, have you eaten, smoked, drunk alcohol or done any [^BLANK / vigorous] exercise in the past 30 minutes?

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Eaten
- 2 Smoked
- 3 Drunk alcohol
- 4 Done [^BLANK / vigorous] exercise
- 5 (None of these)

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[Multiple responses to CONSUBX are recorded in variables CONSUB1 to CONSUB3]**

[code maximum 4 out of 5 possible responses]

### **[CHECK N8]**

### **OMRONNO @**

NURSE: Record blood pressure equipment serial number.

Range: 1..999

### **CUFSIZE**

NURSE: Select cuff and attach to the respondent's right arm.

Ask the respondent to sit still for five minutes.

Record cuff size chosen.

- 1 Adult (22-32 cm)
- 2 Large adult (32-42 cm)

### **AIRTEMP**

NURSE: Record the ambient air temperature.

Enter the temperature in centigrades to one decimal place.

Range: 0.0..40.0

### **[CHECKS N9 - N10]**

**BPREADY @**

NURSE: During five minute wait, prepare documents for rest of Nurse Visit:

- Consent booklet - office copy
- Consent booklet - respondent copy
- Grip strength measurement card
- Measurement record card
- Saliva home log book
- (Nurse self-completion)

If appropriate, prepare equipment for rest of Nurse Visit.

Once respondent has sat still for 5 minutes you are ready to take the measurements.

Ensure the Ready to measure symbol is lit before pressing the Start button to start the measurements.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

String 1

REPEAT MEASUREMENT THREE TIMES (if SYS<>996) [LOOP FOR I:= 1 TO 3]

**SYS**

NURSE: Take three measurements from right arm.

Enter [^first / second / third] systolic reading (mmHg).

If reading not obtained, enter 999.

If you are not going to get any bp readings at all, enter 996.

Range: 1..999

***[Responses to SYS are recorded in variables SYS1 to SYS3]***

***[CHECK N11]***

**DIAS**

Enter [^first / second / third] diastolic reading (mmHg).

If reading not obtained, enter 999.

Range: 1..999

***[Responses to DIAS are recorded in variables DIAS1 to DIAS3]***

***[CHECKS N12 - N13]***

**PULSE**

Enter [^first / second / third] pulse reading (bpm).

If reading not obtained, enter 999.

Range: 1..999

***[Responses to PULSE are recorded in variables PULSE1 to PULSE3]***

***[CHECKS N14 - N22]***

***[CHECKS N23 - N24]***

END OF LOOP

*IF Number of valid BP readings = 0 [Reads = 0]*

**YNOBP**

| | NURSE: Enter reason for not recording any full BP readings.  
| | 1 Blood pressure measurement attempted but not obtained  
| | 2 Blood pressure measurement not attempted  
| | 3 Blood pressure measurement refused

| | END FILTER

| END FILTER

***[Mean Arterial Pressure (MAP) readings are recorded in variables MAP1 to MAP3. Whether each set of readings is complete is computed and recorded in variables FULL1 to FULL3***

***Whether all BP measurements have been obtained is computed and recorded in variable RespBPS]***

*IF (Response to BP measurements = [Two, one, tried, did not try, refused]) OR (Whether respondent agrees to have blood pressure measured = No) [(RespBPS = [2 - 6]) OR (BPConst = 2)]*

| | **NATTBPD**

| | NURSE: Record why [^only two readings obtained /only one reading obtained / reading not obtained / reading not attempted / reading refused / unable to take reading].

| | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- | | 0 Problems with PC
- | | 1 Respondent upset / anxious / nervous
- | | 2 Error reading
- | | 3 Other reason(s) (specify at next question)
- | | 4 Problems with cuff fitting / painful
- | | 5 Problems with equipment (not error reading)

| | ***[Multiple responses to NATTBPD are recorded in variables NATTBPD1 to NATTBPD2]***

| | [code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]

| | END FILTER

*IF (Reason why full set of BP measurements was not collected = Other) OR (Reason why full set of BP measurements was not collected = [EMPTY, Other]) [(NAttBPD = 3) AND (CNattBPD = [EMPTY, 3])]*

| | **OTHNBP @**

| | NURSE: Enter full details of other reason(s) for not obtaining / attempting three BP readings.

| | String 140

| | END FILTER

*IF Response to BP measurements = [Three, two, one] [RespBPS = [1 - 3]]*

| | **DIFBPC**

| | NURSE: Record any problems taking readings.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 No problems taking blood pressure
- 2 Reading taken on left arm because right arm not suitable
- 3 Respondent was upset / anxious / nervous
- 4 Other problems (specify at next question)
- 5 Problems with cuff fitting / painful
- 6 Problems with equipment (not error reading)
- 7 Error reading

**[Multiple responses to DIFBPC are recorded in variables DIFBPC1 to DIFBPC3]**  
 [code maximum 3 out of 7 possible responses]

**[CHECK N25]**

END FILTER

*IF Whether any difficulty with taking BP measurements = Other [DifBPC = 4]*

**CDIFBPC @**  
 EDITOR: Back code answer at OthDifBP here.  
 UP TO 3 CODES.

- 1 No problems taking blood pressure
- 2 Reading taken on left arm because right arm not suitable
- 3 Respondent was upset / anxious / nervous
- 4 EDITOR: Part of answer can't be back coded
- 5 Problems with Cuff fitting / painful
- 6 Problems with Dinamap readings (zeros, no readings)

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]  
 [code maximum 3 out of 6 possible responses]

END FILTER

*IF (Whether any difficulty with taking BP measurements = Other) AND (Whether any difficulty with taking BP measurements = [EMPTY, Other])  
 [(DifBPC = 4) AND (CDifBPC = [EMPTY, 4])]*

**OTHDIFBP @**  
 NURSE: Record full details of other problem(s) taking readings.  
 String 140

END FILTER

*IF Response to BP measurements = [Three, two, one] [RespBPS = [1 - 3]]*

**GPREGB @**  
 Are you registered with a GP?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END FILTER

*IF Whether respondent registered with GP = Yes [GPRegB = 1]*

**GPSEND @**

May we send your blood pressure readings to your GP?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether results may be sent to GP = No [GPSEND = 2]*

**GPREFC @**

NURSE: Specify reason(s) for refusal to allow BP readings to be sent to GP.  
CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Hardly / Never sees GP
- 2 GP knows respondent's BP level
- 3 Does not want to bother GP
- 4 Other (specify at next question)

[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]

*IF Why BP results may not be sent to GP = Other [GPREFC = 4]*

**CGPREFC @**

EDITOR: Back code the answer at OthRefC here.  
UP TO 3 CODES.

- 1 Hardly / Never sees GP
- 2 GP knows respondent's BP level
- 3 Does not want to bother GP
- 4 EDITOR: Part of answer can't be back coded

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

[code maximum 3 out of 4 possible responses]

END FILTER

*IF (Why BP results may not be sent to GP = Other) AND (Why BP results may not be sent to GP = [EMPTY, Other])*

*[(GPREFC = 4) AND (CGPREFC = [EMPTY, 4])]*

**OTHREFC @**

NURSE: Give full details of reason(s) for refusal.  
String 140

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF Response to BP measurements = [Three, two, one] [RespBPS = [1 - 3]]*

**BPOFFER @**

NURSE: Offer blood pressure results to respondent.

	Systolic	Diastolic	Pulse
i)	[^Sys1]	[^Dias1]	[^Pulse1]
ii)	[^Sys2]	[^Dias2]	[^Pulse2]
iii)	[^Sys3]	[^Dias3]	[^Pulse3]

Enter these on [^Name of respondent]'s Measurement Record Card.

Tick the [^considerably raised / moderately raised / mildly raised / normal] box and read out to respondent:

[^Your blood pressure is high today. Blood pressure can vary from day to day and throughout the day so that one high reading does not necessarily mean that you suffer from high blood pressure. You are strongly advised to visit your GP within 5 days to have a further blood pressure reading to see whether this is a once-off finding or not. NURSE: If respondent is elderly, advise [^him / her] to contact GP within next 7 - 10 days. / Your blood pressure is a bit high today. Blood pressure can vary from day to day and throughout the day so that one high reading does not necessarily mean that you suffer from high blood pressure. You are advised to visit your GP within 2-3 weeks to have a further blood pressure reading to see whether this is a once-off finding or not. / Your blood pressure is a bit high today. Blood pressure can vary from day to day and throughout the day so that one high reading does not necessarily mean that you suffer from high blood pressure. You are advised to visit your GP within 3 months to have a further blood pressure reading to see whether this is a once-off finding or not. / Your blood pressure is normal.]

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

String 1

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent registered with GP <> Yes) OR (Whether BP results may be sent to GP = No) [(GPRRegB <> 1) OR (GPSend = 2)]*

**CODE022 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 02 on the front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*ELSE IF Whether BP results may be sent to GP = Yes [GPSend = 1]*

**CONSRM1 @**

NURSE:

a) Complete Consent Form 1 - 'Blood pressure to GP'

b) Ask respondent to read, sign and date the office copy.

c) Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.

d) Check that GP name, address and phone no. are recorded on the front of the Consent Booklet.

e) Check the name by which GP knows respondent.

f) Circle consent code 01 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

## GRIP STRENGTH MODULE

### GRINT @

NURSE: Now follows the Grip Strength module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### MMGSWIL

Now I would like to assess the strength of your hand in a gripping action.

I will count up to three and then ask you to squeeze this handle as hard as you can, just for two or three seconds and then let go.

NURSE: Demonstrate.

READ OUT: I will take alternately three measurements from your right and your left hand.

Would you be willing to have your handgrip measured?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No
- 3 Unable to take measurement

*IF Whether respondent is willing to have grip strength measured = [No, Unable]  
[MMGSWil = [2, 3]]*

|

### | MMGSWN @

| NURSE: Give details why grip strength test not attempted.

| String 60

|

*ELSE*

|

### | MMGSDOM

| NURSE: ASK OR CODE : Which is your dominant hand?

- | 1 Right hand
- | 2 Left hand

|

### | MMGSSTA

| Can I just check, have you had a recent hand injury or surgery to either hand within the last six months?

| NURSE: If yes, do not attempt grip strength measure with affected hand(s).

| If respondent cannot use hand(s) for this or any other reason, code below.

| Record respondent status.

- | 1 Respondent has the use of both hands
- | 2 Respondent is unable to use [^left / right (dominant)] hand
- | 3 Respondent is unable to use [^left / right (non-dominant)] hand
- | 4 Respondent is unable to use either hand

|

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent is willing to have grip strength measured <> Yes) OR  
(Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands = unable to use either)  
[(MMGSWil <> 1) OR (MMGSSta = 4)]*

|

### | MMGSSTP @

| NURSE: Stop test, no handgrip measurement to be taken.  
| Press <1> and <Enter> to continue with the next section.  
| Range: 1..1

| ELSE

| **MMGSINT @**

| NURSE: Position the respondent correctly.  
| Adjust gripometer to hand size by turning the lever and reset arrow at zero.  
| Explain the procedure once again.  
| Show the respondent how to do the test and let [^him / her] have a practice with one  
| hand.  
| Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
| Range: 1..1

| *IF Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands = [both, unable to  
| use dominant] [MMGSSta = [1, 2]]*

| **MMGSN1**

| NURSE: [^Left / Right (Non-dominant)] hand, first measurement.  
| Say: 'One, two, three, squeeze!'  
| Enter the result to the nearest whole value.  
| Range: 0..100

| END FILTER

| *IF Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands = [both, unable to  
| use non-dominant] [MMGSSta = [1, 3]]*

| **MMGSD1**

| NURSE: [^Left / Right (Dominant)] hand, first measurement.  
| Say: 'One, two, three, squeeze!'  
| Enter the result to the nearest whole value.  
| Range: 0..100

| END FILTER

| *IF Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands = [both, unable to  
| use dominant] [MMGSSta = [1, 2]]*

| **MMGSN2**

| NURSE: [^Left / Right (Non-dominant)] hand, second measurement.  
| Say: 'One, two, three, squeeze!'  
| Enter the result to the nearest whole value.  
| Range: 0..100

| END FILTER

| *IF Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands = [both, unable to  
| use non-dominant] [MMGSSta = [1, 3]]*

**MMGSD2**

NURSE: [^Left / Right (Dominant)] hand, second measurement.

Say: 'One, two, three, squeeze!'

Enter the result to the nearest whole value.

Range: 0..100

END FILTER

*IF Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands = [both, unable to use dominant] [MMGSSta = [1, 2]]*

**MMGSN3**

NURSE: [^Left / Right (Non-dominant)] hand, third measurement.

Say: 'One, two, three, squeeze!'

Enter the result to the nearest whole value.

Range: 0..100

END FILTER

*IF Whether respondent is able to use both, one or neither hands = [both, unable to use non-dominant] [MMGSSta = [1, 3]]*

**MMGSD3**

NURSE: [^Left / Right (Dominant)] hand, third measurement.

Say: 'One, two, three, squeeze!'

Enter the result to the nearest whole value.

Range: 0..100

END FILTER

**MMGSTP**

NURSE: Record respondent's position.

- 1 Standing without arm support
- 2 Sitting without arm support
- 3 Standing with arm support
- 4 Sitting with arm support

**[CHECKS N26 - N36]**

**MMGSRES**

NURSE CHECK: Code one only.

- 1 All measures obtained
- 2 Some measures obtained
- 3 No measures obtained

*IF Number of grip strength measurements obtained = All [MMGSRes = 1]*

**MMGSPRX @**

NURSE: Record any problems taking the grip strength measurement.

Press <Enter> if no problems encountered.

Press <Alt S> to close the text window and save your answer.

```

| | Open
| |
| | ELSE IF Number of grip strength measurements obtained = [some, none]
| | [MMGSRes = [2, 3]]
| |
| | MMGSPRB
| | NURSE: Give reasons why no or only some measures were obtained.
| | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.
| | 1 Respondent refusal
| | 2 Respondent in pain in hand / joints / muscles
| | 3 Equipment failure
| | 95 Other (specify at next question)
| | [Multiple responses to MMGSPRB are recorded in variables MMGSPR1 to
| | MMGSPR2]
| | [code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]
| |
| | IF Reasons why no or only some measures obtained = Other [MMGSPrB = 95)
| |
| | MMGSPRO @
| | NURSE: Give details of why no or only some measures obtained.
| | String 40
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | END FILTER

```

## BLOOD SAMPLE MODULE

### BLINTRO @

NURSE: Now follows the Blood Sample module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### CLOTB

NURSE: Explain the purpose and procedure for taking blood.

READ OUT: May I just check, do you have a clotting or bleeding disorder or are you currently on anti-coagulant drugs such as Warfarin?

(NURSE: Aspirin therapy is not a contraindication for blood sample.)

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

### [CHECK N37]

*IF Whether has a clotting disorder = No [ClotB = 2]*

|

#### FIT

| May I just check, have you ever had a fit (including epileptic fit, convulsion, convulsion associated with high fever)?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

|

END FILTER

*IF Whether ever had a fit = No [Fit = 2]*

|

#### BSWILL

| Would you be willing to have a blood sample taken?

- | 1 Yes
- | 2 No

| [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

|

| *IF Whether is willing to give blood sample = Yes [BSWill = 1]*

|

| | *IF respondent's age < 80 [PAge < 80]*

| |

#### FASTASK

| | NURSE: Did you ask the respondent to fast?

- | | 1 Yes
- | | 2 No, advised respondent was not safe to fast
- | | 3 Did not contact respondent prior to visit

| |

| | *IF Whether respondent was asked to fast = [yes, did not contact respondent prior to visit] [FastAsk = [1, 3]]*

| |

#### DATELEAT @

| | | When did you last have anything to eat or drink (excluding water)?

| | | NURSE: Enter the date (dd / mm / yyyy).

Enter the time at the next question.  
[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Date when last had anything to eat or drink = RESPONSE*  
*[DateLEat = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECKS N38 - N39]**

*IF Date when last had anything to eat or drink = Date at start of Blood module*  
*[DateLEat = BIDate]*

**TIMELEAT @**

NURSE: Enter the time in hours and minutes using the 24 hour clock  
(e.g. 17:30).  
[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Time when last had anything to eat or drink = RESPONSE*  
*[TimeLEat = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECK N40]**

*IF (Time when last had anything to eat or drink + 5 hours) < Time at start of*  
*Blood module [(TimeLEat + (5, 0, 0)) < BITime]*

**LIGHTEA @**

What did you have to eat?

NURSE: Only code 1 below if the respondent has followed the  
instructions on the appointment record card, that is either:

Afternoon appointment - a light breakfast only

Evening appointment - a light lunch and/or their usual breakfast only

1 EITHER light breakfast OR light lunch &/ usual breakfast

2 Anything else (specify at next question)

*IF Type of meal last eaten = Other [LightEa = 2]*

**WHATEAT @**

Did you have...

1 ...a drink only

2 ...a piece of fruit only

3 ...a snack, such as a sandwich or crisps or a snack bar or biscuit  
or bar of chocolate only

4 ...or a meal?

END FILTER

*[Whether the respondent is eligible to have a blood sample taken is computed and recorded in variable FastEli.*

*Variable FastEli indicates that the respondent is eligible for having a blood sample taken (value 1) IF ((DateLEat < BIDate) OR (LightEa = 1) OR (WhatEat = [1, 2]))]*

**FASTBL @**

NURSE: This respondent can give a blood sample now.

Remember to complete the Consent Forms.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**BSCONS @**

NURSE: Explain need for written consent:

'Before I can take any blood, I have to obtain written consent from you.'

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**CODE05 @**

NURSE: Complete Consent Form 3 part a).

- Ask the respondent to read, sign and date the office copy.

- Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.

- Circle consent code 05 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*IF Whether respondent registered with GP <> RESPONSE*

*[GPRegB <> RESPONSE]*

**GPSAM @**

NURSE CHECK:

1 Respondent registered with GP

2 Respondent not registered with GP

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent registered with GP = Yes) OR (Whether respondent registered with GP = Registered) [(GPRegB = 1) OR (GPSam = 1)]*

**SENDSAM @**

May we send the results of your blood sample analysis to your GP?

1 Yes

2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether results of blood sample analysis may be sent to GP = Yes*  
[SendSam = 1]

**BSSIGN @**

NURSE: Complete Consent Form 3 part b).

- Ask the respondent to read, sign and date the office copy.
  - Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.
  - Check name by which GP knows respondent.
  - Check GP name, address and phone no. are recorded on front of the Consent Booklet.
  - Circle consent code 07 on front of the Consent Booklet.
- Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*ELSE IF Whether results of blood sample analysis may be sent to GP = No*  
[SendSam = 2]

**SENSAM @**

Why do you not want your blood sample results sent to your GP?

- 1 Hardly / never sees GP
- 2 GP recently took blood sample
- 3 Does not want to bother GP
- 4 Other

[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]

*IF Why results of blood sample analysis may not be sent to GP = Other*  
[SenSam = 4]

**CSENSAM @**

EDITOR: Back code here.

Why do you not want your blood sample results sent to your GP?

- 1 Hardly / never sees GP
- 2 GP recently took blood sample
- 3 Does not want to bother GP
- 4 Other

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]

*IF (Why results of blood sample analysis may not be sent to GP = Other)*  
*AND (Why results of blood sample analysis may not be sent to GP = [EMPTY,*  
*Other]) [(SenSam = 4) AND (CSenSam = [EMPTY, 4])]*

**OTHSAM @**

NURSE: Give full details of reason(s) for not wanting results sent to GP.

String 140

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent registered with GP = Not registered) OR (Whether results of blood sample analysis may be sent to GP = No) [(GPSam = 2) OR (SendSam = 2)]*

**CODE08 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 08 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

**CONSTORB @**

May we have your consent to store any remaining blood for future analysis?

1 Storage consent given

2 Consent refused

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether consent granted for storing blood for future analysis = Yes  
[ConStorB = 1]*

**CODE11 @**

NURSE: Complete Consent Form 3 part c).

- Ask the respondent to read, sign and date the office copy.

- Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.

- Circle consent code 11 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**CONSDNA @**

There is currently interest in genetic tests which use the DNA contained in blood and you were given a separate leaflet by the interviewer explaining this.

Do you have any questions about this?

NURSE: Answer any questions.

READ OUT: May we have your consent to extract DNA from your sample and store this DNA for future analysis?

1 DNA consent given

2 Consent refused

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether consent granted for extracting and storing DNA for future analysis = Yes [ConsDNA = 1]*

**CODE13 @**

NURSE: Complete Consent Form 4

- Ask the respondent to read, sign and date the office copy.

- Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.

- Circle consent code 13 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*ELSE IF Whether consent granted for extracting and storing DNA for future analysis = No [ConsDNA = 2]*

**CODE14 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 14 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

*ELSE IF Whether consent granted for storing blood for future analysis = No [ConStorB = 2]*

**CODE12 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 12 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

**TAKESA1 @**

NURSE:

- Check that you have all the applicable signatures.

Take the samples in order of priority:

First the 1.8ml citrate tube (blue)

then the 6ml plain tube (red)

[^BLANK / then the 2ml fluoride tube (grey)]

[^then the three 4ml EDTA tubes (purple) / then a single 4ml EDTA tube (purple)].

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**TAKESA2 @**

NURSE:

- Check that you have the correct sheet of barcode labels for the respondent.

- Check with respondent their name and date of birth on the label sheet.

- Stick one barcode label on each tube.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**SAMPF1 @**

NURSE: Code if the citrate blue tube was filled (include partially filled tube):

1 Yes

2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**SAMPF2 @**

NURSE: Code if the plain red tube was filled (include partially filled tube):

1 Yes

2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether eligible for a fasting sample based on when and what last ate = Yes*  
*[FastElig = 1]*

**SAMPF3 @**

NURSE: Code if the fluoride grey tube was filled (include partially filled tube):

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

END FILTER

**SAMPF4 @**

NURSE: Code if the [^BLANK / first] EDTA purple tube was filled (include partially filled tube):

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether consent granted for extracting and storing DNA for future analysis*  
*= Yes [ConsDNA = 1]*

**SAMPF5 @**

NURSE: Code if the second EDTA purple tube was filled (include partially filled tube):

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**SAMPF6 @**

NURSE: Code if the third EDTA purple tube was filled (include partially filled tube):

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

END FILTER

***[Whether a blood sample was obtained is computed and recorded in variable SampTak.***

***Variable SampTak indicates that a blood sample was obtained (value 1)***

***IF ((SAMPF1 = 1) OR (SAMPF2 = 1) OR (SAMPF3 = 1) OR (SAMPF4 = 1) OR (SAMPF5 = 1) OR (SAMPF6 = 1))***

***IF Blood sample outcome (derived) = Sample obtained [SampTak = 1]***

**SAMPARM @**

NURSE: Code from which arm the blood was taken.

- 1 Right
- 2 Left

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**SAMDIFC**

NURSE: Record any problems in taking blood sample.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 No problem
- 2 Incomplete sample
- 3 Collapsing / poor veins
- 4 Second attempt necessary
- 5 Some blood obtained, but respondent felt faint/fainted
- 6 Unable to use tourniquet
- 7 Other (specify at next question)

**[Multiple responses to SAMDIFC are recorded in variables SAMDIF1 to SAMDIF4]**

[code maximum 6 out of 7 possible responses]

**[CHECKS N41 - N42]**

*IF Whether any problems in taking sample = Other [SamDifC = 7]*

**CSAMDIFC @**

EDITOR: Back code here.

NURSE: Record any problems in taking blood sample.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 No problem
- 2 Incomplete sample
- 3 Collapsing / poor veins
- 4 Second attempt necessary
- 5 Some blood obtained, but respondent felt faint/fainted
- 6 Unable to use tourniquet
- 7 EDITOR: Part of answer can't be back coded

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

[code maximum 3 out of 7 possible responses]

END FILTER

*IF (Whether any problems in taking sample = Other) AND (Whether any problems in taking sample = [EMPTY, Other])*

*[(SamDifC = 7) AND (CSamDifC = [EMPTY, 7])]*

**OTHBDIF @**

NURSE: Give full details of other problem(s) in taking blood sample.

String 140

END FILTER

**VENECK @**

NURSE: Now complete the relevant sections of the venepuncture check-list in the consent booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*IF Whether eligible for a fasting sample based on when and what last ate = Yes*

[FastElig = 1]

**BREAKFAST @**

NURSE: Encourage the respondent to have something to eat now, [^he / she] should not feel faint for the physical performance measures.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

**SNDRSAM @**

Would you like to be sent the results of your blood sample analysis?

1 Yes

2 No

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether respondent would like to be sent the results of the analysis = Yes*

[SnDrSam = 1]

**CODE09 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 09 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*ELSE IF Whether respondent would like to be sent the results of the analysis = No*

[SnDrSam = 2]

**CODE10 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 10 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

*ELSE IF Blood sample outcome (derived) = Sample not obtained [SampTak = 2]*

**NOBSM**

NURSE: Code reason(s) no blood obtained.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

1 No suitable or no palpable vein / collapsed veins

2 Respondent was too anxious / nervous

3 Respondent felt faint / fainted

4 Other

**[Multiple responses to NOBSM are recorded in variables NOBSM1 to NOBSM2]**

[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]

*IF Reason(s) why no blood obtained = Other [NoBSM = 4]*

**CNOBSM @**

EDITOR: Back code here.

NURSE: Code reason(s) no blood obtained.  
 CODE ALL THAT APPLY.  
 1 No suitable or no palpable vein / collapsed veins  
 2 Respondent was too anxious / nervous  
 3 Respondent felt faint / fainted  
 4 EDITOR: Part of answer can't be back coded  
 [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]  
 [code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]

END FILTER

*IF (Reason(s) why no blood obtained = Other) AND (Reason(s) why no blood obtained = [EMPTY, Other])  
 [(NoBSM = 4) AND (CNoBSM = [EMPTY, 4])]*

**OTHNOBSM @**  
 NURSE: Give full details of reason(s) no blood obtained.  
 String 140

END FILTER

**CODE12A @**  
 NURSE: Cross out consent codes 05, 07, 09, 11 and 13 if already circled on the front of the Consent Booklet.  
 Replace with consent codes 06, 08, 10, 12 and 14 on the front of the Consent Booklet.  
 Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
 Range: 1..1

END FILTER

*ELSE IF Whether is willing to give blood sample = No [BSWill = 2]*

**REFBSC**  
 NURSE: Record why blood sample refused.  
 CODE ALL THAT APPLY.  
 1 Previous difficulties with venepuncture  
 2 Dislike / fear of needles  
 3 Respondent recently had blood test / health check  
 4 Refused because of current illness  
 5 Worried about HIV or AIDS  
 6 Other  
**[Multiple responses to REFBSC are recorded in variables REFBSC1 to REFBSC3]**  
 [code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]

*IF Reason why blood sample refused = Other [(RefBSC = 6]*

**CREFBSC @**  
 EDITOR: Back code here.  
 NURSE: Record why blood sample refused.

```

| | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.
| | | 1 Previous difficulties with venepuncture
| | | 2 Dislike / fear of needles
| | | 3 Respondent recently had blood test / health check
| | | 4 Refused because of current illness
| | | 5 Worried about HIV or AIDS
| | | 6 Other
| | | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]
| | | [code maximum 6 out of 6 possible responses]
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | IF (Reason why blood sample refused = Other) AND (Reason why blood sample
| | | refused = [EMPTY, Other])
| | | [[RefBSC = 6) AND (CRefBSC = [EMPTY, 6])]
| | |
| | | OTHREFBS @
| | | NURSE: Give full details of other reason(s) for refusing blood sample.
| | | String 135
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | IF((Whether has a clotting disorder = [Yes, NONRESPONSE]) OR (Whether ever had a
| | | fit = [Yes, NONRESPONSE]) OR (Whether is willing to give blood sample = No))
| | | [[((ClotB = [1, NONRESPONSE]) OR (Fit = [1, NONRESPONSE]) OR (BSWill = 2))]
| | |
| | | NOCODES @
| | | NURSE: No blood to be taken.
| | | Circle consent codes 06, 08, 10, 12 and 14 on the front of the Consent Booklet.
| | | Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| | | Range: 1..1
| | |
| | | END FILTER

```

## STANDING HEIGHT MODULE

### HGT1INT @

NURSE: Now follows the Standing Height Measurement module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### HTINTRO @

I would now like to measure your height, both standing and sitting.

NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### RESPHTS

NURSE: Measure standing height and code below.

Include 'disguised' refusals such as 'It will take too long', 'I have to go out' etc. at code 2:  
Height refused.

- 1 Height measured
- 2 Height refused
- 3 Height attempted, not obtained
- 4 Height not attempted

[Don't know and refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether standing height measurement was attempted or obtained = Measured  
[RespHts = 1]*

#### HEIGHT

NURSE: Record standing height (in centimetres).

Please record height with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point.

[Don't know and refusal are not allowed]

#### **[CHECKS N43 - N44]**

#### RELHITE

NURSE: Code one only.

- 1 No problems experienced, reliable height measurement obtained  
Problems experienced - measurement likely to be:
- 2 Reliable
- 3 Unreliable

*IF Reliability of standing height measurement according to nurse = Unreliable  
[RelHite = 3]*

#### HINREL

NURSE: What caused the height measurement to be unreliable?

- 1 Hairstyle or wig
- 2 Turban or other religious headgear
- 3 Respondent stooped
- 4 Child respondent refused stretching
- 5 Respondent would not stand still
- 6 Respondent wore shoes
- 7 Other, please specify

*IF Reason for standing height measurement to be unreliable = Other [HiNRel = 7]*

**OHINREL @**

NURSE: Please specify what caused unreliable height measurement.

String 60

END FILTER

END FILTER

**MBOOKHT @**

NURSE: Enter this height measurement on [^Name of respondent]'s Measurement Record Card.

Height: [^Standing height - centimetres] cm or [^Standing height - feet] feet [^Standing height - inches] inches.

1 Continue

*ELSE IF Whether standing height measurement was attempted or obtained = Refused [RespHts = 2]*

**RESNHI**

NURSE: Give reasons for refusal.

- 1 Cannot see point / Height already known / Doctor has measurement
- 2 Too busy / Taken too long already / No time
- 3 Respondent too ill / frail / tired
- 4 Considered intrusive information
- 5 Respondent too anxious / nervous / shy / embarrassed
- 6 Refused (no other reason given)
- 7 Other

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*ELSE IF Whether standing height measurement was attempted or obtained = [attempted but not obtained, not attempted] [RespHts = [3 , 4]]*

**NOHTBC**

NURSE: Code reason for not obtaining height.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Respondent is unsteady on feet
- 2 Respondent cannot stand upright / too stooped
- 3 Respondent is chairbound
- 4 Confined to bed
- 5 Respondent unable to remove shoes
- 6 Ill or in pain
- 7 Stadiometer faulty or not available
- 8 Other - specify

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[Multiple responses to NOHTBC are recorded in variables NOHTBC1 to NOHTBC4]**

[code maximum 7 out of 8 possible responses]

| *IF Reason for not obtaining standing height measurement = Other [NoHtBC = 8]*

| **CNOHTBC @**

| EDITOR: Back code reason for not obtaining height.

| CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- | 1 Respondent is unsteady on feet
- | 2 Respondent cannot stand upright / too stooped
- | 3 Respondent is chairbound
- | 4 Confined to bed
- | 5 Respondent unable to remove shoes
- | 6 Ill or in pain
- | 7 Stadiometer faulty or not available
- | 8 Other - specify

| [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

| [code maximum 2 out of 8 possible responses]

| END FILTER

| *IF (Reason for not obtaining standing height measurement = Other) AND (Reason for not obtaining standing height measurement = [EMPTY, Other])*  
| *[(NoHtBC = 8) AND (CNoHtBC = [EMPTY, 8])]*

| **NOHITCO @**

| NURSE: Please specify other reason.

| String 60

| END FILTER

END FILTER

| *IF Whether standing height measurement was attempted or obtained = [Refused, attempted but not obtained, not attempted] [RespHts = [2, 3, 4]]*

| **EHTCH**

| NURSE: Ask the respondent for an estimated height.

| Will it be given in metres or in feet and inches?

| If respondent doesn't know height use <Ctrl K>.

| If respondent isn't willing to give height use <Ctrl R>.

- | 1 Metres
- | 2 Feet and inches

| *IF Whether estimated height will be in metric or imperial measures = metres*  
| *[EHtCh = 1]*

| **EHTM**

| NURSE: Please record estimated height in metres.

| *ELSE IF Whether estimated height will be in metric or imperial measures = feet and inches [EHtCh = 2]*

| **EHTFT**

```
| | NURSE: Please record estimated height.  
| | Enter feet here.  
| | Range: 0..7  
| |  
| | EHTIN  
| | NURSE: Please record estimated height.  
| | Enter inches here.  
| | Range: 0..11  
| |  
| | END FILTER  
|  
END FILTER
```

```
[Final measured or estimated height is recorded in variable EstHt as follows:  
IF (Height = RESPONSE) THEN EstHt = Height  
ELSE IF (EHtFt = RESPONSE) AND (EHtIn = RESPONSE) THEN  
    EstHt = ((EHtFt * 12) + EHtIn) * 2.54  
ELSE IF (EHtFt = RESPONSE) AND (EHtIn <> RESPONSE) THEN  
    EstHt = EHtFt * 30.48  
ELSE IF (EHtm = RESPONSE) THEN EstHt = EHtm * 100  
ELSE EstHt = EMPTY]
```

```
[CHECK N45]
```

## SITTING HEIGHT MODULE

### HGT2INT @

NURSE: Now follows the Sitting Height Measurement module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### SITHTRSP

NURSE: Measure sitting height and code below.

Include 'disguised' refusals such as 'It will take too long', 'I have to go out' etc. at code 2: Height refused.

- 1 Sitting height measured
- 2 Sitting height refused
- 3 Sitting height attempted, not obtained
- 4 Sitting height not attempted

**[Responses to SITHTRSP are recorded in variable SITHTRS]**

*IF Whether sitting height measurement was attempted or obtained = Measured*  
*[SitHtRsp = 1]*

### SITHGT

NURSE: Record sitting height (in centimetres).

Please record sitting height with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point.

*IF Sitting height - centimetres = RESPONSE [SitHgt = RESPONSE]*

**[CHECKS N46 - N49]**

### MBOOKST @

NURSE: Enter the sitting height measurement on [^Name of respondent]'s Measurement Record Card.

Sitting Height: [^Sitting height - centimetres] cm

- 1 Continue

END FILTER

END FILTER

## WEIGHT MODULE

### WGTINT @

NURSE: Now follows the Weight Measurement module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### RESPWTS

NURSE: Measure weight and code.

If the respondent weighs more than 130 kg (20 ½ stones) do not weigh.

Code as weight not attempted.

Include 'disguised' refusals such as 'It will take too long', 'I have to go out' etc. at code 2:

Weight refused.

- 1 Weight measured
- 2 Weight refused
- 3 Weight attempted, not obtained
- 4 Weight not attempted

[Don't know and refusal are not allowed]

*IF Whether weight measurement was attempted or obtained = Measured*

*[RespWts = 1]*

|

### WEIGHT

| NURSE: Record weight (in kilograms).

| Record weight with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point.

| [Don't know and refusal are not allowed]

|

### FLOORC

| NURSE CODE: Scales placed on?

- | 1 Uneven floor
- | 2 Carpet
- | 3 Neither

|

### RELWAITB

| NURSE: Code one only.

- | 1 No problems experienced, reliable weight measurement obtained  
|     Problems arised, measurement likely to be:
- | 2 Reliable
- | 3 Unreliable

| ***[Responses to RELWAITB are recorded in variable RELWAIT]***

|

### MBOOKWT @

| NURSE: Enter the weight measurement on [^Name of respondent]'s Measurement  
| Record Card.

| Weight: [^Weight - kg] kg or [^Weight - stone] stones [^Weight - pounds] pounds.

| If weight looks wrong, go back to 'Weight' and re-weigh.

- | 1 Continue

|

*ELSE IF Whether weight measurement was attempted or obtained = [Refused,  
attempted but not obtained, not attempted] [RespWts = [2 , 3, 4]]*

|

*IF Whether weight measurement was attempted or obtained = Refused  
[RespWts = 2]*

**RESNWT**

NURSE: Give reasons for refusal.

- 1 Cannot see point / Weight already known / Doctor has measurement
- 2 Too busy / Taken long enough already / No time
- 3 Respondent too ill / frail / tired
- 4 Considered intrusive information
- 5 Respondent too anxious / nervous / shy / embarrassed
- 6 Refused (no other reason given)
- 7 Other

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

*ELSE IF Whether weight measurement was attempted or obtained = [attempted but not obtained, not attempted] [RespWts = [3 , 4]]*

**NOWTBC**

NURSE: Code reason for not obtaining weight.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Respondent is unsteady on feet
- 2 Respondent cannot stand upright
- 3 Respondent is chairbound
- 4 Confined to bed
- 5 Respondent unable to remove shoes
- 6 Respondent weighs more than 130 kg
- 7 Ill or in pain
- 8 Scales not working
- 9 Other - specify

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[Multiple responses to NOWTBC are recorded in variables NOWTBC1 to NOWTBC4]**

[code maximum 8 out of 9 possible responses]

*IF Reason for not obtaining weight measurement = Other (NoWtBC = 9]*

**CNOWTBC @**

EDITOR: Code reason for not obtaining weight.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Respondent is unsteady on feet
- 2 Respondent cannot stand upright
- 3 Respondent is chairbound
- 4 Confined to bed
- 5 Respondent unable to remove shoes
- 6 Respondent weighs more than 130 kg
- 7 Ill or in pain
- 8 Scales not working
- 9 Other - specify

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

[code maximum 2 out of 9 possible responses]

```

| | END FILTER
| |
| | IF (Reason for not obtaining weight measurement = Other) AND (Reason for not
| | obtaining weight measurement = [EMPTY, Other])
| | [(NoWtBC = 9) AND (CNoWtBC = [EMPTY, 9])]
| |
| | NOWATCO @
| | NURSE: Please specify other reason.
| | String 60
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | EWtCh
| | NURSE: Ask the respondent for an estimated weight.
| | Will it be given in kilograms or in stones and pounds?
| | If respondent doesn't know weight use <Ctrl K>.
| | If respondent isn't willing to give weight use <Ctrl R>.
| | 1 Kilograms
| | 2 Stones and pounds
| |
| | IF Whether estimated weight will be in metric or imperial measures = kilograms
| | [EWtCh = 1]
| |
| | EWtKg
| | NURSE: Please record estimated weight in kilograms.
| |
| | ELSE IF Whether estimated weight will be in metric or imperial measures = stones
| | and pounds [EWtCh = 2]
| |
| | EWtSt
| | NURSE: Please record estimated weight. Enter stones here.
| | (Enter pounds at the next question.)
| | Range: 0..32
| |
| | EWtL
| | NURSE: Please record estimated weight. Enter pounds here.
| | Range: 0..13
| |
| | END FILTER
| |
| | END FILTER

```

```

| | [Final measured or estimated weight is recorded in variable EstWt as follows:
| | IF (Weight = RESPONSE) THEN EstWt = Weight
| | ELSE IF (EWtSt = RESPONSE) AND (EWtL = RESPONSE) THEN
| | EstWt = ROUND(((EWtSt * 14) + EWtL) * 4.54) * 0.1
| | ELSE IF (EWtSt = RESPONSE) AND (EWtL <> RESPONSE) THEN
| | EstWt = ROUND(EWtSt * 63.56) * 0.1
| | ELSE IF (EWtKg = RESPONSE) THEN EstWt = EWtKg

```

***ELSE EstWt = EMPTY]***

***[CHECKS N50 - N54]***

## WAIST AND HIP CIRCUMFERENCE MODULE

### WHMOD @

NURSE: Now follows the Waist and Hip Circumference Measurement.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### WHINTRO

I would now like to measure your waist and hips. The waist relative to hip measurement is very useful for assessing the distribution of weight over the body.

NURSE CODE:

- 1 Respondent agrees to have waist / hip ratio measured
- 2 Respondent refuses to have waist / hip ratio measured
- 3 Unable to measure waist / hip ratio for reason other than refusal

*IF Whether consents to waist / hip measurements = Agree [WHIntro = 1]*

REPEAT UP TO THREE TIMES [LOOP FOR Loop:= 1 TO 3]

*IF (Waist measurement order = [first, second]) OR ((Waist measurement order = third) AND ((First waist measurement <> not obtained) AND (Second waist measurement <> not obtained) AND (Absolute difference between first and second waist measurements > 3cm)))*

*[(PLoop = [1, 2]) OR ((PLoop = 3) AND ((Waist1 <> 999.9) AND (Waist2 <> 999.9) AND (ABS (Waist1 - Waist2) > 3)))*

#### **WAIST**

NURSE: Measure the waist and hip circumferences to the nearest mm.

Enter the [^first / second / third] waist measurement in centimetres.

(Remember to include the decimal point.)

If measurement not obtained, enter '999.9'.

[Don't know and refusal are not allowed]

**[Responses to WAIST are recorded in variables WAIST1 to WAIST3]**

**[CHECK N55]**

END FILTER

*IF (Hip measurement order = [first, second]) OR ((Hip measurement order = third) AND ((First hip measurement <> not obtained) AND (Second hip measurement <> not obtained) AND (Absolute difference between first and second hip measurements > 3cm)))*

*[(PLoop = [1, 2]) OR ((PLoop = 3) AND ((Hip1 <> 999.9) AND (Hip2 <> 999.9) AND (ABS (Hip1 - Hip2) > 3)))*

#### **HIP**

NURSE: Measure the waist and hip circumferences to the nearest mm.

Enter the [^first / second / third] measurement of hip circumference in centimetres. (Remember to include the decimal point.)

If measurement not obtained, enter '999.9'.

[Don't know and refusal are not allowed]

| | **[Responses to HIP are recorded in variables HIP1 to HIP3]**

| | **[CHECK N56]**

| | END FILTER

| | **[CHECKS N57 - N58]**

| | END OF LOOP

| | **[CHECKS N59 - N64]**

| | END FILTER

*IF (First waist measurement = not obtained) OR (Second waist measurement = not obtained) OR (First hip measurement = not obtained) OR (Second hip measurement = not obtained)*

*[(Waist1 = 999.9) OR (Waist2 = 999.9) OR (Hip1 = 999.9) OR (Hip2 = 999.9)]*

| | **YNOWH**

| | NURSE: Enter reason for not getting both measurements.

- | | 1 Both measurements refused
- | | 2 Attempted but not obtained
- | | 3 Measurement not attempted

| | END FILTER

**[Whether all waist and hip measurements have been obtained is computed and recorded in variable RespWH]**

*IF (Response to waist / hip measurements = [Only one obtained, refused, not attempted]) OR (Reason why none or only some measurements were obtained = Both measurements refused) [(RespWH = [2, 3, 4]) OR (YNoWH = 1)]*

| | **WHPNABM**

| | NURSE: Give reason(s) [^for refusal / why unable / for not obtaining measurement / for not attempting / why only one measurement obtained].

| | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- | | 1 Respondent is chairbound
- | | 2 Respondent is confined to bed
- | | 3 Respondent is too stooped
- | | 4 Respondent did not understand the procedure
- | | 5 Respondent is embarrassed / sensitive about their size
- | | 6 No time / busy / already spent enough time on this survey
- | | 95 Other (specify at next question)

| | **[Multiple responses to WHPNABM are recorded in variables WHPNAB1 to WHPNAB3]**

| | [code maximum 7 out of 7 possible responses]

| | *IF Reason for not obtaining waist and hip measurements = Other [(WHPNABM = 95]*

| |

**CWHPNABM @**  
 EDITOR: Try to backcode answer at OthWH.  
 CODE ALL THAT APPLY.  
 1 Respondent is chairbound  
 2 Respondent is confined to bed  
 3 Respondent is too stooped  
 4 Respondent did not understand the procedure  
 5 Respondent is embarrassed / sensitive about their size  
 6 No time / busy / already spent enough time on this survey  
 95 EDITOR: Part of answer can't be backcoded  
 [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]  
 [code maximum 3 out of 7 possible responses]

END FILTER

*IF (Reason for not obtaining waist and hip measurements = Other) AND (Reason for not obtaining waist and hip measurements = [EMPTY, Other])  
 [(WHPNABM = 85) AND (CWHPNABM = [EMPTY, 95])]*

**OTHWH @**  
 NURSE: Give full details of 'other' reason(s) for not getting full waist / hip measurement  
 String 140

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (First waist measurement <> [not obtained, EMPTY]) OR (Second waist measurement <> [not obtained, EMPTY])  
 [(Waist1 <> [999.9, EMPTY]) OR (Waist2 <> [999.9, EMPTY])]*

**WJREL**  
 NURSE: Record any problems with waist measurement:
 

- 1 No problems experienced, reliable waist measurement
- 2 Problems experienced - waist measurement likely to be reliable
- 3 Problems experienced - waist measurement likely to be slightly unreliable
- 4 Problems experienced - waist measurement likely to be unreliable

*IF Whether any problems with waist measurement = some problems experienced  
 [WJRel = [2, 3, 4]]*

**PROBWJ**  
 NURSE: Record whether problems experienced are likely to increase or decrease the waist measurement.
 

- 1 Increases measurement
- 2 Decreases measurement

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (First hip measurement <> [not obtained, EMPTY]) OR (Second hip measurement <> [not obtained, EMPTY]) [(Hip1 <> [999.9, EMPTY]) OR (Hip2 <> [999.9, EMPTY])]*

**HJREL**

NURSE: Record any problems with hip measurement:

- 1 No problems experienced, reliable hip measurement
- 2 Problems experienced - hip measurement likely to be reliable
- 3 Problems experienced - hip measurement likely to be slightly unreliable
- 4 Problems experienced - hip measurement likely to be unreliable

*IF Whether any problems with hip measurement = [some problems experienced]*

*[HJRel = [2, 3, 4]]*

**PROBHJ**

NURSE: Record whether problems experienced are likely to increase or decrease the hip measurement.

- 1 Increases measurement
- 2 Decreases measurement

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF Response to waist / hip measurements = [Both obtained, Only one obtained]*

*[RespWH = [1, 2]]*

**WHRES @**

NURSE: Offer to write results of waist and hip measurements, where applicable, onto respondent's Measurement Record Card.

Waist	Hip
[^Waist1]	[^Hip1]
[^Waist2]	[^Hip2]

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

String 1

END FILTER

## LUNG FUNCTION MODULE

### LFINT @

NURSE: Now follows the Lung Function module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### HASURG

Can I check, have you had abdominal or chest surgery in the past three weeks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent has had abdominal or chest surgery in last 3 weeks = No  
[HaSurg = 2]*

### EYESURG

Have you had eye surgery in the past four weeks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent has had eye surgery in the last 4 weeks = No [EyeSurg = 2]*

### HASTRO

Have you been admitted to hospital for a heart complaint in the past six weeks?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent admitted to hospital for heart complaint in last 6 weeks = No  
[HaStro = 2]*

### CHESTINF

In the past three weeks, have you had any respiratory infections such as influenza, pneumonia, bronchitis or a severe cold?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**[Responses to CHESTINF are recorded in variable CHESTIN]**

### INHALER

(Can I just check), have you used an inhaler, puffer or any medication for your breathing in the last 24 hours?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether used an inhaler / puffer in last 24 hours = Yes [Inhaler = 1]*

### INHALHRS

How many hours ago did you use it?

NURSE: Enter number of hours. If less than one hour, code 0.

Range: 0..24

**[Responses to INHALHRS are recorded in variable INHALHR]**

END FILTER

**LFINTRO @**

(As I mentioned earlier). We would like to measure your lung function which will help us to find out more about the health of the population.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent has had abdominal or chest surgery in last 3 weeks = Yes)  
OR (Whether respondent has had eye surgery in the last 4 weeks = Yes) OR  
(Whether respondent admitted to hospital for heart complaint in last 6 weeks = Yes)  
[(HaSurg = 1) OR (EyeSurg = 1) OR (HaStro = 1)]*

**LFCODE2 @**

NURSE: No lung function test to be done.

Circle consent code 04 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*ELSE IF (Whether respondent has had abdominal or chest surgery in last 3 weeks = No)  
AND (Whether respondent has had eye surgery in the last 4 weeks <> Yes) AND  
(Whether respondent admitted to hospital for heart complaint in last 6 weeks <> Yes)  
[(HaSurg = 2) AND (EyeSurg <> 1) AND (HaStro <> 1)]*

**LFWILL**

Would you be willing to have your Lung Function measured?

- 1 Yes, agrees
- 2 No, refuses
- 3 Unable to take lung function measurement for reason other than refusal

*IF Whether willing to have lung function measured = Yes [LFWill = 1]*

**SPIRNO @**

NURSE: Enter the three-digit Spirometer serial number.

Range: 1..999

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**LFTEMP**

NURSE: Record the ambient air temperature.

Enter the temperature in centigrades to one decimal place.

**[CHECK N65]**

*IF (Air temperature (centigrade) < 15) OR (Air temperature (centigrade) > 35)*

[(LFTemp < 15) OR (LFTemp > 35)]

**XLFTEMP @**

NURSE: An air temperature of [^Air temperature (centigrade)] centigrades is too cold / hot for the lung function to be measured (less than 15 or more than 35 centigrade).

If you made a mistake in entering the temperature, please go back and amend LFTemp.

Else, try to alter the temperature in the room before taking the reading.

If you wish to continue with this schedule while waiting for the room temperature to change, please press 1 and <Enter>.

Don't forget to return to this section.

If you can't alter the temperature in the room, please go back to LFWill and change to code 3 (Unable to take lung function).

Range: 1..1

ELSE

REPEAT THREE TIMES [LOOP FOR Idx:= 1 TO 3]

*IF (First FVC reading <> 9.95) AND (Whether no readings obtained = No)  
[(FVC1 <> 9.95) AND (NoRead = 2)]*

**FVC**

Enter FVC reading. If no reading obtained enter '0'.

If you are not going to obtain any readings at all enter '9.95'.

***[Responses to FVC are recorded in variables FVC1 to FVC3]***

***[Highest technically satisfactory FVC reading is recorded in variable HTFVC]***

***[ Whether no LF readings were obtained is computed and recorded in variable NoRead]***

***[CHECKS N66 - N67]***

*IF FVC reading (litres) < 9.95 [FVC < 9.95]*

**FEV**

Enter FEV reading. If no reading obtained enter '0'.

***[Responses to FEV are recorded in variables FEV1 to FEV3]***

***[Highest technically satisfactory FEV reading is recorded in variable HTFEV]***

***[CHECKS N68 - N72]***

**PF**

Enter PF reading. If no reading obtained enter '0'.

Range: 0..995

***[Responses to PF are recorded in variables PF1 to PF3]***

***[Highest technically satisfactory PF reading is recorded in variable HTPF]***

**[CHECKS N73 - N75]**

**CL @**

NURSE: Now press the clear button on the spirometer.

Press <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**TECHNIQUE**

Was the technique satisfactory?

1 Yes

2 No

**[Responses to TECHNIQUE are recorded in variables TECHNI1 to TECHNI3]**

**[Whether technique was satisfactory on any of the measurements is computed and recorded in variable NLSATLF]**

END FILTER

END FILTER

END OF LOOP

*IF Whether no readings obtained = Yes [NoRead = 1]*

**YNOLF**

NURSE: Code reason for not taking any LF readings.

1 Lung function measurement attempted, not obtained

2 Lung function measurement not attempted

3 Lung function measurement refused

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

END FILTER

*IF Reason for not taking any lung function readings <> RESPONSE*

*[YNoLF <> RESPONSE]*

**LFSTAND**

NURSE: Were the measurements taken while respondent was standing or sitting?

1 Standing

2 Sitting

**LFRESP**

NURSE CHECK: Code one only.

1 All blows obtained were technically satisfactory

2 Some blows obtained were technically satisfactory

3 Attempted, but no technically satisfactory blows obtained

4 All blows refused

5 None attempted

```

| | | | [CHECKS N76 - N79]
| | | |
| | | | IF How many technically correct blows were obtained = Some [LFResp = 2]
| | | |
| | | | PROBLF
| | | | NURSE: Give reasons why just some blows were obtained.
| | | | CODE ALL THAT APPLY.
| | | | 1 Refused to continue
| | | | 2 Breathlessness
| | | | 3 Coughing fit
| | | | 4 Equipment failure
| | | | 5 Other (specify at next question)
| | | | [Multiple responses to PROBLF are recorded in variables PROBLF1
| | | | to PROBLF3]
| | | | [code maximum 5 out of 5 possible responses]
| | | |
| | | | IF Reason why not all lung function measurements were obtained = Other
| | | | [ProbLF = 5]
| | | |
| | | | CPROBLF @
| | | | EDITOR: Back code the answer at OthProb here.
| | | | 1 Refused to continue
| | | | 2 Breathlessness
| | | | 3 Coughing fit
| | | | 4 Equipment failure
| | | | 5 Other (SPECIFY AT NEXT QUESTION)
| | | | [Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF (Reason why not all lung function measurements were obtained = Other)
| | | | AND (Reason why not all lung function measurements were obtained =
| | | | [EMPTY, Other])
| | | | [(ProbLF = 5) AND (CProbLF = [EMPTY, 5])]
| | | |
| | | | OTHPROB @
| | | | NURSE: Give details of why less than 3 blows obtained.
| | | | String 40
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
| | | |
| | | | END FILTER
| | | |
| | | | IF (Whether willing to have lung function measured = [Refuses, Unable]) OR
| | | | (How many technically correct blows were obtained = [No satisfactory blows

```

*obtained, refused, none attempted]) OR (Reason for not taking any lung function readings = RESPONSE)*

*[(LFWill = [2, 3]) OR (LFResp = [3 - 5]) OR (YNoLF = RESPONSE)]*

**NOATTLF**

NURSE: Give reason why lung function measurements were not attempted / refused.

CODE ONE ONLY.

- 1 Temperature of house too cold
- 2 Temperature of house too hot
- 3 Equipment failure
- 4 Breathlessness
- 5 Unwell
- 6 Other reason why measurements not attempted / refused (SPECIFY AT NEXT QUESTION)

*IF Reason why lung function measurements not attempted / refused = RESPONSE*

*[NoAttLF = RESPONSE]*

*IF Reason why lung function measurements not attempted / refused = Other*

*[NoAttLF = 6]*

**OTHNOAT @**

NURSE: Give details of why lung function measurements were not attempted / refused.

String 40

END FILTER

**LFCODE5 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 04 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF How many technically correct blows were obtained = None [LFResp = 5]*

**LFCODE3 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 04 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

END FILTER

*IF (Whether willing to have lung function measured = Yes) AND (How many technically correct blows were obtained = [All, some]) [(LFWill = 1) AND (LFResp = [1, 2])]*

*IF Whether respondent registered with GP <> RESPONSE*

[GPRegB <> RESPONSE]

**LFSAM @**

NURSE: If not already asked: (Can I just check) are you registered with a GP?

- 1 Respondent registered with GP
- 2 Respondent not registered with GP

END FILTER

*IF (Whether or not satisfactory blow = At least one and respondent registered with GP) OR (Whether respondent registered with GP = Yes) OR (Whether respondent registered with GP = Yes)*

*[((NLSatLF = 1) AND (GPRegB = 1))OR (LFSam = 1) OR (GPRegB = 1)]*

**GPSENDLF @**

May we send your lung function test results to your GP?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

END FILTER

*IF Whether results may be sent to GP = No [GPSendLF = 2]*

**LFCODE4 @**

NURSE: Circle consent code 04 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**GPRLFM @**

NURSE: Specify reason(s) for refusal to allow LF readings to be sent to GP.

CODE ALL THAT APPLY.

- 1 Hardly / Never sees GP
- 2 GP knows respondent's LF level
- 3 Does not want to bother GP
- 4 Other (SPECIFY AT NEXT QUESTION)

[code maximum 4 out of 4 possible responses]

*IF Why results may not be sent to GP = Other [GPRLFM = 4]*

**CGPRLFM @**

EDITOR: Back code answer at OthRefM here.

UP TO 3 CODES.

- 1 Hardly / Never sees GP
- 2 GP knows respondent's LF level
- 3 Does not want to bother GP
- 4 Other (SPECIFY AT NEXT QUESTION)

[Don't Know and Refusal are not allowed]

**[Multiple responses to CGPRLFM are recorded in variables CGPRLF1 to CGPRLF3]**

[code maximum 3 out of 4 possible responses]

```

| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | IF (Why results may not be sent to GP = Other) AND (Why results may not be sent
| | | to GP = [EMPTY, Other]) [(GPRLFM = 4) AND (CGPRLFM = [EMPTY, 4])]
| | |
| | | OTHREFM @
| | | NURSE: Give full details of reason(s) for refusal.
| | | String 140
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | ELSE IF Whether results may be sent to GP = Yes [GPSendLF = 1]
| | |
| | | NCINS1 @
| | | NURSE:
| | | - Complete Consent Form 2 -'Lung function to GP'.
| | | - Ask respondent to read, sign and date the office copy.
| | | - Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.
| | | - Check GP name, address and phone number are recorded on front of
| | |   the Consent Booklet.
| | | - Check name by which GP knows respondent.
| | | - Circle consent code 03 on front of the Consent Booklet.
| | | Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| | | Range: 1..1
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | IF How many technically correct blows were obtained = [All, some] [LFResp = [1 , 2]]
| | |
| | | NCINS2 @
| | | NURSE: Lung function measured.
| | | Offer lung function results to respondent.
| | | Enter their highest FVC and highest FEV and highest PF readings on MRC.
| | | (Complete new record card if required).
| | | Highest readings listed below.
| | |
| | | Highest FVC:    [^Highest technically satisfactory FVC reading (litres) - HTFVC]
| | | Highest FEV:    [^Highest technically satisfactory FEV reading (litres) - HTFEV]
| | | Highest PF:     [^Highest technically satisfactory PF reading (litres/min) - HTPF]
| | |
| | | Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.
| | | Range: 1..1
| | |
| | | END FILTER
| | |
| | | END FILTER

```

## BALANCING MODULE

### BALINT @

NURSE: Now follows the Balancing module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### MMBCINT @

NURSE: Explain the purpose of the tests:

'I would now like to carry on with some more physical performance measurements, this will involve asking you to move your body in different ways.

I will first describe and show each movement to you, then I'd like you to try to do it.

If you cannot do a particular movement, or if you feel it would be unsafe to try to do it, please tell me and we'll move on to the next one.

Let me emphasize that I do not want you to try to do any exercise that you feel might be unsafe.

Do you have any questions before we begin?'

NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### MMBCSC

NURSE: Check respondent's status and availability.

ASK: 'Do you have any problems from recent surgery, injury or other health conditions that might prevent you from standing up from a chair or balancing?'

1 Yes

2 No

*IF Whether respondent has any problems / health conditions = Yes [MmBCSc = 1]*

|

### MMBCCH @

| NURSE: After you describe each test, discuss with respondent whether [^he / she] should attempt the test given [^his / her] physical problems.

| Do not assume a respondent is too physically limited to attempt a test without discussing it with [^him / her].

| However, remember that the respondent's health is paramount.

| Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| Range: 1..1

|

END FILTER

### MMSSINT @

NURSE: First explain and then demonstrate the side-by-side stand to the respondent.

'Now I will show you the first movement.

I want you to try to stand with your feet together, side-by-side, for about 10 seconds.

You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet.

Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop.

You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position.'

NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**MMSSSC**

Do you feel that would be safe?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt side-by-side stand = Yes*

*[MmSSSc = 1]*

**MMSSTT @**

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

NURSE: Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent.

SAY: 'Ready, begin!'

Press the start button to start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent gets into the position and removes their hand from the support.

If necessary, provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help [^him / her] into the side-by-side stand.

SAY: 'Ready, begin!' and then let go of [^his / her] arm.

Stop the stopwatch and say 'Stop' after 10 seconds or when the participant steps out of position or grabs your arm.

NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**MMSSRE**

NURSE: Record the outcome of the side-by-side stand.

- 1 Held for 10 seconds
- 2 Held for less than 10 seconds
- 3 Not attempted

*IF Outcome of side-by-side stand = held for less than 10 seconds [MmSSRe = 2]*

**MMSSTI**

NURSE: Record the time in seconds to two decimal places.

(enter the large numbers on the stopwatch display before the decimal point and the small numbers after it).

Use the full stop as the decimal point, e.g. 6.55.

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt side-by-side stand = No) OR (Outcome of side-by-side stand = not attempted) [(MmSSSc = 2) OR (MmSSRe = 3)]*

**MMSSNA**

NURSE: Record reason side-by-side stand was not attempted.

- 1 Tried but unable
- 2 Participant could not hold position unassisted
- 3 Not attempted, you felt unsafe
- 4 Not attempted, participant felt unsafe
- 5 Participant unable to understand instructions
- 6 Other reason

| 7 Participant refused

| END FILTER

| *IF Outcome of side-by-side stand = held for 10 seconds [MmSSRe = 1]*

| **MMSTINT @**

| NURSE: First explain and then demonstrate the semi-tandem stand to the respondent:  
| 'Now I will show you the next movement.

| I want you to try to stand with the side of the heel of one foot touching the big toe of the  
| other foot for about 10 seconds.

| You may put either foot in front, whichever is more comfortable for you.

| You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your  
| balance, but try not to move your feet.

| Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop.

| You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position.'

| NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| Range: 1..1

| **MMSTSC**

| Do you feel that would be safe?

| 1 Yes

| 2 No

| *IF Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt semi-tandem stand = Yes*  
| *[MmSTSc = 1]*

| **MMSTSTT @**

| When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin!'

| NURSE: Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent.

| SAY: 'Ready, begin!'

| Press the start button to start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent gets into  
| the position and removes their hand from the support.

| If necessary, provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help [^him / her] into  
| the semi-tandem position.

| SAY: 'Ready, begin!' and then let go of [^his / her] arm.

| Stop the stopwatch and say 'Stop' after 10 seconds or when the participant steps out  
| of position or grabs your arm.

| NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| Range: 1..1

| **MMSTRE**

| NURSE: Record the outcome of the semi-tandem stand.

| 1 Held for 10 seconds

| 2 Held for less than 10 seconds

| 3 Not attempted

| *IF Outcome of semi-tandem stand = held for less than 10 seconds [MmSTRe = 2]*

| **MMSTTI**

| NURSE: Record the time in seconds to two decimal places.

(enter the large numbers on the stopwatch display before the decimal point and the small numbers after it).

Use the full stop as the decimal point, e.g. 6.55.

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt semi-tandem stand = No) OR (Outcome of semi-tandem stand = not attempted) [(MmSTSc = 2) OR (MmSTRe = 3)]*

**MMSTNA**

NURSE: Code the reason why semi-tandem stand was not attempted.

- 1 Tried but unable
- 2 Participant could not hold position unassisted
- 3 Not attempted, you felt unsafe
- 4 Not attempted, participant felt unsafe
- 5 Participant unable to understand instructions
- 6 Other reason
- 7 Participant refused

END FILTER

*IF Outcome of semi-tandem stand = held for 10 seconds [MmSTRe = 1]*

**MMFTINT @**

NURSE: First explain and then demonstrate the full tandem stand to the respondent:  
'Now I will show you the next movement.

I want you to try to stand with the heel of one foot in front of and touching the toes of the other foot for about [^30 / 10] seconds.

You may put either foot in front, whichever is more comfortable for you.

You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet.

Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop.

You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position.'

NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**MMFTSC**

Do you feel that would be safe?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt full tandem stand = Yes [MmFTSc = 1]*

**MMFTSTT @**

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

NURSE: Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent.

SAY: 'Ready, begin!'

Press the start button to start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent gets into

the position and removes their hand from the support.  
If necessary, provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help [^him / her] into the full tandem position.  
SAY: 'Ready, begin!' and then let go of [^his / her] arm.  
Stop the stopwatch and say 'Stop' after [^30 / 10] seconds or when the participant steps out of position or grabs your arm.  
NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
Range: 1..1

**MMFTRE @**

NURSE: Record the outcome of the full tandem stand.

- 1 Held for [^30 / 10] seconds
- 2 Held for less than [^30 / 10] seconds
- 3 Not attempted

***[Variable MMFTRE2 indicates whether the respondent held the full tandem stand for 10 or 30 seconds (which depended on their age)]***

*IF Outcome of full tandem stand = held for less than 30 / 10 seconds  
[MmFTRe = 2]*

**MMFTTI**

NURSE: Record the time in seconds to two decimal places.

(enter the large numbers on the stopwatch display before the decimal point and the small numbers after it).

Use the full stop as the decimal point, e.g. 6.55.

***[CHECK N80]***

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt full tandem stand = No) OR  
(Outcome of full tandem stand = not attempted) [(MmFTSc = 2) OR (MmFTRe = 3)]*

**MMFTNA**

NURSE: Record reason full tandem stand was not attempted.

- 1 Tried but unable
- 2 Participant could not hold position unassisted
- 3 Not attempted, you felt unsafe
- 4 Not attempted, participant felt unsafe
- 5 Participant unable to understand instructions
- 6 Other reason
- 7 Participant refused

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

## LEG RAISE MODULE

*IF (Age of respondent (computed) <= 69) AND (Outcome of side-by-side stand = Held for 10 seconds) [(HHAge <= 69) AND (MmSSRe = 1)]*

### **LEGINT @**

NURSE: Now follows the Leg Raise module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **MMLOINT @**

NURSE: First explain and then demonstrate the leg raise to the respondent:

'Now I will show you the next movement.

I want you to try to stand on one leg, whichever one you want, and raise the other leg off the ground a few inches.

Stand for as long as you can - I will stop you at 30 seconds.

You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop.

You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position.'

NURSE: Make sure there is a firm support nearby and allow the respondent to practice.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **MMLOSC**

Do you feel that would be safe?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt leg raise (eyes open) = Yes  
[MmLOSc = 1]*

### **MMLOSTT @**

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

NURSE: Ask the respondent to stand up near to a firm support, eg wall or chair.

Stand to the side of the respondent. SAY: 'Ready, begin!'

Press the start button to start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent raises one foot off the ground and removes their hand from the support.

If necessary, provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help [^him / her] into position.

SAY: 'Ready, begin!' and then let go of [^his / her] arm.

Stop the stopwatch and say 'Stop!' either

A) when the raised leg touches the floor as the respondent loses [^his / her] balance or

B) after 30 seconds, whichever happens first.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **MMLORE**

NURSE: Record the outcome of the leg raise.

- 1 Held for 30 seconds

- 2 Held for less than 30 seconds
- 3 Not attempted

*IF Outcome of leg raise (eyes open) = held for less than 30 seconds  
[MmLORe = 2]*

**MMLOTI**

NURSE: Record the time in seconds to two decimal places.

(enter the large numbers on the stopwatch display before the decimal point and the small numbers after it).

Use the full stop as the decimal point, e.g. 6.55.

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt leg raise (eyes open) = No) OR  
(Outcome of leg raise (eyes open) = not attempted)  
[(MmLOSc = 2) OR (MmLORe = 3)]*

**MMLONA**

NURSE: Record reason leg raise was not attempted.

- 1 Tried but unable
- 2 Participant could not hold position unassisted
- 3 Not attempted, you felt unsafe
- 4 Not attempted, participant felt unsafe
- 5 Participant unable to understand instructions
- 6 Other reason
- 7 Participant refused

END FILTER

*IF Outcome of leg raise (eyes open) = held for 30 seconds [MmLORe = 1]*

**MMLSINT @**

NURSE: First explain and then demonstrate the leg raise with eyes closed to the respondent:

'Now I would like you to repeat the procedure one more time, this time with your eyes closed.

I want you to close your eyes and try to stand on one leg, whichever one you want, and raise the other leg off the ground a few inches.

Stand for as long as you can - I will stop you at 30 seconds.

You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop.

You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position.'

NURSE: Make sure there is a firm support nearby and allow the respondent to practice.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**MMLSSC**

Do you feel that would be safe?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt leg raise (eyes shut)= Yes*  
*[MmLSSc = 1]*

**MMLSSTT @**

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

NURSE: Ask the respondent to stand up near to a firm support, eg wall or chair.

Stand to the side of the respondent. SAY: 'Ready, begin!'

Press the start button to start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent raises one foot off the ground and removes their hand from the support.

If necessary, provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help [^him / her] into position.

SAY: 'Ready, begin!' and then let go of [^his / her] arm.

Stop the stopwatch and say 'Stop!' either

A) when the raised leg touches the floor as the respondent loses [^his / her] balance or

B) after 30 seconds, whichever happens first.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**MMLSRE**

NURSE: Record the outcome of the leg raise with eyes shut.

- 1 Held for 30 seconds
- 2 Held for less than 30 seconds
- 3 Not attempted

*IF Outcome of leg raise (eyes shut) = held for less than 30 seconds*  
*[MmLSRe = 2]*

**MMLSTI**

NURSE: Record the time in seconds to two decimal places.

(enter the large numbers on the stopwatch display before the decimal point and the small numbers after it).

Use the full stop as the decimal point, e.g. 6.55.

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent feels it is safe to attempt leg raise (eyes shut) = No) OR*  
*(Outcome of leg raise (eyes shut) = not attempted)*  
*[(MmLSSc = 2) OR (MmLSRe = 3)]*

**MMLSNA**

NURSE: Record reason leg raise with eyes shut was not attempted.

- 1 Tried but unable
- 2 Participant could not hold position unassisted
- 3 Not attempted, you felt unsafe

| | | 4 Not attempted, participant felt unsafe  
| | | 5 Participant unable to understand instructions  
| | | 6 Other reason  
| | | 7 Participant refused  
| | |  
| | END FILTER  
| |  
| END FILTER  
|  
END FILTER

## CHAIR RISE MODULE

### CHRINT @

NURSE: Now follows the Chair Rise module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### MMCRAV

NURSE: Check the availability of a suitable chair.

- 1 Suitable chair available
- 2 No suitable chair available

*IF Whether suitable chair for chair rise available = available [MmCRAv = 1]*

### MMCRINT @

The next test measures the strength in your legs.

NURSE: First explain and then demonstrate the procedure:

'I want you to try to stand up from a firm straight-backed chair, like a dining chair.

First, fold your arms across your chest and sit so that your feet are on the floor; then stand up keeping your arms folded across your chest.'

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### MMCRSC

Do you feel it would be safe to do this?

NURSE: If the participant cannot rise without using arms,

SAY: 'Okay, try to stand up using your arms.'

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

*IF Whether respondent feels safe to attempt single chair rise = Yes [MmCRSc = 1]*

### MMCRRE

NURSE: Record the outcome of single chair rise measure.

- 1 Participant stood without using arms
- 2 Participant used arms to stand
- 3 Test not completed

*IF Outcome of single chair rise measure = Not completed [MmCRRe = 3]*

### MMCRNA

NURSE: Record the reason why the test was not completed.

- 1 Tried but unable
- 2 Participant could not hold position unassisted
- 3 Not attempted, you felt unsafe
- 4 Not attempted, participant felt unsafe
- 5 Participant unable to understand instructions
- 6 Other reason
- 7 Participant refused

[Refusal is not allowed]

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF Outcome of single chair rise measure = Stood without using arms*

*[MmCRRRe = 1]*

**MMRRINT @**

NURSE: Use the same chair and the same place as in the single chair rise.

Explain the test to the respondent:

'Now I would like you to repeat the procedure but this time I want you to stand up straight as quickly as you can [<sup>^</sup>ten / five] times, without stopping in between and without using your arms to push off.

After standing up each time, sit down and then stand up again.

Keep your arms folded across your chest. I'll be timing you with a stopwatch.'

NURSE: Demonstrate.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**MMRRSC**

Do you feel it would be safe to do that?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF Whether respondent feels safe to attempt multiple chair rise = Yes*

*[MmRRSc = 1]*

**MMRRSTT @**

NURSE: Ask the respondent to resume the sitting position [<sup>^</sup>he / she] was in just before standing up, with feet resting on the floor and arms folded across the chest.

When the participant is properly seated, say 'Ready? Begin!'.

Start the stopwatch as soon as you say 'Ready? Begin!'.

Count out loud as [<sup>^</sup>he / she] rises each time, up to [<sup>^</sup>ten / five] times.

A rise is complete when the respondent is fully standing with their back straight.

When the respondent completes the fifth rise, press the split timer on the stopwatch.

Continue counting out loud.

When the respondent has straightened up completely for the [<sup>^</sup>tenth / fifth] time, stop the stopwatch.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

**MMRRRE**

NURSE: Record the total number of rises completed.

Range: 0..10

END FILTER

*IF Outcome of multiple chair rises (number of rises completed) = [5 - 10]*

*[MMRRRe = [5 - 10]]*

**MMRRFTI**

NURSE: Record the time in seconds to two decimal places to complete five chair rises (enter the large numbers on the stopwatch display before the decimal point and the small numbers after it).

Use the full stop as the decimal point, e.g. 26.55.

**[CHECKS N81 - N82]**

*IF (Age of respondent (computed) <= 69) AND (Outcome of multiple chair rises (number of rises completed) = 10) [(HHAge <= 69) AND (MMRRRe = 10)]*

**MMRRTTI**

NURSE: Record the time in seconds to two decimal places to complete ten chair rises (enter the large numbers on the stopwatch display before the decimal point and the small numbers after it).

Use the full stop as the decimal point, e.g. 26.55.

**[CHECKS N83 - N85]**

END FILTER

END FILTER

*IF (Whether respondent feels safe to attempt multiple chair rise = No) OR (Outcome of multiple chair rises (number of rises completed) < 5) OR ((Age of respondent (computed) <= 69) AND (Outcome of multiple chair rises (number of rises completed) < 10)) [(MmRRSc = 2) OR (MMRRRe < 5) OR ((HHAge <= 69) AND (MMRRRe < 10))]*

**MMRRNA**

NURSE: Record reason why participant did not attempt or failed to complete all chair rises.

- 1 Tried but unable
  - 2 Participant could not hold position unassisted
  - 3 Not attempted, you felt unsafe
  - 4 Not attempted, participant felt unsafe
  - 5 Participant unable to understand instructions
  - 6 Other reason
  - 7 Participant refused
- [Refusal is not allowed]

END FILTER

END FILTER

END FILTER

## SALIVA SAMPLE MODULE

*IF Age of respondent (computed) <= 79 [HHAge <= 79]*

### **SALINT @**

NURSE: Now follows the Saliva module.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **SALINTRO @**

READ OUT: We would like you to provide some samples of your saliva on a single weekday.

This will involve you chewing gently on a cotton swab for about a minute at four different times in the day.

The samples will be analysed to see how the level of cortisol in your body varies.

Cortisol levels will tell us about any stress you might experience. This is of particular interest because stress may be related to heart disease.

Would you be willing to do this?

1 Yes

2 No

*IF Whether is willing to give a saliva sample = Yes [SallIntro = 1]*

### **SALCONS @**

NURSE: Complete Consent Form 5 - Saliva Sample.

Explain the need for written consent and ask the respondent to read, sign and date the office copy.

Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.

Circle consent code 15 on front of the Consent Booklet.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **SALPREP @**

NURSE: Fill in the respondent's details on the front of the logbook.

Ensure you have the correct sheet of barcode labels for the respondent:

check with respondent their name and date of birth on the label sheet.

Stick one barcode label to the front of the log book and one to the transparent plastic bag.

Write the respondent's first name on the label on the plastic bag.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue

Range: 1..1

### **SALGIVE @**

NURSE: Give kit to respondent.

READ OUT: Here is an envelope with the tubes we would like you to use.

Everything is explained in this logbook which you can work through step by step on the day you provide samples of your saliva.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### **SALWHEN @**

READ OUT: At the top of page 3 the logbook explains when to take each sample.  
NURSE: Talk through section 'When to take your saliva samples'.  
Check that the respondent understands when to take first and second sample.  
Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
Range: 1..1

**SALHOW @**

READ OUT: At the bottom of page 3 the logbook explains how to take a sample  
- we will practise this now.  
NURSE: Talk through section 'How to take a sample'.  
Then ask the respondent to provide a test sample using one of the spare  
salivettes.  
Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
Range: 1..1

**SALFIRS @**

NURSE: Turn to page 4 and talk through the instructions for taking the orange  
sample:  
READ OUT: The first sample is taken as soon as you wake up so you should  
not eat, drink or brush your teeth before taking the sample.  
Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
Range: 1..1

**SALQUES @**

NURSE: Show respondent questions 2 - 6 for the orange sample:  
READ OUT: The logbook also contains questions we would like you to answer at the  
time you take your samples.  
These will help us understand your activities and the levels of stress you are  
experiencing at different times.  
Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
Range: 1..1

**SALSEC @**

NURSE: Talk through remainder of page 5.  
READ OUT: Please be careful to follow the instructions about what you can eat  
or drink before the second sample.  
NURSE: If the respondent seems unsure about what they can do, it may be best  
for them not to eat, drink or brush their teeth until after the second sample.  
READ OUT: After that you can do whatever you like for the rest of the day but you  
should not eat, drink or brush your teeth for at least 15 minutes before you take the  
other samples.  
NURSE: Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
Range: 1..1

**SALSEND @**

NURSE: Show pages 6 - 8 which relate to the other samples. Then talk through  
further questions (questions 26-36) and instructions for return of samples.  
READ OUT: At the end of the logbook there are some further questions about your  
activities that day and instructions about how to return the samples and logbook to  
us.  
Please be sure to put your samples in the transparent plastic bag that has your

| | name on the label.  
| | Please return them as soon as you can.  
| | If you have any questions, do call Helen Selwood on the ELSA Freephone number.  
| | NURSE: Show respondent number on last page and point out times Helen is  
| | available.  
| | Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
| | Range: 1..1  
| |  
| | *ELSE*  
| |  
| | **SALNO @**  
| | NURSE: Circle consent code 16 on front of the Consent Booklet.  
| | Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.  
| | 1 Continue  
| |  
| | END FILTER  
| |  
END FILTER

## FINAL QUESTIONS MODULE

### ALLCHECK @

Check before leaving the respondent:

- # That all respondents have their personal copy of the consent forms.
- # That full GP details are entered on front of the Consent Booklet, along with the name by which GP knows respondent.
- # That all details are completed on front of the Consent Booklet.
- # That there are eight appropriate consent codes ringed on front of the Consent Booklet.
- # That all necessary signatures have been collected.
- # If applicable: that you have left the saliva kit with the respondent.
- # If applicable: that you have fully completed all parts of the venepuncture checklist.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

### ENDREACH @

NURSE: End of questionnaire reached.

Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

Range: 1..1

*IF Whether randomly chosen to do Ryff Self completion (from sample look up, 10% of sample selected) = Yes [SComp = 1]*

|

### | SCTHK @

- | That was the final part of this stage of the study.  
| However, I would like to leave you with this self completion booklet about your beliefs and well-being.  
| Whilst it is not part of the main study, we would appreciate your help in answering the questions to assist us in developing the study for the future.  
| Completion is, of course, entirely voluntary.  
| I'll leave it with you, and, if possible, would be grateful if you could please return it to us in this prepaid envelope.
- | 1 Completed by respondent, to be posted back by nurse
  - | 2 To be posted back by respondent
  - | 3 Respondent did not complete self-completion

|

| *IF Way of collecting self-completion booklet = [Collected by nurse, Posted back by respondent] [SCThk = [1, 2]]*

|

### | SCTHKDO @

| NURSE: Prepare self-completion booklet by entering serial number.

| Press <1> and <Enter> to continue.

| Range: 1..1

|

| END FILTER

|

END FILTER

### SURDOC @

NURSE: Has the respondent given you any survey documents left with them by the interviewer?

- 1 Yes
- 2 No

**THANK @**

NURSE: Thank the respondent for [^his / her] co-operation.  
Then press <1> and <Enter> to finish.

Range: 1..1

## APPENDIX - PROGRAM CHECKS

There are two types of checks: soft checks and hard checks.

A *soft* check is a warning that appears when the value entered is extreme or unlikely. It can be suppressed by the interviewer without changing the value entered.

A *hard* check is a warning that appears when the value entered is impossible. A hard check cannot be suppressed by the interviewer without changing the value entered.

### DEMOGRAPHICS MODULE CHECKS

*IF Whether today's date is shown correctly = Yes [DateOK = 1]*

```
|  
| CHECK N1 (Soft)  
| CHECK: date of interview <> automatically recorded date of interview  
| [NurDate <> MachDate]  
|  
| | Are you sure? You previously entered the date of interview as [^MachDate:  
| | automatically recorded date of interview].  
| | If [^MachDate: automatically recorded date of interview] is the correct date of  
| | interview, please change to this.  
| | Else, press <S> to continue.  
|  
| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER
```

*IF Checking respondent's date of birth - year <> EMPTY [NDoBY <> EMPTY]*

```
|  
| CHECK N2 (Soft)  
| CHECK: date of birth (derived) = EMPTY [NDoB = EMPTY]  
|  
| | Please enter the day, month and year of a valid date.  
| | If any of these are really unknown, suppress this warning.  
|  
| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER
```

*IF Checking respondent's date of birth - year = RESPONSE [NDoBY = RESPONSE]*

```
|  
| CHECK N3 (Hard)  
| CHECK: date of birth (derived) > date of interview [NDoB > NurDate]  
|  
| | NURSE: This date of birth is after the date you have entered for today's date.  
| | Please change one or the other.  
|  
| END CHECK  
|
```

```

| IF Date of birth = RESPONSE [DOB = RESPONSE]
|
| CHECK N4 (Soft)
| CHECK: date of birth (derived) <> date of birth (recorded) [NDoB <> DOB]
|
| | NURSE: The interviewer recorded [^DoB: date of birth (recorded)] as the date
| | of birth, please query.
| | Then either amend the date of birth which you entered, or suppress this
| | warning and explain in a note <Ctrl M>.
|
| END CHECK
|
| END FILTER
|
| CHECK N5 (Soft)
| CHECK: age of respondent (confirmed) > 99 [ConfAge > 99]
|
| | This gives an age of [^ConfAge: age of respondent (confirmed)] years old, please
| | check.
|
| END CHECK
|
| END FILTER
|
| IF (Age of respondent (confirmed) = RESPONSE) AND (Age of respondent >= 1)
| [(DispAge = RESPONSE) AND (RAge >= 1)]
|
| CHECK N6 (Soft)
| CHECK: age of respondent (from household grid) <> age of respondent
| (confirmed) [(RAge <> ConfAge)]
|
| | NURSE: You recorded the age as [^RAge: age of respondent (from household
| | grid)] in the Household Grid, please query.
| | Then either amend the date of birth which you entered, or suppress this warning
| | and explain in a note <Ctrl M>.
|
| END CHECK
|
| END FILTER
|
| CHECK N7 (Hard)
| CHECK: Whether age of respondent (confirmed) is right <> Yes [DispAge <> 1]
|
| | NURSE: Press <Enter> and sort out the correct date of birth.
|
| END CHECK

```

## BLOOD PRESSURE MODULE CHECKS

*IF Whether respondent has done anything that will affect their BP measurement = None*  
[CONSUBX = 5]

### CHECK N8 (Hard)

CHECK: (whether respondent has done anything that will affect their BP measurement = none of these) AND (whether respondent has done anything that will affect their BP measurement = at least one other answer)

[ConSubX.CARDINAL <> 1]

ConSubX: '(None of these)' is an exclusive category.

END CHECK

END FILTER

*IF (ambient air temperature (centigrades) = RESPONSE) [(AirTemp = RESPONSE)]*

### CHECK N9 (Soft)

CHECK: Air temperature: decimal point = 0 [FRAC(AirTemp) = 0]

Please record air temperature with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point. If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.

END CHECK

### CHECK N10 (Soft)

CHECK: (air temperature > 25) OR (air temperature < 15)

[(AirTemp > 25) OR (AirTemp < 15)]

Please check, is very unusual for the room temperature to be more than 25 centigrades or less than 15 centigrades. If this temperature is correct, please try to alter it before taking blood pressure readings.

END CHECK

END FILTER

### CHECK N11 (Hard)

CHECK: (BP: systolic reading <> [51 - 299, 844, 996, 999]) AND (BP: systolic reading = RESPONSE)

[(Sys <> [51 - 299, 844, 996, 999]) AND (Sys = RESPONSE)]

Systolic reading should be between 51 and 299 or 844 or 999.

END CHECK

### CHECK N12 (Hard)

CHECK: (BP: diastolic reading <= 31) AND (BP: diastolic reading = RESPONSE)

[(Dias <= 31) AND (Dias = RESPONSE)]

|  
| Diastolic should be more than 31.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N13 (Hard)**

CHECK: (BP: diastolic reading > 199) AND (BP: diastolic reading <> [844, 999])  
[(Dias > 199) AND (Dias <> 844, 999)]

|  
| Diastolic should be less than 200 or 844 or 999.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N14 (Hard)**

CHECK: (BP: pulse reading < 30) AND (BP: pulse reading = RESPONSE)  
[(Pulse < 30) AND (Pulse = RESPONSE)]

|  
| Pulse should be more than 29.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N15 (Hard)**

CHECK: (BP: pulse reading <> [30 .. 160, 844, 999]) AND (BP: pulse reading =  
RESPONSE)  
[(Pulse <> [30 - 160, 844, 999]) AND (Pulse = RESPONSE)]

|  
| Pulse should be between 30 and 160 or 844 or 999.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N16 (Soft)**

CHECK: (BP: pulse reading <= 48) AND (BP: pulse reading = RESPONSE)  
[(Pulse <= 48) AND (Pulse = RESPONSE)]

|  
| This Pulse reading is rather low. Please double check.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N17 (Soft)**

CHECK: (BP: pulse reading <> [1 .. 110, 844, 999]) AND (BP: pulse reading =  
RESPONSE)  
[(Pulse <> [1 - 110, 844, 999]) AND (Pulse = RESPONSE)]

|  
| This Pulse reading is rather high. Please double check.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N18 (Soft)**

CHECK: (BP: systolic reading < 90) AND (BP: systolic reading = RESPONSE)

[(Sys < 90) AND (Sys = RESPONSE)]

|

| This Systolic reading is rather low. Please double check.

|

END CHECK

**CHECK N19 (Soft)**

CHECK: (BP: systolic reading > 250) AND (BP: systolic reading <> [844, 996, 999])

[(Sys > 250) AND (Sys <> [844, 996, 999])]

|

| This Systolic reading is rather high. Please double check.

|

END CHECK

**CHECK N20 (Soft)**

CHECK: (BP: diastolic reading < 60) AND (BP: diastolic reading = RESPONSE)

[(Dias < 60) AND (Dias = RESPONSE)]

|

| This Diastolic reading is rather low. Please double check.

|

END CHECK

**CHECK N21 (Soft)**

CHECK: (BP: diastolic reading > 130) AND (BP: diastolic reading <> [844, 999])

[(Dias > 130) AND (Dias <> [844, 999])]

|

| This Diastolic reading is rather high. Please double check.

|

END CHECK

*IF (BP: systolic reading = [1 - 843, 845 - 995]) AND (BP: pulse reading = [1 - 843, 845 - 998]) AND (BP: diastolic reading = [1 - 843, 845 - 998])*

*[(Sys = [1 - 843, 845 - 995]) AND (Pulse = [1 - 843, 845 - 998]) AND*

*(Dias = [1 - 843, 845 - 998])]*

|

| *IF (BP: systolic reading = [1 - 843]) AND (BP: diastolic reading = [1 - 843])*

| *[(Sys = [1 - 843]) AND (Dias = [1 - 843])]*

|

**CHECK N22 (Hard)**

CHECK: BP: systolic reading <= BP: diastolic reading [Sys <= Dias]

|

| Systolic reading must be greater than diastolic reading. Go back and amend.

|

| END CHECK

|

| END FILTER

|

END FILTER

*IF (Number of BP reading = [2, 3]) AND ((BP: First systolic reading < 844)  
AND (BP: First diastolic reading < 844))*

[[([I = 2 , 3]) AND (Sys[I] < 844) AND (Dias[I] < 844)]]

IF ((Previous systolic reading < 844) AND (Previous diastolic reading < 844))  
[[((Sys[I-1] < 844) AND (Dias[I-1] < 844))]]

**CHECK N23 (Soft)**

CHECK: Absolute difference between two systolic readings >= 40

[ABS (BPread[I].Sys - BPread[I-1].Sys) >= 40]

The difference between the two systolic readings is equal to or more than 40mmHg. Please check you have entered the readings correctly.

END CHECK

**CHECK N24 (Soft)**

CHECK: Difference between two diastolic readings >= 30

[ABS (BPread[I].Dias - BPread[I-1].Dias) >= 30]

The difference between the two diastolic readings is equal to or more than 30mmHg. Please check you have entered the readings correctly.

END CHECK

END FILTER

END FILTER

IF Whether any difficulty with taking BP measurements = no problems (DifBPC = 1)

**CHECK N25 (Hard)**

CHECK: (difficulty with taking BP measurements = no difficulty) AND (difficulty with taking BP measurements = at least one other answer) [DifBPC.CARDINAL <> 1]

DifBPC: code 1 is exclusive for this question.

END CHECK

END FILTER

## GRIP STRENGTH MODULE CHECKS

IF First measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE [MMGSD1 = RESPONSE]

**CHECK N26 (Soft)**

CHECK: First measurement with dominant hand > 65 [MMGSD1 > 65]

NURSE: Are you sure? This reading (^MMGSD1: First measurement with dominant hand) is very high!

| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER

*IF Second measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE*  
*[MMGSD2 = RESPONSE]*

| **CHECK N27 (Soft)**  
| CHECK: Second measurement with dominant hand > 65 [MMGSD2 > 65]  
| |  
| | NURSE: Are you sure? This reading (^MMGSD2: Second measurement with  
| | dominant hand) is very high!  
| |  
| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER

*IF Third measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE [MMGSD3 = RESPONSE]*

| **CHECK N28 (Soft)**  
| CHECK: Third measurement with dominant hand > 65 [MMGSD3 > 65]  
| |  
| | NURSE: Are you sure? This reading (^MMGSD3: Third measurement with  
| | dominant hand) is very high!  
| |  
| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER

*IF First measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE*  
*[MMGSN1 = RESPONSE]*

| **CHECK N29 (Soft)**  
| CHECK: First measurement with non-dominant hand > 65 [MMGSN1 > 65]  
| |  
| | NURSE: Are you sure? This reading (^MMGSN2: Second measurement with  
| | non-dominant hand) is very high!  
| |  
| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER

*IF Third measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE*  
*[MMGSN3 = RESPONSE]*

| **CHECK N30 (Soft)**  
| CHECK: Third measurement with non-dominant hand > 65 [MMGSN3 > 65]  
| |  
| | NURSE: Are you sure? This reading (^MMGSN3: Third measurement with non-  
| | dominant hand) is very high!  
| |  
| |

| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER

*IF (Second measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE) AND (First measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE)  
[(MMGSD2 = RESPONSE) AND (MMGSD1 = RESPONSE)]*

| **CHECK N31 (Soft)**

| CHECK: ((First measurement with dominant hand - Second measurement with dominant hand) > 20) OR ((Second measurement with dominant hand - First measurement with dominant hand) >20)

| [((MMGSD1 - MMGSD2) > 20) OR ((MMGSD2 - MMGSD1) > 20)]

| | NURSE: Please check you have entered the correct value!

| END CHECK

|  
END FILTER

*IF (Third measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE) AND (First measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE)  
[(MMGSD3 = RESPONSE) AND (MMGSD1 = RESPONSE)]*

| **CHECK N32 (Soft)**

| CHECK: ((First measurement with dominant hand - Third measurement with dominant hand) > 20) OR ((Third measurement with dominant hand - First measurement with dominant hand) >20)

| [((MMGSD1 - MMGSD3) > 20) OR ((MMGSD3 - MMGSD1) > 20)]

| | NURSE: Please check you have entered the correct value!

| END CHECK

|  
END FILTER

*IF (Third measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE) AND (Second measurement with dominant hand = RESPONSE)  
[(MMGSD3 = RESPONSE) AND (MMGSD2 = RESPONSE)]*

| **CHECK N33 (Soft)**

| CHECK: ((Second measurement with dominant hand - Third measurement with dominant hand) > 20) OR ((Third measurement with dominant hand - Second measurement with dominant hand) > 20)

| [((MMGSD2 - MMGSD3) > 20) OR ((MMGSD3 - MMGSD2) > 20)]

| | NURSE: Please check you have entered the correct value!

| END CHECK

|  
END FILTER

*IF (Second measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE) AND (First measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE)*  
[[MMGSN2 = RESPONSE) AND (MMGSN1 = RESPONSE)]

**CHECK N34 (Soft)**

CHECK: ((First measurement with non-dominant hand - Second measurement with non-dominant hand) > 20) OR ((Second measurement with non-dominant hand - First measurement with non-dominant hand) >20)  
[[((MMGSN1 - MMGSN2) > 20) OR ((MMGSN2 - MMGSN1) > 20)]

NURSE: Please check you have entered the correct value!

END CHECK

END FILTER

*IF (Third measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE) AND (First measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE)*  
[[MMGSN3 = RESPONSE) AND (MMGSN1 = RESPONSE)]

**CHECK N35 (Soft)**

CHECK: ((First measurement with non-dominant hand - Third measurement with non-dominant hand) > 20) OR ((Third measurement with non-dominant hand - First measurement with non-dominant hand) >20)  
[[((MMGSN1 - MMGSN3) > 20) OR ((MMGSN3 - MMGSN1) > 20)]

NURSE: Please check you have entered the correct value!

END CHECK

END FILTER

*IF (Third measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE) AND (Second measurement with non-dominant hand = RESPONSE)*  
[[MMGSN3 = RESPONSE) AND (MMGSN2 = RESPONSE)]

**CHECK N36 (Soft)**

CHECK: ((Second measurement with non-dominant hand - Third measurement with non-dominant hand) > 20) OR ((Third measurement with non-dominant hand - Second measurement with non-dominant hand) > 20)  
[[((MMGSN2 - MMGSN3) > 20) OR ((MMGSN3 - MMGSN2) > 20)]

NURSE: Please check you have entered the correct value!

END CHECK

END FILTER

## BLOOD SAMPLE MODULE CHECKS

### CHECK N37 (Soft)

CHECK: Blood sample: whether has a clotting disorder = Yes [ClotB = 1]

|  
| NURSE: You have coded that the respondent has a clotting / bleeding disorder or  
| is taking anti-coagulant drugs. This means that no blood is to be taken.  
| Is this correct?  
| If yes suppress this warning and continue. If no, go back and code 2.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N38 (Hard)

CHECK: date when last had anything to eat or drink > date at start of Blood module  
[DateLEat > BDate]

|  
| Please check, you have entered a future date.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N39 (Soft)

CHECK: date when last had anything to eat or drink > two days before date at start of  
Blood module)) [DateLEat > (BDate+(0, 0, -2))]

|  
| Please check, that is more than 24 hours ago.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N40 (Soft)

CHECK: time when last had anything to eat or drink > five minutes after time at start of  
Blood module)) [TimeLEat > (BTime+(0, 5, 0))]

|  
| Please check, you seem to have entered a future time.

|  
END CHECK

*IF ((Whether citrate blue tube was filled = No) OR (Whether plain red tube was filled =  
No) OR (Whether fluoride grey tube was filled = No) OR (Whether (first) EDTA purple  
tube was filled = No) OR (Whether second EDTA purple tube was filled = No) OR  
(Whether third EDTA purple tube was filled = No))  
[((SampF1 = 2) OR (SampF2 = 2) OR (SampF3 = 2) OR (SampF4 = 2) OR (SampF5 =  
2) OR (SampF6 = 2))]*

### CHECK N41 (Soft)

CHECK: Whether any problems in taking sample = no problem [(SamDifC = 1)]

|  
| You should not code 'No problems' as you did not fill all six tubes.  
| Please amend or explain in a note <Ctrl M>.

|  
|  
END CHECK

|  
END FILTER

**CHECK N42 (Hard)**

CHECK: (Whether any problems in taking sample = no problem) AND (Whether any problems in taking sample = at least one other answer)

[SamDifC.CARDINAL <> 1]

| If code 1 'No problem' is used then no other codes are allowed.

|  
END CHECK

**STANDING HEIGHT MODULE CHECKS**

*IF Standing height - centimeters = RESPONSE [Height = RESPONSE]*

|  
**CHECK N43 (Soft)**

| CHECK: (Standing height: decimal point = 0 [(FRAC (Height) = 0)])

| | Please record height with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point.

| | If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.

|  
END CHECK

|  
**CHECK N44 (Soft)**

| CHECK: ((Standing height < Lower limit\*) OR (Standing height > Upper limit\*))

| [((Height < HtLow) OR (Height > HtHigh))]

| | This person's height is [^Foot] feet [^Inch] inches. Is this correct?

| | If correct, suppress this warning.

|  
END CHECK

|  
END FILTER

	Male	Female
*Lower limit - HtLow	165 - 0.132*HHAge	155.5 - 0.158*HHAge
*Upper limit - HtHigh	193 - 0.118*HHAge	179.1 - 0.132*HHAge

*IF (Whether estimated standing height will be in metric or imperial measures = RESPONSE) AND ((Estimated standing height - feet = RESPONSE) OR (Estimated standing height - inches = RESPONSE) OR (Estimated standing height - metres = RESPONSE)) AND (Final measured / estimated standing height - cm = RESPONSE) [(EHtCh = RESPONSE) AND ((EHtFt = RESPONSE) OR (EHtIn = RESPONSE) OR (EHtm = RESPONSE))] AND (EstHt = RESPONSE)]*

|  
**CHECK N45 (Soft)**

| CHECK: ((Estimated standing height < Lower limit\*) OR (Estimated standing height

```

| > Upper limit*))
| [((EstHt < HtLow) OR (EstHt > HtHigh))
|
| | This person's height is [^Foot] feet [^Inch] inches. Is this correct?
| | If correct, suppress this warning.
|
| END CHECK
|
END FILTER

```

	Male	Female
*Lower limit - HtLow	165 - 0.132*HHAge	155.5 - 0.158*HHAge
*Upper limit - HtHigh	193 - 0.118*HHAge	179.1 - 0.132*HHAge

## SITTING HEIGHT MODULE CHECKS

### CHECK N46 (Soft)

CHECK: Sitting height >= Final measured or estimated standing height  
 [SitHgt >= EstHt]

```

| NURSE: Please check, standing height should be greater than sitting height.
|
END CHECK

```

### CHECK N47 (Hard)

CHECK: ((Sitting height < 30) OR (Sitting height > 200))  
 [((SitHgt < 30) OR (SitHgt > 200))]

```

| NURSE: The person's sitting height can't be right (^sithgt: Sitting height cm).
| Please change!
|
END CHECK

```

*IF Sex of respondent = Male [RSex = 1]*

### CHECK N48 (Soft)

CHECK: ((Sitting height < 82.8) OR (Sitting height > 100.6))  
 [((SitHgt < 82.8) OR (SitHgt > 100.6))]

```

| NURSE: The person's sitting height is [^sithgt: Sitting height] cm. Is this correct?
| If correct, suppress this warning.
|
END CHECK

```

*ELSE IF Sex of respondent = Female [RSex = 2]*

### CHECK N49 (Soft)

CHECK: ((Sitting height < 77) OR (Sitting height > 93.9))

```

| [((SitHgt < 77) OR (SitHgt > 93.9))]
|
| NURSE: The person's sitting height is [^sithgt: Sitting height] cm. Is this correct?
| If correct, suppress this warning.
|
| END CHECK
|
END FILTER

```

## WEIGHT MODULE CHECKS

*IF Weight = RESPONSE [Weight = RESPONSE]*

```

| CHECK N50 (Soft)
| CHECK: (Weight: decimal point = 0) [(FRAC (Weight) = 0)]
|
| Please record weight with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point.
| If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.
|
| END CHECK

```

```

| CHECK N51 (Soft)
| CHECK: Weight = 130 [Weight = 130]
|
| You have recorded the weight as exactly 130.0 kg. Is this the actual weight, or
| should you have entered an estimate?
| If correct, press <S> to suppress this warning.
|
| END CHECK

```

```

| CHECK N52 (Soft)
| CHECK: ((Weight < Lower limit*) OR (Weight > Upper limit*))
| [((Weight < WtLow) OR (Weight > WtHigh))]
|
| This person's weight is [^Stone] stones [^Pound] pounds. Is this correct?
| Press <S> to suppress this warning.
|
| END CHECK
|
END FILTER

```

	Male	Female
*Lower limit - WtLow	0.039*HHAge + 52.37	0.043*HHAge + 40.32
*Upper limit - WtHigh	0.02*HHAge + 102.18	0.0375*HHAge + 89.4

*IF (Reason for not obtaining weight measurement = respondent weighs more than 130 kg) AND ((Estimated weight - stone = RESPONSE) OR (Estimated weight - kg = RESPONSE)) AND (Final measured or estimated weight - kg = RESPONSE)*

*[(NoWtBC = 6) AND ((EWtSt = RESPONSE) OR (EWtkg = RESPONSE)) AND (EstWt = RESPONSE)]*

**CHECK N53 (Soft)**

CHECK: Final measured or estimated weight <= 130 [EstWt <= 130]

Earlier the respondent was coded as being heavier than 130 kg (20 ½ stones).  
Please change estimated weight or NoWtBC.

END CHECK

END FILTER

*IF (Whether estimated weight will be in metric or imperial measures = RESPONSE) AND ((Estimated weight - stone = RESPONSE) OR (Estimated weight - pounds = RESPONSE) OR (Estimated weight - kg = RESPONSE)) AND (Final measured or estimated weight - kg = RESPONSE)*

*[(EWtCh = RESPONSE) AND ((EWtSt = RESPONSE) OR (EWtL = RESPONSE) OR (EWtkg = RESPONSE)) AND (EstWt = RESPONSE)]*

**CHECK N54 (Soft)**

CHECK: ((Estimated weight < Lower limit\*) OR (Estimated weight > Upper limit\*))  
[((EstWt < WtLow) OR (EstWt > WtHigh))]

This person's weight is [^Stone] stones [^Pound] pounds. Is this correct?  
If correct, press <S> to suppress this warning.

END CHECK

END FILTER

	Male	Female
*Lower limit - WtLow	0.039*HHAge + 52.37	0.043*HHAge + 40.32
*Upper limit - WtHigh	0.02*HHAge + 102.18	0.0375*HHAge + 89.4

**WAIST AND HIP CIRCUMFERENCE MODULE CHECKS**

**CHECK N55 (Hard)**

CHECK: Waist measurement = 1000 [Waist = 1000]

1000 is above the valid range, please amend.

END CHECK

**CHECK N56 (Hard)**

CHECK: Hip measurement = 1000 [Hip = 1000]

1000 is above the valid range, please amend.

END CHECK

**CHECK N57 (Soft)**

CHECK: (Waist measurement <> [50 - 150]) AND (Waist measurement <> 999.9)  
[(Waist <> [50 - 150]) AND (Waist <> 999.9)]

| Are you sure?

END CHECK

**CHECK N58 (Soft)**

CHECK: (Hip measurement <> [80 - 180]) AND (Hip measurement <> 999.9)  
[(Hip <> [80 - 180]) AND (Hip <> 999.9)]

| Are you sure?

END CHECK

*IF (First waist measurement <> measurement not obtained) AND (Second waist measurement <> measurement not obtained)*

*[(DoneWst <> 1) AND (Waist1 <> 999.9) AND (Waist2 <> 999.9)]*

| **CHECK N59 (Soft)**

| CHECK: Absolute difference between two waist measurements > 3 cm

| [ABS (Waist1 - Waist2) > 3]

| | NURSE: The waist measurements are more than 3 cm apart. (^Waist1 / ^Waist2).

| | If you have entered the measurement wrongly, please go back and amend.

| | Otherwise, press <S> and take a third measurement.

| END CHECK

END FILTER

*IF (First hip measurement <> measurement not obtained) AND (Second hip measurement <> measurement not obtained)*

*[(DoneHip <> 1) AND (Hip1 <> 999.9) AND (Hip2 <> 999.9)]*

| **CHECK N60 (Soft)**

| CHECK: Absolute difference between two hip measurements > 3 cm

| [ABS (Hip1 - Hip2) > 3]

| | NURSE: the Hip measurements are more than 3 cm apart. (^Hip1 / ^ Hip2).

| | If you have entered the measurement wrongly, please go back and amend.

| | Otherwise, press <S> and take a third measurement.

| END CHECK

END FILTER

REPEAT FOR ALL MEASUREMENTS [LOOP FOR I:= 1 TO 3]

| *IF Waist measurement = RESPONSE [Waist = RESPONSE]*

| | **CHECK N61 (Soft)**

| | CHECK: Waist measurement: decimal point = 0 [FRAC (Waist) = 0]

| | | Please record waist measurement with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point. If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.

| | END CHECK

| END FILTER

| *IF Hip measurement = RESPONSE [Hip = RESPONSE]*

| | **CHECK N62 (Soft)**

| | CHECK: Hip measurement: decimal point = 0 [FRAC (Hip) = 0]

| | | Please record hip measurement with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point. If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.

| | END CHECK

| END FILTER

END OF LOOP

**CHECK N63 (Soft)**

CHECK: (First waist measurement = Second waist measurement) AND (First waist measurement <> 999.9)

[(Waist1 = Waist2) AND (Waist1 <> 999.9)]

| The two measurements are exactly the same. Is this correct?

END CHECK

**CHECK N64 (Soft)**

CHECK: (First hip measurement = Second hip measurement) AND (First hip measurement <> 999.9)

[(Hip1 = Hip2) AND (Hip1 <> 999.9)]

| The two measurements are exactly the same. Is this correct?

END CHECK

## LUNG FUNCTION MODULE CHECKS

### CHECK N65 (Soft)

CHECK: Air temperature: decimal point = 0 [FRAC (LFTemp) = 0]

|  
| NURSE: Please record the temperature with one decimal digit, using the full stop  
| as decimal point. If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N66 (Soft)

CHECK: (FVC reading (litres) > 7) AND (FVC reading (litres) <> 9.95)

[(FVC > 7) AND (FVC <> 9.95)]

|  
| Are you sure? This value seems a bit high.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N67 (Soft)

CHECK: (FVC reading (litres): decimal point = 0) AND (FVC reading (litres) <> 0)

[(FRAC (FVC) = 0) AND (FVC <> 0)]

|  
| Please record the value with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point.  
| If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N68 (Soft)

CHECK: FEV reading (litres) > 7 [FEV > 7]

|  
| Are you sure? This value seems a bit high.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N69 (Soft)

CHECK: (FEV reading (litres): decimal point = 0) AND (FEV reading (litres) <> 0)

[(FRAC (FEV) = 0) AND (FEV <> 0)]

|  
| Please record the value with one decimal digit, using the full stop as decimal point.  
| If the decimal is zero, suppress this warning and continue.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N70 (Hard)

CHECK: FEV reading (litres) > 9.95 [FEV > 9.95]

|  
| FEV must be less than 9.95. Please correct.

|  
END CHECK

### CHECK N71 (Soft)

CHECK: (FVC reading (litres) = FEV reading (litres)) AND (FEV reading (litres) <> 0)  
[(FVC <> FEV) AND (FEV <> 0)]

|  
| Are you sure? Both values are the same.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N72 (Soft)**

CHECK: (FVC reading (litres) <= FEV reading (litres)) AND (FVC <> 0)  
[(FVC <= FEV) AND (FVC <> 0)]

|  
| This is incorrect, FEV must be less than FVC. Please try again.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N73 (Soft)**

CHECK: PF reading (litres per minute) > 700 [PF > 700]

|  
| Are you sure? This value seems a bit high.

|  
END CHECK

**CHECK N74 (Hard)**

CHECK: PF reading (litres per minute) > 995 [PF > 995]

|  
| PF must be less than 995. Please correct.

|  
END CHECK

*IF Lung Function Measurement order = 1 [PLoop = 1]*

|  
| **CHECK N75 (Soft)**

| CHECK: (FVC reading (litres) <= 0) OR (FEV reading (litres) <= 0) OR (PF reading  
| (litres per minute) <= 0) [(FVC<= 0) OR (FEV <= 0) OR (PF <= 0)]

|  
| If you are not going to obtain any readings at all please enter '9.95' at FVC.

|  
| END CHECK

|  
END FILTER

*IF (Whether technique for all three measurements was satisfactory = Yes)*

*[(Techni1 = 1) AND (Techni2 = 1) AND (Techni3 = 1)]*

|  
| **CHECK N76 (Hard)**

| CHECK: How many technically correct blows were obtained <> All [LFResp <> 1]

|  
| All blows were correct technique. LFResp should be code 1.

|  
| END CHECK

|  
ELSE

| **CHECK N77 (Hard)**

| CHECK: How many technically correct blows were obtained = All [LFResp = 1]

| | Some blows were not correct technique. LFResp cannot be code 1.

| END CHECK

| END FILTER

| *IF Whether technique for at least one measurement was satisfactory = Yes*  
| *[(Techni1 = 1) OR (Techni2 = 1) OR (Techni3 = 1)]*

| **CHECK N78 (Hard)**

| CHECK: How many technically correct blows were obtained = [All, some]

| [LFResp = [1, 2]]

| | LFResp should be code 2 as some blows were correct technique.

| END CHECK

| *ELSE IF Whether technique for all three measurements was satisfactory = No*  
| *[(Techni1 = 2) AND (Techni2 = 2) AND (Techni3 = 2) ]*

| **CHECK N79 (Hard)**

| CHECK: How many technically correct blows were obtained = Some [LFResp = 2]

| | None of the blows were correct technique. LFResp cannot be code 2.

| END CHECK

| END FILTER

## BALANCE MODULE CHECKS

| **CHECK N80 (Hard)**

| CHECK: Time full tandem stand held (seconds)  $\geq$  [ $^30 / 10$ ] [MmFTTi  $\geq$  [ $^30 / 10$ ]]

| | NURSE: This is more than [ $^30 / 10$ ] seconds. Please re-enter time if is less than  
| [ $^30 / 10$ ] seconds, otherwise arrow back to MmFTRe and enter code 1.

| END CHECK

## CHAIR RISE MODULE CHECKS

*IF Time to complete five rises (seconds) = RESPONSE*  
*[MmRRFTi = RESPONSE]*

### **CHECK N81 (Soft)**

CHECK: Time to complete five chair rises (seconds) < 5 [MmRRFTi < 5]

Are you sure? This time seems rather low.  
Please check and amend your coding if necessary.

END CHECK

### **CHECK N82 (Soft)**

CHECK: Time to complete five chair rises (seconds) > 20 [MmRRFTi > 20]

Are you sure? This time seems rather high.  
Please check and amend your coding if necessary.

END CHECK

END FILTER

*IF Time to complete ten rises (seconds) - only eligible if under 70 yrs =*  
*RESPONSE [MMRRTTi = RESPONSE]*

### **CHECK N83 (Soft)**

CHECK: Time to complete ten chair rises (seconds) < 10 [MMRRTTi < 10]

Are you sure? This time seems rather low.  
Please check and amend your coding if necessary.

END CHECK

### **CHECK N84 (Soft)**

CHECK: Time to complete ten chair rises (seconds) > 40 [MMRRTTi > 40]

Are you sure? This time seems rather high.  
Please check and amend your coding if necessary.

END CHECK

END FILTER

*IF (Time to complete ten rises (seconds) - only eligible if under 70 yrs =RESPONSE)*  
*AND (Time to complete five rises (seconds) = RESPONSE)*  
*[(MMRRTTi = RESPONSE) AND (MmRRFTi = RESPONSE)]*

### **CHECK N85 (Hard)**

CHECK: Time to complete ten chair rises (seconds) <= Time to complete five chair  
rises (seconds)) [(MMRRTTi <= MmRRFTi)]

| |  
| | This time should be greater than the time recorded to complete five rises.  
| | Please amend.  
| |  
| END CHECK  
|  
END FILTER

The information you provide will help the government to ensure that the health care and pension system meets people's needs.

The study will not be of direct benefit to you, although the results of health measures will be sent to you or your GP if you agree to this.

### **Who is paying for the study?**

Half of the funding for the first five years of ELSA has come from a number of UK government departments. The other half of the funding for the study has been provided by the National Institute on Aging from the United States who also fund a parallel study in the US.

### **Who is carrying out the study?**

The study is being carried out by some of Britain's leading research organisations in health, economics and social research:

- National Centre for Social Research
- International Centre for Health and Society, University College London
- Institute for Fiscal Studies
- Cambridge University

### **Who can I contact about the study?**

If you have any more questions, or would like to inform us of a change in your circumstances such as a new address please contact us on the freephone number 0800 652 4569.

Alternatively, you can write to:

Helen Selwood  
National Centre for Social  
Research  
100 Kings Road  
Brentwood  
Essex  
CM14 4LX

You can find out more about the study, or contact us, via the ELSA web site:

<http://www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa/>

**ELSA** English  
Longitudinal  
Study of  
Ageing

# **Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over**

This leaflet gives you more information about the content of the second round of this study and answers some of the questions you may have. If you have any queries or need to contact us, please call freephone 0800 652 4569

## What is the study about?

As you may know, the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing (ELSA) is a major research project that explores the lives of people who are aged 50 and over, and their partners. We plan to interview members of the study every two years.

Over 12,000 people participated in the first round. We would very much like to speak to all of you again – we cannot replace you with anyone else. We hope to look at how your circumstances and experiences may have changed or stayed the same over the last couple of years. We do hope that you will take part again, and enjoy the experience.

## Is the survey confidential?

As before, we will take very great care to protect the confidentiality of the information you give us. The study results will never be in a form that can reveal your identity. Your name and address will only be known to the researchers at NatGen and will not be stored with the information you provide.

## What does the study involve?

The second round of ELSA is similar in many ways to the first round. Again, an interviewer will visit you in your home.

### Interviewer visit

When the interviewer visits, they will ask you more questions about things we believe are important in the lives of people aged 50 and over.

Topics covered will include:

- Health
- Housing
- Finances
- Quality of life

There are new and different questions throughout, and this time we will ask you more about your own experiences of growing older!

### Nurse visit

We have introduced a nurse visit to

the second round. This should be a familiar experience for those of you who took part in the Health Survey for England. If you agree, a nurse will visit you and ask to take a variety of health measurements such as:

- Blood pressure
- Height and weight
- Blood sample

Your interviewer will give you a leaflet which tells you more about the nurse visit. If you agree to give a blood sample, the nurse will ask you for your written consent.

Your participation is, of course, entirely voluntary, so you are welcome to change your mind at any time.

Your interviewer and nurse will be happy to address any concerns you may have.

## Why are you important?

We are gradually building up a picture of people living in Britain aged 50 and over. This age group now accounts for half of the

nation's spending and three quarters of the nation's wealth. Many now retire earlier and enjoy an active and healthy retirement, while many others struggle financially or suffer poor health.

# Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

**This leaflet tells you more about the  
second part of the survey which  
involves a nurse visit**

This survey is being carried out by the National Centre for Social Research jointly with academic researchers from University College London and the Institute for Fiscal Studies on behalf of a number of government departments and the National Institute on Aging in the United States. You have already taken part in the first part of the survey for this year which consisted of an interview.

## The Nurse visit

A registered nurse will ask you some further questions and will ask permission to take some measurements. The measurements are described overleaf. You need not have any measurements taken if you do not wish but, of course, we very much hope you will agree to them as they are a very important part of this survey. If the survey results are to be useful to us, it is important that we obtain information from all types of people in all states of health. As with information obtained in the first part of the survey, we take great care to protect the confidentiality of all information and test results.

## The Measurements

### Blood pressure

High blood pressure can be a health problem. However, blood pressure is difficult to measure accurately. A person's blood pressure is influenced by age and can vary from day to day with emotion, meals, tobacco, alcohol, medication, temperature and pain. Although the nurse will tell you your blood pressure along with an indication of its meaning, a diagnosis cannot be made on a measurement taken on a single occasion. Blood pressure is measured using an inflatable cuff that goes around the upper arm.

## **Lung function**

We would like to measure the amount of air you can breathe out of your lungs and how quickly you can get it out. This involves blowing into a tube. The amount of air you are able to breathe out depends partly on your height, your age, and how fit you are. Your result can only be interpreted in the light of these factors.

## **Height & weight**

Both the height and the weight of the population appear to have been changing very rapidly over the last two decades. These changes reflect the changes in the population's diet and lifestyle. We are interested in the relationship between general build and health. As well as taking a standing height measurement, we also would like to measure your sitting height.

## **Waist-to-hip ratio**

Lately there has been much discussion about the relationship between weight and health, and another important factor is thought to be the distribution of weight over the body. The ratio of your waist-to-hip measurements is most useful for assessing this.

## **Physical functioning measures**

We would like to measure your upper and lower body strength and your ability to balance. The upper body strength measurement involves gripping a handle which will provide a reading of grip strength. The lower body

strength measurement looks at the ability to stand up from a firm chair without the use of your arms. Measuring your ability to balance involves asking you to perform a few simple movements.

### **Saliva sample**

We would like you to provide us with samples of your saliva over a 24hr period. This simply involves allowing saliva to be absorbed into a 'dental roll' of cotton wool placed into the mouth. The sample will be analysed for cortisol. Cortisol is related to levels of stress and is of particular interest because stress may be related to heart disease.

### **Blood sample**

We would be very grateful if you would agree to provide us with a sample of blood. This is an important part of the survey, as the analysis of the blood samples will tell us a lot about the health of the population. You are of course free to choose not to give a blood sample, and the nurse will ask for your written permission before a blood sample is taken.

This part of the survey involves taking a small amount of blood (no more than 22ml, about 4 teaspoons) from your arm by a qualified nurse. The blood sample will be sent to a medical laboratory for testing total cholesterol, HDL cholesterol, fibrinogen, C-reactive protein, ferritin, glycated haemoglobin and haemoglobin.

Cholesterol is a type of fat present in the blood, related to diet. Too much cholesterol in the blood increases the risk of heart disease. Fibrinogen is a protein necessary for blood clotting and high levels are also associated with a higher risk of heart disease. The level of C-reactive protein in the blood gives information on inflammatory activity in the body, and it is also associated with risk of heart disease. Ferritin and haemoglobin are measures of iron levels in the body and are related to diet and other factors.

We would like to store a small amount of blood. Medical tests of blood samples are becoming more advanced and specialised. This means that we may be able to learn more about the health of the population by re-testing blood in the future. We will ask separately for permission to store blood.

The nurse may, in some cases, ask you if you are willing to give your blood sample before you have had anything to eat. Blood samples collected from you when you have 'fasted' can be tested for triglycerides and glucose. Triglycerides are another type of fat present in the blood, related to diet. Glucose levels found in 'fasting' blood provides information on how well your body handles sugar and are associated with risk of diabetes.

The blood samples will not be tested for the HIV (Aids) virus.

## Letting your GP know the results

With your agreement we would like to send your blood pressure, lung function and, if applicable, your blood sample results to your GP because we believe that this may help you to take steps to keep in good health. Your GP can interpret the results in the light of your medical history. We believe that this may help to improve your health.

If the GP considers your results to be satisfactory, then nothing further will be done. If your results showed, for example, that your blood pressure was above what is usual for someone of your sex and age, your GP may wish to measure it again. Often it is possible to reduce blood pressure by treatment or by changing your diet. It is for you and your GP to decide what is the best action to take, if any.

## **Might there be implications for insurance cover?**

If you agree to your results being sent to your GP, then she/he may use them in medical reports about you. This may occur if you apply for a new life assurance policy, or for a new job. Insurance companies may ask those who apply for new policies if they have had any medical tests. If so, the insurance company may ask if they can obtain a medical report from the GP. Because of the Access to Medical Reports Act 1988 an insurance company cannot ask your GP for a medical report on you without your permission. Having given your permission, you then have the right to see the report before your GP sends it to the insurance company and you can ask for the report to be amended if you consider it to be incorrect or misleading.

The purpose of a medical report is for the company to judge whether to charge normal premiums, whether to charge higher premiums or whether, in exceptional circumstances, to turn down life insurance on account of the person's health.

## If I have any other questions?

We hope this leaflet answers the questions you may have, and that it shows the importance of the survey. If you have any other questions, please do not hesitate to ring one of the contacts listed below.

Your co-operation is very much appreciated.

Hayley Mew  
National Centre for Social Research  
35 Northampton Square  
London EC1 0AX  
Tel: 020 7549 8544

Dr James Nazroo  
Department of Epidemiology & Public Health  
University College London  
Medical School  
1-19 Torrington Place  
London WC1E 6BT  
Tel: 020 7679 1705

You can find out more about the study, or contact us, via the ELSA web site:

**<http://www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa>**

**Thank you very much for your help with this  
important survey**

ELSA

English  
Longitudinal  
Study of  
Ageing



 **NatCen**  
National Centre for Social Research  

---

**IFS** Institute for  
Fiscal Studies

# Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

## Information about donating a blood sample for genetic (DNA) studies

This leaflet tells you about the collection of  
genetic material as part of the study and  
why it is being done

## Introduction

Research shows that an increasing number of illnesses have a genetic element. Diabetes, asthma and certain heart conditions are now thought to have a genetic component.

Often genes do not actually give rise to a specific illness but may pre-dispose to one. Two people may both be pre-disposed to a particular illness, but only one person actually suffers from it. Why? What triggers the onset of the illness? Is it something to do with the environment? Or is it other genes?

This is the type of question that we hope to try to answer, through a variety of genetic studies. We need to look at the genes from a large number of people so that we can study the differences between genes, and how they relate to health.

## What are genes?

In a room full of people, individuals differ: some are tall, some are short, some have dark hair, some have fair. The characteristics that make us unique individuals are influenced by our genes. Following the recently published “working map” of the human genome, it is thought that we each have about 30,000 genes. We have genes that determine many things about us such as our height, our hair and eye colour and also the likelihood that we may develop certain diseases that tend to run in families.

There may be several forms of the same gene. For example, the genes for eye colour have several different forms so there is a range of different eye colour – blue, green, brown, etc. The form of the eye colour gene does not appear to have any effect on health. Because there are a number of variations of each gene, no two persons (apart from identical twins) have exactly the same combination of genes, although we all have the same number.

## What is DNA?

DNA is the substance of which genes are composed. Genes are found on structures called chromosomes. There are 23 pairs of chromosomes (46 in total) present in each of the cells of our bodies.

Each chromosome contains a long thin tightly packed thread. This is the DNA. The DNA strand is divided up, along its length, into the genes. One chromosome contains hundreds or thousands of genes. Each gene lies at an exact place on a specific chromosome. Pairs of chromosomes contain the same set of genes in the same order, but they may carry a different form of the same gene.

It is this genetic variation in the DNA that will be studied in the genetic part of the project.

## How will the DNA be collected?

DNA can be obtained from any cell in the body. Since we wish to take a blood sample anyway for your biochemical tests, we would like to use this to prepare DNA. We shall seek your written consent to do this.

## What type of genetic studies will be done?

Some studies will simply find out how many people have a certain type of gene. In the future, if a certain gene is found to be associated with a certain illness, then knowing how common that gene is will help to plan and develop health care.

Other studies will see if there is a link between certain genes, the environment and health among members. Genetic results will be compared with information in your interview, and your physiological and biochemical test results, to see if there are common underlying factors.

**No names of individuals will ever be revealed or identified in the presentation of the results.**

## Will the DNA samples be used for other things?

If you agree, the DNA sample will be made available for future studies relating to health which have received ethical approval. The information will **not** be available for life insurance, mortgage applications, police records or AIDS/HIV testing.

## How will the information be stored?

Each blood sample in the project will be given its own number. This number will be different to your survey number, which appears on the consent form. Only this number, and not your name, will appear on the prepared DNA samples and the stored materials. The “paperwork” which links you to your results will be kept on a secure computer at the National Centre for Social Research.

## Can I withdraw my consent?

Initial consent to the collection, storage and use of the samples in the genetic project is given by you. It is not possible to “opt in” to certain genetic studies and “opt out” of others, but you can opt out of the whole genetic project at any time.

## The research team

The study is a collaboration between three of Britain's leading research groups in the fields of health, economics and social statistics.

- University College London
- The Institute for Fiscal Studies
- The National Centre for Social Research.

We hope that this leaflet answers your questions. If you have others, please contact one of the research team at the address below. Thank you very much for helping us with the development of this important survey.

You can find out more about the study, or contact us, via the ELSA web site:

**<http://www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa/>**

Dr James Nazroo  
Department of Epidemiology  
and Public Health  
University College London  
Medical School  
1-19 Torrington Place  
London WC1E 6BT  
Tel 020 7679 1705

Hayley Mew  
National Centre for Social  
Research  
35 Northampton Square  
London EC1V 0AX  
Tel 020 7549 8544

## If you are asked to fast

You will be invited to give us a blood sample and **some** of you will be asked to fast before giving blood as this will make it possible to learn more from any blood you give us.

- **Please take any medication(s) as usual**
- **If you are a diabetic on treatment, do NOT fast.** Please follow your normal diet & medication on the day of your appointment

For those of you that wish to fast please refrain from **strenuous exercise** for 12 hours before your appointment and do not eat or drink anything, **apart from water** for at least **5 hours** before your visit. The following instructions explain what we mean by this:

### APPOINTMENTS BEFORE 1PM:

On the day of your appointment, please do not eat or drink anything apart from water until you have given the sample. Once you have given the sample, you may eat and drink as soon as you like.

### APPOINTMENTS FROM 1PM TO 6PM:

Please do not eat or drink anything **after 8.00am**, except water. **Before 8.00am** you may choose a light breakfast of items from the list below **ONLY**.

- Tea or coffee (no sugar, a little skimmed milk may be used) AND
- Plain toast or bread with nothing on it (no butter, jam or any spreads) OR
- Porridge made with water or skimmed milk (no sugar) OR
- Cornflakes or rice crispies made with skimmed milk (no sugar)

Once you have given the sample, you may eat and drink as soon as you like.

### APPOINTMENTS AFTER 6PM:

Please do not eat or drink anything **after 1.00pm**, except water.

**Before 1.00pm** you may have your usual breakfast and then choose a light lunch of items from the list below **ONLY**

- Tea or coffee (no sugar, a little skimmed milk may be used) AND
- Plain toast or bread with nothing on it (no butter, jam or any spreads) OR
- Small baked potato with nothing on it (no butter or any other fillings)
- No sugar, milk, fats or dairy products other than skimmed milk

Once you have given the sample, you may eat and drink as soon as you like.

HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES OF PEOPLE  
AGED 50 AND OVER

P2158/P8158  
ELSA WAVE TWO  
NURSE VISIT

PROJECT INSTRUCTIONS

**FINAL VERSION**

1	ABOUT THE STUDY	4
	1.1 Background and introduction to the study	4
	1.2 Summary of the survey design	5
	1.3 The interviewer visit	5
	1.4 The nurse visit	6
	1.5 Self-completion at end of nurse visit	7
	1.6 Survey materials	8
2	SAMPLE INFORMATION	9
	2.1 Sample source	9
	2.2 Sample definition	9
	2.3 Sample information	10
3	NOTIFYING THE POLICE	11
4	LIAISING WITH YOUR INTERVIEWER PARTNER	11
	4.1 Nurse Summary Sheet	13
	4.2 The Nurse Record Form (NRF)	13
	4.3 The interim appointment form	14
5	WHAT THE RESPONDENT KNOWS ABOUT YOUR VISIT	15
	5.1 Appointment Record Card	16
6	WHAT TO DO ON INITIAL CONTACT	17
	6.1 Telephoning respondents before the visit	17
	6.2 Being persuasive	19
	6.3 Broken appointments	19
	6.4 The number of calls you must make	19
7	CARRYING OUT THE NURSE VISIT	20
	7.1 Who to visit	20
	7.2 Nurse visit documents	20
	7.3 General tips on use of the documents and computer program	21
	7.4 Preparing the documents/computer	21
	7.5 Introducing your measurement tasks	22
8	THE CONSENT BOOKLETS	22
9	THE NURSE SCHEDULE	24
	9.1 Organising the interview	24
	9.2 Getting into the Nurse Schedule	24
	9.3 Household information	26
	9.4 Individual information	27
	B. Blood Pressure	27
	C. Grip Strength	30
	D. Blood sample	30
	E. & F. Height and weight	33
	G. Waist and hip circumferences	34
	H. Lung Function	35
	I. Balance, Leg raise and Chair rise	36
	J. Saliva	38
	9.5 Finishing the interview	39
	9.6 The admin block	40
	9.7 Parallel blocks	40
	9.8 Practice interview	41
10	COMPLETING THE NRF AND RETURNING WORK	42
	10.1 Recording the outcome of your attempts to interview and measure	42
	10.2 Returning work	44
11	INFORMATION FOR HANDLING NURSE EQUIPMENT	45

12	CONTACTS	46
	12.1 The Project Team	46
	12.2 The Survey Doctor	46
13	PROTOCOLS OF MEASURES IN ELSA NURSE VISIT	47
	A. RECORDING AMBIENT AIR TEMPERATURE	47
	B. BLOOD PRESSURE	48
	C. GRIP STRENGTH	55
	D. BLOOD SAMPLE	57
	E. HEIGHT MEASUREMENT	66
	F. WEIGHT MEASUREMENTS	70
	G. WAIST AND HIP CIRCUMFERENCES	72
	H. LUNG FUNCTION	75
	I. PHYSICAL PERFORMANCE MEASURES	79
	J. SALIVA SAMPLING	90
14	APPENDIX 1 SUMMARY OF NURSE-INTERVIEWER LIAISON	93
15	APPENDIX 2 CHECKLIST FOR WHEN YOU TELEPHONE THE RESPONDENT BEFORE YOUR VISIT	94

## ABOUT THE STUDY

### 1.1 *Background and introduction to the study*

ELSA is a relatively new longitudinal survey and is designed to explore many aspects of older people's lives. As a result, it gathers information about various aspects of respondents' health, economic and social circumstances. The first wave of ELSA, whose field name is 'health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over', went into the field in 2002 and involved field interviews with more than 12,000 respondents in over 7,000 households. The second wave introduces a nurse visit as well as an interview.

Although there are some exceptions (which will be discussed later), the great majority of our sample have already been interviewed by NatCen on two previous occasions: first as part of the Health Survey of England (HSE) from which we drew our ELSA sample, and then for the first wave of ELSA. Now we will be asking respondents to take part in ELSA for a second time, so this is a particularly important moment in establishing a long-term commitment to the study. We hope to continue to revisit respondents at least every two years so that we can learn how people's lives change into the future.

Over time, the study will allow us to explore many questions, for example:

- How does people's health and level of disability change over time?
- What explains who has good health in later life and who does not?
- When do people retire and how do they plan for their retirement?
- Do people have enough savings to provide for their older age?
- How do people's activities, relationships and quality of life change over time?
- What is the relationship between these different factors?

ELSA is modelled on a similar study in the US (the Health and Retirement Study). A parallel study is being developed in Europe, the Survey of Health, Ageing and Retirement in Europe (some of you will know that NatCen helped with its development). There are also plans to develop similar studies in many other countries of the world, e.g. Canada, Ireland and elsewhere, so ELSA can be seen as part of an international effort to understand ageing and what it means for people. As a result, we will be able to compare experiences across countries and understand how national policies and contexts affect people's lives.

So far, our funding covers two waves of data collection: the survey held in 2002 and the 2004 survey which we are conducting now. Half of the research budget has been provided by the US National Institute on Aging who also fund the Health and Retirement Study mentioned earlier. The remaining funding for the study has been provided by a consortium of UK government departments (Department of Health, Department of Work and Pensions, Office for National Statistics, Department of Environment, Transport and the Regions, Department for Education and Skills, Department of Culture, Media and Sport and HM Treasury).

The study is being carried out by a collaboration between the National Centre, the Department of Epidemiology and Public Health at University College London

(UCL), the Institute for Fiscal Studies (IFS) and academics from Cambridge and Nottingham Universities. The principal investigator in the research team is Professor Sir Michael Marmot, Head of the Department of Epidemiology and Public Health and Director of the International Centre for Health and Society, UCL.

All aspects of the survey, nurse visit and study procedures were piloted in August 2003, and in January 2004.

You (and respondents) can find out more about the study at [www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa/](http://www.natcen.ac.uk/elsa/). Results from the first wave of ELSA fieldwork were released in December last year. A newsletter summarising the findings was sent to all Wave One respondents and to respondents to this year's pilots. Please read the newsletter, which is included in your packs. The full report of the results of Wave One is available at: [www.ifs.org.uk/elsa/](http://www.ifs.org.uk/elsa/). However, you should not give this address to respondents. They will be able to view the report via the NatCen website.

## **1.2 Summary of the survey design**

There are two parts to the survey: an interviewer-administered interview and a visit by a nurse to carry out measurements. Co-operation is entirely voluntary at each stage. Someone may agree to take part in the interviewer stage, but decide not to take part in the nurse visit stage. Since a nurse visit is new to ELSA, we do not know how respondents will react to the nurse stage. However, since many of the respondents have taken part in HSE in the past, most will have been asked to participate in a nurse visit previously, and many will have taken part. The results from the HSE and the Wave 2 pilots suggest that most respondents are willing to take part in the nurse visits and find them a positive aspect of the study.

The interviewer and nurse assigned to a survey point will work together as a team.

An advance letter is sent to each selected address briefly explaining the survey and its purpose. Two other information leaflets given out by the interviewer and the nurse provide the respondent with greater detail.

Fuller details of the sample are given in Section 2. See Sections 4, 5 and 7 for information about associated documents.

## **1.3 The interviewer visit**

Interviews are administered using Computer-Assisted Personal Interviewing (CAPI).

For each household there is a short **Household Questionnaire** that establishes who is resident and collects some basic facts about them and the household. For each selected individual respondent there is an **Individual Questionnaire**, which covers a range of issues including physical health, mental health, economic circumstances etc, and includes a short self-completion section. It is a very long interview, lasting an average of one hour and 45 minutes per person. In effect, this means that in one person sessions, the personal interview takes, on average, one hour and twenty-five minutes. In two-person (concurrent) sessions, they take an average of two hours and five minutes. The length of interviews varies and some respondents will have received very long personal interviews before you visit.

At the end of the interview, the nurse visit is introduced and the interviewer either arranges an appointment for the nurse to visit a few days later or tells the respondent that the nurse will telephone them to arrange the visit.

There are five documents that interviewers give to respondents that you may encounter. The interviewer should have dealt with most of the issues about these documents and so in most cases you will not have to do anything. However, in a small minority of cases the respondent may ask for your help with them. If you send any documents back to the office please make sure that they have the correct serial numbers and person numbers written on them.

1. Interviewer self-completion (**blue**) – Half the respondents will be left with the self-completion questionnaire to fill in after their interview (the other half will complete it during the interview). Most respondents will post these back to the office themselves but if they give it to you, please post it back with other documents but NOT with the NRF.
2. Cheque letter (**white**) – We are giving respondents a £10 cheque at the end of their interview. If they have any problems please tell them to telephone the office.
3. Reminder consent form for links to administrative data (**orange**) – This form is just to remind respondents about the consents they gave us at Wave One. It is for them to keep.
4. New consent form for links to administrative data (**yellow**) – Some respondents may have been left this form to think about. If they have filled it in then please check it is complete and return it to the office (NOT with the NRF). They should keep the white carbon copy.
5. New consent form for linkage to NHS register (**pink**) – same as above.

In the very unlikely event that a respondent wants to withdraw their consent for links to administrative data they should write on a piece of paper (or their copy of the consent form):

- their serial number, check letter, person number
- their full name and address
- ‘I withdraw my consent for NatCen to link my survey data to health and/or financial administrative data’
- their signature and the date.

Please then return this to the office.

At Wave 2 we have introduced an “exit” interview. We will be approaching a close friend or relative of an eligible ELSA respondent who has died since Wave 1 to do an interview about the deceased. The aim of the exit interview is to bring closure to the information collected at ELSA Wave 1. The term “exit” refers to exiting from the study. It is the field name and should not be used when discussing the interview with respondents.

#### **1.4** *The nurse visit*

All **core** sample members are eligible for a nurse visit, except for those conducted by proxy. A nurse will be allocated to each sample point to work with the interviewer.

**The nurse should telephone the respondent in ALL cases before the visit in order to arrange or confirm the appointment and to discuss preparation for the visit.**

The nurse visits the respondent in their home in order to carry out a series of measurements:

- blood pressure
- grip strength – this is a measure of upper body strength, during which the respondent is asked to squeeze a grip gauge up to three times with each hand
- blood samples – fasting if possible
- standing height
- sitting height
- weight
- waist and hip measurement
- lung function – this is a measure of how much air respondents can blow out from their lungs, and is measured using a spirometer
- balance – respondents are asked to stand in three different positions for up to 30 seconds
- leg raise – respondents under 70 years old are asked to lift one foot off the ground for up to 30 seconds
- chair rises – this is a measure of lower body strength, during which respondents are asked to stand up from a firm chair without using their arms. If they succeed, they are asked to stand up and down as quickly as they can for either five rises if they are aged 70 and over, or up to ten rises if aged 69 and under
- saliva samples.

If a cause for medical concern is identified during the nurse visit then the respondent's GP will be notified (if the respondent gives prior permission).

Four of the measures we will be taking are *physical performance measures*: grip strength, balance measures, leg raise and chair rises. Taken together with the gait speed (or timed walk) measure which is carried out during the personal interview, these performance tests provide a very good measure of the respondent's physical well-being and are an excellent way of tracking change in health over time.

### **1.5 Self-completion at end of nurse visit**

A respondent in one in ten households will be asked to complete a self completion questionnaire about their personal beliefs and well-being. This is in addition to the main self-completion that all respondents (except proxies) will be asked to complete during or after the personal interview. The nurse visit questionnaire is about how respondents feel about themselves and their lives. It takes the form of 43 statements which the respondent is asked to agree or disagree with. Completion of this additional booklet is entirely voluntary. As with a CAPI interview, if the respondent is unwilling to answer all these questions, please encourage them to answer the ones they are happy to answer. Please ensure you take a questionnaire to all nurse visits as you won't know if you'll need it until you are prompted at the end of the CAPI to give it to the respondent.

The aim of using the experimental questions (designed by Carol Ryff) in this questionnaire is to help us determine whether a standard measure of mental health

can be successfully included in ELSA without respondents being overloaded, or feeling that questions we ask are repetitive.

## 1.6 Survey materials

The following is a list of documents and equipment you will need for this survey. Before starting work, check that you have received the following supplies.

<b>Document</b>	<b>Colour</b>
Nurse Record Forms (NRFs)	Yellow
Nurse Record Forms B (NRF Bs)	Peach
Sample Summary Sheet	White
Interim appointment record form	Orange
Consent Booklet – nurse	Pink
Consent Booklet – respondent	Green
Grip strength measurement card	Orange
Survey Leaflet	Blue
Nurse leaflet	Lilac
Copy of Genetics leaflet	Green
Measurement Record Card for respondent	Lilac
Frankfort plane card	White
Self completion – Personal beliefs and well being	Lemon
Copy of appointment record card	Orange
Broken Appointment Card	White
Saliva log book	White
Barcode labels	White
Protocol card for Balance Measure and Leg Raise	White
Protocol card for Chair Rise and Grip Strength	White
Stopwatch instructions for split time	White

## Equipment

The equipment that is required for this project is as follows:

- Insertion tape
- Spirometer, cardboard mouthpieces
- Thermometer and probe
- Stadiometer
- Scales
- Stopwatch
- Omron, cuffs
- Gripometer
- Blood equipment
- Saliva equipment

The equipment is described in more detail later in the sections on the measurement protocols.

You will receive new ELSA equipment which will be sent out to your home addresses from Brentwood.

## 2 SAMPLE INFORMATION

### 2.1 *Sample source*

The sample for ELSA was originally drawn from the Health Survey for England (HSE). The HSE is a study conducted jointly by the Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, UCL, and the National Centre for Social Research, on behalf of the Department of Health. The major advantage of the HSE sampling source is that extensive data had already been collected about respondents' health (details of morbidity, lifestyle, diets and blood samples).

The Wave One mainstage sample was selected from three separate years of the HSE (1998, 1999 and 2001) to provide a large, representative sample of the English population aged 50 or over living in private households. Most of the sample were interviewed and had a nurse visit, which included many of the HSE biomedical tests that you know about. They were then interviewed for ELSA between April 2002 and March 2003.

The ELSA sample was issued at a **household** level. Almost 60 percent of households in the sample at Wave One had two people eligible for an ELSA interview while the remaining 40 percent had just one. In other words, in almost all cases there are one or two individuals eligible for interview. In a very small percentage of households there were three or more individuals eligible for interview.

### 2.2 *Sample definition*

There are three different types of respondents who are eligible to take part in the study:

#### Core Sample Member (CM)

- Someone born on or before 29<sup>th</sup> February 1952 who was living within a household which took part in HSE 1998, 1999 or 2001 at the time of the HSE interview and was still living in the household sector within England when they were visited at Wave One. They also took part in Wave One of ELSA.

#### Young Partner (YP)

- A cohabiting spouse or cohabiting partner of a sample member who was living within a household which took part in HSE 1998, 1999 or 2001 at the time of the HSE interview. All Young Partners were born AFTER 29<sup>th</sup> February 1952 (since if they had been born on or before 29<sup>th</sup> February 1952 they would be core members). This means that most of them were aged under-50 when we attempted to interview them at Wave One (though some may have turned 50).

#### New Partner (NP)

- Someone who is the cohabiting spouse or cohabiting partner of a sample member at the time they are interviewed who either

- (a) joined the household since the HSE (many of whom were interviewed at Wave One) – **NP1s**, or
  - (b) joined the household since the ELSA Wave One interview – **NP2s**.
- New Partners can be of any age.

Core Partner (CP)

- Someone who was living in the household at HSE and was born on or before 29<sup>th</sup> February 1952 but did not take part at Wave One because they refused or were away. They are still eligible to take part because they are a partner of a core member who took part at Wave One.

**Only core sample members are eligible for a nurse visit.** The interviewer will explain this, but you may need to confirm to spouses or partners that they are not eligible for a visit.

### 2.3 Sample information

The sample will be issued monthly. There will be eight monthly periods named EL1 to EL8. The point sizes will vary. Nurses will have the month plus a 3-week mop-up period (interviewers will stop interviewing one week earlier).

#### Serial numbers

The household serial numbers (serialW2) have 9 digits, and the individual serial number has 11 digits (the 9 digits from the household number, plus 2 digits for person number).

#### Address and information labels

There are TWO NRF labels. The first gives you the serial number, check letter, issue month, point number, household address, telephone number (where available), date of last interview, and ELSA wave 1 household outcome code.

The outcome codes are as follows:

- “110 Fully prod:per” – fully productive household, all interviews in person
- “120 Fully prod: per/prxy” – fully productive household, at least one interview by proxy
- “210 Partially prod” – partially productive household

Label format:

Example:

SERIAL	ISSUE	MTH	POINT
ADDR1	ADDR2	ADDR3	PCODE
TELE	Date of last interview		
Wave 1 HH outcome			

SN:19997000111 G	PT:23
45 River Close	
Earswick	
York	
N Yorkshire	
YO32 9PY	
0113 555678	
Tues 14 May 2002	

The second NRF label lists the field area, all the names of the sample members in the household, their person numbers, date of births (where available), their sample type (indicated as being either core members (CM), young partners (YP) or new partners (NP)), and their interview status at Wave 1. The interviewer will tell you of any changes to any of the household information when they phone you. There is a space on the NRF for you to note down any important bits of information from them.

Past interview outcome status is identified on the label in the following way:

- INT if the respondent did an ELSA interview, or if the household was not issued at ELSA Wave One and the respondent did an HSE interview and agreed to be re-contacted for a health survey.
- P.INT if the respondent did an ELSA interview by proxy.
- NOT INT where no individual ELSA interview was conducted, or no HSE interview was conducted if the household was not issued at ELSA Wave One.
- REF if they did a Wave one interview and did *not* agree to be re-contacted.
- DECEASED if we know from administrative records that the individual has died.

Label format:

SERIAL CKL	Field area
PERSON No. Title Name Surname Type DoB W1Outcome	
PERSON No. Title Name Surname Type DoB W1Outcome	

Example:

SN:12222211 X	FA: 3
01 Mr George Brown CM 1/10/1936 Int	
02 Mrs Winifred Brown CM 21/11/1932 Int	

### 3 NOTIFYING THE POLICE

The interviewer with whom you will be working will notify the police about the survey and inform them that the two of you will be working in the area. Your interviewer partner will need to collect some details about your car so that (s)he can fill in the necessary details on the letter to be left with the police. Hopefully s/he will have already contacted you.

You can then tell respondents that the police know all about the survey. Some respondents find this very reassuring, and some will telephone the police to check that you are a genuine survey worker before agreeing to see you.

### 4 LIAISING WITH YOUR INTERVIEWER PARTNER

You and your interviewer partner will need to work very closely together, so a good working relationship is essential. **The interviewer has been told to make contact with you to set this up before they begin interviewing respondents.** (See Appendix 1 for a summary of this procedure).

The formal lines of communication between you and your interviewer are described in the next section. The informal lines are equally important. An important part of the interviewer's job is to keep you fully informed about the outcomes of all his/her attempts to interview people, whether or not they are productive. We want to minimise the length of time between the interview and your visit. **You will therefore need to talk to each other frequently by telephone.** Make sure you let your interviewer know the best times to get in touch with you.

Your interviewer has been given an **Appointment Diary** covering the relevant survey period. You should go through this together before you start work.

You should decide together with the interviewer how you are going to make appointments for your visits, i.e. if the interviewer is going to make them for you or if you are going to make them with the respondent by telephone after the interview.

If the interviewer is going to make the appointments for you, let him/her know the days and times on which you are available to see respondents. Make sure you keep a careful note of the times you give her/him. You will need to liaise frequently in order to update this information. **Never** put the interviewer in the situation where (s)he makes an appointment for you in good faith, only to discover you have a prior commitment. Give the interviewer as much flexibility as possible for making appointments. People lead very busy lives nowadays. They are doing something to help us and may not give it the greatest priority.

The interviewer has been asked to give you good warning of all appointments made for you. Make sure the interviewer knows the best times to reach you by telephone. If you want more than two days' notice, tell the interviewer so that she/he can phone through other appointments too.

If you are making the appointments yourself then it may also be helpful for you to give the interviewer a rough idea about your availability so that he/she can let the respondent know.

The interviewer will do everything possible to provide you with an even flow of work and to minimise the number of visits you have to make to an area, but this will be limited by respondent availability. Discuss with the interviewer the time you will need to travel to the area so that he/she can take account of this. Plan together how best to make this appointment system work.

You may also wish to discuss practical details such as parking arrangements.

Where possible, you should be able to see all eligible core sample members in a household one after the other on the same visit. Each visit we expect will take around 1 hour per person. You will of course also need some time to introduce yourself to the household and generally set up equipment. The duration of the visit is likely to vary slightly from nurse to nurse and with respondents of different ages.

Information about each household and details of any appointments that have been made will be passed to you by the interviewer by telephone, and the interviewer-nurse link will also be established. The interviewer will complete each NRF for you, and send on when completed. **However, they will also phone through after each**

**interview as well.** You will have a Nurse Summary Sheet detailing all the households that have been issued in your area and where nurse visits may be required. Please use this to keep an eye on how your cases are going.

#### **4.1 Nurse Summary Sheet**

You will have a nurse summary sheet detailing all the NRFs that you should expect to receive from the interviewers. Please keep this near to your telephone, along with interim appointment record forms. Each time an interviewer phones through an appointment to you, you may wish to open an interim form and complete as directed.

At the end of your assignment, if there are any households for which you have not received a NRF, please call the interviewer to check what the outcome was on those addresses – it is likely that they were not covered by the interviewer, and this information will be useful to us.

The nurse summary sheet has the following information:

- Point number.
- Serial number, address and telephone number of each household.
- Names of those people eligible for nurse visit at point of issue.

For each household you will need to enter:

- The date you received the details from the interviewer
- The outcome for the household:
  - A – At least one person agreed to the nurse visit
  - B – Eligible respondents were identified but no nurse visit was required
  - C – The interviewer did not identify any eligible respondents for the nurse visit
- The date of your appointment and the number of people you measured
- The date(s) you posted the documents back and transmitted the data

#### **4.2 The Nurse Record Form (NRF)**

Interviewers are required to complete a Nurse Record Form (NRF) for each issued address (regardless of whether a nurse visit is required).

The Nurse Record Form is both the interviewers' and your responsibility. The interviewer will complete the first two pages. It is your responsibility to fill out the other pages.

On the grid on page 2 the nurse visit status will either be 1, 2 or 3. **Contact only those persons for whom code 1** has been indicated – these are the household members who agreed both to be interviewed and to see you. Code 2 indicates the person was interviewed but refused to see you. Code 3 indicates the person could not be interviewed (they were mentally incapable, refused, etc). In the column to the left of each person's name is their **Person Number**. Whenever you enter a serial number for that person you must use this and only this Person Number.

Occasionally you will find that someone in the household with code 2 (Refused nurse) or code 3 (No interview) decides they want to co-operate after all. If they are code 2 (i.e. refused nurse visit) you **can** take the measurements, as these people have

already completed a full interview. Make a note on the NRF explaining what has happened. If they are code 3 (i.e. not interviewed) you **cannot** take any measurements. Under no circumstances must you measure an individual before an interviewer has completed a full interview on CAPI. Some people in the household may have been interviewed by the interviewer but are younger partners or new partners and so are not eligible for a nurse visit (these people will be indicated on your NRF labels). It is not advisable to conduct any measurements for these people, however, if you feel it is appropriate and safe you may conduct some measurements (e.g. height, weight, physical performance) for them if they adamantly want them, as a gesture of good will. Record what action you took on the NRF, but do not record the information in the CAPI.

You should complete the rest of this form as you begin contacting the address:

- Enter the calls record as normal at question 8.
- Enter the outcome code for all eligible for nurse visit at question 9.
- Enter the reason for refusal at question 10 (very important for us to understand).
- Enter details of broken appointments and other unproductives at question 11.
- For all productive households – enter the number of consent booklets obtained, and whether you left any self completions at question 12.
- Code the final household outcome code at question 13, and transfer it to the box on the top right of the front page of the NRF.

If there was more than one sample member in the household and one of them has moved to a different address then the interviewer will trace the person who has moved and, if it is in their area, they will attempt to interview them at their new address. In these cases the interviewer will open a '**NRF B**' and will send you a NRF B in the post. In the CAPI program this new household will have the same serial number as the first household but with a '2' at the end rather than a '1'. The **peach** NRF B is almost identical to the **yellow** NRF. The only difference is that it won't have NRF labels on the front so the details of the sample members will be written on by the interviewer. You will not be issued with new barcode labels for the person who has moved so use the same ones you were issued with. You may want to cross through the address on the top left of the sheet for your information.

Return completed NRFs and NRF Bs to the office.

See Section 10.1 for more details about the NRF and how to complete it.

### **4.3** *The interim appointment form*

It is possible that you or the interviewer will set up appointments earlier than the NRF can arrive and before the information is transferred across the link. In these cases you will need to complete an interim appointment form. The interviewer will tell you the following information that you will need to write on to this form.

Complete the following details on page 1:

- Enter the household serial number, name, address, and telephone number.
- Enter the date the information was phoned through by the interviewer, and the date of the household interview.
- Write any additional useful information (e.g. parking information).

Complete grid on page 2 for each respondent eligible for a nurse visit:-

- enter their Person Number
- enter their full name and title (eg Mr. John Anderson)
- circle a code to indicate their sex (1= male, 2=female)
- enter their age at the date of the Household interview
- enter nurse status:
  - ring code 1 if that person agreed to see the nurse
  - ring code 2 if that person refused to see the nurse
  - ring code 3 if that person was not interviewed – no visit needed
- enter the appointment date and time (if appropriate)

Always make sure you **read back the person number and name** to the interviewer so that you are both sure the information has been transferred correctly, and check against your nurse summary sheet. It is essential that this part of the process is completed successfully.

## 5 WHAT THE RESPONDENT KNOWS ABOUT YOUR VISIT

The interviewer introduces your visit at the end of the interview by reading out the following:

*There are two parts to this survey. You have just helped with us with the first part. We hope you will also help us with the second part, which is a visit by a qualified nurse to collect more medical information and carry out some measurements. (I would like to make an appointment for the nurse to come round and explain some more about what is required. May I suggest some dates and times and see when you are free?)*

The box below shows the general points given to interviewers to help them answer questions about your visit.

<i>Information you may need to know if the respondent asks you questions about the</i>
--

*nurse visit*

- It is an integral part of the survey - the information the nurse collects will make the survey even more valuable.
- The nurse is highly qualified (Grade E or above). They have all had extensive experience, working in hospitals, health centres etc, and have also been especially trained for this survey.
- If the respondent wants, they will be given the results of the measurements carried out by the nurse. If they like, this information will also be sent to their GP.
- They are not committing themselves in advance to agreeing to everything the nurse wants to do. The nurse will ask separately for permission to do each test - so the respondent can decide at the time if they do not want to help with a particular one.
- Their local medical ethics committee has been consulted and has given their approval to the survey.

If a person is reluctant, the interviewer is asked to stress that all they wish to do is arrange for you to go and explain what is involved. They point out that by agreeing to see you they are not necessarily agreeing to take part in all, or any, of the tests. We hope your general professional approach will convince nervous respondents more effectively than can an interviewer.

Unlike other studies, all respondents will be aware that they will be invited to give us a blood sample before the nurse visit. There are two reasons for this. Firstly, respondents will be asked to fast (if appropriate) before giving blood and, as you will only be visiting them once, they need to be told about this beforehand. Secondly, two of the blood samples are taken for the purpose of genetics research and so we are required by law to give respondents enough time to decide whether they want to give consent for their DNA to be extracted from a blood sample you may take.

At the end of the interview each respondent is given an appointment record card describing preparation needed for your visit (see below), and a green Genetics Leaflet which explains the genetics research. The interviewer will also give each eligible respondent a lilac Nurse Leaflet which briefly describes the purpose of your visit.

### **5.1 *Appointment Record Card***

The interviewer will give each eligible respondent an orange Appointment Record Card. This confirms the appointment time (if appropriate) and reminds them that we would like them to avoid eating, smoking, drinking alcohol or doing any vigorous exercise for 30 minutes before you arrive. It also asks them to wear light, non-restrictive clothing.

A copy of the Appointment Record Card is in your workpack for your information. You will need to go through it very carefully with the respondent when you telephone them before your visit (see section 6.1).

Since we are asking some respondents to fast for the blood samples, the card also gives information about what they can eat on the day of their appointment. If the nurse visit is before 1pm, the respondents are asked not to eat or drink anything (apart from water) on the day of the appointment. If the nurse appointment is between 1pm and 6pm, the respondents can have a light breakfast of items listed on the Appointment Record Card before 8am but are not to eat or drink anything (except water) after 1pm. If the appointment is after 6pm, they are instructed that they can have a usual breakfast and a light lunch of items listed on the Appointment Record Card before 1pm. They are asked not to eat or drink anything (except water) after 1pm.

If you ask a respondent to fast, you should tell them to drink water during the fast.

## 6 WHAT TO DO ON INITIAL CONTACT

### 6.1 *Telephoning respondents before the visit*

Your initial contact with respondents should be by telephone. You should keep your introduction short and concise. Some of the people you approach may be hesitant about continuing with the survey, and if you say too much you may simply put them off. The general rule is keep your initial introduction brief, simple, clear and to the immediate point. An example of how to introduce yourself on the telephone is given below.

Say who you are:

*"I am a nurse called ...."*

Say who you work for:

*"I work for The National Centre for Social Research"*

Remind respondents about their interview:

*" A few days ago you saw an interviewer about the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing and (s)he told you that I would like to come and see you." (Remind respondent of appointment, if already set up by the interviewer).*

For most people this will be enough. They will be happy to talk to you about preparations for your visit and all you will have to do is explain what your visit will cover and what you want them to do. Others will be reluctant and need further persuading. Build on what has gone before. Be prepared to answer questions about the survey. Some respondents may have forgotten what the interviewer told them about the survey's purpose or what your visit involves. You should therefore be prepared to explain again the purpose of the study and about your visit. You may also need to answer questions, for example, about how the household was sampled. Some points you might need to cover are shown in the following box.

- *who you are working for* – the National Centre for Social Research (NatCen), University College London (UCL) and the Institute for Fiscal Studies (IFS)
- *who is funding the study* – half of the funding is from various government

departments and the other half is from the National Institute on Aging in the United States.

- *why the study is being carried out* – (see Section 1).
- *what you are going to do* – (see Section 1.4).
- *how the respondent was selected* (see Section 2) Once a household has been selected, we cannot replace it with another. Otherwise we would no longer have a proper sample of the population and would not be able to learn about change by following the same families.
- *the confidential nature of the study* – individual information is not released to anyone outside the research team.
- *how much time you need* – this varies a bit but it is best to allow around 60 minutes for each person plus another 15 minutes per household (to put equipment away and so on).

Only elaborate if you need to, introducing one new idea at a time. Do not give a full explanation right away - you will not have learned what is most likely to convince that particular person to take part. Do not quote points from the boxes except in response to questions raised by the respondent.

**Be careful to avoid calling your visit a "health check".** One of the most common reasons given for respondents refusing to see the nurse is "I don't need a medical check - I have just had one". Avoid getting yourself into this situation. You are asking the respondent to help with a survey.

If the respondent is willing for you to carry out your visit you will need to go through the appointment record card with them and do the following:

1. Confirm or arrange the date and time of your appointment.
2. Explain that they should not eat, smoke, drink alcohol or do any vigorous exercise for 30 minutes before your visit.
3. Ask them to wear light, non-restrictive clothing and to avoid wearing thick belts or long garments that will prevent you from seeing their feet (this is important for the physical performance measures).
4. Find out if they are eligible to have a blood sample taken by asking if they:
  - have a clotting or bleeding disorder
  - have ever had a fit / convulsion
  - are taking anticoagulant drugs (such as Warfarin, protamine or acenocoumarol)
  - (are pregnant).
5. If they are eligible to have a blood sample taken then you will need to determine if they are eligible to fast. Respondents will NOT be eligible to fast if they:
  - are aged 80 or over
  - are diabetic and on treatment
  - are malnourished or otherwise unfit to fast in your judgement (One of the pieces of information you may want from the interviewer when they telephone you after their visit is if the respondent seems particularly frail).

If they are eligible and willing to fast, then you will need to explain the fasting rules (see section 5.1). Emphasise that they can take their medication as normal.

## 6.2 *Being persuasive*

It is essential to persuade reluctant people to take part, if at all possible.

You will need to tailor your arguments to the particular household, meeting their objections or worries with reassuring and convincing points. This is a skill that will develop as you get used to visiting respondents. If you would like to discuss ways of persuading people to take part, speak to your Nurse Supervisor (or your Area Manager).

## 6.3 *Broken appointments*

If someone is out when you arrive for an appointment, it may be a way of telling you they have changed their mind about helping you. On the other hand, they may have simply forgotten all about it or had to go out for an urgent or unexpected reason.

In any case, make every effort to re-contact the person and fix another appointment. Start by leaving a **Broken Appointment Card** at the house saying that you are sorry that you missed them and that you will call back when you are next in the area. Add a personal note to the card. Try telephoning them and find out what the problem is. Allay any misconceptions and fears. Make them feel they are important to the success of the survey. A chat with your interviewer partner might help. (S)he might be able to give you an indication of what the particular respondent's fears might be, and may have notes that would tell you when would be the most likely time to find the respondent at home. Keep on trying until you receive a definite outcome of some sort.

## 6.4 *The number of calls you must make*

You are asked to keep a full account of each call you make at a household on the **Nurse Record Form**. Complete a column for each call you make, include telephone calls to the household as well as personal visits. Note the exact time (using the 24-hour clock) you made the call, and the date on which you made it. In the notes section keep a record of the outcome of each call - label your notes with the call number.

You must make at least **4 personal visits per respondent** before you can give up. Each of these calls must be at different times of the day and on different days of the week. However, we hope you will make a lot more than four calls to get a difficult-to-track down respondent. If you fail to make contact, keep trying.

What you might mention when introducing the study:

- \* It is a national study (half funded by the National Institute on Aging and half by the British Government).
- \* ELSA is a very important study.
- \* It will allow us to understand people's experiences of getting older and how services should accommodate the changing population's needs.
- \* It is hoped that interviews will be carried out every two years with a nurse visit every four years (funds are not yet available for Wave 3)

and onwards). However the study remains voluntary and the respondent can make a choice at each occasion.

- \* It will provide the government with accurate and up-to-date information on the health of the older population, and an understanding of the relationship to people's economic and social circumstances.
- \* The information from the survey cannot be obtained from any other source.
- \* The information is available to all political parties.
- \* The information will be needed by whichever government is in office.
- \* Results will be published and reported in the national press. Findings will be sent to respondents. No individuals can be identified.
- \* The survey covers the whole population, including people who have little contact with the health services as well as people who make more use of them.
- \* To get an accurate picture, we must talk to all the sorts of people who are aged 50 and over – the healthy and the unhealthy, those who use the NHS and those who use private medicine, and those who like the current government's policies and those who do not.
- \* Services for the elderly are very important and without their help in this survey valuable information for planning these will be lost.
- \* Each person selected to take part in the survey is vital to the success of the survey. Their household has been selected. No one else can be substituted for them.
- \* No-one outside the research team will know who has been interviewed, or will be able to identify an individual's results.

## 7 CARRYING OUT THE NURSE VISIT

### 7.1 *Who to visit*

You can only interview and measure respondents who have completed a full individual interview with the interviewer and who are core sample members. Respondents must have completed this interview **before** you see them.

### 7.2 *Nurse visit documents*

The Nurse Schedule is on computer (CAPI). As well as the computer schedule, you will use four other documents during the interview itself: the office consent booklet, the respondent's consent booklet, the measurement record card, and the grip strength record card. The Office Consent Booklet contains the forms the respondent has to sign to give written consent for:

- blood pressure readings to be sent to their GP
- lung function readings to be sent to their GP

- blood samples to be taken
- blood test results to be sent to their GP
- blood sample for storage for future analysis
- blood sample for DNA extraction and storage
- saliva samples to be collected

### 7.3 *General tips on use of the documents and computer program*

Read out the questions in the Nurse Schedule **exactly as worded**. This is very important to ensure comparability of answers. You may think you could improve on the wording. Resist the temptation to do so. Enter the code number beside the response appropriate to that respondent indicating the answers received or the action you took.

Some questions take the form of an instruction to you to enter something without needing to ask the respondent a question. In most cases these instructions have "NURSE:" written at the beginning of them.

When you get a response to a question which makes you feel that the respondent has not really understood what you were asking or the response is ambiguous, repeat the question. If necessary, ask the respondent to say a bit more about their response.

### 7.4 *Preparing the documents/computer*

**Before you leave home**, you should connect your computer to the modem (separate instructions about this are provided) and pick up any work which is ready for you. To ensure that the information from the interviewer has been transferred onto your computer, you should view the household schedule(s) for the household(s) that you intend to visit on that trip. If the interviewer's information has been successfully transferred, the computer will show you the information about the members of that household, and you can go ahead with that household. If the information has not been transferred electronically, it will ask you if you want to enter the information manually. It is better to wait until the information is transferred electronically, but if you have an imminent appointment, you will need to enter it manually from the NRF or Interim Appointment Record. Entering the data manually will take several minutes, so you should do this before you leave home, or at least before you enter the respondent's household.

If there is a household with two sample members in it and one of them has moved to a new address and the information has not been transferred in time for your visit then you will need to open a NRF B in the CAPI. To do this:

- Go into the address menu and select the original household serial number and press enter.
- Use the 'down' arrow key to highlight the link 'Hhold? [Open new Hhold questionnaire?]' and press enter.
- Enter '2' when asked for the household number.
- The check letter will be one higher than for household 1 (ie if it was 'G' for household 1, it will be 'H' for household 2).

When you arrive at the household, you should enter the household schedule and check that it is the right one by looking at the serial number and/or viewing the

information about the household members. You should also check carefully that you enter the respondent's correct serial number on all the documents.

### **7.5 *Introducing your measurement tasks***

The interviewer will have introduced your visit, but has been told to give only a brief outline of what it is about. (S)he will have told respondents that you are the best person to explain what your visit is about.

So, at the beginning of your visit before you make any measurements, you will need to explain what you hope to do during your visit and to reassure nervous respondents that every stage is optional.

If the respondent wishes, they and their GPs will be given their blood pressure and lung function readings. If they consent to giving us a blood sample, they will be given the results of the blood test (by letter) and these can also be sent to their GP if they wish.

## **8 THE CONSENT BOOKLETS**

**Never** prepare the Consent Booklet in advance of your visit. There is a serious danger that you will use the wrong one for the wrong person. It is all too easy to do in the stress of the moment.

Use a blue pen when completing the booklets, and ensure that signatures are always in pen, not pencil. Use capital letters and write clearly. Do not erase any of the personal information. If necessary, cross out errors and rewrite so that any corrections can be seen.

Consent Booklet – Personal Copy: Write the serial number, check letter, person number and name on the front of the booklet.

Consent Booklet - Office Copy: Write the address at which you are interviewing in the box at the top of the Consent Booklet. Stick a serial number barcode in the appropriate box. Be sure you use the correct barcode for the respondent – check their name and date of birth on the sheet of barcode labels. Accuracy is vital.

Enter your Nurse Number at Item 1 and the date on which you are interviewing at Item 2.

***Complete Items 3 to 5 before you start using the computer to collect the information from the respondent.***

At Item 3 record the **full** name of the respondent. We will be using this to write a thank-you letter to the respondent giving them their test results (if they wish), and to write to their GP (with their permission) to give him/her their test results. The name by which the GP knows the respondent is checked, if appropriate, during the interview. This may, for example, be a maiden name.

Ask the respondent for his/her date of birth and enter this in the boxes provided at Item 5. The respondent may say they have already given it to the interviewer. Explain that you have been asked to get it again as it will help ensure the right documents get put together.

*Items 6 to 8 are completed during the course of your interview.*

At Item 6 you write in the name, address and telephone number of the respondent's GP, if the respondent gives consent for blood pressure, lung function and/or blood test results to be sent to the GP. If a respondent does not know the name of her/his GP, leave the top line blank (otherwise the computer will send out nonsense letters like *Dear Dr. Ash Grove Practice*).

Fill in the full name and address of the GP on each individual's Consent Booklet for a household, even when all members have the same GP. Each individual is treated separately once they reach the office.

At Item 7 record how complete you believe the GP address to be. If you are sure that a letter posted out of the area to that address would arrive, then ring code 1.

Item 8 is very important. Throughout the visit you record here the outcome of your requests for permission for:

- a) The blood pressure results to be sent to the GP
- b) Lung function results to be sent to the GP
- c) Blood samples to be taken
- d) Blood sample results to be sent to their GP
- e) Blood sample results to be sent to the respondent
- f) Blood sample storage for future analysis
- g) Blood sample for DNA extraction and storage
- h) Saliva samples to be collected

By the end of the interview every respondent should have **EIGHT** codes ringed at Item 8.

There are SEVEN different Consent Forms contained in the Consent Booklets:

- 1 Blood pressure information to GP.
- 2 Lung function results to GP.
- 3 a) Blood sample to be taken.
- 3 b) Natcen to inform GP of blood result.
- 3 c) Remaining blood to be stored for future analysis.
- 4 Extraction and storage of DNA for use in future medical research studies.
- 5 Saliva to be tested for cortisol and future medical research studies of causes, diagnoses, treatment or outcome of disease.

The CAPI will prompt you to complete these different consent forms as you go through the nurse schedule. You will be prompted to:

- ask the respondent to read, sign and date the office copy;
- to tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy;
- to circle the appropriate consent code on the front of the office copy of the Consent Booklet.

The Consent Booklet also contains a venepuncture check-list and two despatch notes for the blood samples. These are described in section 13D.

## 9 THE NURSE SCHEDULE

### 9.1 *Organising the interview*

Before setting out to carry out any interviews, you must check to make sure that you have received the household information through manual input. You will not be able to conduct the interview without having done this.

You should also have contacted the respondent(s) before visiting the household to establish whether bloods are likely to be taken and whether he/she should fast (see Section 5.1).

When you arrive at the household, before starting to carry out your interview, check whether any of the people you have come to see have eaten, smoked, drunk alcohol or done any vigorous exercise in the last 30 minutes. This could affect their measurements. If someone has done any of these things, arrange to see other members of the household first in order to give time for the effects to wear off. In addition you will be asked by the CAPI to check whether the respondent has fasted for the specified time for the blood test.

Similarly if someone in the household wants to eat, smoke or drink alcohol in the near future (eg one person is going out and wants a snack before they leave) then try to measure that person first. Adapt your measurement order to the needs of the household.

You may feel that if you try to rearrange things in this way, you are likely to lose an interview with someone you may not be able to contact again. In such cases, give priority to getting the interview, rather than rearranging the order.

### 9.2 *Getting into the Nurse Schedule*

Once you have switched your computer on and entered the keyword, you will see the Project Menu on the screen. The Project Menu will look something like this:

CODE	PROJECT	PERIOD
1	P8158	PRACTICE
2	P8158	

To get into the nurse schedule, type in the number next to P8158 without practice written next to it (in the above example, you would type in <2> and press <Enter>). You will then be asked to enter the password for ELSA, which will be given to you at the briefing. This done, you will be taken to the Action Menu, where you should type <I> if you want to enter information.

You will then see the Address Menu, which shows the serial numbers of all the addresses in your sample point, and will look like this (but longer):

ADDRESS MENU					
Survey: P8158					
SERIAL	NOTES	STATUS	OUTC	DONE	RET
000001011			00		
000001021			00		
000001031			00		
000001041			00		

Using the arrow keys, move the highlight bar until it rests on the household in question, then press <Enter>. The highlight bar will start off on the first address, which in the above example would be serial number 000001011. If you wanted to work on, say, serial number 000001041, you would press your down arrow three times then press <Enter>.

The next menu you will see is the Household Menu, which, for the example serial number given above (000001041), would look like this:

HOUSEHOLD MENU					
Survey: P8158			Area: 000 Addr: 00104		
HHOLD	NOTES	STATUS	OUTC	DONE	
HHOLD1			3	00	
HHOLD?	[OPEN NEW HHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE]				

Just press <Enter> to get into Household 1.

Then you will get a screen that asks you to enter the check letter, which you will find on the NRF label.

You are now in the nurse schedule and ready to start entering data.

If you want to practice at home before 'going live', at the Project menu you should type in the number next to the P8158 Practice slot (in the above example, this would be number <1>) and press <Enter>. Then follow the instructions as above. Some 'dummy' households have been put into this slot for you to practice on (See Section 9.8).

### **9.3 Household information**

The household information should be checked or completed before making the visit.

The first thing you may be asked to do is to enter the first line of the address.

#### ***ScrOut***

This screen will be displayed when entering details manually from the interim appointment form.

#### ***HHDate***

This is necessary to allow the computer to calculate the respondent's age at the time of the interviewer visit, as this is the age that dictates which sections of the schedule apply. You will find this date at Q.3 on the NRF.

#### ***Intro - OC***

This set of questions will appear if you have to enter this information manually. You will be asked to enter the data found on page 2 of the interim record form, i.e. person number, name, sex, age and outcome of interviewer visit. From this information, the computer will work out how many individual schedules are required, and which questions should be asked of each individual.

***It is important that you enter the individuals in ascending order of person number. Otherwise, you will find it very confusing to find your way around the computer program.***

#### ***More***

At the end of the information for each individual, the computer will ask you if there is anyone else who was seen by the interviewer. If you enter 'yes', another row on the household grid will be created for you to complete. If you enter 'no', that signifies that you have entered details of all eligible persons in that household.

If, after entering 'no' at *More*, you realise that there are other household members to be added, you can do this by pressing <End> then the Up Arrow key, and changing *More* from 'no' to 'yes'.

#### ***OpenDisp***

This will summarise the information that you have entered, so that you can check it is correct before proceeding. Note that it will only display information about

individuals who were interviewed by the interviewer, as these are the only individuals who *you* can interview.

For all individuals who were seen by the interviewer, *OpenDisp* shows the person number, name, sex, age, and whether or not a nurse visit was agreed.

### *SchDisp*

In addition to the details given at *OpenDisp*, this gives you the schedule number for each respondent. Once you have checked the grid at *SchDisp*, press <Ctrl+Enter> to bring up the Parallel Blocks screen (see Section 9.7), from which you can either exit the household (by pressing <Alt+Q>), or select an individual schedule (by highlighting the schedule and pressing <Enter>), or go into the admin block (see section 9.6).

## **9.4 Individual information**

The individual information should be collected when you are in the household.

### *Info*

If the respondent has already agreed to a nurse visit, this question will check that you wish to interview him/her. You should code 'yes' if you want to carry on with the interview straight away, and 'no' if the respondent has changed his/her mind about being interviewed. If neither of these options apply, you should press <Ctrl + Enter> and select one of the other individual schedules.

### *RefInfo*

If the respondent did not agree to a nurse visit, you still have to enter a small amount of information. This is because people sometimes change their minds about seeing the nurse, once they see other household members being measured. If a 'refused' respondent does have a change of heart, code 'yes', and the schedule will continue. If you code 'no', you will be taken right to the end of the schedule.

### *StrtNur/NurDate/DateOK*

The start time and date are necessary because the computer's internal time is not always right. The date is also used to check the respondent's age.

### *NDoBD - DispAge*

These questions act as a check that you are in the right schedule, and that you have recorded the respondent's date of birth correctly.

## **B. Blood Pressure**

### *BPMod-BPOffer*

Everyone (except those who are pregnant) is eligible for blood pressure measurements. The protocol in Section 13B explains how to take blood pressure readings. You will be taking three readings.

**BPCnst** - If you code 'refused' here, the computer will skip you past the measurement. You should code 'unable' if the respondent is prepared to co-operate, but for some reason it is not possible to take the measurement (eg the Omron is broken or there is some physical reason). In either case, you will be asked to record the reason.

**ConSubX** - Blood pressure can be higher than normal immediately after eating, smoking, drinking alcohol or taking vigorous exercise. This is why respondents are asked to avoid doing these for 30 minutes before you arrive. As already suggested (in section 9.1) if you can juggle respondents within a household around to avoid having to break this "half-hour" rule, do so. But sometimes this will not be possible and you will have to take their blood pressure within this time period - in which case enter all the codes that apply.

**OMRONNo** - Always note down the *National Centre* serial number for the Omron you are using. Sometimes we identify an equipment problem and wish to be able to track down all readings that have been taken using the particular piece of equipment.

**CufSize** - See Section 13B for how to select the correct cuff size. If you have a particularly large respondent and the large adult cuff is too small, contact your Nurse Supervisor. She holds a small stock of "thigh" cuffs which can be used to take the blood pressure of very large people. These are used on the arm in the same way as the ordinary cuffs. If you use one of these cuffs, record in the CAPI *Extra large adult cuff* used by opening a memo. If the respondent has a very small arm then you may use a small cuff and record this in a memo in the CAPI.

***AirTemp*** - (See also Section 13A)

Blood pressure can be affected by air temperature. For this reason, we wish to measure the air temperature in the room at the time blood pressure is being taken. You are supplied with a thermometer and probe. Section 13A contains the full protocol.

Wait until you have got your respondent resting with their blood pressure cuff on. Then set up the thermometer on a surface close to where they are sitting. Immediately prior to taking blood pressure, record the temperature. Then switch the thermometer off so that the battery does not run flat.

Remember to check that the thermometer has reached its final reading. It can take several minutes to do this if it is, say, moved from a cold car to a warm house.

If the air temperature is not within the specified range (15-25°C), please try to alter it - perhaps by opening or closing windows and/or doors.

***BPReady*** - This instruction reminds you of the five minute wait, and to check that the 'Ready to measure' symbol is lit before taking the readings. It also reminds you that during the wait you can prepare the documents, and equipment if appropriate, for the rest of Nurse Visit. The documents are:

- Consent booklet - office copy
- Consent booklet - respondent copy
- Grip strength measurement card

- Measurement record card
- Saliva home log book (but only for respondents under 80)
- Nurse self-completion (have this to hand, but do not complete the details unless you are prompted to leave a copy).

**BPread** - Record the blood pressure readings in the order shown on the screen. Double check each entry as you make it to ensure you have correctly entered the reading. If you have got to this point and then become aware that you are not going to be able to get a reading after all, you should enter '996' then press <End>. This will automatically enter '999' in each box, to save you having to type it in 12 times.

**YNoBP** - If you did not get any full readings, you are asked to enter one of three codes. Code 1 should be used if you attempted to take a blood pressure measurement but were unsuccessful. Use code 2 if you did not attempt to take blood pressure for reasons other than a refusal. If you got a refusal, use code 3.

**NAttBPD** - If you failed to get a reading, or you only managed to obtain one or two readings, enter a code to show what the problem was. If necessary, write in full details at *OthNBP*.

**DifBPC** - Code whether the readings were obtained without problem, or whether any problems were experienced.

**GPreGB, GPSEND, ConsFrm1** - If you obtained at least one blood pressure reading, you are asked to collect details of the respondent's GP. If the person agrees to the results going to their GP, turn to the second page of the Consent Booklet (**Consent Form 1 - Blood Pressure to GP**). Explain you have to get written consent in order to send the blood pressure readings. Fill in the respondent's name at the top of the form. Ask the respondent to read, sign and date the form. Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy.

Then turn to the front of the Consent Booklet and ring consent code 01. Ask the respondent for the name, address and telephone number of their GP. If possible, obtain the postcode. Record this at items 6 and 7 of the Consent Booklet (if you have not already done so). If your respondent does not know their GP's full address and/or postcode, look it up in the relevant telephone directory later (public libraries hold telephone directories for the whole country). Do your best to get hold of the phone number as well - including the local area code. You may find it useful to keep a notebook containing the address details of local GPs given by previous respondents, as if you are working in the same area, you will almost certainly come across several people with the same GP, and this will save you having to keep looking up the same GP's details if a respondent cannot give them to you.

**BPOffer** - Offer the respondent his/her blood pressure readings. If (s)he would like them, enter them on the Measurement Record Card (MRC), which you will have in your work packs. Remember to fill in the details on the front of the MRC including your name and the date of the nurse visit. If a respondent has a raised blood pressure you must give her/him advice based on the result. This will be calculated by the computer and will appear on the screen for you to read out exactly as written. Write any advice given onto the MRC.

It is not the purpose of this survey to provide respondents with medical advice. Nevertheless, many respondents will ask you what their blood pressure readings mean. Section 13B contains detailed guidelines on how to inform respondents about their blood pressure readings. Make sure you are very familiar with this guidance. We wish it to be strictly followed. It is very important that as little anxiety as possible is caused, but at the same time we have a duty to advise people to see their GPs if their blood pressure is raised.

### **C. Grip Strength**

#### ***MMGSWil***

The preamble explains what will be required for the grip strength measurement. Then all respondents are asked if they are willing to take part in the measurement. If they are unwilling or unable, you will be asked to record the reason.

#### ***MMGSDom***

This question asks about which is the respondent's dominant hand. If the respondent is ambidextrous then enter either hand and put a note about this in a memo.

#### ***MMGSSta***

Check that the respondent has not had a recent hand injury, or surgery to either hand in the last six months. Record whether the respondent has the use of both hands. If they do not have the use of one (or both) of their hands, specify which hand(s) they are unable to use. If the respondent is unable to use either hand, the measurement will be stopped.

#### ***MMGSInt***

Position the respondent correctly, adjust the gripometer to their hand size (see Section 13C) and ensure it is reset to zero. Explain the procedure again and demonstrate it. Let the respondent have a practice with one hand. Be sure to reset the gripometer to zero afterwards.

#### ***MMGSN1-MMGSD3***

Record three measurements for each hand if the respondent has use of both hands, starting with the reading for the non-dominant hand, followed by the reading for the dominant hand. If the respondent does not have use of both hands, record the three measurements for the hand that the respondent does have the use of.

#### ***MMGSTP - MMGSPrO***

Record the respondent's position during the test and any problems taking the measures.

### **D. Blood sample**

#### ***BIIntro***

All sample members who give consent are eligible for a blood sample to be taken. The only exceptions to this rule are people with clotting or bleeding disorders, people with a history of fits or convulsions, people who are currently on anticoagulant drugs (eg Warfarin, protamine, acenocoumarol) and pregnant women.

#### ***ClotB***

Explain the purpose and procedure for taking blood. Check if the respondent has a clotting or bleeding disorder or is on anticoagulant drugs, such as Warfarin, protamine, acenocoumarol. These are very uncommon. If you find someone with these problems, **do not** attempt to take blood, even if the disorder is controlled.

By clotting or bleeding disorders we mean conditions such as haemophilia and low platelets, ie thrombocytopenia. There are many different types of bleeding/clotting disorders but they are all quite rare. The reason these respondents are excluded from blood sampling is that:

- a) the integrity of their veins is extremely precious
- b) we do not wish to cause prolonged blood loss

For the purposes of blood sampling, those who have had, for example, a past history of thrombophlebitis, a deep venous thrombosis, a stroke caused by a clot, a myocardial infarction, or an embolus are NOT considered to have clotting disorders.

Some respondents might be taking anticoagulant drugs such as Warfarin, protamine, acenocoumarol which thins their blood so that they do not stop bleeding easily. If this is the case, then do not take a blood sample. You will need to check this with respondents, particularly with the elderly.

Aspirin therapy is not a contraindication to blood sampling.

If you are uncertain whether a condition constitutes a contraindication to blood sampling, the Survey Doctor will be happy to answer your queries.

### ***Fit***

Respondents who have ever had a fit (eg epileptic fit, convulsion) should not be asked to provide a blood sample. This applies even if the fit(s) occurred some years ago.

### ***BSWill***

Initial verbal consent to take a sample. If the respondent refuses, you will record why and the module will be skipped.

### ***FastAsk***

You should have been in contact with the respondent before visiting the household to determine if it was safe for them to fast. If you advised them that it was not safe to fast you should code 2. If the respondent is aged 80 or over they should not fast, but this will be automatically calculated and this question will not appear. In either case you should take a sample which would not include the fasting tube.

If you determined that it *was* safe for the respondent to fast, or did not manage to contact them, you will now ask further questions about when and what they last ate.

### ***DateLEat - FastBl***

These questions determine whether the respondent can give a fasting sample, i.e. whether they have fasted for a sufficiently long time and have eaten only the food specified on the appointment record card. See section 13D for more detail. Note that the CAPI calculates this from the time on your laptop, so it is important to check that your laptop displays the correct time and date.

### ***BSCons Code14 – Obtaining consents***

As blood taking is an invasive procedure we need to obtain written consent as well as verbal consent to take it. This has to be obtained from the respondent in all cases. If you **cannot** obtain written consent, the computer will direct you to ring consent codes 06, 08, 10, 12 and 14 on the Consent Booklet and filter you round the remaining questions.

There are three further written consents we wish to obtain in relation to blood sampling – consent to send the results to the GP, consent to store a small amount of the blood, and consent for the extraction and storage of DNA from the sample. You should seek to obtain all these consents before you take any blood. On **no** account should you ever take blood before you have obtained written consent to do so from the respondent.

Small quantities of blood are being stored in special freezers in order that further analysis may be undertaken in the future. Future analysis will definitely not involve a test for viruses (e.g. HIV (AIDS) test).

The questions on the CAPI take you step by step through all the procedures for obtaining consents. Make sure you follow these carefully – recording consent codes as instructed and giving reasons for refusals, if applicable. There are two blood sample consent forms – Consent Form 3 (with parts a, b and c); and Consent Form 4. For each consent required, the CAPI will direct you which sections to complete and what to code on the front of the consent booklet.

In summary:

- Try to reassure respondents about the process, and be prepared to answer their concerns. You will need to explain to the respondent the need for written consent and how important it is.
- Obtain written consents on '**Consent Forms 3 - Blood Samples**' and '**Consent Form 4 - Genetics Study**'. Remember to enter the respondent's name at the head of these forms before asking the respondent to sign. Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy of the Consent Booklet.
- Obtain consent to take a blood sample.
- Obtain consent to send results to GP.
- Obtain consent to store blood.
- Obtain consent for extraction and storage of DNA.
- Check that you have ringed the correct consent codes on the front of the Consent Booklet.

### ***Taking a blood sample***

Having checked that you have all the appropriate signatures, and ringed the appropriate codes, you are ready to take the blood sample. See the protocol in Section 13D for how to proceed. The CAPI will only direct you to take samples for which the respondent has given consent and a fasting sample if eligible (*TakeSa1*).

If you obtain a sample, note down any problems at *SamDifC* and complete the relevant parts of the venepuncture checklist. Record which sample tubes you have filled at *SampF1 - SampF6*.

If you do not manage to get any blood, you will record this at *SampF1 - SampF6* and then explain why not at *NoBSM*. If you do not get any blood ring consent codes 06, 08, 10, 12 and 14 on the Consent Booklet. If you have already ringed codes 05, 07, 09, 11 and 13 you should cross these codes out.

If you obtain a blood sample, remember to label the blood tubes immediately. Double check you have used the correct barcode label on the tubes and Consent Booklet. Complete the despatch note, remembering to record if the respondent has fasted or not at question 6, and pack the safebox now.

Then ask the respondent if (s)he would like to receive the results of the blood sample analysis (*SnDrSam*). If yes, ring consent code **09** on the front of the consent booklet. If not, ring code **10**. If they wish to receive their results, you should tell them that this will take about three months. Note that information from DNA testing will NOT be given to respondents or to their GP as we cannot generate meaningful data at an individual level.

### **E. & F. Height and weight**

You should be able to measure the height and weight of most of the respondents. As well as standing height, we are also measuring respondent's sitting height. In some cases it may not be possible or appropriate to take the respondent's height and weight. Do not force a respondent to be measured if it is clear that the measurement will be far from reliable but whenever you think a reasonable measurement can be taken, do so. You are asked to record the reliability of your measurements at *RelHite* and *RelWaitB*. Examples of people who should **not** be measured are:

- Chairbound respondents should not have their standing height measured.
- If after discussion with a respondent it becomes clear that they are too unsteady on their feet for these measurements.
- If the respondent finds it painful to stand or stand straight, do not attempt to measure standing height.

It is strongly preferable to measure height and weight on a floor which is level and not carpeted. If all the household is carpeted, choose a floor with the thinnest and hardest carpet (usually the kitchen or bathroom).

Read the preamble at the question called *HtIntro*. If further explanation is required, say that although many people know their height and weight, these measurements

are not usually up to date or are not known with the precision required for the survey. The reason for wanting to know accurate heights and weights is in order to relate them to other health measures.

If the height or weight is refused or not attempted, the respondent is asked to estimate their height or weight. You are given a choice of whether to enter their estimate in metric or imperial measurements.

### ***RelHite and RelWaitB***

You are asked here to code whether you experienced problems with the measurement and, if you did, to indicate whether you felt the end result was reliable or unreliable. As a rough guide, if you think the measurement is likely to be more than 2 cms (3/4 inch) from the true figure for height or 1 kg (2 lbs) from the true figure for weight, code as unreliable.

## **G. Waist and hip circumferences**

### ***WHMod-WHRes***

Waist and hip measurements are taken from all respondents except those who are chairbound and those who have a colostomy or an ileostomy. Each measurement is taken twice, to improve accuracy. Fuller details as to how to do this are given in Section 13G.

Record the two measurements to the nearest millimetre. *Always record the response to one decimal point (eg 95.4). The computer will not allow you to enter a response without a decimal point, so even if the measurement comes to, say, exactly 96cm, you must enter '96.0'.* If you do enter a measurement ending in '.0', the computer will ask you to confirm this.

If your second measurement differs from the first by 3cm or more, the computer will give you an error message, and instruct you to either amend one of your previous responses, or to take a third measurement.

*Amend a previous response if:* you have made a mistake when entering the measurement, eg entered '65.2' instead of '75.2'.

*Take a third measurement if:* there is another reason for the measurements being different.

If in doubt, take a third measurement rather than over-writing one of the previous two. The computer will automatically work out which two to use. If you do decide to take a third measurement, the computer will ask you to enter both waist and hip measurements again, even if only one of the two sets of measurements was more than 3cm apart.

If anyone refuses to have these measurements taken, record why.

At *WJRel* and *HJRel*, record how reliable the waist and hip measures are, and whether any problems that were experienced were likely to increase or decrease the measurement. This information is important for analysis of the results. As a general

rule, if you believe that the measurements you took are 0.5cm more or less than the true measurement because of problems you encountered (e.g. clothing the respondent was wearing), this should be counted as unreliable.

Offer to write the measurements on the Measurement Record Card for the respondent.

## **H. Lung Function**

### ***LFInt - HaStro***

Everyone is eligible for a lung function measurement except for those who have had abdominal or chest surgery in the last three weeks, have had eye surgery in the past four weeks, have been admitted to hospital with a heart complaint in the last six weeks or are pregnant or those with a tracheostomy

***ChestInf, Inhaler and InHalHrs*** - these questions collect information about respiratory infections and use of inhalers which could affect someone's lung function measurement.

Before you start, as with the blood pressure procedures, always read out the preamble contained in the Schedule at *LFIntro*. Tell the respondent that the GP is best placed to interpret the readings. By telling them in advance that you cannot interpret the readings, you will avoid the embarrassment of seeming to be covering up afterwards.

***LFWill*** - If you code 'no' here the computer will skip you past the measurement. You should only code 'no' here if the respondent refuses to do the measurement. If you are unable to obtain the measurement because of another reason this is coded later on.

***SpirNo*** - Record the three digit serial number of the spirometer here.

***LFTemp*** - We wish to measure the air temperature in the room at the time lung function is being measured because very high or very low temperatures affect the accuracy of the spirometer. You are supplied with a thermometer and probe. Section 13H contains the full protocol.

Set up the thermometer on a surface close to where the respondent is sitting. Immediately prior to measuring lung function, record the temperature. Then switch the thermometer off so that the battery does not run flat.

Remember to check that the thermometer has reached its final reading. It can take several minutes to do this if it is, say, moved from a cold car to a warm house.

If the air temperature is not within the specified range (15-35°C - note that this is different from the range for blood pressure), you will be asked to try to alter it - perhaps by opening or closing windows and/or doors. If unable to do this, you will be directed to go back to question *LFWill* and change it to code 3 (unable to take lung function).

***LFRec*** - Explain the procedure and demonstrate the test.

**Blow[1]-Blow[3]** - Get the respondent to carry out three blows. For each blow record **FVC**, **FEV** and **PF**. Remember to press the Clear Button at the end of each reading. At **Technique** record whether or not the respondent's technique was satisfactory. (The definition of technically satisfactory blow is given in Section 13H).

If no reading was obtained enter '0'. If you get to this section in the measurement and find you will not be able to take **any** readings, enter 9.95. This will take you to the end without having to type 0 at each individual reading.

**LFStand** - Record whether the respondent was sitting or standing for the measurements.

**LFResp** - Record a code to show the outcome of your attempt to obtain the lung function readings. Use code 1 if all three blows were obtained and technically satisfactory. Use code 2 in cases where some blows were obtained which were technically satisfactory. Use code 3 if no technically satisfactory blows were obtained. Use code 4 if the respondent refused. Use code 5 if you did not attempt to measure lung function for some reason than other refusal.

**ProbLF** - If not all three blows were obtained or were not technically satisfactory record the reason why. Use all codes that apply.

**YNoLF** and **NoAttLF** - Record here why the lung function measurement was refused or not attempted. If no lung function readings were obtained circle **code 04** on the front of the consent booklet.

#### **LFSam - NCIns1**

If you obtain a lung function reading ask these questions. If you have not already asked the respondent, check if they are registered with a GP. Check with the respondent if the results can go to their GP. If they agree, turn to **Consent Form 2 - Lung function to GP** in the Consent booklet. Explain that you have to get written consent in order to send the lung function readings to their GP. Fill in the respondent's name at the top of the form and ask them to sign and date the form.

Then turn to the front of the Consent booklet and ring consent **code 03**. If you have not already done so, ask for the name, address and telephone number of the GP (see the section on blood pressure for collecting the GP's details).

**NCIns2** - Offer the lung function readings to the respondent. If (s)he would like them, enter them on the Measurement Record Card (MRC). The computer will automatically calculate the highest lung function readings for you to record on the MRC. Never attempt to interpret these readings. This has to be done in the office, taking other information about the respondent into account.

## **I. Balance, Leg raise and Chair rise**

### **Balance**

#### ***MmBCInt***

Explain the purpose of conducting the balance tests, saying that you will describe and demonstrate each exercise in turn.

#### ***MmBCSc - MmBCCh***

These questions check whether the respondent has had any recent surgery, injury or any other health problem that may affect the balance measurements and remind you to take extra care that it is safe for the respondent to do the measures.

#### ***MmSSInt - MmSSNa***

Go through the protocol for the side-by-side stand and record whether the respondent was able to hold this position for 10 seconds, and if not, record the time of how long the position was held. If the side by side stand was not attempted, code the reason.

#### ***MmSTInt - MMSTNa***

These questions are asked if the respondent was able to hold the side-by-side stand for 10 seconds. Go through the protocol for the semi-tandem stand and record whether the respondent was able to hold this position for 10 seconds, and if not, record the time of how long the position was held. If the semi-tandem stand was not attempted, code the reason.

#### ***MmFTInt - MmFTNa***

These questions are asked if the respondent was able to hold the semi-tandem stand for 10 seconds. Go through the protocol for the full tandem stand and record whether the respondent was able to hold this position for the desired amount of time (10 or 30 seconds depending on the age of the respondent – see section 13I), and if not, record the time of how long the position was held. If the full tandem stand was not attempted, code the reason.

### **Leg raise**

#### ***MmLOInt - MmLSNa***

These questions are asked if the respondent is aged 69 or under and successfully passed the side by side stand. Go through the protocol for the Leg raise and record whether the respondent was able to hold this position for 30 seconds, and if not, record the time of how long the position was held. If the respondent can perform this exercise for 30 seconds then repeat with the respondent's eyes shut. If the leg raise with eyes open or eyes closed was not attempted, code the reason.

### **Chair rise**

#### ***MmCRAv***

The availability of a suitable chair is asked as respondents can only participate in this exercise if there is a suitable chair available (as described in Section 13I).

#### ***MmCrInt***

Demonstrate and explain the procedure of standing up from a suitable chair without the use of their arms.

### *MmCRSc*

This question asks the respondent if they would feel safe performing a rise from a chair without using their hands. If the participant cannot rise *without* using their arms, ask them to try to stand up *using* their arms.

### *MmCRRe*

Record whether the respondent could stand up from a chair with or without using their arms. If they cannot perform this exercise, record the reason at the next question.

### *MMRRInt - MMRRSc*

If the respondent was able to perform a single chair rise without using their arms, explain the protocol for the appropriate number of repeated chair rises to the respondent and demonstrate. Ask the respondent if they would feel safe repeating this action 5 times if the respondent is aged 70 or over or 10 times if the respondent is aged 69 or under.

### *MMRRStt - MMRRTTi*

Record the total amount of chair rises completed and record the time taken to complete the chair rises. If the respondent is aged 69 or under then record the time taken to reach 5 chair rises *as well as* the time taken to complete 10 chair rises.

### *MMRRNa*

If the respondent is 70 or over and cannot complete 5 chair rises or the respondent is 69 or under and cannot perform 10 chair rises, record the reason.

## **J. Saliva**

The respondent's logbook explains how and when to take each sample and also contains questions we would like them to answer at the time they take their samples. The Saliva module is a step-by-step guide to talking through the logbook with the respondent. Note that as there is a mix of instructions for you and for the respondent, text that should be read out is coloured red while nurse instructions are in black.

### *SalIntro*

Explain the purpose and procedure for the saliva module and ask for verbal consent.

### *SalCons*

Complete **Consent Form 5 - Saliva Sample**. Explain the need for written consent and ask the respondent to read, sign and date the office copy. Tick the relevant box on the respondent's personal copy. Circle consent code 15 on the front of the Consent Booklet.

### *SalPrep*

Fill in the respondent's details on the front of the logbook. Ensure you have the correct sheet of barcode labels for the respondent: **check** with the respondent their name and date of birth on the label sheet. Stick one barcode label to the front of the log book and one on the transparent plastic bag. Write the respondent's first name on the label on the plastic bag.

### *SalGive*

Give the kit to the respondent and explain about the kit and the logbook.

### *SalWhen*

Talk through the section on 'When to take your saliva samples' in the logbook. Check that the respondent understands when to take the first and second sample.

### *SalHow*

Talk through the section on 'How to take a sample'. Then ask the respondent to provide a test sample using one of the spare salivettes.

### *SalFirs*

Turn to page 4 and talk through the instructions for taking the orange (first) sample.

### *SalQues*

Show the respondent questions 2 - 6 for the orange (first) sample. Explain that the logbook also contains questions to answer at the time of the samples. These will help us understand the respondent's activities and the levels of stress they are experiencing at different times.

### *SalSec*

Talk through the remainder of page 5. Explain that the respondent should be careful to follow the instructions about what they can eat or drink before the second sample. If the respondent seems unsure about what they can do, it may be best for them not to eat, drink or brush their teeth until after the second sample. Explain that after that, they can do whatever they like for the rest of the day but should not eat, drink or brush their teeth for at least 15 minutes before they take the other samples.

### *SalSend*

Show pages 6 - 8 which relate to the other samples. Then talk through further questions (questions 26-36) and instructions for returns of the samples. Emphasise that the respondent should be sure to put their samples in the transparent plastic bag that has their name on the label and return them as soon as they can. Point out the ELSA Freephone number for if they have any questions and show the respondent the times Helen is available.

### *SalNo*

If the respondent is not willing to give samples, circle consent code 16 on the front of the Consent Booklet.

## **9.5 Finishing the interview**

Ensure that you have all the correct codes ringed on the front of the Consent Booklet. If any results are to go to the GP (consent code 01, 03, or 07 ringed) check that you have their correct details. This is vital in case we need to telephone or write to the GP with any abnormal results. The GP address should be as full as possible, and the telephone number should include the local area code.

Thank the respondents for all their help. We will be writing to thank them as well.

Once you have finished entering information onto the computer, you should press <Ctrl+Enter> then <X> (for eXit (after admin)). The computer will ask you if you

wish to save the data, and your only options are 'yes' or 'cancel'. If you select 'cancel', you will stay in the schedule, so to get out you must press 'yes'.

You will then be at the Household Menu again, where you should press <Esc> to return to the address menu. Press <Esc> again to return to the Action Menu, at which point the data will be scrambled for confidentiality. At the Action Menu, press <Q> for Quit, then switch off the laptop.

## **9.6 The admin block**

For each household in which you do any work, you must complete an 'admin block', which contains various pieces of information which must be kept separate from the individual schedules for reasons of confidentiality. Most of the items in the admin block are self-explanatory, but please note the following:

At *NChoice*, you cannot select code '5' until you have completed all the individual schedules and you are ready to transmit data for the full household back to the office. Before that point, you cannot go beyond this question.

The outcome code for each respondent at *NurOutc* will nearly always be filled in for you, so in most cases you will just need to check that it is correct and press <Enter>, and fill it in on the NRF.

If you did not complete any nurse schedules for a household, at *NOutC* you will be asked to enter a household outcome code (931, 941, 951 or 961). If you completed at least one nurse schedule for a household the household outcome code will be 921. You do not need to enter this code in CAPI but it will appear on the Address Menu at *OutC* for completed addresses.

The respondent's name and GP details should be copied from the front page of the consent booklet, which is why you are instructed to keep all the consent booklets from a household until work at that household is complete. If you have inadvertently sent back a consent booklet before completing the admin block, you should leave the GP details blank (by pressing <Enter>) and coding '2' at *YGPBlank*. This will indicate to the staff at the office that we need to pull out that consent booklet to get the GP details. It is important that you do not enter 'don't know' at the GP details questions, unless you really do not know the details. If you have collected the details (or think you may have done so), but do not have access to them, always enter a blank.

The computer will not consider the household as complete until the admin block is fully completed. You will not need to complete the admin for households where there is no work for you to do, all you do for these cases is enter code 3 at *ScrOut*.

## **9.7 Parallel blocks**

The computerised nurse schedule consists of three main components:

1. The household information
2. The individual schedule(s)
3. The admin block

Each component is known as a 'parallel block'. This means that you can enter any component at any time, no matter where you are in the schedule.

The way to move between parallel blocks is by pressing <Ctrl+Enter>, which brings up a window called 'Parallel Blocks'. This screen is the 'gateway' to the other components of the schedule. It lists all the possible blocks you could go into, and looks like this:

Parallel blocks
+ P8158 + Nurse_Schedule1: George - Nurse_Schedule2: Winifred  - Admin

The list of blocks will vary depending on the number of people in the household. There will always be a 'P8158' and an 'Admin' for each household. In addition, there will be a 'Nurse\_Schedule' for each eligible individual in the household (in the above example, there are two eligible individuals).

It is important to remember that 'Nurse\_Schedule[1]' is the individual schedule for the *first person entered in the household grid*. This is why you must enter the details in person number order. If you entered, say, person number 4 at the top of the grid, then that person would be allocated 'Nurse\_Schedule[1]', even though (s)he is not person number 1. In larger households, this could get very confusing!

If the individuals are entered in the wrong order (e.g. if a household member is added to the grid late) and you subsequently find yourself unsure as to which 'Nurse\_Schedule' corresponds to which person number, you should enter each 'Nurse\_Schedule' in turn and look at the details given on the first screen until you find the person you want.

The final thing to note about the parallel blocks screen is the '+' or '-' which precedes each block. All blocks will have a '-' to start with, and this will turn into a '+' when the computer is satisfied that that block has been fully completed. In the above example, the nurse has completed the household grid and the schedule for George, but has not yet done the schedule for Winifred.

### 9.8 Practice interview

The practice serial numbers you have been given are as follows:

Serial	Check letter
100000011	P

<b>122222211</b>	<b>E</b>
<b>133333311</b>	<b>M</b>
<b>144444411</b>	<b>V</b>
<b>155555511</b>	<b>C</b>
<b>166666611</b>	<b>K</b>
<b>177777711</b>	<b>S</b>
<b>188888811</b>	<b>A</b>
<b>199999911</b>	<b>H</b>

Address check: 35 Northampton Square

## **10 COMPLETING THE NRF AND RETURNING WORK**

### ***10.1 Recording the outcome of your attempts to interview and measure***

Interviewers are required to complete a Nurse Record Form (NRF) for each issued address (regardless of whether a nurse visit is required).

At the top of the first page you will find the NRF labels (see Section 2.3). There is also a space for interviewers to write any tips about the household location or the occupants that they feel you might find useful – this may include a change of address. Question 2 will indicate which address you should visit (i.e. original or new).

Interviewers will have circled an outcome at Question 1 on the front page. Your follow-up instructions depend on the outcome they have coded (either A, B, C). Please follow these instructions carefully.

#### Question 1 - Interviewer outcome summary:

Code A – At least one eligible respondent has agreed to the nurse visit.

Code B – Respondents were eligible for the nurse visit, but NO nurse visit required (e.g. if they all refused).

Code C – Interviewers did not identify anyone who was eligible for the nurse visit (e.g. could not trace address).

So if B or C are traced no nurse visit is required.

If code C is ringed, all you need to do is code 931 at Q.13, open the serial number in CAPI and enter code 3 at ScrOut, and return the NRF.

The interviewer completes Part A if s/he has circled A or B at question 1. For your information, they are asked to record if someone who took part at Wave 1 has died (Question 5), or moved into an institution (Question 6).

Interviewers complete Question 7 if they identified respondents eligible for the nurse visit. Those who require a nurse visit will have been assigned a nurse status of 1. Status code 2 is for those who refused the nurse visit (but did the main interview), and code 3 is for eligible respondents who did not participate in the main interview (e.g. refused).

At Question 7, interviewers are also asked to record details of any nurse appointments they have set up. Make sure you study these carefully.

You will be directed to Question 8 if at least one person requires a nurse visit. Please record details of each call you make to the household (either by telephone or face-to-face).

At Question 9, you will need to transfer the name and person number for those with a nurse status code of 1 or 2 at Question 7. Please circle an individual outcome code for each person. You will be prompted to enter this outcome code in the CAPI admin block.

Individual Outcome Codes:

Use code 80 if the person was given a nurse status code of 2 at Question 7. There is nothing for you to do.

Use code 81 if you went through the whole schedule with the respondent and completed all the relevant questions. This code applies even if the respondent refused any of the measurements.

If someone breaks an appointment and you never manage to make contact with them again, ring code 85, not code 82.

A proxy refusal (84) is the situation where someone refuses on behalf of someone else - for example, a husband who says he will not allow his wife to be seen by a nurse. Obviously you should do your best to try and see the person yourself but sometimes this is not possible.

Codes 86-88 should be used only if the respondent is unavailable for interview for these reasons throughout the whole of your fieldwork period. If they are likely to return, and be fit to be seen during that time, then try again later.

*Question 10* – Complete this for each person who refused to allow you to interview them (i.e. those you coded 83-84 at Question 7).

*Question 11* – Complete for each person coded 85-89 at Question 7.

*Question 12* – Complete for all households with an individual outcome of 81. First enter the number of consent booklets obtained. Then record whether you were prompted to leave a Personal Beliefs and Wellbeing questionnaire. If yes, please enter a self-completion status code:

- Code 1 if completed by the respondent, to be posted back by you
- Code 2 if you left it with the respondent to complete and send back themselves
- Code 3 if the respondent did not complete the self completion (eg refused)

*Question 13* – You need to assign a household outcome code to each NRF. This code is then transferred to the CAPI admin block.

Household outcome codes:

- Code 921 represents at least one productive interview.
- Code 931 should be used if no nurse visit was required (eg all respondents refused the visit – the interviewer will have circled B at question 1, or all respondents were ineligible for the nurse visit).
- Code 941 should be used if you attempted to conduct the nurse visit, but this resulted in an unproductive outcome.
- Code 951 should be used if eligible respondents were identified, but you were not able to cover the address.
- Code 961 should be used if you need to reallocate to another nurse.

Finally, before returning the NRF to the office, you must complete two of the three boxes on the top right-hand side of the front page. To do this, you will need to go into the address menu on the computer, and locate the serial number which corresponds with that address.

The *Slot name* can be found at the top right of the address menu screen, next to the word 'Period'. It will be the first three letters of the field month. Copy this into the 'Slot Name' box

The *Return/trip number* can be found in the column on the far right of the screen, headed 'RET'. Copy this number into the 'Return/trip No' box.

Please enter the *Final Outcome* in the top box using the summary on the back page of the NRF.

## **10.2 Returning work**

Please post the NRFs and consent forms back to the yellow team in Brentwood once you have interviewed everyone eligible in the household. Transmit back to the office at regular intervals throughout the fieldwork period. Keep all the work to be returned together for that household and transfer as soon as the household is complete. Referral back to GPs and respondents, in the event of any serious abnormalities, can be seriously delayed if work is not returned on time.

Before returning work, check that you have all the documents you should have and that they are properly serial numbered and so on. Check that they match with your NRF entries. You should return a Consent Booklet for each person with an individual outcome code of 81.

Send the NRF to the office when you have completed everything you have to do at a household.

- Pin together the NRF and Consent Booklets and any grip strength measurement cards and return them in one envelope.
- Send any interview documents given to you by the respondent (e.g. self completion) separately.
- **Do not entrust other people to post your envelopes – always post them yourself.**

CAPI questionnaire data will be transferred back to the office via the modem. The computer will decide what to transmit - you do not need to tell it which addresses to take and which to leave. Remember you still need to return the paper documents.

When your assignment is completed, make your last return of work as follows:

- Do your last Return-of-work via modem, by selecting 'T' for 'transmit/Return data to HQ' from the Action menu. Follow the instructions on the screen.
- Then carry out the 'End of Assignment clear-out' routine by selecting 'E' from the Action menu. This routine requires the use of the **Backup disk** for the last time.

At the end of your assignment, check that you have accounted for all the serial numbers on the Summary Sheet.

## 11 INFORMATION FOR HANDLING NURSE EQUIPMENT

The same precautions and lifting techniques should be applied when handling nurse equipment as with any other loads that we need to carry in our day to day activities.

Although the ELSA nurse equipment is within the weight guidelines advised by the Health and Safety Executive, we feel that we must stress that caution should be taken when lifting equipment.

Please read the following advice to ensure you are aware of the correct lifting techniques:

- Don't jerk or shove – twisting may cause injury.
- Grip loads with palms of hands, not fingertips. Don't change your grip while carrying.
- Bend your knees when lifting loads from the ground. Lift with your legs and keep your back straight. Lift in easy stages – floor to knee, then knee to carrying position.
- Hold weights close to the body. Take care when lifting equipment from the boot of your car, position the equipment to avoid stretching at the same time as lifting.
- Evenly distribute load. Not all on one shoulder or hand.
- Use shoulder straps as much as possible.

- Don't carry more than you need to. Try to pack the supplies you need for the day and keep spare supplies in the car.
- Take extra care on stairs, making more than one journey if necessary.
- If you think a trolley would be useful, we can arrange for one to be provided. Please ring your Nurse Supervisor in the first instance who will make any necessary arrangements with the Area Manager.

You must advise the *National Centre* of any existing condition or pre-disposition to injury, e.g. pregnancy or previous back injury.

Please refer to your Survey Nurses' Manual for more information about Health and Safety.

## 12 CONTACTS

### 12.1 *The Project Team*

Your nurse supervisor is the person you should consult if you have any queries about your equipment, how to use it in the field or any other problems you might have relating to carrying out the interview and measurements.

If you have any other queries relating to this project then you should contact:

- Hayley Mew, Kate Cox, or Dan Philo
- Audrey Hale, Helen Selwood or any member of the Yellow Team.

In an emergency where the program is failing, you can contact the programmer who is Sven Sjodin.

### 12.2 *The Survey Doctor*

Dr James Nazroo of UCL is the 'Survey Doctor'. James is responsible for providing nurses with medical support and for liaising with GPs with respect to measurement or blood sample abnormalities which are detected as a result of this survey.

If you want to contact James:

- First phone his work number:
- If he is not there leave him a message **AND then** ring him at home:
- If he is not at home leave him a brief message saying that you have left a full message on his work phone. You should **ALSO** then phone his mobile number:
- If he is not able to answer his mobile phone please leave him a brief message saying that you have left a full message on his work phone.

If you need to leave a message with the Survey Doctor, leave the following details:

- Your name
- Contact telephone number
- If you want the Survey Doctor to ring you back at a specific time etc.

## 13 PROTOCOLS OF MEASURES IN ELSA NURSE VISIT

- A. Recording ambient air temperature
- B. Blood Pressure
- C. Grip Strength
- D. Blood samples
- E. Standing and Sitting Height
- F. Weight
- G. Waist and hip measurement
- H. Lung Function
- I. Physical performance measures – Balance, Leg raise and Chair rises
- J. Saliva samples

### A. RECORDING AMBIENT AIR TEMPERATURE

#### *The thermometer*

You have been provided with a digital thermometer and probe. This instrument is very sensitive to minor changes in temperature. It is therefore important that you record temperature at the appropriate times in your routine. It can also take a few minutes to settle down to a final reading if it is experiencing a large change in temperature (e.g. coming into a warm house from a cold outside).

Immediately after you have settled the respondent down to rest for five minutes prior to taking their blood pressure, set up the thermometer to take a reading. Just prior to recording the blood pressure note the temperature and record it when the computer prompts you to do so. Always switch it off after taking a reading, to avoid battery problems. The thermometer automatically switches off if you have left it on for more than 7 minutes. You will also need to enter the temperature before the lung function reading. Note that the acceptable temperature range for the blood pressure measurement is 15-25°C, while for the lung function measure it is 15-35°C.

Place the thermometer on a surface near the Omron. Do not let the probe touch anything - you can for example let it hang over the edge of a table. Do not put it on top of the Omron as it will be warm.

Please note that you must enter the temperature to one decimal place - do not round it to the nearest degree. For example, enter '21.2', not just '21'. If you do not enter a decimal point, the computer will give you a warning. If the temperature is exactly, say, 21 degrees, then all you need to do is suppress the warning and it will automatically fill in the '.0' for you. Otherwise, you must go back and amend your answer. As a further check, it will also ask you to confirm that a temperature ending in '.0' is correct.

#### *Instructions for using the thermometer*

1. The probe plug fits into the socket at the top of the instrument.
2. Press the completely white circle to turn the instrument on. To turn off, press the white ring.

3. Before taking a reading off the display, ensure that the reading has stabilised.
4. Be careful of the probe - it is quite fragile.
5. When "LO BAT" is shown on the display the battery needs replacing, take no further readings.
6. The battery in your thermometer is a long-life battery and should last at least one year. However, should it run low please purchase a new battery. Take the old one with you to ensure it is the same type. Claim in the usual way.
7. To remove an old battery and insert a new one, unscrew the screw on the back of the thermometer.

## **B. BLOOD PRESSURE**

### *Eligibility*

High blood pressure is an important risk factor for cardiovascular disease. It is important that we look at the blood pressure of everyone in the survey using a standard method so we can see the distribution of blood pressure across the population. This is vital for monitoring change over time, and monitoring progress towards lower blood pressure targets set in the Health of the Nation.

### *Protocol For Blood Pressure Recording: Omron Hem-907*

This section describes the protocol for measuring blood pressure using the Omron HEM 907. More detailed information may be obtained from the instructions booklet inside the box. If you have any further questions or problems then please contact your nurse supervisor.

### *Equipment*

Omron HEM 907 blood pressure monitor  
Standard adult cuff (22-32 cm)  
Large adult cuff (32-42 cm)  
AC adapter

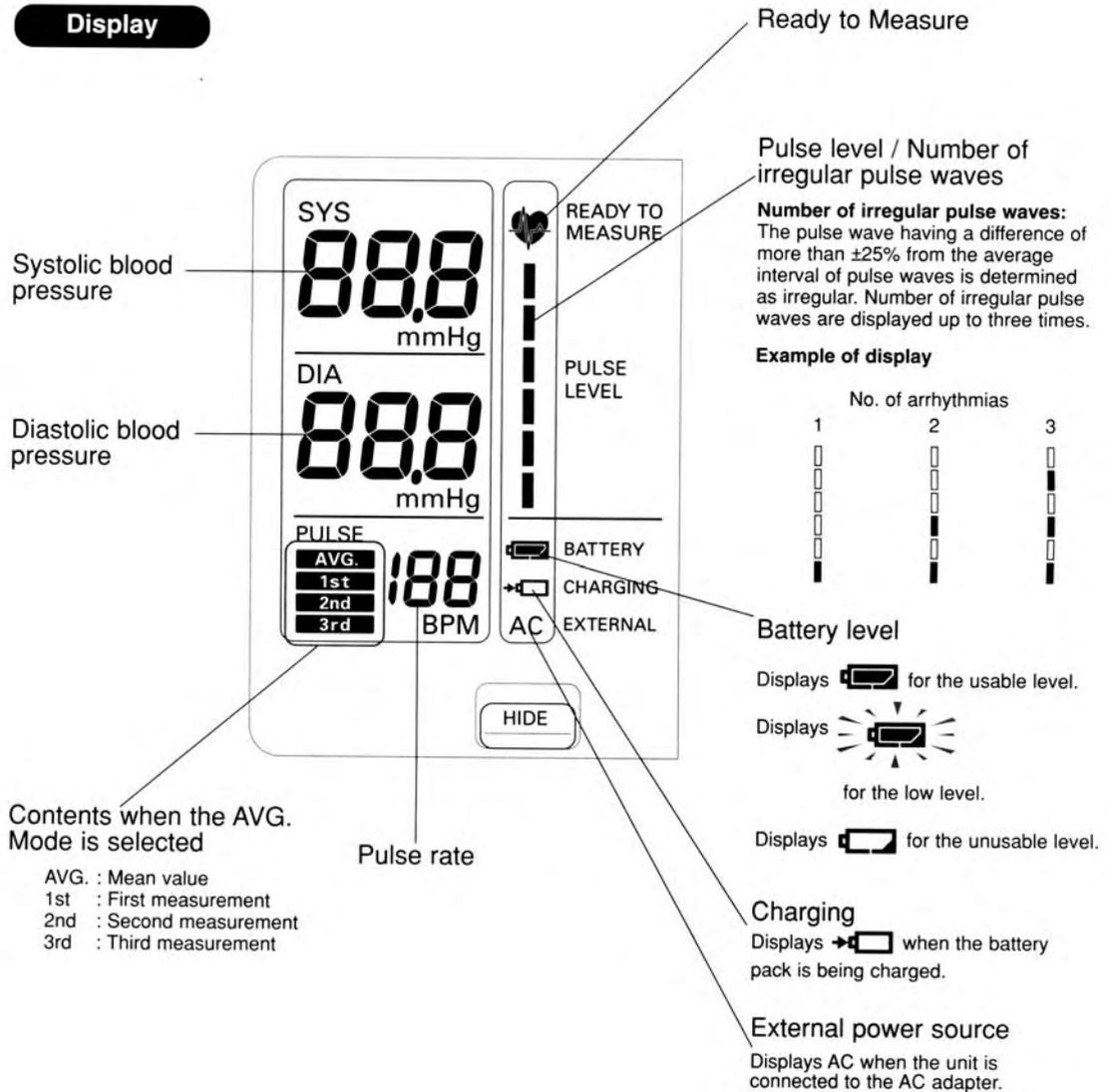
The Omron HEM-907 blood pressure monitor is an automated machine. It is designed to measure systolic blood pressure, diastolic blood pressure and pulse rate automatically at pre-selected time intervals. On this study three readings are collected at one-minute intervals.

The Omron 907 is equipped with a rechargeable battery, which is usable for approximately 300 measurements when fully charged. To recharge the battery, connect the monitor to the mains. A battery symbol will appear in the CHARGING display when the battery is charging. When ready to use the symbol will disappear. A dark battery symbol in the BATTERY display indicates that the battery is charged and the machine is usable. The battery can be charged in approximately 12 hours. When the battery symbol in the BATTERY display starts to flash there are 20-30 measurements left, you need to charge the battery soon. When a light battery symbol appears in the BATTERY display the battery needs to be put on charge immediately. The Omron 907 is **NOT** designed to work off the mains adaptor; it should be run off the battery power pack. The mains adaptor should **ONLY** be used to charge the battery pack.

**PLEASE REMEMBER TO CHARGE THE BATTERY !!**

The picture below shows the main features of the Omron HEM-907.

## Display



### Preparing the respondent

The respondent should not have eaten, smoked, drunk alcohol or taken vigorous exercise in the 30 minutes preceding the blood pressure measurement as blood pressure can be higher than normal immediately after any of these activities.

Ask the respondent to remove outer garments (e.g. jumper, cardigan, jacket) and expose their **right** upper arm. The sleeve should be rolled or slid up to allow sufficient room to place the cuff. If the sleeve constricts the arm, restricting the circulation of blood, ask the respondent if they would mind taking their arm out of the sleeve for the measurement.

### Selecting the correct cuff

Do **not** measure the upper arm circumference. Instead, choose the correct cuff size based on the acceptable range which is marked on the inside of the cuff. You will note that there is some overlap between the cuffs. If the respondent falls within this overlap range then use the **standard** cuff where possible.

The appropriate cuff should be connected via the grey air tube to the right end side of the monitor.

### *Procedure*

Wrap the correct sized cuff round the upper **right** arm and check that the index line falls within the range lines. Use the left arm only if it is impossible to use the right. If the left arm is used, record this on the schedule. Locate the brachial pulse just medial to the biceps tendon and position the arrow on the cuff over the brachial artery. The lower edge should be about 1-2 cm above the cubital fossa (elbow crease).

Do not put the cuff on too tightly as bruising may occur on inflation. Ideally, it should be possible to insert two fingers between cuff and arm. However, the cuff should not be applied too loosely, as this will result in an inaccurate measurement.

The respondent should be sitting in a comfortable chair with a suitable support so that the right arm will be resting at a level to bring the antecubital fossa (elbow) to approximately heart level. They should be seated in a comfortable position with the cuff applied, their legs uncrossed and their feet flat on the floor.

Explain that before the blood pressure measurement we need them to sit quietly for five minutes to rest. They should not smoke, eat or drink during this time. Explain that during the measurement the cuff will inflate three times and they will feel some pressure on their arm during the procedure.

After five minutes explain that you are starting the measurement. Ask the respondent to relax and not to speak until the measurement is completed as this may affect their reading.

### *How to operate the monitor*

See Picture of Omron HEM-907 monitor above.

1. Switch the monitor on by pushing the **ON/OFF** button. Wait for the **READY TO MEASURE** symbol to light, indicating the machine is ready to start the measurement (approx 2 sec).
2. Check that the **MODE** Selector is set to **AVG** and the **P-SET** (pressure setting) Volume is set to **AUTO**.
3. Press the **START** button to start the measurement. The cuff will now start to inflate and take the first measurement. When the first measurement is complete the LCD displays show systolic pressure, diastolic pressure, and pulse rate. Record the readings on the interview schedule.
4. Blood pressure will then be recorded at one-minute intervals thereafter. After each interval record the readings from the LCD displays on the interview schedule.
5. After the three measurements are complete press the **ON/OFF** button to turn off the power and remove the cuff.

If there are any problems during the blood pressure measurements or the measurement is disturbed for any reason, press the **STOP** button and start the procedure again. If the respondent has to get up to do something, then ask them to sit and rest for five minutes again.

### *Error readings*

They appear on the LCD display:

**Er1, Er2.** Check that the tube connecting the cuff to the monitor is properly inserted and is not bent. Check that the cuff is properly wrapped around the arm. Repeat the measurement.

**Er3.** Check that the tube connecting the cuff to the monitor is not bent. Repeat the measurement.

**Er4.** This could be because of a motion artefact. Ask the respondent to sit as still as possible and take the measurement again. If you still get another Er4 error reading, it could be because the respondent has a very high blood pressure. Set the P-SET Volume to 260 and repeat the measurement.

**Er5, Er6.** Check that the cuff is properly wrapped around the arm. Repeat the measurement.

If any of these error readings persist record that it wasn't possible to get a reading and explain to the respondent that this sometimes happens. Then contact Brentwood and inform them that there is a problem with the monitor.

**Er7, Er8.** Check that the respondent does not move, ask the respondent to sit as still as possible and take the measurement again. If you still get an error reading the pulse may be irregular. Do NOT palpate the pulse. Record that it wasn't possible to get a reading and explain to the respondent that this sometimes happens.

**Er9.** Technical fault. Contact Brentwood immediately and inform them that there is a problem with the monitor.

### *Feedback to respondents*

If the respondent wishes, you should record details of their readings on their Measurement Record Card.

In answering queries about a respondent's blood pressure it is very IMPORTANT to remember that it is **not** the purpose of the survey to provide respondents with medical advice, nor are you in a position to do so as you do not have the respondent's full medical history. But you will need to say something. What you say in each situation has been agreed with the Department of Health, and the CAPI will instruct you to read these comments out. It is very important that **you make all the points relevant to the particular situation and that you do not provide a more detailed interpretation as this could be misleading.** Read the instructions below very carefully and make sure you always follow these guidelines.

The comments should be based on the last two of the first three readings you take from the **Omron HEM-907**. The advice you will be prompted to give will be based on the **higher** of the last two readings. If the first reading is higher than the other two, explain that the first reading can be high because people are nervous of having their pressure taken.

Definitions of raised blood pressure differ slightly. It has been decided that we should adopt the ones given below for this study. It is important that you adhere to these definitions, so that all respondents are treated in an identical manner.

<b>ADULTS ONLY</b>			
<b>SURVEY DEFINITION OF BLOOD PRESSURE RATINGS</b>			
<u>Rating</u>	<u>Systolic</u>		<u>Diastolic</u>
Normal	<140	and	<85
Mildly raised	140 - 159	or	85 - 99
Moderately raised	160 - 179	or	100 - 114
Considerably raised	180 or more	or	115 or more
NB: < less than			

Points to make to a respondent about their blood pressure (given on screen):

**Normal:**

'Your blood pressure is normal'

**Mildly raised:**

'Your blood pressure is a bit high today.'

'Blood pressure can vary from day to day and throughout the day so that one high reading does not necessarily mean that you suffer from high blood pressure.'

'You are advised to visit your GP within 3 months to have a further blood pressure reading to see whether this is a once-off finding or not.'

**Moderately raised:**

'Your blood pressure is a bit high today.'

'Blood pressure can vary from day to day and throughout the day so that one high reading does not necessarily mean that you suffer from high blood pressure.'

'You are advised to visit your GP within 2-3 weeks to have a further blood pressure reading to see whether this is a once-off finding or not.'

**Considerably raised:**

'Your blood pressure is high today.'

'Blood pressure can vary from day to day and throughout the day so that one high reading does not necessarily mean that you suffer from high blood pressure.'

'You are strongly advised to visit your GP within 5 days to have a further blood pressure reading to see whether this is a once-off finding or not.'

**Note:** If the respondent is elderly and has severely raised blood pressure, amend your advice so that they are advised to contact their GP within the next week or so about this reading. This is because in many cases the GP will be well aware of their high blood pressure and we do not want to worry the respondent unduly. It is however important that they do contact their GP about the reading within 7 to 10 days. In the meantime, we will have informed the GP of their result (providing the respondent has given their permission).

***Action to be taken by the nurse after the visit***

If you need to contact the Survey Doctor, do not do this from the respondent's home - you will cause unnecessary distress. See Section 12.2 for information about how to contact the survey doctor.

**Pulse** - for all respondents the survey doctor routinely checks fast and slow pulse rates so no further action is necessary.

The chart below summarises what action you should take as a result of the knowledge you have gained from taking a person's blood pressure readings. For this purpose you should only take into account **the last two of the three readings** you take. We do not want you to use the first reading as it is prone to error for the reason stated above.

BLOOD PRESSURE	ACTION
----------------	--------

<p><b>Normal/mild/moderate BP</b></p> <p>Systolic &lt; 180 mmHg <b>and</b> Diastolic &lt; 115 mmHg</p>	<p>No further action necessary</p> <p>If you feel that the circumstances demand further action, inform the Survey Doctor who will then inform the respondent's GP immediately if he deems it necessary.**</p>
<p><b>Considerably raised BP</b></p> <p>Systolic &gt; 180 mmHg <b>or</b> Diastolic &gt; 115 mmHg</p>	<p>Contact the Survey Doctor at the earliest opportunity and he will inform the respondent's GP.**</p> <p>If the respondent has any symptoms of a hypertensive crisis* contact the survey doctor immediately or call an ambulance. The Survey Doctor must be informed as soon as possible.**</p>

NB: < less than; > greater than or equal to.

- \* A hypertensive crisis is an extremely rare complication of high blood pressure. Its signs and symptoms include diastolic BP > 135 mmHg, headache, confusion, sleepiness, stupor, visual loss, seizures, coma, cardiac failure, oliguria, nausea and vomiting.
- \*\* You must still contact the Survey Doctor even if the respondent tells you that their GP knows about their raised BP.

All high or unusual readings will be looked at by the Survey Doctor when they reach the office. If the reading is high, then the Survey Doctor will contact the respondent directly.

## C. GRIP STRENGTH

### *Introduction*

In international studies, comparability of measurements across countries, languages and cultures is very important. One way of getting reliable, easily comparable data on the physical ability of different populations is to measure relevant dimensions directly. In the ELSA nurse visit we will be asking you to carry out the isometric hand-grip strength measure, which comes from a European study on ageing called SHARE. Hand-grip strength affects every day function (such as raising the body weight or holding heavy objects) and declines with age. It is measured with a gripometer which consists of a gripping handle with a strain-gauge and an analogue reading scale. The measurement will be given to all respondents. There is no lower or upper age limit, but there are certain exclusions on safety grounds (see below).

Sometimes you will need to provide information in order to convince people of the importance of the grip-strength test. They may want to know more about what is involved. If the person is reluctant, use the arguments given in the first paragraph to try to get them to change their mind.

### *Exclusion criteria*

Those with swelling or inflammation, severe pain or recent injury, and those with surgery to the hand in the last 6 months **should not** take the grip strength test. If there is a problem with one of the respondent's hands, just take measurements on the other hand.

### *Demonstrations*

Demonstrate the grip-strength test for the respondent. It is very important that you demonstrate the measurement correctly. Experience has shown that respondents follow more closely what the nurse does rather than what s/he says. If the respondent indicates that s/he does not understand how to handle the gripometer, demonstrate it again rather than relying on repeating verbal instructions. Repeat the demonstration only once. If the respondent still does not understand, skip the test and continue the interview. Do not 'coach' the respondent.

To some respondents the detailed verbal instructions may seem unnecessary. It may help to say that you are going to explain each test to the respondent in detail since this is the best way to make sure that everyone does the test in a similar manner.

### *Accuracy*

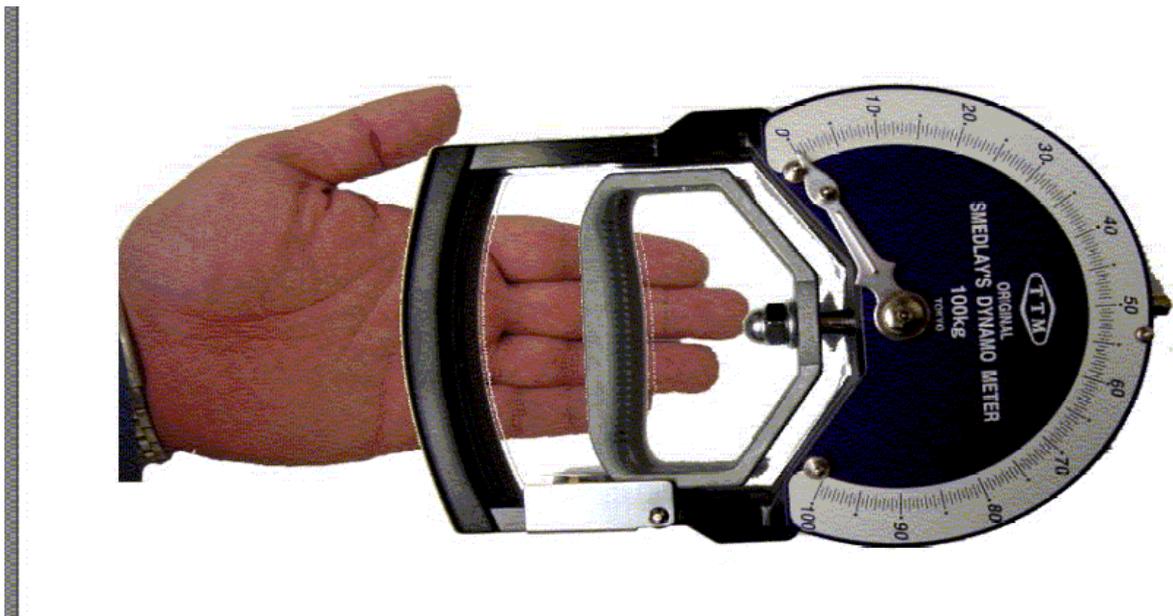
The accuracy of the tests depends on the effort exerted by the respondent and the conscientiousness of the interviewer. Consequently it is crucial that the examination protocol be observed painstakingly. Insufficient effort on the part of the respondent will cause the test results to be inadequate for analysis.

### *Procedure*

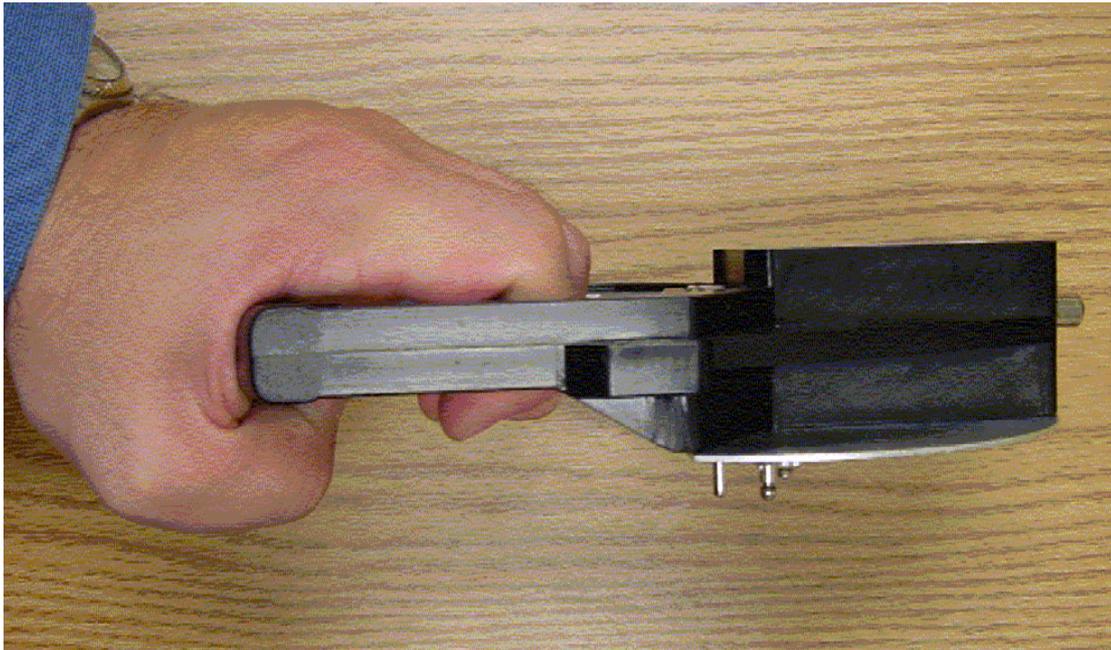
- Explain and **demonstrate** the test procedure. You can use the Grip Strength Protocol Script Card if you wish.
- The respondent should preferably stand up – but if not possible then sitting in an upright chair is fine.
- Large rings may need to be removed.
- **VERY IMPORTANT:** Adjust the lever of the gripometer so it suits the respondent's hand. To do this (see also pictures below):
  - (1) Put the black bar of the gripometer on the pads at the top of their palm. If it is in the right position the metal bar (the grip) should rest on the middle piece of the four fingers.
  - (2) If the metal bar is not in the right position you will need to lift the metal lever on the side of the gripometer and rotate the metal bar (the grip) until it is in a more suitable position for the respondent. Then repeat step (1).
  - (3) You can check that there is a good fit by asking the respondent to grip the gripometer – the middle section of their fingers should be flat across the top of the metal bar. If they are not then you will need to readjust it.
  - (4) When you have got a good fit, replace the lever on the side of the gripometer.

- Make sure the respondent keeps their upper arm tight against their trunk.
- The forearm should be at a right angle to the upper arm. If the respondent is finding the gripometer too heavy to hold it in this position then they can use their free hand to rest the gripometer on. You could also provide this support if appropriate. If the respondent needs to do the measure in a seated position then they could use a table for support. However, try and make sure that their forearm is still at a right angle to their upper arm.
- The dial should face outward.
- Allow the respondent to have a practice with one hand.
- Before each measurement, make sure that the arrow is reset at zero.
- Ask the participant to squeeze as hard as they can for a couple of seconds.
- Record the value on the scale **to the nearest whole number** (e.g. 12). To get an accurate reading you should look directly down on the scale. Record the result on to the Grip Strength Measurement Card.
- Record three values with each hand alternating between hands, starting with the non-dominant hand (six values all together).
- Do not include measurements carried out incorrectly.
- Return the Grip Strength Measurement Card to the office with the NRF.

*Aligning the Gripometer with the hand*



*Gripometer lever on second phalanx in gripping action*



## D. BLOOD SAMPLE

### *Eligibility*

All core sample members, with the following exceptions, are eligible to give blood.

- **People with clotting or bleeding disorder**  
By clotting or bleeding disorders we mean conditions such as haemophilia and low platelets, i.e. thrombocytopenia. There are many different types of bleeding/clotting disorders but they are all quite rare. With these problems, do not attempt to take blood, even if the disorder is controlled. (People who have a past history of thrombophlebitis, a deep venous thrombosis, a stroke caused by a clot, a myocardial infarction or an embolus are NOT considered to have clotting disorders and should not be excluded).
- **People who have ever had a fit**
- **People who are not willing to give their consent in writing.**
- **People who are currently on anticoagulant drugs, eg Warfarin therapy.**  
Some respondents might be taking anticoagulant drugs such as Warfarin, protamine or acenocoumarol which thin their blood so that they do not stop bleeding easily. If this is the case, then do not take a blood sample. Aspirin therapy is NOT a contraindication to blood sampling.
- **Pregnant women**

If you are uncertain whether a condition constitutes a contraindication to blood sampling, the Survey Doctor will be happy to answer your queries.

### *Consent*

As blood taking is an invasive procedure we need to obtain written consent as well as verbal consent to take it. This has to be obtained from the respondent **in all cases**.

If you cannot obtain written consent, the computer routes accordingly. **On no account** should you ever take blood before you have obtained written consent to do so from the respondent.

There are further written consents we wish to obtain in respect of blood sampling - consent to send the results to the GP, consent to store blood for future analysis, and consent to extract and store DNA. You should seek to obtain all these consents before you take any blood. However, it is not a requirement that respondents consent to all parts. For instance, they may consent to blood collection for immediate laboratory analysis, but not to extraction of DNA. However, if the respondent does not consent to the extraction of their DNA then you should not take blood for the fifth and sixth tubes (see box below). Even if there is no consent given for specimen storage, we would still like to collect blood for immediate analysis, provided of course the respondent consents to blood collection.

The consent form explicitly mentions that HIV tests will not be performed, so that the participants are not placing themselves at risk of financial disadvantage (because some insurance companies may disqualify people, or demand higher premiums, if they have ever been **tested** for HIV, regardless of the result of the test), simply from taking part in the survey.

The questions on the schedules take you step by step through all the procedures for obtaining consents. Make sure you follow these carefully - recording consent codes as instructed and giving reasons for refusals, if applicable. In summary, what you do is:

- a. Ask the respondent if they would be willing to have a blood sample taken. Try to reassure respondents about the process, and be prepared to answer their concerns. You will need to explain to the respondent the need for written consent and how important it is.
- b. Obtain written consents on the appropriate **Blood Sample Consent Form**.
- c. Obtain consent to store blood.
- d. Obtain consent to extract and store DNA.
- e. Obtain consent to send laboratory results to the respondent
- f. Obtain consent to send laboratory results to GP
- g. Check that you have ringed the correct consent codes on the front of the Consent Booklet.

Having checked that you have all the appropriate signatures, and ringed the appropriate codes, you are ready to take the blood sample. If you obtain a sample, note down any problems at SamDifC. If you do not manage to get any blood, explain why not at NoBSM

### ***Purpose***

A blood sample will be collected from respondents who give consent for this. The blood will be analysed for the following:

**Fibrinogen** – A protein necessary for blood clotting. High levels are also associated with a higher risk of heart disease.

**Total cholesterol** – Cholesterol is a type of fat present in the blood, related to diet. Too much cholesterol in the blood increases the risk of heart disease.

**HDL cholesterol** – This is ‘good’ cholesterol which is protective for heart disease.

**Triglycerides** - Together with total and HDL cholesterol, they provide a lipid profile which can give information on the risk of cardiovascular disease.

**Ferritin and Haemoglobin** – These are measures of iron levels in the body and are related to diet and other factors.

**C-reactive protein** – The level of this protein in the blood gives information on inflammatory activity in the body, and it is also associated with risk of heart disease.

**Apolipoprotein E** – This is involved in the transport of cholesterol and plays a protective role.

**Fasting glucose and Glycated haemoglobin** – Both indicate the presence or risk of type 2 diabetes, which is associated with an increased risk of heart disease.

**Genetics** – Genetic factors are associated with some common diseases, such as diabetes and heart disease, and relate to general biological aspects of the ageing process.

The blood will **not** be tested for any viruses, such as HIV (AIDS).

### *Equipment*

Tourniquet	Vacutainer holder
Alcohol swabs	Vacutainer needles 21G (green)
Cotton gauze	Vacutainer needles 22G (black)
Vinyl gloves	Butterfly needles 23G
Adhesive dressing	Needle disposal box
	Vacutainer plain red tubes
Micropore tape	Vacutainer EDTA purple tubes
Set of labels for blood sample tubes	Vacutainer citrate blue tubes
Royal mail ‘safebox’	Vacutainer fluoride grey tubes

### *The blood tubes*

If the respondent has fasted and has given consent for DNA extraction then **SIX** tubes need to be filled. They should be filled in the following order so that, if a

situation arises where there will be insufficient blood to fill all the tubes, the analyses with the highest priority can still be undertaken.

<i>First</i>	4mL citrate tube (blue)
<i>then</i>	6mL plain tube (red)
<i>then</i>	2mL fluoride tube (grey)
<i>then</i>	4mL EDTA tube (purple)
<i>then</i>	4mL EDTA tube (purple)
<i>finally</i>	4mL EDTA tube (purple)

If the respondent consents to blood collection and DNA extraction but not other parts of the consent form, you should still draw ALL SIX vials of blood. If they do not consent to DNA extraction then you should only draw the first FOUR vials. You can then reassure the respondent that no tests will be done where consent has not been granted. If the respondent has not fasted, the grey tube will not be taken.

### *Preparing the respondent*

Ask the respondent if they have had any problems having blood taken before.

1. Explain the procedure to the respondent. The respondent should be seated comfortably in a chair, or if they wish, lying down on a bed or sofa.
2. Ask the respondent to roll up their left sleeve and rest their arm on a suitable surface. Ask them to remove their jacket or any thick clothing, if it is difficult to roll up their sleeve.

The antecubital fossae may then be inspected. It may be necessary to inspect both arms for a suitable choice to be made, and the respondent may have to be repositioned accordingly.

3. Do **not** ask the respondent to clench his/her fist.

Select a suitable vein and apply the tourniquet around the respondent's arm. However, it is desirable to use the tourniquet applying minimal pressure and for the shortest duration of time. Do not leave the tourniquet in place for longer than 2 minutes.

Ask the respondent to keep his/her arm as still as possible during the procedure.

4. Put on your gloves at this point.

Clean the venepuncture site gently with an alcohol swab. Allow the area to dry completely before the sample is drawn.

### *Taking the sample*

You will be taking a maximum of six tubes. Everyone who is eligible and willing to have their blood taken should give at least three tubes of blood (the blue, red and first purple tubes). If the respondent has fasted they will also give blood for the grey tube (you cannot return for a second visit to take a fasting blood sample). If the

respondent has given consent for DNA extraction you should also draw blood for the second and third purple tubes. The CAPI programme will instruct you about which tubes you should draw blood for.

If the respondent agreed to fast or you could not contact them before the visit to tell them to fast then you will need to determine whether or not they have fasted adequately to give a fasting blood sample. You will be prompted to check with the respondent that they have not eaten or drunk anything (except water) in the last five hours. Respondents who have taken medication in the last five hours are eligible to give a fasting blood sample and you do not need to make a note.

If the respondent is eligible and willing to give the sample, complete the consent form obtaining the relevant signatures to take the blood sample and to send the results to the respondent's GP.

Venepuncture is performed with a green twenty one gauge vacutainer needle or butterfly.

Grasp the respondent's arm firmly at the elbow to control the natural tendency for the respondent to pull the arm away when the skin is punctured. Place your thumb an inch or two below the vein and pull gently to make the skin a little taut. This will anchor the vein and make it more visible. Ensure the needle is bevelled upwards, enter the vein in a smooth continuous motion.

Remember to take the tubes in the correct order. The first tube should always be the blue citrate tube, followed by the large plain tube with the red cap followed by the grey fluoride tube (if the respondent has fasted) and then the three EDTA tubes (or only one if the respondent refused to give consent for DNA extraction). The vacutainers should be filled to capacity in turn and inverted gently on removal to ensure complete mixing of blood and preservative.

Release the tourniquet (if not already loosened) as the blood starts to be drawn into the tube. Remove the needle and place a cotton gauze firmly over the venepuncture site. Ask the respondent to hold the pad firmly for three minutes to prevent haematoma formation.

If venepuncture is unsuccessful on the first attempt, make a second attempt on the other arm. If a second attempt is unsuccessful, DO NOT attempt to try again. Record the number of attempts on the Schedule.

Record which arm the sample was drawn from (or both).

*IMPORTANT WARNING*

**Never re-sheath the needle after use.**

**Do not allow the disposal box to become overfull as this can**

**present a potential hazard.**

Check on the venepuncture site and affix an adhesive dressing, if the respondent is not allergic to them. If they are allergic, use cotton gauze secured with micropore.

If the respondent has fasted for the blood sample then when you have finished taking blood allow the respondent to eat something as soon as possible.

### *Fainting respondents*

If a respondent looks or feels faint during the procedure, it should be discontinued. The respondent should be asked to lie down with their feet elevated.

If they are happy for the test to be continued after a suitable length of time, it should be done so with the respondent supine and the circumstances should be recorded. They may wish to discontinue the procedure at this point, but willing to give the blood sample at a later time.

### *Disposal of needles and other materials*

Place the used needles, the used cotton gauze and the vacutainer holders in the sharps box and put gloves etc in the self-seal disposal bag. The needle disposable box should be taken to your local hospital or GP practice for incineration. Telephone them beforehand, if you are not sure where to go.

If you have difficulties with finding a hospital or practice, contact your local pharmacist. If you need to pay a fee for the sharps box disposal, you will be fully reimbursed. Please telephone Brentwood to let them know the cost per sharps box before you give them to the pharmacy. If you come across any problems with the disposal, contact the Survey Doctor or Brentwood. The sealed bag can be disposed of with household waste as long as it does not have any items in it that are contaminated by blood.

### *Needle stick injuries*

Any nurse who sustains such an injury should seek immediate advice from their GP. The nurse should inform his/her nurse supervisor of the incident, and the nurse supervisor should inform the survey doctor.

### *Respondents who are HIV or Hepatitis B positive*

If a respondent **volunteers** that they are HIV or Hepatitis B positive, do **not** take a blood sample. Record this as the reason on the Schedule. You should never, of course, seek this information.

### *Sending blood samples to laboratories*

The samples are sent to the Royal Victoria Infirmary Laboratory in Newcastle-upon-Tyne. It is important that all samples are sent properly labelled and safely packaged and that they are despatched immediately after they have been taken.

### ***Labelling the Blood Tubes***

- Label the tubes as you take the blood.
- Use the set of serial number barcode labels to label the vacutainer tubes.
- You have one sheet of labels per respondent - check the serial number, person number, full name and date of birth printed in the top left of each one.
- Attach one serial number barcode label to every tube that you send to the lab.
- Do **not** write any information (such as date of birth) on the labels.

### **Important**

We cannot stress too much the importance of ensuring that you label each tube with the correct serial number for the person from whom the blood was obtained. Apart from the risk of matching up the blood analyses to the wrong person's data, we will be sending the GP the wrong results. Imagine if we detect an abnormality and you have attached the wrong label to the tube!

### **On DESPATCH :**

The Office Consent Booklet contains two separate Despatch Notes that should be filled in for each blood sample (one for Newcastle, and one for Brentwood).

### ***Completing the Newcastle Blood Despatch Note***

- Affix the respondent's barcoded serial number label at question 1 - do so very carefully. This should both correspond to the serial number on the label on page 1 of the Consent Booklet and to those you have stuck on the tubes.
- Complete items 2, 3, and 4. Check that the date of birth is correct and consistent with entry on the nurse schedule and the tube label.
- At Item 5 enter your Nurse Number.
- At Item 6 code if the respondent fasted for at least 5 hours before the blood sample was taken.
- At Item 7 ring a code to tell the laboratory whether or not permission has been obtained to store part of the blood. Your entry here should correspond to your entry at Item 8f on the front page of the booklet.
- At Item 8 tick each of the tubes collected.

### ***Completing the Office (Brentwood) Blood Despatch Note***

At item 6, affix a serial number barcode label that corresponds to those used on the Newcastle Despatch Note, the tubes, and the front of the consent form.

- Tick the samples you are returning at item 1. This indicates what we should expect back from the laboratory. Note if any of the samples were incomplete.
- Code the respondent's sex at item 2.
- Write in their date of birth at item 3 (check this corresponds with the barcode labels, NRF etc.).
- Write in the date the blood is taken at item 4.
- Write in the date the blood is despatched at item 5. This tells us the date you sent the samples to the labs.
- Write in your nurse number at item 7.

If you have only achieved an incomplete blood sample (e.g. have only filled one tube), please state this clearly on both copies of the despatch note and give the reason.

### *Packaging the blood samples*

All tubes from one person should be packed together in one despatch container with the Newcastle Despatch Form.

You will be given Royal Mail Safeboxes which contain:

- An absorbent insert
  - A transparent bag
1. Insert the blood sample tubes in the pockets of the absorbent insert.
  2. Roll the insert
  3. Place the rolled insert in the transparent bag and place into the leak proof sample compartment (this is the larger of the two compartments). Be sure to put it in the correct side!
  4. Place the Newcastle Despatch Note in the compartment next to the sample compartment.
  5. Close the box – please note, once closed the box cannot be re-opened. Do not seal the mailing box with tape.

### *Despatching blood samples*

You will be sending all the bloods, properly labelled and safely packaged, to the Royal Victoria Infirmary Laboratory in Newcastle-upon-Tyne. Pack the tubes for each respondent separately from those of other members of the household.

- Post the safe-box directly into a letter-box – it is already paid for.
- Post the bloods in a standard letter box in all instances except rare circumstances, e.g. your local letter box is very old and does not take the safeboxes and you do not pass another on your daily route. If you do have to make a trip to the post office you will be able to get a fee.

Do not take the safe box to the post office because you dislike or distrust them. They are very expensive and save time so that you can get on with other things.

- The samples should be posted within 24 hours of being taken.
- Try to avoid taking a sample if you think that you will be unable to post it within 24 hours.
- If you miss the Saturday post collection, the sample must be posted on the following Monday morning.
- If you are unable to post the samples immediately, they can be stored at room temperature.

**When you have posted the samples, fill in the time and date of posting on the Office Copy of the Despatch Notes and return this to Brentwood with the Consent Forms.**

## E. HEIGHT MEASUREMENT

### *Introduction*

For ELSA, nurses are taking the height (both standing and sitting) and weight. It is important to measure everyone possible and to get both height and weight measurements from everyone who takes part as both are used to calculate BMI (Weight kg/height M<sup>2</sup>).

**Accuracy** is very important and we need to make sure that everyone is measuring in **same way**.

### STANDING HEIGHT MEASUREMENT

#### *The equipment*

You are provided with a portable stadiometer. It is a collapsible device with a sliding head plate, a base plate and four connecting rods marked with a measuring scale.

Please take great care of this equipment. It is delicate and expensive. Particular care needs to be paid when assembling and dismantling the stadiometer and when carrying and repacking it in the bag provided.

- Do not bend the head or base plate.
- Do not bend the rods.
- Do not drop it and be careful not to knock the corners of the rods or base plate pin.
- Assemble and dismantle the stadiometer slowly and carefully.

The stadiometer will be sent to you in a tennis bag. Always store the stadiometer in the bag when it is not in use and always pack the stadiometer carefully in the bag whenever you are sending it on by courier.

#### *The rods*

There are four rods marked with a measuring scale divided into centimetres and then further subdivided into millimetres. (If you are not familiar with the metric system note that there are ten millimetres in a centimetre and that one hundred centimetres make a metre). The rods are made of plastic and you must avoid putting any kind of pressure on them which could cause them to break. Be very careful not to damage the corners of the rods as this will prevent them from fitting together properly and will lead to a loss of accuracy in the measurements.

#### *The base plate*

Be careful not to damage the corners of the base plate as this could lead to a loss of accuracy in the measurements.

Protruding from the base plate is a section onto which you attach the rods in order to assemble the stadiometer. Damage to the corners of this section may mean that the rods do not stand at the correct angle to the base plate when the stadiometer is assembled and the measurements could be affected.

### *The head plate*

There are two parts to the head plate; the plate and the spirit level. Please be careful as experience has shown these are easily broken.

### *Assembling the stadiometer*

1. Lie the base plate flat on the floor area where you are to conduct the measurements.
2. Take the first rod, it should fit snugly into the base plate. Place the other three rods in the correct order, one on top of each other.

### *Dismantling the stadiometer*

Follow these rules:

1. Before you begin to dismantle the stadiometer you must remember to lower the head plate to its lowest position, so that the blade is lying flat against the base plate.
2. Remove one rod at a time.

### *The Protocol*

1. Ask the respondent to remove their shoes in order to obtain a measurement that is as accurate as possible.
2. Assemble the stadiometer and raise the headplate to allow sufficient room for the respondent to stand underneath it. Double check that you have assembled the stadiometer correctly.
3. The respondent should stand with their feet flat on the centre of the base plate, feet together and heels against the rod. The respondent's back should be as straight as possible, preferably against the rod but NOT leaning on it. They should have their arms hanging loosely by their sides. They should be facing forwards.
4. Move the respondent's head so that the Frankfort Plane is in a horizontal position (i.e. parallel to the floor). The Frankfort Plane is an imaginary line passing through the external ear canal and across the top of the lower bone of the eye socket, immediately under the eye (see diagram on the Frankfort Plane Card in your workpack). This position is important if an accurate reading is to be obtained. An additional check is to ensure that the measuring arm rests on the crown of the head, i.e. the top back half. To make sure that the Frankfort Plane is horizontal, you can use the Frankfort Plane Card to line up the bottom of the eye socket with the flap of skin on the ear. The Frankfort Plane is horizontal when the card is parallel to the stadiometer arm.
5. Instruct the respondent to keep their eyes focused on a point straight ahead, to breathe in deeply and to stretch to their fullest height. If after stretching up the respondent's head is no longer horizontal, repeat the procedure. It can be difficult to determine whether the stadiometer headplate is resting on the respondent's

head. If so, ask the respondent to tell you when s/he feels it touching their head by raising an arm.

6. Ask the respondent to step forwards. If the measurement has been done correctly the respondent will be able to step off the stadiometer without ducking their head. Make sure that the head plate does not move when the respondent does this.
7. The head plate attachment contains the pointer from which to read the measurement. Look at the arrow within the pointer and take the reading from this point and record the respondent's height in centimetres and millimetres. You may at this time record the respondent's height onto their Measurement Record Card and at the question *MbookHt* you will be asked to check that you have done so. At that point the computer will display the recorded height in both centimetres and in feet and inches. At *RelHite* you will be asked to code whether the measurement you obtained was reliable or unreliable.
8. Height must be recorded in centimetres and millimetres, eg 176.5 cms. If a measurement falls between two **millimetres**, it should be recorded to the **nearest even millimetre**. For example, if the respondent's height is between 176.4 and 176.5 cms, you should round it down to 176.4. Likewise, if a respondent's height is between 176.5 and 176.6 cms, you should round it up to 176.6 cms.
9. Push the head plate high enough to avoid any member of the household hitting their head against it when getting ready to be measured.

### ***Height refused, not attempted or attempted but not obtained***

At *RespHts* you are asked to code whether the measurement was taken, refused, attempted but not obtained or not attempted. If for any reason you cannot get a height measurement, enter the appropriate code at this question and you will automatically be routed to the relevant follow up questions (*ResNHi* and *NoHtBC*) which will allow you to say why no measurement was obtained.

### ***Additional points - all respondents***

1. If the respondent cannot stand upright with their back against the stadiometer and have their heels against the rod (e.g. those with protruding bottoms) then give priority to standing upright.
2. If the respondent has a hair style which stands well above the top of their head, (or is wearing a turban), bring the headplate down until it touches the hair/turban. With some hairstyles you can compress the hair to touch the head. If you cannot lower the headplate to touch the head, and think that this will lead to an unreliable measure, record this at question *RelHite*. If it is a hairstyle that can be altered, e.g. a bun, if possible ask the respondent to change/undo it.
3. If the respondent is tall, it can be difficult to line up the Frankfurt Plane in the way described. When you think that the plane is horizontal, take one step back to check from a short distance that this is the case.
4. You may need to tip the stadiometer to read the height of tall respondents.

5. If the respondent has long hair then you may need to tuck it behind their ear in order to position the head properly. If you do this then ask permission to touch it first!

## SITTING HEIGHT

### *Why we do this test*

We measure sitting height as well as standing height to get an idea of body proportions, i.e. the length of the legs relative to the body trunk. Although both trunk and leg length reflect conditions in childhood as well as genetic factors, the length of the leg is thought to be a better indicator of early life conditions (nutrition) affecting growth.

### *Eligibility*

Everyone who gives consent is eligible for this test.

### *Procedure*

1. Remove the top 1 or 2 sections of the measuring rod
2. Find a hard chair with as flat a seat as possible. Place the base of the stadiometer on the chair with the measuring rod at the back
3. Ask the respondent to sit on the base plate with his/her back to the rod. Ensure that the respondent is sitting as far back and as upright as possible. Try to ensure that the rod is as vertical as possible. Check that their back is as straight as possible
4. Position the head in the Frankfort Plane. Bring the head plate down until it gently rests on the highest part of the subject's head. Press down to flatten their hair if necessary.
5. Take the height reading indicated by the arrowhead. As with standing height, sitting height must be recorded in centimetres and millimetres, eg 176.5 cms. If a measurement falls between two **millimetres**, it should be recorded to the **nearest even millimetre**. For example, if the respondent's height is between 176.4 and 176.5 cms, you should round it down to 176.4. Likewise, if a respondent's height is between 176.5 and 176.6 cms, you should round it up to 176.6 cms.

### **Troubleshooting:**

1. On being instructed to sit back as far as possible many people will lean against a measuring rod. Encourage them to sit upright, so that the rod is vertical.
2. If there isn't a suitable chair or table it might be possible to use stairs: in some houses there are a few steps and then a level section on which you can place the base plate (the measure can then be taken with the respondent's thighs supported). As a last resort, measure sitting height with the respondent on the floor: place the base of the stadiometer onto the floor with the measuring rod against a wall. Ask the respondent to sit on the base plate with their back against

the rod and their legs as straight as possible lying in front of them. Take care that the subject is sitting upright. Continue as above. Before you attempt to take the measure with the respondent seated on the floor you should ensure that both you and the respondent are satisfied that this will be safe.

## F. WEIGHT MEASUREMENTS

### *Introduction*

For ELSA, nurses are taking the height (both standing and sitting) and weight. It is important to measure everyone possible and to get both height and weight measurements from everyone who takes part as both are used to calculate BMI (Weight kg/height M<sup>2</sup>).

Because of this, it is particularly important that if you have any **problems with equipment** that you sort them out as soon as possible. We could lose a lot of weight measurements because of equipment not working. If there is a problem with your equipment please contact Helen Selwood or your supervisor straight away.

### *Equipment: Tanita THD-305 Scales*

The scales take four 1.5v AA batteries. **Please ensure that you have some spare batteries with you in case you need to replace them.** If you need to change the batteries, please claim the money back in the usual way. The batteries used are commonly available. We don't want to lose measurements because of faulty equipment, and you might have to go back to a household if this happens.

The battery compartment is on the bottom of the scales. As there is no on/off switch, when you receive your scales the batteries may be packed separately or one of the batteries may have been turned the wrong way round. Before going out to work, place the batteries correctly and check that the scales work. If they do not, check that the batteries are connected properly and try new batteries. If they do still not work, report the fault to your Area Manager/Health Manager or directly to Brentwood.

**When you are storing the scales or sending them through the post please make sure you remove the batteries to stop the scales turning themselves on.**

The reading is only in metric units, but as for height, the computer provides a conversion. If the respondent would like to know their weight in stones and pounds you will be able to tell them when the computer has done the calculation.

### *The Protocol*

1. Weigh the respondent on a hard and even surface if possible. Carpets may affect measurements. The CAPI will ask you to code what surface you did the measurements on.
2. Switch on the scales by pressing the button on the bottom right hand corner of the scales. The readout should display 888.8 momentarily. If this is not

displayed check the batteries. If the batteries are OK, report the problem to Brentwood. While the scales read 888.8 do not attempt to weigh anyone.

3. Ask the respondent to remove shoes, heavy outer garments such as jackets and cardigans, heavy jewellery, loose change and keys.
4. Turn the scales on with your foot again. Wait for a display of 0.0 before the respondent stands on the scales.
5. Ask the respondent to stand with their feet together in the centre and their heels against the back edge of the scales. Their arms should be hanging loosely at their sides and their head should be facing forward. Ensure that they keep looking ahead – it may be tempting for the respondent to look down at their weight reading. Ask them not to do this and assure them that you will tell them their weight afterwards if they want to know.
6. The posture of the respondent is important. If they stand to one side, look down, or do not otherwise have their weight evenly spread, it can affect the reading.
7. The scales will take a short while to stabilise. The weight reading will flash on and off when it has stabilised. If the respondent moves excessively while the scales are stabilising you may get a false reading. If you think this is the case reweigh the respondent.
8. The scales have been calibrated in kilograms and 100 gram units (0.1 kg). Record the reading into the computer at the question *Weight* before the respondent steps off the scales. At question *MBookWt* you will be asked to check that you have entered the respondent's weight onto their Measurement Record Card. At that point the computer will display the measured weight in both kilos and in stones and pounds.
9. The scales should switch off automatically a few seconds after the respondent steps off them.

#### **WARNING**

The maximum weight registering accurately on the scales is 130kg (20½ stone). If you think the respondent exceeds this limit code them as “Weight not attempted” at *RespWts*. The computer will display a question asking them for an estimate. Do not attempt to weigh them.

### ***Additional Points***

Do not weigh a respondent if they are too frail or unable to stand up straight (or anyone who is pregnant). If the respondent is quite frail or unstable, put the scales near a stable surface so the respondent can steady themselves.

The scales are fragile and expensive. Put them on the floors of your car, not the back seat, or carry them around in the boot of your car in the stadiometer bag. Be careful with the corners as they are easily damaged.

Make sure you know how your scales work: have a practice with friends and family.

### ***Weight refused, not attempted or attempted but not obtained***

At *RespWts* you are asked to code whether the measurement was taken, refused, attempted but not obtained, or not attempted. If for any reason you cannot get a weight measurement, enter the appropriate code at this question and you will automatically be routed to the relevant follow up questions (*ResNWt* and *NoWtBC*) which will allow you to say why no measurement was obtained.

## **G. WAIST AND HIP CIRCUMFERENCES**

### ***Purpose***

There has been increasing interest in the distribution of body fat as an important indicator of increased risk of cardiovascular disease. The waist-to-hip ratio is a measure of distribution of body fat (both subcutaneous and intra-abdominal). Analyses suggest that this ratio is a predictor of health risk like the body mass index (weight relative to height).

### ***Equipment***

Insertion tape calibrated in mm, with a clear plastic buckle at one end.

The tape is passed around the circumference and the end of the tape is inserted through the buckle at the other end of the tape.

### ***Eligibility***

The respondent is ineligible for the waist and hip measurement if they:

- a. are chairbound
- b. have a colostomy or ileostomy

If (a) and/or (b) apply, record this on the computer (question *WHPNABM*). If there are any other reasons why the measurement was not taken, record this on the computer and type in the reason.

### ***Preparing the respondent***

You will have asked the respondent to wear light clothing for your visit. Explain to the respondent the importance of this measurement and that clothing can substantially affect the reading.

If possible, without embarrassing you or the respondent, ensure that the following items of clothing are removed:

- all outer layers of clothing, such as jackets, heavy or baggy jumpers, cardigans and waistcoats
- shoes with heels
- tight garments intended to alter the shape of the body, such as corsets, lycra body suits and support tights

If the respondent is wearing a belt, ask them if it would be possible to remove it or loosen it for the measurement.

Pockets should be emptied.

If the respondent is not willing to remove bulky outer garments or tight garments and you are of the opinion that this will significantly affect the measurement, record this on the Schedule at questions *WJRel* and/or *HJRel*.

If possible, ask the respondent to empty their bladder before taking the measurement.

### *Using the insertion tape*

All measurements should be taken to the nearest millimetre. If the length lies between two millimetres, then round to the nearest even millimetre. For example, if the measurement is halfway between 68.3 and 68.4, round up to 68.4. And if the measurement is halfway between 68.8 and 68.9, round down to 68.8.

Please note that you must enter the measurement to one decimal place - do not round it to the nearest centimetre. For example, enter '78.2', not just '78'. If you do not enter a decimal point, the computer will give you a warning. If the measurement is exactly, say, 78cm, then all you need to do is suppress the warning and it will automatically fill in the '.0' for you. Otherwise, you must go back and amend your answer. As a further check, the computer will also ask you to confirm that a measurement ending in '.0' is correct.

Ensure the respondent is standing erect in a relaxed manner and breathing normally. Weight should be evenly balanced on both feet and the feet should be about 25-30cm (1 foot) apart. The arms should be hanging loosely at their sides.

If possible, kneel or sit on a chair to the side of the respondent.

Pass the tape around the body of the respondent and insert the plain end of the tape through the plastic buckle at the other end of the tape.

To check the tape is horizontal you have to position the tape on the right flank and peer round the participant's back from his/her left flank to check that it is level. This will be easier if you are kneeling or sitting on a chair to the side of the respondent.

Hold the buckle flat against the body and flatten the end of the tape to read the measurement from the outer edge of the buckle. Do not pull the tape towards you, as this will lift away from the respondent's body, affecting the measurement.

### *Measuring waist circumference*

1. The waist is defined as the point midway between the iliac crest and the costal margin (lower rib). To locate the levels of the costal margin and the iliac crest use the fingers of the right hand held straight and pointing in front of the participant to slide upward over the iliac crest. Men's waists tend to be above the top of their trousers whereas women's waists are often under the waistband of their trousers or skirts.
2. Do not try to avoid the effects of waistbands by measuring the circumference at a different position or by lifting or lowering clothing items. For example, if the respondent has a waistband at the correct level of the waist (midway between the lower rib margin and the iliac crest) measure the waist circumference over the waistband.
3. Ensure the tape is horizontal. Ask the participant to breathe out gently and to look straight ahead (to prevent the respondent from contracting their muscles or holding their breath). Take the measurement at the end of a normal expiration. Measure to the nearest millimetre and record this on the schedule. Remember the rounding rule that if the length lies between two millimetres, then round to the nearest even millimetre
4. Repeat this measurement again once you have measured the hip circumference.
5. If you are of the opinion that clothing, posture or any other factor is significantly affecting the waist measurement, record this on the schedule.

### *Measuring hip circumference*

1. The hip circumference is defined as being the widest circumference over the buttocks and below the iliac crest. To obtain an accurate measurement you should measure the circumference at several positions and record the widest circumference.
2. Check the tape is horizontal and the respondent is not contracting the gluteal muscles. Pull the tape, allowing it to maintain its position but not to cause indentation. Record the measurement on the schedule to the nearest millimetre. Remember the rounding rule that if the length lies between two millimetres, then round to the nearest even millimetre
3. If clothing is significantly affecting the measurement, record this on the schedule.
4. Repeat this measurement again once you have done the second waist measurement.

### *General points*

The tape should be tight enough so that it doesn't slip but not tight enough to indent clothing. If clothing is baggy, it should be folded before the measure is taken.

If the respondent is large, ask him/her to pass the tape around rather than having to "hug" them. Remember though to check that the tape is correctly placed for the measurement being taken and that the tape is horizontal all the way around.

If your second waist or hip measurement differs by 3cm or more from the first, the computer will give you a warning. If you have made a mistake when entering the figures (e.g. typed 78.2 instead of 68.2), you should type over the mistake. If it was not a mistake, you should suppress the warning and take a third measurement.

If you have problems palpating the rib, ask the respondent to breathe in very deeply. Locate the rib and as the respondent breathes out, follow the rib as it moves down with your finger. If your respondent has a bow at the back of her skirt, this should be untied as it may add a substantial amount to the waist circumference.

Female respondents wearing jeans may present a problem if the waistband of the jeans is on the waist at the back but dips down at the front. It is essential that the waist measurement is taken midway between the iliac crest and the lower rib and that the tape is horizontal. Therefore in this circumstance the waist measurement would be taken on the waist band at the back and off the waist band at the front. Only if the waistband is over the waist all the way around can the measurement be taken on the waistband. If there are belt loops, the tape should be threaded through these so they don't add to the measurement.

### ***Recording problems***

We only want to record problems that will affect the measurement by more than would be expected when measuring over light clothing. As a rough guide only record a problem if you feel it affected the measurements by more than 0.5cm. We particularly want to know if the waist and hip measurements have been affected differently.

## **H. LUNG FUNCTION**

### ***Purpose***

Lung function tests objectively assess respiratory impairment if it is present. We will be measuring forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV 1), forced vital capacity (FVC) and peak expiratory flow (PEF). These measures can be reduced for a wide range of reasons, eg physical unfitness, smoking, chronic bronchitis, asthma that has been poorly controlled for many years, some muscular disorders and many others. At a population level, these measures tell us a lot about the respiratory health of the population, and are also indicators of general health.

The definition of an acceptable level of lung function depends on the person's age, sex and height. A diagnosis of abnormality is not based on measurement on a single occasion but is rather based on several measurements and on the person's clinical history. Prior to making the measurement, we wish you to explain this to the respondents.

## *Eligibility*

All respondents are eligible, including any chairbound respondents, unless they:

- a) have had abdominal or chest surgery in the preceding three weeks.
- b) have been admitted to hospital with a HEART complaint in the preceding six weeks.
- c) have had eye surgery in the preceding 4 weeks.
- d) are pregnant.
- e) Those with a trachostomy.

## *Equipment*

The Vitalograph Escort spirometer and case

1 litre calibration syringe

Disposable cardboard mouthpieces

## *Use of the spirometer*

1. Allow the spirometer to equilibrate to room temperature before the lung function tests are performed. Unpack it as soon as possible and keep it away from the sun, fires or radiators.
2. Explain the test to the respondent. Demonstrate the blowing technique and ask the respondent to practise using a mouthpiece alone.
3. Turn on the spirometer using the on/off button. Check that the "low battery" symbol is not showing. (Note that the Micro will power down automatically if it is not used within two minutes.)
4. Wait a few seconds until the "blow" symbol appears, accompanied by two beeps.
5. Instruct the respondent to perform a forced expiratory manoeuvre as described below. If the blow is technically unsatisfactory, turn off the spirometer and redo steps 3 onwards.
6. On completion of the blow, the LCD will display FVC. Record this in the CAPI. Press the "down arrow" to display (in turn) FEV1 and PEF. Record in the CAPI.
7. **Switch off** the spirometer between each blow. This is important, otherwise the figures displayed will be those from the best of a series of tests, and not necessarily the last blow performed. We need to record all the results from three technically satisfactory blows.
8. Offer to record the lung function readings on the respondent's Measurement Record Card. Choose the highest reading of FVC, FEV1 and PEF, even if they come from different blows.
9. The CAPI will prompt you for the total number of blows the respondent made (including technically unsatisfactory or practice blows) and whether the respondent was standing or sitting (the latter is acceptable only for chairbound subjects).

## *Instruction of the respondent*

Satisfactory measurement of lung function depends as much on adequate instruction and encouragement of the respondent as on the technical capacity of the spirometer.

1. The respondent should stand up (unless chairbound) and loosen tight clothing. Dentures need not be removed.
2. Explain that “you must try to blow out as much air as possible as hard and as fast as you can”.
3. Demonstrate the correct technique yourself, using a mouthpiece unconnected to the spirometer. Explain that the mouthpiece should be held in place by the lips rather than the teeth and the lips should be wrapped firmly around it.
4. Demonstrate a blow, pointing out (afterwards) the need for full inspiration, a vigorous start to exhalation (for maximum peak flow) and sustained expiration (for accurate measurement of forced vital capacity). The blow should be at least 3 seconds duration and not interrupted by coughing, laughing or leakage of air. The torso should remain in an upright position throughout the blow (not hunched over at the end).
5. Give the respondent a clean disposable mouthpiece. Allow the respondent at least one practice blow with the mouthpiece alone. Correct their technique and offer further instruction or encouragement as necessary.
6. Attach the respondent’s mouthpiece to the flowhead and hand the spirometer to them gently (sudden jerks can destabilise the unit). If a single beep sounds at this point, wait for the spirometer to stabilise, indicated by a further double beep, before proceeding with the test.
7. Ask the respondent to take as deep a breath as possible, keeping the spirometer away from their mouth, and then to hold the mouthpiece with their lips and seal their lips around it. Check that the spirometer is held below the flowhead and the subject’s hand is not obstructing the flowhead outlet.
8. Then say “now blow!”. As the respondent is blowing encourage him/her by saying “keep going, keep going, keep going...”. Observe the respondent closely for satisfactory technique (see item 4 above).
9. Record the results as described in items 6-8 in the ‘Use of spirometer’ section above.
10. Aim to obtain **three technically satisfactory blows**. Most subjects should be able to manage this but there may be some who cannot. You must strike a balance between encouragement and over-insistence. Do not declare a blow unsatisfactory on the basis of the result alone. Pay close attention while the respondent is performing the test and repeat your demonstration a second or third time if necessary.

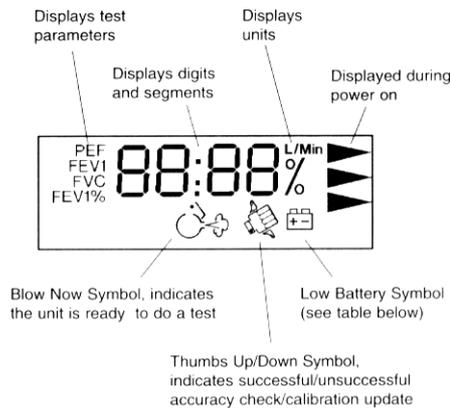
### *Technically unsatisfactory blows*

- Unsatisfactory start: excessive hesitation or “false start”. It is probable that the spirometer will not record this blow (or record FVC as zero), but sometimes it will give a spurious reading.
- Laughing or coughing, especially during the first second of the blow. Some people will cough a little towards the end of expiration (particularly if this extends to 5 or 6 seconds) but this is acceptable.
- Holding the breath against a closed glottis (Valsalva manoeuvre). This results in spuriously high PEF!
- Leakage of air around the mouthpiece.
- Obstruction of the mouthpiece by tongue or teeth.
- Obstruction of the flowhead outlet by hands.

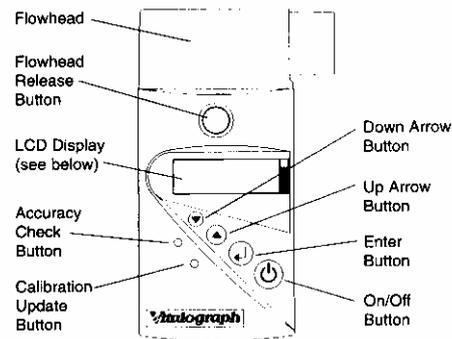
If the spirometer takes more than 3 seconds to display FVC after the end of the blow, it is likely that the results (particularly for FVC) are spurious. The test should be repeated.

## The Structure of the Spirometer

### Vitalograph micro Display



### Vitalograph micro Unit



Symbol (on or flashing)	Condition	Result	Action
	Battery Low	You can perform test	Replace PP3 battery
	Battery nearly dead	You cannot perform test	Replace PP3 battery

### Important points to note

1. Take a spare battery with you in case of battery failure.
2. Whenever the "ON" button is pressed to perform a new test, ensure that the spirometer is placed on a flat surface with the mouthpiece pointing upwards.
3. The respondent should hold the unit with the handle pointing **downwards** during the testing.
4. Once a month or after every 50 respondents remove the flowhead and clean it hot soapy water and allow it to dry overnight before refitting.
5. When necessary clean the exterior with a lint-free damp cloth. Do NOT clean the two white cylindrical filters on the top of the unit.

### Calibration/accuracy test

1. Ensure that the spirometer and syringe have been in the same temperature environment for at least an hour.
2. Connect the spirometer, by the flow head, to the syringe and pump through a few litres of air. Then disconnect the spirometer.
3. Switch on the spirometer and press the small top most button to the left of the arrow keys. The display will show a number.
4. Check display is 01 - if not adjust with up/down arrow keys.

5. Press the left arrow key (the enter button) and wait until display shows blow now symbol and thumbs down.
6. Making sure the syringe piston is fully withdrawn, connect the syringe to the flow head.
7. Using one swift, smooth stroke pump in the volume of air (about 1 second). Don't cover the outlet with your hand.
8. Listen for a double beep then withdraw the piston fully and repeat step 7 until 5 beeps occur. It is very important to wait for the double beep before withdrawing the piston each time.
9. If "thumbs up" is displayed, the spirometer has been correctly calibrated.
10. If a 'thumbs down' sign appears on the display, then the spirometer is outside the accuracy requirements – contact Brentwood to arrange for a replacement.
11. Press the "On/Off" button to switch off.

***Fault finding guide – see HSE***

<b>Nothing is displayed when the "ON" button is pressed:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace battery</li> <li>• Display panel failure – contact Brentwood</li> <li>• The "ON" button is not being held down for long enough.</li> </ul>
<b>False readings suspected:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure the unit is being held correctly during the test.</li> <li>• Re-test accuracy.</li> </ul>
<b>Calibration values vary greatly:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure the correct calibration procedure is being followed.</li> <li>• Start calibration syringe stroke sharply.</li> </ul>

## **I. PHYSICAL PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

### ***Introduction and purpose***

The purpose of these tests is to objectively measure the overall health and level of disability of a large population of people aged 50 and over. Taken alongside the walking speed measurement that the interviewer takes, these measures form a battery of tests that have been shown to be highly predictive of level of disability, future use of health care and mortality. These tests will allow us to gather very important information about the respondents.

### *Eligibility criteria for the tests*

You should be able to take measurements of nearly all of the respondents. However, in some cases it may not be possible or appropriate to do so. Do not force a respondent to be measured if it is clear that the measurement will be far from reliable, but whenever you think a reasonable measurement can be taken, do so. Also, do not take a measurement if you or the respondent consider it unsafe to do so. The measurements are introduced by some check questions. If the respondent answers positively at these questions s/he may not be able to complete the tests. Stop, discuss what the test involves and make your decision. If it has been decided to exclude a respondent from one test, do not automatically exclude them from the other tests. The CAPI will direct you to the next measure, and you should discuss each one in turn with the respondent.

Respondents should **not** be measured if:

- they are chairbound or wheelchair bound (although they may be able to do some of the tests).
- after discussion with them it becomes clear that they are too unsteady on their feet for these measurements.
- they find it painful to stand.
- you or the respondent consider it unsafe to conduct the measurement.

If the respondent is not willing to take part in the tests, for example saying that they are too busy, code as **Refused** and code the reason for refusal. DO NOT use the 'Not attempted' code for these cases.

### *Encouragement*

Follow the instructions in the Protocol as closely as possible to describe the test and how to perform it properly. Do not provide additional encouragement beyond the language provided by the detailed instructions. After each measure, acknowledge the respondent's efforts but do not give feedback, as this may be discouraging. Neutral phrases such as "Thank you" or "That's fine" are examples of the kinds of things you could say, but you say whatever you are most comfortable with.

To some respondents the detailed verbal instructions may seem unnecessary. It may help to say that you are going to explain each test to the respondent in detail since this is the best way to make sure that everyone does the test in a similar manner.

### *Demonstrations*

First explain and then demonstrate each manoeuvre for the respondent. Remind the respondent not to begin to do the manoeuvre until after you have demonstrated it. It may help to achieve this if the respondent is seated during your explanation and demonstration. It is very important that you demonstrate each step correctly. Experience has shown that respondents follow more closely what the interviewer does rather than what s/he says. If the respondent indicates that s/he does not understand the manoeuvre, demonstrate it again rather than relying on repeating verbal instructions. **Repeat the demonstration only once.** If the respondent still does not understand, skip the test and move to the next one. Do not 'coach' the respondent.

## *Aids*

Walking Aids such as canes, walkers or crutches may not be used for the single and repeated chair stands test or for the balance or leg raise tests.

## *Safety precautions and prevention of injuries*

Obstructions that could cause accidents should be removed. The participant should be questioned to ensure that the instructions have been understood. If a participant is uncomfortable performing a specific test or if you feel that a procedure is not safe for a given individual, the test should not be performed. If necessary, stabilise them lightly holding their arm or allowing them to lean against you until their feet are in position. If they feel unsteady, even with support, don't let them try the procedure. When the participant is performing the test, stand close enough to assist them if they begin to falter but far enough away not hinder them if they have to use their arms to maintain their balance. The respondent should ideally be positioned between you and a stable surface, such as a wall or table.

If you find yourself in a situation where the respondent appears to lose balance, you may want to help them to recover their balance by placing both hands on their trunk. If the respondent begins to fall it is not safe to try to catch them. It is more appropriate to attempt to steady them or, if necessary, to slowly ease them to the floor. Do not hold their arm, hold around their body. This will prevent the respondent **and you** from becoming injured.

If the respondent does fall call for help if appropriate, but if they are not injured, help them by first having them get on their knees or on all fours. Place a chair next to the respondent and have them support themselves onto the chair. If assistance is needed, lift under the shoulders – do not hold their arm, hold around their body. Do not try to lift the respondent alone from the floor or put yourself at risk. Remember to seek help if it is needed and to complete a report for any incident of this kind.

If the respondent loses their balance or falls, do not attempt to complete the measures.

It is strongly preferable to conduct the chair rise and balance measurements on a floor that is level and not carpeted. If all the household is carpeted, choose a floor with the thinnest and hardest carpet.

## *Footwear*

It is strongly suggested that this activity is performed in shoes with very low or no heels. It is hard to perform normally with shoes with heels on. Ask the respondent if the footwear they are wearing is what they wear most of the time around the house. Soft soled, heel-less slippers, or just socks or tights should not be worn, since they may cause the respondent to slip. The respondent can do the measures in bare feet if they do not have appropriate shoes.

## *Content of balance measures*

The balance measure (including leg raises) evaluates the respondents' ability to balance, using five components: side-by-side, semi-tandem and full tandem, and for

those aged 69 and under, leg raise with eyes open and leg raise with eyes closed. The CAPI programme will work out the respondent's age for you so you do not need to worry about selecting the correct route. However, you should understand how the measures differ between age groups.

- All ages start with the side by side for 10 seconds.
- If they pass the side by side they should then do the semi-tandem stand for 10 seconds.
- Respondents who pass the semi-tandem stand should then do the full tandem stand. If the respondent is aged 69 and under they should attempt the full tandem stand for 30 seconds. If the respondent is 70 or over they should only do the full tandem stand for 10 seconds.
- People aged 69 and under who successfully pass the side by side stand should then attempt the one-leg stand with their eyes open for 30 seconds.
- If respondents successfully pass the one-leg stand with their eyes open they should attempt it again with their eyes shut, again for 30 seconds.

For the side by side, semi-tandem and full-tandem stands, respondents are **not** permitted to practice first. For the one-leg stand, respondents are allowed one practice.

The positioning of the feet correctly is very important. If a respondent is unable to assume any of the positions themselves, do not help them by moving their feet. However, you can provide them support whilst they get into position. If they are unable to get into the correct position, record in the CAPI that the measure was not attempted. Splayed feet are also not permitted.

### *Equipment*

The only equipment that you will need for the balance measures is a stopwatch.

**For simple timing** (i.e. without the split function):

- To get into the stopwatch mode – repeatedly press the **MIDDLE** button labelled 'Mode' until 'SP' is shown at the bottom of the stopwatch display.
- To reset the stopwatch – press the **LEFT** button labelled 'lap/reset'.
- To start the stopwatch – press the **RIGHT** button labelled 'St./Stp'.
- To stop the stopwatch – press the **RIGHT** button labelled 'St./Stp'.

**For split timing** (i.e. for timing 10 chair rises):

- To start the stopwatch – press the **RIGHT** button labelled 'St./Stp'.
- To take the time at the 5<sup>th</sup> rise – press the **LEFT** button labelled 'lap/reset'.
- To take the time at the 10<sup>th</sup> rise – press the **RIGHT** button labelled 'St./Stp'.
- Then **write down the time on the display** (i.e. the time for the 5<sup>th</sup> rise).
- To find out the time at the 10<sup>th</sup> rise – press the **LEFT** button labelled 'lap/reset'.
- To reset the stopwatch – press the **LEFT** button labelled 'lap/reset'.

You should be given a Split-time Stopwatch Instruction Card in your briefing pack. You may want to take this with you on visits to remind you how to use the stopwatch.

## *Nurse script*

You have been provided with a script card for each measure so that you can read the instructions when you are away from the CAPI.

### 1) Side-by side stand

Balance and co-ordination are needed to carry out successfully every day locomotor function at reasonable speeds and to prevent falls. The exercise is used as a screen for the ability to do the semi- and full tandem stands.

#### **Procedures**

Explain the purpose of the tests:

*"I would now like to carry on with some more physical performance measurements, this will involve asking you to move your body in different ways. I will first describe and show each movement to you, then I'd like you to try to do it. If you cannot do a particular movement, or if you feel it would be unsafe to try to do it, please tell me and we'll move on to the next one. Let me emphasize that I do not want you to try to do any exercise that you feel might be unsafe. Do you have any questions before we begin?"*

Check the respondent's status. Ask 'Do you have any problems from recent surgery, injury or other health conditions that might prevent you from standing up from a chair and balancing?' If the answer is 'yes', discuss with them whether they should attempt each test given their physical problems after describing each test. Do not assume a respondent is too physically limited to attempt a test without discussing it with them. However, remember that the respondent's health is paramount.

First explain and then demonstrate the side by side stand to the respondent:

*Now I will show you the FIRST movement. I want you to try to stand with your feet together, side by side, for about 10 seconds. You may use your arms, bend your knees or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. When I want you to start, I will say: 'ready, begin'. **DEMONSTRATE.** Do you feel that would be safe?*

If the respondent says 'no', do not attempt this movement.

If the respondent says it is safe say 'When I want you to start, I will say 'ready, begin'. Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent. Say: 'ready, begin.' Press the start button to **start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent gets into the position and is free of support.** If necessary provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help them into the position. Say: 'ready, begin' and then let go of their arm.

**Stop the stopwatch and say 'stop' after 10 seconds or when the participant steps out of position or grabs your arm.**

If the participant is unable to hold the position for 10 seconds, record the time in seconds to two decimal place in the CAPI. If the respondent did not attempt the measure, record the reason.

If the participant is successful record this and the programme will direct you to the semi-tandem stand.

## **2) Semi tandem stand**

Explain and demonstrate the semi-tandem stand to the respondent:

*'Now I will show you the NEXT movement. I want you to try to stand with the side of the heel of one foot touching the big toe of the other foot for about 10 seconds. You may put either foot in front whichever is more comfortable for you. You may use your arms, bend your knees or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. When I want you to start, I will say: 'ready, begin'.*

**DEMONSTRATE.** Do you feel that would be safe?

If the respondent says 'no', do not attempt this movement.

If the respondent says it is safe say 'When I want you to start, I will say 'ready, begin'. Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent. Say: 'ready, begin.' Press the start button to **start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent gets into the position and is free of support.** If necessary provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help them into the position. Say: 'ready, begin' and then let go of their arm.

**Stop the stopwatch and say stop after 10 seconds or when the participant steps out of position or grabs your arm.**

If the participant is unable to hold the position for 10 seconds, record the time in seconds to two decimal place in the CAPI. The programme will direct you to the chair raise. If the respondent did not attempt the measure, record the reason.

If the participant is successful record this and the programme will direct you to the full tandem stand.

## **3) Full Tandem stand - If the respondent is aged 50-69**

Explain and then demonstrate the full tandem stand to the respondent using the following script:

*Now I will show you the NEXT movement. I want you to try to stand with the heel of one foot in front of and touching the toes of the other foot for about 30 seconds. You may put either foot in front whichever is more comfortable for you. You may use your arms, bend your knees or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. **DEMONSTRATE.** Do you feel that would be safe?*

If the respondent says 'no', do not attempt this movement.

If the respondent says it is safe say 'When I want you to start, I will say 'ready, begin'. Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent. Say: 'ready, begin.' Press the start button to **start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent gets into the position and is free of support.** If necessary provide gentle

support to the respondent's arm to help them into the position. Say: 'ready, begin' and then let go of their arm.

**Stop the stopwatch and say *stop* after 30 seconds or when the participant steps out of position or grabs your arm.**

Record the outcome in the CAPI. If the respondent is successful the CAPI will direct you to the leg raises.

If the participant is unable to hold the position for 30 seconds, record the time in seconds to two decimal place in the CAPI. If the respondent did not attempt the measure, record the reason.

#### **4) Full Tandem stand - If the respondent is aged 70+**

Explain and then demonstrate the full tandem stand to the respondent using the following script:

*Now I will show you the NEXT movement. I want you to try to stand with the heel of one foot in front of and touching the toes of the other foot for about 10 seconds. You may put either foot in front whichever is more comfortable for you. You may use your arms, bend your knees or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. **DEMONSTRATE.** Do you feel that would be safe?*

If the respondent says 'no', do not attempt this movement.

If the respondent says it is safe then allow them to practise the position once. Then say 'When I want you to start, I will say 'ready, begin''. Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent. Say: 'ready, begin.' Press the start button to **start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent gets into the position and is free of support.** If necessary provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help them into the position. Say: 'ready, begin' and then let go of their arm.

**Stop the stopwatch and say *stop* after 10 seconds or when the participant steps out of position or grabs your arm.**

Record the outcome in the CAPI. If the respondent is successful the CAPI will direct you to the leg raise. If the participant is unable to hold the position for 10 seconds, record the time in seconds to two decimal places in the CAPI. If the respondent did not attempt the measure, record the reason.

#### **5) Leg raise with eyes open**

This measure should only be carried out if the respondent is aged between 50 and 69 and if they passed the side by side stand.

The leg raises should be performed adjacent to a stable surface, e.g. a table or wall and the nurse should be positioned to the other side of the participant.

The respondent can put their raised leg in front, to the back or to the side but they should not hook it round or rest it on their other leg.

First explain and then demonstrate the move to the respondent:

*Now I will show you the NEXT movement. I want you to try to stand on one leg, whichever one you want, and raise the other leg off the ground a few inches. Stand for as long as you can – I will stop you at 30 seconds. You may use your arms, bend your knees or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel that it would be safe to do this?*

If the respondent says 'no', do not attempt this movement.

If the respondent says it is safe, then allow them to practise the position once (if after this practice you or the respondent feel that it would be unsafe to proceed, the measure should be discontinued). Then say 'When I want you to start, I will say 'ready, begin'. Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent. Say: 'ready, begin.' Press the start button to **start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent raises one foot off the ground and is free of support**. If necessary provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help them into position. Say: 'ready, begin' and then let go of their arm.

**Stop the stopwatch and say 'stop' either a) when the raised leg touches the floor as the respondent loses their balance or b) after 30 seconds, whichever happens first.**

Record the outcome in the CAPI. If the participant is unable to hold the position for 30 seconds, record the time they held the position for. If the participant is successful record this and the CAPI will direct you to the leg raise with eyes shut.

For the leg raise measure, you should allow the respondent to have up to two 'false starts', ie they lose their balance and put their leg down almost **immediately** after you start timing. If they lose balance after this stage then you should not consider it as a false start and you should record the time they held the position for.

#### **6) Leg raise with eyes shut**

This measure should only be carried out if the respondent passed the leg raise with their eyes open.

First explain and then demonstrate the position to the respondent:

*Now I would like you to repeat the procedure one more time, this time with your eyes closed. I want you to close your eyes, and try to stand on one leg, whichever one you want, and raise the other leg off the ground a few inches. Stand for as long as you can - I will stop you at 30 seconds. You may use your arms, bend your knees or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel that it would be safe to do this?*

If the respondent says 'no', do not attempt this movement.

If the respondent says it is safe then allow them to practise the position once (if after this practice you or the respondent feel that it would be unsafe to proceed, the measure should be discontinued). Then say 'When I want you to start, I will say

'ready, begin'. Ask the respondent to stand up. Stand to the side of the respondent. Say: 'ready, begin.' Press the start button to **start the stopwatch as soon as the respondent raises one foot off the ground, has their eyes closed and is free of support**. If necessary provide gentle support to the respondent's arm to help them into position. Say: 'ready, begin' and then let go of their arm.

**Stop the stopwatch and say 'stop' either a) when the raised leg touches the floor as the respondent loses their balance, or b) if they open their eyes, or c) after 30 seconds, whichever happens first.**

If the participant is unable to hold the position for 30 seconds, record the time they held the position for.

If the participant is successful record this.

## **7) Chair rise measure**

### **Content**

The chair rise provides a measure of lower body strength, and has two components: a single rise without the use of arms, and repeated rises from a firm chair. The repeated chair rise test differs depending on the respondent's age, as follows:

- Age 69 and under – 10 chair rises
- Age 70 and over – 5 chair rises

### **Equipment**

1. Stopwatch (see instructions above)
2. Chair

This should be an armless, straight-backed chair. Kitchen or dining chairs may be suitable in many homes. If an ideal chair is not available, the following criteria for chair selection should be used in the order given:

- a) Armless, rather than with arms.
- b) Firmness: the firmer the better.
- c) Do not use beds, cots, folding chairs, garden chairs, chairs with wheels or chairs that swivel.

### **a) Single Chair Rise**

This exercise is used to screen for the ability to do repeated chair stands. Please note the chair rise should not be conducted on anyone who is not able to stand up without assistance. Walking aids (such as walker or cane) are not permitted in this test.

First check for availability of a suitable chair.

Explain and then demonstrate the move to the respondent:

*The next test measures the strength in your legs. I want you to try to stand up from a firm straight-backed chair, like a dining chair. First, fold your arms across your chest and sit so that your feet are on the floor; then stand up keeping your arms folded across your chest. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel it would be safe to do this?*

If the participant cannot rise without using arms, say '*Okay, try to stand up using your arms*'.

Place the back of the chair against a wall to steady it. You should stand next to the respondent to provide assistance if they lose their balance. The respondent's feet should remain on the floor if possible.

Record the outcome of the single chair stand.

If the respondent refuses to try the single chair stand or is unable to stand on their own without using their arms to push off, then do not attempt to administer the repeated chair rises.

#### **b) Repeated Chair Rises**

This is a further test of lower body strength, balance, and endurance. It involves measuring the time required to stand up from a chair and sit down in a chair five or ten times without using their arms.

Use the same chair in the same place as in the single chair rise.

##### ***If the respondent is aged 50 to 69:***

If the respondent completed the single chair rise without using their arms, they are eligible to attempt the repeated chair rises.

Explain and then demonstrate the move to the respondent:

*Now I would like you to repeat the procedure but this time I want you to stand up straight as quickly as you can 10 times, without stopping in between and without using your arms to push off. After standing up each time, sit down and then stand up again. Keep your arms folded across your chest. I'll be timing you with a stopwatch. **DEMONSTRATE.** Do you feel it would be safe to do that?*

There is no need to demonstrate the full ten rises. Rise twice, counting out loud 'one, two', sit back down and say 'all the way through to...' and rise two more times counting out loud 'nine, ten'.

Ask the respondent to resume the sitting position they were in just before standing up, with their feet resting on the floor and their arms folded across the chest. When the participant is properly seated, say 'ready, begin'. **Start the stopwatch WHEN YOU SAY THIS.** Count out loud as s/he rises each time, up to ten times. A rise is complete when the respondent is fully standing with their back straight. When the respondent completes the fifth rise, press the split timer on the stopwatch. Continue counting out loud. When the respondent has straightened up completely for the tenth time, stop the stopwatch. The respondent's feet should remain on the floor if possible during the rises.

Stop if the participant becomes too tired or short of breath during the repeated chair stands. Also stop:

- If the participant uses their arms,
- If after 1 minute the participant has not completed all the rises,

- At your discretion, if you are concerned for the participant's safety.

If the participant stops and appears to be fatigued before completing the rises, ask *Can you continue?* If the participant says "Yes," continue timing until 60 seconds has elapsed. If they say 'no', stop the stopwatch and record the number of completed stands they did without using their arms.

Be careful to enter the time from the first five stands first, before retrieving the time for the 10 stands from the stopwatch's memory. See instructions above. Use the stopwatch instruction sheet if necessary.

***If the respondent is aged 70 or over:***

If the respondent completed the single chair stand without using their arms, they are eligible to attempt the repeated chair rises.

Explain and then demonstrate the move to the respondent:

*Now I would like you to repeat the procedure but this time I want you to stand up straight as quickly as you can 5 times, without stopping in between and without using your arms to push off. After standing up each time, sit down and then stand up again. Keep your arms folded across your chest. I'll be timing you with a stopwatch. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel it would be safe to do that?*

There is no need to demonstrate the full five rises. Rise twice, counting out loud 'one, two', sit back down and say 'all the way through to five'.

Ask the respondent to resume the sitting position they were in just before standing up, with their feet resting on the floor and their arms folded across the chest. When the participant is properly seated, say 'ready, begin'. **Start the stopwatch WHEN YOU SAY THIS.** Count out loud as the respondent rises each time, up to five times. A rise is complete when the respondent is fully standing with their back straight. When the respondent has straightened up completely for the fifth time, stop the stopwatch. The respondent's feet should remain on the floor if possible during the rises.

Stop if the participant becomes too tired or short of breath during the repeated chair stands. Also stop:

- If the participant uses their arms,
- If after 1 minute the participant has not completed all the rises,
- At your discretion, if you are concerned for the participant's safety.

If the participant stops and appears to be fatigued before completing the five stands, ask *Can you continue?* If the participant says "Yes," continue timing until 60 seconds has elapsed. If they says 'no' stop the stopwatch and record the number of stands completed by the respondent without using their arms.

Record the outcome of the repeated chair rise in the CAPI.

## J. SALIVA SAMPLING

### *Why we are doing this test*

We plan to measure cortisol levels in saliva. Cortisol levels vary with “stress” so the results can be used to explore the relationship between “stress” and other aspects of the respondent’s health.

### *Eligibility*

All core members aged 79 and under who give their written consent are eligible for this test.

### *Equipment*

6 Salivettes in a holder (Providing one extra for the respondent to do a practice sample with the nurse and a spare one to be left with the respondent)

Transparent plastic bag to put the salivettes in

Jiffy envelope to post the bag of samples back

Log book

### *Procedure*

1. Obtain written consent on the appropriate Consent Form. Explain why written consent is needed and how important it is.
2. Explain why we are interested in people’s saliva.
3. With your demo Salivettes show the respondent how to flip off the cap and take out the cotton swab (you and the respondent should not touch the swab). Talk through putting it in the mouth to soak (you don’t have to actually do it yourself). The plastic coat on the swab should not be peeled off. The swab should be gently chewed until it is saturated, which usually takes about a minute. Then put the swab back into the Salivette and cap it.
4. Ask the respondent to provide a practice sample to check they are doing it correctly – this can then be discarded.
5. Explain the timings of the sample, mentioning the coloured tubes.
  - Tube 1 (orange) is to be used for an early morning sample, upon waking. The respondent should take care to be fully awake and should be sitting up in bed.
  - Tube 2 (pink) is to be used 30 minutes after awakening (i.e. 30 minutes after doing the orange sample).
  - Tube 3 (blue) is for a sample at 7pm.
  - Tube 4 (green) is for a sample just before the respondent goes to bed.
  - Emphasise that the samples must be taken on the same day.
6. Say that the date and time should be written on the label, **in biro** while collecting the sample. Without a recorded sampling time the cortisol results will be impossible to interpret.
7. Explain the rules about not eating and drinking or brushing teeth for 15 minutes before doing the test as this will produce false high or low cortisol levels. The instructions say “Have a ‘clean’ mouth for at least 15 minutes before you take the sample (no eating, brushing teeth or drinks including water)”.
8. Go through the logbook with the respondent and point out the questions they must answer. There are questions that need to be answered when they are

carrying out the samples and there is a final set of questions at the end to be completed after doing the last sample.

9. Give them the transparent plastic bag to put the samples in and the padded envelope with which to post this bag of samples and logbook. Samples can be kept in the fridge until posted but the respondent should send samples as soon as possible.
10. Answer any queries the respondent has if you can. Inform them that if they have queries after the interview, or if they need more salivettes, they should call Helen Selwood in the yellow team at Brentwood. The telephone number is on the front of the logbook.

**Make sure that the respondent understands:**

- They should start whenever they wake on the day not at a set time.
- All samples are to be taken on the same day and then posted back on the following day.
- How to take the sample correctly (i.e. not to handle the cotton swab and how to put the parts of the tube back together - these problems are usually alleviated during the practice sample they do in your presence).
- If they are worried that they will not be able to take the samples at the set times they should do them as close as they can to the right times and write down the actual times they did them.

***Respondents' frequently asked questions***

1. *What hormone do you look for in the saliva and how can you measure stress levels from that?*

Cortisol is the hormone we look for in the saliva. It has many functions in the body and is associated with stress. The concentration of cortisol in saliva is directly related to the concentration of cortisol in your system.

2. *Will the samples be OK in the post; will they get broken or go off?*

We have had many samples posted back and have not experienced any problems. The salivettes are plastic and very robust, and the saliva samples are still valid even if they are in the post for a few days.

3. *Will I get the results?*

The results will not be given to you, this is one of the parts of the study where we look at groups of people and not individuals, it is also a relatively new part of the screening.

4. *What if I do not have a stressful event during my day?*

If you do not have a stressful event, or do not feel stressed at any point on the day, the samples will still be valid, just put down in the logbook that there were no stressful events during your day. We are interested in the people who have stressful days as a comparison to those who don't.

5. *If I am doing something very unusual that day should I still complete the test?*

If you are going to be at the dentist we ask people to wait a day to do the test. For other events as long as it is noted in the logbook that the day was busier and not a typical day it is still fine to do the test. As with all parts of the study, if the

participant feels that it would not be suitable, for example if they are attending a funeral or wedding then it is fine to wait a day.

6. *Can I take my medication during the day?*

It is fine to take medication and vitamins whenever you normally take them. Just note it down at the back of the logbook.

7. *Can I do the samples at the weekend, when I have fewer things to do/ am usually less stressed?*

We are asking everyone to try and do the test on a weekday, and are interested in days when people feel stressed. This will allow us to compare the results for people who are working with those who have retired. However, people can do it on weekends if necessary.

## **14 APPENDIX 1: SUMMARY OF NURSE-INTERVIEWER LIAISON**

- **The interviewer will contact you before he/she starts work (or you must contact her/him). You should:**
  - Provide the interviewer with information for the police letter
  - Provide the interviewer with information to reassure respondents on **Appointment Diary**

- Discuss preferred method of making appointments
- If appropriate, provide availability for Appointment Diary
- **If respondent agrees to a nurse visit, the interviewer gives him/her an Appointment Record Card with either:**
  - a provisional appointment - for you to confirm
  - without appointment - for you to set up
- **The interviewer will highlight preparation details on card & tell respondent nurse will be contacting them to talk in more detail.**
- **Interviewer also leaves genetics leaflet and nurse leaflet with the respondent.**
- **Interviewer calls to inform you of nurse visit, or if no nurse visit needed**
  - Check/collect telephone number you have for the respondent on the nurse summary sheet is
  - Ask for any additional relevant information (e.g. interviewer should inform you of deafness/sight issues, other health issues identified during interview).
  - If appointment is very soon complete Interim Appointment Record Form
- **Interviewer posts NRF (or NRF B) to nurse**
- **Keep your Nurse Sample Sheet handy, for example by phone**

## **15 APPENDIX 2: CHECKLIST FOR WHEN YOU TELEPHONE THE RESPONDENT BEFORE YOUR VISIT**

- **After interviewer phones - contact respondent ASAP**
  - Refer to Appointment Record Card
  - Either confirm or arrange day and time of visit
  - Discuss preparations and suitable clothing

- Discuss whether fasting is appropriate (see below)
- Where relevant, clarify rules of fasting
- **Respondent should NOT fast if**
  - They are aged 80 years or over
  - Diabetic and on treatment (OK if controlling by diet and not on treatment)
  - They have a clotting or bleeding disorder or on anti-coagulant drugs (e.g. warfarin, protamine or acenocoumarol)
  - Has ever had fits (epileptic, convulsion, convulsion associated with high fever)
  - You don't feel comfortable about it (e.g. respondent seems frail or confused, or your interviewer has expressed concern about their health)
- **If you ask the respondent to fast**
  - Refer to Appointment Record Card when talking to respondent
  - They must fast for 5 hours prior to visit
  - Tell them they *should* drink water
  - Refer to fasting guidelines on appointment record card - rules depend on time of appointment
  - Respondent should take medication as usual
  - If appointment is over a week away, suggest calling them again to check for any changes in health status

## Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over Appointment Record Card

P2158 

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

 Ck1  Person 

--	--

Thank you for agreeing to take part in the nurse visit.

A qualified nurse \_\_\_\_\_  
will call on \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_

She/He will be able to give you more information about the measurements. If, for any reason, you cannot keep this appointment, please telephone our Project Manager, Helen Selwood, on freephone 0800 652 4569 so you can make another appointment.

### **How to prepare for the nurse visit**

- For 30 minutes before the nurse arrives, if possible
  - do not eat, smoke or drink alcohol and
  - avoid vigorous exerciseas this could affect your blood pressure readings.
- Please wear light, non-restrictive clothing and avoid anything which is tight (e.g. lycra, tight jeans) or has a thick belt, otherwise your waist and hip measurements will not be accurate. If possible do not wear very long garments which may prevent the nurse from seeing your feet during some of the measurements.
- You will be asked to give a blood sample (though you do not have to) and some of you will be asked to fast.

P8158  
Version 2

**Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over  
CONSENT BOOKLET - OFFICE COPY**

**Please use capital letters and write in ink**

**NAME/ADDRESS - WRITE IN:**

**ATTACH SERIAL NUMBER BAR CODE LABEL:**

RESPONDENT NAME:  
ADDRESS:  
  
POSTCODE:

1. Nurse number  2. Date schedule completed DAY MONTH YEAR

3. Full name (of person tested) \_\_\_\_\_

Name by which GP knows person (if different) \_\_\_\_\_

4. Sex Male  1 Female  2 5. Date of birth: DAY MONTH YEAR

6. **GP NAME AND ADDRESS**  
Dr: .....  
Practice Name: .....  
**Address:** .....  
.....  
Town: .....  
County: .....  
Postcode: .....  
**Telephone no:** .....

7. **NURSE USE ONLY**

GP address complete 1  
GP address incomplete 2  
No GP 3

8. SUMMARY OF CONSENTS - RING CODE FOR EACH ITEM	YES	NO
a) Blood pressure results to GP	01	02
b) Lung function results to GP	03	04
c) Sample of blood to be taken	05	06
d) Blood sample results to GP	07	08
e) Blood sample results to respondent	09	10
f) Blood sample for storage	11	12
g) Blood sample for DNA extraction and storage	13	14
h) Saliva sample to be collected	15	16

## **CONSENT FORM 1 - Blood Pressure to GP**

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_

consent to the National Centre for Social Research informing my General Practitioner (GP) of my blood pressure results. I am aware that the results of my blood pressure measurement may be used by my GP to help monitor my health and that my GP may wish to include the results in any future report about me.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

## **CONSENT FORM 2 - Lung Function to GP**

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_

consent to the National Centre for Social Research informing my General Practitioner (GP) of my lung function results. I am aware that the results of my lung function measurement may be used by my GP to help monitor my health and that my GP may wish to include the results in any future report about me.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

## CONSENT FORM 3 - Blood samples

I, (*name*) \_\_\_\_\_

- a) consent to \_\_\_\_\_ (qualified nurse) taking a sample of my blood on behalf of the National Centre for Social Research/UCL. I understand that the sample will be analysed for total cholesterol, and other lipids (fats), glucose, glycated haemoglobin, measures of iron stores, inflammation and other hormones. This blood sample will not be used to test for HIV virus.

The nurse has explained the purpose and procedure to me and I have had an opportunity to discuss with him/her. I have received a written explanation of these matters.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

- b) I consent to the National Centre for Social Research/UCL informing my General Practitioner (GP) of the blood sample analysis results for total, LDL and HDL cholesterol, triglycerides, glucose, glycated haemoglobin, ferritin, haemoglobin, C-reactive protein and fibrinogen. I am aware that the results of my blood sample analysis may be used by my GP to help him/her monitor my health and that my GP may wish to include the results in any future report about me.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

- c) I give my consent for samples of my blood to be stored and used in the future for medical research studies of common diseases and the ageing process. I understand that all blood test results and related information will be coded so I cannot be identified. Access to my name and address will be restricted to research team at the National Centre for Social Research through the use of a unique identification number. For purposes of scientific analyses, links to my name will be held separately and securely from any data collected. Only research approved by the study team and an independent NHS Research Ethics Committee will be allowed, now and in the future and the sample will not be tested for HIV

I understand that I may withdraw this consent (as described in the information leaflet) at any time by contacting the investigators in writing, without giving any reasons and at no penalty.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

**CONSENT FORM 4 - Genetics study**

I (name) \_\_\_\_\_

consent to the extraction and storage of DNA from my blood sample for use in future medical research studies of the causes, diagnosis, treatment or outcome of disease. I understand that the DNA samples and related information will be coded so I cannot be identified, and used for non-commercial research purposes only, and that no information found in the DNA will be given to me. I understand that I may withdraw this consent at any time by contacting the investigators in writing, without giving any reasons, and the DNA extracted from my blood samples will then be destroyed and any genetic data obtained from it will be deleted.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

**CONSENT FORM 5 - Saliva sample**

I, (*name*) \_\_\_\_\_

give my consent to use of samples of my saliva for tests of cortisol and future medical research studies of the causes, diagnosis, treatment or outcome of disease. I understand that the saliva samples and related information will be coded so I cannot be identified, and used for non-commercial research purposes only, and will not be tested for HIV. I understand that I may withdraw this consent at any time by contacting the investigators in writing, without giving any reasons.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

## Venepuncture Check-List

**Consents:** Obtained  Not obtained  → **End**

**System used to take blood sample:** Vacutainer  Butterfly needle

**Is the respondent ...** ...Left handed?  ... Right handed?

**Which arm did you use to take blood?** Left arm  Right arm

**Skin condition on arm used:** Skin intact  Skin not intact

**Alcohol wipe:** Alcohol wipe used  Wipe not used

**Sample acquired on...** 1<sup>st</sup> attempt  2<sup>nd</sup> attempt  Both attempts failed  → **End**

**What time was the blood taken?**  
(Please use 24 hour clock)

**Was pressure applied over the puncture site immediately?** Yes, applied immediately  No, not applied immediately

**Who applied the pressure?** Nurse  Respondent

**Respondent skin sensitivity:** Sensitive to tape/plaster  Not sensitive to tape/plaster  Not checked

**Any abnormality noted after 5 minutes:**  
None  Sensory deficit  Haematoma  Swelling  Other

If **other**, please specify:

**Please describe action taken for any abnormality:**

**Was the puncture site rechecked before you left?** Yes rechecked  No, not rechecked

Thank you for completing this checklist. Please use the space overleaf for comments, or to tell us about any problems not already mentioned. Please return this form to the office.



THE ENGLISH LONGITUDINAL STUDY OF AGEING

**DESPATCH NOTE FOR BLOOD SAMPLES**  
(LABORATORY COPY - NEWCASTLE)

Complete all sections CLEARLY and LEGIBLY and enclose with samples to laboratory.

1. SERIAL NUMBER:  ATTACH BARCODE LABEL

2. SEX: Male   
Female

3. BLOOD COLLECTED: Day   Month   Year

4. TIME OF COLLECTION: Hr   Min   (Use 24 hour clock)

5. NURSE NUMBER:

6. HAD RESPONDENT FASTED?  
Yes   
No

7. STORAGE CONSENT: BLOOD  
Given   
Not given

8. BLOOD COLLECTED (tick if successful):  
RED   
BLUE   
GREY   
PURPLE

**LABELLING ON SAMPLE TUBES AND THIS FORM MUST CORRESPOND**  
CHECK ALL DETAILS ABOVE ARE CORRECT BEFORE POSTING

**FOR LAB USE ONLY**

TUBES ENCLOSED:		✓ if rec'd	ACTION REQUIRED
Plain 6ml	RED	<input type="checkbox"/>	Full lipid Profile Ferritin CRP (high sensitivity) ApoE
EDTA 4ml	PURPLE	<input type="checkbox"/>	Hb HBA1c
Citrate 1.8/2.7ml	BLUE INSERT	<input type="checkbox"/>	Fibrinogen
Fluoride 2ml	GREY	<input type="checkbox"/>	Glucose
EDTA 4mL x 2	PURPLE	<input type="checkbox"/>	Storage for subsequent DNA analysis

## Health and lifestyles of people aged 50 and over

### CONSENT BOOKLET: PERSONAL COPY

P8158 

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

 Ckl  Person 

--	--

Name

--

This booklet contains a copy of the different consents and permissions that you have been asked to sign during the interview, for your records.

## **BLOOD PRESSURE TO GP CONSENT**

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_

consent to the National Centre for Social Research informing my General Practitioner (GP) of my blood pressure results. I am aware that the results of my blood pressure measurement may be used by my GP to help monitor my health and that my GP may wish to include the results in any future report about me.

Tick if consent given

## **LUNG FUNCTION TO GP CONSENT**

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_

consent to the National Centre for Social Research informing my General Practitioner (GP) of my lung function results. I am aware that the results of my lung function measurement may be used by my GP to help monitor my health and that my GP may wish to include the results in any future report about me.

Tick if consent given

## **SALIVA SAMPLE CONSENT**

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_

give my consent to use of samples of my saliva for tests of cortisol and future medical research studies of the causes, diagnosis, treatment or outcome of disease. I understand that the saliva samples and related information will be coded so I cannot be identified, and used for non-commercial research purposes only, and will not be tested for HIV. I understand that I may withdraw this consent at any time by contacting the investigators in writing, without giving any reasons.

Tick if consent given

## BLOOD SAMPLE CONSENT

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_

a) consent to \_\_\_\_\_ (qualified nurse) taking a sample of my blood on behalf of the National Centre for Social Research/UCL. I understand that the sample will be analysed for total cholesterol, and other lipids (fats), glucose, glycated haemoglobin, measures of iron stores, inflammation and other hormones. This blood sample will not be used to test for the HIV virus. The purpose and procedure have been explained to me by the nurse and I have had an opportunity to discuss this with him/her. I have received a written explanation of these matters.

Tick if consent given

b) consent to the National Centre for Social Research/UCL informing my General Practitioner (GP) of the blood sample analysis results for total, LDL and HDL cholesterol, triglycerides, glucose, glycated haemoglobin, ferritin, haemoglobin, C-reactive protein and fibrinogen. I am aware that the results of my blood sample analysis may be used by my GP to help him/her monitor my health and that my GP may wish to include the results in any future report about me.

Tick if consent given

c) consent for samples of my blood to be stored and used in the future for medical research studies of common diseases and the ageing process. I understand that all blood test results and related information will be coded so I cannot be identified. Access to my name and address will be restricted to research team at the National Centre for Social Research through the use of a unique identification number. For purposes of scientific analyses, links to my name will be held separately and securely from any data collected. Only research approved by the study team and an independent NHS Research Ethics Committee will be allowed, now and in the future and the sample will not be tested for HIV.

I understand that I may withdraw this consent (as described in the information leaflet) at any time by contacting the investigators in writing, without giving any reasons and at no penalty.

Tick if consent given

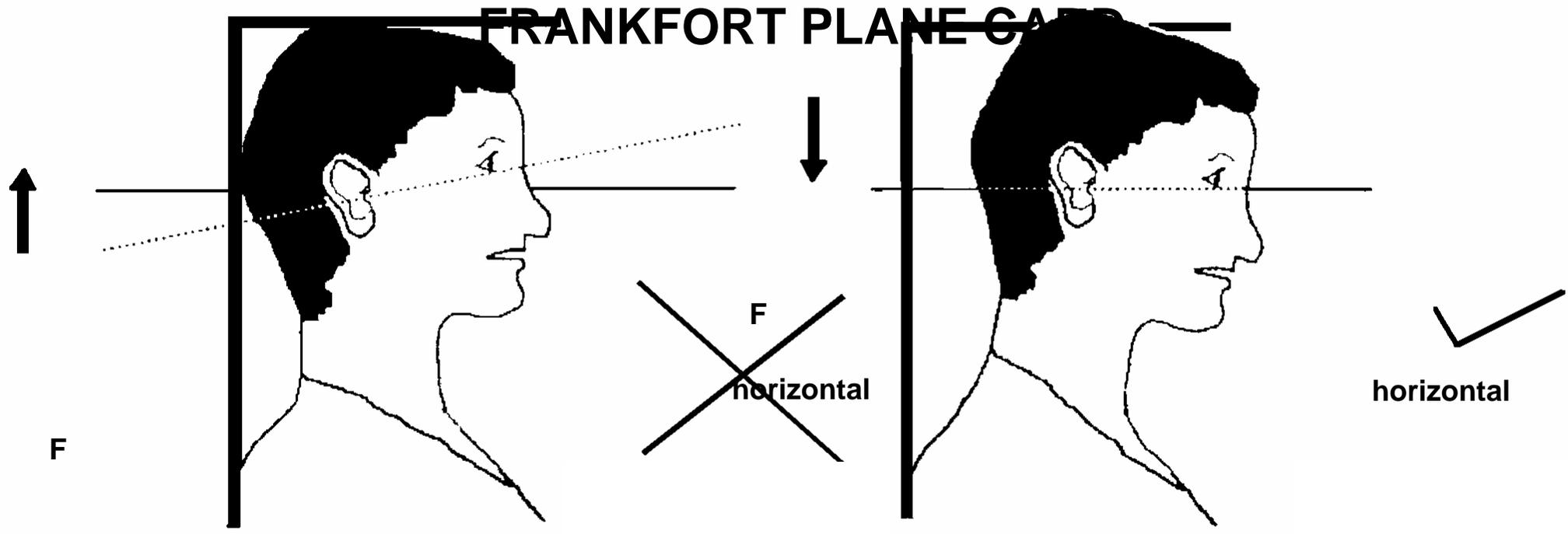
## GENETICS STUDY CONSENT

I, (name) \_\_\_\_\_

consent to the extraction and storage of DNA from my blood sample for use in future medical research studies of the causes, diagnosis, treatment or outcome of disease. I understand that the DNA samples and related information will be coded so I cannot be identified, and used for non-commercial research purposes only, and that no information found in the DNA will be given to me. I understand that I may withdraw this consent at any time by contacting the investigators in writing, without giving any reasons, and the DNA extracted from my blood samples will then be destroyed and any genetic data obtained from it will be deleted.

Tick if consent given

# FRANKFORT PLANE CAP



F

~~F  
horizontal~~

horizontal

**X**

**✓**

## **PROTOCOL**

- **SHOES OFF**
- **FEET TO THE BACK**
- **BACK STRAIGHT**
- **HANDS BY THE SIDE**
- **FRANKFORT PLANE**
- **LOOK AT A FIXED POINT**
- **BREATHE IN**
- **LOWER HEADPLATE**
- **BREATHE OUT**
- **STEP OFF**
- **READ MEASUREMENT**

**P8158**

Version 2

**HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES OF  
PEOPLE AGED 50 AND OVER**

**GRIP STRENGTH**

Serial number

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Ck

--

Person

--	--

**Dominant hand:** *(please tick one)*

Left  Right

**Enter Measurements Below:**

1<sup>st</sup> measurement non-dominant hand

--	--	--

1<sup>st</sup> measurement dominant hand

--	--	--

2<sup>nd</sup> measurement non-dominant hand

--	--	--

2<sup>nd</sup> measurement dominant hand

--	--	--

3<sup>rd</sup> measurement non-dominant hand

--	--	--

3<sup>rd</sup> measurement dominant hand

--	--	--

**P8158**

Version 2

**HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES OF  
PEOPLE AGED 50 AND OVER**

**GRIP STRENGTH**

Serial number

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Ck

--

Person

--	--

**Dominant hand:** *(please tick one)*

Left  Right

**Enter Measurements Below:**

1<sup>st</sup> measurement non-dominant hand

--	--	--

1<sup>st</sup> measurement dominant hand

--	--	--

2<sup>nd</sup> measurement non-dominant hand

--	--	--

2<sup>nd</sup> measurement dominant hand

--	--	--

3<sup>rd</sup> measurement non-dominant hand

--	--	--

3<sup>rd</sup> measurement dominant hand

--	--	--

# Protocol for Grip Strength

## **GRIP STRENGTH**

Now I would like to assess the strength of your hand in a gripping action. I will count up to three and then ask you to squeeze this handle as hard as you can, just for two or three seconds and then let go.

**DEMONSTRATE.**

I will take alternately three measurements from each hand. Would you be willing to have your handgrip measured?

At the start of each measure, say: 'One, two, three, squeeze!'

Thank you for your co-operation

Hayley Cheshire  
National Centre for Social Research  
35 Northampton Square  
London  
EC1V 0AX

Tel: 020 7549 8544

Dr James Nazroo  
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health  
University College London  
Medical School  
1-19 Torrington Place  
London  
WC1E 6BT

Tel: 020 7679 1705

P8158

SN:           ck

**HEALTH AND LIFESTYLES OF PEOPLE  
AGED 50 AND OVER**

**MEASUREMENT RECORD CARD**

FULL NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

SURVEY NURSE: \_\_\_\_\_

DATE OF NURSE VISIT: \_\_\_\_\_

**STANDING HEIGHT:** \_\_\_\_\_ cm  
 \_\_\_\_\_ ft/ins

**WEIGHT:** \_\_\_\_\_ kg  
 \_\_\_\_\_ st/lbs

**WAIST AND HIP MEASUREMENT**

	Waist		Hip	
<i>1st measurement</i>	_____ Cms		_____ cms	
<i>2nd measurement</i>	_____ Cms		_____ cms	

**LUNG FUNCTION**

FVC  ♦   litres

FEV<sub>1</sub>  ♦   litres

PF    litres per minute

Please refer to the leaflet given to you by the nurse for information about measuring and interpreting blood pressure and lung function.

**BLOOD PRESSURE**

	Systolic (mmHg)	Diastolic (mmHg)	Pulse (bpm)
(i)	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
(ii)	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
(iii)	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Blood pressure interpretation:

Normal		Moderately raised	
Mildly raised	<input type="text"/>	Considerably raised	<input type="text"/>
	<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>

Summary of advice given by nurse:  
 Visit your GP to have your blood pressure checked within:  
 \_\_\_\_\_

# Protocol for Leg Raise (aged 50-69 only)

## LEG RAISE WITH EYES OPEN

**Now I will show you the next movement. I want you to** try to stand on one leg, whichever one you want, and raise the other leg off the ground a few inches. Stand for as long as you can - I will stop you at 30 seconds. You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel that would be safe?

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

↓  
If FAIL record TIME  
and STOP

↓  
If PASS record ✓

## LEG RAISE WITH EYES CLOSED

**Now I would like you to repeat the procedure one more time, this time with your eyes closed.** I want **you to close your eyes** and try to stand on one leg, whichever one you want, and raise the other leg off the ground a few inches. Stand for as long as you can - I will stop you at 30 seconds. You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel that would be safe?

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

↓  
If FAIL record TIME

↓  
If PASS record ✓

# Protocol for Balance Measure

## SIDE-BY-SIDE TANDEM

Now I will show you the FIRST movement. I want you to try to stand **with your feet together, side-by-side, for about 10 seconds**. You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel that would be safe?" When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

If FAIL record TIME

If PASS record ✓

## SEMI-TANDEM

Now I will show you the NEXT movement. I want you to try to stand **with the side of the heel of one foot touching the big toe of the other foot for about 10 seconds**. You may put either foot in front, whichever is more comfortable for you. You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel that would be safe?" When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

## FULL TANDEM

Now I will show you the NEXT movement. I want you to try to stand **with the heel of one foot in front of and touching the toes of the other foot for about [10 OR 30] seconds**. You may put either foot in front, whichever is more comfortable for you. You may use your arms, bend your knees, or move your body to maintain your balance, but try not to move your feet. Try to hold this position until I tell you to stop. You may support yourself on a chair, table or wall while getting into position. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel that would be safe?" When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

If PASS record ✓

If FAIL record TIME

If FAIL record TIME

If PASS record ✓

# Protocol for Chair Rise

## **SINGLE CHAIR RISE**

The next test measures the strength in your legs. I want you to try to stand up from a firm straight-backed chair, like a dining chair. First, fold your arms across your chest and sit so that your feet are on the floor; then stand up keeping your arms folded across your chest. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel it would be safe to do this?

If the participant cannot rise without using arms, say: 'Okay, try to stand up using your arms.'

If FAIL then STOP

If PASS

## **REPEATED CHAIR RISE**

Now I would like you to repeat the procedure but this time I want you to stand up straight as quickly as you can [5 OR 10] times, without stopping in between and without using your arms to push off. After standing up each time, sit down and then stand up again. Keep your arms folded across your chest. I'll be timing you with a stopwatch. DEMONSTRATE. Do you feel it would be safe to do that?

When I want you to start, I will say: 'Ready, begin'.

If FAIL record NUMBER  
of rises and TIME

If PASS record TIME

## Mortgage loops

### HOUTM (new mortgage holders), two loops used

#### 1<sup>st</sup> loop

HOMTY

HOMTO

HORMO

HOMFV (shared with HOMSAM – loop 1)

HOVML (shared with HOMSAM – loop 1)

HOVE (shared with HOMSAM – loop 1) – n.b. wrong routing used

#### 2<sup>nd</sup> loop

HOMTY2

HOMTO2

HORMO2

HOMFV2 (shared with HOMSAM – loop 2)

HOVML2 (shared with HOMSAM – loop 2)

HOVE2 (shared with HOMSAM – loop 2) – n.b. wrong routing used

### HOMSAM (previous mortgages), five loops used

#### 1<sup>st</sup> loop

HOMSAM

HOMEXT

HOMEXTA

HOMUSE1-5 (but only 1-3 used)

HOMREA

HOMFV (shared with HOOOUTM – loop 1)

HOVML (shared with HOOOUTM – loop 1)

HOVE (shared with HOOOUTM – loop 1) – n.b. wrong routing

#### 2<sup>nd</sup> loop

HOMSAM2

HOMEXT2

HOMEXTA2

HOMUSE6-10 (but only 6 used)

HOMREA2

HOMFV2 (shared with HOOOUTM – loop 2)

HOVML2 (shared with HOOOUTM – loop 2)

HOVE2 (shared with HOOOUTM – loop 2) – n.b. wrong routing

#### 3<sup>rd</sup> loop

HOMSAM3

HOMEXT3

HOMEXTA3

HOMUSE21-25 (but none used)

HOMREA3

HOMFV3

HOVML3

HOVE3 – n.b. wrong routing

4<sup>th</sup> loop

HOMSAM4  
HOMEXT4  
HOMEXTA4  
HOMUSE40-44 (but none used)  
HOMREA4  
HOMFV4  
HOVML4  
HOVE4 – n.b. wrong routing

5<sup>th</sup> loop

HOMSAM5  
HOMEXT5  
HOMEXTA5  
HOMUSE59-63 (but none used)  
HOMREA5  
HOMFV5  
HOVML5  
HOVE5 – n.b. wrong routing

**HOMNEW (additional mortgages taken out between Wave 1 and Wave 2), two loops used**

1<sup>st</sup> loop

HOMTY6  
HOMNUSE1-5 (only 1-4 used)  
HOMNREA  
HORMO6  
HOMFV6  
HOVML6  
HOVE6 – wrong routing

2<sup>nd</sup> loop

HOMTY7  
HOMNUSE/HOMNREA – were not asked but should have been  
HORMO7  
HOMFV7  
HOVML7  
HOVE7 (all inapplicable but routing probably wrong here also)

**HOMMIS (Mortgages missed at Wave 1), one loop used**

1<sup>st</sup> loop

HOMTY11  
HORMO11  
HOMFV11  
HOVML11  
HOVE11

# Wave 2 Pension Grid

## *User Guide*

*Version 2*

<b>1</b>	<b>Data structure in the pension grid .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Table 1a: Example of data structure in the main individual-level dataset .....	1
1.2	Table 1b: Example of data structure in the pension-level dataset.....	1
<b>2</b>	<b>Identifiers for each observation in the pension grid.....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Distinctions between pension types.....</b>	<b>2</b>
	Pensions mentioned at Wave 1 vs. those not mentioned at Wave 1 .....	2
	Current vs. past pensions .....	2
	In receipt vs. retained rights .....	2
3.2	Table 2: Categories of private pensions .....	3
<b>4</b>	<b>Linking pensions reported in Wave 1 to those reported in Wave 2 .....</b>	<b>3</b>
4.1	Table 3. Relationship between Wave 1 and Wave 2 pensions .....	4
<b>5</b>	<b>Derived variables .....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Problems with Wave 2 feed-forward data .....</b>	<b>5</b>
6.1	Table 4. Cases in which there was a problem with the question routing in Wave 2.....	5
<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix – Stata code for derived variables.....</b>	<b>6</b>

The complex routing structure of the questions asked in Wave 2 relating to individuals' private pension schemes means that the variables included in the main individual-level dataset (wave\_2\_core\_data\_v2) can be difficult to use. Therefore, a separate pension-level dataset has been created for Wave 2. This includes one record for each private pension mentioned in Wave 2. This dataset therefore contains multiple observations for some respondents, while for others (who have never had any private pensions) there are no observations at all.

### **Differences between wave 2 pension grid and wave 2 pension grid v2**

There are two main differences between the first and second release of the Wave 2 pensions grid.

1. *Renamed variable:* the identifier variable "pentye" has been renamed "pentye\_wave2" in the second release. This variable identifies different types of pensions, as defined by (for example) whether or not they were mentioned at Wave 1. This is discussed in more detail below. The variable has been renamed to distinguish it from the variable (pentye\_wave1) which now appears in the Wave 1 pension grid which contains different categories of pension classification. The categorisation of pensions in pentye\_wave2 remains the same.
2. *Additional observations:* 487 pensions were incorrectly omitted from the Wave 2 pension grid in the first release (though these pensions do appear in the Wave 2 core data). 398 of these were pentye\_wave2=1, 63 were pentye\_wave2=2, 26 were pentye\_wave2=3. These pensions have been added back in to the second release of the Wave 2 pensions grid.

## **1 Data structure in the pension grid**

The excel spreadsheet 'pengrid\_var\_correspondence.xls' (which is also available as part of the ELSA Wave 2 documentation) shows how the variables in the pension-level dataset relate to those contained in the main individual-level dataset. In most cases several variables with the same name stem but different numerical suffixes will have been combined into one single variable. For example, in the individual-level dataset there are three variables with the stem wpsps: wpsps, wpsps2 and wpsps3. These relate to pension types 1, 2 and 3 respectively (see table 2 below for a description of each pension type). Each of these variables was not applicable (i.e. took the value -1) for all other pension types (e.g. wpsps2 was "not applicable" unless pentye\_wave2=2). Therefore, these three variables have been combined into the single variable called wpsps in the pension-level dataset. Table 1a shows an example of how some of the data is structured in the individual-level dataset (elsa\_wave2\_archive\_v2.dta), while table 1b shows how the same data is structured in the pension-level dataset.

### **1.1 Table 1a: Example of data structure in the main individual-level dataset**

idauniq	wpsps	wpsrul	wpsps2	wpsrul2	wpsps3	wpsrul3
100001	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1
100002	1	1	1	3	1	2

Note: "-1" denotes that the question is "not applicable".

### **1.2 Table 1b: Example of data structure in the pension-level dataset**

idauniq	pennum	pentye_wave2	wpsps	wpsrul
---------	--------	--------------	-------	--------

100001	1	1	1	1
100002	1	1	1	1
100002	2	2	1	3
100002	3	3	1	2

## 2 Identifiers for each observation in the pension grid

The main identifiers in this dataset are:

idauniq – unique individual identifier

pennum – pension number within each respondent

pentype\_wave2 – type of pension to which the record refers

The combination of idauniq and pennum uniquely identifies each pension recorded in the pension grid. The different types of pensions (pentype\_wave2) are described in table 2 below. The pensions have been categorised into 15 groups. Each of the pensions within a particular category was routed through the same series of questions.

## 3 Distinctions between pension types

The main distinctions between the 15 categories of pensions are as follows:

### Pensions mentioned at Wave 1 vs. those not mentioned at Wave 1

Pension types 1-3 and 7-12 were all mentioned by respondents in Wave 1. Consequently, in Wave 2 further details of these pension schemes were collected only if the rules of/contributions to/income received from these pension schemes had changed. Any information about the pension that had not changed since Wave 1 was not collected again.

Pension types 4-6 and 13-15 were not mentioned when the respondent was interviewed in Wave 1 (this is generally because the respondent joined these schemes between Waves 1 and 2 or, in a few cases, because they were not interviewed in Wave 1).

### Current vs. past pensions

Pensions recorded in the pension grid are either:

- (i) ones which the individual is currently contributing to or to which they could contribute if they wanted (these will be referred to as “current pensions” in the remainder of this document), or
- (ii) ones which the individual can no longer contribute to (these will be referred to as “past pensions” for the remainder of this document).

Pension types 1-6 are current pensions and pension types 7-15 are past pensions.

### In receipt vs. retained rights

In the case of past pensions mentioned at Wave 1, there is a distinction in terms of the question routing in Wave 2 between:

- (i) pensions from which the individual was receiving a pension at the time of the Wave 1 interview (“in receipt”) and
- (ii) pensions from which no income was being received at the time of the Wave 1 interview but to which the individual has retained rights (“retained rights”, i.e. they will receive an income from the pension at some point in the future).

Pension types 7-9 are pensions to which the individual had retained rights at the time of the Wave 1 interview, pension types 10-12 are pensions which were in receipt at the time of the Wave 1 interview.

The current status of past pensions in relation to receipt/retained rights at the time of the Wave 2 interview are recorded in variables wprecn and wprghx (for pentype\_wave2=7,8,9), wprec and wprghx (for pentype\_wave2=10,11,12), wprec and wprgh (for pentype\_wave2=13,14,15).

### 3.2 Table 2: Categories of private pensions

pentype_wave2	Mentioned in Wave 1?	Current pension in Wave 1?	Current pension in Wave 2?	Receiving a pension from scheme in Wave 1?	Had retained rights in the scheme in Wave 1?
1	✓	✓	?	✗	✗
2	✓	✓	?	✗	✗
3	✓	✓	?	✗	✗
4	✗	?	✓	✗	✗
5	✗	?	✓	✗	✗
6	✗	?	✓	✗	✗
7	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓
8	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓
9	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓
10	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗
11	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗
12	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗
13	✗	✗	✗	?	?
14	✗	✗	✗	?	?
15	✗	✗	✗	?	?

Note: “?” in this table denotes that the statement in the relevant column heading could be either true or false for this pension type. For example, the “?” in the third column of the first row indicates that in Wave 2 the individual could either still be a member of the scheme (✓) or could no longer be a member of the scheme (✗).

## 4 Linking pensions reported in Wave 1 to those reported in Wave 2

Pensions which individuals reported in Wave 1 were asked about again in Wave 2. It is therefore useful to be able to link together the information about a pension from Wave 1 with the additional information about the same pension collected in Wave 2. Table 3 shows how pensions reported in Wave 1 relate to those in the Wave 2 pension-level dataset.

## 4.1 Table 3. Relationship between Wave 1 and Wave 2 pensions

pentype_wave2	Wave 1 question(s) which identify this same pension
1	wpps = 1
2	wpkp > 0
3	wpkp2 > 0
7	wprec = 2 AND wprgh = 1
8	wprec2 = 2 AND wprgh2 = 1
9	wprec3 = 2 AND wprgh3 = 1
10	wprec = 1
11	wprec2 = 1
12	wprec3 = 1

Note: pentypes 4-6 and 13-15 were not mentioned at Wave 1 and so the only information collected about these pensions will be that collected in Wave 2.

## 5 Derived variables

In addition to the variables which also appear in the Wave 2 core data (described above), three derived variables are included in the Wave 2 pension grid to summarise the status of each pension. The Stata syntax for creating these variables can be found in the annex to this document (this is somewhat more complicated than the equivalent code for Wave 1 derived variables as some information has to be fed forward from Wave 1 to create these variables). These variables are as follows:

### ***demppen***

“Is/was this pension provided by your employer?”

This variable identifies whether or not the pension is or was operated by the individual’s employer. It is derived from various raw variables depending on the particular pension type – for further details please refer to the syntax provided in the annex.

### ***ddbdc***

“Is/was this pension defined benefit or defined contribution?”

This variable identifies whether the pension is defined benefit or defined contribution in nature. Defined benefit pensions are ones in which the pension received is based on a formula involving age, years of service and salary. Defined contribution pensions are ones in which the pension contributions are put into a fund which grows over time and from which the pension received will depend on the size of the fund at the point of retirement. This variable is derived from various raw variables depending on the particular pension type – for further details please refer to the syntax provided in the annex.

The status of a pension may differ from that at Wave 1 if an individual reported that he scheme rules had changed between Wave 1 and Wave 2 (see variable wpsrul). For those individuals who did not know if the scheme rules had changed, we have assumed for the purposes of deriving the variable ddbdc that they have not – consequently ddbdc will take the same values in Wave 2 as it did in Wave 1 if wpsrul= “don’t know”.

In the case of some employer-provided pensions, follow-up questions were not asked to ascertain whether this pension was DB or DC. Therefore, for these pensions, the DB/DC distinction is unavailable (coded -6 in the variable ddbdc).

### **dcurpen**

“Status of pension scheme membership”

This variable indicates whether the individual was currently contributing to the pension, receiving an income from it, or had retained rights to it in Wave 2. This variable identifies those pensions we would expect to have been followed up at Wave 3 (all those for which dcurpen takes the values 1, 2 or 3). Other pensions (in particular those from which the individual had received a lump-sum refund of contributions or from which he had transferred the funds to a different pension scheme) were not followed up at Wave 3.

## **6 Problems with Wave 2 feed-forward data**

There are 61 individuals who were interviewed in Wave 1 and again in Wave 2 who appear not to have been routed through the correct series of questions in Wave 2 given the pensions they reported in Wave 1. The affected cases are listed in table 4. The first column of table 4 gives the individual identifier (idauniq), the second column lists all pension types that the individual ought to have been asked about but was not and the final column lists all the pension types that the individual ought not to have been asked about but was. In virtually all cases, it is only past pensions (pentye\_wave2 = 7 and above) that are affected. The answers to the incorrectly asked questions are, nonetheless, included in the pensions grid. In these 61 cases, data users will generally not be able to coherently link the pension information collected in Wave 1 to that collected in Wave 2.

### **6.1 Table 4. Cases in which there was a problem with the question routing in Wave 2**

Individual identifier (idauniq)	pentye_wave2 incorrectly not asked	pentye_wave2 incorrectly asked
100072	2, 10	none
104303	10	none
104309	10	none
104330	2	none
104416	10	none
104428	1	none
104449	none	10
104456	10	none
104469	2	none
104833	10	none
105523	1	none
105669	7	9, 10, 11
106094	10	none
106427	10	none
106485	10	none
106546	10	none
106578	10	none
106810	10	none
107381	10, 11	none
107691	10	none
107746	none	10
107878	10	none
108015	10	none
108317	10	none
108410	9, 10, 11	7
108547	10	none
108590	10	none

108716	2	1, 7
108767	10	none
111036	10	none
111082	none	11
111097	2, 7	none
111155	2	none
111256	10	none
111406	10	none
111457	7	10
111528	10	7
111854	2	1
111922	10	none
111929	none	2
112090	1	2
112312	2	none
112475	11	none
112709	1	none
112811	10	none
112895	1	none
112926	2	none
116787	10	none
116860	2	none
117309	10	none
117508	10	none
117757	7	none
117815	1	none
117867	10, 11	none
118135	1, 10	none
118312	10	none
118675	10	none
118757	2	none
119011	10	none
119609	7	none
119641	2, 7, 8, 9	none
119865	7	none
120530	1	none
120643	1	none
120676	10, 11, 12	none
120766	10	none
120903	10	none
121031	1	none
121098	none	1

## 7 Appendix – Stata code for derived variables

```

generate dcurpen=. ;
generate demppen=. ;
generate ddbdc=. ;
replace dcurpen = 1 if pentype_wave2<4 & wpsps==1;
replace dcurpen = 2 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr==1;
replace dcurpen = 3 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr==2 & wprghb==1;
replace dcurpen = 4 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr==2 & wprghb==2;
replace dcurpen = 5 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr==2 & wprghb==3;
replace dcurpen = 6 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr==2 & wprghb==4;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr== -8;
replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr== -9;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr==2 & wprghb== -8;

```

```

replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2<4 & wppstr==2 & wprghb==9;
replace dcurpen = 1 if (pentype_wave2==2|pentype_wave2==3) & wpkps==1;
replace dcurpen = 2 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==1;
replace dcurpen = 2 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==1;
replace dcurpen = 3 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==1;
replace dcurpen = 4 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==2;
replace dcurpen = 5 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==3;
replace dcurpen = 6 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==4;
replace dcurpen = 3 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==1;
replace dcurpen = 4 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==2;
replace dcurpen = 5 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==3;
replace dcurpen = 6 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==4;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==8;
replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==9;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==8;
replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==9;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==8;
replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==9;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==8;
replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & wprecn==2 &
wprghx==9;
replace dcurpen = 1 if pentype_wave2>3 & pentype_wave2<7;
replace dcurpen = 2 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprec==1;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprec==8;
replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprec==9;
replace dcurpen = 3 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprgh==1;
replace dcurpen = 4 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprgh==2;
replace dcurpen = 5 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprgh==3;
replace dcurpen = 6 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprgh==4;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprgh==8;
replace dcurpen = -9 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprgh==9;
replace dcurpen = -8 if pentype_wave2>12 & wprec==2 & wprgh==1;

replace demppen = demppen_w1 if pentype<4|(pentype>6 & pentype<13);
replace demppen = 1 if pentype==4;
replace demppen = 1 if (pentype_wave2==5|pentype_wave2==6) & wpkp==1;
replace demppen = 0 if (pentype_wave2==5|pentype_wave2==6) & wpkp~1 &
wpkp>-1;
replace demppen = -8 if (pentype_wave2==5|pentype_wave2==6) & wpkp==8;
replace demppen = -9 if (pentype_wave2==5|pentype_wave2==6) & wpkp==9;
replace demppen = 1 if
(pentype_wave2==13|pentype_wave2==14|pentype_wave2==15) & wpmc==1;
replace demppen = 0 if
(pentype_wave2==13|pentype_wave2==14|pentype_wave2==15) & wpmc~1 & wpmc>-1;
replace demppen = -8 if
(pentype_wave2==13|pentype_wave2==14|pentype_wave2==15) & wpmc==8;

```

```

replace demppen = -9 if
(pentype_wave2==13|pentype_wave2==14|pentype_wave2==15) & wpmisc==9;
/* special cases */
replace demppen = -8 if (idauniq==104449 & pentype_wave2==10)|
(idauniq==105669 & pentype_wave2==9 )|
(idauniq==105669 & pentype_wave2==10)|
(idauniq==105669 & pentype_wave2==11)|
(idauniq==107746 & pentype_wave2==10)|
(idauniq==111082 & pentype_wave2==11)|
(idauniq==111457 & pentype_wave2==10)|
(idauniq==111929 & pentype_wave2==2 )|
(idauniq==112090 & pentype_wave2==2 );
replace demppen = 1 if idauniq==108716 & pentype_wave2==7;
replace demppen = 1 if idauniq==108410 & pentype_wave2==7;
replace demppen = 1 if idauniq==111528 & pentype_wave2==7;
replace demppen = 1 if (idauniq==108716 & pentype_wave2==1 )|(idauniq==111854 &
pentype_wave2==1 )| (idauniq==121098 & pentype_wave2==1 );

replace ddbdc = 1 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==1|wpsrul==3) & wpdpsn== 1;
replace ddbdc = 2 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==1|wpsrul==3) & wpdpsn== 2;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==1|wpsrul==3) & wpdpsn== -8;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==1|wpsrul==3) & wpdpsn== 3;
replace ddbdc = -9 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==1|wpsrul==3) & wpdpsn== -9;
replace ddbdc = 1 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==2|wpsrul== -8) & wpdpsn== 1;
replace ddbdc = 2 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==2|wpsrul== -8) & wpdpsn== 2;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==2|wpsrul== -8) & wpdpsn== -8;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==2|wpsrul== -8) & wpdpsn== 3;
replace ddbdc = -9 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wpsps==1 &
(wpsrul==2|wpsrul== -8) & wpdpsn== -9;
replace ddbdc = 1 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wppstr==1 & wpdpsnc==1;
replace ddbdc = 2 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wppstr==1 & wpdpsnc==2;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wppstr==1 & wpdpsnc== -8;
replace ddbdc = ddbdc_w1 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wppstr==1 &
wpdpsnc== -1;
replace ddbdc = ddbdc_w1 if pentype_wave2<4 & demppen_w1==1 & wppstr~ =1 &
wppstr~ = -1;
replace ddbdc = ddbdc_w1 if (pentype_wave2<4|(pentype_wave2>6 &
pentype_wave2<13)) & demppen_w1~ =1;
replace ddbdc = 1 if pentype==4 & wpdps==1;
replace ddbdc = 2 if pentype==4 & wpdps==2;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype==4 & (wpdps== -8|wpdps==3);
replace ddbdc = -9 if pentype==4 & wpdps== -9;
replace ddbdc = 1 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & wppdes==1;
replace ddbdc = 2 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & wppdes==2;
replace ddbdc = -8 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & (wppdes==3|wppdes== -8);
replace ddbdc = -9 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & wppdes== -9;
replace ddbdc = -8 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & wpkp==1 & wppdes== -1;
replace ddbdc = 1 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & wpkp>1;

```

```

replace ddbdc = -8 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & wpkp==8;
replace ddbdc = -9 if (pentype==5|pentype==6) & wpkp==9;
replace ddbdc = -6 if pentype_wave2>12 & demppen==1;
replace ddbdc = 1 if pentype_wave2>12 & wpmsc>1;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype_wave2>12 & wpmsc==8;
replace ddbdc = -9 if pentype_wave2>12 & wpmsc==9;
replace ddbdc = 1 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & demppen_w1==1 &
wpdsnd==1;
replace ddbdc = 2 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & demppen_w1==1 &
wpdsnd==2;
replace ddbdc = -8 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & demppen_w1==1 &
(wpdsnd==8|wpdsnd==3);
replace ddbdc = -9 if pentype_wave2>6 & pentype_wave2<10 & demppen_w1==1 &
wpdsnd==9;
replace ddbdc = ddbdc_w1 if pentype_wave2>9 & pentype_wave2<13 & demppen_w1==1;
/* special cases */
replace ddbdc = 2 if idauniq==108716 & pentype_wave2==1;
replace ddbdc = 2 if idauniq==121098 & pentype_wave2==1;
replace ddbdc = -8 if idauniq==111854 & pentype_wave2==1;
replace ddbdc = -8 if idauniq==111929 & pentype_wave2==2;
replace ddbdc = -8 if idauniq==112090 & pentype_wave2==2;
replace ddbdc = -6 if idauniq==104449 & pentype_wave2==10;
replace ddbdc = -6 if idauniq==105669 & pentype_wave2==10;
replace ddbdc = -6 if idauniq==105669 & pentype_wave2==11;
replace ddbdc = -8 if idauniq==105669 & pentype_wave2==9;
replace ddbdc = -6 if idauniq==107746 & pentype_wave2==10;
replace ddbdc = -8 if idauniq==108410 & pentype_wave2==7;
replace ddbdc = 2 if idauniq==108716 & pentype_wave2==7;
replace ddbdc = -6 if idauniq==111082 & pentype_wave2==11;
replace ddbdc = -6 if idauniq==111457 & pentype_wave2==10;
replace ddbdc = -8 if idauniq==111528 & pentype_wave2==7;

```

## **User Guide for ELSA Self-Completion Data – Personal Beliefs and Wellbeing (Ryff Scale)**

### **Introduction**

This User Guide covers the ELSA self-completion data relating to personal beliefs and wellbeing, otherwise known as the Ryff scale. More detail about the Ryff scale, including who was asked to complete it, can be found below.

The self-completion with which this data was collected is distinct from, and in addition to, the core self-completion questionnaires that respondents have been asked to complete during or after their main ELSA interview at each wave of ELSA.

For further information about other aspects of ELSA (such as the sample, the data collection methods used or the content of the main or nurse questionnaire), please see the relevant User Guides that are available from the Data Archive. This User Guide will cover only the questionnaire used to collect information on the Ryff scale. If you wish to link the data deposited here with other ELSA data at the Data Archive then you will need to use the unique analytical identifier (IDAUNIQ) to do so.

### **Eligibility and Response for Personal Beliefs and Wellbeing Self-Completion**

The Personal Beliefs and Wellbeing self-completion questionnaire was given out, at random, to one respondent in one in ten households at the end of the ELSA Wave 2 nurse visit. All ELSA core sample members who completed a Wave 2 interview were eligible for a nurse visit, with the exception of those interviews that were carried out by proxy. The number of respondents who had a productive Wave 2 nurse interview is 7666, which is 88.2% of those eligible for a nurse visit (i.e. core sample members), or 71.2% of all those eligible for an ELSA Wave 2 interview. Of these 7666, 747 respondents (9.7%) were selected to receive the self-completion. The number of respondents who returned an at least partially completed questionnaire was 408, or 54.6% of those who were given the questionnaire. One respondent returned a questionnaire with no responses at all, and has been removed from this dataset.

The variable OUTNSCW2 shows whether the questionnaire was partially or fully completed - a partial completion was defined as one that had 15 or more responses missing (out of a total of 43 items).

Completion of this additional questionnaire was entirely voluntary, and respondents were encouraged to answer at least some of the questions if they did not want to answer all of them. The handing out of the questionnaire was, in some ways, an experiment to determine whether it added sufficiently to the measures of wellbeing already on ELSA, without adding undue burden to the respondents.

Users of this data should note that the subsample of the main ELSA sample that received the questionnaire is a select one, being those who had taken part in both an interview and nurse visit at Wave 2 and still been willing to complete this additional questionnaire. Users are cautioned against using the information other than for exploratory purposes – it has not been quantified how representative the subsample who

completed the questionnaire are of the rest of the ELSA sample, or of the population in general (e.g. in terms of socio-demographics or CES-D score).

## **Content and Format of Questionnaire**

Ryff's scales of Psychological Wellbeing (Carol Ryff, 1989, 1995) were designed to measure six theoretically motivated constructs of psychological wellbeing, which are:

**Autonomy** - independence and self-determination;

**Environmental mastery** - the ability to manage one's life;

**Personal growth** - being open to new experiences;

**Positive relations with others** - having satisfying, high quality relationships;

**Purpose in life** - believing that one's life is meaningful;

**Self-acceptance** - a positive attitude towards oneself and one's past life.

### Scale Length and Item Content

The original questionnaire included 120 items (20 per dimension) but shorter versions comprising 84 items (14 per dimension), 54 items (9 per dimension), 42 items (7 per dimension) and 18 items (3 per dimension) are now widely used.

The overlap between items in the shorter versions is quite low; for example, the 18-item version has only 6 items in common with the 42-item version, one item for each dimension. The version used in ELSA has 43 items (7 per dimension except 8 for purpose in life) and has 30 items in common with the similar length 42-item version. The questionnaire itself is archived along with this User Guide and the data.

The response format for all items normally comprises seven ordered categories labelled from 'strongly agree' to 'strongly disagree'. Empirical data, such as that presented here, has been found to be highly skewed towards the conceptually more positive response categories. Levels of agreement in this data have been found to be extremely high with regards to the 'positive' questions (see below), and similarly with high levels of disagreement with the 'negative' questions.

Each length version includes a mixture of positive and negative item content. Questions with negative item content need to be reverse scored prior to analyses in order to be comparable. The ELSA version of the questionnaire includes 21 questions with positive and 22 questions with negative item content. The 'negative' questions are in **bold** text in the table below.

The developers of the scale have suggested the following structure for the data, in the form of subscales for each construct listed at the start of this section:

<b>Construct</b>	<b>Question number (variable name in data)</b>
<i>Autonomy</i>	<b>15 (RFINFLU)</b> , 17 (RFCONFI), 18 (RFJUDGE), 19 (RFVOICE), 25 (RFDECIS), <b>31 (RFDIFF)</b> , and <b>37 (RFDISAG)</b>
<i>Environmental mastery</i>	<b>4 (RFDEMAN)</b> , 8 (RFCHARG), 9 (RFMANAG), <b>24 (RFFITIN)</b> , <b>30 (RFOVERW)</b> , <b>36 (RFARRAN)</b> , and 42 (RFBUILD)
<i>Personal growth</i>	11 (RFLEARN), 12 (RFEXPER), <b>14 (RFIMPRO)</b> , <b>23 (RFHORIZ)</b> , <b>29 (RFNIMPR)</b> , 35 (RFDEVEL), and <b>41 (RFTRICK)</b>
<i>Positive relations with others</i>	<b>6 (RFCLOSE)</b> , 13 (RFSHARE), <b>16 (RFWARM)</b> , 22 (RFLOVIN), <b>28 (RFLONEL)</b> , <b>34 (RFFRIEN)</b> , and 40 (RFTRUST)
<i>Purpose in life</i>	3 (RFWAND), <b>7 (RFONEDA)</b> , <b>10 (RFDONE)</b> , 20 (RFSENSE), <b>26 (RFACCOM)</b> , <b>32 (RFGOALS)</b> , 38 (RFPLANS), and 43 (RFACTIV).
<i>Self-acceptance</i>	1 (RFPERS), 2 (RFSTORY), <b>5 (RFDISAP)</b> , 21 (RFPOSIT), <b>27 (RFMORE)</b> , <b>33 (RFATTIT)</b> and 39 (RFCOMPA)

'Negative' questions in bold

The names of the variables in the deposited dataset are somewhat arbitrary – they do not represent standard names for these variables and have been allocated primarily to be more informative than just the question numbers alone.

Those unfamiliar with the Ryff scale should be aware that the psychometric properties are controversial, in particular whether the six dimensions proposed by the author of the scale are valid. There is no agreement, however, as to what would constitute a better structure.

A number of references are given below so that users can decide how they wish to use the data.

## References

Abbott RA, Ploubidis GB, Huppert FA, Kuh D, Wadsworth M, and Croudace TJ. Psychometric evaluation and predictive validity of Ryff's psychological wellbeing items in a UK birth cohort sample of women. *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes* - Under review.

Cheng ST and Chan AC (2005): Measuring psychological wellbeing in the Chinese. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 38:1307-1316.

Clarke PJ, Marshall VW, Ryff CD and Wheaton B (2001): Measuring psychological wellbeing in the Canadian Study of Health and Aging. *Int Psychogeriatr*, 13 Supp 1:79 - 90.

Kafka GJ and Kozma A (2002): The construct validity of Ryff's scales of psychological wellbeing (SPWB) and their relationship to measures of subjective wellbeing. *Social Indicators Research*, 57:171-190.

Ryff CD (1989): Happiness is everything, or is it? Explorations on the meaning of psychological wellbeing. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 57:1069-1081.

Ryff CD and Keyes CL (1995): The structure of psychological wellbeing revisited. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 69(4): 719-727.

Springer KW and Hauser RM (in press): An assessment of the construct validity of Ryff's scales of psychological wellbeing: method, mode and measurement effects. *Social Science Research*.

Van Dierendonck D (2004): The construct validity of Ryff's Scales of Psychological Wellbeing and its extension with spiritual wellbeing. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 36:629-643.

### **Contact Details**

*ELSA Data Manager:*  
Susan Nunn  
E-mail: s.nunn@natcen.ac.uk  
Telephone: 020 7250 1866

Version 2  
**P8158**

Serial								CK	Person	First name:	Card	
											0	3
1-9								10	11-12		13-14	

Batch no 15-19

# Personal Beliefs and Wellbeing

## Self-Completion Questionnaire In Confidence

The following questions are about your personal beliefs and wellbeing. Whilst they are not part of the main ELSA study, we would appreciate your help in answering them to assist us in designing our future questionnaire. Completion is, of course, entirely voluntary.

### HOW TO FILL IN THIS QUESTIONNAIRE

Please answer the questions by:

Ticking a box like this



### HOW TO RETURN THIS QUESTIONNAIRE

Please return the completed questionnaire in the pre-paid envelope as soon as you possibly can.

**PLEASE START THE QUESTIONNAIRE AT QUESTION 1 ON THE NEXT PAGE.  
THANK YOU AGAIN FOR YOUR HELP.**

Please indicate how strongly you agree or disagree with each of the following statements

Tick one box on each line

		Strongly Agree	Some-what agree	Agree a little	Neither agree nor disagree	Disagree a little	Some-what disagree	Strongly disagree
	20							
1.	I like most parts of my personality	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
	21							
2.	When I look at the story of my life, I am pleased with how things have turned out so far	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
	22							
3.	Some people wander aimlessly through life, but I am not one of them	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
	23							
4.	The demands of everyday life often get me down	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
	24							
5.	In many ways I feel disappointed about my achievements in life	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
	25							
6.	Maintaining close relationships has been difficult and frustrating for me	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
	26							
7.	I live life one day at a time and don't really think about the future	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
	27							
8.	In general, I feel I am in charge of the situation in which I live	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7

Tick one box on each line

	Strongly Agree	Some-what agree	Agree a little	Neither agree nor disagree	Disagree a little	Some-what disagree	Strongly disagree
28							
9. I am good at managing the responsibilities of daily life	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
29							
10. I sometimes feel as if I've done all there is to in life	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
30							
11. For me, life has been a continuous process of learning, changing and growth	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
31							
12. I think it is important to have new experiences that challenge how I think about myself and the world	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
32							
13. People would describe me as a giving person, willing to share my time with others	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
33							
14. I gave up trying to make big improvements or changes in my life a long time ago	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
34							
15. I tend to be influenced by people with strong opinions	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
35							
16. I have not experienced many warm and trusting relationships with others	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7

Tick one box on each line

	Strongly Agree	Some-what agree	Agree a little	Neither agree nor disagree	Disagree a little	Some-what disagree	Strongly disagree
36							
17. I have confidence in my own opinions, even if they are different from the way most other people think	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
37							
18. I judge myself by what I think is important, not by the values of what others think is important	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
38							
19. I am not afraid to voice my opinions, even when they are in opposition to the opinions of most people	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
39							
20. I have a sense of direction and purpose in life	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
40							
21. In general, I feel confident and positive about myself	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
41							
22. Most people see me as loving and affectionate	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
42							
23. I am not interested in activities that will expand my horizons	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7

*Tick one box on each line*

	<b>Strongly Agree</b>	<b>Some- what agree</b>	<b>Agree a little</b>	<b>Neither agree nor disagree</b>	<b>Disagree a little</b>	<b>Some- what disagree</b>	<b>Strongly disagree</b>
43							
24. I do not fit very well with the people and the community around me	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
44							
25. My decisions are not usually influenced by what everyone else is doing	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
45							
26. I don't have a good sense of what it is I'm trying to accomplish in life	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
46							
27. I feel like many of the people I know have got more out of life than I have	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
47							
28. I often feel lonely because I have few close friends with whom to share my concerns	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
48							
29. When I think about it, I haven't really improved much as a person over the years	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
49							
30. I often feel overwhelmed by my responsibilities	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7

Tick one box on each line

	Strongly Agree	Some-what agree	Agree a little	Neither agree nor disagree	Disagree a little	Some-what disagree	Strongly disagree
50							
31. It's difficult for me to voice my own opinions on controversial matters	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
51							
32. I used to set goals for myself, but that now seems like a waste of time	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
52							
33. My attitude about myself is probably not as positive as most people feel about themselves	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
53							
34. It seems to me that most other people have more friends than I do	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
54							
35. I have the sense that I have developed a lot as a person over time	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
55							
36. I have difficulty arranging my life in a way that is satisfying to me	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
56							
37. I often change my mind about decisions if my friends or family disagree	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7

Tick one box on each line

	Strongly Agree	Some-what agree	Agree a little	Neither agree nor disagree	Disagree a little	Some-what disagree	Strongly disagree
57							
38. I enjoy making plans for the future and working to make them a reality	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
58							
39. When I compare myself to friends and acquaintances, it makes me feel good about who I am	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
59							
40. I know that I can trust my friends, and they know they can trust me	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
60							
41. There is truth to the saying you can't teach an old dog new tricks	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
61							
42. I have been able to build a home and a lifestyle for myself that is much to my liking	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
62							
43. I am an active person in carrying out the plans I set for myself	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7

**Thank you very much for taking the time to answer our questions.**

**Please return to NatCen in the prepaid envelope provided.  
All your answers will remain confidential.**

Table C Translation of quality indicators and patient-centred questions into corresponding ELSA questions, showing numerator and denominator population criteria for quality score.

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
Cerebrovascular disease cvd4. IF a person aged 50 or older has had a previous stroke, THEN the patient should be offered antihypertensive medication.	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed stroke at wave 2 but not at wave 1 (Hediaa)	Hehibpb1 = 'yes'	Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'stroke (cerebral vascular disease)'] Hehibpb1: Did a doctor or nurse ever suggest you take any medication to lower your blood pressure?
Depression dep1. IF a person aged 50 or older receives a diagnosis of a new depression episode, THEN the diagnosing physician should ask on the day of diagnosis whether the person aged 50 or older had any thoughts about suicide.	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed depression at wave 2 but not at wave 1 (Hediab)	Hepsye = 'yes'	Hediab: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'any emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems'] Hepsy: What type of emotional, nervous or psychiatric problems do you have? [includes 'depression'] Hepsye: When you talked about these feelings with a doctor or nurse, did they ask you on that day if you had thoughts about suicide?
dep2. IF a person aged 50 or older is diagnosed with clinical depression, THEN antidepressant treatment, talking treatment, or electroconvulsive therapy should be offered within 2 weeks after diagnosis unless within that period the patient has improved, or unless the patient has substance abuse or dependence, in which case treatment may wait until 8 weeks after the patient is in a drug- or alcohol-free state.	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed depression at wave 2 but not at wave 1, and Hepsya ≠ 'none'	Hepsyb = 'yes'	Hepsya: I have some questions about any treatment you may have had for your depression. Did a doctor or nurse suggest that you take medication, or see a mental health professional for counselling? Hepsyb: Did you start medication or counselling within 2 weeks of being offered this treatment?

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
<p>dep3. IF a person aged 50 or older has no meaningful symptom response after 6 weeks of treatment, THEN one of the following treatment options should be initiated by the 8th week of treatment: medication dose should be optimised (if initial treatment was medication), or medication should be initiated (if initial treatment was psychotherapy alone), or referral to a psychiatrist should be offered.</p>	<p>Age<math>\geq</math>50 years. Reported diagnosed depression at wave 2 but not at wave 1, and Hepsyc = 'no'</p>	<p>Hepsyd = 'yes'</p>	<p>Hepsyc: Did you feel better within 6 weeks after starting to take medication, or seeing a mental health professional for counselling? Hepsyd: Did any doctor or nurse start you on medication, change the dose of the medication that you were taking or, change the medications to help you feel better?</p>
<p>Diabetes mellitus diab1. IF a person aged 50 or older has diabetes, THEN his or her glycosylated haemoglobin or fructosamine level should be measured at least annually.</p>	<p>Age<math>\geq</math>50 years. Reported diabetes or high blood sugar at wave 1 or wave 2, and confirmed that had diagnosed diabetes at wave 2</p>	<p>Hesuga = 'yes'</p>	<p>Heacd: Has a doctor ever told you that you have diabetes? Hesug: Have you ever had a special blood test to see how well your blood sugar was controlled? This test is called a glycosylated haemoglobin, or haemoglobin A1c, or fructosamine. This is a blood test taken at a doctor's surgery or health centre or laboratory. Hesuga: Have you had this test (glycosylated haemoglobin or fructosamine) performed in the past 12 months?</p>

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
diab2. IF a diabetic person aged 50 or older does not have established renal disease and is not receiving an ACE inhibitor or angiotensin II receptor blocker, THEN he or she should receive an annual test for proteinuria.	Age>=50 years. Reported diabetes or high blood sugar at wave 1 or wave 2, and confirmed that had diagnosed diabetes at wave 2, and Hekidn = 'no', and Heacea = 'Not taking ACE inhibitor or A2 receptor blocker'	Hewee = 'yes'	<p>Hekidn: Has a doctor ever told you that your diabetes has caused trouble with your kidneys?</p> <p>Heacea: I would like to check whether any of the medications you are taking are on this list of ACE inhibitor or A2 receptor blockers? [show card G ACE inhibitors]</p> <p>Hewee: Have you had a urine test for protein in the last 12 months?</p>
diab6. IF a diabetic person aged 50 or older has a fasting total cholesterol level of 5 mmol/L or greater, THEN he or she should be offered an intervention to lower cholesterol.	Age>=50 years. Reported diabetes or high blood sugar at wave 2 but not at wave 1, and confirmed that had diagnosed diabetes at wave 2, and reported diagnosed 'high cholesterol' at wave 2 (cholesterol question not asked at wave 1)	Hechol = 'yes'	<p>Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'high cholesterol']</p> <p>Hechol: Has any doctor talked to you about how to lower your cholesterol? This would include changing your diet, losing weight, getting more exercise or taking medication (asked if has diabetes and high cholesterol)</p>

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
diab8. IF a diabetic person aged 50 or older has one additional cardiac risk factor (i.e., smoker, hypertension, hypercholesterolemia, or renal insufficiency/microalbuminuria), THEN he/she should be offered an ACE inhibitor or receptor blocker.	Age>=50 years. Reported diabetes or high blood sugar at wave 1 or wave 2, and confirmed that had diagnosed diabetes at wave 2, and at wave 2 (Heska='yes', or (systolic blood pressure (BP) >=140 or diastolic BP >=90), or Hekidn='yes', or Heweea='yes', or reported diagnosed 'high cholesterol' or 'high blood pressure or hypertension', or at wave 1 reported diagnosed hypertension.	Heacea = 'yes' or Heacea = 'yes'	<p>Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'high blood pressure or hypertension' and 'high cholesterol']</p> <p>Hewee: Some doctors check to see if patients with diabetes have protein in their urine. Have you had a urine test for protein in the past 12 months? (This test may also be called a microalbumin test, and involves a first morning urine sample or 24-hour urine collection.)</p> <p>Heweea: Has a doctor ever told you that you have protein in your urine?</p> <p>Hekidn: Has a doctor ever told you that your diabetes has caused trouble with your kidneys?</p> <p>Heska: Do you smoke cigarettes at all nowadays?</p> <p>Sysval: valid mean systolic BP (measured)</p> <p>Diaval: valid mean diastolic BP (measured)</p> <p>Heacea: Has a doctor discussed with you whether you should take a medication called an ACE inhibitor or A2 receptor blocker?</p> <p>Heacea: I would like to check whether any of the medications you are taking are on this list of ACE inhibitor or A2 receptor blockers? [show card G ACE inhibitors]</p>

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
diab9. ALL diabetic persons aged 50 or older should have an annual examination of his/her feet.	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diabetes or high blood sugar at wave 1 or wave 2, and confirmed that had diagnosed diabetes at wave 2	Heftchk = 'yes'	Heftchk: Some doctors suggest that some patients with diabetes have a regular foot examination. In the past year, has any doctor or nurse examined your bare feet?
Falls falls3H. IF a person aged 65 or older reported 2 or more falls in the past year, or a single fall with injury requiring treatment, THEN the physician should take a basic fall history.	Age $\geq$ 65 years. Heflb $>$ 2, and Heflc = 'yes'	Hefld = 'yes'	Hefla: Have you fallen down in the last 2 years/since we last talked to you? (for any reason)? Heflb: How many times have you fallen down? Heflc: In any of these falls did you injure yourself seriously enough to require treatment? Hefld: With any of your past falls, did a doctor or nurse talk with you to try to understand why you fell?
falls3E. IF a person aged 65 or older reported 2 or more falls in the past year, or a single fall with injury requiring treatment, THEN the patient should be offered a multidisciplinary falls assessment.	Age $\geq$ 65 years. Heflb $>$ 2, and Heflc = 'yes'	Hefle = 'yes' or Heflf = 'yes'	Hefle: Did a doctor or nurse or physiotherapist test your balance or strength or watch how you walk to understand why you fell? Heflf: Did a doctor or nurse or physiotherapist recommend any additional tests, such as heart tests or brain scans to understand why you fell?

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
Hearing hearing2. IF a person aged 65 or older has a problem with hearing, THEN he or she should be offered a formal audiological evaluation within 3 months.	Age>=65 years. (Hehear = 'fair' or 'poor', or Hehra = 'yes'), and Hehrb = 'yes'	Hehrc = 'yes'	Hehear: Is your hearing (using a hearing aid if you use one) excellent, very good, good, fair or poor? Hehra: Do you find it difficult to follow a conversation if there is background noise, such as TV, radio or children playing (using a hearing aid as usual)? Hehrb: Have you told a doctor or nurse about your hearing problems? Hehrc: When you told the doctor or nurse about your hearing problems, did he or she refer you to an ear specialist to check your hearing?
hearing3. IF a person aged 65 or older is a hearing aid candidate, THEN he or she should be offered hearing rehabilitation.	Age>=65 years. (Hehear = 'fair' or 'poor', or Hehra = 'yes'), and Hehrb = 'yes', and Hehrd = 'yes'	Hehre = 'yes', and Hehrf = 'yes'	Hehrd: Has any doctor or nurse or ear specialist recommended a hearing aid? Hehre: Did you get a hearing aid? Hehrf: Did an ear specialist or doctor or nurse teach you how to use your hearing aid?
Hypertension hyp2. IF a person aged 50 or older remains hypertensive after non-pharmacological intervention, THEN pharmacological antihypertensive treatment should be initiated.	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed hypertension at wave 2 but not at wave 1 (Hediaa)	Hehibpb = 'yes'	Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'high blood pressure or hypertension'] Hehibpb: Some doctors suggest that some patients take medication to lower their blood pressure. Did a doctor or nurse ever suggest that you take medication to lower your blood pressure?

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
<p>Ischaemic Heart Disease</p> <p>ihd1. IF a person aged 50 or older has established CHD and LDL cholesterol &gt; 3 mmol/L, THEN he or she should be offered an intervention to lower cholesterol.</p>	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed high cholesterol at wave 2, and diagnosed angina or heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis) at wave 2 but not wave 1	Hechol = 'yes'	Hechol: Has any doctor talked to you about how to lower your cholesterol? This would include changing your diet, losing weight, getting more exercise or taking medication
<p>ihd2. IF a person aged 50 or older has established CHD and is not on warfarin, THEN he or she should be offered antiplatelet therapy.</p>	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed angina or heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis) at wave 2 but not wave 1, and Hehrtc = 'no'	Hehrta = 'yes'	<p>Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card [includes angina, MI, diabetes, stroke and high cholesterol]</p> <p>Hehrtc: Are you taking Warfarin?</p> <p>Hehrta: Did a doctor suggest that you take medication to thin your blood such as warfarin or aspirin, Plavix, Ticlid, or other blood thinning medication?</p>
<p>ihd3. IF a person aged 50 or older with established CHD smokes, THEN he or she should be offered counselling for smoking cessation.</p>	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed angina or heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis) at wave 1 or wave 2, and currently smokes cigarettes	Hecgstp = 'yes'	<p>Heska: Do you smoke cigarettes at all nowadays?</p> <p>Hecgstp: Has a doctor or nurse ever advised you to stop smoking?</p>
<p>ihd5. IF a person aged 50 or older has had a recent myocardial infarction, THEN he or she should be offered a beta blocker.</p>	Age>=50 years. Reported diagnosed heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis) at wave 2 but not wave 1	<p>Hebeta = 'yes' or</p> <p>Hebetb = currently taking beta blockers</p>	<p>Hebeta: Did any doctor ever tell you that you should take a medication called a betablocker?</p> <p>Hebetb: Please could you show me the medications or the repeat prescription list for any medications you have taken over the last week? [checked against card F beta blockers]</p>

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
ihd6 (previously med3). IF a person aged 50 or older is prescribed warfarin, THEN an international normalized ratio (INR) should be determined at least every 12 weeks.	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed angina or heart attack (including myocardial infarction or coronary thrombosis) at wave 1 or wave 2, and Hehrtc = 'yes'	Hehrte = 'yes'	<p>Hehrtc: Are you taking Warfarin?</p> <p>Hehrtd: Many doctors ask patients on Warfarin to get their blood tested regularly. The test checks how thin their blood is, and is sometimes called an INR test. Do you get your blood checked for this?</p> <p>Hehrte: Have you had this blood test in the past 12 weeks?</p>
Osteoarthritis oa2. IF an ambulatory person aged 50 or older has had a diagnosis of symptomatic osteoarthritis of the knee for longer than 3 months and has no contraindications to exercise and is physically and mentally able to exercise, THEN a directed or supervised strengthening or aerobic exercise programme should have been prescribed at least once.	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed osteoarthritis in wave 1 or wave 2 (Heart), and knee pain for more than 3 months (Hekne) rated 1-5, and excluding those with Hehip rated 6-10	Hekneb = 'yes'	<p>Hediab: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'arthritis (including osteoarthritis, or rheumatism)']</p> <p>Heart: Which type or types of arthritis do you have? [includes 'osteoarthritis']</p> <p>Hehip: How would you rate the pain in your hips? ('Where 0 is no pain and 10 is severe or excruciating pain, as bad as you can imagine'. Range: 0-10)</p> <p>Hekne: How would you rate the pain in your knees? ('Where 0 is no pain and 10 is severe or excruciating pain, as bad as you can imagine'. Range: 0-10)</p> <p>Heknea: Has your knee pain been bothering you for more than 3 months?</p> <p>Hekneb: Has a doctor or nurse suggested that you receive physiotherapy or attend a supervised exercise program for your knee pain?</p>

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
oa3. IF an ambulatory person aged 50 or older has a diagnosis of symptomatic osteoarthritis, THEN education regarding the natural history, treatment and self-management of the disease should be offered at least once.	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed osteoarthritis at wave 2 but not wave 1	Hearta = 'yes' and Heartb = 'yes' and Heartc = 'yes'	Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about: Hearta: What your arthritis or joint pain will be like as time goes on? Heartb: How to keep your arthritis or joint pain from getting worse? Heartc: How your arthritis or joint pain will be treated?
oa4. IF oral pharmacological therapy is initiated to treat osteoarthritis among people aged 50 or older, THEN paracetamol should be the first drug used, unless there is a contraindication to use.	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed osteoarthritis at wave 2 but not wave 1	Hearte = 'yes'	Hearte: Did any doctor or nurse recommend you to try paracetamol before other medicines for your joint pain?
oa6. IF a person aged 50 or older with severe symptomatic osteoarthritis of the knee or hip has failed to respond to non- pharmacological and pharmacological therapy, THEN the patient should be offered referral to an orthopaedic surgeon to be evaluated for total joint replacement within 6 months unless surgery is contraindicated.	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed osteoarthritis in wave 1 or wave 2, and knee or hip pain for more than 6 months (Hekne & Hehip), both rated 6-10, and not controlled by treatment (Hepae = 'no')	Hepaf = 'yes'	Hepac: Has your knee or hip pain been bothering you for more than six months? Hepad: Are you taking or have you taken any medication or exercises to control the pain in your knee or hip? Hepae: Do exercises and medicines control the pain in your knee or hip? Hepaf: Did any doctor recommend that you should have surgery or joint replacement?

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
Osteoporosis osteop4. IF a person aged 50 or older has untreated osteoporosis, THEN calcium and vitamin D supplements should be recommended at least once. osteop6. IF a woman aged 50 or older is newly diagnosed with osteoporosis, THEN the patient should be offered treatment with hormone replacement therapy, SERMs, bisphosphonates, calcitonin, or calcium and vitamin D within 3 months of diagnosis.	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed osteoporosis in wave 1 or wave 2 (Hediab)	Heoste = 'yes'	Hediab: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'osteoporosis, sometimes called thin or brittle bones'] Heoste: Has any doctor or nurse recommended taking calcium pills or Vitamin D?
	Women aged $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed osteoporosis in wave 2 but not wave 1	Heosted = 'yes'	Heosteb: Did a doctor or nurse recommend treatment with medication for your osteoporosis or thin bones? Heostec: Did you take any of them? Heosted: Were these medicines recommended within 3 months of a doctor telling you that you had osteoporosis?
Pain management pain5. IF a person aged 50 or older has a newly reported chronic painful condition, THEN treatment should be offered.	Age $\geq$ 50 years, often troubled (Hepain) by moderate or severe pain (Hepaa) which started within the 12 months prior to interview (Hepag), and which the respondent had told their doctor or nurse about (Hepah)	Hepai = 'yes'	Hepain: Are you often troubled by pain? Hepaa: How bad is the pain most of the time? Is it mild, moderate or severe? Hepag: Has this pain started within the past 12 months? [asked of those who had moderate or severe pain] Hepah: Have you told your doctor or nurse about this pain? Hepai: Did your doctor or nurse recommend any treatments for your pain?

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
<p><b>Smoking</b> smok3. IF a person aged 50 or older uses tobacco regularly, THEN he or she should be offered advice and/or pharmacological therapy to stop tobacco use at least once.</p>	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Current cigarette smoker (Heska = 'yes')	Hecgstp = 'yes' or Hecgnic = 'yes'	<p>Heska: Do you smoke cigarettes at all nowadays? Hecgstp: Has a doctor or nurse ever advised you to stop smoking? Hecgnic: Has any doctor or nurse ever told you about any nicotine products, such as nicotine patches, chewing gum, lozenges or other similar products at all to help you give up smoking?</p>
<p><b>Urinary Incontinence</b> inc3. IF a person aged 65 or older has new UI that persists for over 1 month or UI at the time of a new evaluation, THEN a targeted history should be obtained about each of the following: (1) characteristics of voiding, (2) ability to get to the toilet, (3) prior treatment for urinary incontinence, (4) importance of the problem to the patient, and (5) mental status.</p>	Age $\geq$ 65 years. Urinary incontinence during 12 months prior to interview (Heinct), lasting for at least 1 month (Heincta), which respondent mentioned to a doctor or nurse (Heinctb)	Heinctc = 'yes' and Heinctd = 'yes' and Heincte = 'yes' and Heinctf = 'yes'	<p>Heinct: We would like to ask you about incontinence. During the last 12 months, have you lost any amount of urine beyond your control? Heincta: When you had this problem, did it last for more than 1 month? Heinctb: Have you ever mentioned this problem to a doctor or nurse? Heinctc: Did a doctor or nurse ask you when you lose urine, for example when you sneeze or laugh? Heinctd: Did a doctor or nurse ask you if you had trouble getting to the toilet? Heincte: Did a doctor or nurse ask you if you had been treated for this problem before? Heinctf: Did a doctor or nurse ask you how important this problem was to you?</p>

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
inc4. IF a person aged 65 or older has new UI that persists for over 1 month after consulting a doctor, THEN a targeted physical exam should be performed that includes (1) a rectal exam and (2) a genital system exam (including a pelvic exam for women).	Age>=65 years. Urinary incontinence during 12 months prior to interview (Heinct), lasting for at least 1 month (Heincta), which respondent mentioned to a doctor or nurse (Heinctb)	Heincti = 'yes' or Heinctj = 'yes'	Heincti: Did a doctor or specialist such as a urologist or gynaecologist perform an internal exam? (women) Heinctj: Did a doctor or nurse perform a rectal examination? (men)
inc6. IF a person aged 65 or older has new UI or UI at the time of a new evaluation, THEN treatment options should be discussed.	Age>=65 years. Urinary incontinence during 12 months prior to interview (Heinct), lasting for at least 1 month (Heincta), which respondent mentioned to a doctor or nurse (Heinctb)	Heincth = 'yes'	Heincth: Did a doctor or nurse talk with you about how to treat urinary incontinence?
inc8. IF a person aged 65 or older has new UI that persists for over 1 month or UI at the time of a new evaluation, THEN a dipstick urinalysis and/or mid-stream urine sample should be obtained.	Age>=65 years. Urinary incontinence during 12 months prior to interview (Heinct), lasting for at least 1 month (Heincta), which respondent mentioned to a doctor or nurse (Heinctb)	Heinctg = 'yes'	Heinctg: Did a doctor or nurse ask you to provide a sample of urine for testing?

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
<p>Vision vision4. IF a person aged 50 or older is diagnosed with a cataract that limits the patient's ability to carry out needed or desired activities, THEN cataract extraction should be offered.</p>	<p>Age<math>\geq</math>50 years. Reported diagnosed cataract in wave 1 or wave 2, (Heopt), and (eyesight fair, poor or blind (Heeye), or distance eyesight fair or poor (Hefrnd), or close eyesight fair or poor (Hepap)) in wave 2</p>	<p>Hedreye = 'yes'</p>	<p>Heopt: Has a doctor ever told you that you have any of these other conditions? [includes cataract]  Heeye: Is your eyesight (using glasses or corrective lenses if you use them) excellent, very good, good, fair or poor? [or legally or registered blind]  Hefrnd: [If not blind] How good is your eyesight for seeing things at a distance, like recognising a friend across the street, (using glasses or corrective lenses if you use them): excellent, very good, good, fair or poor?  Hepap: [If not blind] How good is your eyesight for seeing things up close, like reading ordinary newspaper print, (using glasses or corrective lenses if you use them): excellent, very good, good, fair or poor?  Hedreye: Did any doctor or optician recommend that you have your cataracts removed?</p>
<p>Patient-centred care pat1. Some people with diabetes receive training to help manage their diabetes themselves. Have you ever participated in a course or class about diabetes, or received special training on how you can live with your diabetes from day-to-day?</p>	<p>Age<math>\geq</math>50 years. Reported diabetes or high blood sugar at wave 1 or wave 2, and confirmed that had diagnosed diabetes at wave 2</p>	<p>Heslfcf = 'yes'</p>	<p>Heslfcf: Some people with diabetes receive training to help manage their diabetes themselves. Have you ever participated in a course or class about diabetes, or received special training on how you can live with your diabetes from day-to-day?</p>

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
pat2. How much do you think you know about managing your diabetes? ('just about everything you need to know' or 'most of what you need to know')	Age >= 50 years. Reported diabetes or high blood sugar at wave 1 or wave 2, and confirmed that had diagnosed diabetes at wave 2	Heslfc <b>b</b> = 1 ('just about everything ...') or 2 ('most...')	Heslfc <b>b</b> : How much do you think you know about managing your diabetes? Do you know... 1 ...just about everything you need to know, 2 most of what you need to know, 3 some of what you need to know, 4 a little of what you need to know, 5 or almost none of what you need to know?
pat3. Has a doctor or nurse explained high cholesterol in a way you could understand?	Age >= 50 years, and reported diagnosed 'high cholesterol' at wave 2 (cholesterol question not asked at wave 1) (Hediaa)	Hechol <b>b</b> = 'yes'	Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'high cholesterol'] Hechol <b>b</b> : Has a doctor or nurse explained high cholesterol in a way you could understand?
pat4. Have doctors or nurses taken your preferences into account when making treatment decisions about your high cholesterol?	Age >= 50 years, and reported diagnosed 'high cholesterol' at wave 2 (cholesterol question not asked at wave 1) (Hediaa)	Hechol <b>c</b> = 'yes'	Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'high cholesterol'] Hechol <b>c</b> : Have doctors or nurses taken your preferences into account when making treatment decisions about your high cholesterol?
pat5. Has a doctor or nurse explained high blood pressure in a way you could understand at any time since you were first told you had high blood pressure?	Age >= 50 years. Reported diagnosed hypertension at wave 2 (Hediaa)	Hehib <b>p</b> = 'yes'	Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'high blood pressure or hypertension'] Hehib <b>p</b> : Has a doctor or nurse explained high blood pressure in a way you could understand at any time since you were first told you had high blood pressure?

Condition, quality indicator (QI) or patient-centred question abbreviated title, and QI/question text	Denominator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Numerator (ELSA variable(s) in bold font)	Corresponding ELSA variable(s) (in bold font) and question(s)
pat6. In general, have doctors or nurses given you any choice about how to treat your high blood pressure?	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed hypertension at wave 2 (Hediaa)	Hehibpa = 'yes'	Hediaa: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'high blood pressure or hypertension'] Hehibpa: In general, have doctors or nurses given you any choice about how to treat your high blood pressure?
pat7. Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about what the specific purpose of the treatment for your arthritis or joint pain is?	Age $\geq$ 50 years. Reported diagnosed osteoarthritis at wave 2 but not wave 1 (Heart), and doctor has discussed treatment (Heartc)	Heartd = 'yes'	Hediab: Has a doctor ever told you that you have (or have had) any of the conditions on this card? [includes 'arthritis (including osteoarthritis, or rheumatism)'] Heart: Which type or types of arthritis do you have? [includes 'osteoarthritis'] Heartc: Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about how your arthritis or joint pain will be treated? Heartd: Has any doctor or nurse ever talked to you about what the specific purpose of the treatment for your arthritis or joint pain is?

Further information on the sample, fieldwork, weighting, consent, questionnaires and other survey documents can be found in the ELSA 'Wave 2 User Guides and Documentation, which is available from the UK data archive:  
[http://www.data-archive.ac.uk/doc/5050/mrdoc/pdf/5050\\_Wave\\_2\\_User\\_Guides\\_and\\_Documentation.pdf](http://www.data-archive.ac.uk/doc/5050/mrdoc/pdf/5050_Wave_2_User_Guides_and_Documentation.pdf) (accessed 16 May 2008)  
The full ELSA wave 2 questionnaire is also available from the Institute of Fiscal Studies website at:  
[http://www.ifs.org.uk/elsa/docs\\_w2/questionnaire\\_main.pdf](http://www.ifs.org.uk/elsa/docs_w2/questionnaire_main.pdf) (accessed 16 May 2008)  
The published literature reviews that underpinned the ACOVE indicators are available from:  
[http://www.annals.org/content/vol135/issue8\\_Part\\_2/](http://www.annals.org/content/vol135/issue8_Part_2/) (accessed 16 May 2008)  
(Wenger NS, Shekelle PG, Davidoff F, Mulrow C. Quality indicators for assessing care of vulnerable elders. *Annals of Internal Medicine* (Supplement) 2001; 135(8 (Part 2)):641-758)

The UK adaptation of these is described in: Steel N, Melzer D, Shekelle PG, Wenger NS, Forsyth D, McWilliams BC. Developing quality indicators for older adults: transfer from the USA to the UK is feasible. *Quality and Safety in Health Care* 2004; 13(4):260-264.

All the quality indicators rated as valid are available from the Quality and Safety in Health Care web-only appendix 1 to the above paper, at: <http://qshc.bmj.com/cgi/data/13/4/260/DC1/1> (accessed 16 May 2008)